

ASME A17.1-2022/CSA B44:22

(Revision of ASME A17.1-2019/CSA B44:19)

Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators

**Includes Requirements for Elevators,
Escalators, Dumbwaiters, Moving
Walks, Material Lifts, and Dumbwaiters
With Automatic Transfer Devices**

AN AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARD



**The American Society of
Mechanical Engineers**



ASME A17.1-2022/CSA B44:22
(Revision of ASME A17.1-2019/CSA B44:19)

Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators

**Includes Requirements for Elevators,
Escalators, Dumbwaiters, Moving
Walks, Material Lifts, and Dumbwaiters
With Automatic Transfer Devices**

AN AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARD



**The American Society of
Mechanical Engineers**



**CSA
GROUP™**

Date of Issuance: September 20, 2023

The next edition of this Code is scheduled for publication in 2025. This Code will become effective 6 months after the Date of Issuance.

This code or standard was developed under procedures accredited as meeting the criteria for American National Standards. The standards committee that approved the code or standard was balanced to ensure that individuals from competent and concerned interests had an opportunity to participate. The proposed code or standard was made available for public review and comment, which provided an opportunity for additional public input from industry, academia, regulatory agencies, and the public-at-large.

ASME does not “approve,” “certify,” “rate,” or “endorse” any item, construction, proprietary device, or activity. ASME does not take any position with respect to the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any items mentioned in this document, and does not undertake to insure anyone utilizing a standard against liability for infringement of any applicable letters patent, nor does ASME assume any such liability. Users of a code or standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, is entirely their own responsibility.

Participation by federal agency representatives or persons affiliated with industry is not to be interpreted as government or industry endorsement of this code or standard.

ASME accepts responsibility for only those interpretations of this document issued in accordance with the established ASME procedures and policies, which precludes the issuance of interpretations by individuals.

The endnotes and preamble in this document (if any) are part of this American National Standard.



ASME Collective Membership Mark

“ASME” and the above ASME symbol are registered trademarks of The American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form,
in an electronic retrieval system or otherwise,
without the prior written permission of the publisher.

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Two Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990

Copyright © 2023 by
THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS
All rights reserved
Printed in U.S.A.

CONTENTS

Foreword	xi
ASME Committee Roster	xvi
CSA Roster	xxiii
Correspondence With the A17 Committee	xxiv
ASME Preface	xxvi
CSA Preface	xxix
Summary of Changes	xxx
Part 1	
General	1
Section 1.1 Scope	1
Section 1.2 Purpose and Exceptions	2
Section 1.3 Definitions	2
Part 2	
Electric Elevators	20
Scope	20
Section 2.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures	20
Section 2.2 Pits	22
Section 2.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights	25
Section 2.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights	26
Section 2.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances	28
Section 2.6 Protection of Space Below Hoistways	29
Section 2.7 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms	29
Section 2.8 Equipment in Hoistways, Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms	37
Section 2.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations	40
Section 2.10 Guarding of Equipment and Standard Railing	42
Section 2.11 Protection of Hoistway Openings	43
Section 2.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Closed Detection Means, and Hoistway Access Switches	51
Section 2.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors	56
Section 2.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination	63
Section 2.15 Car Frames and Platforms	73
Section 2.16 Capacity and Loading	76
Section 2.17 Car and Counterweight Safeties	80
Section 2.18 Speed Governors	84
Section 2.19 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection	87
Section 2.20 Suspension Means and Their Connections	90
Section 2.21 Counterweights	99
Section 2.22 Buffers and Bumpers	100
Section 2.23 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings	103
Section 2.24 Driving Machines and Sheaves	112

Section 2.25	Terminal Stopping Devices	116
Section 2.26	Operating Devices and Control Equipment	120
Section 2.27	Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices	136
Section 2.28	Layout Drawings	155
Section 2.29	Identification	156
Section 2.30	Sway Control Guides	157
Part 3	Hydraulic Elevators	158
	Scope	158
Section 3.1	Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures	158
Section 3.2	Pits	158
Section 3.3	Location and Guarding of Counterweights	158
Section 3.4	Bottom and Top Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights	158
Section 3.5	Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances	159
Section 3.6	Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway	160
Section 3.7	Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms	160
Section 3.8	Electrical Equipment, Wiring, Pipes, and Ducts in Hoistway, Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms	161
Section 3.9	Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations	161
Section 3.10	Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment	161
Section 3.11	Protection of Hoistway Landing Openings	161
Section 3.12	Hoistway Door Locking Devices, Closed Detection Means, and Hoistway Access Switches	161
Section 3.13	Power Operation, Power Opening, and Power Closing of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors or Gates	161
Section 3.14	Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination	161
Section 3.15	Car Frames and Platforms	161
Section 3.16	Capacity and Loading	162
Section 3.17	Car Safeties, Counterweight Safeties, Plunger Gripper, and Governors	162
Section 3.18	Hydraulic Jacks	164
Section 3.19	Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings	167
Section 3.20	Ropes and Rope Connections	170
Section 3.21	Counterweights	170
Section 3.22	Buffers and Bumpers	170
Section 3.23	Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings	170
Section 3.24	Hydraulic Machines and Tanks	171
Section 3.25	Terminal Stopping Devices	171
Section 3.26	Operating Devices and Control Equipment	172
Section 3.27	Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices	175
Section 3.28	Layout Data	176
Section 3.29	Identification	177
Part 4	Elevators With Other Types of Driving Machines	178
	Scope	178
Section 4.1	Rack-and-Pinion Elevators	178
Section 4.2	Screw-Column Elevators	185
Section 4.3	Hand Elevators	188

Part 5	Special Application Elevators	192
	Scope	192
Section 5.1	Inclined Elevators	192
Section 5.2	Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators	199
Section 5.3	Private Residence Elevators	204
Section 5.4	Private Residence Inclined Elevators	215
Section 5.5	Power Sidewalk Elevators	218
Section 5.6	Rooftop Elevators	222
Section 5.7	Special Purpose Personnel Elevators	225
Section 5.8	Marine Elevators	232
Section 5.9	Mine Elevators	233
Section 5.10	Elevators Used for Construction	237
Section 5.11	Wind Turbine Tower Elevators	242
Section 5.12	Outside Emergency Elevators	242
Part 6	Escalators and Moving Walks	244
	Scope	244
Section 6.1	Escalators	244
Section 6.2	Moving Walks	258
Part 7	Dumbwaiters and Material Lifts	270
	Scope	270
Section 7.1	Power Dumbwaiters Without Automatic Transfer Devices	270
Section 7.2	Electric Dumbwaiters Without Automatic Transfer Devices	275
Section 7.3	Hydraulic Dumbwaiters Without Automatic Transfer Devices	281
Section 7.4	Material Lifts Without Automatic Transfer Devices	282
Section 7.5	Electric Material Lifts Without Automatic Transfer Devices	286
Section 7.6	Hydraulic Material Lifts Without Automatic Transfer Devices	292
Section 7.7	Automatic Transfer Devices	294
Section 7.8	Power Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices	294
Section 7.9	Electric Material Lifts With Automatic Transfer Devices	295
Section 7.10	Hydraulic Material Lifts With Automatic Transfer Devices	296
Part 8	General Requirements	297
	Scope	297
Section 8.1	Security	297
Section 8.2	Design Data and Formulas	298
Section 8.3	Engineering Tests, Type Tests, and Certification	318
Section 8.4	Elevator Seismic Requirements	329
Section 8.5	Escalator And Moving Walk Seismic Requirements	357
Section 8.6	Maintenance, Repair, Replacement, and Testing	359
Section 8.7	Alterations	388
Section 8.8	Welding	416
Section 8.9	Code Data Plate	416
Section 8.10	Acceptance Inspections and Tests	417
Section 8.11	Periodic Inspections and Witnessing of Tests	438
Section 8.12	Flood Resistances	445
Section 8.13	Signs, Plates, and Tags	445

Section 8.14	Cybersecurity	446
Part 9	Reference Codes, Standards, and Specifications	448
Section 9.1	Reference Documents	449
Section 9.2	Procurement Information	454

Nonmandatory Appendices

A	Control System	456
B	Unlocking Zone	458
C	Location of Top Emergency Exit	459
D	Rated Load and Capacity Plates for Passenger Elevators	460
E	Elevator Requirements for Persons With Physical Disabilities in Jurisdictions Enforcing the NBCC	461
F	Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection	471
G	Top-of-Car Clearance	475
H	Private Residence Elevator Guarding (5.3.1.7.2)	480
I	Escalator and Moving Walk Diagrams	481
J	Relationship of Pit Ladder to Hoistway Door Unlocking Means	492
K	Beveling and Clearance Requirements (7.4.7.4)	493
L	Index of Alteration Requirements for Electric Elevators, Hydraulic Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks	494
M	Inertia Application for Type A Safety Device Location of Test Weight [8.10.2.2(ii)(2)] .	501
N	Recommended Inspection and Test Intervals in “Months”	502
P	Plunger Gripper Stopping Distances	511
Q	Explanatory Figures for the Definitions of Elevator Machinery Space, Machine Room, Control Space, Control Room, Remote Machine Room, or Remote Control Room	512
R	Inspection Operation and Hoistway Access Switch Operation Hierarchy	515
S	Horizontally and Vertically Sliding Doors — Illustrations of Detection Zones (2.13.3.4 and 2.13.5.4)	517
U	Design Requirements — Traction Elevator Suspension System	534
V	Building Features for Occupant Evacuation Operation	535
X	Acceptance Tests	537
Y	Maintenance Control Program Records	542
Z	Mass and Closing Time of Horizontally Sliding Elevator Doors	546
AA	Checklist for Firefighters’ Emergency Operation (8.6.11.1)	547
Index	.....	550

Figures

2.16.1.1	Inside Net Platform Areas for Passenger Elevators	77
2.20.9.4	Tapered Rope Sockets	94
2.20.9.5	Wedge Rope Sockets	95
2.23.3	Elevator Guide Rails	104
2.23.4.1-1	Maximum Weight of a Car With Rated Load or of Counterweight With Safety Device for a Pair of Guide Rails as Specified in 2.23.4.1	106
2.23.4.1-2	Minimum Moment of Inertia About x-x Axis for a Single Guide Rail With Its Reinforcement	107
2.27.3.1.6	Visual Signal	141
2.27.3.3.7	Panel Layout	146
2.27.7.1	Phase I Emergency Recall Operation Instructions	148

2.27.7.2	Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation	149
2.27.8	FEO-K1 Key	150
2.27.9	Elevator Corridor Call Station Pictograph	151
5.1.17.3	Vertical and Horizontal Components of Velocity	197
5.3.1.11.1	Inside Net Platform Areas for Private Residence Elevators	209
6.1.3.3.10	Dimensions	246
6.1.6.9.1	Caution Sign	255
8.2.1.2	Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators	299
8.2.2.5.1	Turning Moment Based on Class of Loading	302
8.2.4	Gravity Stopping Distances	304
8.2.5	Maximum Governor Tripping Speeds	305
8.2.6	Stopping Distances for Type B Car and Counterweight Safeties	308
8.2.7	Minimum Factors of Safety of Suspension Members of Power Passenger and Freight Elevators	311
8.2.8.1.1	Allowable Gross Loads	312
8.2.9.1.3	Load Distribution	316
8.4.3.1.3	Arc of Contact	331
8.4.5.2.3	Position Retainer Dimension Relationships	332
8.4.8.2.1-1	12 kg/m (8 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	334
8.4.8.2.1-2	16.5 kg/m (11 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	335
8.4.8.2.1-3	18 kg/m (12 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	336
8.4.8.2.1-4	22.5 kg/m (15 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	337
8.4.8.2.1-5	27.5 kg/m (18.5 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	338
8.4.8.2.1-6	33.5 kg/m (22.5 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	339
8.4.8.2.1-7	44.5 kg/m (30 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	340
8.4.8.2.2	Car and Counterweight Load Factor	341
8.4.8.9	Guide-Rail Axes	345
8.4.10.1.1	Earthquake Elevator Equipment Requirements Diagrammatic Representation	347
8.4.10.1.3	Earthquake Emergency Operation Diagrammatic Representation	349
8.5.1	Balustrade Handrail Force	358
8.6.8.15.19	Location of Center of Applied Load for Coefficient of Friction and Loaded Gap Measurements	383
A-1	Control System	457
B-1	Unlocking Zone (2.12.1 and 2.14.5.7)	458
C-1	Parallelepiped Volume Orientations [2.14.1.5.1(b)(2)]	459
E-20.4.3-1	Braille Measurements	469
E-20.6.3	International Symbol of Accessibility	469
F-1	Ascending Car Overspeed Protection (2.19.1)	473
F-2	Unintended Car Movement Protection (2.19.2)	474
G-1	Top-of-Car Clearance Requirements (2.4.7.1 and 2.14.1.7.2)	475
G-2	Additional Top-of-Car Clearance Requirements (2.4.7.1)	476
G-3	Top-of-Car Marking Requirements (2.4.7.2)	476
G-4	Additional Top-of-Car Marking Requirements (2.4.7.2)	477
G-5	Additional Top-of-Car Clearance Requirements	478
G-6	Additional Top-of-Car Clearance [2.4.7.1(b)]	479
H-1	Private Residence Elevator Guarding	480

I-1	Relationship of Escalator Parts	481
I-2	Handrail	482
I-3	Escalator Nomenclature	483
I-4	Skirt or Dynamic Skirt Panel: Step Nose (6.1.3.3.6)	484
I-5	Ceiling or Soffit Guard (6.1.3.3.11)	484
I-6	Antislid e Device (6.1.3.3.12)	484
I-7	Escalator Step Tread	485
I-8	Cleated Riser (6.1.3.5.3)	485
I-9	Moving Walk Geometry	486
I-10	Moving Walk Treadway Slots	487
I-11	Stopping Distances Corresponding to a Deceleration Rate of 0.91 m/s ² [6.1.5.3.1(c)]	487
I-12	Clearance Between Escalator Steps	488
I-13	Ceiling or Soffit Guard High-Deck Elevators (6.1.3.3.11)	489
I-14	Ceiling or Soffit Guard Low-Deck Elevators (6.1.3.3.11)	490
I-15	Escalator/Moving Walk Dynamic Braking Logic	491
J-1	Relationship of Pit Ladder to Hoistway Door Unlocking Means	492
K-1	Beveling and Clearance Requirements	493
M-1	Inertia Application for Type A Safety Device Location of Test Weight	501
Q-1		513
Q-2		513
Q-3		513
Q-4		513
Q-5		514
Q-6		514
S-1		518
S-2		519
S-3		520
S-4		521
S-5		522
S-6		523
S-7		524
S-8		525
S-9		526
S-10		527
S-11		528
S-12		529
S-13	Cylindrical Targets (2.13.5.3)	530
S-14	Prismatic Targets (2.13.5.4.1)	531
S-15	Prismatic Targets (2.13.5.4.2)	531
S-16	Detection Areas Relative to Door Position	532
Y-1	Maintenance Control Program Records	543

Tables

2.15.10.1	Maximum Allowable Stresses in Car Frame and Platform Members and Connections, for Steels Specified in 2.15.6.2.1 and 2.15.6.2.2	75

2.16.1.1	Maximum Inside Net Platform Areas for the Various Rated Loads	78
2.17.3	Maximum and Minimum Stopping Distances for Type B Car Safeties With Rated Load at Maximum Car Governor Tripping Speed	82
2.18.2.1	Maximum Car Speeds at Which Speed Governor Trips and Governor Overspeed Switch Operates	85
2.18.7.4	Multiplier for Determining Governor Sheave Pitch Diameter	87
2.20.3	Minimum Factors of Safety for Suspension Members	91
2.20.9.4.5	Relation of Rope Diameter to Diameter of the Small Socket Hole	95
2.22.3.1	Minimum Spring Buffer Strokes	100
2.22.4.1	Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes	102
2.23.3	T-Section Guide-Rail Dimensions	104
2.23.4.2	Load Multiplying Factor for Duplex Safeties	110
2.23.4.3.1	Guide Rails for Counterweight Without Safeties	111
2.23.4.3.3	Intermediate Tie Brackets	111
2.23.7.2.1	Minimum Thickness of Fishplates and Minimum Diameter of Fastening Bolts	112
2.23.10.2	Minimum Size of Rail-Fastening Bolts	112
2.26.4.3.2	SIL for Electrical Protective Devices and Other Electrical Safety Functions	128
2.26.12.1	Symbol Identification	133
4.1.18.1	Maximum and Minimum Stopping Distances for Rack-and-Pinion Safeties With Rated Load	182
5.1.14.2	Minimum and Maximum Stopping Distances at Given Angles From Horizontal	196
5.1.17.2	Spring Buffer Stroke	197
5.1.17.4.4	Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes at Given Angle From Horizontal	197
6.2.3.7	Treadway Width	260
6.2.4.1.1	Treadway Speed	263
7.2.6.4	Factors of Safety for Wire Rope and Chains	278
7.2.8.1	Minimum Spring Buffer Strokes	278
7.2.8.2	Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes	279
7.4.3	Type B Material Lifts	283
7.9.2.14	Minimum Spring Buffer Strokes	296
7.9.2.15	Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes	296
8.4.8.7	Stresses and Deflections of Guide-Rail Brackets and Supports	343
8.4.10.1.1	Visual Indication Matrix	348
8.4.11.13	Pipe Support Spacing	352
8.4.12.2.2	Maximum Allowable Deflection	355
8.5.5	Component-Based Allowable Design Stresses	360
8.6.3.12.1	Minimum Bottom Runby for Counterweight Elevators With Spring Buffers, Elastomeric Buffers, or Solid Bumpers and Rheostatic Control or Single-Speed AC Control	366
8.6.4.20.4	Brake Test Loads	373
E-5-1	Minimum Dimensions of Elevator Cars	462
E-20.4.3-1	Measurement Range for Standard Sign Braille	468
F-1	Traction Elevator Brake Type, Function, and Performance	472
N-1-1	Recommended Inspection and Test Intervals in “Months”	503
N-2-1	Guidelines on Use of Monitoring to Provide Inspection Data	504
P-1	Plunger Gripper Stopping Distances With Rated Load in the Car (8.6.5.16.4)	511
Q-1		512
R-1	Inspection Operation and Hoistway Access Switch Operation Hierarchy	516

U-1	Design Requirements — Traction Elevator Suspension System	534
X-1	Acceptance Test for Electric Elevators	538
X-2	Acceptance Test for Hydraulic Elevators	539
X-3	Acceptance Test for Escalators	540
X-4	Acceptance Test for Moving Walks	541
Y-1	Maintenance Control Program Records	544
Z-1	Mass and Closing Time of Horizontally Sliding Elevator Doors	546
AA-1	Checklist for Firefighters' Emergency Operation	548

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME A17.1 CSA B44 2012

ASME FOREWORD

(22)

The first edition of this Code was published in January 1921. It was prepared by an American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) Committee on Protection of Industrial Workers with the assistance of representatives of a number of interests including manufacturers, insurance carriers, regulatory bodies, and technical societies.

Subsequently, ASME requested the American Engineering Standards Committee (AESC) to authorize the organization of a Sectional Committee to undertake a revision. The AESC acted favorably on this request and in January 1922 assigned sponsorship for the project jointly to the American Institute of Architects, the National Bureau of Standards, and ASME, all three of whom had taken an active part in the preparation of the first edition of the Code.

The organizational meeting of the Sectional Committee A17 was held in November 1922. A number of meetings of the Committee were held during the next two years, and in July 1925, a revision of the 1921 Code was completed, approved by the AESC, and published as an American Standard.

Subsequent to the publication of the 1925 revision of the Code, the necessity for development research on the design and construction of car safeties and oil buffers and for the development of test specifications for various parts of elevator equipment was realized.

As a result, a Subcommittee on Research, Recommendations, and Interpretations was appointed in 1926. This subcommittee held regular meetings thereafter until interrupted by the Second World War in 1940, and carried on an extensive test program at the National Bureau of Standards in connection with oil buffers and car safeties. Subsequent to the war, the name of this subcommittee was changed to "Executive Committee for the Elevator Safety Code."

The information gained as a result of these tests, together with the developments that had occurred in the design of the equipment as a result of installations made in very tall buildings, prompted the Sectional Committee to prepare and issue the third edition of the Code in 1931. The third edition was approved by the Sectional Committee in February 1931, and subsequently by the sponsors and by the American Standards Association (ASA, formerly the AESC) in July 1931.

Further experience and developments in the design of elevator equipment led the Sectional Committee, in line with its policy of revising the Code periodically, to prepare the fourth edition in 1937, which was approved by the sponsors and by the ASA in July 1937.

A fifth edition of the Code was well under way in 1940 when it was necessary to suspend the work due to the Second World War. However, a number of the revisions already agreed upon by the Sectional Committee and approved by the sponsors and by the ASA in April 1942 were issued as a supplement to the 1937 edition. They were subsequently incorporated in a reprint of the 1937 edition in 1945. In response to public demand, requirements for private residence elevators were also issued in a separate supplement, ASA A17.1.5-1953, and incorporated into the Code as Part V in the 1955 edition.

The Sectional Committee reinitiated consideration of the fifth edition of the Code in 1946. Due to the considerable period that had elapsed since the fourth revision in 1937, and to the very extensive developments in the elevator art, the Committee decided that the Code should be completely rewritten and brought up to date.

Special subcommittees were appointed to prepare the revisions of the various requirements. The membership of each subcommittee consisted of persons especially familiar with the requirements to be covered by that subcommittee. Fifteen subcommittees were set up with a total membership of over 150 persons. The membership of these subcommittees was not confined to members of the Sectional Committee. It also included other persons having expert knowledge of the subjects under consideration by the subcommittees. These subcommittees and their personnel were listed in the 1955 edition of the Code.

The drafts prepared by these subcommittees were widely circulated to interested groups for comment. After review of the comments and correlation of the drafts, the fifth edition of the Code was approved by the Sectional Committee, subsequently by the sponsors, and by the ASA in June 1955.

In December 1957, a Supplement to the Code listing a number of revisions was approved by the ASA and published by ASME.

A sixth edition was published in 1960 that incorporated the revisions contained in the 1957 Supplement as well as approximately 96 revisions that were approved by the Sectional Committee in March 1960.

In 1958 the scope of the A17 Code was enlarged to include moving walks. The membership of the Sectional Committee was expanded to include manufacturers whose primary interest in the Committee was the development of rules and regulations on moving walks. A subcommittee prepared a Safety Code for Moving Walks, which was approved by the

Sectional Committee, the sponsors, and by the ASA on March 20, 1962. This Code was published as Part XIII of the A17.1 Code, and was designated ASA A17.1.13-1962.

During 1962 and 1963, 38 additional changes to Parts I through XII of ASA A17.1 were approved by the Sectional Committee and the sponsors, and the ASA, and were published as the 1963 Supplement to the 1960 edition of the Code.

A seventh edition was published in 1965 that incorporated the rules of the Safety Code for Moving Walks, ASA A17.1.13-1962, as Part XIII, the revisions covered by the 1963 Supplement, and approximately 90 other revisions approved by the Sectional Committee, the sponsors, and the ASA. The title of the Code was also changed to the American Standard Safety Code for Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators, and Moving Walks.

On August 24, 1966, the ASA was reconstituted as the United States of America Standards Institute. The designation of standards approved as American Standards was changed to USA Standards. There was no change in the index identification or the technical content of the standards. At the same time, the ASA Sectional Committee, A17 on A Safety Code for Elevators, was changed to the USA Standards Committee, A17 on A Safety Code for Elevators. Four supplements to the seventh edition were published from 1967 through 1970.

The United States of America Standards Institute changed its name to American National Standards Institute, Inc. (ANSI) on October 6, 1969. At the time that the new name became effective, the designation USA Standard was changed to American National Standard and the names of committees changed from USA Standards Committees to American National Standards Committees. The alphabetical designation of standard documents was changed from USA to ANSI.

The eighth edition of the Code (1971) incorporated the revisions covered by the four supplements and an additional 94 revisions. Seven supplements were issued from 1972 through 1976. Part XIV covering material lifts and dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices was added in supplement ANSI A17.1d-1975.

The ninth edition of the Code (1978) incorporated 75 revisions in addition to those covered by the previous supplements. Part XV covering special purpose personnel elevators was added and the reference codes, standards, and specifications were moved from the Preface to a new Part XVI. Two supplements to this edition were issued in 1979 and 1980.

The tenth edition of the Code (1981) incorporated the revisions covered by Supplements ANSI A17.1a-1979 and ANSI A17.1b-1980, as well as the following new material: Part XVII, Inclined Elevators; Appendix F, Seismic Regulations; and Appendix G, Recommended Practice for Accelerating Moving Walks. Rule 211.3 and Part V were also completely revised, with the private residence inclined lifts moved to Part XVIII. Numerous other revisions and additions that had been approved since the time of the 1980 supplement were also included.

The tenth edition of the Code was approved by the A17 Standards Committee. After publication of the tenth edition, the Committee was reorganized in accordance with the ANSI Accredited Organization Method under the sponsorship of ASME. With this reorganization, the National Bureau of Standards and the American Institute of Architects relinquished their roles as cosecretariats. The Standards, Conference, and Executive Committees were also restructured as the Main Committee and the National Interest Review Committee, with the Working Committees (subcommittees) continuing to operate as before.

This reorganization also prompted a change in the title of the Code to the ANSI/ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators. The title was shortened for convenience, and it should not be construed that the Code no longer covered dumbwaiters, moving walks, or the other equipment included within the Scope of the Code.

Two supplements to the 1981 edition were issued: ANSI/ASME A17.1a-1982 and ANSI/ASME A17.1b-1983. The 1982 supplement included a new Part XIX covering elevators used for construction. In the 1983 supplement, the requirements for private residence inclined lifts in Part XVIII were expanded and incorporated into a new Part XXI covering private residence inclined stairway chairlifts and inclined and vertical wheelchair lifts. Part XX was added to cover these same devices installed in buildings other than private residences. Requirements for screw-column elevators were also added and designated as Part XVIII.

The eleventh edition of the Code (1984) incorporated the changes made in the 1982 and 1983 supplements, as well as additional revisions.

The eleventh edition was updated with five supplements, which were issued approximately every 6 months from 1985 through the spring of 1987. Appendix I (later redesignated as Appendix E) was added in ANSI/ASME A17.1a-1985. Requirements for rack-and-pinion elevators were added in ANSI/ASME A17.1c-1986, designated as Part XVI. The previous Part XVI (Reference Codes, Standards, and Specifications) was moved to Section 4 of the Introduction. In ANSI/ASME A17.1d-1986, the requirements for sidewalk elevators in Part IV, and alterations in Part XII, were completely revised.

The twelfth edition of the Code incorporated the changes made in supplements ANSI/ASME A17.1a-1985 through ANSI/ASME A17.1e-1987, as well as additional revisions. Among these changes was a complete revision of the requirements for dumbwaiters in Part VII. The format of the Code was also changed editorially to incorporate Exceptions into the body of the Rules.

The thirteenth edition of the Code incorporated the changes made in ANSI/ASME A17.1a-1988 and ANSI/ASME A17.1b-1989 as well as additional revisions. Part XXII, Shipboard Elevators, was added in ANSI/ASME A17.1b-1989. Part XXIII, Rooftop Elevators, appeared for the first time in the thirteenth edition.

The fourteenth edition of the Code incorporated the changes made in ASME A17.1a-1991 and ASME A17.1b-1992 as well as additional revisions. Safety requirements for seismic risk zone 3 and greater were moved from Appendix F into new Part XXIV, Elevator Safety Requirements for Seismic Risk Zone 2 or Greater. Requirements for seismic risk zone 2 were added to Part XXIV.

The fifteenth edition of the Code incorporated the changes made in ASME A17.1a-1994 and ASME A17.1b-1995 as well as additional revisions. Part XXV, Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators, was added in ASME A17.1b-1995. The rules in Part III were harmonized with CAN/CSA B44, Elevator Safety Standard, Sections 4 and 11, and Appendix G4.

The sixteenth edition of the Code incorporated changes made in ASME A17.1a-1997 through ASME A17.1d-2000. Requirements for mine elevators were also added in Section 5.9 of this edition. In addition, the entire Code was reformatted to incorporate a decimal numbering system. For the sixteenth edition of the Code, cross-reference tables were provided to facilitate the correlation between requirements from the fifteenth edition of the Code and the renumbered requirements of the sixteenth edition and vice versa. The sixteenth edition of ASME A17.1 was the result of a joint effort between the ASME A17 Elevator and Escalator Committee and the Canadian Standards Association (CSA) B44 Technical Committee to harmonize requirements between ASME A17.1, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, and CSA B44, Safety Code for Elevators.

The seventeenth edition of the Code incorporated changes made in ASME A17.1a-2002 and ASME A17.1b-2003. Additionally, in Sections 8.10 and 8.11, cross-references were updated to reflect ASME A17.2-2001, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks.

The eighteenth edition of the Code was a fully binational standard. All former deviations between the ASME A17.1 Code and the CSA B44 Code were fully addressed within this one Code. Additionally, this edition incorporated revisions to address the advancement of technologies used in the design and construction of elevator equipment that had enabled the installation of the equipment in other than traditional locations, such as machine rooms. New requirements were also added to address programmable electronic systems in safety-related applications of elevators.

The nineteenth edition of the Code incorporated changes made in ASME A17.1a-2008/CSA B44a-08 and ASME A17.1b-2009/CSA B44b-09. Major changes included former periodic inspections now being covered under maintenance requirements. New requirements were added to address the means and members of suspension, compensation, and governor systems for elevators. These new requirements were covered in detail through reference to ASME A17.6, which includes the material properties, design, testing, inspection, and replacement criteria for these means. It includes the requirements for steel wire rope, aramid fiber rope, and noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension members and provides direction for future constructions as new technology develops.

The twentieth edition of the Code contained well over one hundred revisions made to existing requirements, as well as some new requirements.

New requirements were added to address new types of elevator equipment being used in the industry, specifically wind turbine elevators and outside emergency elevators. In addition, requirements were added to address a new feature called Elevator Evacuation Operation (EEO), which allows for the use of elevators for occupant evacuation.

Besides the above, major changes included the following:

(a) The seismic requirements of the Code were revised to include seismic force levels as specified in the latest building codes in the United States (IBC) and Canada (NBCC). To facilitate incorporation of these requirements, ASME published Technical Report A17.1-8.4, Guide for Elevator Seismic Design.

(b) Requirements related to the maintenance control program were updated to improve clarity and organization for records, content, availability, and format.

(c) Regarding qualifications for elevator inspectors (QEI), effective January 1, 2014, accreditation of organizations that certify elevator inspectors and inspection supervisors was discontinued by ASME. Requirements were revised in this area to allow for accreditation to be done by other organizations.

The twenty-first edition of the Code contained many revisions to existing requirements and the addition of some new requirements. Some areas of note, in which significant updates were made, include, but are not limited to, seismic requirements for escalators; requirements for special purpose personnel elevators, rack-and-pinion elevators, private residence elevators, and material lifts with obscured transfer devices; and the addition of elastomeric buffer requirements. In addition, the requirements in Section 5.11, Wind Turbine Tower Elevators, are now addressed within ASME A17.8/CSA B44.8, and Section 7.11 on material lifts with obscured transfer devices was removed. Additionally, Nonmandatory Appendix T on inspection and replacement of steel wire ropes and Nonmandatory Appendix W on wind turbine tower elevator clearances were removed.

The twenty-second edition of the Code included many revisions, including additional updates for door requirements in private residence elevators, occupant evacuation elevators, and clarifications of seismic requirements for elevators and escalators. In addition, some key revisions of note were the updating of emergency communication requirements for an elevator to ensure communication with any trapped passengers, including those that are hearing impaired, and additional requirements modified for increased door protection on passenger elevators.

This twenty-third edition of the Code contains many revisions, including the addition of cybersecurity requirements, remote interaction operation requirements, and test enable operation requirements. In addition, many requirements have been updated, including flood protection of elevators, alternate testing of emergency braking, and door position monitoring on Phase II.

The following is a complete list of editions and supplements to the Code that have been published and the dates when they received final approval. The dates of issuance are also included for the documents published since 1974, and the dates on which they became effective are included for those published since 1978.

	Editions and Supplements	Approved	Issued	Effective
First Edition	1921	January 1921	...	...
Second Edition	A17-1925	April 1925	...	...
Third Edition	ASA A17-1931	July 1931	...	...
Fourth Edition Supplements	ASA A17.1-1937 ASA A17.3-1942 ASA A17.1.5-1953	July 1937 April 1942 June 9, 1953	... ... ...	... ... ...
Fifth Edition Supplements	ASA A17.1-1955 ASA A17.1a-1957	June 15, 1955 December 10, 1957	... ...	... ...
Sixth Edition Supplements	ASA A17.1-1960 ASA A17.1.13-1962 ASA A17.1a-1963	August 29, 1960 March 20, 1962 August 16, 1963	... ... ...	... ... ...
Seventh Edition Supplements	ASA A17.1-1965 USAS A17.1a-1967 USAS A17.1b-1968 USAS A17.1c-1969 ANSI A17.1d-1970	July 29, 1965 July 7, 1967 December 11, 1968 May 6, 1969 March 2, 1970	... ... ... ... ...	... ... ... ... ...
Eighth Edition Supplements	ANSI A17.1-1971 ANSI A17.1a-1972 ANSI A17.1b-1973 ANSI A17.1c-1974 ANSI A17.1d-1975 ANSI A17.1e-1975 ANSI A17.1f-1975 ANSI A17.1g-1976	July 27, 1971 February 16, 1972 October 11, 1973 April 26, 1974 February 26, 1975 March 26, 1975 April 2, 1975 August 12, 1976	 September 15, 1974 October 31, 1975 October 31, 1975 October 31, 1975 November 30, 1976	... ... ... ... ... ... ... ...
Ninth Edition Supplements	ANSI A17.1-1978 ANSI A17.1a-1979 ANSI A17.1b-1980	May 4, 1978 February 5, 1979 March 20, 1980	June 15, 1978 March 30, 1979 May 15, 1980	September 15, 1978 June 30, 1979 August 15, 1980
Tenth Edition Supplements	ANSI/ASME A17.1-1981 ANSI/ASME A17.1a-1982 ANSI/ASME A17.1b-1983	September 8, 1981 October 5, 1982 October 24, 1983	October 22, 1981 November 30, 1982 December 23, 1983	April 22, 1982 May 30, 1983 June 23, 1984
Eleventh Edition Supplements	ANSI/ASME A17.1-1984 ANSI/ASME A17.1a-1985 ANSI/ASME A17.1b-1985 ANSI/ASME A17.1c-1986 ANSI/ASME A17.1d-1986 ANSI/ASME A17.1e-1987	August 16, 1984 February 27, 1985 August 6, 1985 March 5, 1986 September 8, 1986 February 18, 1987	September 16, 1984 April 15, 1985 October 15, 1985 April 30, 1986 November 30, 1986 April 30, 1987	March 16, 1985 October 15, 1985 April 15, 1986 October 31, 1986 May 31, 1987 October 30, 1987

	Editions and Supplements	Approved	Issued	Effective
Twelfth Edition Supplements	ASME/ANSI A17.1-1987 ASME/ANSI A17.1a-1988 ASME/ANSI A17.1b-1989	October 20, 1987 October 6, 1988 November 10, 1989	January 15, 1988 November 15, 1988 November 30, 1989	July 16, 1988 May 16, 1989 May 31, 1990
Thirteenth Edition Supplements	ASME A17.1-1990 ASME A17.1a-1991 ASME A17.1b-1992	October 8, 1990 October 21, 1991 October 28, 1992	February 8, 1991 February 28, 1992 December 29, 1992	August 9, 1991 August 29, 1992 June 30, 1993
Fourteenth Edition Supplements	ASME A17.1-1993 ASME A17.1a-1994 ASME A17.1b-1995	October 18, 1993 August 17, 1994 October 5, 1995	December 31, 1993 December 31, 1994 January 31, 1996	July 1, 1994 July 1, 1995 August 1, 1996
Fifteenth Edition Supplements	ASME A17.1-1996 ASME A17.1a-1997 ASME A17.1b-1998 ASME A17.1c-1999 ASME A17.1d-2000	October 3, 1996 January 8, 1998 November 13, 1998 May 13, 1999 October 12, 2000	December 31, 1996 February 27, 1998 February 19, 1999 June 30, 1999 November 30, 2000	July 1, 1997 August 28, 1998 August 20, 1999 December 31, 1999 January 31, 2001
Sixteenth Edition Supplements	ASME A17.1-2000 ASME A17.1a-2002 ASME A17.1b-2003	October 16, 2000 February 26, 2002 April 10, 2003	March 23, 2001 April 4, 2002 May 30, 2003	March 23, 2002 October 4, 2002 November 30, 2003
Seventeenth Edition Supplements	ASME A17.1-2004 ASME A17.1a-2005 ASME A17.1S-2005	January 14, 2004 March 18, 2005 March 23, 2005	April 30, 2004 April 29, 2005 August 12, 2005	October 31, 2004 October 29, 2005 February 12, 2006
Eighteenth Edition Supplements	ASME A17.1-2007/CSA B44-07 ASME A17.1a-2008/CSA B44a-08 ASME A17.1b-2009/CSA B44b-09	February 20, 2007 September 19, 2008 November 17, 2009	April 6, 2007 December 5, 2008 December 30, 2009	October 6, 2007 June 5, 2009 June 30, 2010
Nineteenth Edition	ASME A17.1-2010/CSA B44-10	October 19, 2010	December 30, 2010	June 30, 2011
Twentieth Edition	ASME A17.1-2013/CSA B44-13	May 31, 2013	October 21, 2013	April 21, 2014
Twenty-First Edition	ASME A17.1-2016/CSA B44-16	July 25, 2016	November 30, 2016	May 30, 2017
Twenty-Second Edition	ASME A17.1-2019/CSA B44-19	October 8, 2019	December 31, 2019	June 30, 2020
Twenty-Third Edition	ASME A17.1-2022/CSA B44-22	December 19, 2022	September 20, 2023	March 20, 2024

ASME A17 COMMITTEE ELEVATORS AND ESCALATORS

(August 2022)

STANDARDS COMMITTEE

H. E. Peelle III, *Chair*, The Peelle Co., Ltd.
R. E. Baxter, *Vice Chair*, Baxter Residential Elevators, LLC
M. H. Tevyaw, *Vice Chair*, MHT Codes and Consulting
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Staff Secretary*, The American Society of Mechanical Engineers
E. V. Baker, National Elevator Industry Educational Program
D. L. Barker, California Division of Occupational Safety and Health
J. W. Blain, Edgett Williams Consulting Group
S. Bornstein, KONE, Inc.
P. R. Bothwell, Draka EHC
K. L. Brinkman, National Elevator Industry, Inc.
R. C. Burch, VANTAGE/GAL Manufacturing Co., LLC
J. W. Coaker, Coaker & Co., PC
J. Filippone, Consultant
R. A. Gregory, Vertex Corp.
P. Hampton, TK Elevator
J. T. Herrity, Department of the Navy, Naval Facilities Command (NAVFAC)
B. Horne, Otis Elevator
D. A. Kalgren, KONE, Inc.
J. W. Koshak, Elevator Safety Solutions, LLC
R. Kremer, Technical Standards and Safety Authority
D. McColl, Otis Canada, Inc.
D. McLellan, Technical Standards and Safety Authority
A. L. Peck, Consultant
D. K. Prince, Motion Control Engineering, Inc.
J. S. Rearick, Rearick & Co., Inc.
V. P. Robibero, RobiberoV Consultancy, LLC
R. S. Seymour, Robert L. Seymour & Associates, Inc.
C. Shade, Ohio Department of Commerce
R. D. Shepherd, Retired
W. M. Snyder, VTE Solution, LLC
J. Xue, *Delegate*, Shanghai Institute of Special Equipment Inspection and Technical Research
D. S. Boucher, *Alternate*, KONE, Inc.
J. Carlson, *Alternate*, J Carlson Consulting, LLC
L. W. Donaldson, *Alternate*, Department of the Navy, Naval Facilities Command (NAVFAC)
D. Griefenhagen, *Alternate*, International Union of Elevator Constructors
J. D. Henderson, *Alternate*, TK Elevator
N. Imbimbo, *Alternate*, Prysmian Group
L. Metzinger, *Alternate*, Alimak Group USA, Inc.
D. Morris, *Alternate*, California Division of Occupational Safety and Health
S. P. Reynolds, *Alternate*, The Peelle Co., Ltd.
C. Romero, *Alternate*, Motion Control Engineering, Inc.
P. S. Rosenberg, *Alternate*, Performance Elevator Consulting, LLC
A. Shelton, *Alternate*, KONE, Inc.
J. L. Stabler, *Alternate*, Stabler Associates, Inc.
H. M. Vyas, *Alternate*, VDA, Inc.

HONORARY COMMITTEE

G. A. Burdeshaw, *Staff Secretary*
E. A. Donoghue
L. Bialy
B. J. Fanguy
G. W. Gibson
C. E. Hempel
C. L. Kort
A. A. Mascone
E. M. Philpot
R. L. Rogers
L. E. White

REGULATORY ADVISORY COUNCIL

D. McLellan, *Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Staff Secretary*
D. L. Barker
G. D. Barnes
G. E. Brewer
G. R. Brown
D. Bruce
J. H. Burpee
J. R. Calpini
R. Capuani
L. W. Donaldson
K. Dunbar
C. Gardiner
L. A. Giovannetti
J. M. Gould
A. Guadamuz
W. J. Hartung
D. J. Hedgecock
G. A. Hutto
G. Johnson
N. Kavanagh
D. Leopard
S. MacArthur
C. C. Mann
P. L. McClare
D. McKernon
S. Mercier
M. Mitchell
J. Murnan
N. Ortiz
M. R. Poulin
J. P. Roche
E. Ryba
H. Schaier
P. Sorensen
K. R. Steeves
J. A. Stewart
M. K. Stewart
S. F. Stout
C. Updyke
D. Melvin, *Alternate*
D. Morris, *Alternate*
J. L. Borwey, *Contributing Member*
J. Day, *Contributing Member*

B44.1/A17.5 COMMITTEE ON ELEVATOR AND ESCALATOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

M. A. Mueller, *Chair*
M. Mihai, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Staff Secretary*
M. Khalil, *Staff Secretary*
J.-M. Aitamurto
J. W. Blain
J. D. Busse
J. Caldwell
S. J. Carlton
J. L. Della Porta
S. Dormann
R. Garcia
J. Kleine
C. Ramirez Woo
L. Yang
P. D. Barnhart, *Alternate*
K. Chieu, *Alternate*
P. F. McDermott, *Alternate*
S. Millet, *Alternate*
S. Feng, *Contributing Member*
B. T. Irmscher, *Contributing Member*
J. Menard, *Contributing Member*
R. S. Williams, *Contributing Member*

CODE COORDINATION COMMITTEE

G. A. Burdeshaw, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	A. Shelton
K. L. Brinkman	B. Tubbs
K. Carr	D. A. Kalgren, <i>Alternate</i>
B. Horne	R. Larson, <i>Alternate</i>
J. Kleine	K. Paarlberg, <i>Alternate</i>
J. W. Koshak	G. W. Gibson, <i>Contributing Member</i>
M. A. Mueller	J. Xue, <i>Contributing Member</i>
V. P. Robibero	

DUMBWAITER AND ATD COMMITTEE

D. C. Witt, <i>Chair</i>	F. M. Hoch
J. B. Peskuski, <i>Vice Chair</i>	G. Ziebell
E. Dominguez, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	S. Reynolds, <i>Alternate</i>
R. A. Gregory	

EARTHQUAKE SAFETY COMMITTEE

A. Shelton, <i>Chair</i>	K. T. Wright, Sr.
W. Schadrack III, <i>Vice Chair</i>	T. D. Allen, <i>Alternate</i>
N. Gomez, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	R. Larson, <i>Alternate</i>
L. J. Costas	M. A. Mueller, <i>Alternate</i>
J. D. Henderson	J. A. Varona, <i>Alternate</i>
D. A. Kalgren	C. A. Cullum, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. Kleine	G. W. Gibson, <i>Contributing Member</i>
R. Lorenzo	E. N. Farsangi, <i>Contributing Member</i>
E. McClaskey	A. J. Schiff, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. L. Meyer	R. Taylor, <i>Contributing Member</i>
K. Michalik	
G. M. Rees	
W. C. Ribeiro	

EDITORIAL COMMITTEE

K. L. Brinkman, <i>Chair</i>	M. A. Mueller
G. A. Burdeshaw, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	J. R. Runyan
J. Filippone	D. M. Winkle, Jr.
D. McColl	

ELECTRICAL COMMITTEE

J. W. Blain, <i>Chair</i>	C. Ramirez Woo
J. P. Donnelly, <i>Vice Chair</i>	J. C. Ramos
E. Dominguez, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	V. P. Robibero
P. D. Barnhart	J. R. Valone
S. Beekman	K. Virk
B. Blackaby	L. B. Wells
R. C. Burch	L. Yang
J. D. Busse	B. C. Castillo, <i>Alternate</i>
J. Carlson	T. Evans, <i>Alternate</i>
S. Dormann	S. R. James, <i>Alternate</i>
M. Flanagan	R. Larson, <i>Alternate</i>
D. Griefenhagen	N. J. McCann, <i>Alternate</i>
W. J. Hartung	G. M. Rees, <i>Alternate</i>
J. D. Henderson	E. Rittenhouse, <i>Alternate</i>
G. N. Henry	C. Romero, <i>Alternate</i>
D. Holloway	R. Elias, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. Kleine	Y. C. Ho, <i>Contributing Member</i>
E. McClaskey	P. C. Hoppie, <i>Contributing Member</i>
P. F. McDermott	S. A. Khattak, <i>Contributing Member</i>
M. Mihai	J. W. Koshak, <i>Contributing Member</i>
D. Morris	C. Mason, <i>Contributing Member</i>
P. A. Novak	P. M. Puno, <i>Contributing Member</i>
P. Ojapalo	
A. L. Peck	
D. K. Prince	

ELEVATORS USED FOR CONSTRUCTION COMMITTEE

J. R. Freeman, <i>Chair</i>	K. Heling
G. A. Burdeshaw, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	R. S. Hultstrom
R. E. Baxter	J. A. Lowery, Jr.
D. S. Boucher	N. B. Martin
G. DeCola	H. Schaier
R. A. Gregory	S. Bornstein, <i>Alternate</i>

EMERGENCY OPERATIONS COMMITTEE

J. Carlson, *Chair*
J. D. Henderson, *Vice Chair*
E. Dominguez, *Staff Secretary*
D. S. Boucher
K. L. Brinkman
R. C. Burch
K. B. Camp
D. P. Finnegan
S. R. James
J. T. Josoff
C. Koenig
J. Latham
D. McColl
A. Morris
T. F. Norton
B. Peak
D. K. Prince
P. D. Rampf
V. R. Reisinger III
H. S. Russell
S. Sears
D. Smarte
J. W. Stockstill
M. Walls
D. C. Witt
T. P. Worthington
O. Y. Zhang
A. Goodwin, *Alternate*
J. Kleine, *Alternate*

B. M. Krishnan, *Alternate*
K. Moody, *Alternate*
G. M. Rees, *Alternate*
C. Romero, *Alternate*
M. T. Brierley, *Contributing Member*
M. W. Bunker, Jr., *Contributing Member*
J. Canty, *Contributing Member*
G. B. Cassini, *Contributing Member*
C. S. Dart, *Contributing Member*
D. Holmes, *Contributing Member*
J. W. Koshak, *Contributing Member*
J. A. Marinelli, *Contributing Member*
W. Ouyang, *Contributing Member*
L. F. Richardson, *Contributing Member*
R. J. Roux, *Contributing Member*
J. K. Schimeck, *Contributing Member*
M. H. Tevyaw, *Contributing Member*
S. Weiss-Ishai, *Contributing Member*
L. Zheyi, *Contributing Member*

ESCALATOR AND MOVING WALK COMMITTEE

P. R. Bothwell, *Chair*
K. G. Hamby, *Vice Chair*
R. Mohamed, *Staff Secretary*
C. Anayiotos
A. D. Clarke, Jr.
S. Dormann
C. P. Farnum
J. A. A. Fernandez Fidalgo
J. R. Freeman
B. Horne
S. Krase
T. F. Martel
N. J. McCann
D. McLellan
A. Morris
T. R. Nurnberg
E. Ryba
C. Shade
R. D. Shepherd
R. C. Shumate
K. J. Smith
P. Sorensen
J. L. Stabler
P. Velasquez, Jr.

M. P. Walsh
P. Welch
D. Winkelhake
L. Yang
D. Evans, *Alternate*
J. Gonzalez, *Alternate*
A. Gotthardt, *Alternate*
R. F. Johnston, Jr., *Alternate*
A. Kenny, *Alternate*
G. Levenson, *Alternate*
S. D. Martin, *Alternate*
M. A. Mueller, *Alternate*
T. Paats, *Alternate*
D. Perez, Jr., *Alternate*
E. J. Towson, *Alternate*
P. L. Edwards, *Contributing Member*
J. Filippone, *Contributing Member*
N. Martin, *Contributing Member*
H. Shi, *Contributing Member*
D. L. Turner, *Contributing Member*
J. Xue, *Contributing Member*

EXISTING INSTALLATIONS COMMITTEE

D. B. LaBrecque, *Chair*
J. W. Stockstill, *Vice Chair*
T. Waardenburg, *Vice Chair*
N. Gomez, *Staff Secretary*
L. Alley
R. Baxter
A. D. Clarke, Jr.
L. J. Costas
C. J. Duke
T. Edmonds
J. Filippone
J. R. Freeman
M. Gatje
A. T. Gazzaniga
R. A. Gregory
M. D. Janca
T. Jose
J. Koscielny
R. Kremer
P. McPartland
M. J. Mellon, Jr.
N. R. Mistry

M. D. Morand
K. P. Morse
N. Ortiz
R. A. Preston
S. A. Quinn
J. Rearick
P. Reid
V. P. Robibero
J. L. Stabler
L. M. Taylor
H. Thurmer
H. M. Vyas
M. P. Walsh
R. Henderson, *Alternate*
H. F. Wagner, Jr., *Alternate*
J. Bera, *Contributing Member*
J. H. Butler, *Contributing Member*
G. B. Cassini, *Contributing Member*
J. T. Herrity, *Contributing Member*
B. McCue, *Contributing Member*

GUIDE FOR EMERGENCY PERSONNEL COMMITTEE

R. S. Seymour, *Chair*
R. D. Shepherd, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Staff Secretary*
J. L. Borwey
J. Day
G. DeCola
E. Kuhns
D. McLellan
M. P. Mintle
D. Morgan

P. Pettener
M. H. Tevyaw
G. J. Zolnierczyk
Y. Cao, *Contributing Member*
D. P. Cook, *Contributing Member*
C. S. Dart, *Contributing Member*
D. L. Flint, *Contributing Member*
J. L. Meyer, *Contributing Member*
J. K. Schimeck, *Contributing Member*

HAND AND SIDEWALK ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

N. J. Montesano, *Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Staff Secretary*
V. G. Bahna
R. Carter
J. DeCola
J. Doyle

J. Duffy
G. Greenberg
E. L. Krull, Jr.
C. P. Robinson
G. West
B. Casas, *Alternate*

HOISTWAY COMMITTEE

D. S. Boucher, *Chair*
H. E. Peelle III, *Vice Chair*
E. Dominguez, *Staff Secretary*
L. J. Blaiotta, Jr.
K. L. Brinkman
R. C. Burch
K. B. Camp
J. Carlson
J. Forish
H. J. Gruszynski
M. Hougendobler
J. T. Josoff
S. Kalola
J. Latham
J. Lengacher
D. McColl
B. Peak
V. R. Reisinger III
S. P. Reynolds
H. S. Russell
S. Sears
R. D. Shepherd
H. Simpkins
D. Smarte
J. W. Stockstill
B. K. Umbaugh
D. C. Witt
O. Y. Zhang

L. M. Choi, *Alternate*
M. H. Davies, *Alternate*
T. Giannopoulos, *Alternate*
A. Goodwin, *Alternate*
F. Leo, *Alternate*
K. Moody, *Alternate*
K. Sherrick, *Alternate*
J. Cole, *Contributing Member*
A. Conkling, *Contributing Member*
G. W. Gibson, *Contributing Member*
J. L. Harding, *Contributing Member*
D. Holmes, *Contributing Member*
B. Horne, *Contributing Member*
J. Kleine, *Contributing Member*
J. W. Koshak, *Contributing Member*
J. A. Marinelli, *Contributing Member*
A. Morris, *Contributing Member*
D. K. Quinn, *Contributing Member*
M. H. Tevyaw, *Contributing Member*
S. Weiss-Ishai, *Contributing Member*

INSPECTIONS COMMITTEE

M. D. Morand, *Chair*
J. Runyan, *Vice Chair*
R. Mohamed, *Staff Secretary*
G. D. Barnes
R. E. Baxter
J. L. Borwey
D. S. Boucher
K. L. Brinkman
J. W. Coaker
S. Cowen
J. Day
G. DeCola
M. V. Farinola
J. Filippone
P. Hampton
H. Z. Hamze
K. Heling
J. T. Herrity
R. S. Hultstrom
N. Kavanagh
J. J. Knolmayer
N. B. Martin
D. McLellan
M. J. Mellon, Jr.
E. Ryba

R. S. Seymour
R. D. Shepherd
F. C. Slater
A. Smith
W. M. Snyder
P. Sorensen
J. L. Stabler
S. Swett
M. H. Tevyaw
A. D. Clarke, Jr., *Alternate*
C. M. Dodds, *Alternate*
E. Kuhns, *Alternate*
J. A. Maxwell, *Alternate*
J. S. Rearick, *Alternate*
A. A. Sattar, *Alternate*
R. D. Schloss, *Alternate*
C. Shade, *Alternate*
J. W. Stockstill, *Alternate*
C. Archer, *Contributing Member*
C. McDilda, *Contributing Member*
H. Ouyang, *Contributing Member*
J. D. Rosenberger, *Contributing Member*
J. Xue, *Contributing Member*

HYDRAULIC COMMITTEE

J. W. Stockstill, *Chair*
V. R. Reisinger III, *Vice Chair*
A. Carrion, *Staff Secretary*
D. M. Begue
S. A. Bruno
J. D. Henderson
R. Henderson
B. Horne
J. W. Koshak
J. A. Lowery, Jr.
L. Rigby
K. Shepherd
J. L. Shrum
H. Simpkins
C. Strawn

W. Strawn
L. M. Taylor
M. P. Walsh
J. Williams
S. Kalola, *Alternate*
R. Larson, *Alternate*
H. F. Wagner, Jr., *Alternate*
L. Bialy, *Contributing Member*
P. E. A. Burge, *Contributing Member*
A. Jahn, *Contributing Member*
M. G. Miller, *Contributing Member*
T. S. Mowrey, *Contributing Member*

LIMITED-USE/LIMITED-APPLICATION ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

R. J. Murphy, *Chair*
P. M. Isaac, *Vice Chair*
A. Carrion, *Staff Secretary*
K. L. Brinkman
P. Chance
P. Edwards
J. R. Freeman
K. L. Heyungs
F. M. Hoch
S. J. Mehalko
J. E. Newstrom

W. Richardson
F. C. Slater
R. B. Weber
D. M. Winkle, Jr.
G. Ziebel
S. A. Bruno, *Alternate*
H. H. Bippin, Jr., *Contributing Member*
J. P. Schumacher, *Contributing Member*
F. C. Slater, *Contributing Member*

INCLINED ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

J. T. Herrity, *Chair*
J. Filippone, *Vice Chair*
J. Rearick, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Staff Secretary*
R. Boseley
M. J. Botzet
C. Buckley
J. R. Carrick

L. J. Costas
R. A. Gregory
D. Griefenhagen
L. MacLachlan
W. MacLachlan
R. J. Murphy
J. L. Stabler
H. Van Den Ende, *Alternate*

MAINTENANCE, REPAIR, AND REPLACEMENT COMMITTEE

D. B. LaBrecque, *Chair*
P. S. Rosenberg, *Vice Chair*
J. W. Stockstill, *Vice Chair*
N. Gomez, *Staff Secretary*
L. Alley
R. E. Baxter
C. J. Duke
T. Edmonds
M. V. Farinola
J. Filippone
J. R. Freeman
S. P. Greene
R. A. Gregory
M. D. Janca
T. Jose
R. Kremer
Q. Matthews
P. McPartland
M. J. Mellon, Jr.
N. R. Mistry
M. D. Morand
K. P. Morse
N. Ortiz
R. A. Preston
J. S. Rearick
P. Reid
V. P. Robibero
J. L. Stabler
C. Strawn

L. M. Taylor
H. Thurmer
H. M. Vyas
T. Waardenburg
M. P. Walsh
E. A. White
A. D. Clarke, Jr., *Alternate*
P. Hampton, *Alternate*
R. Henderson, *Alternate*
R. D. Schloss, *Alternate*
K. P. Sullivan, *Alternate*
H. F. Wagner, Jr., *Alternate*
G. B. Cassini, *Contributing Member*
J. J. DeLorenzi, *Contributing Member*
J. T. Herrity, *Contributing Member*
A. S. Hopkirk, *Contributing Member*
T. Jiang, *Contributing Member*
J. J. Knolmayer, *Contributing Member*
J. W. Koshak, *Contributing Member*
D. McColl, *Contributing Member*
B. McCue, *Contributing Member*
C. McDilda, *Contributing Member*
J. L. Meyer, *Contributing Member*

MINE ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

N. B. Martin, *Chair*
T. D. Barkand, *Vice Chair*
N. Gomez, *Staff Secretary*
R. L. Adamson
R. M. Bates

A. R. Brower
L. M. Taylor
J. Rose, *Contributing Member*
M. P. Snyder, *Contributing Member*

NEW TECHNOLOGY COMMITTEE

D. McColl, *Chair*
R. E. Kaspersma, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Staff Secretary*
S. Bornstein
D. S. Boucher
K. L. Brinkman
D. Bruce
T. M. Chambers
J. W. Coaker
S. Cowen
A. M. Culver
T. Evans
G. W. Gibson
K. Heling
J. D. Henderson
J. T. Herrity
D. A. Kalgren
M. Khalil
J. Kleine
J. W. Koshak
K. McGettigan
J. L. Meyer

M. Mihai
D. Morgan
M. Pedram
J. C. Ramos
J. S. Rearick
V. P. Robibero
L. V. Schoenmaker
S. Steiner
D. Vinette
L. Yang
P. D. Barnhart, *Alternate*
R. E. Baxter, *Alternate*
M. Chan, *Alternate*
C. A. Herrity, *Alternate*
B. Horne, *Alternate*
C. Mason, *Alternate*
M. Walls, *Alternate*
L. Bialy, *Contributing Member*
J. Menard, *Contributing Member*
H. Ruan, *Contributing Member*
H. Wu, *Contributing Member*

MARINE ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

M. R. Tilyou, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Staff Secretary*
D. Brady
E. J. Crawford

E. P. Graff
T. J. Ingram
R. E. Spranger
R. Wagner

OUTSIDE EMERGENCY ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

V. P. Robibero, *Chair*
J. K. O'Donnell
H. E. Peelle III
J. R. Runyan
J. Shimshoni

R. F. Fahy, *Contributing Member*
D. M. Stanlaske, *Contributing Member*
G. Xu, *Contributing Member*

MECHANICAL DESIGN COMMITTEE

B. Horne, *Chair*
M. P. Lamb, *Vice Chair*
N. Gomez, *Staff Secretary*
E. V. Baker
D. L. Barker
F. A. Belio, Jr.
S. Conrey
A. M. Culver
P. Dreps
J. Duvall
J. Forish
A. Ghazanchaei
G. W. Gibson
N. Imbimbo
P. M. Isaac
D. A. Kalgren
R. E. Kaspersma
R. J. Koeppe, Jr.
J. W. Koshak
R. Kremer
S. Lahmers
E. McClaskey

D. Miller
M. Rhiner
C. Shade
A. Shelton
H. Simpkins
B. K. Umbaugh
D. S. Boucher, *Alternate*
S. Chiripko, *Alternate*
T. J. Gray, *Alternate*
B. A. Johnson, *Alternate*
M. S. Johnson, *Alternate*
G. A. Wasik, *Alternate*
L. Bialy, *Contributing Member*
R. E. Creak, *Contributing Member*
J. Filippone, *Contributing Member*
R. K. Leckman, *Contributing Member*
D. P. Orlos, *Contributing Member*
W. Ouyang, *Contributing Member*
J. L. Stabler, *Contributing Member*
H. Wu, *Contributing Member*

QUALIFICATION OF ELEVATOR INSPECTORS (QEI) COMMITTEE

D. McLellan, <i>Chair</i>	P. Pettener
M. D. Morand, <i>Vice Chair</i>	E. R. Rogers
G. A. Burdeshaw, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	J. R. Runyan
E. V. Baker	R. S. Seymour
R. E. Baxter	R. D. Shepherd
J. L. Borwey	W. M. Snyder
K. L. Brinkman	P. Sorenson
J. R. Brooks	M. H. Tevyaw
J. W. Coaker	D. J. Winslow
S. Cowen	G. J. Zolnierczyk
J. Day	C. M. Dodds, <i>Alternate</i>
G. DeCola	D. Morgan, <i>Alternate</i>
D. Edwards	C. Shade, <i>Alternate</i>
P. Hampton	J. W. Stockstill, <i>Alternate</i>
J. T. Herrity	D. L. Flint, <i>Contributing Member</i>
N. Kavanagh	G. W. Gibson, <i>Contributing Member</i>
E. Kuhns	F. Liang, <i>Contributing Member</i>
R. Larson	H. Ouyang, <i>Contributing Member</i>
N. B. Martin	V. P. Robibero, <i>Contributing Member</i>
C. McDilda	
M. J. Mellon, Jr.	
M. P. Mintle	

RACK-AND-PINION AND SPECIAL PURPOSE PERSONNEL ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

S. Harris, <i>Chair</i>	A. Harris
D. Higginbotham, <i>Vice Chair</i>	S. E. Johnson
G. A. Burdeshaw, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	W. Kubik
T. A. Gross, <i>Secretary</i>	M. D. Morand
T. D. Barkand	K. M. Harrison, <i>Contributing Member</i>
G. A. Butler	R. E. Kaspersma, <i>Contributing Member</i>
K. B. Camp	
C. W. Cartwright II	
M. Doenges	

RESIDENCE ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

W. Richardson, <i>Chair</i>	D. M. Winkle, Jr.
P. Chance, <i>Vice Chair</i>	G. Ziebell
A. Carrion, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	S. A. Bruno, <i>Alternate</i>
R. D. Baxter	H. Van Den Ende, <i>Alternate</i>
M. B. Blomfield	K. L. Brinkman, <i>Contributing Member</i>
R. Boseley	L. Katz, <i>Contributing Member</i>
P. Edwards	T. C. Kingsley, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. R. Freeman	J. C. Lund, <i>Contributing Member</i>
K. L. Heyungs	M. W. McKinley, <i>Contributing Member</i>
F. M. Hoch	W. M. McKinley, <i>Contributing Member</i>
C. S. Jones	C. D. Robinson, <i>Contributing Member</i>
L. Marley	J. P. Schumacher, <i>Contributing Member</i>
S. J. Mehalko	F. C. Slater, <i>Contributing Member</i>
R. J. Murphy	A. Wedderburn, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. E. Newstrom	
F. Panzarino	
W. P. Rockhold	
F. Slater	
K. Virk	
C. A. Warner	
R. B. Weber	

WIND TURBINE TOWER ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

L. Metzinger, <i>Chair</i>	D. Swett, <i>Alternate</i>
J. W. Koshak, <i>Vice Chair</i>	P. S. Grewal, <i>Contributing Member</i>
R. Mohamed, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	R. J. Gromek, <i>Contributing Member</i>
V. Ayres	J. T. Herrity, <i>Contributing Member</i>
C. Barrett	R. E. Kaspersma, <i>Contributing Member</i>
M. Khalil	K. Matharu, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. D. Koch	J. Menard, <i>Contributing Member</i>
G. S. Pandher	S. W. Weaver, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. S. Rearick	
P. D. Smith	
C. Strawn	
S. Swett	
G. Vanderploeg	
L. Yang	
C. E. Cuenin, <i>Alternate</i>	

U.S. TAG TO TC178 (INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS COMMITTEE)

H. E. Peelle III, <i>Chair</i>	B. Blackaby, <i>Contributing Member</i>
V. P. Robibero, <i>Vice Chair</i>	S. Bornstein, <i>Contributing Member</i>
G. A. Burdeshaw, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	D. S. Boucher, <i>Contributing Member</i>
G. Antona	T. Derwinski, <i>Contributing Member</i>
E. V. Baker	M. V. Farinola, <i>Contributing Member</i>
F. A. Belio, Jr.	J. Filippone, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. L. Borwey	E. J. Hopp, <i>Contributing Member</i>
K. L. Brinkman	B. Horne, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. W. Coaker	J. W. Koshak, <i>Contributing Member</i>
G. W. Gibson	V. Lakamraju, <i>Contributing Member</i>
P. Hampton	R. Lorenzo, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. T. Herrity	D. McColl, <i>Contributing Member</i>
D. A. Kalgren	D. McKee, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. Kleine	S. Parillo, <i>Contributing Member</i>
E. McClaskey	J. Popp, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. S. Rearick	
W. M. Snyder	
J. D. Henderson, <i>Alternate</i>	
C. A. Herrity, <i>Alternate</i>	
P. D. Barnhart, <i>Contributing Member</i>	
L. Bialy, <i>Contributing Member</i>	

AD HOC COMMITTEE ON DOOR PROTECTION

J. Kleine, <i>Chair</i>	A. Shupe
N. Gomez, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	J. W. Stockstill
R. C. Burch	C. Walls
J. Carlson	D. A. Kalgren, <i>Alternate</i>
M. H. Davies	G. W. Gibson, <i>Contributing Member</i>
J. W. Koshak	A. Wu, <i>Contributing Member</i>
R. Kremer	
J. F. O'Laughlin	

INTEREST REVIEW GROUP

G. A. Burdeshaw, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	T. Isaacs
J. P. Andrew	Q. JianXiong
D. M. Begue	M. Krstanoski
R. J. Blatz	W. R. Larsen
M. T. Brierley	D. Mason
B. B. Calhoun	E. McClaskey
J. A. Caluori	J. L. Meyer
M. A. Chavez	B. Peyton
R. F. Dieter	P. M. Puno
D. L. Harris	J. R. Runyan
R. Howkins	J. L. Stabler
R. S. Hultstrom	L. M. Taylor
J. M. Imgarten	D. L. Turner
J. Inglis	K. Virk

CHINA INTERNATIONAL WORKING GROUP (IWG)

G. Shen, <i>Chair</i>	Y. Shen
G. Liang, <i>Vice Chair</i>	H. Shi
Y. Xia, <i>Vice Chair</i>	X. Shi
G. A. Burdeshaw, <i>Staff Secretary</i>	M. Wang
Q. JianXiong, <i>Secretary</i>	X. Wang
Q. Dai	A. Wen
Z. Li	X. Wu
Y. Liang	L. Yueyang
G. Lu	H. Zhang
L. Ning	X. Zhang
L. Peng	

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME A17.1 CSA B44 2022

CSA B44 TECHNICAL COMMITTEE ON THE ELEVATOR SAFETY CODE

D. McColl, *Chair*, Otis Canada, Inc., Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
C. S. Cowen, *Vice Chair*, TK Elevator (Canada), Ltd., Toronto, Ontario, Canada
G. Lee, *Project Manager*, CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
C. Ayling, PCL Constructors Canada, Inc., Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
G. Bastien, Régie du Bâtiment du Québec, Montréal, Québec, Canada
S. Bornstein, KONE Canada, Inc., Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
D. Bruce, Alberta Municipal Affairs, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada
K. Cheong, MKC Engineering Corp., Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada
K. Duncan, Inspection and Technical Services, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada
P. Fraser, Government of Newfoundland and Labrador/Service NL, Mount Pearl, Newfoundland and Labrador, Canada
A. Hopkirk, Trident Elevator Co., Ltd., Scarborough, Ontario, Canada
R. Isabelle, KJA Consultants, Inc., Toronto, Ontario, Canada
D. Laguerre, Schindler Elevator Corp., Toronto, Ontario, Canada
E. MacArthur, OTIS Canada, Inc.
S. MacArthur, Department of Community and Cultural Affairs and Labour, Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island, Canada
R. Marsiglio, H. H. Angus & Associates, Ltd., Toronto, Ontario, Canada
P. McClare, Nova Scotia Department of Labour and Advanced Education, Dartmouth, Nova Scotia, Canada
E. McClaskey, International Union of Elevator Constructors, Pleasant Hill, California, USA
K. McGettigan, Elevator Industry Work Preservation Fund, Effingham, New Hampshire, USA
C. McIntyre, Canadian Elevator Industry Educational Program, Pickering, Ontario, Canada
D. McLellan, Technical Standards & Safety Authority, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
T. Miller, Priestman Neilson and Associates, Ltd., Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
R. Murphy, Garaventa Canada, Ltd., Surrey, British Columbia, Canada
M. Pedram, Modern Elevator Innovations, Inc., Burlington, Ontario, Canada
H. Peelle, The Peelle Co., Ltd., Brampton, Ontario, Canada
B. Potvin, National Research Council Canada, Canadian Codes Centre, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
E. Ryba, Public Services and Procurement Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
R. Santos, Technical Safety Authority of Saskatchewan, Regina, Saskatchewan, Canada
K. Steeves, Province of New Brunswick Department of Public Safety, Moncton, New Brunswick, Canada

T. Thomas, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, Northwest Territories, Canada
E. Towson, Technical Safety BC, West Kelowna, British Columbia, Canada
B. Virk, UT Elevator, Inc., Toronto, Ontario, Canada
M. Wu, Société de Transport de Montréal, Montréal, Québec, Canada

Associate Members

S. Beekman, Les Produits Fraco Ltée, Cocoa, Florida, USA
L. Bialy, Louis Bialy and Associates, LLC, San Rafael, California, USA
M. Brierley, Coldwater, Ontario, Canada
K. Brinkman, National Elevator Industry, Inc., Eureka, Illinois, USA
M. Do Couto, Sigma Elevating, Ltd., Vaughan, Ontario, Canada
T. Evans, Underwriters Laboratories of Canada, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
A. Ghazanchaei, Otis Canada, Inc., Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
G. Gibson, George W. Gibson & Associates, Inc., Sedona, Arizona, USA
S. Gurumurthy, KONE Canada, Inc., Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
A. Irving, AEDARSA, Calgary, Alberta, Canada
F. Kassem, TK Elevator (Canada), Ltd., Dorval, Québec, Canada
C. Kelesis, Toronto Transit Commission, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
J. Koshak, Elevator Safety Solutions, LLC, Collierville, Tennessee, USA
R. Kremer, Technical Standards & Safety Authority, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
D. Lenardis, Public Service Procurement Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
A. McGregor, Rooney, Irving & Associates, Ltd., Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
M. Mihai, Technical Standards & Safety Authority, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
H. Nuri, Toronto Transit Commission, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
S. Palko, Technical Safety Authority of Saskatchewan, Regina, Saskatchewan, Canada
A. Reistetter, National Elevator & Escalator Association, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
S. Reynolds, The Peelle Co., Ltd., Brampton, Ontario, Canada
R. Scharfe, Pembroke, Ontario, Canada
P. Sorenson, Technical Safety BC, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada
M. Tevyaw, MHT Codes & Consulting Specialists, Burlington, Ontario, Canada
J. Virk, Unitech Elevator Co., Pickering, Ontario, Canada
K. Virk, UT Elevator, Inc., Toronto, Ontario, Canada
L. Yang, CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
M. Zingarelli, MAD Elevator, Inc., Mississauga, Ontario, Canada

CORRESPONDENCE WITH THE A17 COMMITTEE

General. ASME codes and standards are developed and maintained by committees with the intent to represent the consensus of concerned interests. Users of ASME codes and standards may correspond with the committees to propose revisions or cases, report errata, or request interpretations. Correspondence for this Code should be sent to the staff secretary noted on the committee's web page, accessible at <https://go.asme.org/A17committee>.

Revisions and Errata. The committee processes revisions to this Code on a continuous basis to incorporate changes that appear necessary or desirable as demonstrated by the experience gained from the application of the Code. Approved revisions will be published in the next edition of the Code.

In addition, the committee may post errata on the committee web page. Errata become effective on the date posted. Users can register on the committee web page to receive e-mail notifications of posted errata.

This Code is always open for comment, and the committee welcomes proposals for revisions. Such proposals should be as specific as possible, citing the paragraph number(s), the proposed wording, and a detailed description of the reasons for the proposal, including any pertinent background information and supporting documentation.

Cases

(a) The most common applications for cases are

- (1) to permit early implementation of a revision based on an urgent need
- (2) to provide alternative requirements
- (3) to allow users to gain experience with alternative or potential additional requirements prior to incorporation

directly into the Code

- (4) to permit the use of a new material or process

(b) Users are cautioned that not all jurisdictions or owners automatically accept cases. Cases are not to be considered as approving, recommending, certifying, or endorsing any proprietary or specific design, or as limiting in any way the freedom of manufacturers, constructors, or owners to choose any method of design or any form of construction that conforms to the Code.

(c) A proposed case shall be written as a question and reply in the same format as existing cases. The proposal shall also include the following information:

- (1) a statement of need and background information
- (2) the urgency of the case (e.g., the case concerns a project that is underway or imminent)
- (3) the Code and the paragraph, figure, or table number(s)
- (4) the edition(s) of the Code to which the proposed case applies

(d) A case is effective for use when the public review process has been completed and it is approved by the cognizant supervisory board. Approved cases are posted on the committee web page.

Interpretations. Upon request, the committee will issue an interpretation of any requirement of this Code. An interpretation can be issued only in response to a request submitted through the online Interpretation Submittal Form at <http://go.asme.org/InterpretationRequest>. Upon submitting the form, the inquirer will receive an automatic e-mail confirming receipt.

ASME does not act as a consultant for specific engineering problems or for the general application or understanding of the Code requirements. If, based on the information submitted, it is the opinion of the committee that the inquirer should seek assistance, the request will be returned with the recommendation that such assistance be obtained. Inquirers can track the status of their requests at <http://go.asme.org/Interpretations>.

ASME procedures provide for reconsideration of any interpretation when or if additional information that might affect an interpretation is available. Further, persons aggrieved by an interpretation may appeal to the cognizant ASME committee or subcommittee. ASME does not "approve," "certify," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, proprietary device, or activity.

Interpretations are published in the ASME Interpretations Database at <http://go.asme.org/Interpretations> as they are issued.

Committee Meetings. The A17 Standards Committee regularly holds meetings that are open to the public. Persons wishing to attend any meeting should contact the secretary of the committee. Information on future committee meetings can be found on the committee web page at <https://go.asme.org/A17committee>.

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME A17.1 CSA B44 2022

ASME PREFACE

GENERAL

This Code is one of the numerous codes and standards developed and published by The American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) under the general auspices of the American National Standards Institute, Inc. (ANSI).

The Code is intended to serve as the basis for the design, construction, installation, operation, testing, inspection, maintenance, alteration, and repair of elevators, dumb-waiters, escalators, moving walks, and material lifts.

Safety codes and standards are intended to enhance public health and safety. Revisions result from committee consideration of factors such as technological advances, new data, and changing environmental and industry needs. Revisions do not imply that previous editions were inadequate.

This Code applies to new installations only, except [Part 1](#) and [Sections 5.10, 8.1, and 8.6](#) through [8.12](#), which apply to both new and existing installations. Also, see ASME A17.3, Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators, for further requirements.

The following conditions are not addressed in this Code:

- (a) assignment of the responsibility for compliance to any particular party.
- (b) establishment of a frequency for periodic inspections and tests. See [Nonmandatory Appendix N](#) for recommended inspections and test intervals.
- (c) assignment of responsibility for persons authorized to make and witness inspections and tests.

APPLICATION OF REQUIREMENTS TO NEW TECHNOLOGY

With the advent of new technologies, materials, and processes in the mechanical, structural, electronic, and optic fields, and the analytical capabilities now available, the flexibility to introduce products into the marketplace using these technical developments is desirable. Previous editions of ASME A17.1 had long-standing provisions, in [Section 1.2](#), that suggested that authorities having jurisdiction should recognize safety equivalent to that required by the Codes. This edition of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 recognizes that ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 provides a structured method for establishing the safety of designs and products and that compliance with ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 is equivalent to compliance with the requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

FORM AND ARRANGEMENT

This Code consists of Parts and Sections, each covering a specific subject so as to facilitate reference to the requirements.

The Foreword, Preface, Notes, and Appendices that are included in this Code are not part of this American National Standard. They are advisory in nature and are intended for clarification only.

In this edition, the revisions that are appearing for the first time are identified by **(19)**. Where editorial changes have been made, they are identified by **(ED)**. See also the Summary of Changes.

METRIC (SI) UNITS

This edition of the Code uses hard metric (SI) units wherever practical. The acceptable equivalent imperial units are shown in parentheses. Information on the usage of SI units and conversion to imperial units is contained in IEEE/ASTM SI 10-2016, American National Standard for Metric Practice; ASME Guide SI-1, Orientation and Guide for Use of SI (Metric) Units; or CAN/CSA-Z234.1, Canadian Metric Practice Guide.

Tables related to speed and load use the hard metric and hard imperial units in common practice, even though they are not exactly equivalent (e.g., see [Table 2.22.4.1](#), Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes). The tabular values have been derived using [8.2.1](#) formulas and the metric and imperial values for buffer strokes, safety stopping distances, etc., are therefore not equivalent.

ASME ELEVATOR PUBLICATIONS

The following ASME publications are of special interest to users of this Code. For prices and availability, contact:

ASME
150 Clove Road, 6th Floor
Little Falls, NJ 07424-2138
Tel: 800-843-2763
Fax: 973-882-1717
E-mail: customercare@asme.org
ASME website: www.asme.org/shop

Abbreviations Used in This Code

Abbreviation	Unit	Abbreviation	Unit
A	ampere	lbf	pound (force)
°C	degree Celsius	lx	lux
deg	degree (angle)	m	meter
°F	degree Fahrenheit	m ²	square meter
fc	footcandle	m ³	cubic meter
ft	foot	mA	milliampere
ft ²	square foot	mm	millimeter
ft ³	cubic foot	mm ²	square millimeter
ft/min	foot per minute	mm ³	cubic millimeter
ft/s	foot per second	MPa	megapascal
ft/s ²	foot per second per second	m/s	meter per second
h	hour	m/s ²	meter per second per second
Hz	hertz	N	newton
in.	inch	psi	pound per square inch
in. ²	square inch	s	second
in. ³	cubic inch	SIL	safety integrity level
kg	kilogram	V	volt
kPa	kilopascal	yr	year
lb	pound (mass)		

ASME A17.2, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks. This Guide gives detailed procedures for the inspection and testing of elevators, escalators, and moving walks required to conform to the Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, ASA A17.1-1955 and later editions and the Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators, ASME A17.3. Subsections are arranged to focus on routine and periodic inspection requirements, as well as acceptance criteria.

ASME A17.3, Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators. This Code covers retroactive requirements for existing elevators and escalators. The purpose of this Code is to establish minimum requirements that will provide a reasonable degree of safety for the general public. While many of these requirements will also increase the degree of safety for the elevator mechanic and inspector, this area has not been specifically addressed at this time.

ASME A17.4, Guide for Emergency Personnel. This guide for emergency personnel (fire, police, etc.), building owners, lessees, and building operating managers explains the proper procedures to be used for the safe removal of passengers from stalled cars.

CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5, Elevator and Escalator Electrical Equipment. This Code contains requirements for obtaining, labeling, and listing electrical equipment for elevators, escalators, moving walks, dumbwaiters, material lifts, platform lifts, and stairway lifts.

ASME A17.6, Standard for Elevator Suspension, Compensation, and Governor Systems. This Standard covers the means and members of suspension, compensation, and governor systems for elevators within the scope of ASME A17.1/CSA B44. This Standard includes the material properties, design, testing, inspection, and replacement criteria for these means. It includes the requirements for steel wire rope, aramid fiber rope, and noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension members, and provides direction for future constructions as new technology develops.

ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7, Performance-Based Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators. This American National Standard performance-based safety code covers the design, construction, installation, operation, testing, maintenance, alteration, and repair of elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, moving walks, and material lifts.

ASME A17.8/CSA B44.8, Safety Code for Wind Turbine Tower Elevators. This American National Standard covers elevators permanently installed in a wind tower to provide vertical transportation of authorized personnel and their tools and equipment only.

Published Interpretations. Interpretations of the various ASME A17 standards are issued in real time in ASME's Interpretation Database at <http://go.asme.org/Interpretations>. Historical Code interpretations may also be found in the database.

Interpretations of ASME A17.1 and ASME A17.2 approved by the A17 Committee from June 14, 1972, through June 1979 were published in a separate book in 1980.

Starting with the 1981 edition of the Code, and ending with the 2016 edition, interpretations were published with each new edition and supplement of the applicable standard. A compilation of Interpretations Nos. 2–13 (June 1979–May 1989) has also been published by ASME.

ASME A17.1/CSA B44 Handbook. This Handbook augments the ASME A17.1/CSA B44 Code with commentary, diagrams, and illustrations that are intended to explain the requirements of the ASME A17.1/CSA B44 Code.

The commentary contained in the Handbook is the opinion of the author and has not been approved by the A17 Committee or the B44 Technical Committee.

ASME QEI-1, Standard for the Qualification of Elevator Inspectors. This Standard covers requirements for the qualification and duties of inspectors and inspection supervisors engaged in the inspection and testing of equipment within the scope of the ASME A17.1/CSA B44 Code.

ASME A18.1, Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts. This safety Standard covers the design, construction, installation, operation, inspection, testing, maintenance, and repair of inclined stairway chairlifts and inclined and vertical platform lifts intended for transportation of a mobility-impaired person only.

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 2022

CSA PREFACE

This is the sixth edition of ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*. It supersedes the previous editions of ASME A17.1/CSA B44, published in 2019, 2016, 2013, 2010, and 2007; and the previous editions of CSA B44, published in 2004, 2000, 1994, 1990, 1985, 1975, 1971, 1966, 1960, and 1938.

This Code is the result of a joint effort by the CSA B44 Technical Committee on the Elevator Safety Code and the ASME A17 Committee on Elevators and Escalators to harmonize the provisions of CSA B44 and ASME A17.1. This edition of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 consists of the complete ASME A17.1 Code, with additional requirements applicable only in Canadian jurisdictions. These Canadian requirements are prefaced in the body of the Code by the following: "In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC ...".

CSA B44 was originally developed to facilitate the implementation of uniform legislation across Canada and to replace the existing legislation, which had proved inadequate for prevailing elevator practices. The primary purpose of the Code is to establish minimum requirements, suitable for adoption by regulatory authorities throughout Canada, for the design, installation, and maintenance of elevators, escalators, dumbwaiters, moving walks, and material lifts. It is also intended as a standard reference for architects, consulting engineers, elevator manufacturers, and building owners.

This Code was reviewed for use in Canada by the CSA B44 Technical Committee on the Elevator Safety Code under the jurisdiction of the CSA Strategic Steering Committee on Mechanical Industrial Equipment Safety.

NOTES:

- (1) Use of the singular does not exclude the plural (and vice versa) when the sense allows.
- (2) Although the intended primary application of this Standard is stated in its Scope, it is important to note that it remains the responsibility of the users of the Standard to judge its suitability for their particular purpose.
- (3) This Standard was developed by consensus, which is defined by *CSA Policy governing standardization — Code of good practice for standardization* as "substantial agreement. Consensus implies much more than a simple majority, but not necessarily unanimity". It is consistent with this definition that a member may be included in the Technical Committee list and yet not be in full agreement with all clauses of this Standard.

(4) To submit a request for interpretation of this Standard, please send the following information to inquiries@csagroup.org and include "Request for interpretation" in the subject line:

- (a) define the problem, making reference to the specific clause, and, where appropriate, include an illustrative sketch;
- (b) provide an explanation of circumstances surrounding the actual field condition; and
- (c) where possible, phrase the request in such a way that a specific "yes" or "no" answer will address the issue.

Committee interpretations are processed in accordance with the *CSA Directives and guidelines governing standardization* and are available on the *Current Standards Activities* page at <https://standardsactivities.csagroup.org/>.

(5) This Standard is subject to review within five years from the date of publication. Suggestions for its improvement will be referred to the appropriate committee. To submit a proposal for change, please send the following information to inquiries@csagroup.org and include "Proposal for change" in the subject line:

- (a) Standard designation (number);
- (b) relevant clause, table, and/or figure number;
- (c) wording of the proposed change; and
- (d) rationale for the change.

ASME A17.1-2022/CSA B44:22

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

Following approval by the ASME A17 Committee and ASME, and after public review, ASME A17.1-2022/CSA B44:22 was approved by the American National Standards Institute on December 19, 2022. It was issued on September 20, 2023, and is effective as of March 20, 2024.

ASME A17.1-2022/CSA B44:22 includes the following changes, identified by a margin note, **(22)**.

Page	Location	Change
xi	ASME Foreword	Revised
xxiv	Correspondence With the A17 Committee	Added
xxvi	ASME Preface	Revised
2	Section 1.3	(1) Definitions of <i>flood elevation</i> ; <i>power, emergency or standby</i> ; <i>power, main line</i> ; <i>power, normal building</i> ; <i>power supply, auxiliary</i> ; <i>remote interaction operation (RIO)</i> ; <i>security level rated</i> ; <i>test enable device (TED)</i> ; <i>test enable operation</i> ; and <i>test initiating means</i> added (2) Definitions of <i>listed/certified</i> and <i>software system failure</i> revised (3) In definition of <i>dispatching device, elevator automatic</i> , “or” added to subpara. (a) by errata
21	2.1.1.5	Revised
22	2.1.7	Added
23	2.2.4.2	Revised
23	2.2.4.2.2	Revised
23	2.2.4.2.5	Revised
23	2.2.4.2.7	Added and subsequent paragraphs redesignated
23	2.2.4.2.8	Former 2.2.4.2.7 revised
25	2.2.9	Added
26	2.4.2	Revised
26	2.4.2.2	(1) Revised (2) Former Table 2.4.2.2 redesignated as Table 8.6.3.12.1
34	2.7.6.3	Note added
35	2.7.6.4.1	Last paragraph revised
35	2.7.6.4.3	Subparagraph (a) revised
37	2.8.1	Revised
38	2.8.3.3	(1) Revised (2) Note added
38	2.8.3.3.2	First sentence and subpara. (c) revised
39	2.8.3.3.3	Revised
39	2.8.7	Added
45	2.11.7.2.2	Revised

<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
48	2.11.11.9	Deleted and designator reserved for future use
50	2.11.15.1	Revised
50	2.11.15.2	(1) Revised (2) In subpara. (a), “or” added by errata
50	2.11.15.3	Revised
50	2.11.16	Revised
51	2.11.17	Revised
51	2.11.18	Revised
52	2.12.2.4.6	In subpara. (d)(1), “or” added by errata
55	2.12.7.2.4	In first sentence and subpara. (a), respectively, “either” and “or” added by errata
55	2.12.7.3.3	In subpara. (b)(1)(-b), “or” added by errata
61	2.13.4.2.1	Subparagraph (c) revised
61	2.13.5	Third sentence and Note added
61	2.13.5.2	Subparagraph (a)(2)(-b) revised
62	2.13.5.3	Revised
62	2.13.5.3.1	Revised
62	2.13.5.4	Revised
62	2.13.5.5	Revised
63	2.14.1.2.4	In subpara. (a), “or” added by errata
65	2.14.1.9.1	Subparagraph (g) added
70	2.14.5.7.4	Subparagraphs (b)(1), (b)(2), and (b)(2)(-b) revised
70	2.14.5.9.2	Subparagraph (b) revised
72	2.14.7.1.3	Subparagraphs (d) and (e) revised
74	2.15.6.4	Revised
83	2.17.12.1	Revised
87	2.19.1.1	Subparagraphs (a) and (c) revised
88	2.19.2.1	Subparagraph (c) revised
89	2.19.3.3	Revised
92	2.20.8	Revised in its entirety
102	2.22.4.8	Revised
114	2.24.3	Revised
115	2.24.8.3	First sentence revised
115	2.24.8.5	Revised
115	2.24.8.7	Added
118	2.25.4.1.1	In subpara. (a), “or” added by errata
119	2.25.4.2.2	In subpara. (b)(1)(-b), “or” added by errata
121	2.26.1.4.2	Subparagraph (b) revised
122	2.26.1.5.1	In subpara. (a), “or” added by errata
123	2.26.1.7.1	Subparagraphs (o) through (s) added
124	2.26.1.7.2	Second sentence added
124	2.26.2	Revised
126	2.26.2.38	Revised
126	2.26.4.2	Revised

<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
126	2.26.4.3	Revised
126	2.26.4.3.1	Revised
128	Table 2.26.4.3.2	2.26.2.38 and 2.26.14.1 added
127	2.26.4.5	Revised
127	2.26.5	Revised in its entirety
129	2.26.7	Revised
130	2.26.9.3.1	(1) Subparagraph (d) revised (2) Subparagraph (f) added
131	2.26.9.5.1	In subpara. (a)(1), “or” added by errata
131	2.26.9.6.1	In subpara. (a)(1), “or” added by errata
132	2.26.11	First sentence revised
132	2.26.12.3	Note revised
132	2.26.13	Added
134	2.26.14	Added
136	2.27.1.1.3	Revised
137	2.27.1.1.4	(1) Subparagraph (c) revised (2) Subparagraph (g) added
138	2.27.2	Revised in its entirety
140	2.27.3	Former note revised and incorporated into main text
140	2.27.3.1.1	Subparagraph (c) revised
140	2.27.3.1.6	(1) First sentence and subpara. (n) revised
142	2.27.3.2.1	(1) Subparagraph (c) revised (2) Note (2) added
142	2.27.3.2.2	(1) Subparagraph (c) revised (2) Note (3) added
143	2.27.3.2.6	Last paragraph added
143	2.27.3.3.1	Subparagraphs (i) and (n) revised
144	2.27.3.3.2	Last paragraph revised
145	2.27.3.3.4	Second paragraph revised
145	2.27.3.3.5	Revised
146	2.27.3.3.9	Added
146	2.27.3.4	Revised
147	2.27.4.2	Subparagraph (d) revised
148	2.27.6	Revised
149	2.27.10	Introductory paragraph and Note added
149	2.27.10.1	Revised and Note added
152	2.27.11.2.2	Subparagraph (c) revised
153	2.27.11.6.1	Note to subpara. (a) revised
153	2.27.11.6.2	Last paragraph revised
154	2.27.12	Added
155	2.27.13	Added
155	2.28.1	(1) Subparagraph (i) revised (2) Subparagraphs (l), (m), and (n) added
160	3.7.1	Note added

<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
166	3.18.4.1	Last sentence revised
167	3.19.2.7	In first sentence and subpara. (a), respectively, “either” and “or” added by errata
170	3.22.1.2.1	Revised
171	3.24.3.3	Revised
172	3.26.1	Revised
173	3.26.3.1.4	Subparagraph (a) revised
174	3.26.10	Revised
174	3.26.10.1	First sentence revised
175	3.26.11.1	Subparagraphs (m) through (r) added
175	3.26.11.2	Second sentence added
175	3.26.12	Added
175	Section 3.27	Revised in its entirety
176	3.28.1	Subparagraph (p) added
185	4.1.26.7	Title revised
187	4.2.11.1	In subpara. (a), “or” added by errata
187	4.2.15.11	Revised
198	5.1.21.1	Last sentence revised
202	5.2.1.20	Revised in its entirety
203	5.2.1.26	Subparagraph (f) added
203	5.2.2.1.1	Revised in its entirety by errata
208	5.3.1.9.4	Revised
209	5.3.1.11.1	Revised
209	Figure 5.3.1.11.1	Added
213	5.3.1.19.2	5.3.1.19.2.3 deleted by errata
213	5.3.1.19.5	Revised
213	5.3.1.19.9	Last paragraph revised
214	5.3.1.20.1	Second paragraph revised
214	5.3.1.20.2	Second paragraph revised
214	5.3.2.4.4	Revised
220	5.5.1.25	First sentence revised
221	5.5.1.25.5	Added
224	5.6.1.25	First sentence revised
225	5.6.1.25.6	Added
229	5.7.16	In subpara. (a), “or” added by errata
231	5.7.19.7	Title revised
232	5.7.21	Revised
233	Section 5.9	First paragraph revised
234	5.9.2.2	Revised
236	5.9.20.2	Added
236	5.9.26	Revised
237	5.9.26.3	Added
237	5.9.27	Revised
237	5.9.32	Added

<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
237	5.9.33	Added
241	5.10.1.21.1	Revised
246	6.1.3.3.11	Last paragraph revised
247	6.1.3.4.5	First sentence revised
250	6.1.5.3.1	(1) In subpara. (d), first sentence revised (2) In subpara. (d)(5)(-a), “or” added by errata
251	6.1.5.3.2	In subpara. (a), “or” added by errata
251	6.1.5.3.5	Added
252	6.1.6.3.2	Revised
253	6.1.6.3.4	Revised
254	6.1.6.3.13	In subpara. (a), “or” added by errata
254	6.1.6.4	Last sentence revised
256	6.1.6.12	Title revised
257	6.1.7.4.1	Revised
258	6.2.3.1	Revised
258	6.2.3.2.2	Revised
259	6.2.3.5.1	Second sentence revised
260	6.2.3.6.2	Last sentence added
263	6.2.5.3.1	Subparagraph (d) revised
266	6.2.6.3.8	Revised
266	6.2.6.3.11	In subpara. (a), “or” added by errata
266	6.2.6.4	Last sentence revised
268	6.2.6.12	Title revised
269	6.2.7.4.1	Revised
277	7.2.4.1	Revised
277	7.2.6.1.1	Subparagraph (a) revised
278	7.2.6.7	Title revised
278	7.2.8	Revised in its entirety
279	7.2.12	Revised
280	7.2.12.41	Added
282	7.3.11.3.4	Subparagraph (a) revised
282	7.3.11.6	Title revised
285	7.4.9.3	First sentence revised
288	7.5.2.6	Second sentence revised
289	7.5.6.2	Revised
289	7.5.6.6	Revised
289	7.5.8.1	Revised
289	7.5.8.3	Added and subsequent paragraphs redesignated
291	7.5.12.1.26	Added
291	7.5.12.2	Revised
292	7.5.12.2.35	Added
293	7.6.8.1	Subparagraph (g) added
297	8.1.2	Revised
298	8.1.4	Subparagraph (a) revised

<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
318	Section 8.3	Subparagraph (b)(8) added
329	8.3.16	Added
329	Section 8.4	(1) Subparagraph (a)(3) revised (2) Subparagraph (a)(4) added and subsequent subparagraphs redesignated
330	8.4.1.1	Title revised
330	8.4.1.1.3	Revised
331	8.4.5	Revised in its entirety
332	Figure 8.4.5.2.3	Added
332	8.4.7.1.1	Revised
333	8.4.7.2	Deleted and designator reserved for future use
333	8.4.8.2.6	In subparas. (a)(1)(-a) and (b)(1)(-a), “or” added by errata
346	8.4.10.1.1	Subparagraph (i)(6) revised
348	8.4.10.1.3	Subparagraphs (b) and (d) revised
350	8.4.10.1.4	Title revised
355	8.4.12.2.2	Subparagraph (b) revised
357	Section 8.5	Subparagraphs (a) and (b) revised
358	8.5.1	Subparagraphs (a) and (b) revised
358	8.5.2	Revised in its entirety
360	Table 8.5.5	(1) Seismic Zones Criteria column and Note (1) deleted (2) NBCC column heading revised
360	8.6.1.1.3	Revised
361	8.6.1.2.2	Revised
362	8.6.1.4.1	Subparagraphs (b), (c), and (d) revised
363	8.6.1.6.1	Revised
363	8.6.1.6.3	(1) Subparagraph (c) revised (2) Subparagraph (f) added
364	8.6.1.7.2	Revised
364	8.6.1.7.3	Revised
364	8.6.2.3	Last sentence revised
364	8.6.3.1	Revised
365	8.6.3.4.4	Revised
366	8.6.3.10.4	Revised
366	8.6.3.10.5	Revised
366	8.6.3.11	Revised
366	8.6.3.12	Revised in its entirety
367	8.6.3.16	Added
367	8.6.3.17	Added
368	8.6.4.6.1	Subparagraph (h) added
368	8.6.4.6.2	Revised
368	8.6.4.6.3	Last sentence added
368	8.6.4.6.4	Added
368	8.6.4.6.5	Added
369	8.6.4.11	Revised in its entirety

<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
370	8.6.4.13.1	Subparagraph (l) revised
371	8.6.4.19.7	Revised
372	8.6.4.19.21	Added
372	8.6.4.20.2	Subparagraph (c) revised
372	8.6.4.20.3	(1) Subparagraph (g) revised (2) In subparas. (a)(1) and (a)(1)(-a), “or” added by errata
373	8.6.4.20.4	Third paragraph and subpara. (b)(2) revised
374	8.6.4.20.10	Subparagraph (b)(2) revised
374	8.6.4.20.11	Subparagraph (c) added
374	8.6.4.23	Revised
374	8.6.4.24	Added
376	8.6.5.14.3	(1) Former subpara. (g) deleted and subsequent subparagraphs redesignated (2) Subparagraphs (j), (k), and (l) added
376	8.6.5.14.11	Added
377	8.6.5.14.12	Added
377	8.6.5.17	Title revised
377	8.6.5.18	Added
377	8.6.5.19	Added
379	8.6.7.9.7	Added
379	8.6.7.9.8	Added
382	8.6.8.15.4	(1) Subparagraph (b) revised (2) Subparagraph (c) added
383	8.6.8.15.24	Former 8.6.8.15.25 redesignated
384	8.6.8.15.25	Former 8.6.8.15.26 redesignated
384	8.6.8.16	Former 8.6.8.15.24 redesignated
385	8.6.11.4.2	Last sentence added
386	8.6.11.10.1	Subparagraph (e) added
387	8.6.11.10.3	Subparagraph (c) revised
387	8.6.11.10.4	Subparagraphs (c) and (d) revised
388	8.6.11.16	Added
388	8.7.1.8	Revised
389	8.7.1.11	Added
389	8.7.1.12	Added
389	8.7.2.1.1	Subparagraph (i) added
389	8.7.2.1.2	Revised
389	8.7.2.1.3	Revised
389	8.7.2.1.4	Revised
389	8.7.2.2.1	Revised
389	8.7.2.5	Revised
392	8.7.2.14.1	Revised
392	8.7.2.14.2	Revised
393	8.7.2.15.1	Revised
393	8.7.2.15.2	Revised

<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
393	8.7.2.16	Revised in its entirety
394	8.7.2.17.2	Subparagraph (b)(12) added
395	8.7.2.20	Revised
395	8.7.2.21	Revised in its entirety
396	8.7.2.22	Revised in its entirety
396	8.7.2.24	Revised
396	8.7.2.25	Revised in its entirety
397	8.7.2.27.4	(1) Revised (2) In subpara. (c)(7)(-a), "or" added by errata
398	8.7.2.27.5	(1) Subparagraphs (o) and (p) added (2) Last paragraph revised
399	8.7.2.27.6	(1) Subparagraphs (q) and (r) added (2) Last paragraph revised
400	8.7.2.27.10	Added
400	8.7.2.28	Subparagraphs (b) and (e) revised
400	8.7.3.3	Revised
401	8.7.3.14	Revised
403	8.7.3.23	Revised in its entirety
403	8.7.3.24	Revised
403	8.7.3.25	Revised in its entirety
404	8.7.3.26	Revised
404	8.7.3.31.5	(1) First sentence and subpara. (f) added (2) In subpara. (c)(6)(-a), "or" added by errata (3) Subparagraph (e) revised
405	8.7.3.31.6	Subparagraph (n) added
406	8.7.3.31.7	Subparagraph (o) added
406	8.7.3.31.8	Revised
407	8.7.3.31.14	Added
414	8.7.6.1.9	Revised
414	8.7.6.1.11	Revised
415	8.7.6.2.9	Revised
415	8.7.6.2.11	Revised
416	8.9.3	(1) Revised (2) In subpara. (a), "or" added by errata
417	8.10.1.1.4	Last sentence added
417	8.10.1.4	Revised
417	8.10.1.5	Cross-references updated
418	8.10.2.2.1	Subparagraph (t) revised
419	8.10.2.2.2	(1) In subpara. (cc)(3)(-c)(-1), "or" added by errata (2) Subparagraphs (s)(7) and (t)(4) revised (3) Subparagraphs (s)(8), (uu), and (vv) added
422	8.10.2.2.3	Subparagraphs (k) and (n) revised
423	8.10.2.2.4	Subparagraph (p) added
423	8.10.2.2.5	Subparagraphs (b)(4) and (c) revised

<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
424	8.10.2.3.2	(1) Subparagraphs (l) and (ii) revised (2) Subparagraphs (ss), (tt), and (uu) added
426	8.10.2.4	Added
427	8.10.3.2.1	Subparagraphs (q) and (t) revised
427	8.10.3.2.2	(1) Subparagraph (s)(3) revised (2) Subparagraphs (kk) and (ll) added
429	8.10.3.2.4	Subparagraph (j) revised
430	8.10.3.2.5	Subparagraphs (d) and (o) revised
430	8.10.3.3.2	(1) Subparagraph (l) revised (2) Subparagraphs (qq), (rr), and (ss) added
432	8.10.3.4	Added
433	8.10.4.1.1	Subparagraphs (c) and (f) revised
434	8.10.4.1.2	Subparagraphs (c), (d), (m), and (p) revised
436	8.10.4.2.1	Revised
439	8.11.2.1.1	Subparagraphs (q) and (r) revised
440	8.11.2.1.2	Subparagraphs (pp), (qq), and (rr) added
441	8.11.2.1.4	(1) Subparagraph (l) revised (2) Subparagraph (p) added
442	8.11.3.1.1	Subparagraph (q) revised
442	8.11.3.1.2	Subparagraphs (ee), (ff), and (gg) added
443	8.11.3.1.4	Subparagraph (k) revised
443	8.11.3.1.5	Subparagraph (r) revised
444	8.11.4.1	Subparagraph (w) added
445	8.12.1	Note added
446	Section 8.14	Added
449	Section 9.1	Updated
461	E-2	Definitions of <i>hall call console</i> and <i>accessibility function button</i> added
462	E-9.3.2	Revised in its entirety
463	E-9.4	Revised
463	E-11	Revised in its entirety
464	E-18.1	Revised in its entirety
464	E-18.2	Revised in its entirety
466	E-18.3.1	Last sentence revised
466	E-18.3.3	Added
466	E-18.6	First sentence added
467	E-20.2.1.1	Revised
470	E-20.8	Added
484	Figure I-5	General Note added
487	Figure I-10	Revised
489	Figure I-13	Added
490	Figure I-14	Added

<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
491	Figure I-15	Added
502	Nonmandatory Appendix N	(1) Paragraph designators and titles added (2) Tables N-1 and N-2 redesignated as Tables N-1-1 and N-2-1 (3) Table titles and column headings editorially revised
530	Figure S-13	General Note added
535	V-2	(1) Former V-1.1 redesignated (2) Subparagraph (i) revised and subpara. (l) added
538	Table X-1	Line 8 added and subsequent entries redesignated
539	Table X-2	(1) Line 4 revised (2) Line 6 added and subsequent entries redesignated
543	Figure Y-1	Revised
550	Index	Updated

ASME A11.1 CSAB44 2022

Click to view the full PDF of ASME A11.1 CSAB44 2022

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Part 1

General

SECTION 1.1

SCOPE

1.1.1 Equipment Covered by This Code

This Code covers the design, construction, operation, inspection, testing, maintenance, alteration, and repair of the following equipment and its associated parts, rooms, spaces, and hoistways, where located in or adjacent to a building or structure (see [Section 1.2](#)):

(a) hoisting and lowering mechanisms, equipped with a car, that move between two or more landings. This equipment includes, but is not limited to, elevators (see [Section 1.3](#)).

(b) power-driven stairways and walkways for carrying persons between landings. This equipment includes, but is not limited to, escalators and moving walks (see [Section 1.3](#)).

(c) hoisting and lowering mechanisms equipped with a car that serves two or more landings and is restricted to the carrying of material by its limited size or limited access to the car. This equipment includes, but is not limited to, dumbwaiters and material lifts; it does not include vertical reciprocating conveyors (see [Section 1.3](#)).

1.1.2 Equipment Not Covered by This Code

Equipment not covered by this Code includes, but is not limited to, the following:

(a) personnel hoists within the scope of ANSI A10.4 and CSA Z185

(b) material hoists within the scope of ANSI A10.5 and CSA Z256

(c) platform lifts and stairway chairlifts within the scope of ASME A18.1, CSA B355, and CSA B613

(d) manlifts within the scope of ASME A90.1 and CAN/CSA-B311, and in jurisdictions enforcing the National Building Code of Canada (NBCC), special purpose personnel elevators (see [Section 5.7](#))

(e) mobile scaffolds and towers; platforms within the scope of ANSI/SAIA A92 and CSA B354

(f) powered platforms and equipment for exterior and interior building maintenance within the scope of ASME A120.1 and CSA Z271

(g) conveyors and related equipment within the scope of ASME B20.1

(h) cranes, derricks, hoists, hooks, jacks, and slings within the scope of ASME B30, CSA Z150, CSA B167, CSA Z202, and CSA Z248

(i) industrial trucks within the scope of ASME B56 and CSA B335

(j) portable equipment, except for portable escalators, that are covered by [Section 6.1](#)

(k) tiering or piling machines used to move material to and from storage located and operating entirely within one story

(l) equipment for feeding or positioning material at machine tools, printing presses, etc.

(m) skip or furnace hoists

(n) wharf ramps

(o) amusement devices

(p) stage and orchestra lifts

(q) lift bridges

(r) railroad car lifts and dumpers

(s) mechanized parking garage equipment

(t) line jacks, false cars, shafters, moving platforms, and similar equipment used for installing an elevator

(u) platform-type elevators installed on board a marine vessel

NOTES:

(1) A maritime, industrial-use device with no car enclosure. Controls are located outside of the hoistway. Typically uses elevator-type rail systems and elevator-type interlock systems.

(2) Not a platform lift within the scope of ASME A18.1.

(v) dock levelers (freight platform lifts) having a rise of 500 mm (20 in.) or less

(w) in Canadian jurisdictions, devices having a rise of 2 000 mm (79 in.) or less and used only for the transfer of materials or equipment

(x) in jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, mine elevators within the scope of [Section 5.9](#)

1.1.3 Application of Parts

This Code applies to new installations only, except [Part 1](#) and [Sections 5.10](#), [8.1](#), and [8.6](#) through [8.12](#), which apply to both new and existing installations.

1.1.4 Effective Date

The requirements of this edition of the Code are effective as of the date noted on the Summary of Changes page of this Code, with the exception of [8.10.1.1.3](#) and [8.11.1.1](#),

which shall be effective immediately. The authority having jurisdiction will establish the effective date for local regulations.

SECTION 1.2 PURPOSE AND EXCEPTIONS

1.2.1 Purpose

The purpose of this Code is to provide for the safety of life and limb, and to promote the public welfare. Compliance with this Code shall be achieved by one of the following:

(a) conformance with the requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44

(b) conformance with some of the requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and for systems, subsystems, components, or functions that do not conform with certain requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44, conformance with the applicable requirements in ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7

(c) conformance with the requirements in ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7

1.2.2 Exceptions to ASME A17.1/CSA B44

The provisions of this Code are not intended to prevent the use of systems, methods, or devices of equivalent or superior quality, strength, fire resistance, effectiveness, durability, and safety to those prescribed by this Code, provided that there is technical documentation to demonstrate the equivalency of the system, method, or device.

1.2.2.1 The specific requirements of this Code shall be permitted to be modified by the authority having jurisdiction based on technical documentation or physical performance verification to allow alternative arrangements that will assure safety equivalent to that which would be provided by conformance with the corresponding requirements of this Code.

1.2.2.2 This Code contains requirements that are also covered in the NBCC. Reference to the NBCC is recognition that said requirements are not within the scope of this Code in Canada.

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, the use of the NBCC is not intended.

1.2.2.3 Exceptions shall be based on the requirements of 1.2.2.1.

SECTION 1.3 DEFINITIONS

Section 1.3 defines various terms used in this Code. In addition, some nomenclature and terminology used in the elevator industry and other ASME publications are defined.

access switch: *see hoistway access switch.*

accredited certifying organization: a certifying organization that holds valid Documentation of Accreditation issued by an independent internationally or nationally recognized accrediting organization that accredits personnel certification bodies.

NOTE: A Certificate of Accreditation is an example of such documentation.

accrediting body: an independent internationally or nationally recognized organization that accredits organizations concerned with personnel certification.

alteration: any change to equipment, including its parts, components, and/or subsystems, other than maintenance, repair, or replacement.

alteration, as part of an: a repair or replacement that is included with other work that is classified as an alteration.

alternate level: a floor level identified by the building code or fire authority, other than the designated level.

annunciator, car: an electrical device in the car that indicates visually the landings at which an elevator landing signal registering device has been actuated.

applied frame entrance: a wraparound or partial addition to an existing entrance frame used to improve the appearance or to provide the required clearances.

approved: acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

authority having jurisdiction: the organization, office, or individual responsible for enforcement of this Code. Where compliance with this Code has been mandated by legislation or regulation, the "authority having jurisdiction" is the regulatory authority (*see regulatory authority*).

authorized personnel: persons who have been instructed in the operation of the equipment and designated by the owner to use the equipment.

automatic transfer device: a power-operated mechanism that automatically moves a load consisting of a cart, tote box, pallet, wheeled vehicle, box, or other similar object from and/or to the car.

auxiliary power lowering device: an alternatively powered auxiliary control system that will, upon failure of the main power supply, allow a hydraulic elevator to descend to a lower landing.

backup roller(s): a roller that limits the separation of a pinion from a rack.

base, building: the level at which the horizontal seismic ground motions are considered to be imparted to the structure.

brake, driving machine, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: an electromechanically or electrohydraulically released spring, or gravity-applied device, that is part of the electric driving machine of the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift used to apply a controlled force at a

braking surface to hold or retard the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift. See [Nonmandatory Appendix F](#).

electrohydraulically released: a means of release in which an electric current applied to a solenoid valve or the motor of a hydraulic pump directs pressurized hydraulic fluid to an actuator (such as a hydraulic jack) that overcomes a resisting force (such as a spring) as long as the electric current flows.

electromechanically released: a means of release in which an electric current applied to an actuator (such as a solenoid) causes an electromagnetic force that overcomes a resisting force (such as a spring) as long as the electric current flows.

brake, driving machine, escalator or moving walk: an electromechanical device that is part of the electric driving machine of the escalator or moving walk, used to apply a controlled force to a braking surface to stop and hold the escalator or moving walk system.

brake, emergency: a mechanical device independent of the braking system used to retard or stop an elevator should the car overspeed or move in an unintended manner. Such devices include, but are not limited to, those that apply braking force on one or more of the following:

- (a) car rails
- (b) counterweight rails
- (c) suspension or compensation ropes
- (d) drive sheaves
- (e) brake drums

For further information, see [Nonmandatory Appendix F](#).

brake, main driveshaft, escalator and moving walk: a device located on the main driveshaft of the escalator or moving walk used to apply a controlled force to the braking surface to stop and hold the escalator or moving walk system.

braking, electrically assisted: retardation of the elevator, assisted by energy generated by the driving-machine motor. See [Nonmandatory Appendix F](#).

braking system: driving-machine brake alone, or in combination with electrically assisted braking, that operates to slow down and stop the elevator. See [Nonmandatory Appendix F](#).

buffer: a device designed to stop a descending car or counterweight beyond its normal limit of travel by storing or by absorbing and dissipating the kinetic energy of the car or counterweight.

elastomeric buffer: an energy-accumulation-type buffer with nonlinear characteristics (such as a polyurethane buffer) using resilient materials to cushion the impact force of the descending car or counterweight.

oil buffer: a buffer using oil as a medium, that absorbs and dissipates the kinetic energy of the descending car or counterweight.

gas spring-return oil buffer: an oil buffer using the pressure of a compressed gas to return the buffer plunger or piston to its fully extended position.

mechanical spring-return oil buffer: an oil buffer using the force of the compressed mechanical spring or springs to return the buffer plunger or piston to its fully extended position.

oil buffer stroke: the oil-displacing movement of the buffer plunger or piston, excluding the travel of the buffer plunger accelerating device.

spring buffer: a buffer using one or more springs to cushion the impact force of the descending car or counterweight.

spring buffer load rating: the load required to compress the spring buffer an amount equal to its stroke.

spring buffer stroke: the distance the contact end of the spring can move under a compressive load until all coils are essentially in contact or until a fixed stop is reached.

building code: an ordinance that sets forth requirements for building design and construction, or where such an ordinance has not been enacted, one of the following model codes:

- (a) International Building Code (IBC)
- (b) Building Construction and Safety Code (NFPA 5000)
- (c) National Building Code of Canada (NBCC)

NOTE: Local regulations or laws take precedence. In the absence of local regulation a model building code is applicable.

bumper: a device, other than an oil, spring, or elastomeric buffer, designed to stop a descending car or counterweight beyond its normal limit of travel by absorbing the impact.

cable, traveling: see *traveling cable*.

capacity: see *rated load*.

car-direction indicator: a visual signaling device that displays the current direction of travel.

car door interlock: an electrical protective device having two related and interdependent functions, which are

(a) to prevent the operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device unless the car door is locked in the closed position

(b) to prevent the opening of the car door from inside the car unless the car is within the unlocking zone and is either stopped or being stopped

NOTE: See 2.26.2 and 2.26.4.3.

car door or gate, power-closed: a door or gate that is closed by a door or gate power operator.

car door or gate electric contact: a means to detect that a door or gate is closed.

NOTE: See 2.26.2.15.

car door or gate power closer: a device or assembly of devices that closes a manually opened car door or gate by power other than hand, gravity, springs, or the movement of the car.

car, dumbwaiter, material lift: the load-carrying unit that includes a platform or transfer device and may include an enclosure and/or car frame.

car, elevator: the load-carrying unit including its platform, car frame, enclosure, and car door or gate.

car enclosure: the top and the walls of the car resting on and attached to the car platform.

car frame: the supporting frame to which the car platform, upper and lower sets of guide shoes, car safety, and the hoisting ropes or hoisting-rope sheaves, or the plunger or cylinder of a direct-acting elevator, are attached.

car frame, overslung: a car frame to which the hoisting-rope fastenings or hoisting-rope sheaves are attached on the crosshead or top member of the car frame.

car frame, sub-post: a car frame all of whose members are located below the car platform.

car frame, underslung: a car frame to which the hoisting-rope fastenings or hoisting-rope sheaves are attached at or below the car platform.

car lantern: an audible and visual signaling device located in a car to indicate the car is answering the call and the car's intended direction of travel.

car platform: the structure that forms the floor of the car and that directly supports the load.

car platform, laminated: a self-supporting platform constructed of plywood, with a bonded steel sheet facing on both top and bottom surfaces.

car platform frame: a structural frame, composed of interconnecting members, that supports the car platform floor.

car top access panel: a car top access panel is similar in design to a car top emergency exit panel. Used on mine elevators to permit frequent inspection of mine elevator hoistways for damage caused by environmental conditions. Such panels are openable without the use of tools or keys.

NOTE: Subject to the modifications specified in 5.9.14.1(c).

ceramic permanent magnet: a magnet of the type that has a force that does not deteriorate with time.

certified: see *listed/certified*.

certifying organization: an approved or accredited, independent organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed/

certified equipment or material and whose listing/certification states whether that equipment meets appropriate standards or has been tested and found suitable for use in a specified manner.

NOTE: For the purpose of this definition, *accredited* means that an organization has been evaluated and approved by an Authorized Agency to operate a Certification/Listing program, and is designated as such in a publication of the Authorized Agency.

chain, suspension (hoisting): chain used to raise and lower a dumbwaiter or material lift car or its counterweight.

chassis: that portion of an inclined elevator that serves as a car frame with weight-bearing guide rollers.

clearance, bottom car: the clear vertical distance from the pit floor to the lowest structural or mechanical part, equipment, or device installed beneath the car platform, except guide shoes or rollers, safety jaw assemblies, and platform or guards, when the car rests on its fully compressed buffers.

clearance, top car, inclined elevators: the shortest distance in the direction of travel between the upward-most portion of the chassis (car frame) and the nearest obstruction when the car is level with the top terminal landing.

clearance, top counterweight: the shortest vertical distance between any part of the counterweight structure and the nearest part of the overhead structure or any other obstruction when the car floor is level with the bottom terminal landing.

comb, escalator and moving walk: the toothed portion of a combplate designed to mesh with a grooved step, pallet, or treadway surface.

combplate, escalator and moving walk: that portion of the landing adjacent to the step, pallet, or treadway consisting of one or more plates to which the combs are fastened.

compensating-rope sheave switch: a device that automatically causes the electric power to be removed from the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift driving-machine motor and brake when the compensating sheave approaches its upper or lower limit of travel.

compensation means: wire rope, chain, or other mechanical means used to counterbalance, or partially counterbalance, the weight of the suspension ropes.

component rated pressure: the pressure to which a hydraulic component can be subjected.

control, motion: that portion of a control system that governs the acceleration, speed, retardation, and stopping of the moving member.

control, AC motor: a motion control that uses an alternating current motor to drive the machine.

control, AC motor, DC injection: a motion control for an AC motor that produces retardation torque by injecting a DC current into either a stator winding of the motor or a separate eddy-current brake.

control, single-speed AC: a motion control for an AC motor that has a single synchronous speed.

control, two-speed AC: a motion control for an AC motor that has two different synchronous speeds by connecting the motor windings so as to obtain a different number of poles.

control, variable voltage, variable frequency (VVVF): a motion control that changes the magnitude and frequency of the voltage applied to the motor.

control, variable voltage AC (VVAC): a motion control for an AC motor that varies the amount and direction of output torque by controlling the magnitude and phase sequence of the voltage to the motor.

control, DC motor: a motion control that uses a DC motor to drive the machine.

control, dual bridge thyristor converter: a motion control for a DC motor that supplies the armature with variable voltage of either polarity, and is capable of current flow in both directions.

control, generator field: a motion control that is accomplished by the use of an individual generator for each driving-machine motor wherein the voltage applied to the motor armature is adjusted by varying the strength and direction of the generator field current.

control, multivoltage: a motion control that is accomplished by impressing successively on the armature of the driving-machine motor a number of substantially fixed voltages such as may be obtained from multicommutator generators common to a group of elevators.

control, rheostatic: a motion control that is accomplished by varying resistance and/or reactance in the armature and/or field circuit of the driving-machine motor.

control, single bridge thyristor converter: a motion control for a DC motor that supplies the armature with variable voltage of fixed polarity. The field is reversed to control direction and to cause regeneration.

control, electrohydraulic: a motion control in which the acceleration, speed, retardation, and stopping are governed by varying fluid flow to/from the hydraulic jack by electrically operated valves.

control, mechanical-hydraulic: a motion control in which acceleration, speed, retardation, and stopping are governed by varying the fluid flow to/from the hydraulic jack by direct mechanical operation of the valves by shipper rope or operating lever device.

control, static: a motion control in which control functions are performed by solid-state devices.

control, operation: that portion of a control system that initiates the starting, stopping, and direction of motion, in response to a signal from an operating device.

operation, automatic: operation control wherein the starting of the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car is effected in response to the momentary actuation of operating devices at the landing, and/or of operating devices in the car identified with the landings, and/or in response to an automatic starting mechanism, and wherein the car is stopped automatically at the landings.

operation, group automatic: automatic operation of two or more nonattendant elevators equipped with power-operated car and hoistway doors. The operation of the cars is coordinated by a supervisory control system including automatic dispatching means whereby selected cars at designated dispatching points automatically close their doors and proceed on their trips in a regulated manner. It may include but is not limited to an operating device(s) in the car and/or at each landing that provides a means to select destinations identified with landings; keypads or touch screens at each landing and/or in the car; buttons in each car for each floor served and "UP" and "DOWN" buttons at each landing (single buttons at terminal landings). The stops set up by the momentary actuation of these devices are made automatically in succession as a car reaches the corresponding landing, irrespective of its direction of travel or the sequence in which the devices are actuated. The stops set up by the momentary actuation of the device(s) at the landing may be accomplished by any elevator in the group, and are made automatically.

operation, nonselective collective automatic: automatic operation by means of one button in the car for each landing served and one button at each landing, wherein all stops registered by the momentary actuation of landing or car buttons are made irrespective of the number of buttons actuated or of the sequence in which the buttons are actuated. With this type of operation, the car stops at all landings for which buttons have been actuated, making the stops in the order in which the landings are reached after the buttons have been actuated, but irrespective of its direction of travel.

operation, selective collective automatic: automatic operation by means of one button in the car for each landing served and by "UP" and "DOWN" buttons at the landings, wherein all stops registered by the momentary actuation of the car buttons are made as defined under nonselective collective automatic operation, but wherein the stops registered by the momentary actuation of the landing buttons are made in the order in which the landings are reached in each direction of travel after the buttons have been actuated. With this type of operation, all "UP" landing calls are answered when the car is traveling in the up direction and all "DOWN" landing calls are answered when the car is traveling in the down direction, except in the case of the uppermost or lowermost calls, which are answered as soon as they are reached, irrespective of the direction of travel of the car.

operation, single automatic: automatic operation by means of one button in the car for each landing served and one button at each landing, so arranged that if any car or landing button has been actuated the actuation of any other car or landing operating button will have no effect on the operation of the car until the response to the first button has been completed.

operation, car switch: operation control wherein the movement and direction of travel of the car are directly and solely under the control of the attendant by means of a manually operated car switch or of continuous-pressure buttons in the car.

operation, car switch automatic floor-stop: operation in which the stop is initiated by the attendant from within the car with a definite reference to the landing at which it is desired to stop, after which the slowing down and stopping of the elevator is effected automatically.

operation, continuous-pressure: operation control by means of buttons or switches in the car and at the landings, any one of which may be used to control the movement of the car as long as the button or switch is manually maintained in the actuating position.

operation, preregister: operation control in which signals to stop are registered in advance by buttons in the car and at the landings. At the proper point in the car travel, the attendant in the car is notified by a signal, visual, audible, or otherwise, to initiate the stop, after which the landing stop is automatic.

operation, signal: operation control by means of single buttons or switches (or both) in the car, and "UP" or "DOWN" direction buttons (or both) at the landings, by which predetermined landing stops may be set up or registered for an elevator or for a group of elevators. The stops set up by the momentary actuation of the car buttons are made automatically in succession as the car reaches those landings, irrespective of its direction of travel or the sequence in which the buttons are actuated. The stops set up by the momentary actuation of the "UP" and "DOWN" buttons at the landing are made automatically by the first available car in the group approaching the landings in the corresponding direction, irrespective of the sequence in which the buttons are actuated. With this type of operation, the car can be started only by means of a starting switch or button in the car.

control room, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: an enclosed control space outside the hoistway, intended for full bodily entry, that contains the motor controller. The room could also contain electrical and/or mechanical equipment used directly in connection with the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift but not the electric driving machine or the hydraulic machine. See [Nonmandatory Appendix Q](#).

control space, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: a space inside or outside the hoistway, intended to be accessed with or without full bodily entry, that contains the motor controller. This space could also contain elec-

trical and/or mechanical equipment used directly in connection with the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift but not the electric driving machine or the hydraulic machine. See [Nonmandatory Appendix Q](#).

NOTE: See 2.7.6.3.2 for an exception regarding the location of a motor controller.

control system: the overall system governing the starting, stopping, direction of motion, acceleration, speed, and retardation of the moving member. See [Nonmandatory Appendix A](#).

controller: a device or group of devices that serves to control in a predetermined manner the apparatus to which it is connected.

controller, motion: an operative unit comprising a device or group of devices for actuating the moving member.

controller, motor: the operative units of a motion control system comprising the starter devices and/or power conversion equipment required to drive an electric motor.

controller, operation: an operative unit comprising a device or group of devices for actuating the motion control.

conveyor, vertical reciprocating (VRC): see ASME B20.1 for definition and safety requirements.

counterweight displacement detection device: a device actuated by the displacement of the counterweight, at any point in the hoistway, to provide a signal that the counterweight has moved from its normal lane of travel or has left its guide rails.

creep: slight incremental, natural movement of the suspension means over their arc of contact with the driving sheave due to tractive force. The tractive force is a result of unequal tensile loads in the suspension means at points of entry and exit from the driving sheave, the tensile elasticity of the suspension member, and the frictional work occurring in the direction of the greater tension. Creep is independent of the motion status or direction of rotation of the driving sheave.

NOTE: Creep exists in all traction systems and is not loss of traction. Creep can occur while the drive sheave is stationary or rotating.

deck, escalator: see *escalator deck*.

designated attendant: where elevator operation is controlled solely by authorized personnel (attendant service, independent, hospital service, and other similar operations).

designated level: the main floor or other floor level that best serves the needs of emergency personnel for fire-fighting or rescue purposes identified by the building code or fire authority.

dispatching device, elevator automatic: a device, the principal function of which is to either

(a) operate a signal in the car to indicate when the car should leave a designated landing or

(b) actuate its starting mechanism when the car is at a designated landing

door: the movable portion(s) of an entrance that closes the openings. It consists of one or more solid face panels that are permitted to be equipped with a vision panel.

door, folding: a hinged door consisting of two or more panels that fold and move horizontally.

door, horizontally sliding: a door that moves horizontally.

center-opening: a horizontally sliding door consisting of two panels, arranged to open away from each other.

center-opening, multiple-speed: a horizontally sliding door consisting of more than two panels, arranged so that the panels or groups of panels open away from each other.

multiple-speed: a horizontally sliding door with two or more panels, arranged to open away from one side.

single-speed: a one-panel horizontally sliding door.

door or gate, manually operated: a door or gate that is opened and closed by hand.

door or gate, power-operated: a door or gate that is opened and closed by a door or gate power operator.

door or gate, self-closing: a manually opened door or gate that closes when released.

door, swinging: a door that pivots around a vertical axis.

door, vertically sliding: a counterweighted or counterbalanced door consisting of one or more panels that move vertically to open or close.

door, biparting: a vertically sliding door consisting of two or more sections, arranged so that the sections or groups of sections open away from each other.

door, vertically sliding sequence operation: where the opening and closing relationship of the car and hoistway doors do not occur simultaneously.

door, wraparound: a horizontally sliding door that bends around a car enclosure.

door locked detection means: an electrical protective device, the function of which is to prevent operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device unless the door is locked in the closed position.

door locked out of service: a hoistway entrance in which the door is mechanically locked by means other than the interlock to prevent the door being opened from the car side without keys or special equipment.

door or gate closer: a device that closes a door or gate by means of a spring or gravity.

door or gate electric contact: a means to detect that a door or gate is closed.

NOTE: See 2.26.2.15.

door or gate power operator: a device or assembly of devices that opens a hoistway door(s) and/or a car door or car gate by power other than hand, gravity, springs, or the

movement of the car; and that closes them by power other than hand, gravity, or the movement of the car.

driving machine: see *machine, driving*.

dumbwaiter: a hoisting and lowering mechanism equipped with a car of limited size that moves in guide rails and serves two or more landings that is used exclusively for carrying materials, and is classified by the following types:

dumbwaiter, hand: a dumbwaiter using manual energy to move the car.

dumbwaiter, power: a dumbwaiter using energy other than gravitational or manual to move the car.

dumbwaiter, electric: a power dumbwaiter where the energy is applied by means of an electric driving machine.

dumbwaiter, hydraulic: a power dumbwaiter where the energy is applied, by means of a liquid under pressure, in a cylinder equipped with a plunger or piston.

dumbwaiter, direct-plunger hydraulic: a hydraulic dumbwaiter having a plunger or cylinder directly attached to the car frame or platform.

dumbwaiter, electrohydraulic: a direct-plunger dumbwaiter where liquid is pumped under pressure directly into the cylinder by a pump driven by an electric motor.

dumbwaiter, maintained-pressure hydraulic: a direct-plunger dumbwaiter where liquid under pressure is available at all times for transfer into the cylinder.

dumbwaiter, roped-hydraulic: a hydraulic dumbwaiter having its piston connected to the car with wire rope.

dumbwaiter, undercounter: a dumbwaiter that has its top terminal landing located underneath a counter.

dynamic braking: use of the motor and active motor control to effect the controlled deceleration of a load.

earthquake protective devices: a device or group of devices that serve to regulate the operation of an elevator or group of elevators in a predetermined manner during or after an earthquake.

electrical/electronic/programmable electronic (E/E/PE): based on electrical (E), electronic (E), and/or programmable electronic (PE) technology.

NOTE: The term is intended to cover any and all devices or systems operating on electrical principles.

EXAMPLE: Electrical/electronic/programmable electronic devices include

(a) electromechanical devices (electrical)

(b) solid-state nonprogrammable electronic devices (electronic)

(c) electronic devices based on computer technology (programmable electronic)

electrical/electronic/programmable electronic system (E/E/PES): a system for control, protection, or monitoring based on one or more electrical/electronic/

programmable electronic (E/E/PE) devices, including all elements of the system such as power supplies, sensors and other input devices, data highways and other communication paths, and actuators and other output devices.

elevator: a hoisting and lowering mechanism, equipped with a car, that moves within guides and serves two or more landings and is classified by the following types:

NOTE: See 1.1.2, Equipment Not Covered by This Code.

elevator, freight: an elevator used primarily for carrying freight and on which only the operator and the persons necessary for unloading and loading the freight are permitted to ride.

NOTE (elevator, freight): A freight elevator's use is subject to the modifications specified in Section 2.16.

elevator, hand: an elevator using manual energy to move the car.

elevator, inclined: an elevator that travels at an angle of inclination of 70 deg or less from the horizontal.

elevator, limited-use/limited-application: a power passenger elevator in which the use and application are limited by size, capacity, speed, and rise.

elevator, marine: an elevator installed on board a marine vessel.

NOTES:

- (1) Marine vessels are defined by the authority having jurisdiction for the design and safety of marine vessels. Such authorities include, but are not limited to, the U.S. Coast Guard, Transport Canada, and the American Bureau of Shipping or other members of the International Association of Classification Societies.
- (2) Marine elevators are designed to operate under marine design conditions that reflect the motions, forces, and environmental conditions imposed on the vessel and the elevator, under a variety of vessel operating scenarios. See Section 5.8.

elevator, mine: an elevator installed in a mine hoistway, used to provide access to the mine for personnel, materials, equipment, and supplies. To meet the requirements of a mine elevator, the components must be designed and installed in conformance with Part 2 of this Code, except as modified in Section 5.9. Mine elevators are similar to electric passenger elevators but are modified to operate in the mine environment.

elevator, multicompartment: an elevator having two or more compartments located one above the other.

elevator, observation: an elevator that permits exterior viewing by passengers while the car is traveling.

elevator, outside emergency: an elevator operating on the outside of a building having up to five compartments that is operated only by emergency personnel and used solely for emergency evacuation of building occupants and transportation of a limited number of emergency responders involved in the evacuation.

elevator, passenger: an elevator used primarily to carry persons other than the operator and persons necessary for loading and unloading.

elevator, power: an elevator using energy other than gravitational or manual to move the car.

elevator, electric: a power elevator where the energy is applied by means of an electric driving machine.

elevator, hydraulic: a power elevator in which the energy is applied, by means of a liquid under pressure, in a hydraulic jack.

elevator, direct-acting hydraulic: a hydraulic elevator in which the energy is applied by a direct hydraulic driving machine.

elevator, electrohydraulic: a hydraulic elevator in which liquid under pressure is supplied by a hydraulic machine.

elevator, maintained-pressure hydraulic: a direct-acting hydraulic elevator in which liquid under pressure is available at all times for transfer into the hydraulic jack.

elevator, roped-hydraulic: a hydraulic elevator in which the energy is applied by a roped-hydraulic driving machine.

elevator, private residence: a power passenger elevator that is limited in size, capacity, rise, and speed, and is installed in a private residence or in a multiple-unit dwelling as a means of access to a private residence.

elevator, rack-and-pinion: a power elevator with or without a counterweight that is supported, raised, and lowered by a motor or motors that drive a pinion or pinions on a stationary rack mounted in the hoistway.

elevator, rooftop: a power passenger or freight elevator operating between a landing at roof level and landings below. It opens onto the exterior roof level of a building through a horizontal opening.

elevator, screw column: a power elevator having an uncounterweighted car that is supported, raised, and lowered by means of a screw thread.

elevator, sidewalk: an elevator of the freight type operating between a landing in a sidewalk or other exterior area and floors below the sidewalk or grade level. It opens onto the exterior area through a horizontal opening.

elevator, special purpose personnel: an elevator that is limited in size, capacity, and speed, and permanently installed in structures such as grain elevators, radio antenna, bridge towers, underground facilities, dams, and power plants, to provide vertical transportation of authorized personnel and their tools and equipment only.

elevator, used for construction: an elevator being used temporarily, only for construction purposes.

elevator discharge level: the elevator lobby, served by an elevator or group of elevators, that occupants will use to evacuate using Occupant Evacuation Operation.

elevator personnel: persons who have been trained in the construction, maintenance, repair, inspection, or testing of equipment.

emergency personnel: persons who have been trained in the operation of emergency or standby power and Fire-fighters' Emergency Operation or emergency evacuation.

emergency signal device: a device that can be operated from within the elevator car to inform persons outside the hoistway that help is required.

emergency stop switch: a device located as required and readily accessible for operation that, when manually operated, causes the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake of an electric elevator; or from the electrically operated valves and pump motor of a hydraulic elevator; or from a dumbwaiter; or from a material lift.

endurance limit of a component: the maximum stress that can be alternated or reversed within specified limits without producing fracture of the component material.

enforcing authority: see *authority having jurisdiction* and *regulatory authority*.

engineering test: a test carried out by or witnessed by a registered or licensed professional engineer, testing laboratory, or certifying organization to ensure conformance with Code requirements.

entrance assembly, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: the protective assembly that closes the hoistway openings normally used for loading and unloading, including the door panel(s), gate(s), transom panel, fixed side panel, gibbs/guides, sill/sill structure, header, frame, and entrance hardware assembly, if provided.

entrance assembly, horizontally sliding type: an entrance assembly in which the door(s) slides horizontally.

entrance assembly, swinging type: an entrance assembly in which the door(s) swings around vertical hinges.

entrance assembly, vertically sliding type: an entrance assembly in which the door(s) slides vertically.

entrance frame, applied: see *applied frame entrance*.

entrance hardware assembly: the track(s), hangers, drive arms, pendant bolts, chains, belts, cables, sheaves, pulleys, hinges, vertically sliding guide shoes, and related hardware that are necessary to suspend and maintain the position of the doors within the entrance assembly.

escalator: power-driven, inclined, continuous stairway used for raising or lowering passengers.

escalator, conventional: an escalator on which the running gear is driven by a single driveshaft at a terminal.

escalator, modular: an escalator on which the running gear along the incline is driven by one or more drive units.

escalator deck: the transverse members of the balustrade, having an interior or exterior section, or both. A high deck is located immediately below the handrail stand. A low deck is located immediately above the skirt panel.

escalator molding: the connecting means between the various portions of the balustrade.

escalator newel: the balustrade termination at the landing.

escalator newel base: the panel located immediately under the newel.

escalator panel, exterior: the panel enclosing the exterior side of the balustrade.

escalator panel, interior: the panel located between the skirt and the escalator high deck or the handrail stand.

escalator skirt: the fixed, vertical panels located immediately adjacent to the steps.

escalator skirt cover, dynamic: the stationary cover that protects the interface between the dynamic skirt panel and the escalator balustrade.

escalator skirt, dynamic: see *skirt panel, dynamic*.

escalator wellway: an opening in a floor provided for escalator installation between two levels of a building.

escalators, tandem operation: escalators used in series with common intermediate landings.

executable software: a set of machine-readable instructions native to a computing device that performs specific tasks.

factor of safety: the ratio of the ultimate strength to the working stress of a member under maximum static loading, unless otherwise specified in a particular requirement.

fail safe: a characteristic of a system or its elements whereby any failure or malfunction affecting safety will cause the system to revert to a state that is known to be safe.

fire barrier: a fire-resistance-rated vertical or horizontal assembly of material designed to restrict the spread of fire in which the openings are protected.

fire-protection rating: a designation indicating the duration of the fire test exposure to which a fire door assembly (entrance) was exposed and for which it met all the acceptance criteria as determined in accordance with a recognized fire test standard. Ratings are stated in hours or minutes.

fire-resistance rating: a designation indicating the duration of the fire test exposure to which components of building construction (walls, floors, roofs, beams, and columns) are exposed and for which it met all the acceptance criteria as determined in accordance with a recognized fire test standard. Ratings are stated in hours or minutes.

fire-resistive construction: a method of construction that prevents or retards the passage of hot gases or flames, specified by the building code.

Fire Service Access Elevator (FSAE): an elevator equipped for use by emergency personnel that is required by some building codes in high-rise buildings and has special requirements, including identification, specified by those building codes.

fixed side panel: a panel used to close a hoistway enclosure opening on the side of a hoistway entrance.

flat steps: the distance, expressed in step lengths, that the leading edge of an escalator step travels after emerging from the comb before moving vertically.

flood elevation: the base flood elevation (BFE) or the design flood elevation (DFE) as specified in ASCE/SEI 24, Table 7-1 and ASCE/SEI 24, Section 7.5.

gate: the movable portion(s) of an entrance that closes the opening. A gate has through openings.

horizontally sliding collapsible gate: a series of horizontally sliding vertical members, joined by a scissors-like linkage that allows the assembly to collapse.

horizontally sliding noncollapsible gate: a noncollapsible assembly consisting of one or more sections that slide horizontally.

vertically sliding gate: a counterweighted or counterbalanced assembly, consisting of one or more sections that move vertically to open or close.

gate, semiautomatic: a gate that is opened manually and that is closed automatically as the car leaves the landing.

governor: see *speed governor*.

governor pull-through tension (force): the magnitude of the tensile load developed in the moving governor rope after the governor rope retarding means is actuated.

governor rope retarding means: a mechanical means of developing a sufficient force in the governor rope to activate the car or counterweight safeties or to trip the governor rope releasing carrier, where used. Such mechanical means include, but are not limited to, rope-gripping jaws, clutch mechanisms, and traction arrangements.

guiding means, ladder: the guide system where the tower ladder is used to guide the car within the travel path.

hall lantern: an audible and visual signaling device located at a hoistway entrance to indicate which car is answering the call and the car's intended direction of travel.

handrail stand: the uppermost portion of the balustrade that supports and guides the handrail.

hard copy: a written record or log of all items specified in the maintenance records.

hoistway (shaft), elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: an opening through a building or structure for the travel of elevators, dumbwaiters, or material lifts, extending from the pit floor to the roof or floor above.

hoistway, blind: the portion of a hoistway where hoistway entrances are not provided.

hoistway, multiple: a hoistway with more than one elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift.

hoistway, single: a hoistway with a single elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift.

hoistway, mine: the area within a mine shaft, and its aboveground structure required for the elevator equipment, associated supports, and operations, including a minimum of 450 mm (18 in.) around same.

hoistway access switch: a switch, located at a landing, the function of which is to permit operation of the car with the hoistway door at this landing and the car door or gate open, in order to permit access to the top of the car or to the pit.

hoistway door: see *door*.

hoistway door electric contact: a means to detect that a hoistway door is closed.

NOTE: See 2.26.2.15.

hoistway door or gate locking device: a device that secures a hoistway door or gate in the closed position and prevents it from being opened from the landing side except under certain specified conditions.

hoistway door combination mechanical lock and closed detection means: a combination mechanical lock and electrical protective device with two related, but entirely independent, functions, which are

(a) to prevent operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device unless the hoistway door is in the closed position

(b) to lock the hoistway door in the closed position and prevent it from being opened from the landing side unless the car is within the unlocking zone

NOTES:

(1) See 2.26.2 and 2.26.4.3.

(2) As there is no positive mechanical connection between the hoistway door closed detection means and the door locking mechanism, this device ensures only that the door will be closed, but not necessarily locked, when the car leaves the landing. Should the lock mechanism fail to operate as intended when released by a stationary or retiring car-cam device, the door can be opened from the landing side even though the car is not at the landing. If operated by a stationary car-cam device, it does not prevent opening the door from the landing side as the car passes the floor.

hoistway door interlock: an electrical protective device having two related and interdependent functions, which are

(a) to prevent the operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device unless the hoistway door is locked in the closed position

(b) to prevent the opening of the hoistway door from the landing side unless the car is within the unlocking zone and is either stopped or being stopped

NOTE: See 2.26.2 and 2.26.4.3.

hoistway door interlock retiring cam device: a device that consists of a retractable cam and its actuating mechanism and that is entirely independent of the car door or hoistway door power operator.

hoistway gate separate mechanical lock: a mechanical device, the function of which is to lock a hoistway gate in the closed position after the car leaves a landing and prevent the gate from being opened from the landing side unless the car is within the landing zone.

hoistway enclosure: the fixed structure, consisting of vertical walls or partitions, that isolates the hoistway from all other areas or from an adjacent hoistway and in which entrances are installed.

hoistway gate: usually a counterweighted (counterbalanced) assembly, consisting of one or more sections that are guided in the vertical direction to open or close. The gate may be of wood or metal construction. Wood gates may consist of either horizontal or vertical slats. Metal gates are usually constructed of perforated or expanded metal.

hospital service: a special case of operation by a designated attendant used only for medical emergencies.

hydraulic jack: a unit consisting of a cylinder equipped with a plunger (ram) or piston, that applies the energy provided by a liquid under pressure.

hydraulic machine: a unit consisting of pump, motor, valves, and associated internal piping, that converts electrical energy and supplies it as a liquid under pressure.

in-car stop switch: a device located in the car and accessible for operation by elevator personnel only, that, when manually operated, causes the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake of an electric elevator or from the electrically operated valves and pump motor of a hydraulic elevator.

inclined elevator: see *elevator, inclined*.

installation: a complete elevator, dumbwaiter, escalator, material lift, or moving walk, including its hoistway, hoistway enclosures and related construction, and all machinery and equipment necessary for its operation.

installation, existing: an installation that has been completed or is under construction prior to the effective date of this Code.

installation, new: any installation not classified as an existing installation by definition, or an existing elevator, dumbwaiter, escalator, material lift, inclined lift, or moving walk moved to a new location subsequent to the effective date of this Code.

intended car movement: controlled movement of an elevator car, including starting, leveling, running, and stopping, due to

(a) operation control

(b) motion control

(c) continuous pressure on an operating device during Inspection Operation, Inspection Operation with open door circuits, or Hoistway Access Operation

NOTE: "Stopping" includes movement of an elevator car toward rest once stopping is initiated, and any movement of an elevator car due to suspension system elasticity that occurs after the brake is set, since this movement was the result of the intended operation.

interlock: see *car door interlock* and *hoistway door or gate locking device, hoistway door interlock*.

labeled/marked: equipment or material to which has been attached a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of an approved or accredited independent certifying organization, concerned with product evaluation, that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled/marked equipment or material, and by whose labeling/marking the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

NOTE: For the purpose of this definition, *accredited* means that an organization has been evaluated and approved by an Authorized Agency to operate a Certification/Listing program, and is designated as such in a publication of the Authorized Agency.

landing, dumbwaiter: that portion of a floor, balcony, platform, or landing door used to discharge and receive materials.

landing, elevator or material lift: that portion of a floor, balcony, or platform used to receive and discharge passengers or freight.

landing, bottom terminal: the lowest landing served by the elevator or material lift that is equipped with a hoistway entrance.

landing, top terminal: the highest landing served by the elevator or material lift that is equipped with a hoistway entrance.

landing, escalator or moving walk: the stationary area at the entrance to or exit from an escalator, moving walk, or moving walk system.

landing, lower, escalator: that landing of least elevation of the two landings.

landing, lower, moving walk: that landing of least elevation of the two landings. On moving walks where the two landings are of equal elevation, the lower landing is that landing designated by the manufacturer.

landing, upper, escalator: that landing of greatest elevation of the two landings.

landing, upper, moving walk: that landing of greatest elevation of the two landings. On moving walks where the two landings are of equal elevation, the upper landing is that landing designated by the manufacturer.

landing, next available: the first landing in the direction of travel that the elevator is electrically and mechanically capable of serving with a normal slowdown and stop.

landing zone: a zone extending from a point 450 mm (18 in.) below a landing to a point 450 mm (18 in.) above the landing.

left, right convention: left and right designations of escalator and moving walk components are determined by facing the equipment at the lower landing.

leveling: controlled car movement toward the landing, within the leveling zone, by means of a leveling device that vertically aligns the car platform sill relative to the hoistway landing sill to attain a predetermined accuracy.

leveling device, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car: the portion of a motion control system comprised of a device or group of devices that, either automatically or under control of the operator, initiates leveling, and automatically stops the car at the landing.

leveling device, anticreep: a leveling device used on hydraulic elevators to correct automatically a change in car level caused by leakage or contraction of fluid in the hydraulic system.

leveling device, inching: a leveling device that is controlled by the operator by means of continuous-pressure switches.

leveling device, one-way automatic: a device that corrects the car level only in case of underrun of the car, but will not maintain the level during loading and unloading.

leveling device, two-way automatic maintaining: a device that corrects the car level on both underrun and overrun, and maintains the level during loading and unloading.

leveling device, two-way automatic nonmaintaining: a device that corrects the car level on both underrun and overrun, but will not maintain the level during loading and unloading.

leveling zone: the limited distance above or below an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift landing within which the leveling device is permitted to cause movement of the car toward the landing.

listed/certified: processes, equipment, or materials accepted for inclusion in a publication by a certifying organization.

NOTE: The means for identifying listed/certified equipment may vary for each organization concerned with product evaluation, some of which do not recognize equipment as listed/certified unless it is also labeled/marked. The authority having jurisdiction uses the system employed by the listing/certifying organization to identify a listed/certified product.

load, dynamic: the load applied as a result of acceleration or deceleration.

load, impact: a suddenly applied load.

load, static: the load applied as a result of the weight.

lower landing, escalator: see *landing, escalator or moving walk, landing, lower, escalator*.

lower landing, moving walk: see *landing, escalator or moving walk, landing, lower, moving walk*.

machine, driving: the power unit that applies the energy necessary to drive an elevator or other equipment covered by the scope of this Code.

driving machine, chain, dumbwaiter or material lift: a driving machine in which the motion of a car is obtained through a connection between a driven sprocket and the suspension chains.

driving machine, electric: a driving machine in which the energy is applied by an electric motor. It includes the motor, driving-machine brake, and the driving sheave or drum, together with its connecting gearing, belt, or chain, if any. See [Nonmandatory Appendix F](#).

driving machine, direct: an electric driving machine, the motor of which is directly connected mechanically to the driving sheave, drum, or shaft without the use of belts or chains, either with or without intermediate gears.

geared driving machine: a direct driving machine in which the energy is transmitted from the motor to the driving sheave, drum, or shaft through gearing.

winding-drum machine: a geared driving machine in which the suspension ropes are fastened to and wind on a drum.

traction machine: a direct driving machine in which the motion of a car is obtained through friction between the suspension means and a traction sheave.

geared traction machine: a geared-drive traction machine.

gearless traction machine: a traction machine, without intermediate gearing, that has the traction sheave and the brake drum mounted directly on the motor shaft.

worm-gear machine: a direct driving machine in which the energy from the motor is transmitted to the driving sheave or drum through worm gearing.

driving machine, indirect: an electric driving machine, the motor of which is connected indirectly to the driving sheave, drum, gear reducer, or shaft by means of a belt drive or chain drive.

belt driving machine: an indirect driving machine equipped with a belt system as the connecting means.

chain driving machine: an indirect driving machine with a chain system as the connecting means.

driving machine, rack-and-pinion: an electric driving machine in which the motion of the car is obtained by a power-driven rotation pinion(s) mounted on the car, traveling on a stationary rack mounted in the hoistway.

driving machine, screw: an electric driving machine, the motor of which drives a nut on a vertical screw or rotates a vertical screw to raise or lower an elevator car.

driving machine, hydraulic: a driving machine in which the energy is provided by a hydraulic machine and applied by a hydraulic jack.

chain-hydraulic drive machine: a hydraulic driving machine in which the drive member of the hydraulic jack is connected to the car by chains or indirectly coupled to the car by means of chains and sprockets.

direct hydraulic driving machine: a hydraulic driving machine in which the driving member of the hydraulic jack is directly attached to the car frame or platform.

roped-hydraulic driving machine: a hydraulic driving machine in which the driving member of the hydraulic jack is connected to the car by wire ropes or indirectly coupled to the car by means of wire ropes and sheaves. It includes multiplying sheaves, if any, and their guides.

machine room, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: an enclosed machinery space outside the hoistway, intended for full bodily entry, that contains the electric driving machine or the hydraulic machine. The room could also contain electrical and/or mechanical equipment used directly in connection with the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift. See [Nonmandatory Appendix Q](#).

machine room and control room, remote, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: a machine room or control room that is not attached to the outside perimeter or surface of the walls, ceiling, or floor of the hoistway. See [Nonmandatory Appendix Q](#).

machinery space, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: a space inside or outside the hoistway, intended to be accessed with or without full bodily entry, that contains elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift mechanical equipment, and could also contain electrical equipment used directly in connection with the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift. This space could also contain the electric driving machine or the hydraulic machine. See [Nonmandatory Appendix Q](#).

machinery space and control space, remote, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: a machinery space or control space that is not within the hoistway, machine room, or control room, and that is not attached to the outside perimeter or surface of the walls, ceiling, or floor of the hoistway. See [Nonmandatory Appendix Q](#).

main floor: the floor providing normal egress from a building.

maintained pressure: the hydraulic pressure between the pressure source and the control valves of a maintained-pressure hydraulic elevator.

maintenance: a process of routine examination, lubrication, cleaning, and adjustment of parts, components, and/or subsystems for the purpose of ensuring performance in

accordance with the applicable Code requirements. (See also *repair* and *replacement*.)

maintenance control program (MCP): a documented set of maintenance tasks, maintenance procedures, examinations, and tests to ensure that equipment is maintained in compliance with the requirements of [Section 8.6](#).

maintenance interval: the specified period between the occurrences of a specific maintenance task.

maintenance procedure: an instruction or sequence of instructions for performing a specific task(s).

maintenance task: a maintenance activity (work) that needs to be accomplished.

manually (manual) reset, elevator:

(a) a type or feature of an elevator part or component that, when actuated, requires intervention of a person in order to reinstate it to its nonactuated state.

(b) a type of action required to be taken by a person to reinstate an elevator part or component from an actuated state to its nonactuated state.

manual reset, escalator and moving walk: a means, not accessible to the general public or authorized personnel, requiring on-site intervention by elevator personnel prior to restarting the escalator or moving walk.

manual reset, private residence elevator: a means, not accessible to the occupants or authorized personnel, requiring on-site intervention by elevator personnel prior to restarting the elevator.

material lift: an elevator designed or modified for the purpose of transporting materials that are manually or automatically loaded or unloaded and is not a vertical reciprocating conveyor (see [Section 1.3](#)). Material lifts without an automatic transfer device are Type A or Type B. On Type A material lifts no persons are permitted to ride. On Type B material lifts authorized personnel are permitted to ride.

may: indicates permission, not a mandatory requirement.

means, compensation: the method by which unbalanced forces due to suspension means are reduced, using one or more compensation members and their terminations.

means, suspension: tensile components that support, raise, and lower a car, counterweight, or both.

mechanical lock: see *hoistway door or gate locking device, hoistway door combination mechanical lock and closed detection means* and *hoistway door or gate locking device, hoistway gate separate mechanical lock*.

member, compensation: a single component of a traction elevator the weight of which provides tensile forces on the car and counterweight that reduce unbalanced forces due to the weight of the suspension means.

member, suspension: an individual load-carrying component of the suspension means (e.g., a single rope or belt).

mode of operation: a way in which a safety-related system is intended to be used, with respect to the rate of demands made on it, that may be either

(a) *low demand mode*: where the frequency of demands for operation made on an electrical safety function is not greater than one per year and not greater than twice the proof-test frequency

(b) *high demand or continuous mode*: where the frequency of demands for operation made on a safety-related system is greater than one per year or greater than twice the proof-test frequency

NOTE: High demand or continuous mode covers those safety-related systems that implement continuous control to maintain functional safety.

(c) *proof-test*: a periodic test performed to detect failures in a safety-related system so that, if necessary, the system can be restored to an “as new” condition or as close as practical to this condition

NOTE: See IEC 61508-4, Clause 3.8.5 for additional information on this definition.

modernization: see *alteration*.

module: the increment of rise in a modular escalator that one drive unit is capable of powering.

molding, escalator: see *escalator molding*.

moving walk: a type of passenger-carrying device on which passengers stand or walk, and in which the passenger-carrying surface remains parallel to its direction of motion and is uninterrupted.

moving walk, belt pallet type: a moving walk with a series of connected and power-driven pallets to which a continuous belt treadway is fastened.

moving walk, belt type: a moving walk with a power-driven continuous belt treadway.

moving walk, edge-supported belt type: a moving walk with the treadway supported near its edges by a succession of rollers.

moving walk, pallet type: a moving walk with a series of connected and power-driven pallets that together constitute the treadway.

moving walk, roller-bed type: a moving walk with the treadway supported throughout its width by a succession of rollers.

moving walk, slider-bed type: a moving walk with the treadway sliding on a supporting surface.

moving walk newel: the balustrade termination at the landing.

moving walk newel base: the panel located immediately under the newel.

moving walk wellway: an opening in a floor provided for moving walk installation.

newel, escalator: see *escalator newel*.

newel, moving walk: see *moving walk newel*.

newel base, escalator: see *escalator newel base*.

newel base, moving walk: see *moving walk newel base*.

nonstop switch, elevator: a switch that, when operated, will prevent the elevator from making registered landing stops.

normal stopping means: that portion of the operation control that initiates stopping of the car in normal operation at landings.

Occupant Evacuation Operation: the operation of an elevator system for occupant evacuation under emergency conditions.

operating device: the car switch, push buttons, key or toggle switches, or other devices used to actuate the operation control.

operating speed in the down direction: the speed at which a hydraulic elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift is set to lower with rated load.

operation, inspection: a special case of continuous-pressure operation used for troubleshooting, maintenance, repair, adjustments, rescue, and inspection.

overhead structure: all of the structural members, walls, platforms, etc., supporting the elevator machinery, sheaves, and equipment at the top of the hoistway.

pallet, moving walk: one of a series of rigid platforms that together form an articulated treadway or the support for a continuous treadway.

pallet band: the complete assembly formed by all of the pallets and their interconnecting means.

panel, exterior escalator: see *escalator panel, exterior*.

panel, interior escalator: see *escalator panel, interior*.

parking device, elevator: an electrical or mechanical device, the function of which is to permit the opening of the hoistway door from the landing side when the car is within the landing zone of that landing. The device may also be used to close the door.

penetrate a floor: to pass through or pierce a floor in such a way that the opening has a continuous perimeter and is provided only to allow the equipment to pass through the floor.

periodic tests, category: a group of tests performed at common time intervals required by the authority having jurisdiction.

Phase I Emergency Recall Operation: the operation of an elevator where it is automatically or manually recalled to the recall level and removed from normal service because of activation of Firefighters' Emergency Operation.

Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation: the operation of an elevator by firefighters where the elevator is under their control.

piston: a short cylindrical member that is provided with a sealing means that travels with the member within a hydraulic cylinder. Pistons may be coupled to the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift by a coupling means that passes through a sealing means provided in the cylinder head.

piston, rod: the coupling means between the piston and its driven member.

pit, dumbwaiter or material lift: the portion of a hoistway extending from the floor level of the bottom terminal landing to the floor at the bottom of the hoistway.

pit, elevator: the portion of a hoistway extending from the sill level of the bottom terminal landing to the floor at the bottom of the hoistway.

plunger (ram): a long cylindrical compression member that is directly or indirectly coupled to the car frame. This member is not provided with a sealing means. Where used in assembly with a cylinder, the sealing means is provided on the cylinder head. In the case of telescopic plungers and cylinders, a sealing means may be used in the moving plunger, which is also a cylinder.

plunger gripper: a mechanical device attached to a supporting structure in the pit, that stops and holds the car by gripping the plunger.

position indicator: a device that indicates the position of the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car in the hoistway. It is called a “hall position indicator” when placed at a landing or a “car position indicator” when placed in the car.

power, emergency or standby: a source of power, independent from the normal building power, which may be derived from another utility, or from engine and generator or other building utility source that is switched to the elevator equipment when the normal building power fails.

NOTE: For additional details on emergency and standby power systems see NFPA 110.

power, main line: building power, whether normal, emergency, or standby, that is supplied to the elevator electrical equipment through a main line disconnecting means.

power, normal building: the utility power distributed throughout the building and made available for normal usage by the elevator electrical equipment.

power supply, auxiliary: a source of backup power to support an elevator system or subsystem that is provided with the elevator and is intended to supply the designated electrical load for a limited period of time and provide limited performance.

power unit, hydraulic: see *hydraulic machine*.

pressure piping: the piping for a hydraulic elevator between the pump and the hydraulic jack.

private residence: a separate dwelling or a separate apartment in a multiple-unit dwelling that is occupied only by the members of a single family unit.

private residence elevator: see *elevator*.

rated load, elevator, dumbwaiter, material lift, or escalator: the load that the equipment is designed and installed to lift at the rated speed.

rated load, moving walk: the load that the moving walk is designed and installed to move, horizontally or at an incline, at the rated speed.

rated load performance: the operation of the elevator with its rated load at rated speed.

rated speed: the speed at which the elevator, dumbwaiter, escalator, moving walk, or material lift is designed to operate under the following conditions:

elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: the speed in the up direction with rated load in the car. (See also *operating speed in the down direction*).

escalator: the rate of travel of the steps, measured along the centerline of the steps in the direction of travel, with rated load on the steps. In the case of a reversible escalator, the rated speed shall be the rate of travel of the steps in the up direction, measured along the centerline of the steps on the incline, with rated load on the steps.

moving walk: the rate of travel of the treadway, horizontally or at an incline, with rated load on the treadway. In the case of reversible inclined moving walks, the rated speed is the rate of travel of the treadway in the up direction, measured along the centerline of the treadway surface in the direction of travel, with rated load on the treadway.

readily accessible: capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal, or inspection, without requiring those to whom ready access is a requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or resort to portable ladders, chairs, etc.

recall level: the designated or alternate level that cars are returned to when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is activated.

records, electronic: a viewable computer-generated record or log of all items specified in the maintenance records.

recycling operation, telescope plunger: an operation for restoring the relative vertical positions of the multiple plungers in a telescoping plunger arrangement.

regulatory authority: the person or organization responsible for the administration and enforcement of the applicable legislation or regulation governing the design, construction, installation, operation, inspection, testing, maintenance, or alteration of equipment covered by this Code. (See also *authority having jurisdiction*.)

rehabilitation: see *alteration; maintenance; repair; and replacement*.

releasing carrier, governor rope: a mechanical device to which the governor rope may be fastened, calibrated to control the activation of a safety at a predetermined tripping force.

relocation, escalator or moving walk: the movement of the escalator or moving walk from one wellway or pit to another wellway or pit, or the act of securing the escalator or moving walk to different bearing plates or supports.

remote interaction operation (RIO): any operation where signals are exchanged between an elevator and off-site systems.

remote machine and control rooms: rooms that do not share a common wall, floor, or ceiling with the hoistway.

repair: reconditioning or renewal of parts, components, and/or subsystems necessary to keep equipment in compliance with applicable Code requirements. (See also *maintenance* and *replacement*.)

replacement: the substitution of a device or component and/or subsystems, in its entirety, with a unit that is basically the same as the original for the purpose of ensuring performance in accordance with applicable Code requirements. (See also *maintenance* and *repair*.)

residual strength: the actual breaking strength of a suspension member at any time during its operational life cycle.

NOTE: The residual strength will be reduced as the suspension member is used and is subjected to wear.

restricted area: (applicable to [Part 7](#)) an area accessible only to authorized personnel who have been instructed in the use and operation of the equipment.

restrictor, car door: a device, the function of which is to restrict the opening of passenger elevator car door(s) when the car is outside the unlocking zone.

rise: the vertical distance between the bottom terminal landing and the top terminal landing of an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift.

rise, escalator and moving walk: the vertical distance between the top and bottom landings of an escalator or moving walk.

rope, aircraft cable: a wire rope built for a special purpose having special flexibility properties, zinc-coating, high breaking strength, and antirust qualities. Designed originally for use with aircraft controls.

rope, car counterweight: wire rope used to connect the car and counterweight that does not pass over the driving means.

rope, counterweight: wire rope used to raise and lower the counterweight on an electric elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift having a winding-drum machine.

rope, governor: wire rope with at least one end fastened to the safety activating means or governor rope releasing carrier, passing over and driving the governor sheave, and providing continuous information on the speed and direction of the car or counterweight.

rope, safety drum (also known as “tail rope” and “Minne Line”): a corrosion-resistant wire rope used to connect the governor rope to the safety. Primarily used with wedge clamp safeties.

rope, suspension (hoisting): wire rope used to raise and lower an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car or its counterweight, or both.

rope equalizer, suspension: a device installed on an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car or counterweight to equalize automatically the tensions in the suspension wire ropes.

rope-fastening device, auxiliary: a device attached to the car or counterweight or to the overhead dead-end rope-hitch support that will function automatically to support the car or counterweight in case the regular wire rope fastening fails at the point of connection to the car or counterweight or at the overhead dead-end hitch.

rope sprocket drive: a driving means consisting of wire rope with fixed links at constant intervals throughout its length. The links engage in slots on a grooved drive cog to provide a positive drive force.

runby, bottom, elevator car: the distance between the car buffer striker plate and the striking surface of the car buffer when the car floor is level with the bottom terminal landing.

runby, bottom, elevator counterweight: the distance between the counterweight buffer striker plate and the striking surface of the counterweight buffer when the car floor is level with the top terminal landing.

runby, top, direct-plunger hydraulic elevator: the distance the elevator car can run above its top terminal landing before the plunger strikes its mechanical stop.

running gear, escalator: all the components of an escalator moving along the tracks.

running gear, moving walk: all the components of a moving walk moving along the tracks.

safety, car or counterweight: a mechanical device attached to the car, car frame, or an auxiliary frame; or to the counterweight or counterweight frame; to stop and hold the car or counterweight under one or more of the following conditions: predetermined overspeed, free fall, or if the suspension ropes slacken.

safety, self-resetting: a car or counterweight safety released and reset by movement in the up direction.

safety bulkhead: a closure at the bottom of the cylinder located above the cylinder head and provided with an orifice for controlling the loss of fluid in the event of cylinder head failure.

safety integrity level (SIL): the discrete level (one out of a possible four) for specifying the safety integrity requirements of the safety functions to be allocated to the electrical/electronic/programmable electronic (E/E/PE) safety-related system, where SIL 4 has the highest level of safety integrity and SIL 1 has the lowest (see IEC 61508).

screw column: a vertical structural member provided with screw threads that support the car of a screw-column elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift. The screw column may be either in tension or in compression.

seal, adjustment: a device or means to prevent adjustment of a component that must be broken to change the adjustment. Sealing includes a method to document the date and name of the person and/or firm applying the seal or other means to acquire this information.

security level rated: an elevator control system or component that is rated to a security level in accordance with the applicable requirements in IEC 62443-2-4, IEC 62443-3-3, IEC 62443-4-1, and IEC 62443-4-2.

seismic detection device: a device activated by ground movement to provide a signal that a potentially damaging earthquake is imminent.

sequence operation: see *door, vertically sliding sequence operation*.

shaft: see *hoistway (shaft), elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift* and *hoistway, mine*.

shall: indicates a mandatory requirement.

should: indicates a recommendation, not a mandatory requirement.

sight guard: a vertical member mounted on the hoistway side of the leading edge of the hoistway door. It is used to reduce the opening between the leading edges of the hoistway door and the car door.

signal device, elevator car flash: a device providing a signal light in the car that is illuminated when the car approaches the landings at which a landing signal registering device has been actuated.

signal registering device, elevator landing: a button or other device located at the elevator landing that, when actuated by a waiting passenger, causes a stop signal to be registered in the car.

signal system, elevator separate: a system consisting of buttons or other devices located at the landings that, when actuated by a waiting passenger, illuminates a flash signal or operates an annunciator in the car indicating floors at which stops are to be made.

signal transfer device, elevator automatic: a device by means of which a signal to be registered in a car is automatically transferred to the next car following, in case the first car passes a floor for which a signal has been registered without making a stop.

signal transfer switch, elevator: a manually operated switch, located in the car, by means of which the operator can transfer a signal to the next car approaching in the same direction, when the operator desires to pass a floor at which a signal has been registered in the car.

SIL rated: electrical/electronic/programmable electronic system (E/E/PES) that is listed/certified to a safety integrity level that is in accordance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3.

skirt, escalator: see *escalator skirt*.

skirt panel, dynamic: the moving vertical panels, with a positive mechanical connection to the running gear, adjacent to and moving with the steps.

slack-rope switch: a device that automatically causes the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake when the suspension ropes of a winding-drum machine become slack.

sleeving (liner): the insertion of a smaller diameter cylinder inside the existing cylinder of a hydraulic jack.

sling: see *car frame*.

slope, moving walk: the angle that the centerline of the treadway makes with the horizontal.

software-based parameters and/or variables: values that set application-specific data.

software system failure: a behavior of the software, including its support (host) hardware, that is not in accordance with the intended safety function as prescribed by this Code.

solid-state device: an element that can control current flow without moving parts.

sound engineering practice: the use of engineering or technical methods to design or evaluate a device or system by taking into account relevant factors that may influence its efficacy and operation. This practice also involves the use of applicable standards, specifications, codes, and regulatory and industry guidelines, as well as accepted engineering and design methods and installation and maintenance practices.

speed governor: a continuously operating speed-monitoring and -detection device that, at predetermined speeds, provides signals to the controller and imparts a retarding force to activate the car or counterweight safety.

speed governor, escalator or moving walk: a continuously operating speed-monitoring and -detection device that, at predetermined speeds, provides signals to the controller to stop the escalator or moving walk.

starter's control panel, elevator: an assembly of devices by means of which the starter may control the manner in which an elevator or group of elevators functions.

static switching: switching of circuits by means of solid-state devices.

step band: the complete assembly formed by all of the steps and their interconnecting means.

suspension member, noncircular elastomeric-coated steel (hoisting): a noncircular suspension member, such as an elastomeric-coated steel belt constructed of encapsulated steel cords, used to raise and lower an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car or its counterweight or both.

sway control guide: a device attached to the car or the counterweight used to limit the sway of suspension means, compensating means, traveling cables, etc., to prevent tangling or snagging on other hoistway components.

sway control guide suspension means: tensile components that support, raise, and lower sway control guides for electric traction elevators.

tandem operation escalators: see *escalators, tandem operation*.

terminal landing: see *landing, elevator or material lift*.

terminal speed-limiting device, emergency: a device that automatically reduces the car and counterweight speed to within the rated buffer striking speed prior to buffer engagement.

terminal speed-reducing device, hydraulic: a device on hydraulic elevators that will reduce the speed prior to contacting the stop ring in the up direction.

terminal stopping device, emergency: a device that automatically causes the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake if the car fails to slow down as intended when approaching the terminal landing.

terminal stopping device, final: a device that automatically causes the power to be removed from a driving-machine motor and brake, or from a hydraulic machine, after the car has passed a terminal landing.

terminal stopping device, machine final (stop-motion switch): final terminal stopping device operated directly by the driving machine.

terminal stopping device, normal: device to slow down and stop an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car automatically at or near a terminal landing.

test enable device (TED): a device in the test enable operation that places an elevator in a mode with electrical protective devices made ineffective for purposes of testing, maintenance, troubleshooting, repair, replacement, or rescue.

test enable operation: an operation used for troubleshooting, maintenance, repair, adjustments, rescue, testing, and inspection.

test initiating means: a means [e.g., test tool, keypad, switch(es)] used to request selected electrical protective devices to be rendered ineffective by test enable operation and to initiate it for the purpose of testing.

threshold comb, moving walk: see *comb, escalator and moving walk*.

threshold plate, moving walk: see *combplate, escalator and moving walk*.

transom: a panel or panels used to close a hoistway enclosure opening above a hoistway entrance.

traveling cable: a cable made up of electric conductors, that provides electrical connection between an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car or counterweight and a fixed outlet in the hoistway or machine room.

treadway, moving walk: the passenger-carrying member of a moving walk.

truck zone, elevator: the limited distance above an elevator landing within which the truck zoning device permits movement of the elevator car.

truck zoning device, elevator: a device that will permit the operator in the car to move a freight elevator within the truck zone with the car door or gate and a hoistway door open.

type test: a test carried out by or witnessed by a certifying organization concerned with product evaluation and the issuing of certificates to ensure conformance to Code requirements.

unintended car movement: any movement of an elevator car that is not intended car movement resulting from a component or system failure.

unique software identifier (USI): descriptor that allows distinguishing among versions of executable software.

unlocking device, hoistway door: a mechanical device, the function of which is to unlock and permit the opening of a hoistway door from a landing irrespective of the position of the car.

unlocking zone: a zone extending from the landing floor level to specified points above and below the landing.

upper landing, escalator: see *landing, escalator or moving walk, landing, upper, escalator*.

upper landing, moving walk: see *landing, escalator or moving walk, landing, upper, moving walk*.

valley break: a broken wire in a wire rope in which the outside wire of a strand breaks in the immediate vicinity of the point where it contacts a wire or wires of an adjacent strand, generally at a point not visible when the wire rope is examined externally. One end of the broken wire is long

enough to reach from one valley to the next one and the other end of the broken wire generally cannot be seen.

valve, manually (manual) operated: a type of mechanical or electromechanical valve requiring an action to be taken by a person to change the state (opened or closed) of the valve.

valve, overspeed: a device installed in the pressure piping of a hydraulic elevator, between the hydraulic machine and the hydraulic jack, that restricts and ceases oil flow from the hydraulic jack through the pressure piping when such flow exceeds a preset value.

volatile memory: memory lost when operating power is removed.

waiting-passenger indicator: an indicator that shows at which landings and for which direction elevator hall stop or signal calls have been registered and are unanswered.

weatherproof: constructed or protected so that exposure to the weather will not interfere with successful operation.

width, moving walk: the exposed width of the treadway.

window: an assembly consisting of a surrounding frame and one or more sashes, ventilators, or fixed lights, or a combination of these, designed to be installed in a wall opening for the purpose of admitting light or air, or both.

working pressure: the pressure measured at the hydraulic machine when lifting a car and its rated load at rated speed, or with Class C2 loading when leveling up with maximum static load.

yield strength: the tensile stress that is sufficient to produce a permanent deformation of 0.2%.

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME A17.1 CSA B44:22

Part 2

Electric Elevators

SCOPE

Part 2 applies to electric elevators installed at an angle greater than 70 deg from the horizontal. It applies to other equipment only as referenced in the applicable Part.

NOTE: See Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to electric elevators.

SECTION 2.1

CONSTRUCTION OF HOISTWAYS AND HOISTWAY ENCLOSURES

2.1.1 Hoistway Enclosures

Hoistway enclosures shall conform to 2.1.1.1, 2.1.1.2, or 2.1.1.3.

2.1.1.1 Fire-Resistive Construction

2.1.1.1.1 Where fire-resistive construction is required, hoistways shall be enclosed in conformance with the requirements of the building code (see Section 1.3).

2.1.1.1.2 Partitions between hoistways and

- (a) machinery spaces outside the hoistway
- (b) machine rooms
- (c) control spaces outside the hoistway
- (d) control rooms

that have a fire-resistance rating shall be of noncombustible solid or openwork construction that meets the requirements of 2.1.1.2.2(d)(1) through 2.1.1.2.2(d)(3). Partitions of solid construction shall be permitted to have openings essential for ropes, drums, sheaves, and other elevator equipment.

Openwork construction shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter, except where there are openings essential for ropes, drums, sheaves, and other elevator equipment.

2.1.1.1.3 Hoistway enclosure openings shall be protected with entrances or access doors having a fire-protection rating conforming to the requirements of the building code.

2.1.1.2 Non-Fire-Resistive Construction

2.1.1.2.1 Where fire-resistive construction is not required by the building code, hoistway construction shall conform to 2.1.1.2.2 or 2.1.1.3.

2.1.1.2.2 The hoistway shall be fully enclosed conforming to (a) through (d); or (a), (b), and (e).

(a) Enclosures and doors shall be unperforated to a height of 2 000 mm (79 in.) above each floor or landing and above the treads of adjacent stairways. The enclosure shall be unperforated adjacent to and for 150 mm (6 in.) on either side of any moving equipment that is within 100 mm (4 in.) of the enclosure.

(b) Partitions between hoistways and

- (1) machinery spaces outside the hoistway
- (2) machine rooms
- (3) control spaces outside the hoistway
- (4) control rooms

shall be of solid or openwork construction that meets the requirements of (d)(1) through (d)(3). Partitions of solid construction shall be permitted to have openings essential for ropes, drums, sheaves, and other elevator equipment. Openwork construction shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter, except where there are openings for ropes, drums, sheaves, and other elevator equipment.

(c) Openwork enclosures, where used above the 2 000 mm (79 in.) level, shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

(d) Openwork enclosures shall be

- (1) at least 2.2 mm (0.087 in.) thick wire, if of steel wire grille
- (2) at least 2.2 mm (0.087 in.) thick, if of expanded metal

(3) supported and braced to deflect not over 15 mm (0.6 in.) when subjected to a force of 450 N (100 lbf) applied horizontally at any point

(e) Enclosures shall be permitted to be glass, provided it is laminated glass conforming to ANSI Z97.1, 16 CFR Part 1201, or CAN/CGSB-12.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Markings as specified in the applicable standard shall be on each separate piece of glass and shall remain visible after installation.

2.1.1.2.3 Entrances shall be in conformance with Section 2.11, except 2.11.14 through 2.11.16 and 2.11.18.

2.1.1.3 Partially Enclosed Hoistways. For elevators that are not fully enclosed, protection at least 2 400 mm (94.5 in.) high shall be provided on the hoistway sides that are located 1 500 mm (59 in.) or less from elevator equipment to areas accessible to other than

elevator personnel. Such protection shall comply with 2.1.1.2.

2.1.1.4 Multiple Hoistways. The number of elevators permissible in a hoistway shall be in conformance with the building code.

- (22) **2.1.1.5 Strength of Enclosure.** The hoistway enclosure adjacent to a landing opening shall be of sufficient strength to maintain, in true lateral alignment, the hoistway entrances. Operating mechanisms and locking devices shall be supported by the building wall, if load-bearing, or by other building structure. Adequate consideration shall be given to pressure exerted on hoistway enclosures as a result of windage and elevator operation.

The building structural supports of the entrance, such as building beams, walls, and floors, shall be designed to withstand the horizontal forces stipulated in 2.11.11.8, 2.11.12.4.6, or 2.11.13.3.5, whichever is applicable.

2.1.2 Construction at Top and Bottom of the Hoistway

2.1.2.1 Construction at Top of the Hoistway. The top of the hoistway shall be enclosed as required by the building code.

2.1.2.2 Construction at Bottom of the Hoistway. Pits extending to the ground shall have noncombustible floors and shall be designed to prevent entry of groundwater into the pit. The pit floor of any hoistway not extending to the ground shall be of construction having a fire-resistance rating at least equal to that required for the hoistway enclosure. (See also Sections 2.2 and 2.6.)

2.1.2.3 Strength of Pit Floor. The pit equipment, beams, floor, and their supports shall be designed and constructed to meet the applicable building code requirements and to withstand the following loads, without permanent deformation, in the manner in which they occur:

- (a) the impact load due to car or counterweight buffer engagement at 125% of the rated speed or 125% of the striking speed where reduced-stroke buffers are used (see 8.2.3)
- (b) the part of the load transmitted due to the application of the car safety or, where applicable, the counterweight safety
- (c) compensation up-pull load where compensation tie-down is applied (see 2.21.4.2)
- (d) the loads imposed by a driving machine where applicable (see Section 2.9)
- (e) any other elevator-related loads that are transmitted to the pit floor

2.1.3 Floor Over Hoistways

2.1.3.1 General Requirements

2.1.3.1.1 A metal or concrete floor shall be provided at the top of the hoistway

(a) where a machine room or control room is located above the hoistway

(b) below overhead sheaves and other equipment located over the hoistway, where means of access conforming to 2.7.6.3.3 are not provided

(c) below governors that are located over the hoistway, where means of access conforming to 2.7.6.3.4 are not provided

2.1.3.1.2 Floors are not required below secondary and deflecting sheaves of traction-type machines located over the hoistway.

2.1.3.2 Strength of Floor. Overhead floors shall be capable of sustaining a concentrated load of 1 000 N (225 lbf) on any 2 000 mm² (3 in.²) area, and where it constitutes the floor of the main or secondary level machinery space, it shall be designed for a live load of not less than 6 kPa (125 lbf/ft²) in all open areas.

Where the elevator driving machine is to be supported solely by the machine room floor slab, the floor slab shall be designed in accordance with 2.9.4 and 2.9.5.

2.1.3.3 Construction of Floors. Floors shall be of concrete or metal construction with or without perforations. Metal floors shall conform to the following:

(a) If of bar-type grating, the openings between bars shall reject a ball 20 mm (0.8 in.) in diameter.

(b) If of perforated sheet metal or of fabricated open-work construction, the openings shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

2.1.3.4 Area to Be Covered by Floor. Where a floor over a hoistway is required by 2.1.3.1, the floor shall extend over the entire area of the hoistway where the cross-sectional area is 10 m² (108 ft²) or less. Where the cross-sectional area is greater, the floor shall extend not less than 600 mm (24 in.) beyond the general contour of the machine or sheaves or other equipment, and to the entrance to the machinery space at or above the level of that floor. Where the floor does not cover the entire horizontal area of the hoistway, the open or exposed sides shall be provided with a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2.

2.1.4 Control of Smoke and Hot Gases

When required by the building code, hoistways shall be provided with means to prevent the accumulation of smoke and hot gases.

Where hoistway pressurization is provided, it shall be designed, installed, and maintained so as not to impede elevator operation.

NOTE (2.1.4): Excessive pressurization could prevent doors, complying with 2.13.4, from closing. Air introduced into the hoistway could cause erratic operation by impingement of traveling cables, selector tapes, governor ropes, compensating ropes, and other components sensitive to excessive movement or deflection.

2.1.5 Windows and Skylights

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, windows in the walls of hoistway enclosures are prohibited.

Windows and skylights and their frames and sashes in machine rooms and control rooms shall conform to the requirements of the building code (see Section 1.3).

2.1.6 Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks in Hoistway Enclosures

Hoistway enclosures shall have flush surfaces on the hoistway side, subject to the requirements of 2.1.6.1 and 2.1.6.2.

2.1.6.1 On sides for loading and unloading, landing sills, hoistway doors, door tracks, and hangers shall be permitted to project inside the hoistway enclosure. Sills shall be guarded as required by 2.11.10.1.

2.1.6.2 On sides not used for loading and unloading
(a) beams, floor slabs, or other building construction making an angle less than 75 deg with the horizontal shall not project more than 100 mm (4 in.) inside the hoistway enclosure unless the top surface of the projection is beveled at an angle not less than 75 deg with the horizontal

(b) separator beams between adjacent elevators are not required to have bevels

(c) where recesses or setbacks exceeding 100 mm (4 in.) occur in the enclosure wall, the top of the recess or setback shall be beveled at an angle not less than 75 deg with the horizontal

(d) bevels are not required if the projections, recesses, and setbacks are covered with material conforming to the following:

(1) It shall be equal to or stronger than 1.110 mm (0.0437 in.) wire.

(2) It shall have openings not exceeding 25 mm (1 in.).

(3) It shall be supported and braced such that it will not deflect more than 25 mm (1 in.) when subjected to a force of 4.79 kPa (100 lbf/ft²) applied horizontally at any point.

(22) 2.1.7 Illumination of Hoistways

Permanent lighting shall be provided to illuminate the hoistway. The hoistway lighting shall provide an illumination of not less than 50 lx (5 fc), excluding shadows created

by the car or components, measured at the center of the car top throughout travel of the car when the car top lights (see 2.14.7.1.4) are off and all hoistway doors are closed. The lighting components shall be guarded where necessary to prevent contact or accidental breakage. All lighting components requiring maintenance or service shall be located within safe and convenient access from the car top. The location shall be identified on the layout drawing [see 2.28.1(m)].

2.1.7.1 The lighting shall conform to the requirements of 2.1.7.1.1 through 2.1.7.1.5.

2.1.7.1.1 Light switches (manual control) for the hoistway lighting shall be located within the hoistway enclosure and accessible from

(a) the pit access door

(b) the top landing

2.1.7.1.2 The light switches for illumination of pits (see 2.2.5.3) and for illumination of machinery space in the hoistway (see 2.7.9.1) shall be permitted to be used as the light switch required by 2.1.7.1.1(a) and 2.1.7.1.1(b), respectively.

2.1.7.1.3 The hoistway lighting shall automatically turn on when

(a) the hoistway access enable switch for any car in the hoistway (see 2.12.7.3.2) is in the "ENABLE" position

(b) an inspection operating device for any car in the hoistway (see 2.26.1.4.1) is in the "INSPECTION" position

(c) Firefighters' Emergency Operation is in effect (see 2.27.3 and 2.27.4)

2.1.7.1.4 The light switches shall not turn off the hoistway lighting when any of the conditions in 2.1.7.1.3 are in effect.

2.1.7.1.5 Control signals shall be provided to the building system for lighting the hoistway when any of the conditions in 2.1.7.1.3 are in effect.

2.1.7.2 If the building is equipped with emergency or standby power, the hoistway lighting shall be on the same emergency power system as the elevator equipment.

SECTION 2.2 PITS

2.2.1 General

A pit shall be provided for every elevator.

2.2.2 Design and Construction of Pits

2.2.2.1 The construction of the pit walls, the pit floor, and any pit access doors (see 2.2.4) shall conform to 2.1.1 and 2.1.2.

2.2.2.2 The floor of the pit shall be approximately level, except that

(a) trenches or depressions shall be permitted for the installation of buffers, compensating sheaves and frames, and vertically sliding biparting hoistway doors, where structural conditions make such trenches or depressions necessary

(b) in existing buildings, where new elevators are installed or existing elevators are altered, existing foundation footings extending above the general level of the pit floor shall be permitted to remain in place, provided that the maximum encroachment of such footings does not exceed 15% of the cubic content of the pit, and further provided that it is impracticable to remove the footing

2.2.2.3 Permanent provisions shall be made to prevent accumulation of groundwater in the pit (see 2.1.2.2).

2.2.2.4 Drains and sump pumps, where provided, shall comply with the applicable plumbing code, and they shall be provided with a positive means to prevent water, gases, and odors from entering the hoistway.

2.2.2.5 In elevators provided with Firefighters' Emergency Operation, a drain or sump pump shall be provided. The sump pump/drain shall be required to remove a minimum of 11.4 m³/h (3,000 gal/h) per single hoistway or multiple hoistway.

2.2.2.6 Sumps and sump pumps in pits, where provided, shall be covered. The cover shall be secured and level with the pit floor.

2.2.3 Guards Between Adjacent Pits

2.2.3.1 Where there is a difference in level between the floors of adjacent pits, a metal guard, unperforated or perforated with openings that will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter, shall be installed for separating such pits. Guards shall extend not less than 2 000 mm (79 in.) above the level of the higher pit floor, and a self-closing access door shall be permitted.

2.2.3.2 Where the difference in level is 600 mm (24 in.) or less, a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2 shall be permitted to be installed in lieu of the guard.

2.2.4 Pit Access

Safe and convenient access shall be provided to all pits, and shall conform to 2.2.4.1 through 2.2.4.6.

2.2.4.1 Access shall be by means of the lowest hoistway door or by means of a separate pit access door.

(22) **2.2.4.2** There shall be installed in the pit of each elevator, where the pit extends more than 900 mm (35 in.) below the sill of the pit access door (lowest hoistway door or separate pit access door), a fixed vertical ladder of noncombustible material, located within reach of the access door. The ladder is permitted to be retractable or nonretractable. Nonretractable ladders, where provided, shall conform to 2.2.4.2.1 through 2.2.4.2.7.

Retractable ladders, where provided, shall conform to 2.2.4.2.1 through 2.2.4.2.3 and 2.2.4.2.5, 2.2.4.2.6, 2.2.4.2.8, and 2.2.4.2.9. When in the extended position, retractable ladders shall conform to 2.2.4.2.4.

2.2.4.2.1 The ladder shall extend not less than 1 200 mm (48 in.) above the sill of the access door, or handgrips shall be provided to the same height.

2.2.4.2.2 The ladder rungs, cleats, or steps shall be a (22) minimum of 400 mm (16 in.) wide.

2.2.4.2.3 The ladder rungs, cleats, or steps shall be spaced 300 mm (12 in.) $\pm$ 13 mm ($\pm$ 0.5 in.) on center, shall be provided to not less than the height of the access door sill, and shall be designed to minimize slipping (e.g., knurling, dimpling, coating with skid-resistant material).

2.2.4.2.4 A clear distance of not less than 115 mm (4.5 in.) from the centerline of the rungs, cleats, or steps to the nearest permanent object in back of the ladder shall be provided.

2.2.4.2.5 Side rails, if provided, shall have a clear (22) distance adjacent to the side rails of not less than 115 mm (4.5 in.) from their centerline to the nearest permanent object. When obstructions are encountered, the clear distance adjacent to the side rails shall be permitted to be decreased to less than 115 mm (4.5 in.). When the clear distance is decreased to less than 115 mm (4.5 in.), ladder rungs, cleats, or steps shall be provided above the height of the access door sill to the top of the ladder.

2.2.4.2.6 The ladder and its attachments shall be capable of sustaining a load of 135 kg (300 lb).

2.2.4.2.7 The ladder shall have a ladder electrical (22) device (see 2.26.2.38) that shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake when a person is detected on the ladder. The device is permitted to detect the person directly by weight, by movement or removal of a guard to enable use of the ladder, or by other detection means. If detecting directly by weight, the device shall remove power when more than 9 kg (20 lb) is applied to any rung of the ladder. If a guard or other detection means is used, the device shall remove power when the guard is moved or removed, or the other detection means is opened or activated.

2.2.4.2.8 Retractable ladders that are in the line of (22) movement of the car or counterweight when not fully retracted shall operate a ladder electrical device (see 2.26.2.38) that shall cause the power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake unless the ladder is in its fully retracted position.

2.2.4.2.9 Retractable ladders shall be capable of being extended, mechanically secured and unsecured, and retracted from the access door, and

(a) the force(s) required to extend a retractable ladder from the fully retracted position to the extended and mechanically secured position shall not exceed 220 N (50 lbf)

(b) after being extended and mechanically secured, a retractable ladder shall remain secured in the extended position when subjected to a horizontal force not to exceed 2 220 N (500 lbf)

(c) the force(s) required to retract a retractable ladder from its extended position to its fully retracted position, after being unsecured, shall not exceed 220 N (50 lbf)

(d) the ladder shall be mechanically secured when in the retracted position

2.2.4.3 Pit access by a ladder shall not be permitted when the pit floor is more than 3 000 mm (120 in.) below the sill of the access door, except where there is no building floor below the bottom terminal landing, this height shall be permitted to be greater but not more than 4 200 mm (165 in.).

2.2.4.4 Pits shall be accessible only to elevator personnel.

2.2.4.5 A separate pit access door, when provided, shall be subject to the following requirements:

(a) If the door swings into the pit, it shall be located so that it does not interfere with moving equipment.

(b) If the door swings out, and the lowest structural or mechanical part, equipment, or device installed beneath the car platform, except guide shoes or rollers or safety jaw assemblies, projects below the top of the separate pit access door opening when the car is level with the bottom terminal landing

(1) an electric contact conforming to 2.26.2.26 shall be provided to prevent operation of the elevator when the door is open

(2) the door shall be provided with a vision panel(s) glazed with clear wired glass not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) thick, will reject a ball 150 mm (6 in.) in diameter, and has an area of not more than 0.03 m² (47 in.²)

(c) The door shall provide a minimum opening of 750 mm (29.5 in.) in width and 1 825 mm (72 in.) in height.

(d) The door shall be equipped with a barrier conforming to 2.10.1.2(i), where the door sill is located more than 300 mm (12 in.) above the pit floor.

(e) The door shall be self-closing and provided with a spring-type lock arranged to permit the door to be opened from inside the pit without a key. Such doors shall be kept closed and locked. A key shall be required to unlock the lock from outside the hoistway. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.2.4.6 Means to unlock the access door from inside the pit shall be provided. The means shall be located

(a) when no pit ladder is provided, not more than 1 825 mm (72 in.) vertically above the pit floor, or

(b) when a pit ladder is provided, not more than 1 825 mm (72 in.) vertically above a rung, cleat, or step. The minimum distance from the top rung, cleat, or step to the top of the pit ladder or handhold shall not be less than 1 200 mm (48 in.) (see 2.2.4.2.1 and Nonmandatory Appendix J, Figure J-1), and

(c) with the door in the closed position, in a plane not more than 1 000 mm (39 in.) horizontally from a rung, cleat, or step of the pit ladder (see Nonmandatory Appendix J, Figure J-1).

2.2.5 Illumination of Pits

A permanent lighting fixture shall be provided and shall conform to 2.2.5.1 through 2.2.5.3.

2.2.5.1 The lighting shall provide illumination of not less than 100 lx (10 fc) at the pit floor and at a pit platform, when provided.

2.2.5.2 The light bulb(s) shall be externally guarded to prevent contact and accidental breakage.

2.2.5.3 The light switch shall be located to be accessible from the pit access door.

2.2.6 Stop Switch in Pits

One or more enclosed stop switches meeting the requirements of 2.2.6.1, 2.2.6.2, and 2.26.2.7 shall be installed in the pit of each elevator.

2.2.6.1 The stop switch shall be located to be accessible from the pit access door. Where access to the pits of elevators in a multiple hoistway is by means of a single access door, the stop switch for each elevator shall be located adjacent to the nearest point of access to its pit from the access door.

2.2.6.2 In elevators where access to the pit is through the lowest landing hoistway door, a stop switch shall be located approximately 450 mm (18 in.) above the floor level of the landing, within reach from this access floor and adjacent to the pit ladder, if provided. When the pit exceeds 1 700 mm (67 in.) in depth, an additional stop switch is required adjacent to the pit ladder and approximately 1 200 mm (47 in.) above the pit floor. Where more than one switch is provided, they shall be wired in series.

2.2.7 Minimum Pit Depths Required

The pit depth shall be not less than is required for the installation of the buffers, compensating sheaves, if any, and all other elevator equipment located therein and to provide the minimum bottom car clearance and runby required by 2.4.1.

2.2.8 Access to Underside of Car

Where the distance from the pit floor to the underside of the plank channels or slings exceeds 2 100 mm (83 in.), with the car at the lowest landing, a means shall be permanently installed or permanently stored in the pit to provide access to the equipment on the underside of the car. When access is provided by means of a working platform, the platform shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.5.3.2 through 2.7.5.3.6.

(22) 2.2.9 Flood Detection Means

For elevators required to comply with Section 8.12, where there is the potential for any part of the elevator to descend or operate below the flood elevation during a flood event, the elevator shall be equipped with a flood detection means (see 2.27.13), located in the pit at a location between 150 mm and 300 mm (6 in. and 12 in.) above the pit floor.

SECTION 2.3

LOCATION AND GUARDING OF COUNTERWEIGHTS

2.3.1 Location of Counterweights

Counterweights shall be located in the hoistway of the elevator that they serve, or in a remote hoistway subject to the limitations and requirements of 2.3.3.

2.3.2 Counterweight Guards

2.3.2.1 Metal guards shall be installed in the pit and/or a machine room or control room located underneath the hoistway on all open sides of the counterweight runway, except that

(a) the guard, or portion thereof, is not required on the side facing the car where there is no space greater than 500 mm (20 in.) between any adjacent combination of compensation means, suspension means, counterweight rails, and guard(s) that blocks the access to the counterweight runway

(b) where pit-mounted buffers are used, the guard is not required where the bottom of the counterweight resting on its compressed buffer is 2 130 mm (84 in.) or more above the pit floor, or above the machine room floor or control room floor if located underneath the hoistway

2.3.2.2 Guards shall

(a) extend from the lowest part of the counterweight assembly when the counterweight is resting on the fully compressed buffer to a point not less than 2 100 mm (83 in.) and not more than 2 450 mm (96 in.) above the pit floor

(b) be the full width of the area being guarded

(c) not prevent determination of the counterweight runby

(d) be fastened to a metal frame reinforced and braced to be at least equal in strength and stiffness to 2 mm (0.074 in.) thick sheet steel

(e) if perforated, reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter

2.3.2.3 Guarding of Counterweights in a Multiple-Elevator Hoistway. Where a counterweight is located between elevators, the counterweight runway shall be guarded on the side next to the adjacent elevator. The guard shall be of noncombustible material. The guard, if of openwork material, shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter and be made from material equal to or stronger than 1.110 mm (0.0437 in.) diameter wire. The guard shall be supported such that when subjected to a force of 450 N (100 lbf) applied over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) at any location, the deflection shall not reduce the clearance between the guard and the counterweight below 25 mm (1 in.).

2.3.3 Remote Counterweight Hoistways

Where elevators are not provided with either compensating means or counterweight safeties, the counterweights shall be permitted to be located in a remote hoistway conforming to 2.3.3.1 through 2.3.3.6.

2.3.3.1 The hoistway shall be fully enclosed and shall have a fire-resistance rating conforming to 2.1.1.1 if it penetrates a fire barrier.

2.3.3.2 Construction at the top and bottom of the hoistway shall conform to 2.1.2.

2.3.3.3 Permanent means shall be provided for inspection, repair, and maintenance of the counterweight, deflecting and secondary sheaves, hoistway, ropes, counterweight guide rails, and counterweight buffers or bumpers. Entry doors into the separate counterweight hoistway shall be provided at the top, bottom, and center of the counterweight hoistway, but in no case shall the entry doors be more than 11 m (36 ft) from sill to sill. Doors shall be located and of such width to provide unobstructed access to the space between the counterweight guides. The height of the door shall be at least 1 975 mm (78 in.). Doors shall conform to 2.11.1.2(b) through 2.11.1.2(e), inclusive. An enclosed stop switch, meeting the requirements of 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c), a permanent electric light switch, duplex receptacle, and light shall be provided in the hoistway immediately inside the entry door.

2.3.3.4 Ropes and sheaves leading to the separate counterweight hoistways shall be protected against unauthorized access.

2.3.3.5 Not more than four counterweights shall be located in a single separate counterweight hoistway. Multiple counterweights located in a single hoistway shall be separated by means of an unperforated metal guard at the top, bottom, and center of the hoistway.

Guards shall extend a minimum of 2 450 mm (96 in.) in length opposite the entry door. Doors and all other means described in 2.3.3.3 shall be provided for each counterweight.

2.3.3.6 There shall be a clearance of not less than 600 mm (24 in.) between the weight in the counterweight frame and the wall containing the entry door.

2.3.4 Counterweight Runway Enclosures

Where a counterweight is located in the same hoistway as the car, the runway for the counterweight shall be permitted to be separated from the runway for the car, provided it conforms to 2.3.4.1 and 2.3.4.2.

2.3.4.1 The partition shall be noncombustible. Unperforated metal partitions shall be equal to or stronger than 1.2 mm (0.047 in.) thick sheet steel. Openwork partitions shall be either wire grille at least 2.2 mm (0.087 in.) in diameter or expanded metal at least 2.2 mm (0.087 in.) in thickness.

2.3.4.2 The counterweight runway shall be permitted to be fully enclosed for the full height, provided that the partitions are removable in sections weighing not more than 25 kg (55 lb), to permit inspection and maintenance of the entire counterweight assembly and to permit inspection of the counterweight guide rails and guide-rail brackets.

SECTION 2.4 VERTICAL CLEARANCES AND RUNBYS FOR CARS AND COUNTERWEIGHTS

2.4.1 Bottom Car Clearances

2.4.1.1 When the car rests on its fully compressed buffers or bumpers, there shall be a vertical clearance of not less than 600 mm (24 in.) between the pit floor and the lowest structural or mechanical part, equipment, or device installed beneath the car platform, except as specified in 2.4.1.2.

2.4.1.2 The 600 mm (24 in.) clearance does not apply to

(a) any equipment on the car within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from any side of the car platform

(b) any equipment located on or traveling with the car located within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from either side of the car frame centerline parallel to the plane of the guide rails

(c) any equipment mounted in or on the pit floor located within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from either side of the car frame centerline parallel to the guide rail

2.4.1.3 In no case shall the available refuge space be less than either of the following:

(a) a horizontal area of 600 mm × 1 200 mm (24 in. × 48 in.) with a height of 600 mm (24 in.)

(b) a horizontal area of 450 mm × 900 mm (18 in. × 35 in.) with a height of 1 070 mm (42 in.)

2.4.1.4 Trenches and depressions or foundation encroachments permitted by 2.2.2.2 shall not be considered in determining these clearances.

2.4.1.5 When the car is resting on its fully compressed buffers or bumpers, no part of the car, or any equipment attached thereto or equipment traveling with the car, shall strike any part of the pit or any equipment mounted therein.

2.4.1.6 Any area in the pit, outside the refuge space, where the vertical clearance is less than 600 mm (24 in.) shall be clearly marked on the pit floor. Markings shall not be required in the area under the platform guard and guiding means if that is the only area in the pit where the vertical clearance is less than 600 mm (24 in.). The marking shall consist of alternating 100 mm (4 in.) diagonal red and white stripes. In addition, a sign with the words "DANGER LOW CLEARANCE" shall be prominently posted on the hoistway enclosure and be visible from within the pit and the entrance to the pit. The sign shall

(a) conform to the requirements of ANSI Z535.4 or CAN/CSA-Z321 (see Part 9)

(b) be made of durable material and shall be securely fastened

2.4.2 Minimum Bottom Runby for Counterweighted Elevators

(22)

When new suspension means are provided, the bottom runby of cars and counterweights shall be not less than the requirements stated in 2.4.2.1 and 2.4.2.2.

2.4.2.1 Where oil buffers are used, the bottom runby shall be not less than 150 mm (6 in.), except that

(a) where practical difficulties prevent a sufficient pit depth or where a top clearance cannot be provided to obtain the runby specified, it shall be permitted to be reduced

(b) where spring-return-type oil buffers are used, the runby shall be permitted to be eliminated so that the buffers are compressed by amounts not exceeding those permitted by 2.22.4.8, when the car floor is level with the terminal landings

2.4.2.2 Where spring buffers, elastomeric buffers, or solid bumpers are used, the bottom runby shall be not less than 150 mm (6 in.).

2.4.3 Minimum Bottom Runby for Uncounterweighted Elevators

The bottom runby of uncounterweighted elevators shall be not less than

(a) 75 mm (3 in.) where the rated speed does not exceed 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min)

(b) 150 mm (6 in.) where the rated speed exceeds 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min)

2.4.4 Maximum Bottom Runby

In no case shall the maximum bottom runby exceed

(a) 600 mm (24 in.) for cars

(b) 900 mm (35 in.) for counterweights

2.4.5 Counterweight Runby Data Plate

A data plate permanently and securely attached shall be provided in the pit, in the vicinity of the counterweight buffer, indicating the maximum designed counterweight runby. The data plate shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the letters shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.) in height.

2.4.6 Maximum Upward Movement of the Car

2.4.6.1 Counterweighted Elevators. The maximum upward movement of a counterweighted elevator above the top landing shall be no more than the sum of either of the following:

(a) for elevators without tie-down compensation, dimensions specified in 2.4.6.1.1(a) through 2.4.6.1.1(c)

(b) for elevators with tie-down compensation, dimensions specified in 2.4.6.1.1(a), 2.4.6.1.1(b), and 2.4.6.1.1(d)

2.4.6.1.1 The following shall be used when calculating the maximum upward movement of a counterweighted elevator:

(a) the designed maximum bottom counterweight runby [see 2.4.4(b)]

(b) the stroke of the counterweight buffer, determined as follows:

(1) for full-stroke buffers, the stroke of the buffer used or the remaining stroke when the buffer is compressed with the car at the top terminal landing (see 2.4.2 and 2.22.4.8)

(2) for reduced-stroke oil buffers (see 2.22.4.1.2), the stroke of the buffer used

(c) one-half of the gravity stopping distance, based on

(1) 115% of the rated speed where oil buffers are used, or 115% of the reduced striking speed when emergency terminal speed-limiting devices meeting the requirements of 2.25.4 are used and no compensating-rope tie-down device in conformance with 2.21.4.2 is provided (see 8.2.4 for gravity stopping distances)

(2) the governor tripping speed where spring buffers or elastomeric buffers are used

(d) the distance to which the compensating-rope tie-down device, if provided (see 2.21.4.2), limits the jump of the car when the counterweight strikes the buffers at speeds specified in (c) plus the distance to account for the amount of compensation rope stretch

2.4.6.2 Uncounterweighted Elevators. The maximum upward movement of an uncounterweighted elevator above the top landing shall be no more than the distance from the top landing to the point

(a) where the driving machine operates the final terminal stopping switch (see 2.25.3.3.2) for a winding-drum machine

(b) where the car operates the upper final terminal stopping device (see 2.25.3.3.1) plus gravity stopping distance based on 115% of the rated speed for a traction machine

2.4.7 Top-of-Car Clearances

2.4.7.1 When the car has reached its maximum upward movement, the clearance above the car top, measured vertically up to the horizontal plane described by the lowest part of the overhead structure or other obstruction and measured within the projection of the car enclosure top exclusive of the area outside the standard railing (see 2.10.2), where provided, shall be not less than 1 100 mm (43 in.). In no case shall the following additional clearances be less than:

(a) 600 mm (24 in.) above the car crosshead assembly except as permitted in (b) when the crosshead is located over the car enclosure top or the distance that any sheave assembly mounted in or on the crosshead projects above the top of the car crosshead, whichever is greater, but in no case shall there be less than 150 mm (6 in.) clearance above the sheave assembly.

(b) 300 mm (12 in.) above the car crosshead assembly where the crosshead is adjacent to the car enclosure top. The crosshead shall not overlap the car enclosure top by more than 100 mm (4 in.) horizontally.

(c) 600 mm (24 in.) above equipment attached to and projecting above the car enclosure top, exclusive of

(1) standard railings (see also 2.14.1.7.2)

(2) areas outside of the standard railing, where the vertical clearance shall be not less than 100 mm (4 in.)

(3) roller and sliding guide assemblies (see also 2.4.9)

(4) gatepost(s) for vertically sliding gates (see also 2.4.9). Spreader bars between gateposts with horizontal and vertical clearances not in compliance with 2.14.1.7.2 shall have yellow and black diagonal stripes not less than 25 mm (1 in.) wide along the length of the spreader bar, mounted at a location visible from the car top

2.4.7.2 Any horizontal area above the car enclosure top and within the railing, if supplied, that could contain a circle with a diameter equal to or greater than 350 mm (14 in.) that does not have a vertical clearance of 1 100 mm (43 in.) when the car has reached its maximum upward movement shall be clearly marked. The marking shall consist of alternating 50 mm (2 in.) diagonal red and white stripes. In addition, when markings are provided, sign(s) with the words "DANGER LOW

CLEARANCE” shall be prominently posted on the cross-head and be visible from the hoistway entrance(s). The sign(s) shall

(a) conform to the requirements of ANSI Z535.4 or CAN/CSA-Z321 (see [Part 9](#))

(b) be made of durable material and shall be securely fastened

NOTE (2.4.7): See [Nonmandatory Appendix G](#).

2.4.8 Top of Counterweight Clearances

The top of counterweight clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following items:

- (a) the bottom car runby (see [2.4.2](#))
- (b) the stroke of the car buffer used, or the remaining stroke when the buffer is compressed with the car at the bottom terminal landing (see [2.4.2](#) and [2.22.4.8](#))
- (c) 150 mm (6 in.)
- (d) one-half of the gravity stopping distance based on
 - (1) 115% of the rated speed where oil buffers are used, or 115% of the reduced striking speed when emergency terminal speed-limiting devices meeting the requirements of [2.25.4](#) are used and no provision is made to prevent the jump of the car at counterweight buffer engagement
 - (2) the governor tripping speed where spring buffers or elastomeric buffers are used (see [8.2.5](#) for gravity stopping distances)
- (e) the distance to which the compensating-rope tie-down device, if provided (see [2.21.4.2](#)), limits the jump of the counterweight when the car strikes the buffers at speeds specified in (d) plus the distance to account for the amount of compensation rope stretch

2.4.9 Equipment on Top of Car Not Permitted to Strike Overhead Structure

When the car has reached its maximum upward movement ([2.4.6](#)), roller and sliding guide assemblies and gateposts for vertically sliding gates shall not strike any part of the overhead structure or the equipment located in the hoistway.

SECTION 2.5 HORIZONTAL CAR AND COUNTERWEIGHT CLEARANCES

2.5.1 Clearances Between Cars, Counterweights, and Hoistway Enclosures

2.5.1.1 Between Car and Hoistway Enclosures. The clearance between the car and the hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 20 mm (0.8 in.), except on the sides used for loading and unloading.

2.5.1.2 Between Car and Counterweight and Counterweight Guard. The clearance between the car and the counterweight shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.). The clearance between the car and the counterweight guard, between the counterweight and the counterweight guard, and between the counterweight and the hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 20 mm (0.8 in.).

2.5.1.3 Between Cars in Multiple Hoistways. The running clearance between the cars and any equipment attached thereto, of elevators operating in a multiple hoistway, shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.).

2.5.1.4 Between Car and Landing Sills. The clearance between the car platform sill and the hoistway edge of any landing sill, or the hoistway side of any vertically sliding counterweighted or counterbalanced hoistway door, or of any vertically sliding counterbalanced biparting hoistway door shall be not less than

- (a) where car side guides are used
 - (1) 13 mm (0.5 in.) for all elevators except freight elevators
 - (2) 20 mm (0.8 in.) for freight elevators
 - (b) where car corner guides are used, 20 mm (0.8 in.)
- The maximum clearance shall be not more than 32 mm (1.25 in.).

2.5.1.5 Clearance Between Loading Side of Car Platforms and Hoistway Enclosures

2.5.1.5.1 The clearance between the edge of the car platform sill and the hoistway enclosure or fascia plate for the full width of the clear hoistway door opening shall be not more than

- (a) 190 mm (7.5 in.) for vertically sliding doors
- (b) 125 mm (5 in.) for other doors

2.5.1.5.2 This clearance shall be maintained until the car is resting on its fully compressed buffer.

2.5.1.5.3 The clearance is not limited on passenger elevators, provided that

- (a) a car door interlock conforming to [2.14.4.2](#) is provided to prevent a door from being opened unless the car is within the unlocking zone (see [2.12.1](#))
- (b) the strength of the door complies with [2.11.11.2](#), [2.11.11.4](#), and [2.11.11.6](#) through [2.11.11.8](#)

2.5.1.6 Clearance Between Car Platform Apron and Pit Enclosure. Where the lowest landing sill projects into the hoistway, the clearance between the car platform apron and the pit enclosure or fascia plate shall be not more than 32 mm (1.25 in.). This clearance shall be maintained until the car is resting on its fully compressed buffer.

2.5.1.7 Measurement of Clearances. The clearances specified in [2.5.1](#) shall be measured with no load on the car platform.

SECTION 2.6 PROTECTION OF SPACE BELOW HOISTWAYS

Where a hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building and there is accessible space below the hoistway, the requirements of 2.6.1 and 2.6.2 shall be complied with.

2.6.1 Where the Space Is Underneath the Counterweight and/or Its Guides

Where the space is underneath the counterweight and/or its guides

(a) the counterweight shall be provided with a counterweight safety conforming to 2.17.4

(b) spring buffers, if used, shall conform to Section 2.22, except that they shall not be fully compressed when struck by the counterweight at the following speeds (see 2.1.2.3):

- (1) at governor tripping speed where the counterweight safety is governor operated
- (2) 125% of the rated speed where the counterweight safety is not governor operated

2.6.2 Where the Space Is Underneath the Car and/or Its Guides

Where the space is underneath the car and/or its guides and if spring buffers are used, the buffers shall be designed and installed so that they will not be fully compressed solid or to a fixed stop when struck by the car with its rated load at the governor tripping speed (see 2.1.2.3).

SECTION 2.7 MACHINERY SPACES, MACHINE ROOMS, CONTROL SPACES, AND CONTROL ROOMS

A machinery space outside the hoistway containing an electric driving machine and a motor controller shall be a machine room.

2.7.1 Enclosure of Rooms and Spaces

Machinery space and control space enclosures located outside the hoistway and machine room and control room enclosures shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.1.1 or 2.7.1.2, and shall also conform to 2.7.1.3, as applicable.

2.7.1.1 Fire-Resistive Construction. Where the building code requires fire-resistive construction, the construction shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.1.1.1 and 2.7.1.1.2.

2.7.1.1.1 Spaces containing machines, motor controllers, sheaves, and other machinery shall be separated from the remainder of the building by a fire-resistive enclosure conforming to the requirements of the building code.

2.7.1.1.2 Openings in room and space enclosures shall be protected with access doors having a fire-protection rating conforming to the requirements of the building code.

NOTES (2.7.1.1):

- (1) See 2.1.3 for floors of machine rooms and control rooms over the hoistway.
- (2) See 2.8.1 for separating elevator machinery from building machinery.
- (3) See 2.1.1.1.2 for partitions between machine rooms and hoistways.

2.7.1.2 Non-Fire-Resistive Construction. Where the building code does not require fire-resistive construction, the construction shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.1.2.1 and 2.7.1.2.2.

2.7.1.2.1 Enclosure of the rooms or spaces shall comply with the following:

(a) Machine rooms and control rooms shall be enclosed with noncombustible material to a height of not less than 2 000 mm (79 in.).

(b) Machinery spaces shall be enclosed with noncombustible material to a height of not less than 2 000 mm (79 in.), or to the height of the machinery space if it is less than 2 000 mm (79 in.).

(c) Control spaces shall be enclosed with noncombustible material to a height of not less than 2 000 mm (79 in.).

2.7.1.2.2 The room and space enclosure, if of open-work material, shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

2.7.1.3 Floors

2.7.1.3.1 Difference in Floor Levels. Where there is a difference in level exceeding 400 mm (16 in.), a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2 shall be provided (see also 2.7.3.3.1 and 2.7.3.3.2).

NOTE: Differences in levels of floors should be avoided where practicable.

2.7.1.3.2 Where machine beams are provided, the floor shall be located above or level with the top of the machine beams.

2.7.2 Maintenance Path and Clearance

2.7.2.1 Maintenance Path in Machine Rooms and Control Rooms. A clear path of not less than 450 mm (18 in.) shall be provided to all components that require maintenance.

2.7.2.2 Maintenance Path in Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces. All components requiring maintenance in machinery spaces and control spaces shall have safe and convenient access.

2.7.2.3 Maintenance Clearance in Machine Rooms and Control Rooms. A clearance of not less than 450 mm (18 in.) shall be provided in the direction required for maintenance access.

2.7.2.4 Maintenance Clearance in Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces

2.7.2.4.1 Where a space is intended to be accessed with full bodily entry, the requirements of 2.7.2.3 shall apply.

2.7.2.4.2 Where a space is not intended to be accessed with full bodily entry, all components requiring maintenance shall have safe and convenient access.

NOTE (2.7.2): For electrical clearance requirements, see NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

2.7.3 Access to Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

2.7.3.1 General Requirements

2.7.3.1.1 A permanent and unobstructed means of access shall be provided to

- (a) machine rooms and control rooms
- (b) machinery spaces and control spaces outside the hoistway
- (c) machinery spaces and control spaces inside the hoistway that do not have a means of access to the space as specified in 2.7.3.1.2

2.7.3.1.2 Access to machinery spaces and control spaces inside the hoistway

- (a) from the pit shall comply with 2.2.4 and 2.7.5.2.4
- (b) from the car top shall comply with 2.12.6 and 2.12.7
- (c) from a platform shall comply with 2.7.5.3.5
- (d) from inside the car shall comply with 2.7.5.1.4

2.7.3.1.3 Access to other locations within the building or access to machinery and equipment not related to elevators through the machinery space, machine room, control spaces, or control rooms shall not be permitted.

2.7.3.2 Passage Across Roofs. The requirements of 2.7.3.2.1 and 2.7.3.2.2 shall be conformed to where passage over roofs is necessary to reach the means of access to machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms.

2.7.3.2.1 A stairway with a swinging door and platform at the top level, conforming to 2.7.3.3, shall be provided from the top floor of the building to the roof level. Hatch covers, as a means of access to roofs, shall not be permitted.

2.7.3.2.2 Where the passage is over a roof having a slope exceeding 15 deg from the horizontal, or over a roof where there is no parapet or guardrail at least 1 070 mm (42 in.) high around the roof or passageway, a permanent,

unobstructed, and substantial walkway not less than 600 mm (24 in.) wide, equipped on each side with a railing conforming to 2.10.2, shall be provided from the building exit door at the roof level to the means of access.

2.7.3.3 Means of Access. The means of access to the following shall conform to 2.7.3.3.1 through 2.7.3.3.6:

(a) machine rooms, control rooms, and machinery spaces and control spaces outside the hoistway and machinery spaces and control spaces inside the hoistway that do not have a means of access to the space as specified in 2.7.3.1.2

(b) between different floor levels in machine rooms, in control rooms, and in machinery spaces or control spaces outside the hoistway

(c) from within machine rooms or control rooms to machinery spaces and control spaces

2.7.3.3.1 A permanent, fixed, noncombustible ladder or stair shall be provided where the floor of the room or the space above or below the floor or roof from which the means of access leads, or where the distance between floor levels in the room or space is more than 200 mm (8 in.).

2.7.3.3.2 A permanent, noncombustible stair shall be provided where the floor of the room or the space above or below the floor or roof from which the means of access leads, or where the distance between floor levels in the room or space is 900 mm (35 in.) or more. Vertical ladders with handgrips shall be permitted to be used in lieu of stairs for access to overhead machinery spaces, except those containing controllers or motor-generators.

2.7.3.3.3 Permanent, fixed, noncombustible ladders shall conform to ANSI A14.3.

2.7.3.3.4 Permanent, noncombustible stairs shall have a maximum angle of 60 deg from the horizontal and shall be equipped with a noncombustible railing conforming to 2.10.2.1 through 2.10.2.3.

2.7.3.3.5 A permanent, noncombustible platform or floor shall be provided at the top of the stairs conforming to the following:

(a) Railings conforming to 2.10.2 shall be provided on each open side.

(b) The floor of the platform shall be at the level not more than 200 mm (8 in.) below the level of the access-door sill.

(c) The depth of the platform shall be not less than 750 mm (29.5 in.), and the width not less than the width of the door.

(d) The size of the platform shall be sufficient to permit the full swing of the door plus 600 mm (24 in.) from the top riser to the swing line of the door.

2.7.3.3.6 Where a ladder is provided, a permanent, noncombustible platform or floor shall be provided at the top of the ladder, conforming to the following:

(a) Railings conforming to 2.10.2 shall be provided on each open side.

(b) The floor of the platform shall be located below the level of the access-door sill by a vertical distance of not more than 200 mm (8 in.) where full bodily entry is required, and by a vertical distance of not more than 900 mm (35 in.) where full bodily entry is not required.

(c) The depth of the platform shall be not less than 915 mm (36 in.) and the width not less than the width of the door or a minimum of 915 mm (36 in.), whichever is greater.

(d) The size of the platform shall be sufficient to permit the full swing of the door plus 600 mm (24 in.) from the standard railing to the swing line of the door.

(e) The ladder or handgrips shall extend a minimum of 1 220 mm (48 in.) above the platform floor level and shall be located on the access door/panel strike jamb side of the platform.

(f) The railing on the access side shall be provided with a hinged section not less than 600 mm (24 in.) wide with a latchable end adjacent to the ladder.

2.7.3.4 Access Doors and Openings

2.7.3.4.1 Access doors shall be

- (a) self-closing and self-locking
- (b) provided with a spring-type lock arranged to permit the doors to be opened from the inside without a key
- (c) kept closed and locked

2.7.3.4.2 Access doors to machine rooms and control rooms shall be provided. They shall be a minimum width of 750 mm (29.5 in.) and a minimum height of 2 030 mm (80 in.). Keys to unlock the access doors shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.7.3.4.3 Access doors for spaces specified in 2.7.4.2 through 2.7.4.4 other than those for machine rooms or control rooms shall be a minimum width and height of 750 mm (29.5 in.). Keys to unlock the access doors shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.7.3.4.4 Access doors for control spaces outside the hoistway shall be a minimum width and height of 750 mm (29.5 in.). Keys to unlock the access doors shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.7.3.4.5 Doors are not required at openings in machine room or control room floors for access to machinery spaces outside the hoistway, provided the access opening is provided on all four sides with a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2, one side of which is arranged to slide or swing to provide access to the ladder or stairs leading to the space. Trap doors, where provided, shall have a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2 or guard wings on all open nonaccess sides.

2.7.3.4.6 Access openings located in the machinery space floor, secondary level floor, machine room floor, control space floor, or control room floor for access into the hoistway shall be provided with doors that shall be kept closed and locked. Keys to unlock the access doors shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.7.3.4.7 Access openings in elevator hoistway enclosures where full bodily entry is not necessary for maintenance and inspection of components shall be

(a) located to permit the required maintenance and inspection.

(b) a maximum width of 600 mm (24 in.) and a maximum height of 600 mm (24 in.). These dimensions shall be permitted to be increased, provided that any resultant opening through the access opening into the hoistway shall reject a 300 mm (12 in.) diameter ball.

(c) provided with doors that shall be kept closed and locked. Keys to unlock the access doors to the elevator hoistways shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.7.3.5 Stop Switch for Machinery Spaces or Control Spaces. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.24, or a disconnecting means where required by NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), accessible and visible from the point of access to machinery spaces or control spaces shall be provided for each elevator. Where access to machinery spaces is from the pit, from the top of the car, or from inside the car, the stop switch in the pit, the stop switch on top of the car, or, where provided, the emergency stop switch in the car, respectively, shall meet these requirements.

2.7.4 Headroom in Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

2.7.4.1 Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, and machinery spaces containing an elevator driving machine not located in the hoistway shall have a clear headroom of not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.). (See also 2.7.4.5.)

2.7.4.2 Where a floor or platform is provided at the top of the hoistway (see 2.1.3), machinery spaces above such a floor or platform shall have a clear headroom of not less than the following:

- (a) spaces containing motor-generators, 2 130 mm (84 in.)
- (b) spaces containing only overhead, secondary, or deflecting sheaves, 1 070 mm (42 in.)
- (c) spaces containing overhead, secondary, or deflecting sheaves, and governors, signal machines, or other equipment, 1 350 mm (53 in.)

2.7.4.3 Where floors are provided under overhead, secondary, or deflecting sheaves [see 2.7.4.2(b) and 2.7.4.2(c)], the machine and supporting beams shall be permitted to encroach on the required headroom, provided there is a clearance not less than 900 mm

(35 in.) high and a minimum width of 750 mm (29.5 in.) in the path of access to sheaves, governors, signal machines, or other equipment.

2.7.4.4 Where a machinery space is located outside but not above the hoistway, the headroom of the area from which any work is performed on the equipment located inside such space shall be not less than 2 000 mm (78 in.), except

(a) in spaces containing motor-generators, the headroom shall be not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.)

(b) in spaces containing only overhead, secondary, or deflecting sheaves, the headroom shall be not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.)

(c) in spaces containing overhead, secondary, or deflecting sheaves, and governors, signal machines, or other equipment, the headroom shall be not less than 1 350 mm (53 in.)

(d) as permitted in 2.7.4.3

2.7.4.5 When working from inside the car, from the top of the car in accordance with 2.7.5.1, or from the pit in accordance with 2.7.5.2, the headroom when the means required by 2.7.5.1 or 2.7.5.2 are engaged shall

(a) comply with the height of the working space requirements of NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9)

(b) in no case be less than 1 350 mm (53 in.)

2.7.4.6 Control spaces outside the hoistway intended for full bodily entry shall have a clear headroom of not less than 2 000 mm (78 in.) or the height of the equipment, whichever is greater.

NOTE: For control spaces outside the hoistway not intended for full bodily entry, see NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

2.7.5 Working Areas Inside the Hoistway and in the Pit

2.7.5.1 Working Areas in the Car or on the Car Top. The requirements of 2.7.5.1.1 through 2.7.5.1.4 shall be complied with if maintenance or inspections of the elevator driving-machine brake, emergency brake, elevator motion controller, or motor controller are to be carried out from inside the car or from the car top.

2.7.5.1.1 If maintenance or inspection of the elevator driving-machine brake or an emergency brake, or of elevator motion controllers or motor controllers from inside the car or from the car top could result in unexpected vertical car movement, a means to prevent this movement shall be provided.

2.7.5.1.2 The means shall

(a) be independent of the elevator driving-machine brake, emergency brake, motion controller, and motor controller.

(b) support not less than the unbalanced weight of the system with no load and up to rated load (see also 2.16.8) in the car and all suspension ropes in place. The minimum factor of safety shall be not less than 3.5, and the materials used shall not have an elongation of less than 15% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E8.

(c) when in the engaged position, actuate an electrical device conforming to 2.26.2.34, which shall cause the power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

(d) not cause stresses and deflections that exceed the applicable requirements for the structure(s) to which the means transmits load based on 100% of the static unbalanced weight of the system (see also 2.16.8).

(e) have a sign in conformance with the requirements of ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable, that shall be prominently posted in the work area stating, "WARNING! Engage _____ before maintaining or inspecting brake, emergency brake, or controller. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for use of _____" (see 8.6.11.7). Unless the means has been designed to support not less than the unsuspended car with rated load (see also 2.16.8), it shall also contain the following wording: "Elevator suspension means must be in place during use." Where there is no maintenance or inspection required that could cause unexpected car motion and where it is not necessary to engage the means, the words "brake, emergency brake, or" may be omitted from the sign.

NOTE: Substitute the actual name of the means for "_____" in the above signage.

(f) be designed to prevent accidental disengagement.

(g) when engaged, not require electrical power or the completion or maintenance of an electrical circuit to remain engaged.

2.7.5.1.3 When the means required in 2.7.5.1.1 is engaged, egress from the working area shall be provided (see also 2.7.3.4.3 and 8.6.11.7).

The use of the car top emergency exit for egress and reentry is permitted subject to the following:

(a) All edges of the exit opening are smooth and free of burrs.

(b) Means shall be provided to descend safely to the floor of the car and to subsequently ascend safely to the car top.

(c) The means required in 2.7.5.1.1 shall not be arranged to be engaged at a position that would permit a vertical gap between the bottom of the vertical face of the platform guard and the elevator landing sill.

2.7.5.1.4 If provided, equipment access panels in the car for access to equipment outside the car shall comply with 2.14.2.2(g)(1), 2.14.2.2(g)(2), and 2.14.2.2(g)(5) and shall be provided with

(a) a key-operated lock capable of being locked without a key

(b) an electrical switch that shall cause the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake when the access panel is open (see 2.26.2.35)

(c) a key that shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1)

The access panels shall be kept closed and locked, shall not be self-closing, and shall be self-locking.

2.7.5.2 Working Areas in the Pit. The requirements of 2.7.5.2.1 through 2.7.5.2.4 shall be complied with if maintenance or inspections of the elevator driving-machine brake or an emergency brake or of elevator motion controllers or motor controllers are to be carried out from the pit.

2.7.5.2.1 One of the following shall be provided:

(a) a means in compliance with 2.7.5.1.1, 2.7.5.1.2, and 2.7.4.5

(b) a mechanical device to stop vertical car movement to create a vertical clearance as required by 2.7.4.5 between the floor of the working area and the lowest part of the car, and between the floor of the working area and the counterweight where a counterweight guard in conformance with 2.3.2 is not provided

(1) The mechanical device shall be able to stop vertical car movement at up to and including 115% of rated speed with rated load. The retardation shall not exceed that required by 2.22.3 or 2.22.4, as applicable.

(2) The mechanical device shall be permitted to be moved into the active position manually or automatically.

(3) When the mechanical device is in the active position, it shall operate an electrical contact that, when in the open position, shall permit the car to move only on Inspection Operation [see 2.26.1.4.1 and 2.26.9.3.1(d)]. The electrical contact shall be positively opened mechanically and its opening shall not depend solely on springs.

(4) A sign in conformance with the requirements of ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable, shall be prominently posted in the work area stating, "WARNING! Position _____ before maintaining or inspecting brake, emergency brake, or controller. Follow manufacturer's instructions for use of _____" (see 8.6.11.6).

NOTE: Substitute the actual name of the device for " _____ " in the above signage.

(5) The mechanical device shall be designed to prevent accidental movement from the active position.

(6) The mechanical device shall not require electrical power or the completion or maintenance of an electrical circuit to be maintained in the active position.

2.7.5.2.2 Pit Inspection Operation, in compliance with 2.26.1.4, shall be permitted to be provided in the pit (see 2.26.1.4.4).

2.7.5.2.3 When the means required in 2.7.5.2.1 is in the active position, safe and convenient egress from the working area shall be provided (see also 2.7.3.4.3 and 8.6.11.7).

(a) Where the egress is through the landing door

(1) the landing door shall be openable from the hoistway side

(2) the means shall be arranged to provide vertical clearance of not less than 1 220 mm (48 in.) between the bottom edge of the platform guard and the elevator landing

(b) Where the egress is through a separate pit access door, the door opening shall not be blocked by the car.

2.7.5.2.4 Where maintenance or inspections of the elevator driving-machine brake or an emergency brake or of elevator motion controllers or motor controllers are to be carried out from the pit, and the distance from the pit floor to this equipment is more than 2 100 mm (83 in.), a means shall be permanently installed or permanently stored in the pit to provide access to the equipment.

2.7.5.3 Working Platforms. A platform located in the car, on the car, or in the hoistway shall be permitted for access to and maintenance and inspection of equipment in machinery spaces or control spaces in the hoistway and shall comply with 2.7.5.3.1 through 2.7.5.3.6 (see also 8.6.11.9).

2.7.5.3.1 A working platform shall be permanently installed, and it shall be permitted to be retractable. Retractable platforms that are in the line of movement of the car or counterweight when in the operating position shall operate a working platform electrical device(s) (see 2.26.2.36), which shall cause the power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake unless the platform is in its fully retracted position (see 8.6.11.9).

2.7.5.3.2 A working platform shall be able to support in any position at least 2 000 N (450 lbf), with a load concentration of at least 1 000 N (225 lbf) over an area of 40 000 mm² (64 in.²) with a factor of safety not less than 5. If the platform is to be used for handling heavy equipment, the dimensions and the strength of the platform shall be considered accordingly.

2.7.5.3.3 A working platform shall be provided with a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2 on all open or exposed sides where a 300 mm (12 in.) ball can pass between the edges of the platform and the adjacent hoistway enclosure and the difference in level between the platform and the surrounding surface exceeds 400 mm (16 in.).

2.7.5.3.4 Where a car or counterweight passes within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from a working platform, a means of protection against shearing hazards shall be provided to a height as measured from the platform

standing surface of not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.), or not less than the maximum upward movement of the car or counterweight. The means shall be at least equal in strength and stiffness to 2 mm (0.074 in.) thick sheet steel. If perforated, it shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

2.7.5.3.5 Where the access to a working platform that is in the line of movement of the car or counterweight is not through the elevator landing doors, but through an access panel or door in the hoistway, the access panel or door shall meet the requirements of 2.11.1.2(b) and 2.11.1.2(d) through 2.11.1.2(i).

2.7.5.3.6 Working platform Inspection Operation, in compliance with 2.26.1.4, shall be permitted to be provided at the location of a working platform. (See 2.7.5.1 for additional requirements when the working platform is in the line of movement of the car.)

2.7.5.4 Working Platforms in the Line of Movement of the Car or Counterweight. Working platforms in the line of movement of the car or counterweight shall be permitted

(a) where retractable stops are provided and the car is

(1) below the platform, the travel of the elevator shall be limited by a retractable stop(s) in such a manner that the car shall be stopped below the platform at least the distance required for top-of-car clearance (see 2.4.7)

(2) above the platform, the travel of the elevator shall be limited by a retractable stop(s) in such a manner that the car shall be stopped above the platform at least the distance required in 2.7.4.5

(b) where the elevator is provided with a device conforming to 2.7.5.1.1 and 2.7.5.1.2

2.7.5.5 Retractable Stops. Retractable stops, where provided, shall

(a) be equipped with a retractable stop electrical device(s) (see 2.26.2.37), which shall cause the power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake, unless the stops are completely in the retracted position.

(b) be permitted to be equipped with an electrical device(s) that permits operation of the car only on Inspection Operation when the platform is in the operating position and the stop(s) is in the fully extended position. When provided with such an electrical device and the stop(s) is in the extended position, an additional stopping device conforming to 2.25.3.1 and 2.25.3.3 through 2.25.3.5 shall cause the car to stop before it strikes the movable stop(s). This additional stopping device shall be rendered ineffective when the stop(s) is in the retracted position. Any electrical device(s) used to render the additional stopping device ineffective shall be in conformance with 2.26.4.3, 2.26.9.3.1(a), 2.26.9.3.2, and 2.26.9.4.

(c) be operable from outside the hoistway or from the platform.

(d) be able to stop the car traveling at 115% of rated speed with rated load. The retardation shall not exceed that required by 2.22.3 or 2.22.4, as applicable.

(e) be designed to prevent accidental disengagement.

2.7.6 Location of Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, Control Rooms, and Equipment

2.7.6.1 Location of Machine Rooms and Control Rooms. Elevator machine rooms and control rooms, where provided, shall not be located in the hoistway.

2.7.6.2 Location of Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces. Machinery spaces and control spaces shall be permitted to be located inside or outside the hoistway.

NOTE: Inside the hoistway includes, but is not limited to, on or in the car, on the counterweight, or in the pit.

2.7.6.3 Location of Equipment. The location of equipment used directly in connection with the elevator shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.6.3.1 through 2.7.6.3.4. (22)

NOTE (2.7.6.3): See also 8.12.1 for additional requirements that could affect location of equipment.

2.7.6.3.1 The electric driving machine shall be located in a machinery space or machine room.

2.7.6.3.2 The motor controller shall be located in a machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

A motor controller shall be permitted to be located outside the specified spaces, provided it is enclosed in a locked cabinet. The locked cabinet shall be

(a) readily accessible for maintenance and inspection at all times.

(b) provided with cabinet door(s) or panel(s) that are not self-closing, that are self-locking, and that shall be kept closed and locked. Keys shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(c) lit by permanently installed electric lighting with a lighting intensity of at least 200 lx (19 fc) at the floor level.

(d) located in a space that is provided with natural or mechanical means to keep the ambient air temperature and humidity in the range specified by the elevator equipment manufacturer to ensure safe and normal operation of the elevator. The temperature and humidity range shall be permanently posted on the cabinet.

(e) labeled/marked "AGP" in accordance with the requirements of CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 (see 2.26.4.2).

(f) provided with a sign in conformance with the requirements of ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, which shall be prominently posted on the inside of the motor controller cabinet door indicating, in letters not less than 25 mm (1 in.) high, "DOOR TO BE CLOSED AND

LOCKED WHEN ELEVATOR PERSONNEL ARE NOT PRESENT AT THIS CONTROLLER.”

NOTE (2.7.6.3.2): For electrical clearance requirements, see NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

2.7.6.3.3 Where sheaves and other equipment (except governors) are located overhead inside the hoistway, they shall be provided with a means of access from outside the hoistway conforming to the requirements of 2.7.3.3, unless they can be inspected and serviced from the top of the car.

2.7.6.3.4 Where a governor is located inside the hoistway, means of access conforming to the requirements of 2.7.3.3 and 2.7.3.4 for inspection and servicing the governor shall be provided from outside the hoistway. The access opening shall not be required where

(a) the governor can be inspected and serviced from the top of the car or from an adjacent car, and the governor can be tripped for testing from the adjacent car or outside the hoistway; and means are furnished to prevent movement of the car when servicing the governor. A sign with the words “SECURE CAR AGAINST MOVEMENT BEFORE SERVICING THE GOVERNOR” shall be prominently posted and be visible from the governor. The sign shall conform to ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable. The sign shall be of such material and construction that the letters and figures stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied to the face shall remain permanently and readily legible; and

(b) for elevators in a single hoistway, the governor can be reset automatically when the car is moved in the up direction or the governor can be reset from outside the hoistway.

2.7.6.4 Means Necessary for Tests. Where an elevator driving-machine brake, an emergency brake, or an elevator motion controller or motor controller is located in the hoistway or pit, means necessary for tests that require movement of the car or release of the driving-machine brake or emergency brake shall be provided and arranged so that they can be operated from outside the hoistway. The means shall conform to 2.7.6.4.1 through 2.7.6.4.3. These means are also permitted to be used by elevator personnel for passenger rescue.

(22) **2.7.6.4.1** Where direct observation of the elevator drive sheave or ropes is not possible from the location of the means necessary for tests that require movement of the car or release of the driving-machine brake or emergency brake, display devices or the equivalent shall be provided. The display devices shall be visible from the location of the means and shall convey the following information about the elevator simultaneously:

- (a) the direction of movement
- (b) the reaching of a position within the door unlocking zone (see 2.12.1)

(c) an indication of the speed

The display devices or the equivalent shall remain operable during a failure of the normal building power. The auxiliary power supply or emergency or standby power shall be capable of providing for the operation of the display devices or the equivalent for at least 4 h. Where batteries are used, a monitoring system shall be provided. In the event that during normal operation of the car, the monitoring indicates insufficient power to operate the display devices or the equivalent, the car shall not be permitted to restart after a normal stop at a landing.

2.7.6.4.2 The means necessary for tests shall be permitted to be located within an inspection and test panel conforming to the requirements of 2.7.6.5.2.

2.7.6.4.3 A means to move the car from outside the hoistway shall be provided and shall conform to the following:

(a) It shall not be dependent on the availability of normal building power.

(b) It shall be accessible for operation by elevator personnel only with a key that is Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(c) It shall allow the car to move only with continuous effort.

(d) If the car is moved manually, the effort required to move the car in the direction of load imbalance shall not exceed 400 N (90 lbf). If the means used is removable, it shall be stored outside the hoistway, and access to the means shall be with a key that is Group 1 Security. The key shall be suitably marked to indicate the machine for which it is intended.

(e) Where the manual effort required to move the car exceeds 400 N (90 lbf), a means of electrical operation shall be provided to allow the car to be moved. This means of electrical operation shall require constant-pressure operating devices to move the car, and when activated, operation of the car by all other operating means shall be prevented. A failure of a single constant-pressure operating device shall not permit the elevator to move or continue to move. Where batteries are used for this electrical operation, a monitoring system shall be provided. In the event that during normal operation of the car the monitoring system indicates insufficient power to move the car, the car shall not be permitted to restart after a normal stop at a landing.

2.7.6.5 Inspection and Test Panel

2.7.6.5.1 The inspection and test panel shall be required where any of the following are not accessible from outside the hoistway:

(a) the devices necessary for the manual reset of the detection means for ascending car overspeed protection [see 2.19.1.2(a)(4)] and protection against unintended car movement [see 2.19.2.2(a)(4)]

(b) the circuits of the following devices:

- (1) the car-safety mechanism switch (see 2.26.2.9)
- (2) the car buffer switch, where provided (see 2.26.2.22)
- (3) the top and bottom final terminal stopping devices (see 2.26.2.11)
- (4) the car and counterweight governor switches, where provided (see 2.26.2.10)

2.7.6.5.2 The inspection and test panel, where provided, shall be accessible from outside the hoistway and shall

(a) be readily accessible for maintenance and inspection at all times.

(b) have the required devices located behind a locked door or panel that does not open into the hoistway, is not self-closing, is self-locking, and shall be kept closed and locked. Keys shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(c) be provided with a stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.24.

(d) be lit by permanently installed electric lighting with a lighting intensity of at least 200 lx (19 fc) at the floor level. A switch placed inside or close to the enclosure shall control lighting of the enclosure.

(e) include the display devices required by 2.7.6.4.1.

(f) include the "CAR DOOR BYPASS" and "HOISTWAY DOOR BYPASS" switches where required by 2.26.1.5.

(g) include the devices necessary for the manual reset of the detection means for ascending car overspeed protection [see 2.19.1.2(a)(4)] and protection against unintended car movement [see 2.19.2.2(a)(4)], where these devices are not accessible from outside the hoistway.

(h) where the circuits of the devices in 2.7.6.5.1(b) are not accessible from outside the hoistway, include landing Inspection Operation in conformance with 2.26.1.4.4, which shall be permitted to render ineffective the following electrical protective devices, individually or as a group or groups, in conformance with the requirements of 2.26.9.3.1(a), 2.26.9.3.2, and 2.26.9.4:

- (1) the car-safety mechanism switch (see 2.26.2.9)
- (2) the car buffer switch, where provided (see 2.26.2.22)
- (3) the top and bottom final terminal stopping devices (see 2.26.2.11)
- (4) the car and counterweight governor switches, where provided (see 2.26.2.10)

NOTE (2.7.6.5): For electrical clearance requirements, see NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). See also 2.8.3.3.2.

2.7.6.6 Equipment Exposed to the Weather. Machines, control equipment, sheaves, and other machinery shall not be exposed to the weather unless they are suitable for the application.

2.7.7 Machine Rooms and Control Rooms Underneath the Hoistway

When a machine room or control room is located underneath the hoistway, it shall conform to 2.7.7.1 through 2.7.7.5.

2.7.7.1 The machine room or control room shall have a solid ceiling (pit floor, at the normal pit depth) of concrete or steel above the machine room or control room, with a minimum 2 130 mm (84 in.) clearance above the machine room floor or control room floor.

2.7.7.2 The ceiling of the machine room or control room shall be capable of sustaining a concentrated load of 1 000 N (225 lbf) on any 2 000 mm² (3 in.²) area, and it shall be designed for a live load of 6 kPa (125 lbf/ft²) and loads imposed by rails and/or buffers, if applicable.

2.7.7.3 The car and counterweight guide rails and buffer supports shall be permitted to extend into the machine room and be supported by the machine room floor. If the counterweight buffer or buffer support extends to the machine room floor or control room floor, a counterweight safety is not required unless the space below the machine room is not permanently secured against access. If a counterweight buffer is supported at the machine room ceiling (pit floor), a counterweight safety is required. (See 2.6.1 for additional requirements.)

2.7.7.4 The solid ceiling (pit floor at normal pit depth) shall be permitted to be slotted for the penetration of equipment (suspension ropes, selector drives, electrical conduit, rails, buffers, etc.). Passage and guards shall be provided in conformance with 2.3.2 and 2.10.1 for both the machine room or control room and the pit. A counterweight guard shall be installed at the pit floor as well as the machine room floor or control room floor if the counterweight extends into the machine room or control room and 2.3.2.1(a) does not apply. The guard in the machine room or control room shall extend to the ceiling.

2.7.7.5 Compensating ropes or chains and traveling cables shall not extend into a machine room located underneath the hoistway.

2.7.8 Remote Machine Rooms, Control Rooms, and Control Spaces

Elevators that are provided with remote machine rooms, control rooms, or control spaces shall conform to 2.7.8.1 through 2.7.8.4.

2.7.8.1 Ropes and sheaves leading to remote machine rooms that penetrate fire barriers shall be fully enclosed, and the enclosures shall conform to 2.1.1.1.

2.7.8.2 Rope and sheave enclosures leading to remote machine rooms shall be protected against unauthorized access.

2.7.8.3 Permanent means of access shall be provided to the enclosures for inspection, repair, and maintenance of hoist ropes passing over sheaves that are not located in the hoistway or remote machine rooms. Access doors to these enclosures, conforming to 2.7.3.4, shall be provided at each sheave location. Access openings shall be provided for inspection and maintenance of hoist ropes passing over sheaves and shall conform to 2.7.3.4. A stop switch meeting the requirements of 2.26.2.23, a permanent electric duplex receptacle, a light switch, and light shall be provided in the enclosures immediately inside the access doors and openings for machine rooms, control rooms, and control spaces.

2.7.8.4 A permanent means of communication between the elevator car and remote machine rooms or control rooms shall be provided. A permanent means of communication between the elevator car and remote control spaces shall be provided when the remote control space contains means necessary for tests (see 2.7.6.4).

2.7.9 Lighting, Temperature, and Humidity in Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

2.7.9.1 Lighting. Permanently installed electric lighting shall be provided in all machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms. The illumination shall be not less than 200 lx (19 fc) at the floor level, at the standing surface of a working platform (see 2.7.5.3), or at the level of the standing surface when the car is in the blocked position (see 2.7.5.1). The light switch shall be located

(a) for machinery spaces and control spaces, at the point of entry

(b) for machine rooms and control rooms, inside the room and, where practicable, on the lock-jamb side of the access door

2.7.9.2 Temperature and Humidity. Machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall be provided with natural or mechanical means to keep the ambient air temperature and humidity in the range specified by the elevator equipment manufacturer to ensure safe and normal operation of the elevator. The temperature and humidity range shall be permanently posted in the machine room, control room, control space, or, where specified by the equipment manufacturer, in the machinery space.

SECTION 2.8 EQUIPMENT IN HOISTWAYS, MACHINERY SPACES, MACHINE ROOMS, CONTROL SPACES, AND CONTROL ROOMS

2.8.1 Equipment Allowed

(22)

Only machinery and equipment used directly in connection with the elevator shall be permitted in elevator hoistways, machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms, except as permitted in this Code.

2.8.2 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

2.8.2.1 Installation of electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

2.8.2.2 Only such electrical wiring, raceways, cables, coaxial wiring, and antennas used directly in connection with the elevator, including wiring for signals; for communication with the car; for lighting, heating, air conditioning, and ventilating the car; for fire-detecting systems; for pit sump pumps; and for heating and lighting the hoistway and/or the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room shall be permitted to be installed inside the hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

2.8.2.3 Bonding conductors from the lightning protection system grounding down conductor to long vertical metal bodies in the hoistway such as elevator rails and vertical wireways shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway as required by NFPA 780 or CAN/CSA-B72, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). The lightning protection system grounding down conductor shall not be permitted in the hoistway, and the elevator rails shall not be used as the lightning protection system grounding down conductor. Bonding conductors installed in the hoistway shall not interfere with the operation of the elevator.

2.8.2.4 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC or NFPA 72, a means for testing and maintaining fire alarm initiating devices without having to enter the hoistway shall be permitted. When this means is provided, it shall comply with either (a) or (b) below.

(a) The means provided for air sampling shall comply with 2.8.3.1.4.

(b) The means provided by enclosing a fire alarm initiating device within a protective space shall comply with the following:

(1) Hoistway penetration for access panels used for installing, testing, and servicing fire alarm initiating devices shall comply with 2.1.1.1.3.

(2) Access panels shall be rated and listed for the application for which they are installed and shall have a maximum width of 400 mm (16 in.) and maximum

height of 400 mm (16 in.). Access panels shall not swing into the hoistway.

(3) Access panel doors shall be self-closing and self-locking. The key shall be Group 2 Security (see [Section 8.1](#)).

(4) The space that houses the detection device(s) shall be furnished with protective guards (cages) that will prevent accidental contact by a person or object with moving equipment within the hoistway. No part of the protective guards (cages) shall be removable from outside the hoistway or from within the space between the access panel and the protective guards (cages).

(5) Protective guards (cages) shall separate the rest of the hoistway from the space containing the fire alarm initiating device. The guard (cage) shall be noncombustible openwork material that shall reject a ball 6 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter and be made from material equal to or stronger than 1.110 mm (0.0437 in.) diameter wire. The guard (cage) shall be supported so that when subjected to a force of 450 N (100 lbf) applied over an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) at any location, the deflection shall not reduce the clearance between the guard (cage) and any elevator equipment in the hoistway below 25 mm (1 in.).

(6) Protective guards (cages) shall be installed so that all required hoistway running clearances and beveling requirements are maintained. In no case shall the protective guards (cages) extend more than 400 mm (16 in.) inside the hoistway.

(7) Prior to installation of fire alarm initiating devices or other fire detection systems in hoistways, layout drawings indicating acceptable installation locations for access panels and protective guards (cages) shall be coordinated with the elevator installer.

2.8.3 Pipes, Ducts, Tanks, and Sprinklers

2.8.3.1 Steam and hot-water pipes shall be permitted to be installed in hoistways, machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms for the purpose of heating these areas only, subject to [2.8.3.1.1](#) through [2.8.3.1.4](#).

2.8.3.1.1 Heating pipes shall convey only low-pressure steam [100 kPa (15 psi) or less] or hot water [100°C (212°F) or less].

2.8.3.1.2 All risers and return pipes shall be located outside the hoistway. When the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room is located above the roof of the building, heating pipes for the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room shall be permitted to be located in the hoistway between the top floor and the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

2.8.3.1.3 Traps and shutoff valves shall be provided in accessible locations outside the hoistway.

2.8.3.1.4 The means used for air-sampling smoke detection systems shall be permitted to be installed in hoistways, machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms for the purpose of detecting smoke in accordance with [2.27.3.2](#), Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by fire alarm initiating devices, and shall not encroach upon required clearances. Sensing elements penetrating the hoistway enclosure shall have a fire resistance rating conforming to the requirements of the building code.

2.8.3.2 Ducts shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room for the purpose of heating, cooling, ventilating, and venting these areas only and shall not encroach upon the required clearances.

2.8.3.3 Sprinkler systems conforming to NFPA 13 or (22) the building code, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)), shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room subject to [2.8.3.3.1](#) through [2.8.3.3.4](#).

NOTE ([2.8.3.3](#)): Requirements for automatic sprinklers are addressed in the building code and NFPA 13, which may prohibit the installation of sprinklers in specific locations, such as in machine rooms, elevator machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces, and elevator hoistways of elevators meeting the requirements of [2.27.10](#) or [2.27.11](#).

2.8.3.3.1 All risers shall be located outside these spaces. Branch lines in the hoistway shall supply sprinklers at not more than one floor level. When the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room is located above the roof of the building, risers and branch lines for these sprinklers shall be permitted to be located in the hoistway between the top floor and the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

2.8.3.3.2 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, (22) where elevator equipment is located or its enclosure is configured such that application of water from sprinklers could cause unsafe elevator operation, means shall be provided to automatically disconnect the main line power to the affected elevator and any other power supplies used to move the elevator upon or prior to the application of water.

(a) This means shall be independent of the elevator control and shall not be self-resetting.

(b) Heat detectors and sprinkler flow switches used to initiate main line elevator power shutdown shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 72.

(c) The activation of sprinklers outside of such locations shall not disconnect the main line power. See also [2.27.3.3.6](#).

(d) This means shall only be provided for elevators that are equipped with Phase I Emergency Recall Operation (see 2.27.3).

- (22) **2.8.3.3.3** Smoke detectors shall not be used to activate sprinklers in these spaces or to disconnect the main line power.

2.8.3.3.4 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, when sprinklers are installed not more than 600 mm (24 in.) above the pit floor, (a) and (b) apply to elevator electrical equipment and wiring in the hoistway located less than 1 200 mm (48 in.) above the pit floor, except earthquake protective devices conforming to 8.4.10.1.2(e); and on the exterior of the car at the point where the car platform sill is level with the sill at the bottom terminal landing.

(a) Elevator electrical equipment shall be weather-proof (Type 4 as specified in NEMA 250).

(b) Elevator wiring, except traveling cables, shall be identified for use in wet locations in accordance with the requirements in NFPA 70.

2.8.3.4 Other pipes or ducts conveying gases, vapors, or liquid that are not used in connection with the operation of the elevator shall not be installed in any hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room. Where a machinery space, machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway extends above the roof of a building, pipes shall be permitted from roof drains to the closest point where they can be diverted out of this space. Pipes shall be covered to prevent leakage or condensate from entering the machinery space, machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway.

2.8.3.5 Where permitted and provided, pipes, drains, and tanks, or similar equipment that contains liquids, shall not be located directly above the elevator equipment and shall not encroach upon the required clearances in the hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

2.8.4 Electrical Heaters

Listed/certified electrical heaters shall be permitted.

2.8.5 Air Conditioning

Air-conditioning equipment is permitted to be installed in machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, or control rooms for the purpose of cooling these areas only, subject to 2.8.5.1 through 2.8.5.5.

2.8.5.1 Air-conditioning equipment shall not be located directly above elevator equipment.

2.8.5.2 The clear headroom below suspended air-conditioning equipment shall conform to 2.7.4.

2.8.5.3 Means shall be provided to collect and drain condensation water from these spaces. Condensation drains shall not be located directly above elevator equipment. Drains connected directly to sewers shall not be installed.

2.8.5.4 Safe and convenient access within the elevator machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room shall be provided to the air-conditioning equipment for servicing and maintaining.

NOTE: See also 2.7.3.1.

2.8.5.5 There shall be no exposed gears, sprockets, belts, pulleys, or chains.

NOTES (2.8.5):

(1) See 2.8.3.2 for requirements for duct work.

(2) These requirements do not pertain to air-conditioning equipment used to cool selective elevator equipment.

2.8.6 Miscellaneous Equipment

Enclosed moving, rotating, and/or hanging machinery or equipment and stationary decorative lighting, stationary signage, and/or other stationary special effects devices that are securely attached to the car, counterweight, and/or hoistway shall be permitted, provided that the elevator, including the equipment and devices, conforms to Sections 2.4 and 2.5 and 2.8.1, 2.14.2.1.1, 2.15.7, 8.2.2.1, and 8.2.9.1. Any unenclosed moving, rotating, or hanging machinery or equipment attached to the exterior of the car or counterweight, interior of the hoistway, or any other elevator equipment in the hoistway is prohibited unless it is used in conjunction with the designed use of the elevator.

2.8.7 Emergency Responder Radio Coverage Equipment Inside Hoistways

(22)

Emergency responder radio coverage (ERRC) equipment shall be permitted to be installed within the elevator hoistway (see 2.8.1) for exclusive use by emergency responders. Where provided, ERRC equipment shall be designed, installed, and maintained so as not to create an interference with elevator operation, inspection, repair, or maintenance. ERRC equipment in the elevator car shall comply with 2.27.12 [see also 2.14.1.9.1(g)]. ERRC equipment in the hoistway shall conform to 2.8.7.1 through 2.8.7.3.

2.8.7.1 General Requirements

2.8.7.1.1 ERRC equipment in the hoistway shall be limited to radiating coaxial cables (see 2.8.7.2) or ERRC antennas (see 2.8.7.3).

2.8.7.1.1.1 Prior to installation of radiating coaxial cables or ERRC antennas in the hoistway, layout drawings shall be coordinated with the elevator installer indicating acceptable installation locations for the radiating coaxial

cables or antennas and, where provided, the access panels (see also 2.8.7.3.1).

2.8.7.1.2 ERRC equipment shall not be installed in elevator machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms except as permitted in 2.8.7.1.3.

2.8.7.1.3 Nonradiating coaxial cables feeding the radiating coaxial cables or ERRC antennas shall be permitted to pass through the machine room, control room, control space, or machinery space outside the hoistway. The coaxial cable and its installation shall be in accordance with 2.26.4.1, NFPA 72, and NFPA 1221.

2.8.7.2 Radiating Coaxial Cables. Radiating coaxial cables shall conform to 2.8.7.2.1 through 2.8.7.2.5.

2.8.7.2.1 The radiating coaxial cables shall be installed per the manufacturer's installation instructions and in a manner subject to the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

NOTE (2.8.7.2.1): In addition to the manufacturer's instructions, the authority having jurisdiction may require installation in a nonmetallic conduit in conformance with the applicable electric code.

2.8.7.2.2 Multiple radiating coaxial cables shall be permitted in the hoistway.

2.8.7.2.3 The installation shall conform to horizontal clearance requirements as specified in Section 2.5.

2.8.7.2.4 When installed in a nonmetallic conduit, the radiating coaxial cables shall be supported at the upper point of entry into the conduit external to the hoistway. The lower ends of conduits terminating in the hoistway shall be capped or closed.

2.8.7.2.5 All service points shall be outside the hoistway.

2.8.7.3 ERRC Antennas. Antennas shall conform to 2.8.7.3.1 through 2.8.7.3.4.

2.8.7.3.1 The antennas and associated wiring shall not require service, or the antennas and associated wiring shall be accessible from outside the hoistway. When provided, the means to access the antennas and associated wiring from outside the hoistway shall comply with the following:

(a) Access panels shall be rated and listed for the application for which they are installed (see also 2.1.1.1.3).

(b) Width and height of the access panels shall be limited to the dimensions required for servicing and replacing the antenna [see 2.7.3.4.7(b) for maximum width and height dimensions].

(c) Access panel doors shall not swing into the hoistway.

(d) Access panel doors shall be self-closing and self-locking. The key shall be Group 2 Security (see also Section 8.1).

(e) Each space that houses the antennas shall be furnished with at least one noncombustible protective guard that shall prevent accidental contact by a person or object with moving equipment within the hoistway.

(f) Protective guards shall

(1) not be removable from outside the hoistway. When the guards project more than 100 mm (4 in.) into the hoistway, the top and bottom of the antenna guards shall be beveled at an angle of not less than 75 deg with the horizontal.

(2) be so supported that when subjected to a force of 450 N (100 lbf) applied over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) at any location, the deflection shall not reduce the clearance between the guard and any elevator equipment in the hoistway below 25 mm (1 in.).

(3) be installed such that all required hoistway running clearances and beveling requirements are maintained. In no case shall the protective guards extend more than 400 mm (16 in.) inside the hoistway.

(4) not be perforated.

(5) be permitted to be of nonmetallic construction.

2.8.7.3.2 When an access panel is not provided, termination for the antennas and connections for cables shall be located outside the hoistway.

2.8.7.3.3 The antennas and associated protective guards, when provided, shall not reduce clearances as specified in Sections 2.4 and 2.5 and shall comply with 2.1.6.2(c).

2.8.7.3.4 The antennas shall be provided with a protective means to prevent accidental contact by elevator personnel. The top and bottom of the means shall be beveled at an angle not less than 75 deg with the horizontal.

SECTION 2.9

MACHINERY AND SHEAVE BEAMS, SUPPORTS, AND FOUNDATIONS

2.9.1 Supports Required

Machines, machinery, sheaves, and hitches shall be supported by overhead beams, structural floors, structural walls, or guide rails.

2.9.1.1 Machines, machinery, and sheaves shall be supported and maintained in place to prevent any part from becoming loose or displaced under the conditions imposed in service.

2.9.1.2 Supporting beams, if used, shall be of steel or reinforced concrete.

2.9.1.3 Beams are not required under machine(s), sheave(s), and machinery or control equipment that is supported on floors, provided such floors are designed and installed to support the load imposed thereon, or

where supported by guide rails or structural walls designed to meet the requirements of 2.9.3.3.

2.9.2 Loads on Machinery and Sheave Beams, Floors, or Foundations and Their Supports

2.9.2.1 Overhead Beams, Floors, and Their Supports.

Overhead beams, floors, and their supports shall be designed for not less than the sum of the following loads:

(a) the load resting on the beams and supports, which shall include the complete weight of the machine, sheaves, controller, governor, and any other equipment, together with that portion, if any, of the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room floor supported thereon

(b) 2 times the sum of the tensions in all wire ropes supported by the beams, floors, and their supports with rated load in the car

NOTE [2.9.2.1(b)]: These tensions are doubled to take care of accelerations and decelerations.

2.9.2.2 Foundations, Beams, and Floors for Machinery and Sheaves Not Located Directly Over the Hoistway. The supports for machines and sheaves located below or at the sides of the hoistway shall meet the requirements of 2.9.2.2.1 through 2.9.2.2.4.

2.9.2.2.1 The foundation shall support the total weight of the machine, sheaves, and other equipment, and the floor, if any.

2.9.2.2.2 The sheave beams and the foundation bolts shall withstand 2 times the vertical force component acting thereon as a result of the tension in all the suspension ropes, less the weight of the machine or sheaves.

2.9.2.2.3 The sheave beams and the foundation bolts shall withstand 2 times the horizontal force component, if any, acting thereon as a result of the tension in all the suspension ropes.

2.9.2.2.4 The foundation shall withstand 2 times the overturning moment, if any, acting thereon as a result of the tension in all the suspension ropes.

2.9.3 Securing of Machinery and Equipment to Beams, Foundations, Guide Rails, Structural Walls, or Floors

2.9.3.1 Overhead Beams and Floors

2.9.3.1.1 Where overhead beams and floors are used to support machinery or equipment, the machinery or equipment shall be secured to and supported on or from the top of overhead beams or floors, except for the following equipment:

(a) secondary or deflecting sheaves of traction elevators

(b) devices and their accessories for limiting or retarding car speed

2.9.3.1.2 Securing bolts or fastenings are not required where sound isolation in compression is used between bases of machinery or equipment and supporting beams or floors.

2.9.3.2 Beams or Foundations Supporting Machinery and Sheaves Not Located Directly Over the Hoistway

2.9.3.2.1 Machines and sheaves located below or at one side of a hoistway shall be anchored to beams, foundations, or floors with bolts, conforming to ASTM A307, of sufficient size and number to withstand the applicable load conditions specified in 2.9.2.2. Based on these initial loads, total tension in anchor bolts shall not exceed 85 MPa (12,000 psi) of net section, and the total shear shall not exceed 60 MPa (9,000 psi) of actual area in the shear plane. (See also 2.9.3.5.)

2.9.3.2.2 Where bolts are used through greater than 5 deg sloping flanges of structural shapes, the bolt heads shall be of the tipped or beveled head type or shall be fitted with beveled steel washers, and nuts on greater than 5 deg sloping flanges shall seat on beveled steel washers.

2.9.3.3 Securing of Machines, Sheaves, Equipment, and Hitches to Guide Rails or Structural Walls

2.9.3.3.1 Machines, sheaves, equipment, and hitches shall be permitted to be secured to and supported by the guide rails or structural walls, provided that the tension in the hoisting ropes and the weight of the equipment will not develop direct tensions in the bolts or rivets.

2.9.3.3.2 Securing bolts or fastenings are not required where sound isolation in compression is used between bases of machinery or equipment and their supports.

2.9.3.3.3 Bolts used to secure equipment to the guide rails or structural walls shall conform to ASTM A307 and be of sufficient size and number to withstand the applicable load conditions specified in 2.9.2.2. Based on these initial loads, total tension in support bolts shall not exceed 85 MPa (12,000 psi) of net section, and the total shear in bolts and rivets shall not exceed 60 MPa (9,000 psi) of actual area in the shear plane. The requirements of 2.9.3.2.2 for bolts and 2.9.3.4.3 and 2.9.3.4.4 for hitch plates shall also apply. The stresses in welds due to tensions in the hoisting ropes shall not exceed 55 MPa (8,000 psi) on the throat area of the welds. (See also 2.9.3.5.)

2.9.3.3.4 Guide rails used to support machines, equipment, sheaves, and hitches shall meet the requirements of 2.2.3.4.

2.9.3.4 Overhead Hoisting-Rope Hitches

2.9.3.4.1 Where hoisting ropes are secured to the structure above a hoistway, the hitch plates and hitch-plate blocking beams, where used, shall be secured to

and mounted on top of overhead beams or machine beams, or on top of auxiliary beams connected to the webs of overhead beams.

2.9.3.4.2 Hitch plates, blocking beams, or auxiliary beams shall be secured by bolts conforming to ASTM A307, rivets conforming to ASTM A502, or welding conforming to [Section 8.8](#), and shall be located so that the tension in the hoisting ropes will not develop direct tensions in the bolts or rivets. Where bolts and rivets are subjected to shearing stresses due to tension in the hoisting ropes, the total shear shall not exceed 60 MPa (9,000 psi) of actual area in the shear plane. The stresses in welds due to tensions in the hoisting ropes shall not exceed 55 MPa (8,000 psi) on the throat area of the welds. (See also [2.9.3.5](#).)

2.9.3.4.3 The hitch-plate supporting structure shall be designed to withstand 2 times the sum of the tensions in all hoisting ropes attached to the hitch plates. (See also [2.15.13](#).)

2.9.3.4.4 Total stresses in hitch plates and hitch-plate shapes shall not exceed 85 MPa (12,000 psi).

2.9.3.5 Bolts Made of Steel. Bolts made of steel used to comply with the requirements of [2.9.3.2.1](#), [2.9.3.3.3](#), and [2.9.3.4.2](#) having a greater strength than specified by ASTM A307 shall be permitted, provided that the maximum allowable stresses increased proportionally based on the ratio of the ultimate strengths. Elongation shall conform to the requirements of the corresponding ASTM specification.

2.9.3.6 Cast Metals in Tension or Bending. Cast metals having an elongation of less than 20% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.), when measured in accordance with ASTM E8, that are subject to tension or bending shall not be used to support machinery or equipment from the underside of overhead beams or floors.

2.9.4 Allowable Stresses for Machinery and Sheave Beams or Floors, Their Supports, and Any Support Members That Transmit Load to the Guide Rails or Structural Walls

2.9.4.1 The unit stresses for all machinery and sheave beams and floors and their supports, based on the loads computed as specified in [2.9.2](#) or [2.9.6](#), whichever is greater, shall not exceed 80% of those permitted for static loads by the following standards:

(a) *Structural Steel.* AISC Book No. S326 or CAN/CSA-S16.1, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)).

(b) *Reinforced Concrete.* ANSI/ACI 318 or CAN3-A23.3, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)).

2.9.4.2 Where stresses due to loads, other than elevator loads supported on the beams or floor, exceed those due to the elevator loads, 100% of the permitted stresses are permitted.

2.9.4.3 Cast Metals in Tension or Bending. Cast metals having an elongation of less than 20% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.), when measured in accordance with ASTM E8, that are subject to tension or bending shall not be used to support machinery or equipment from guide rails or structural walls.

2.9.5 Allowable Deflections of Machinery and Sheave Beams, Their Supports, and Any Support Members Loaded in Bending That Transmit Load to Guide Rails or Structural Walls

The allowable deflections of machinery and sheave beams, their immediate supports, and any support members loaded in bending that transmit load to guide rails or structural walls under static load shall not exceed $\frac{1}{1666}$ of the span.

2.9.6 Allowable Stresses Due to Emergency Braking

Machinery and sheave beams, supports, any support members that transmit load to guide rails or structural walls, and any fastenings subject to forces due to the application of the emergency brake (see [2.19.4](#)) shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of emergency braking so that the resulting stresses due to emergency braking and all other loading acting simultaneously, if applicable, shall not exceed those specified in [2.9.4](#).

SECTION 2.10 GUARDING OF EQUIPMENT AND STANDARD RAILING

2.10.1 Guarding of Equipment

In machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms, the following shall be guarded to protect against accidental contact:

(a) driving-machine sheaves and ropes whose vertical projection upon a horizontal plane extends beyond the base of the machine, unless the driving-machine sheave is located to minimize the possibility of contact

(b) sheaves

(c) exposed gears, sprockets, tape or rope sheaves, or drums of selectors, floor controllers, or signal machines, and their driving ropes, chains, or tapes

(d) keys, keyways, and screws in projecting shafts

Hand-winding wheels and flywheels that are not guarded shall have yellow markings.

2.10.2 Standard Railing

A standard railing shall be substantially constructed of metal and shall consist of a top rail, intermediate rail or equivalent structural member or solid panel, and toeboard.

2.10.2.1 Top Rail. The top rail shall have a smooth surface, and the upper surface shall be located at a vertical height not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.) and not more than 1 095 mm (43 in.) from the working surface.

2.10.2.2 Intermediate Rail, Member, or Panel. The intermediate rail or equivalent structural member or solid panel shall be located approximately centered between the top rail and the working surface.

2.10.2.3 Toeboard. The toeboard shall be securely fastened and have a height not less than 100 mm (4 in.) above the working surface.

2.10.2.4 Strength of Standard Railing. A standard railing shall be capable of resisting anywhere along its length the following forces when applied separately, without deflecting more than 75 mm (3 in.) and without permanent deformation:

(a) at least 890 N (200 lbf) applied in any lateral or downward vertical direction, at any point along the top rail.

(b) at least 666 N (150 lbf) applied in any lateral or downward vertical direction at any point along the center of the intermediate rail, member, or panel. If the standard railing is a solid panel extending from the top rail to the toeboard, the application of the force specified in (a) shall be considered to meet the requirements of (b).

(c) 225 N (50 lbf) applied in a lateral direction to the toeboard.

SECTION 2.11

PROTECTION OF HOISTWAY OPENINGS

2.11.1 Entrances and Emergency Doors Required

2.11.1.1 Hoistway Landing Entrances. All elevator hoistway landing openings shall be provided with entrances that shall guard the full height and width of the openings. Entrances shall be at least 2 030 mm (80 in.) in height and 800 mm (31.5 in.) in width.

2.11.1.2 Emergency Doors in Blind Hoistways. Where an elevator is installed in a single blind hoistway, there shall be installed in the blind portion of the hoistway an emergency door at every third floor, but not more than 11 m (36 ft) from sill to sill, conforming to the following:

(a) The clear opening shall be at least 700 mm (28 in.) wide and 2 030 mm (80 in.) high.

(b) It shall be easily accessible and free from fixed obstructions.

(c) It shall be either of the horizontally sliding or swinging single-section type, irrespective of the type of door installed at other landings.

(d) It shall be self-closing and self-locking and shall be marked, in letters not less than 50 mm (2 in.) high, "DANGER, ELEVATOR HOISTWAY."

(e) It shall be provided with an electric contact that will prevent the operation of the driving machine unless the door is closed (see 2.26.2.25).

(f) It shall be unlocked from the landing side only through the use of a cylinder-type lock, having not less than five pins or five disks. The cylinder lock shall

(1) not be unlocked by any key that will open any other lock or device used for any purpose in the building

(2) be designed so that the key shall be removable only in the locked position

(g) It shall be openable from the hoistway side without the use of a key.

(h) The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1). This key shall also be made available to emergency personnel during an emergency.

(i) A hinged self-closing barrier independent of the door shall be installed horizontally across the entrance on the hoistway side at a height of 1 070 mm (42 in.). The barrier shall not open into the hoistway.

2.11.1.3 Telephone as Alternative to Emergency Doors. Where an elevator is installed in a single blind hoistway and there are no landings from which to gain access through an emergency door, a means of two-way conversation conforming to 2.27.1.1.4 shall be provided.

NOTE: Examples are pulp mills, grain elevators, dams, and similar locations.

2.11.1.4 Access Openings for Cleaning of Car and Hoistway Enclosures. Nonremovable sliding or swing panels or doors in the hoistway conforming to 2.11.1.2(d), 2.11.1.2(f), 2.11.1.2(g), and 2.11.1.2(i) shall be permitted for access to car or hoistway transparent enclosures for cleaning purposes. An electromechanical device shall be provided that will prevent the operation of the driving machine unless the access panels or doors are closed and locked (see 2.26.2.32). Keys used to unlock the access panels or doors shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.11.2 Types of Entrances

2.11.2.1 Passenger Elevators. For passenger elevators, entrances shall be one of the following types:

- (a) horizontally sliding
- (b) horizontally swinging, single-section
- (c) combination horizontally sliding and swinging
- (d) hand- or power-operated vertically sliding that slide up to open

2.11.2.2 Freight Elevators. For freight elevators, entrances shall be one of the following types:

- (a) horizontally sliding
- (b) swinging, single-section
- (c) combination horizontally sliding and swinging
- (d) center-opening, two-section horizontally swinging, subject to restrictions of 2.11.2.3
- (e) vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced (see 2.16.4)
- (f) vertically sliding counterweighted, single- or multi-section

2.11.2.3 Limitations of Use of Center-Opening Swinging Entrances. Center-opening swinging entrances shall be permitted only for either of the following:

- (a) freight elevators that can be operated only from the car
- (b) freight elevators not accessible to the general public that can be operated from outside the hoistway and that are located in factories, warehouses, garages, and similar industrial buildings

2.11.3 Closing of Hoistway Doors

2.11.3.1 Horizontally sliding or single-section swinging doors of automatic-operation elevators shall be provided with door closers arranged to close an open door automatically if the car, for any reason, leaves the landing zone.

2.11.3.2 On center-opening doors, if there is an interlock on only one panel, the door closer required by 2.11.3.1 shall be provided on the leading panel that operates in the opposite direction (see 2.11.11.7).

2.11.4 Location of Horizontally Sliding or Swinging Hoistway Doors

Horizontally sliding or swinging doors shall be located so that the distance from the hoistway face of the doors to the edge of the hoistway landing sill, measured from the face of the door section nearest the car, shall be not more than the requirements specified in 2.11.4.1 and 2.11.4.2.

2.11.4.1 For elevators that can be operated only from the car, the distance from the hoistway face of the doors to the edge of the hoistway landing sill shall be not more than 100 mm (4 in.), except where new elevators are installed in existing multiple hoistways or where alterations involving replacement of the doors are made to existing elevators in multiple hoistways, and the location of the door openings is such that the 100 mm (4 in.) dimension specified cannot be maintained, the distance specified is permitted to be increased to not more than 125 mm (5 in.) where horizontally sliding doors are used.

2.11.4.2 For elevators with automatic or continuous-pressure operation, the distance from the hoistway face of the doors to the edge of the hoistway landing sill shall be

not more than 19 mm (0.75 in.) for swinging doors and 57 mm (2.25 in.) for sliding doors, except

(a) freight elevators not accessible to the general public that are located in factories, warehouses, garages, and similar industrial buildings are permitted to have single-section or center-opening two-section horizontally swinging doors conforming to 2.11.4.1

(b) for swinging doors used on elevators with automatic and continuous-pressure operation, the distance shall be permitted to be increased from 19 mm to 57 mm (0.75 in. to 2.25 in.) if such doors are emergency doors conforming to 2.11.1. (See also 2.14.4.5.)

2.11.5 Projection of Entrances and Other Equipment Beyond the Landing Sills

Entrances and equipment shall not project into an elevator hoistway beyond the line of the landing sill, except for

- (a) equipment required for interlocking, indicator and signal devices, door operating devices, door guiding devices, and door retaining devices
- (b) vertical slide entrances

2.11.6 Opening of Hoistway Doors

2.11.6.1 When the car is within the unlocking zone (see 2.12.1), the hoistway doors shall be openable by hand from within the car without the use of tools.

2.11.6.2 Means shall not be provided for locking out of service the doors at

- (a) the top terminal landing
- (b) the bottom terminal landing
- (c) the designated and alternate landings for elevators equipped with Phase I Emergency Recall Operation when Phase I is effective
- (d) any landing for elevators equipped with Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation when Phase II is effective

2.11.6.3 Egress from the interior of the car to any elevator landing by means of the car and hoistway doors shall be unrestricted once the car and hoistway doors are open. Additional doors or devices that are not part of and do not function with the elevator but that are provided in lieu of an enclosed elevator lobby to guard against the migration of smoke in or out of the hoistway shall comply with the following:

- (a) The building code.
- (b) The additional door or device, in any position, shall not interfere with the function and operation of the elevator.
- (c) The additional door or device shall not interfere with the fire-resistance rating and operation of the hoistway entrance. Direct or mechanical attachment (i.e., welding, holes, bolts, or rivets) shall not be made to hoistway doors or frames, unless the additional

door or device and the hoistway elevator entrance are listed as a complete assembly by a certifying organization.

(d) When in the closed position, additional doors or devices shall not prevent firefighters from visually observing the elevator landing (lobby) when the elevator hoistway door is no more than one-quarter open.

(e) Additional doors or devices shall be permitted to be deployed only at those hoistway openings of elevators where fire alarm initiating devices used to initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation associated with that elevator have been activated.

NOTE: It is recommended that all additional doors or devices deployed in front of hoistway doors shall be cleared (returned to open/standby position) by authorized or emergency personnel prior to removing the elevator from Phase I Emergency Recall Operation and returning to normal operation. In the case of an unintended deployment, it is recommended that authorized personnel return doors to the open or standby position.

2.11.6.4 Handles or other means provided for operation of manually operated doors shall be located so that it is not necessary to reach the back of any panel, jamb, or sash to operate them.

2.11.7 Glass in Hoistway Doors

Glass in hoistway doors shall conform to 2.11.7.1 and 2.11.7.2.

2.11.7.1 Vision Panels. Manually operated or self-closing hoistway doors of the vertically or horizontally sliding type, for elevators with automatic or continuous-pressure operation, shall be provided with a vision panel. Vision panels shall not be required at landings of automatic operation elevators where a hall position indicator is provided. In multisection doors, the vision panel is required in one section only, but is permitted to be placed in all sections. All horizontally swinging elevator doors shall be provided with vision panels. Vision panels are permitted for any type of hoistway door.

Where required or used, vision panels shall conform to 2.11.7.1.1 through 2.11.7.1.7.

2.11.7.1.1 The area of any single vision panel shall be not less than 0.015 m^2 (24 in.²), and the total area of one or more vision panels in any hoistway door shall be not more than 0.055 m^2 (85 in.²).

2.11.7.1.2 Each clear panel opening shall reject a ball 150 mm (6 in.) in diameter.

2.11.7.1.3 Muntins used between panel sections shall be noncombustible material and of substantial construction.

2.11.7.1.4 Panel openings shall be glazed with either of the following:

(a) clear wire glass not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(b) other transparent glazing material not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) thick that meets the impact safety standard 16 CFR Part 1201 or CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, or CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable (see Part 9)

2.11.7.1.5 The center of the panel shall be located not less than 1300 mm (51 in.) and not more than 1700 mm (67 in.) above the landing, except that for vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, it shall be located to conform to the dimensions specified insofar as the door design will permit.

2.11.7.1.6 Vision panels in power-operated doors shall be substantially flush with the surface of the landing side of the door.

2.11.7.1.7 Vision panels shall be protected by protective grilles made of steel not less than 1.4 mm (0.055 in.) thick, in accordance with the following specifications:

(a) Grilles shall be sized to fit within or over the vision panel frame and to completely cover the vision panel opening in the hoistway door.

(b) Grilles shall be secured by means that deter removal by common tools.

(c) Grilles shall contain openings that shall be not larger than 19 mm × 19 mm (0.75 in. × 0.75 in.) in diameter. Such openings shall be spaced at 25 mm (1 in.) center-to-center.

(d) Grille edges shall be beveled and free of burrs.

(e) Grilles shall be installed on the hoistway side of the door.

2.11.7.2 Glass Doors. Where provided, glass hoistway doors shall conform to 2.11.7.2.1 through 2.11.7.2.5.

2.11.7.2.1 The glass shall be laminated glass conforming to 16 CFR Part 1201 or CAN/CGSB-12.1. Markings as specified in the applicable standard shall be on each separate piece of glass and shall remain visible after installation.

2.11.7.2.2 The glass shall be not less than 50% of the total visible door panel surface area as seen from the landing side of the doors. Door lap shall not be used in calculating glass size. (22)

2.11.7.2.3 In power-operated doors, the glass panel shall be substantially flush with the surface of the landing side of the door.

2.11.7.2.4 A nonglass edge shall be provided on the leading edge of the door panel.

2.11.7.2.5 The glass door shall conform to 2.11.11.5.7 for horizontally sliding-type entrances, 2.11.12.4 for vertically sliding-type entrances, or 2.11.13.3 for swinging entrances.

2.11.8 Weights for Closing or Balancing Doors

Hoistway door weights, where used for closing or balancing doors, shall be guided or restrained to prevent them from coming out of their runway. The bottom of the guides or other restraining means shall be constructed to retain the weights if the weight suspension means breaks.

2.11.9 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Power Operation

2.11.9.1 Locking Devices. Doors shall be provided with door locking devices conforming to [Section 2.12](#).

2.11.9.2 Power Operation. Where hoistway doors are power operated or are opened or closed by power, their operation shall conform to [Section 2.13](#).

2.11.10 Landing-Sill Guards, Landing-Sill Illumination, Hinged Landing Sills, and Tracks on Landings

2.11.10.1 Landing-Sill Guards

2.11.10.1.1 Landing sills shall be guarded on the underside with guard plates of smooth metal not less than 1.4 mm (0.055 in.) thick, extending the full width of the car sill exposed to the landing entrance, and securely fastened in place. Landing-sill guards are not required for

- (a) vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors
- (b) vertically sliding counterweighted doors that slide down to open
- (c) elevators where the landing sills do not project into the hoistway

2.11.10.1.2 Where a car-leveling device is provided and the hoistway edge of the sill is either flush with or projects into the hoistway, the guard shall have a straight vertical face extending below the sill not less than the depth of the leveling zone plus 75 mm (3 in.). Where the sill projects inward from the hoistway enclosure, the bottom of the guard shall also be beveled at an angle of not less than 60 deg and not more than 75 deg from the horizontal, or the guard shall be extended from the hoistway edge of the landing sill to the top of door hanger pocket of the next entrance below.

2.11.10.1.3 Where no car-leveling device is provided and the sill projects inward from the general line of the hoistway, the guard either shall be beveled at an angle of not less than 60 deg and not more than 75 deg from the horizontal, or shall have a straight vertical face extending from the hoistway edge of the landing sill to the top of door hanger pocket of the entrance below.

2.11.10.1.4 A horizontal door guiding groove with a maximum width of 10 mm (0.375 in.) shall be permitted at the transition of the landing-sill guard and the landing sill, provided the following requirements are met:

(a) Door power preopening in accordance with [2.13.2.2.2](#) shall not be permitted.

(b) Leveling/releveling shall be initiated before vertical exposure of the groove is revealed.

(c) Where exposure to the groove is revealed, the car shall not relevel with open doors.

(d) Edges forming the groove shall be configured to prevent hazards.

2.11.10.2 Illumination at Landing Sills. The illumination at the landing sills, when an elevator is in service, shall be not less than 100 lx (10 fc).

2.11.10.3 Hinged Hoistway Landing Sills. Hinged hoistway landing sills provided in connection with vertically sliding, biparting, counterbalanced doors of freight elevators shall be hinged on the landing side so that they can be lowered only when the landing doors are in the fully opened position.

2.11.11 Entrances, Horizontal Slide Type

2.11.11.1 Landing Sills. Landing sills shall

(a) be metal and of sufficient strength to support the loads to be carried by the sills when loading and unloading the car, and be secured in place

(b) be substantially flush with the floor surface of the elevator landings

(c) be designed and maintained to provide a secure foothold over the entire width of the door opening

(d) be permitted to include the corresponding member of a bottom guiding means (see [2.11.11.5.7](#) and [2.11.11.6](#))

2.11.11.2 Hangers, Tracks, and Track Supports. Hangers, tracks, and their supports and fastenings for doors shall be constructed to withstand, without damage or appreciable deflection, an imposed static load equal to 4 times the weight of each panel as applied successively downward and upward at the vertical centerline of the panel. (See [2.11.11.5.7](#) and [2.11.11.5.8](#).)

2.11.11.3 Entrance Frames

2.11.11.3.1 Where used, entrance frames shall be anchored to the sills and to the building structure or the track supports. The head of the entrance frame shall not be used to support the weight of the wall over the frame.

2.11.11.3.2 Where decorative material is applied to listed/certified frames, it shall conform to the requirements of the certifying organization.

2.11.11.4 Hangers. Hangers shall conform to [2.11.11.4.1](#) and [2.11.11.4.2](#).

2.11.11.4.1 Means shall be provided to prevent the hangers from jumping the track.

2.11.11.4.2 Stops shall be provided in the entrance assembly to prevent hangers from overrunning the end of the track.

2.11.11.5 Panels. Panels shall conform to 2.11.11.5.1 through 2.11.11.5.8.

2.11.11.5.1 The panels shall overlap the top and sides of the opening, and each other in the case of multispeed entrances, by not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

Where entrances without frames are used, the overlap shall extend the thickness of the facing used to finish the opening plus 13 mm (0.5 in.) or more.

2.11.11.5.2 The clearance shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.) between

- (a) the panel and the frame
- (b) the panel and the wall, where entrances without frames are used in masonry or concrete
- (c) related panels of multispeed entrances
- (d) the panel and the sill measured vertically

2.11.11.5.3 The leading panel edge of side-opening entrances shall not close into pockets in the strike jamb and shall be smooth and free of sharp projections.

2.11.11.5.4 The meeting panel edges of center-opening entrances shall be smooth and free of sharp projections.

The meeting panel edges of center-opening entrances shall be protected with not less than one resilient male member extending the full height of the panel. The resilient members shall be permitted to interlock by not more than 10 mm (0.375 in.).

When in the closed position, the distance between the metal parts of the meeting panels shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.).

2.11.11.5.5 No areas shall be depressed or raised more than 3 mm (0.125 in.) from the adjacent area, and edges shall be beveled at not more than 30 deg to the panel surface.

2.11.11.5.6 Where decorative material is applied to listed/certified panels, it shall conform to the requirements of the certifying organization.

2.11.11.5.7 The assembled panel(s), including the means for hanging and guiding the panel(s), shall be capable of withstanding a force of 2 500 N (560 lbf) with no permanent displacement or deformation. This force shall be applied in the direction of the hoistway at right angles to the panel over an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) at the center of the panel (see 2.11.11.8). For multipanel entrances, the force shall be applied individually to each panel of the assembly.

2.11.11.5.8 Means shall be provided to prevent opening locked doors more than 20 mm (0.8 in.) per panel at the farthest point from the interlock when a force of 135 N (30 lbf) is applied in the opening direction

at the leading edge of the door at the farthest point from the interlock.

2.11.11.6 Bottom Guides. Bottom guides shall conform to the following:

- (a) The bottom of each panel shall be guided by one or more members.
- (b) Guide members shall be securely fastened.
- (c) The guide members and any reinforcements or guards shall engage the corresponding member by not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.). (See 2.11.11.5.7.)

2.11.11.7 Multipanel Entrances. Panels of multipanel doors shall conform to either 2.11.11.7.1 or 2.11.11.7.2. Multiple-speed and center-opening multiple-speed doors shall also conform to 2.11.11.7.3.

2.11.11.7.1 Panels shall be interconnected directly or through their hangers to assure simultaneous movement of all panels. The factor of safety of the interconnecting means shall not be less than 10 for cast iron or 5 for other materials.

2.11.11.7.2 Panels shall be equipped with hoistway door interlocks on each driven panel and provided with a door closer(s) installed to comply with 2.11.3.1. All panels shall move simultaneously when the car is at the landing.

2.11.11.7.3 Multiple-speed and center-opening multiple-speed panels shall be provided with secondary mechanical interconnecting means to ensure that individual panels of multiple-panel doors moving in the same direction cannot become separated from the panel that is locked by the interlock in the event that the normal interconnecting means fails.

2.11.11.7.4 Where cable and pulleys are used to connect panels of multisection sliding doors, each pulley shall be equipped with a guard to prevent the cable from leaving the pulley.

2.11.11.8 Hoistway Door Safety Retainers. The top and bottom of horizontally sliding doors shall be provided with a means of retaining the closed door panel in position if the primary guiding means fails, preventing displacement of the door panel top and bottom by more than 20 mm (0.8 in.) when the door panel is subjected to a force of 5 000 N (1,125 lbf) in the direction of the hoistway applied at right angles to the panel over an area of 300 mm × 300 mm (12 in. × 12 in.) at the approximate center of the panel.

The retaining means shall also withstand, without detachment or permanent deformation, a force of 1 000 N (225 lbf) applied upward at any point along the width of the door panel and, while this force is maintained, an additional force of 1 100 N (250 lbf) applied at right angles to the door at the center of the panel. This force shall be distributed over an area of 300 mm × 300 mm (12 in. × 12 in.).

The retaining means shall not be subjected to wear or stress during normal door operation or maintenance.

(22) **2.11.11.9 Reserved for Future Use**

2.11.11.10 Hoistway Door to Sill Clearance. The horizontal distance from the hoistway side of the leading edge of the hoistway door or sight guard, if provided, to the edge of the landing sill shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.). The vertical clearance between the sight guard, if provided, and the landing sill shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.).

2.11.12 Entrances, Vertical Slide Type

2.11.12.1 Landing Sills

2.11.12.1.1 Landing sills shall be metal and of sufficient strength to support the loads to be carried by the sills when loading and unloading the car, and shall be secured in place (see 2.16.2.2 for classes of loading); the load on the sill during loading and unloading shall be considered to be the same as on the platform members specified in 8.2.2.6.

2.11.12.1.2 Landing sills shall be secured to the building structure in substantially the same plane as the elevator landing floor.

2.11.12.2 Entrance Frames. Where used, frames shall conform to 2.11.12.2.1 through 2.11.12.2.4.

2.11.12.2.1 Entrance frames shall be anchored to the sills and to the building structure or track supports.

2.11.12.2.2 The weight of the wall above the frame shall be supported by either of the following:

- (a) a lintel
- (b) the head of the frames when they are designed to support the load

2.11.12.2.3 In gypsum board (dry wall) construction, the frame-side jambs shall be extended and securely fastened to the building structure above the frame.

2.11.12.2.4 Where decorative material is applied to listed/certified frames, it shall conform to the requirements of the certifying organization.

2.11.12.3 Rails. The panel guide rails shall be securely fastened to the building structure and the entrance frame, at intervals, throughout their entire length.

Rails and their supports shall withstand the forces specified in 2.11.12.4.6. Where truckable sills are provided as specified in 2.11.12.4.2, the rails shall withstand any reactions that could be transmitted to the rails as a result of loading and unloading operations.

2.11.12.4 Panels. Panels shall conform to 2.11.12.4.1 through 2.11.12.4.8.

2.11.12.4.1 The panels shall be constructed of noncombustible material or of a structural core made of combustible material if covered with not less than 0.45 mm (0.0175 in.) sheet metal.

2.11.12.4.2 The lower panel of biparting entrances and the top of the panel of vertical slide entrances that slide down to open shall be provided with a truckable sill designed for the loads specified in 2.11.12.1.1. Provisions shall be made to transmit the panel sill load to the building structure.

2.11.12.4.3 Panels of biparting counterbalanced entrances shall conform to the following:

(a) They shall be provided with means to stop the closing panels when the distance between the closing rigid members of the panel is not less than 20 mm (0.8 in.) and not more than 50 mm (2 in.).

(b) A fire-resistive, nonshearing, and noncrushing member of either the meeting or overlapping type shall be provided on the upper panel to close the distance between the rigid door sections when in contact with the stops. This member shall allow a minimum compressible clearance of 20 mm (0.8 in.).

(c) Rigid members that overlap the meeting edge, and center-latching devices, are prohibited.

2.11.12.4.4 The panels, with their attachments for doors that slide up to open, shall overlap the sides and top of the entrance opening by at least 50 mm (2 in.) when in the closed position. Other vertically sliding panels and their attachments shall overlap their entrance openings and sills by at least 50 mm (2 in.) when in the closed position. The overlap shall extend at least 50 mm (2 in.) beyond the thickness of any facing used to finish the opening.

2.11.12.4.5 The clearance between a panel and the frame lintel, between a panel and the sill, and between related panels of multispeed entrances shall not exceed 25 mm (1 in.).

2.11.12.4.6 Panels, rails, and door guides shall conform to the strength requirements of 2.11.11.5.7. Hangers, guides, and guide shoes shall not be permanently displaced or deformed by more than 20 mm (0.8 in.) when their panel is subjected to a force of 5 000 N (1,125 lbf) in the direction of the hoistway applied at right angles to the panel over an area of 300 mm × 300 mm (12 in. × 12 in.) at the approximate center of the panel.

2.11.12.4.7 Means shall be provided to close the opening between the upper panel of pass-type entrances and the entrance frame lintel. The sum of the clearance between the panel, the device used to close the opening, and the entrance lintel shall not exceed 25 mm (1 in.).

2.11.12.4.8 Means shall be provided to prevent the opening of locked doors more than 25 mm (1 in.) per panel at the farthest point from the interlock when a force of 135 N (30 lbf) is applied in the opening direction at the leading edge of the door at the farthest point from the interlock.

2.11.12.5 Guides. Panel guides shall conform to 2.11.12.5.1 through 2.11.12.5.3.

2.11.12.5.1 Each panel shall be equipped with not less than four guide members or with continuous guides.

2.11.12.5.2 Guide members shall be securely fastened to the panels.

2.11.12.5.3 Guide members shall be designed to withstand the forces specified in [2.11.12.4.6](#).

2.11.12.6 Counterweighting or Counterbalancing. Single- or multisection vertically sliding panels shall be counterweighted, and vertically sliding biparting panels shall be counterbalanced, so that they will not open or close by gravity.

Fastenings shall be provided to prevent the fall of a counterweight and the detachment or dislodgment of counterweight parts or of balancing weights. Suspension means and their connections, for vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors and for the counterweights of vertically sliding counterweighted doors, shall have a factor of safety not less than 5.

2.11.12.7 Sill Guards. Where the panel sill or another structural member projects more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) into the hoistway or beyond the panel surface below it, the projection shall be provided with a metal guard not less than 1.4 mm (0.055 in.) thick and beveled at an angle not less than 50 deg and not more than 75 deg from the horizontal.

2.11.12.8 Pull Straps. Manually operated vertically sliding biparting entrances shall be provided with pull straps on the inside and outside of the door.

The length of the pull straps shall conform to [2.11.12.8.1](#) and [2.11.12.8.2](#).

2.11.12.8.1 The bottom of the strap shall be not more than 2 000 mm (79 in.) above the landing when the panel is in the fully opened position.

2.11.12.8.2 The length of the strap shall not be extended by means of ropes or other materials.

2.11.13 Entrances, Swinging Type

2.11.13.1 Landing Sills. Landing sills shall

(a) be metal and of sufficient strength to support the loads to be carried by the sills when loading and unloading the car, and be secured in place

(b) be substantially flush with the floor surface of the elevator landings

(c) be designed and maintained to provide a secure foothold over the entire width of the door opening

2.11.13.2 Entrance Frames. Frames shall conform to [2.11.13.2.1](#) and [2.11.13.2.2](#).

2.11.13.2.1 Entrance frames shall be designed to support in place the panels with their hinges or pivots, and closer if it is attached to the frame and interlock. They shall withstand the forces referred to in

[2.11.13.3.5](#) and the forces resulting from the normal opening of the door or normal attempts to open it when locked in the closed position.

2.11.13.2.2 Where decorative material is applied to listed/certified panels, it shall conform to the requirements of the certifying organization.

2.11.13.3 Panels. Panels shall conform to [2.11.13.3.1](#) through [2.11.13.3.7](#).

2.11.13.3.1 The panels shall overlap the part of the frame against which they close by not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

2.11.13.3.2 The clearance between a panel and its sill shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.).

2.11.13.3.3 Handles or knobs on the hoistway side of door panels are not permitted. Unlatching devices that do not project beyond the face of the door panel on the hoistway side shall be permitted.

2.11.13.3.4 Where decorative material is applied to listed/certified panels, it shall conform to the requirements of the certifying organization.

2.11.13.3.5 Panels and their assembled accessories shall

(a) be capable of withstanding a force on the handle of not less than 450 N (100 lbf) in the opening direction of a closed and locked door. There shall be no permanent displacement or deformation of the handle or the door panel resulting from this force.

(b) conform to [2.11.11.5.7](#).

(c) not be permanently displaced or deformed by more than 20 mm (0.75 in.) when the panel is subjected to a force of 5 000 N (1,125 lbf) in the direction of the hoistway, applied at right angles to the panel over an area of 300 mm × 300 mm (12 in. × 12 in.) at the approximate center of the panel.

2.11.13.3.6 Center-opening horizontally swinging doors shall have one door section provided with an overlapping astragal on its vertical edge, except where each door section is provided with a landing door interlock [see [2.12.2.4.6\(c\)](#)].

2.11.13.3.7 Center-opening horizontally swinging doors shall have door stops provided at the top entrances that will stop each door panel when closed and that will meet the requirements specified in [2.11.13.3.5](#).

2.11.13.4 Hinges. Hinges of the mortise and surface type shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 80, Table 2-4.3.1.

2.11.13.5 Entrances With Combination Horizontally Sliding and Swinging Panels. Where both the sliding and swinging panels are not equipped with hoistway door interlocks or locks and contacts conforming to [Section 2.12](#), the horizontally sliding and swinging

panels forming a part of the entrance shall be interconnected so that

- (a) the swinging panel can be opened only when the sliding panel is in the open position
- (b) both panels swing as a unit

2.11.14 Fire Tests

2.11.14.1 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC

(a) the fire-protection rating of entrances and doors shall be determined in accordance with the requirements specified in the NBCC (CAN4-S104)

(b) where required, the hoistway door interlock mechanism and associated wiring shall remain operational for a period of 1 h when subjected to the standard fire exposure test described in CAN4-S104

NOTE (2.11.14.1): Requirements 2.11.14.2 through 2.11.18 do not apply in jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC.

2.11.14.2 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, 2.11.15 through 2.11.18, and 2.11.14.2.1 through 2.11.14.2.3 apply where fire-resistive construction is required by 2.1.1.1.3.

2.11.14.2.1 Entrances shall be subjected to the type tests specified in 8.3.4.

2.11.14.2.2 The following basic types of entrances shall be tested:

- (a) *Horizontally Sliding Type*. Test a side-sliding and a center-opening assembly.
- (b) *Swinging Type*. Test a single swinging assembly.
- (c) *Vertically Sliding Type*. Test a biparting assembly.

2.11.14.2.3 When an entrance assembly has been tested for one type of wall construction, i.e., masonry or drywall, only the frame-to-wall interface shall be acceptable to the certifying organization for other types of construction.

2.11.15 Marking

- (22) **2.11.15.1 Labeling of Tested Entrance Assembly.** A single label listing covered components included per 2.11.15.1.1 or separate labels on all individual components per 2.11.15.1.2 shall be provided.

2.11.15.1.1 Each entrance shall be labeled. Each label shall be permanently attached to the equipment and shall be readily visible after installation. The following data shall be on the label:

- (a) certifying organization's name or identifying symbol
- (b) the name, trademark, or file number by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified
- (c) statement of compliance with 8.3.4
- (d) a list of the component items found in the definition of "entrance assembly" that are covered by the label

2.11.15.1.2 Labels conforming to 2.11.15.1.1(a) and 2.11.15.1.1(b) shall be provided for each entrance as follows:

- (a) One label shall be provided for each door panel.
- (b) Each frame shall be labeled, except where frames are installed in masonry or concrete and the panel overlaps the wall in conformance with 2.11.11.5.1 and 2.11.11.5.2, or 2.11.12.4.4.

(1) One label shall be provided for each section of a frame or for each piece of a knockdown frame.

(2) A single label shall be provided for the entire frame where the label states that it includes both the fixed side panels and the transom.

(c) One label shall be provided for the frame, except that no label is required where frames are installed in masonry or concrete and the panel overlaps the wall in conformance with 2.11.11.5.1 and 2.11.11.5.2, or 2.11.12.4.4.

(d) A single label may be provided for the entire entrance assembly where components are equivalent to those tested as a complete assembly.

2.11.15.1.3 Where the entrance hardware assembly has been tested in a complete entrance assembly, a single label, conforming to 2.11.15.1.1, shall be provided for the entrance hardware assembly.

2.11.15.1.4 Where a component of the entrance hardware assembly has not been tested as part of the complete assembly, a label conforming to 2.11.15.1.1 shall be applied to the component.

2.11.15.2 Other Entrance Assemblies. Other entrance assemblies of the three basic types (see 2.11.14) shall qualify for labeling or listing/certification either (22)

(a) when composed of panel(s), frame, and hardware of the same type as tested and not exceeding the overall height and width of any panel and frame of the largest size tested or

(b) when such panel(s), frame, and hardware are modified, and test or technical data demonstrates that the modifications will meet the performance requirements of the test procedure in 8.3.3

All other elements of the assembly shall conform to all other applicable requirements of this Code.

2.11.15.3 Entrances Larger Than Tested Assemblies. (22) When the entrance is too large for the regularly available test facilities, the certifying organization shall be permitted to issue oversize certificates or oversize labels, or such entrances shall be permitted to be used subject to approval by the authority having jurisdiction.

2.11.16 Factory Inspections

(22)

The manufacturing facilities for the production of entrances or components thereof shall be inspected by the certifying organization at random at least quarterly, or if they are not manufactured on a continuous basis, at

the time they are being produced, to assure that production methods are such that entrances or components thereof similar to those tested are being produced.

(22) 2.11.17 Transoms and Fixed Side Panels

Transoms and fixed side panels shall be permitted to close openings above and beside the horizontally sliding- or horizontally swinging-type entrances, provided that

(a) the opening closed by the transom and fixed side panel does not exceed in width or height the dimensions of the entrance in which it is installed

(b) the transom panels and fixed side panels are

(1) constructed in a manner equivalent to the construction of the entrance panels

(2) secured

(22) 2.11.18 Installation Instructions

(a) Instructions detailing the application and installation of door listed/certified panels and entrance hardware shall be provided.

(b) Where frames are used, instructions detailing the listed/certified frame-to-wall interface shall be provided.

2.11.19 Gasketing of Hoistway Entrances

Where gasketing material is applied to entrances with a fire-protection rating, it shall conform to 2.11.19.1 through 2.11.19.4.

2.11.19.1 The gasketing material shall be subjected to the tests specified in UL 10B, NFPA 252, or CAN4-S104, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

2.11.19.2 The gasketing material shall withstand the maximum elevated-temperature tests as defined by ANSI/UL 1784 without deterioration.

2.11.19.3 Each section of the gasketing material shall be labeled. Each label shall bear the names of the manufacturer and the certifying agency, and a statement indicating conformance with 2.11.19.1 and 2.11.19.2. The label shall be visible after installation.

2.11.19.4 Labeled gasketing material shall conform to 2.11.16 or the NBCC, whichever is applicable.

NOTES (2.11.19):

(1) See also 2.1.1.5, 2.11.3, and 2.13.4 for additional requirements to be considered when gasketing material is applied to a hoistway entrance.

(2) These requirements do not evaluate the air and/or smoke leakage performance of the gasketing material.

SECTION 2.12 HOISTWAY DOOR LOCKING DEVICES AND CLOSED DETECTION MEANS, AND HOISTWAY ACCESS SWITCHES

2.12.1 General

For passenger elevators, the unlocking zone from the landing floor level shall be not less than 75 mm (3 in.) nor more than 175 mm (7 in.). For freight elevators with vertically sliding doors, the unlocking zone from the landing floor level shall be not less than 75 mm (3 in.) nor more than 450 mm (18 in.).

2.12.1.1 When the car is stopped within the unlocking zone, the hoistway doors shall be unlocked, or locked but openable from the landing side either manually or by power.

2.12.1.2 When the car is outside the unlocking zone, the hoistway doors shall be openable from the landing side only by a hoistway door unlocking device (see 2.12.6, 2.12.7, and Nonmandatory Appendix B).

2.12.1.3 For security purposes, hoistway doors shall be permitted to be locked out of service, subject to the requirements of 2.11.6.

2.12.1.4 Passenger elevator hoistway doors shall be equipped with interlocks conforming to 2.12.2.

2.12.1.5 Freight elevator hoistway doors shall be equipped with interlocks conforming to 2.12.2 or hoistway door combination mechanical locks and closed detection means conforming to, and where permitted by, 2.12.3.

2.12.2 Interlocks

2.12.2.1 General. Each entrance at a landing to an elevator used for passengers or freight and not conforming to 2.12.3.1 shall be equipped with one or more interlocks meeting the design requirements of 2.12.2.4.

2.12.2.2 Closed Position of Hoistway Doors. Hoistway doors shall be considered to be in the closed position under the following conditions. The following dimensions apply to the doors in their normal operating condition (see 2.14.4.11):

(a) for horizontally sliding or swinging doors, when the leading edge of the door is within 10 mm (0.375 in.) of the nearest face of the jamb or when the panels of center-opening doors are within 10 mm (0.375 in.) of contact with each other

(b) for vertically sliding counterweighted doors, when the leading edge of the door is within 10 mm (0.375 in.) of the sill for doors that slide up to open, or 10 mm (0.375 in.) of the lintel for doors that slide down to open

(c) for vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, when the astragal on the upper panel is within 19 mm (0.75 in.) of the lower panel

2.12.2.3 Operation of the Driving Machine With a Hoistway Door Unlocked or Not in the Closed Position.

Operation of the driving machine when a hoistway door is unlocked or not in the closed position (see 2.12.2.2) shall be permitted under one of the following conditions:

(a) by a car-leveling or truck-zoning device (see 2.26.1.6)

(b) when a hoistway access switch is operated (see 2.12.7)

(c) when a bypass switch is activated (see 2.26.1.5)

2.12.2.4 General Design Requirements. Interlocks shall conform to 2.12.2.4.1 through 2.12.2.4.8.

2.12.2.4.1 To detect the closed and locked position of the door(s), interlocks shall have

(a) contacts meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.1 or

(b) SIL rated devices meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.2

2.12.2.4.2 Interlocks that have a closed and locked detection means using contacts meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.1 shall have contacts that are

(a) positively opened by the locking member or by a member connected to and mechanically operated by the locking member

(b) maintained in the open position by the action of gravity, or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by means of the opening member

(c) open when the hoistway door interlock is unlocked

If the contacts are maintained in the open position by other than the locking member, the interlock shall be located or designed such that the contacts cannot be manually closed from the car or landing when the doors are open.

The electrical contact bridging means shall withstand a separating force of 200 N (45 lbf) in any direction from the locking member.

2.12.2.4.3 Interlocks that have a closed and locked detection means using SIL rated devices meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.2 shall

(a) have the detection means directly operated by the locking member or a member connected to and positively mechanically operated by the locking member

(b) have the locking member maintained in the unlocked position by the action of gravity, or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by means of the opening member

(c) detect when the hoistway door interlock is locked

(d) be tamper resistant such that they cannot be made ineffective from within the car or landing side when the doors are open

(e) be designed such that devices attached to the locking member that are required to detect the position of the locking member shall withstand a separating force of 200 N (45 lbf) in any direction from the locking member

(f) be located or designed such that they cannot detect the closed and locked position of the door unless the door is in the closed and locked position

2.12.2.4.4 The locking member of the interlock shall hold the door in the locked position by means of gravity, or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by means of a positive linkage.

2.12.2.4.5 The interlock shall lock the door in the closed position with a minimum engagement of 7 mm (0.28 in.) of the locking members before the interlock detection means detects the closed and locked position and before the driving machine can be operated, except as permitted in 2.12.2.3.

Devices that permit operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device when the door is closed but before it is locked are not interlocks and are not permitted where interlocks are required by this Code.

2.12.2.4.6 Interlocks used with multisection doors (22) shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) They shall lock all sections of the door but shall be permitted to be applied to only one section of the door, provided the device used to interconnect the door sections is arranged so that locking one section will prevent the opening of all sections.

(b) Where used with vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, they shall be arranged so that the interlock closed and locked detection means are mechanically held in the open or unlocked position by the door or devices attached thereto, unless the door is in the closed position.

(c) Where used with center-opening horizontally swinging doors, either

(1) both door panels shall be equipped with interlocks or

(2) where the door panels are arranged so that one panel can be opened only after the other panel has been opened, the interlock is not required on the section that opens last, if that door panel is provided with a door closed detection means conforming to 2.14.4.2.3, 2.14.4.2.4 or 2.14.4.2.5, and 2.26.2.15, except that the terms “door or gate” and “car door or gate” shall be replaced with the term “hoistway door” or “hoistway door section,” and the term “accessible from within the car” shall be replaced with the term “accessible from the landing side when the hoistway doors are closed,” and the term “made ineffective from within the car” shall be replaced with “made ineffective from the landing side when the hoistway doors are closed.”

(d) Where used with combination horizontally sliding and swinging doors, either

(1) the sliding and swinging panels shall both be equipped with interlocks, or

(2) where the sliding and swinging panels are interconnected in conformity with the requirements of 2.11.13.5, the interlock is not required on the swinging panel, provided the interlock on the sliding panel is designed and installed so that the car cannot be operated unless the sliding and swinging panels are both locked in the closed position, as defined in 2.12.2.2.

(e) Where a door closer, used with a combination sliding and swinging door, is arranged to be disconnected to allow the sliding panel to swing, it shall be designed and installed so that it shall not cause the interlock detection means to detect the closed and locked position when the door closer is disconnected and released.

2.12.2.4.7 Interlock systems employing a single master switch for more than one door are prohibited.

2.12.2.4.8 Mercury tube switches shall not be used.

2.12.2.5 Interlock Retiring Cam Device. Retiring cams used to actuate an interlock shall exert a force at least double the average force required to operate the interlock and shall have a movement at least 13 mm (0.5 in.) more than the average movement required to operate the interlock.

An interlock retiring cam device shall be permanently marked by the manufacturer with its rated horizontal force and rated horizontal movement.

The rated horizontal force shall be the static force exerted by a retiring cam device in the horizontal direction when extended a distance equal to 75% of its rated horizontal movement. The rated horizontal movement shall be the horizontal distance traveled by the retiring cam device from the fully retired position to the fully extended position.

2.12.2.6 Location. Interlocks shall be located so that they are not accessible from the landing side when the hoistway doors are closed.

2.12.3 Hoistway Door Combination Mechanical Locks and Closed Detection Means

2.12.3.1 Where Permitted. Hoistway door combination mechanical locks and closed detection means shall be permitted only on freight elevators equipped with manually operated vertically sliding doors and only at the following landings:

(a) the top terminal landing and the landing whose sill is located not more than 1 225 mm (48 in.) below the top terminal landing sill, provided the elevator rise does not exceed 4 570 mm (15 ft)

(b) any landing whose sill is within 1 525 mm (60 in.) of the pit floor, regardless of the elevator rise

2.12.3.2 Closed Position of Hoistway Doors. Hoistway doors shall be considered to be in the closed position under the following conditions. The following dimensions apply to the doors in their normal operating condition (see also 2.14.4.11):

(a) for vertically sliding counterweighted doors, when the leading edge of the door is within 10 mm (0.375 in.) of the sill for doors that slide up to open, or 10 mm (0.375 in.) of the lintel for doors that slide down to open

(b) for vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, when the astragal on the upper panel is within 19 mm (0.75 in.) of the lower panel

2.12.3.3 Operation of the Driving Machine With a Hoistway Door Not in the Closed Position. Operation of the driving machine when a hoistway door is not in the closed position shall be permitted under one of the following conditions:

(a) by a car-leveling or truck-zoning device (see 2.12.2.2 and 2.26.1.6)

(b) when a hoistway access switch is operated (see 2.12.7)

(c) when a bypass switch is activated (see 2.26.1.5)

2.12.3.4 General Design Requirements. Hoistway door combination mechanical locks and closed detection means shall conform to 2.12.3.4.1 through 2.12.3.4.5.

2.12.3.4.1 Hoistway door combination mechanical locks and closed detection means shall be designed so that the locking member and the closed detection means are mounted on and attached to a common base, in such a manner that there is a fixed relation between the location of the closed detection means and the location of the locking member.

They shall be installed and adjusted so that the closed detection means cannot detect the closed position until the door is closed as specified in 2.12.3.2, and so that the locking member is in a position to lock the door when or before the closed detection means detects the closed position. To prevent motion of the door from allowing the closed detection means to detect the open position while the door is locked in the closed position, multiple locking points shall, where necessary, be provided on the locking mechanism.

2.12.3.4.2 The closed detection means shall be positively operated mechanically by the locking bar of the mechanical lock or by a lever or other device attached to and operated by the door, and the closed detection means shall be maintained in the open position by the action of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by positive mechanical means unless the door is in the closed position. See 2.26.2.14.

2.12.3.4.3 The mechanical lock shall hold the door in the locked position by means of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both.

2.12.3.4.4 Hoistway door combination mechanical locks and closed detection means used with vertical-slide multiple-panel doors shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) They shall lock all panels of the door but shall be permitted to be applied to only one section of the door, provided the device used to interconnect the door sections is arranged so that locking one panel will prevent the opening of all panels.

(b) Where used with vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, the closed detection means shall be arranged so that it is positively operated mechanically by the door or a device attached thereto, and cannot detect the closed position unless the door is closed.

2.12.3.4.5 Mercury tube switches shall not be used.

2.12.3.5 Location. Hoistway door combination mechanical locks and closed detection means shall be located so that they are not accessible from the landing side when the hoistway doors are closed.

2.12.4 Listing/Certification of Door Locking Devices and Door or Gate Closed Detection Means

2.12.4.1 Type Tests. Each type and make of hoistway door interlock, car door interlock, hoistway door combination mechanical lock and closed detection means, and door or gate closed detection means shall conform to the type tests specified in 8.3.3, unless tested prior to

(a) August 1, 1996, and shall have been subjected to the tests specified in ASME A17.1a-1994, Section 1101

(b) March 23, 2002, in jurisdictions enforcing CSA B44, and shall have been subjected to the tests specified in CSA B44S1-97, Clause 11.5

The tests shall be done by or under the supervision of a certifying organization.

2.12.4.2 Listing/Certification. Each type and make of hoistway door interlock, car door interlock, hoistway door combination mechanical lock and closed detection means, and door or gate closed detection means shall conform to the general requirements for tests and certification specified in 8.3.1.

2.12.4.3 Identification Marking. Each listed/certified device shall be labeled. The label shall be permanently attached to the device and shall be located to be readily visible when the device is installed in its operating position (see 2.26.4.3.2 for additional marking requirements for SIL rated devices).

The label shall include the following data:

(a) the name, trademark, or certifying organization file number by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified

(b) the certifying organization name or identifying symbol

(c) statement of compliance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44

(d) a distinctive type, model, or style letter or number
(e) the rated voltage and current, and whether alternating current (AC) or direct current (DC)

(f) rated test force and rated test movement when the device is a type released by an interlock retiring cam (see 8.3.3.4.7)

(g) date (month and year) device was subjected to the type test specified in 2.12.4.1

(h) if the device has only been type tested and listed/certified for use on a private residence elevator, the label shall indicate the restricted use

2.12.5 Reserved for Future Use

2.12.6 Hoistway Door Unlocking Devices

2.12.6.1 General. Except in jurisdictions that limit the use of hoistway door unlocking devices, such devices shall be provided for use by elevator and emergency personnel for each elevator at every landing where there is an entrance.

2.12.6.2 Location and Design. Hoistway door unlocking devices shall conform to 2.12.6.2.1 through 2.12.6.2.5.

2.12.6.2.1 The device shall unlock and permit the opening of a hoistway door from a landing irrespective of the position of the car.

2.12.6.2.2 The device shall be designed to prevent unlocking the door with common tools.

2.12.6.2.3 Where a hoistway door unlocking device consists of an arrangement whereby a releasing chain, permanently attached to a door locking mechanism, is kept under a locked panel adjacent to the landing door, such a panel shall be self-closing and self-locking and shall not have identifying markings on its face.

2.12.6.2.4 The hoistway door unlocking device shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1). The operating means shall also be made available to emergency personnel during an emergency.

2.12.6.2.5 The hoistway door unlocking device keyway and locked panel (see 2.12.6.2.3), if provided, shall be located at a height not greater than 2100 mm (83 in.) above the landing.

2.12.7 Hoistway Access Switches

2.12.7.1 General

2.12.7.1.1 Hoistway access switches shall be provided when the rated speed is greater than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) at

(a) the lowest landing when a separate pit access door is not provided

(b) the top landing

2.12.7.1.2 For elevators with a rated speed of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) or less, a hoistway access switch shall be provided at the top landing when the distance from the top of the car to the landing sill exceeds 900 mm (35 in.) when the car platform is level with the landing immediately below the top landing.

2.12.7.1.3 When one or more hoistway access switches are provided but not required, the switch(es) shall be provided at the landing(s) specified in 2.12.7.1.1. Additional hoistway access switches shall be permitted at other landings only when switches specified in 2.12.7.1.1 have been provided.

2.12.7.2 Location and Design. Hoistway access switches shall conform to 2.12.7.2.1 through 2.12.7.2.5.

2.12.7.2.1 The switch shall be installed a minimum of 1 200 mm (48 in.) and a maximum of 1 825 mm (72 in.) above the floor measured to the centerline of the switch, adjacent to or part of the hoistway entrance at the landing with which it is associated, and in one of the following locations:

- (a) on the wall outside of the hoistway within 300 mm (12 in.) of the entrance frame
- (b) on the hoistway entrance frame or jamb
- (c) on the sight guard

The switch shall be labeled "ACCESS" and shall be a three-position switch, labeled "UP," "OFF," and "DOWN" (in that order), with the "OFF" position as the center position. The switch shall be rotated clockwise to go from the "UP" position to the "OFF" position to the "DOWN" position.

2.12.7.2.2 Where the switch is located on the sight guard, the sight guard shall accommodate and support the load of the switch and its wiring.

2.12.7.2.3 The switch shall be of the continuous-pressure spring-return type and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination with the key removable only when the switch is in the "OFF" position. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(22) **2.12.7.2.4** The switch shall either

- (a) use contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their openings shall not be solely dependent on springs; or
- (b) be SIL rated with a SIL equal to or greater than the SIL indicated for the applicable device shown in Table 2.26.4.3.2

2.12.7.2.5 Where the signal from the switch is transmitted through wiring that moves due to door opening or closing, the design shall be such that any single ground or short circuit shall not render any hoistway door or car door interlock, car door or gate electric contact, or hoistway door combination mechanical lock and electric contact ineffective or cause car movement.

2.12.7.3 Hoistway Access Operation. Hoistway Access Operation shall conform to 2.12.7.3.1 through 2.12.7.3.4.

2.12.7.3.1 Except as permitted in 2.26.1.4.3(d), a separate switch labeled "ACCESS" with two positions labeled "OFF" and "ENABLE" shall be provided in the car and shall be key operated or behind a locked cover. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.12.7.3.2 When the switch is in the "ENABLE" position, the elevator shall be on Hoistway Access Operation and shall conform to the following:

- (a) Operation by car and landing operating devices shall be disabled.
- (b) Automatic power operation of the hoistway door and/or car door or gate shall be disabled.
- (c) Automatic operation by a car-leveling device shall be disabled.
- (d) Stopping the car at the access landing by a car-leveling device while operating a hoistway access switch at the landing shall be permitted.
- (e) The hoistway access switches at the landing and their operation shall be enabled in accordance with 2.12.7.3.3 except where either top-of-car Inspection Operation (see 2.26.1.4.2) or in-car Inspection Operation (see 2.26.1.4.3) is in effect.

2.12.7.3.3 The operation of a hoistway access switch (22) at the landing shall permit movement of the car with the hoistway door located adjacent to the switch at the landing unlocked or not in the closed position, and with only the car door or gate associated with this hoistway door unlocked or not in the closed position, subject to the following requirements:

- (a) The operation of the hoistway access switch at the landing shall not render ineffective the hoistway door interlock or electric contact at any other landing, nor shall the car move if any other hoistway door is unlocked.
- (b) The car shall not be operated at a speed greater than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). For elevators with static control, a means independent from the normal means to control the speed shall be provided to limit the speed of the car on Hoistway Access Operation to a maximum of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), should the normal means to control this speed (mechanical, electrical, or solid-state devices) fail to do so.

The car speed-sensing device used for the means to limit the speed of the car while operating in response to an access switch shall be permitted to be either a separate car speed-sensing device from that of the normal speed control system or the same car speed-sensing device, provided that a separate means is used to continuously verify the proper operation of this speed-sensing device. Where the same car speed-sensing device is used, the detection of a failure of this car speed-sensing device while operating in response to an access switch shall cause the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake.

The car speed-sensing device(s) and, where required, the verification means described above, shall conform to the following:

(1) a common actuating means (e.g., a driving-machine shaft, brake drum) shall be permitted, provided that it is not dependent on the following connection types, unless the connection is continuously monitored:

(-a) traction (excluding the traction between the drive sheave and suspension means and the traction between the governor and governor rope),

(-b) friction (except for interference fits), or

(-c) a flexible coupling where positive engagement is not assured between coupling halves

Where monitoring is required, the monitoring shall detect a failure that prevents conformance with this requirement while operating in response to an access switch and shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

(2) a common member (e.g., tape, target, wire) that is sensed by both speed-sensing devices shall be permitted, provided that

(-a) the member is monitored so that when its presence is not detected while operating in response to an access switch, this shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(-b) the common member is securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect the operation of the sensors

(3) a common mounting means shall be permitted

(c) If the lowest landing is the normal means of access to the pit, the hoistway access switch shall enable the car to move in the up direction to a point between 2130 mm (84 in.) and 2450 mm (96 in.) from the floor level to the bottom of the platform guard, unless the travel of the car limits such movement.

(d) The movement of the car initiated and maintained by the access switch at a landing other than the lowest landing shall be limited in the down direction to a travel not greater than the height of the car crosshead above the car platform, and limited in the up direction to the distance the platform guard extends below the car platform.

(e) The hoistway access switch at the landing shall only control the movement of the car within the zone specified in (c) or (d). Control circuits related to, or operated by, the hoistway access switches shall comply with 2.26.9.3.1(c) through 2.26.9.3.1(e) and 2.26.9.4.

2.12.7.3.4 When in the "OFF" position, the access switch in the car shall disable Hoistway Access Operation by means of the hoistway access switches at the landings.

SECTION 2.13 POWER OPERATION OF HOISTWAY DOORS AND CAR DOORS

2.13.1 Types of Doors and Gates Permitted

Where both a hoistway door and a car door or gate are opened and/or closed by power, the hoistway door and the car door or gate shall both be either the horizontally sliding type or the vertically sliding type.

2.13.2 Power Opening

2.13.2.1 Power Opening of Car Doors or Gates. Power opening of a car door or gate shall be subject to the requirements of 2.13.2.1.1 and 2.13.2.1.2.

2.13.2.1.1 Power opening shall occur only at the landing where the car is stopping or leveling or is at rest, and shall start only when the car is within the unlocking zone (see 2.12.1) where an automatic car-leveling device is provided, except that on freight elevators with vertically sliding doors and static control, power shall not be applied to open car doors until the car is within 300 mm (12 in.) of the landing.

2.13.2.1.2 Collapsible car gates shall not be power opened to a distance exceeding one-third of the clear gate opening, and in no case more than 250 mm (10 in.).

2.13.2.2 Power Opening of Hoistway Doors. Power opening of a hoistway door shall conform to 2.13.2.2.1 through 2.13.2.2.3.

2.13.2.2.1 Power opening shall occur only at the landing where the car is stopping or leveling or is at rest, and shall start only when the car is within the unlocking zone (see 2.12.1) where an automatic car-leveling device is provided, except that on freight elevators with vertically sliding doors and static control, opening shall not start until the car is within 300 mm (12 in.) of the landing.

2.13.2.2.2 Power opening shall be permitted to be initiated automatically through control circuits, provided the car is being automatically stopped or leveled and, when stopping under normal operating conditions, the car shall be at rest or substantially level with the landing before the hoistway door is fully opened.

2.13.2.2.3 Sequence opening of vertically sliding hoistway doors and adjacent car doors or gates shall comply with 2.13.6.

2.13.3 Power Closing

2.13.3.1 Power Closing or Automatic Self-Closing of Car Doors or Gates Where Used With Manually Operated or Self-Closing Hoistway Doors

2.13.3.1.1 Where a car door or gate of an automatic or continuous-pressure operation passenger elevator is closed by power or is of the automatically released self-closing type and faces a manually operated or self-closing hoistway door, the closing of the car door or gate shall not be initiated unless the hoistway door is in the closed position, and the closing mechanism shall be designed so that the force necessary to prevent closing of a horizontally sliding car door or gate from rest is not more than 135 N (30 lbf).

2.13.3.1.2 Where a car door or gate is closed by power through continuous pressure of a door closing switch or of the car operating device, and where the release of the closing switch or operating device will cause the car door or gate to stop or to stop and reopen, 2.13.3.1.1 does not apply.

2.13.3.2 Power Closing of Horizontally Sliding Hoistway Doors and Horizontally Sliding Car Doors or Gates by Continuous-Pressure Means. Horizontally sliding hoistway doors with manually closed, power-operated, or power-closed horizontally sliding car doors or gates shall be permitted to be closed by continuous-pressure means, subject to the requirements of 2.13.3.2.1 through 2.13.3.2.4.

2.13.3.2.1 The release of the closing means shall cause the hoistway door, and a power-operated or power-closed car door or gate, to stop or to stop and reopen.

2.13.3.2.2 The operation of the closing means at any landing shall not close the hoistway door at any other landing, nor the car door or gate when the elevator car is at any other landing.

2.13.3.2.3 Any closing means at a landing shall close only that hoistway door and the car door or gate at the side where such means is located.

2.13.3.2.4 For elevators having more than one hoistway opening at any landing level, a separate closing means shall be provided in the car for each car door or gate and its adjacent hoistway door, except that a separate closing means need not be furnished for a horizontally sliding hoistway door and adjacent car door or gate that conform to 2.13.4.

2.13.3.3 Power Closing of Horizontally Sliding Hoistway Doors and Horizontally Sliding Car Doors or Gates by Momentary Pressure or by Automatic Means. Power closing by momentary pressure or by automatic means shall be permitted only for automatic or continuous-pressure-operation elevators. The closing of

the doors shall be subject to the requirements of 2.13.3.3.1 and 2.13.3.3.2.

2.13.3.3.1 The closing of the doors shall conform to 2.13.4.

2.13.3.3.2 A momentary-pressure switch or button shall be provided in the car, the operation of which shall cause the doors to stop or to stop and reopen. The switch or button shall be identified as required by 2.26.12.

2.13.3.4 Power Closing of Vertically Sliding Hoistway Doors and Vertically Sliding Car Doors or Gates

2.13.3.4.1 Vertically sliding hoistway doors with manually closed, power-operated, or power-closed vertically sliding car doors or gates, where closed by continuous-pressure means, shall conform to (a) through (e).

(a) The release of the continuous-pressure closing means shall cause the hoistway door, and a power-operated or power-closed car door or gate, to immediately initiate a reversal, and to fully reopen. Reopening by release of the continuous-pressure closing means shall be permitted to be disabled when the hoistway door is within 250 mm (10 in.) of full close.

(b) The continuous-pressure closing means shall not close the hoistway door, car door, or gate at any other landing.

(c) Any continuous-pressure closing means at a landing shall close only that hoistway door and the car door or gate at the entrance where such means is located. The continuous-pressure closing means shall be located where the full opening of the door that it controls is visible.

(d) For elevators having more than one hoistway opening at any landing level, a separate continuous-pressure closing means shall be provided in the car for each car door or gate and its adjacent hoistway door. The continuous-pressure closing means shall be located adjacent to the door(s) or gate(s) that it controls.

(e) Where a door close button or switch is provided, it shall be labeled "CLOSE."

2.13.3.4.2 Vertically sliding hoistway doors with power-operated vertically sliding car doors or gates shall be permitted to be closed by momentary pressure or automatic means only for automatic or continuous-pressure operation elevators.

2.13.3.4.3 Power-operated vertically sliding doors shall have a door open means conforming to the following:

(a) A momentary-pressure door open switch or button labeled "OPEN" shall be provided at each landing and in the car. When the "OPEN" button is operated, it shall cause the car door or gate and hoistway door at the landing to immediately initiate a reversal, and to fully reopen or reopen by a distance of not less than 300 mm (12 in.). The markings shown in Table 2.26.12.1 do not apply.

(b) The door open switch or button shall not open the hoistway door, car door, or gate at any other landing.

(c) Any door open switch or button at a landing shall open only that hoistway door and the car door or gate at the entrance where such means is located. The "OPEN" switch or button shall be located adjacent to the door(s) or gate(s) that it controls.

(d) For elevators having more than one hoistway opening at any landing level, a separate door open switch or button shall be provided in the car for each car door or gate and its adjacent hoistway door.

2.13.3.4.4 The average closing speed shall not exceed 0.3 m/s (1 ft/s) for a vertical slide-up-to-open hoistway door or for each panel of a vertically sliding biparting hoistway door, and shall not exceed 0.6 m/s (2 ft/s) for a vertically sliding car door or gate.

2.13.3.4.5 Vertical slide-up-to-open hoistway doors with power-operated vertical slide-up-to-open car doors or gates without sequence operation (see 2.13.6) shall conform to (a) through (c), 2.13.3.4.8, and 2.13.3.4.9.

(a) Device(s) shall be provided that detect an object in the shape of a rectangular prism measuring 170 mm (6.75 in.) high, with a base 140 mm (5.5 in.) wide and 140 mm (5.5 in.) deep, oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the width parallel to the face of the door, in the following locations:

(1) anywhere within the opening width of the hoistway door and car door or gate when located immediately adjacent to the vertical plane established by the landing side of the hoistway door and where the object is located wholly within a vertical zone extending from the landing floor to a horizontal plane

(-a) 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

(-b) at the leading edge of the door if the leading edge is less than 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

(2) anywhere within the opening width of the hoistway door and car door or gate when located immediately adjacent to the vertical plane established by the car side of the car door or gate and where the object is located wholly within a vertical zone extending from the car floor to a horizontal plane

(-a) 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

(-b) at the leading edge of the door if the leading edge is less than 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

NOTE [2.13.3.4.5(a)]: See Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figures S-1 and S-2.

(b) Device(s) shall be provided that detect an object in the shape of a rectangular prism measuring 400 mm (16 in.) high, with a base 210 mm (8.25 in.) wide and 210 mm (8.25 in.) deep, oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the width parallel to the face of the door in the following location:

(1) anywhere within the opening width of the hoistway door and car door or gate when wholly or partially located between the vertical planes established by the landing side of the hoistway door and the car side of the car door or gate, and wholly located between hori-

zontal planes 480 mm (19 in.) above the car floor or landing floor and

(-a) 1500 mm (59 in.) above the associated car or landing floor

(-b) at the leading edge of the door if the leading edge is less than 1500 mm (59 in.) above the floor

NOTE [2.13.3.4.5(b)]: See Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-3.

(c) Device(s) shall be provided that detect an object in the shape of a rectangular prism measuring 50 mm (2 in.) high, with a base 95 mm (3.75 in.) wide and 125 mm (5 in.) deep, oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the width parallel to the face of the door anywhere within the opening width of the car door or gate that is located on the car floor immediately adjacent to the vertical plane established by the car side of the lower panel of the car door or gate.

Detection device(s) shall not be required when the car door or gate is provided with

(1) a means to stop the closing panel when the distance between rigid members of the panel and the car platform is not less than 50 mm (2 in.) when fully closed

(2) a nonshearing, noncrushing member on the leading edge of the panel that shall provide a minimum clearance at full compression of 50 mm (2 in.) when fully closed

NOTE [2.13.3.4.5(c)]: See Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-4.

2.13.3.4.6 Vertical slide-up-to-open hoistway doors with power-operated vertical slide-up-to-open car doors or gates with sequence operation (see 2.13.6) shall conform to (a) through (g), 2.13.3.4.8, and 2.13.3.4.9.

(a) Closing in compliance with 2.13.6.1.2 shall be provided.

(b) A yellow and black diagonally striped hazard warning not less than 38 mm (1.5 in.) wide shall be provided along the landing side's leading edge of the lowermost hoistway door panel.

(c) Device(s) shall be provided that detect an object in the shape of a rectangular prism measuring 170 mm (6.75 in.) high, with a base 140 mm (5.5 in.) wide and 140 mm (5.5 in.) deep, oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the width parallel to the face of the door, in the following locations:

(1) anywhere within the opening width of the car door or gate when located immediately adjacent to the vertical plane established by the landing side of the car door or gate and where the object is located wholly within a vertical zone extending from the car floor to a horizontal plane

(-a) 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

(-b) at the leading edge of the door if the leading edge is less than 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

NOTE [2.13.3.4.6(c)(1)]: See Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-5.

(2) anywhere within the opening width of the hoistway door and car door or gate when located immediately adjacent to the vertical plane established by the car side of the car door or gate and where the object is located wholly within a vertical zone extending from the car floor to a horizontal plane

(-a) 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

(-b) at the leading edge of the door if the leading edge is less than 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

NOTE [2.13.3.4.6(c)(2)]: See [Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-2](#).

(d) Device(s) shall be provided that detect an object in the shape of a rectangular prism measuring 400 mm (16 in.) high, with a base 210 mm (8.25 in.) wide and 210 mm (8.25 in.) deep, oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the width parallel to the face of the door in the following location:

(1) anywhere within the opening width of the hoistway door and car door or gate when wholly or partially located between the vertical planes established by the landing side of the car door or gate and the car side of the car door or gate, and wholly located between horizontal planes 480 mm (19 in.) above the car floor and

(-a) 1500 mm (59 in.) above the car floor

(-b) at the leading edge of the door if the leading edge is less than 1500 mm (59 in.) above the floor

NOTE [2.13.3.4.6(d)]: See [Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-6](#).

(e) Device(s) shall be provided that detect an object in the shape of a rectangular prism measuring 50 mm (2 in.) high, with a base 95 mm (3.75 in.) wide and 125 mm (5 in.) deep, oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the width parallel to the face of the door anywhere within the opening width of the car door or gate that is located on the car floor immediately adjacent to the vertical planes established by the car side and the landing side of the lower panel of the car door or gate.

Detection device(s) shall not be required when the car door or gate is provided with

(1) a means to stop the closing panel when the distance between rigid members of the panel and the car platform is not less than 50 mm (2 in.)

(2) a nonshearing, noncrushing member that shall provide a minimum clearance at full compression of 50 mm (2 in.) when in contact with the stops

NOTE [2.13.3.4.6(e)]: See [Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figures S-4 and S-7](#).

(f) A continuously sounding audible signal shall be provided with a sound level of 10 dBA minimum above ambient but shall not exceed 90 dBA when measured at the landing with car door or gate closed, which shall sound 5 s prior to car door or gate closing and continue to sound until the hoistway door is fully closed.

(g) A flashing visual signal shall be provided that is visible from the landing with the car door or gate closed and shall light 5 s prior to car door or gate closing and continue to light until the hoistway door is fully closed.

2.13.3.4.7 Vertical biparting hoistway doors with power-operated car doors or gates shall conform to (a) through (g), 2.13.3.4.8, and 2.13.3.4.9.

(a) Closing in compliance with 2.13.6.1.2 shall be provided.

(b) The closing speed of each biparting hoistway panel shall be limited to a maximum of 0.15 m/s (0.5 ft/s) when the closing panels are 250 mm (10 in.) or less from full close.

(c) A yellow and black diagonally striped hazard warning not less than 38 mm (1.5 in.) wide shall be provided along the landing side's leading edge of the lowermost hoistway door panel.

(d) Device(s) shall be provided that detect an object in the shape of a rectangular prism measuring 170 mm (6.75 in.) high, with a base 140 mm (5.5 in.) wide and 140 mm (5.5 in.) deep, oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the width parallel to the face of the door, in the following locations:

(1) anywhere within the opening width of the car door or gate when located immediately adjacent to the vertical plane established by the landing side of the car door or gate and where the object is located wholly within a vertical zone extending from the car floor to a horizontal plane

(-a) 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

(-b) at the leading edge of the door if the leading edge is less than 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

NOTE [2.13.3.4.7(d)(1)]: See [Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-8](#).

(2) anywhere within the opening width of the car door or gate when located immediately adjacent to the vertical plane established by the car side of the car door or gate and where the object is located wholly within a vertical zone extending from the car floor to a horizontal plane

(-a) 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

(-b) at the leading edge of the door if the leading edge is less than 1880 mm (74 in.) above the floor

NOTE [2.13.3.4.7(d)(2)]: See [Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-9](#).

(e) Device(s) shall be provided that detect an object in the shape of a rectangular prism measuring 400 mm (16 in.) high, with a base 210 mm (8.25 in.) wide and 210 mm (8.25 in.) deep, oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the width parallel to the face of the door in the following location:

(1) anywhere within the opening width of the car door or gate when wholly or partially located between the vertical planes established by the landing side of

the car door or gate and the car side of the car door or gate, and wholly located between horizontal planes 480 mm (19 in.) above the car floor and

(-a) 1500 mm (59 in.) above the car floor

(-b) at the leading edge of the door if the leading edge is less than 1500 mm (59 in.) above the floor

NOTE [2.13.3.4.7(e)]: See [Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-10](#).

(f) Device(s) shall be provided that detect an object in the shape of a rectangular prism measuring 50 mm (2 in.) high, with a base 95 mm (3.75 in.) wide and 125 mm (5 in.) deep, oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the width parallel to the face of the door anywhere within the opening width of the car door or gate that is located on the car floor immediately adjacent to the vertical planes established by the car side and the landing side of the lower panel of the car door or gate.

Detection device(s) shall not be required when the car door or gate is provided with

(1) a means to stop the closing panel when the distance between rigid members of the panel and the car platform is not less than 50 mm (2 in.)

(2) a nonshearing, noncrushing member that shall provide a minimum clearance at full compression of 50 mm (2 in.) when in contact with the stops

NOTE [2.13.3.4.7(f)]: See [Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-11](#).

(g) Device(s) shall be provided that detect an object in the shape of a rectangular prism measuring 50 mm (2 in.) high, with a base of 250 mm (10 in.) wide and 95 mm (3.75 in.) deep, oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the width parallel to the face of the door, that is located on the car floor anywhere within the horizontal distance between the car side of the hoistway door to the vertical plane of the landing side of the car door or gate, measured 50 mm (2 in.) above the car floor.

Detection device(s) shall not be required when the horizontal distance from the car side of the fully open hoistway door measured at the hoistway door sill to the vertical plane of the landing side of the fully closed car door or gate measured 50 mm (2 in.) above the car floor is less than 95 mm (3.75 in.).

NOTE [2.13.3.4.7(g)]: See [Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-12](#).

2.13.3.4.8 If an object has been detected in accordance with 2.13.3.4.5(a), 2.13.3.4.5(b), or 2.13.3.4.5(c); 2.13.3.4.6(c), 2.13.3.4.6(d), or 2.13.3.4.6(e); or 2.13.3.4.7(d), 2.13.3.4.7(e), 2.13.3.4.7(f), or 2.13.3.4.7(g), where applicable, the hoistway door and car door or gate shall not close, or if closing, shall cause the car door or gate and the hoistway door at the landing to immediately initiate a reversal, and to fully reopen or reopen by a distance not less than 300 mm (12 in.).

2.13.3.4.9 After the door has reached its fully opened position and before door closing is initiated, the device(s) used to comply with 2.13.3.4.5(a), 2.13.3.4.5(b), or 2.13.3.4.5(c); 2.13.3.4.6(c), 2.13.3.4.6(d), or 2.13.3.4.6(e); or 2.13.3.4.7(d), 2.13.3.4.7(e), 2.13.3.4.7(f), or 2.13.3.4.7(g), where applicable, shall be checked to assure that it is capable of sensing the defined objects and sending the appropriate signal to the control that initiates the starting, stopping, and direction of motion of the door(s). If the device(s) is incapable of sensing the defined object or sending the appropriate signal, power closing of the door(s) or gate(s) shall be rendered inoperative.

2.13.3.4.10 When building conditions would render ineffective or nonoperational the detection means required by 2.13.3.4.5(a), 2.13.3.4.5(b), or 2.13.3.4.5(c); 2.13.3.4.6(c), 2.13.3.4.6(d), or 2.13.3.4.6(e); or 2.13.3.4.7(d), 2.13.3.4.7(e), 2.13.3.4.7(f), or 2.13.3.4.7(g), the following shall be provided in lieu of compliance with 2.13.3.4.5(a), 2.13.3.4.5(b), or 2.13.3.4.5(c); 2.13.3.4.6(c), 2.13.3.4.6(d), or 2.13.3.4.6(e); or 2.13.3.4.7(d), 2.13.3.4.7(e), 2.13.3.4.7(f), or 2.13.3.4.7(g):

(a) Continuous-pressure closing of the car door or gate and hoistway door shall be in compliance with 2.13.3.4.1.

(b) Usage shall be limited to authorized personnel only. A sign complying with 8.13.2 shall be provided but shall read: "THIS IS A FREIGHT ELEVATOR, NOT A PASSENGER ELEVATOR, AND NOT FOR PUBLIC USE. NO PERSONS OTHER THAN AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ARE PERMITTED TO OPERATE THIS ELEVATOR."

(c) Sequence operation shall be in compliance with 2.13.6.1.

(d) The average closing speed of the car door or gate shall be limited to 0.20 m/s (0.67 ft/s).

NOTE (2.13.3.4.10): Such building conditions include, but are not limited to, environments with high levels of particulates, environments impacted by detector emissions, large opening widths, excessive cold, and wash down environments.

2.13.4 Closing Limitations for Power-Operated Horizontally Sliding Hoistway Doors and Horizontally Sliding Car Doors or Gates

2.13.4.1 Where Required. Where a power-operated horizontally sliding hoistway door or car door/gate, or both, are closed by momentary pressure or by automatic means (see 2.13.3.3), or are closed simultaneously with another door or car door/gate or both from one continuous-pressure means (see 2.13.3.2.3 and 2.13.3.2.4), the closing mechanism shall be designed and installed to conform to 2.13.4.2 and the reopening device shall be designed and installed to conform to 2.13.5.

2.13.4.2 Closing Mechanism

(22) 2.13.4.2.1 Kinetic Energy

(a) Where the hoistway door and the car door/gate are closed in such a manner that stopping either one manually will stop both, the kinetic energy of the closing door system shall be based on the sum of the hoistway and the car door weights, as well as all parts rigidly connected thereto, including the rotational inertia effects of the door operator and the connecting transmission to the door panels.

(b) Where a reopening device conforming to 2.13.5 is used, the closing door system shall conform to the following requirements:

(1) The kinetic energy computed for the actual closing speed at any point in the Code zone distance defined by 2.13.4.2.2 shall not exceed 23 J (17 ft-lbf).

(2) The kinetic energy computed for the average closing speed as determined in accordance with 2.13.4.2.2 shall not exceed 10 J (7.37 ft-lbf).

(c) Where a reopening device is not used, or the detection of objects in the door path has been rendered inoperative (see 2.13.5), the closing door system shall conform to the following requirements:

(1) The kinetic energy computed for the actual closing speed at any point in the Code zone distance defined by 2.13.4.2.2 shall not exceed 8 J (6 ft-lbf).

(2) The kinetic energy computed for the average closing speed within the Code zone distance (see 2.13.4.2.2), or in any exposed opening width, including the last increment of door travel, shall not exceed 3.5 J (2.5 ft-lbf).

2.13.4.2.2 Door Travel in the Code Zone Distance

(a) For all side sliding doors using single- or multiple-speed panels, the Code zone distance shall be taken as the horizontal distance from a point 50 mm (2 in.) away from the open jamb to a point 50 mm (2 in.) away from the opposite jamb.

(b) For all center-opening sliding doors using single- or multiple-speed panels, the Code zone distance shall be taken as the horizontal distance from a point 25 mm (1 in.) away from the open jamb to a point 25 mm (1 in.) from the center meeting point of the doors.

(c) The average closing speed shall be determined by measuring the time required for the leading edge of the door to travel the Code zone distance.

2.13.4.2.3 Door Force. The force necessary to prevent closing of the hoistway door (or the car door or gate if power operated) from rest shall not exceed 135 N (30 lbf) (see 2.13.3.1). This force shall be measured on the leading edge of the door with the door at any point between one-third and two-thirds of its travel.

2.13.4.2.4 Door Marking Plate. A marking plate complying with 8.13.3 shall be attached to the power door operator or to the car crosshead and shall contain the following information:

(a) minimum door closing time in seconds for the doors to travel the Code zone distance as specified in 2.13.4.2.2 corresponding to the kinetic energy limits specified in 2.13.4.2.1(b)(2)

(b) minimum door closing time in seconds for the doors to travel the Code zone distance as specified in 2.13.4.2.2 corresponding to the kinetic energy limits specified in 2.13.4.2.1(c)(2), if applicable [see 2.27.3.1.6(e)]

(c) where heavier hoistway doors are used at certain floors, the minimum door closing time in seconds corresponding to the kinetic energy limits specified in 2.13.4.2.1(b)(2) and 2.13.4.2.1(c)(2), if applicable, for the corresponding floors shall be included on the marking plate

2.13.5 Reopening Device(s) for Power-Operated Horizontally Sliding Doors and Gates (22)

Reopening device(s) for power-operated horizontally sliding doors or gates shall conform to the requirements of 2.13.5.1 through 2.13.5.6. Where the term “door(s)” is used, the requirement shall apply to “gate(s)” as well. The detection technology used shall comply with this Code and the other codes and standards governing the use of that technology.

NOTE (2.13.5): Where detection technologies include the use of microwaves, standards such as IEEE C95.1 and 47 CFR 15, or ISSED RSS-247 may apply (see Part 9). Where detection technologies include the use of lasers, standards such as IEC 60825-1 and 21 CFR 1040, or CAN/CSA-E60825-1 may apply (see Part 9).

2.13.5.1 Where Required and Function. Where required by 2.13.4, power-operated doors shall be provided with a reopening device(s) that operates as follows:

(a) If an object has been detected in accordance with 2.13.5.3 or 2.13.5.4 when the doors are fully open, the hoistway door and car door shall not close or, when the doors are closing, the car door and hoistway door at the landing shall initiate a reversal without intentional delay beyond system response time, and shall fully reopen or reopen a minimum of 915 mm (36 in.).

(b) If the doors fail to fully close [see 2.12.2.2(a)] within 10 s in addition to the door close data plate value, the doors shall fully reopen.

2.13.5.2 Rendering Inoperative (22)

(a) The reopening device(s) shall be permitted to be rendered inoperative

(1) when the closing kinetic energy is reduced in accordance with 2.13.4.2.1(c)(1) and 2.13.4.2.1(c)(2)

(2) for detection of approaching objects

(-a) within 450 mm (18 in.) of the point at which the leading edge of the leading door panel contacts the door jamb or opposing door panel.

(-b) when no object is detected in the door path for more than 5 s after detecting an approaching object. When an object is detected in the path of the doors, the 5 s duration shall reset to a minimum of 3 s.

(3) for detection of objects in the door path, within 20 mm (0.75 in.) of the point at which the leading edge of the leading door panel contacts the door jamb or opposing door panel

(b) Where Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by a fire alarm initiating device (see 2.27.3.2) is not provided, door reopening devices that can be affected by smoke or flame shall be rendered inoperative after the doors have been held open for 20 s after a door close signal has been initiated. Door closing for power-operated doors shall conform to 2.13.4.

(c) When the reopening device(s) has been rendered inoperative per (a)(1), a continuously sounding audible signal shall be provided with a sound level of 10 dBA minimum above ambient and shall not exceed 80 dBA. The sound level shall be measured 1 m (40 in.) above the landing floor, 500 mm (20 in.) from the door face, along the centerline of the entrance opening, with the doors open. The signal shall sound during door closing until the doors are fully closed. In no case shall the sound level exceed 85 dBA inside the cab and within 300 mm (12 in.) from the centerline of the entrance and 1 m (40 in.) above the floor.

- (22) **2.13.5.3 Detection of Approaching Objects.** The reopening device(s) shall be designed to detect a cylindrical target(s) approaching the entrance opening of the landing-side doors as required by 2.13.5.3.1. The cylindrical target(s) shall have a diameter of 200 mm (8 in.), a height of 1 000 mm (40 in.), and detectable properties of a human applicable for the technology used. The cylindrical target(s) shall be oriented with the base parallel to the floor and the height perpendicular to the floor.

NOTE (2.13.5.3): See Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-13.

- (22) **2.13.5.3.1** A cylindrical target moving toward the entrance at an angle representative of an approaching person and at any speed between 0.3 m/s to 1 m/s (1 ft/sec to 3 ft/sec) shall be detected at some point along the moving line of detection defined as follows: from 225 mm to 500 mm (9 in. to 20 in.) measured perpendicular to the landing-side face of the hoistway door(s) and 225 mm (9 in.) ahead of the leading edge(s) (see Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figure S-16 for moving line of detection). The cylindrical target shall be permitted to be detected prior to the position defined above.

The approaching object detection means shall be effective until the leading edge of the doors is within 450 mm (18 in.) of the fully closed position and shall be permitted to be effective up to the fully closed position.

2.13.5.4 Detection of Objects in the Door Path. The reopening device(s) shall be designed to detect rectangular prisms positioned as required by 2.13.5.4.1 and 2.13.5.4.2. The rectangular prisms shall have dimensions of 80 mm × 50 mm × 150 mm (3.15 in. × 2 in. × 6 in.) and detectable properties of a human applicable for the technology.

NOTE (2.13.5.4): See Nonmandatory Appendix S, Figures S-14 and S-15.

2.13.5.4.1 The device(s) shall be designed to detect prisms positioned anywhere within the opening width of the entrance vertically between two horizontal planes located 25 mm (1 in.) and 1 525 mm (60 in.), respectively, above the floor and oriented with the 50 mm (2 in.) dimension parallel to the floor, the 150 mm (6 in.) dimension perpendicular to the door, and the 80 mm (3.15 in.) dimension perpendicular to the floor

(a) wholly located between the vertical planes established by the landing-side face of the hoistway door and the car-side face of the car door or

(b) centered between the two vertical planes described in (a) if the distance between the two planes is less than 150 mm (6 in.)

2.13.5.4.2 The device(s) shall be designed to detect prisms positioned anywhere within the opening width of the entrance on the floor and oriented with the 80 mm (3.15 in.) dimension parallel to the floor, the 150 mm (6 in.) dimension perpendicular to the door, and the 50 mm (2 in.) dimension perpendicular to the floor

(a) wholly located between the vertical planes established by the landing-side face of the hoistway door and the car-side face of the car door or

(b) centered between the two planes if the distance between the two planes is less than 150 mm (6 in.)

2.13.5.5 Self-Monitoring of Detection Means. After the door has reached its fully opened position and before door closing is initiated, the detection means used to comply with 2.13.5.3 and 2.13.5.4 shall be self-monitored to ensure that it is capable of sensing the defined objects and sending the appropriate signal to the control that initiates the starting, stopping, and direction of motion of the door(s). If the self-monitored outcome is unsuccessful, power closing of the door(s) shall be at reduced kinetic energy conforming to 2.13.4.2.1(c)(2).

2.13.5.6 Maintenance and On-Site Testing of Detection Means. The maintenance and method of on-site testing of the detection means shall be provided in the Maintenance Control Program on-site documentation (see 8.6.4.19.18).

2.13.6 Sequence Operation for Power-Operated Hoistway Doors With Car Doors or Gates

2.13.6.1 Operating Requirements. The sequence operation of a hoistway door and adjacent power-operated vertically sliding car door or gate shall conform to 2.13.6.1.1 and 2.13.6.1.2.

2.13.6.1.1 In opening, the hoistway door shall be opened at least two-thirds of its travel before the car door or gate can start to open.

2.13.6.1.2 In closing, the car door or gate shall be closed at least two-thirds of its travel before the hoistway door can start to close.

SECTION 2.14

CAR ENCLOSURES, CAR DOORS AND GATES, AND CAR ILLUMINATION

2.14.1 Passenger and Freight Enclosures, General

2.14.1.1 Enclosure Required. Elevators shall be equipped with a car enclosure.

2.14.1.2 Securing of Enclosures

2.14.1.2.1 The enclosure shall be securely fastened to the car platform and supported so that it cannot loosen or become displaced in ordinary service, on the application of the car safety, on buffer engagement, or on the application of the emergency brake (see Section 2.19).

2.14.1.2.2 The car enclosure shall be constructed so that removable portions cannot be dismantled from within the car.

2.14.1.2.3 Enclosure linings, decorative panels, light fixtures, suspended ceilings, and other apparatus or equipment attached within the car enclosure shall be securely fastened and supported so that they will not loosen or become displaced in ordinary service, on car safety application, or on buffer engagement.

(22) **2.14.1.2.4** Panels attached to the car enclosure for decorative or other purposes shall either

(a) not be unfastened from inside the car by the use of common tools or

(b) be permitted to be removed from inside the car when perforations, exceeding that which would reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter, in the enclosure used for panel hanging or support have permanent means to prevent straight-through passage beyond the running clearance

2.14.1.3 Strength and Deflection of Enclosure Walls.

The enclosure walls shall be designed and installed to withstand a force of 330 N (75 lbf) applied horizontally at any point on the walls of the enclosure without permanent deformation and so that the deflection will not reduce

the running clearance below the minimum specified in 2.5.1, nor cause the deflection to exceed 25 mm (1 in.).

2.14.1.4 Number of Compartments in Passenger and Freight Elevator Cars. Cars shall not have more than two compartments. Where elevators have two compartments, one compartment shall be located above the other, and the elevator shall conform to 2.14.1.4.1 through 2.14.1.4.6.

2.14.1.4.1 The elevator shall be used exclusively for passengers or exclusively for freight at any one time. If freight is to be carried in only one compartment, means shall be provided to lock the other compartment out of service.

2.14.1.4.2 Each compartment shall conform to the requirements of this Section, except that a trap door in the floor of the upper compartment shall provide access to the top emergency exit for the lower compartment.

2.14.1.4.3 Where either or both compartments are intended for passenger service, the minimum rated load for each compartment shall conform to 2.16.1.

Where one compartment is intended for freight use, its minimum rated load shall conform to 2.16.1 or shall be based on the freight loads to be handled, if greater than the minimum rated load required by 2.16.1.

Where both compartments are used exclusively for freight, the minimum rated load of each compartment shall conform to 2.16.2.

The rated load of the elevator shall be the sum of the rated loads of the individual compartments.

2.14.1.4.4 An emergency stop switch, where required by 2.26.2.5, shall be provided in each compartment, and these emergency stop switches shall be connected so that the car cannot run unless both are in the run position.

2.14.1.4.5 An in-car stop switch, where required by 2.26.2.21, shall be provided in each compartment, and these switches shall be connected so that the car cannot run unless both are in the run position.

2.14.1.4.6 All hoistway doors shall be closed and locked and the car doors for each compartment closed before the car can be operated.

2.14.1.5 Top Emergency Exits. An emergency exit with a cover shall be provided in the top of all elevator cars, except cars in partially enclosed hoistways (see 2.14.1.5.2).

2.14.1.5.1 Top emergency exits shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) The top emergency exit opening shall have an area of not less than 0.26 m² (400 in.²) and shall measure not less than 400 mm (16 in.) on any side.

(b) The top emergency exit and suspended ceiling opening, if any, shall be located to provide a clear passageway, unobstructed by fixed equipment located in or on top of the car. Equipment is permitted directly above the exit opening, provided that

(1) it is not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.) above the top of the car or

(2) the exit is located to allow unobstructed passage of a parallelepiped volume measuring 300 mm × 500 mm × 1 500 mm (12 in. × 20 in. × 59 in.) at an angle not less than 60 deg from the horizontal (see [Nonmandatory Appendix C](#))

(c) The top emergency exit cover shall open outward. It shall be hinged or securely attached with a chain when in both the open and closed positions. If a chain is used, it shall be not more than 300 mm (12 in.) in length and shall have a factor of safety not less than 5. The exit cover shall be openable from the top of the car without the use of special tools and shall be permitted to be openable from within the car by means of a keyed spring-return cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination. This key shall be Group 1 Security (see [Section 8.1](#)). The exit cover of the lower compartment of a multideck elevator shall be openable from both compartments. On elevators with two compartments, if the emergency exit of the lower compartment does not open directly into the upper compartment, a guarded passageway shall be provided between the lower compartment roof and the upper compartment floor.

(d) The movable portion (exit panel) of the suspended ceiling that is below the top exit opening shall be restrained from falling. It shall be permitted to be hinged upward or downward, provided that the exit permits a clear opening with the top exit opening.

(1) A minimum clear headroom of 2 030 mm (80 in.) above the car floor shall be maintained when downward-swinging suspended ceiling exit panels are used.

(2) Upward-opening suspended ceiling exit panels shall be restrained from closing when in use and shall not diminish the clear opening area of the corresponding top exit opening.

(3) The movable portion and the fixed portion of a suspended ceiling shall not contain lamps that could be shattered by a rescue operation using the top emergency exit. The movable portion of the suspended ceiling shall be permitted to contain light fixtures connected to the stationary portion of the suspended ceiling wiring by means of a plug and socket or by flexible armored wiring. Flexible wiring shall not be used to support or restrain the exit opening in the suspended ceiling in the open position.

(e) Where elevators installed in enclosed hoistways are provided with special car top treatments such as domed or shrouded canopies, the exit shall be made accessible, including the car top space specified in (f).

(f) Immediately adjacent to the top emergency exit there shall be a space available for standing when the emergency exit cover is open. This space shall be permitted to include a portion of the area required in [2.14.1.6.2](#). All exit covers shall be provided with a car top emergency exit electrical device (see [2.26.2.18](#)) that will prevent operation of the elevator car if the exit cover is open more than 50 mm (2 in.), and the device shall be designed so that it

(1) is positively opened

(2) cannot be closed accidentally when the cover is removed

(3) must be manually reset from the top of the car and only after the cover is within 50 mm (2 in.) of the fully closed position

(4) shall be protected against mechanical damage

2.14.1.5.2 On elevators in partially enclosed hoistways, means shall be provided to facilitate emergency evacuation of passengers. Such means shall not require a top emergency exit. A top emergency exit shall be permitted.

2.14.1.6 Car Enclosure Tops

2.14.1.6.1 The car enclosure top shall be designed and installed to be capable of sustaining a load of 135 kg (300 lb) on any area 600 mm × 600 mm (24 in. × 24 in.), or of 45 kg (100 lb) applied to any point, without permanent deformation. The resulting deflection under these loads shall be limited to prevent damage to any equipment, devices, or lighting assemblies fastened to or adjacent to the car enclosure top.

2.14.1.6.2 Two unobstructed horizontal areas, each not less than 350 mm × 350 mm (14 in. × 14 in.), shall be provided on the car enclosure top. The two unobstructed areas shall be no closer to one another than 600 mm (24 in.), centerline to centerline, apart. The areas shall be within the projection of the car enclosure top exclusive of the area outside of a standard railing ([2.10.2](#)), where provided.

2.14.1.7 Railing and Equipment on Car Enclosure Top

2.14.1.7.1 A standard railing conforming to [2.10.2](#) shall be provided on the outside perimeter of the car enclosure top on all sides where a 300 mm (12 in.) ball can pass between the edges of the car enclosure top and the adjacent hoistway enclosure and on sides where there is no hoistway enclosure. If clearances require (see [2.14.1.7.2](#)) the standard railing to be located more than 100 mm (4 in.) from the edge of the outside perimeter of the car enclosure top, the top of the car enclosure outside of the railing shall be clearly marked. The marking shall consist of alternating 100 mm (4 in.) diagonal red and white stripes. The forces specified in [2.10.2.4](#) shall not deflect the railing beyond the perimeter of the car top.

The top-of-car enclosure, or other surface specified by the elevator installer, shall be the working surface referred to in 2.10.2.

2.14.1.7.2 The following minimum clearances shall be provided from the top rail and intermediate rail of the standard railing, as specified in 2.10.2, to the building structure or elevator equipment in relative motion to the standard railing:

(a) when the car has reached its maximum upward movement (see 2.4.6.1)

(1) 100 mm (4 in.) vertically

(2) 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally toward the centerline of the car enclosure top

(b) throughout the hoistway, 100 mm (4 in.) horizontally in the direction toward the hoistway enclosure

NOTE (2.14.1.7.2): See [Nonmandatory Appendix G](#).

2.14.1.7.3 A working platform or equipment that is not required for the operation of the elevator or its appliances, except where specifically provided herein, shall not be located above the top of an elevator car.

2.14.1.7.4 Devices that detect unauthorized access to the top of the car shall be permitted. These devices shall only be permitted to initiate an alarm. Audible alarms shall not exceed 90 dBA measured 1 m (40 in.) from the source.

2.14.1.8 Glass in Elevator Cars

2.14.1.8.1 Where enclosures include panels of glass, or transparent or translucent plastic, the panels shall

(a) be constructed of laminated glass that complies with the requirements of 16 CFR Part 1201, Sections 1201.1 and 1201.2; or be constructed of laminated glass, safety glass, or safety plastic that complies with CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, or CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#))

(b) be provided with a handrail or framing designed to guard the opening should the panel become detached, where wall panels are wider than 300 mm (12 in.)

(c) be mounted in the structure so that the assembly shall withstand the required elevator tests without damage (see 2.14.1.2)

2.14.1.8.2 Glass used for lining walls or ceilings shall conform to 2.14.1.8.1(a) and 2.14.1.8.1(c), except that tempered glass shall be permitted, provided that

(a) it conforms to ANSI Z97.1; 16 CFR Part 1201, Sections 1201.1 and 1201.2; or CAN/CGSB-12.1, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#))

(b) the glass is not subjected to further treatment such as sandblasting, etching, heat treatment, or painting that could alter the original properties of the glass

(c) the glass is bonded to a nonpolymeric coating, sheeting, or film backing having a physical integrity to hold the fragments when the glass breaks

(d) the glass is tested and conforms to the acceptance criteria for laminated glass as specified in ANSI Z97.1; or 16 CFR Part 1201, Section 1201.4; or CAN/CGSB-12.11, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#))

2.14.1.8.3 Markings as specified in the applicable glazing standard shall be on each separate piece of glass and shall remain visible after installation.

2.14.1.9 Equipment Inside Cars

2.14.1.9.1 Apparatus or equipment not used in connection with the function or use of the elevator shall not be installed inside any elevator car, except as follows:

(a) Support rails (handrails) are permitted.

(b) Fastening devices for padded protective linings are permitted.

(c) Lift hooks, conveyor tracks, and support beams for freight handling, mounted in the ceiling of a passenger elevator, shall clear the car floor to a height of 2 450 mm (96 in.) (see 2.16.9).

(d) Picture frames, graphic display boards, plaques, and other similar visual displays shall be mounted to withstand the required elevator tests without damage. All edges shall be beveled or rounded. The material shall conform to 2.14.1.2 and 2.14.2.1. When attached to the car wall less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) above the floor, projections from the car wall, excluding support rails, shall not be greater than 38 mm (1.5 in.).

(e) Conveyor tracks shall be permitted in freight elevators cars.

(f) Heating equipment, ventilating fans, and air-conditioning equipment, if used, shall be securely fastened in place and located above the car ceiling or outside the enclosure.

(g) Emergency responder radio coverage (ERRC) equipment is permitted inside cars (see also 2.27.12).

2.14.1.9.2 Passenger car floors shall have no projections or depressions greater than 6 mm (0.25 in.).

2.14.1.10 Side Emergency Exits. Side emergency exits are prohibited.

2.14.2 Passenger-Car Enclosures

2.14.2.1 Material for Car Enclosures, Enclosure Linings, and Floor Coverings. All materials exposed to the car interior and the hoistway shall be metal or glass or shall conform to 2.14.2.1.1 through 2.14.2.1.4.

2.14.2.1.1 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC

(a) materials in their end-use configuration, other than those covered by (b) and (c), 2.14.2.1.3, and 2.14.2.1.4, shall conform to the following requirements, based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E84, ANSI/UL 723, or CAN/ULC-S102:

(1) flame spread rating of 0 to 75

(2) smoke development classification of 0 to 450

(b) napped, tufted, woven, looped, and similar materials in their end-use configuration on car enclosure walls shall conform to 8.3.7. The enclosure walls to which this material is attached shall conform to (a).

(c) floor covering, underlayment, and their adhesive shall have a critical radiant flux not less than 0.45 W/cm², as measured by ASTM E648.

2.14.2.1.2 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC

(a) materials in their end-use configuration, other than those covered by (b), 2.14.2.1.3, and 2.14.2.1.4, shall conform to the following requirements, based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E84, ANSI/UL 723, or CAN/ULC-S102:

(1) flame spread rating of 0 to 75

(2) smoke development classification of 0 to 450

(b) floor surfaces shall have a flame spread rating of 0 to 300, with a smoke development classification of 0 to 450, based on the test conducted in accordance with the requirements of CAN/ULC-S102.2

2.14.2.1.3 Padded protective linings, for temporary use in passenger cars during the handling of freight, shall be made of materials conforming to 2.14.2.1.1(a), 2.14.2.1.1(b), or 2.14.2.1.2(a), whichever is applicable. The protective lining shall clear the floor by not less than 100 mm (4 in.).

2.14.2.1.4 Handrails, operating devices, ventilating devices, signal fixtures, audio and visual communication devices, and their housings are not required to conform to 2.14.2.1.

2.14.2.2 Openings Prohibited. Openings or hinged or removable panels in an enclosure are prohibited, except as required for the following:

- (a) signal, operating, and communication equipment
- (b) entrances
- (c) vision panels
- (d) top emergency exit
- (e) ventilation
- (f) access panels for cleaning glass on observation elevators (see 2.14.2.6)
- (g) equipment access panels for maintenance and inspection of equipment, which shall conform to the following requirements (see also 2.7.5.1.4):

(1) be of hinged type.

(2) open only into the car.

(3) be provided with a lock arranged so that the door shall be openable from inside the car only by a specially shaped removable key. Locks shall be designed so that they cannot be opened from the inside by the use of ordinary tools or instruments. Keys shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(4) be provided with door or gate closed detection means that conform to 2.14.4.2.3, 2.14.4.2.4 or 2.14.4.2.5, and 2.26.2.35 and are located to be inaccessible from the inside of the car. When the closed detection means detects

the open position of the access panel, it shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake.

(5) be the same material and construction as required for the enclosure.

2.14.2.3 Ventilation

2.14.2.3.1 Natural ventilation openings conforming to the following shall be provided in car enclosures:

(a) Openings exposed to the inside of the car shall not be located in the portion of the enclosure walls extending from a point 300 mm (12 in.) above the floor to a point 1825 mm (72 in.) above the floor.

(b) Openings less than 300 mm (12 in.) above the floor shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter and be guarded to prevent straight-through passage.

(c) Openings above the 1825 mm (72 in.) level shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter and be guarded to prevent straight-through passage.

(d) Openings in the car ceiling shall be protected and shall conform to 2.14.1.6.

(e) The total area of natural ventilation openings shall be not less than 3.5% of the inside car floor area divided equally between the bottom and top of the car enclosure.

(f) The total unrestricted opening in or around the car doors or gates shall be permitted to be included as part of the total natural ventilation required.

(g) The unrestricted opening provided by forced ventilation systems shall be permitted to be part of the natural ventilation area on the part of the car in which it is located.

2.14.2.3.2 Ventilating fans or blowers, if used, shall be located above the car ceiling or outside the enclosure and shall be securely fastened in place.

2.14.2.3.3 Forced ventilation conforming to the following shall be provided on observation elevators with glass walls exposed to direct sunlight:

(a) There shall be a minimum air handling capacity to provide one air change per minute based on the net inside car volume.

(b) An auxiliary power supply capable of providing the minimum air handling capacity for a continuous period of at least 1 h shall be provided on each elevator car.

NOTE (2.14.2.3.3): Special consideration should be given to elevators, such as observation and parking garage elevators, when they are exposed to the elements. In extreme cases, an emergency or standby power source may be required for this purpose.

2.14.2.4 Headroom in Elevator Cars. A minimum clear headroom of 2025 mm (80 in.) above the car floor shall be provided.

2.14.2.5 Vision Panels. Vision panels are not required, but where used, they shall

(a) be of a total area of not more than 0.1 m² (155 in.²) and contain no single glass panel having a width exceeding 150 mm (6 in.).

(b) be provided with wire-glass panels or laminated-glass panels conforming to 16 CFR Part 1201 or CAN/CGSB-12.11, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)). Markings as specified in the applicable standard shall be on each separate piece of laminated glass and shall remain visible after installation.

(c) be located in the car door or in the front return panel of the car enclosure.

(d) have the inside face of a car door vision panel, grille, or cover located substantially flush with the inside surface of the car door.

(e) have fasteners that are located on the hoistway side. It shall not be possible to remove the fasteners with common tools.

2.14.2.6 Access Panels. Nonremovable sliding or swing panels shall be permitted for access to the car or hoistway transparent enclosures for cleaning purposes. Such panels or doors shall

(a) if hinged, open only into the car

(b) be provided with cylinder-type locks, having not less than a five-pin or a five-disk combination, or a lock that provides equivalent security, arranged so that the lock(s) can be unlocked with a key from the car side, and the key shall be Group 2 Security (see [Section 8.1](#))

(c) be manually openable from the hoistway side

(d) be self-locking

(e) be provided with a device arranged so that the panel must be in the closed and locked position (see [2.26.2.31](#)) before the elevator can operate

(f) have a bottom edge a minimum of 1 070 mm (42 in.) from the floor in cases where the adjacent hoistway wall is more than 140 mm (5.5 in.) from the car enclosure or where there is no adjacent hoistway wall.

2.14.3 Freight-Car Enclosure

2.14.3.1 Enclosure Material. Enclosures shall be metal without perforations to a height not less than 1 825 mm (72 in.) above the floor.

Above the 1 825 mm (72 in.) level, the walls and top of the enclosure shall be metal with or without perforations, except that portion of the enclosure wall in front of and extending 150 mm (6 in.) on each side of the counterweight, which shall be without perforations.

Perforated portions of enclosures shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

Freight elevators that are permitted to carry passengers (see [2.16.4](#)) shall conform to [2.14.2.2](#).

2.14.3.2 Openings in Car Tops. Hinged or removable panels shall not be provided in car tops, except those required for emergency exit and for equipment access (see [2.7.5.1.4](#)).

2.14.3.3 Ventilation. If ventilating grilles or louvers are provided in the enclosure below the 1 825 mm (72 in.) level, they shall be located not more than 300 mm

(12 in.) above the floor and shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

2.14.4 Passenger and Freight Car Doors and Gates, General Requirements

2.14.4.1 Where Required. A door shall be provided at each entrance to a passenger car and a door or gate shall be provided at each entrance to a freight car.

2.14.4.2 Car Door and Gate Closed Detection Means and Car Door Interlocks

2.14.4.2.1 Each car door or gate shall be provided with a door or gate closed detection means conforming to [2.26.2.15](#), [2.14.4.2.3](#), [2.14.4.2.4](#) or [2.14.4.2.5](#), and [2.14.4.2.7](#) or with a car door interlock conforming to [2.26.2.28](#), [2.14.4.2.6](#), and [2.14.4.2.7](#).

2.14.4.2.2 A car door interlock shall be required for (a) car doors of elevators where the clearance between the loading side of the car platform and hoistway enclosure exceeds the maximum specified in [2.5.1.5](#)

(b) car doors of elevators that face an unenclosed portion of the hoistway during the travel of the car

2.14.4.2.3 Car door and gate closed detection means shall prevent operation of the driving machine when the car door or gate is not in the closed position, except under one of the following conditions:

(a) when a hoistway access switch is operated (see [2.12.7](#))

(b) when a car-leveling or truck-zoning device is operated (see [2.26.1.6](#))

(c) when a bypass switch is activated (see [2.26.1.5](#))

2.14.4.2.4 Car door and gate closed detection means using contacts to detect the closed position of the car door or gate shall

(a) meet the requirements of [2.26.4.3.1](#)

(b) be positively opened by a lever or other device attached to and operated by the door or gate

(c) be maintained in the open position by the action of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by positive mechanical means

(d) be designed or located so that they shall not be accessible from within the car

(e) not use mercury tube switches

2.14.4.2.5 Car door and gate closed detection means using SIL rated devices to detect the closed position of the car door or gate shall

(a) meet the requirements of [2.26.4.3.2](#)

(b) have a detection means that is operated directly by a member or other device attached to and operated by the door or gate

(c) be arranged so that they cannot detect the closed position of the car door or gate unless the door or gate is in the closed position

(d) be tamper resistant so that they cannot be made ineffective from within the car

2.14.4.2.6 Car door interlocks shall

(a) prevent operation of the driving machine when the car door is not in the closed and locked position, except

(1) when the car is within the unlocking zone for that entrance

(2) under the conditions specified in 2.14.4.2.3

(b) prevent opening of the car door from within the car, except when the car is in the unlocking zone for that entrance

(c) hold the car door in the locked position by means of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by means of a positive linkage

(d) be located so that they are not accessible from within the car when the car doors are closed

(e) be designed in accordance with 2.12.2.4

2.14.4.2.7 Each type and make of car door closed detection means, car gate closed detection means, and car door interlock shall

(a) be type tested in conformance with 2.12.4.1

(b) be listed/certified in conformance with 2.12.4.2

(c) be marked in conformance with 2.12.4.3

2.14.4.2.8 A hoistway door interlock meeting the requirements of 2.12.2 and 2.12.4 shall be permitted to be used as a car door interlock.

2.14.4.3 Type and Material for Doors. Doors shall be the horizontally or vertically sliding type and made of material conforming to 2.14.2.1.

2.14.4.4 Type of Gates. Gates, where permitted, shall be the horizontally sliding or vertically sliding type, conforming to 2.14.4.7, 2.14.5, and 2.14.6.

2.14.4.5 Location

2.14.4.5.1 Doors or gates for automatic or continuous-pressure-operation elevators, except freight elevators equipped with horizontally swinging doors and not accessible to the general public, located in factories, warehouses, garages, and similar buildings, shall be located so that the distance from the face of the car door or gate to the face of the hoistway door shall be not more than the following:

(a) where a swinging-type hoistway door and car gate or folding car door are used, 100 mm (4 in.)

(b) where a swinging-type hoistway door and a car door are used, 140 mm (5.5 in.)

(c) where a sliding-type hoistway door and a car door or gate are used, 140 mm (5.5 in.)

(d) on freight elevators that are equipped with horizontally swinging doors and that are not accessible to the general public (i.e., located in factories, warehouses, garages, and similar buildings), the distance specified in (a) through (c) shall be not more than 165 mm (6.5 in.)

2.14.4.5.2 The distances specified shall be measured as follows:

(a) where a multisection car door and multisection hoistway door are used, or where one of these doors is multisection and the other is single section, between the sections of the car door and the hoistway door nearest to each other

(b) where a multisection car door and a swinging-type hoistway door are used, between the hoistway door and the section of the car door farthest from it

(c) where a car gate is used, between the car gate and that section of the hoistway door nearest to the car gate

(d) where a folding car door is used, between the hoistway door and the car door panel furthest from the hoistway door, when closed (see 2.12.2.2 and 2.14.4.11)

2.14.4.6 Strength of Doors, Gates, and Their Guides, Guide Shoes, Tracks, and Hangers. Doors and gates and their guides, guide shoes, tracks, and hangers shall be designed, constructed, and installed so that when the fully closed door or gate is subjected to a force of 335 N (75 lbf), applied on an area 300 mm (12 in.) square at right angles to and approximately at the center of the door or gate, it will not deflect more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) toward the hoistway door.

Where a swing-type hoistway door and car gate or folding door are used, the gate or folding door shall not deflect more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) when subjected to a force of 335 N (75 lbf) when applied to the hoistway side of the car gate or folding door at the following locations:

(a) an area 100 mm (4 in.) square at right angles at the approximate center of the gate or folding door opening

(b) an area 100 mm (4 in.) square at right angles at 25% and 75% of the door width at a height of 450 mm (18 in.) from the floor level

For individual panels of folding doors of a width less than 100 mm (4 in.), the specified forces in (a) and (b) shall be applied over an area 100 mm (4 in.) tall by the width of the individual panel.

When subjected to a force of 1 100 N (250 lbf) similarly applied, doors and vertically sliding gates shall not break or be permanently deformed and shall not be displaced from their guides or tracks.

Where multisection doors, gates, or folding doors are used, each panel shall withstand the forces specified.

2.14.4.7 Vertically Sliding Doors and Gates. Vertically sliding doors or gates shall conform to 2.14.4.7.1 through 2.14.4.7.5.

2.14.4.7.1 Vertically sliding doors and gates shall be of the balanced counterweighted type or the biparting counterbalanced type.

2.14.4.7.2 Gates shall be constructed of wood or metal and shall be of a design that will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter, except that if multisection vertical lift gates are used, the panel shall be designed to reject a ball 10 mm (0.375 in.) in diameter.

2.14.4.7.3 Doors shall be constructed of material conforming to 2.14.2.1.

2.14.4.7.4 Doors or gates shall guard the full width of the car entrance openings, and their height shall conform to 2.14.5.4 or 2.14.6.2.3.

2.14.4.7.5 Balanced counterweighted doors or gates shall be either single or multiple section and shall slide either up or down to open, conforming to 2.14.5.3 and 2.14.6.2.

2.14.4.8 Weights for Closing or Balancing Doors or Gates. Weights used to close or balance doors or gates shall be located outside the car enclosure and shall be guided or restrained to prevent them from coming out of their runway.

The bottom of the guides or other restraining means shall be constructed to retain the weights if the weight suspension means breaks.

Weights that extend beyond the hoistway side of the car door or gate guide rail shall be guarded to prevent accidental contact.

2.14.4.9 Factor of Safety for Suspension Members. Suspension members of vertically sliding car doors or gates, and of weights used with car doors or gates, shall have a factor of safety not less than 5. At least two independent suspension means shall be provided so that the failure of one suspension means shall not permit the car doors or gates to fall; or a safety device shall be provided to prevent the doors or gates from falling if the suspension means fails.

2.14.4.10 Power-Operated and Power-Opened or Power-Closed Doors or Gates. The operation of power-operated and power-opened or power-closed doors or gates shall conform to Section 2.13.

2.14.4.11 Closed Position of Car Doors or Gates. Car doors or gates shall be considered to be in the closed position under the following conditions:

(a) for horizontally sliding doors or gates, when the clear open space between the leading edge of the door or gate and the nearest face of the jamb does not exceed 50 mm (2 in.) except where car doors are provided with a car door interlock(s), 30 mm (1.25 in.)

(b) for vertically sliding counterweighted doors or gates, when the clear open space between the leading edge of the door or gate and the car platform sill does not exceed 50 mm (2 in.)

(c) for horizontally sliding center-opening doors or vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, when the door panels are within 50 mm (2 in.) of

contact with each other except where horizontally sliding center-opening car doors are provided with a car door interlock(s), 30 mm (1.25 in.)

2.14.5 Passenger Car Doors

2.14.5.1 Number of Entrances Permitted. There shall be not more than two entrances to the car, except in existing buildings where structural conditions make additional entrances necessary.

2.14.5.2 Type Required. Horizontally or vertically sliding doors subject to the restrictions of 2.14.5.3 shall be provided at each car entrance. Folding car doors are not permitted.

2.14.5.3 Vertically Sliding Doors. Vertically sliding doors shall be

(a) of the balanced counterweighted type that slide in the up direction to open

(b) power operated where facing a power-operated vertically sliding counterbalanced hoistway door or a vertically sliding-down-to-open hoistway door

2.14.5.4 Dimensions of Doors. Doors, when in the fully closed position, shall protect the full width and height of the car entrance opening.

2.14.5.5 Openings in Doors. There shall be no openings in doors, except where vision panels are used.

2.14.5.6 Door Panels

2.14.5.6.1 Door panels shall have a flush surface on the side exposed to the car interior. The panels shall have no area or molding depressed or raised more than 3 mm (0.125 in.); areas raised or depressed shall be beveled not more than 30 deg to the panel surface.

2.14.5.6.2 Panels shall overlap the top and sides of the car entrance opening by not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.) when the door is in the closed position.

2.14.5.6.3 The vertical clearance between a panel and the sill, or in the case of a vertically sliding door the vertical clearance between the leading edge and the sill, shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.) when the door is in the fully closed position.

2.14.5.6.4 The horizontal clearance shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.) for horizontally sliding panels and 25 mm (1 in.) for vertically sliding panels between

(a) the car side of a panel and the related car entrance jamb

(b) related panels of multispeed entrances

(c) the car side of the panel and the related car head jamb

2.14.5.6.5 The leading edges of doors shall be free of sharp projections.

2.14.5.6.6 The meeting panel edges of center-opening entrances shall be protected with not less than one resilient male member extending the full height of the panel. The meeting edges shall be permitted to interlock by not more than 10 mm (0.375 in.). When the door is in the closed position, the distance between the metal parts of the meeting panels shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.).

2.14.5.6.7 The clearance between the leading edge of the trailing panel of multiple-speed panels and the jamb shall not exceed

- (a) 13 mm (0.5 in.) for horizontal slide
- (b) 25 mm (1 in.) for vertical slide

2.14.5.7 Restricted Opening of Car Doors. Car doors of passenger elevators shall be provided with either

- (a) a car door interlock conforming to 2.14.4.2
- (b) a car door restrictor conforming to 2.14.5.7.1 through 2.14.5.7.6

2.14.5.7.1 When a car is outside the unlocking zone (see 2.12.1), the car doors shall be arranged so that when in the closed position they shall be restricted from opening more than 100 mm (4 in.) from inside the car.

2.14.5.7.2 Car doors shall be openable from outside the car without the use of a special tool(s).

2.14.5.7.3 The doors shall be openable from within the car (see 2.14.5.8) when the car is within the unlocking zone (see 2.12.1), except as specified in 2.14.5.7.4(b)(1).

NOTE (2.14.5.7): See also 2.12.1 and Nonmandatory Appendix B.

- (22) **2.14.5.7.4** If the means used to restrict car door opening requires electrical power for its functioning, it shall comply with (a) through (d).

(a) The means shall not use electrical power to maintain restricted opening of the car door in accordance with 2.14.5.7.1.

(b) The means shall operate in accordance with 2.14.5.7.1 and 2.14.5.7.3 and the following:

(1) An auxiliary power supply shall be provided that shall permit the means to operate for not less than 1 h upon loss of normal building power.

(2) The auxiliary power supply shall be

(-a) monitored, and when it is detected that there is insufficient capacity to operate the means for not less than 1 h, an audible signal conforming to (d) shall operate

(-b) provided with readily visible information that indicates the expiration date of the auxiliary power supply in lettering not less than 5 mm (0.25 in.) high

(c) On automatic operation, the portion of the means dependent on power shall be monitored, and when it is detected that it has failed to operate in accordance with 2.14.5.7.1, an audible signal conforming to (d) shall operate.

(d) The audible signal required by (b)(2)(-a) or (c) shall be at least 10 dBA above ambient, not exceeding 80 dBA, measured inside the car.

2.14.5.7.5 Strength. The means to restrict door opening shall comply with 2.14.5.7.1 when subjected to the following static forces:

- (a) 135 N (30 lbf) applied in the opening direction of the door at any location along the leading edge of the door
- (b) 1 000 N (225 lbf) applied over a period of 300 s with the force increasing incrementally, applied in the opening direction of the door at a location as near to the restricting means as possible, but not to exceed 300 mm (12 in.)

2.14.5.7.6 Each type and make of car door restrictor shall be tested as follows:

- (a) Each type and make of car door restrictor shall conform to the engineering tests specified in 8.3.14.
- (b) The tests shall be performed at either the manufacturer's facility or at a testing laboratory.

2.14.5.8 Manual Opening of Car Doors. Car doors shall be arranged so that when the car is stopped within the unlocking zone (see 2.12.1 and 2.14.5.7.3) and power to the door operator is cut off, they and the mechanically related hoistway door, if any, shall be movable by hand from inside the car except as specified in 2.14.5.7.4(b)(1). The force required at the edge of sliding doors to move them shall not exceed 330 N (75 lbf).

2.14.5.9 Glass in Car Doors

2.14.5.9.1 Vision panels, where provided, shall conform to 2.14.2.5.

2.14.5.9.2 Glass doors, where provided, shall conform to the following requirements: (22)

(a) The glass shall be laminated glass conforming to the requirements of 16 CFR Part 1201, or be laminated glass, safety glass, or safety plastic conforming to the requirements of CAN/CGSB-12.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Markings as specified shall be on each separate piece and shall remain visible after installation.

(b) The glass shall be not less than 50% of the total visible door panel surface area as seen from the car side of the doors. Door lap shall not be used in calculating glass size.

(c) In power-operated doors, the glass panel shall be substantially flush with the surface of the car side of the door.

(d) The glass shall conform to the applicable strength requirements of 2.14.4.6.

(e) The glass shall be mounted so that it, and its mounting structure, will withstand the required elevator tests without becoming damaged or dislodged.

(f) A nonglass edge shall be provided on the leading edge of the door panel.

2.14.6 Freight Elevator Car Doors and Gates

2.14.6.1 Type of Gates

2.14.6.1.1 For elevators designed for Class A loading (see 2.16.2.2), car gates shall be the vertically sliding type (see 2.14.6.2) or the horizontally sliding collapsible type (see 2.14.6.3), and a car door shall be the folding type (see 2.14.6.4).

2.14.6.1.2 For elevators designed for Class B or Class C loading (see 2.16.2.2), car gates shall be the vertically sliding type (see 2.14.6.2).

2.14.6.2 Vertically Sliding Doors and Gates

2.14.6.2.1 On elevators used exclusively for freight, car doors and gates shall be either the balanced counterweighted type that slides up or down to open, or the biparting counterbalanced type. Car doors or gates shall be manually operated or power operated. Where power-operated vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced or power-operated vertically sliding counterweighted hoistway doors are provided, facing car doors and gates shall be the power-operated balanced counterweighted type that slide up to open.

2.14.6.2.2 Where used on freight elevators permitted to carry passengers (see 2.16.4), car doors shall conform to 2.14.5.

2.14.6.2.3 Car doors and gates shall protect the full width of the car entrance opening, and their height shall be determined as follows:

(a) Car doors and gates shall extend from a point not more than 25 mm (1 in.) above the car floor to a point not less than 1825 mm (72 in.) above the car floor.

(b) Where a vertically sliding car gate with a door reopening device is provided, the 25 mm (1 in.) maximum dimension specified shall be measured from the car floor to the bottom of the leading member.

2.14.6.2.4 The horizontal clearance between the car side of a panel and the related car entrance jamb or between related panels of multispeed doors or gates shall not exceed 25 mm (1 in.).

2.14.6.3 Collapsible-Type Gates

2.14.6.3.1 Collapsible-type gates shall protect the full width of the car entrance opening, and they shall extend from the car floor to a height of not less than 1825 mm (72 in.) when fully closed.

2.14.6.3.2 When collapsible-type gates are in the fully closed (extended) position, the opening between vertical members shall not be more than 115 mm (4.5 in.).

2.14.6.3.3 Every vertical member shall be restricted from moving perpendicular to the direction of travel more than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

2.14.6.3.4 Collapsible-type gates shall not be power opened, except as permitted by 2.13.2.1.2.

2.14.6.3.5 When in the fully opened (collapsed) position, collapsible gates shall be permitted to be arranged to swing inward.

2.14.6.3.6 Handles of manually operated collapsible gates nearest the car operating device on elevators operated from the car only shall be located so that the nearest handle is not more than 1225 mm (48 in.) from the car operating device when the gate is closed (extended position), and not more than 1225 mm (48 in.) above the car floor. Gate handles shall be provided with finger guards.

2.14.6.4 Folding Car Doors

2.14.6.4.1 Folding car doors shall conform to 2.14.4 except 2.14.4.4, 2.14.4.7, and 2.14.4.9. They shall also conform to all of 2.14.5 except 2.14.5.3, 2.14.5.6.2, 2.14.5.8, and 2.14.5.9.

2.14.6.4.2 The effort needed to prevent a folding car door from closing shall conform to 2.13.4.2.3.

2.14.6.4.3 Folding car doors shall not be power opened to a distance exceeding one-third of the clear opening, and in no case shall the distance be more than 250 mm (10 in.).

2.14.6.4.4 Handles of manually operated folding car doors nearest the car operating device on elevators operated from the car only shall be located so that the nearest handle is not more than 1220 mm (48 in.) from the car operating device when the folding door is closed, and between 1220 mm (48 in.) and 380 mm (15 in.) above the car floor.

2.14.7 Illumination of Cars and Lighting Fixtures

2.14.7.1 Illumination and Outlets Required. Cars shall be provided with electric lighting conforming to 2.14.7.1.1 through 2.14.7.1.4.

2.14.7.1.1 Not less than two lamps or sets of lamps of approximately equal illumination shall be provided. Systems using only one of the two required lamps or sets of lamps to provide the required illumination shall be permitted and shall comply with the following:

(a) Each lamp or set of lamps shall provide the minimum illumination in conformance with 2.14.7.1.2.

(b) Systems shall be arranged to automatically illuminate the unlit lamp or set of lamps immediately following a failure of the first lamp or set of lamps.

(c) Systems shall be designed so that an audible or visual signal notifies authorized personnel when one lamp or set of lamps is not functional.

2.14.7.1.2 The minimum illumination at the car threshold, with the door closed, shall be not less than

(a) 50 lx (5 fc) for passenger elevators

(b) 25 lx (2.5 fc) for freight elevators

(22) **2.14.7.1.3** Each elevator shall be provided with auxiliary lighting and shall conform to the following:

(a) The intensity of auxiliary lighting illumination shall be not less than 2 lx (0.2 fc), measured at any point between 1225 mm (48 in.) and 890 mm (35 in.) above the car floor and approximately 300 mm (12 in.) centered horizontally in front of a car operating panel containing any of the following:

- (1) car operating device(s)
- (2) door open button
- (3) rear or side door open button
- (4) door close button
- (5) rear or side door close button
- (6) "PHONE" button and operating instructions
- (7) "ALARM" switch

(b) Illumination is not required in front of additional car operating panels where the devices listed in (a) are duplicated.

(c) Auxiliary lights shall be automatically turned on in all elevators in service after normal car lighting power fails.

(d) The auxiliary power supply shall be located on the car.

(e) The auxiliary power supply shall be capable of maintaining the light intensity specified in (a) for a period of at least 4 h.

(f) Not less than two lamps or sets of lamps of approximately equal illumination shall be provided. Systems using only one of the two required lamps or sets of lamps to provide the required illumination shall be permitted and shall comply with the following:

(1) Each lamp or set of lamps shall provide the minimum illumination in conformance with (a).

(2) Systems shall be arranged to automatically illuminate the unlit lamp or set of lamps immediately following a failure of the first lamp or set of lamps.

(3) Systems shall be designed so that an audible or visual signal notifies authorized personnel when one lamp or set of lamps is not functional.

(g) Battery-operated units, where provided, shall

(1) comply with CSA C22.2 No. 141 or UL 924 (see Part 9)

(2) have a minimum 4 h rating

(3) be permanently connected to the car light branch circuit

(4) have an output rating that includes the auxiliary lights and, if connected, the emergency signaling devices (see 2.27.1)

(h) The lamps used for auxiliary lighting are permitted to be the same lamps used for normal illumination in conformance with 2.14.7.1.1.

2.14.7.1.4 Each elevator shall be provided with lighting and a duplex receptacle fixture on the car top. The lighting shall be permanently connected, fixed, or

portable, or a combination thereof, to provide an illumination level of not less than 100 lx (10 fc) measured at the point of any elevator part or equipment, where maintenance or inspection is to be performed from the car top. All lighting shall be equipped with guards. The light switch shall be accessible from the landing when accessing the car top.

2.14.7.2 Light Control Switches

2.14.7.2.1 Light control switches for in-car lighting shall be permitted. When provided, they shall

(a) be located in or adjacent to the operating device in the car.

(b) in elevators having automatic operation, be the key-operated type or be located in a fixture with a locked cover. The key shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.14.7.2.2 Automatic operation of the car lights shall be permitted. When provided, the operating circuit shall be arranged to turn off the lights only when the following conditions exist for not less than 5 min:

(a) The car is at a floor.

(b) The doors are closed.

(c) There is no demand for service.

(d) The car is on automatic operation.

Momentary interruption of any of the above conditions shall cause the car lights to turn on.

2.14.7.3 Car Lighting Devices

2.14.7.3.1 Glass used for lighting fixtures shall conform to 2.14.1.8.

2.14.7.3.2 Suspended glass used in lighting fixtures shall be supported by a metal frame secured at not less than three points.

2.14.7.3.3 Fastening devices shall not be removable from the fixture.

2.14.7.3.4 Glass shall not be drilled for attachment.

2.14.7.3.5 Light troughs supporting wiring raceways and other auxiliary lighting equipment, where used, shall be metal, except where lined with noncombustible materials.

2.14.7.3.6 Materials for light diffusion or transmission shall be metal, glass, or materials conforming to 2.14.2.1.1 and shall not come in contact with light bulbs and tubes.

2.14.7.4 Protection of Light Bulbs and Tubes. Light bulbs and tubes within the car shall

(a) be equipped with guards, be recessed, or be mounted above a drop ceiling to prevent accidental breakage. Cars that operate with the drop ceiling removed shall have a permanent separate guard for the light bulb or tube.

(b) be mounted in the structure so that the structure and the bulb or tube will withstand the required elevator tests without being damaged or becoming dislodged.

SECTION 2.15 CAR FRAMES AND PLATFORMS

2.15.1 Car Frames Required

Every elevator shall have a car frame (see [Section 1.3](#)).

2.15.2 Guiding Means

2.15.2.1 Car frames shall be guided on each guide rail by upper and lower guiding members attached to the frame. Guiding means shall be designed to withstand the forces imposed during normal operation of the elevator, loading and unloading, emergency stopping, and the application of safeties.

2.15.2.2 Means shall be provided to prevent the car from being displaced by more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) from its normal running position.

This protection shall be provided by either of the following:

(a) a guiding means wherein no failure or wear of the guiding member shall allow the car to be displaced more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) from its normal running position

(b) a retention means that shall be permitted to be integral with the guiding means

2.15.2.3 All components of the means required to limit displacement in accordance with [2.15.2.2](#) shall have a minimum factor of safety of 5.

2.15.3 Design of Car Frames and Guiding Members

The frame and its guiding members shall be designed to withstand the forces resulting under the loading conditions for which the elevator is designed and installed (see [Section 2.16](#)).

2.15.4 Underslung or Sub-Post Frames

The vertical distance between the centerlines of the top and bottom guide shoes of an elevator car having a sub-post car frame or having an underslung car frame located entirely below the car platform shall be not less than 40% of the distance between the guide rails.

2.15.5 Car Platforms

2.15.5.1 Every elevator car shall have a platform consisting of a nonperforated floor attached to a platform frame supported by the car frame, and extending over the entire area within the car enclosure.

2.15.5.2 The platform frame members and the floor shall be designed to withstand the forces developed under the loading conditions for which the elevator is designed and installed.

2.15.5.3 Platform frames are not required where laminated platforms are provided.

2.15.5.4 Laminated platforms shall be permitted to be used for passenger elevators having a rated load of 2 300 kg (5,000 lb) or less.

2.15.5.5 The deflection at any point of a laminated platform, when uniformly loaded to rated capacity, shall not exceed $\frac{1}{960}$ of the span. The stresses in the steel facing shall not exceed one-fifth of its ultimate strength, and the stresses in the plywood core shall not exceed 60% of the allowable stresses in Section 3.14 of the American Plywood Association Plywood Design Specification or CSA O86.1, as applicable (see [Part 9](#)).

2.15.6 Materials for Car Frames and Platform Frames

2.15.6.1 Materials Permitted. Materials used in the construction of car frames and platforms shall conform to [2.15.6.1.1](#) through [2.15.6.1.4](#).

2.15.6.1.1 Car frames and outside members of platform frames shall be made of steel or other metals.

2.15.6.1.2 Platform stringers of freight elevators designed for Class B or Class C loading shall be steel or other metals.

2.15.6.1.3 Platform stringers of passenger elevators and of freight elevators designed for Class A loading shall be made of steel or other metals, or of wood.

2.15.6.1.4 Cast iron shall not be used for any part subject to tension, torsion, or bending, except for guiding supports and guide shoes.

2.15.6.2 Requirements for Steel. Steel used in the construction of car frames and platforms shall conform to [2.15.6.2.1](#) through [2.15.6.2.3](#).

2.15.6.2.1 Car-Frame and Platform-Frame Members. Steel shall be rolled, formed, forged, or cast, conforming to the requirements of the following specifications:

(a) *Rolled and Formed Steel.* ASTM A36 or ASTM A283, Grade D or CAN/CSA-G40.21.

(b) *Forged Steel.* ASTM A668, Class B.

(c) *Cast Steel.* ASTM A27, Grade 60/30.

2.15.6.2.2 Rivets, Bolts, and Rods. Steel used for rivets, bolts, and rods shall conform to the following specifications:

(a) ASTM A502

(b) ASTM A307

2.15.6.2.3 Steels of Other Strength. Steels of greater or lesser strength than those specified by 2.15.6.2.1 shall be permitted to be used, provided they have an elongation of not less than 20% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E8 and the stresses and deflections conform to 2.15.10 and 2.15.11, respectively.

Rivets, bolts, and rods made of steel having greater strength than specified by ASTM A307 and ASTM A502 shall be permitted to be used, and the maximum allowable stresses increased proportionally, based on the ratio of the ultimate strengths. Elongation shall conform to the requirements of the corresponding ASTM specifications.

2.15.6.3 Requirements for Metals Other Than Steel. Metals other than steel shall be permitted to be used in the construction of car frames and platforms, provided the metal used has the essential properties to meet all the requirements for the purpose in accordance with sound engineering practice and the stresses and deflections conform to 2.15.10 and 2.15.11, respectively.

(22) **2.15.6.4 Requirements for Wood Used for Platform Floors and Stringers.** Wood used for platform stringers and platform floors and subfloors shall be structural quality lumber or plywood conforming to the requirements of the following:

- (a) ASTM D245
- (b) ASTM D198
- (c) ANSI Voluntary Product Standard PS 1 or CSA O151

2.15.7 Car Frame and Platform Connections

2.15.7.1 Internal Connections. Connections between members of car frames and platforms shall be riveted, bolted, or welded and shall conform to 2.15.7.3.

2.15.7.2 Connection Between Car Frame and Platform. The attachment of the platform to the car frame shall be done in accordance with sound engineering practice and shall develop the required strength to transmit the forces safely from the platform to the car frame in accordance with 2.15.10. Bolts, nuts, and welding, where used, shall conform to 2.15.7.3.

2.15.7.3 Bolts, Nuts, and Welding

2.15.7.3.1 Bolts, where used through greater than 5 deg sloping flanges of structural members, shall have bolt heads of the tipped-head type or shall be fitted with beveled washers.

2.15.7.3.2 Nuts used on greater than 5 deg sloping flanges of structural members shall sit on beveled washers.

2.15.7.3.3 All welding shall conform to Section 8.8.

2.15.8 Protection of Platforms Against Fire

All platform materials exposed to the hoistway shall be either of the following:

(a) metal

(b) other materials that, in their end-use configuration, conform to the following requirements, based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E84, UL 723, NFPA 255, or CAN/ULC-S102.2, whichever is applicable (see Part 9):

- (1) flame spread rating of 0 to 75
- (2) smoke development classification of 0 to 450

2.15.9 Platform Guards (Aprons)

The entrance side of the platform of passenger and freight elevators shall be provided with smooth metal guard plates of not less than 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) thick steel, or material of equivalent strength and stiffness, adequately reinforced and braced to the car platform and conforming to 2.15.9.1 through 2.15.9.4.

2.15.9.1 The guard plate shall extend not less than the full width of the widest hoistway-door opening.

2.15.9.2 The guard plate shall have a straight vertical face, extending below the floor surface of the platform. A horizontal door guiding groove is permitted below the floor surface for door operating devices, door guiding devices, and door retaining devices in accordance with 2.15.9.5. The guard plate shall conform to one of the following:

- (a) where the elevator is required to conform to 2.19.2.2(b), the depth of the truck zone, where provided, plus 75 mm (3 in.), but in no case less than 1 220 mm (48 in.)
- (b) where the elevator is not required to conform to 2.19.2.2(b), the depth of the leveling zone or truck zone, where provided, plus 75 mm (3 in.), but in no case less than 525 mm (21 in.) from the floor surface

2.15.9.3 The lower portion of the guard shall be bent back at an angle not less than 60 deg nor more than 75 deg from the horizontal.

2.15.9.4 The guard plate shall be securely braced and fastened in place to withstand a constant force of not less than 650 N (145 lbf) applied at right angles to and at any position on its face without deflecting more than 6 mm (0.25 in.), and without permanent deformation.

Where the car entrance on the truck loading side is provided with a collapsible-type gate and the height of the hoistway door opening is greater than the distance from the car floor to the car top, a head guard extending the full width of the door opening shall be provided on the car to close the space between the car top and the soffit of the hoistway-door opening when the car platform is level with the floor at the truck loading landing entrance.

2.15.9.5 A horizontal door guiding groove with a maximum width of 10 mm (0.375 in.) shall be permitted at the transition of the car sill guard and the car sill, in accordance with the following requirements:

Table 2.15.10.1
Maximum Allowable Stresses in Car Frame and Platform Members and Connections, for Steels Specified in 2.15.6.2.1 and 2.15.6.2.2

Member Type	Stress Type	Maximum Stress, MPa (psi)	Area Basis
Car crosshead	Bending	95 (14,000)	Gross section
Car frame plank (normal loading)	Bending	95 (14,000)	Gross section
Car frame plank (buffer reaction)	Bending	190 (27,500)	Gross section
Car frame uprights (stiles)	Bending plus tension	115 (17,000)	Gross section
		140 (20,000)	Net section
Hoisting rope hitch plate and shapes	Bending plus tension	75 (11,000)	Net section
Platform framing	Bending	95 (14,000)	Gross section
Platform stringers	Bending	115 (17,000)	Gross section
Threaded brace rods and other tension members except bolts	Tension	60 (9,000)	Net section
Bolts	Tension	55 (8,000)	Net section
Bolts in clearance holes	Shear	55 (8,000)	Actual area in shear plane
	Bearing	120 (17,500)	Gross section
Rivets or tight body-fit bolts	Shear	75 (11,000)	Actual area in shear plane
	Bearing	140 (20,000)	Gross section
Any framing member normal loading	Compression	[Note (1)]	Gross section

NOTE: (1) The maximum allowable compressive stress in any member at normal loading shall not exceed 80% of stresses permitted for static loads by AISC Book No. S326 or CAN/CSA-S16.1.

(a) Door power preopening in accordance with 2.13.2.2.2 shall not be permitted.

(b) Leveling/releveling shall be initiated before vertical exposure of the groove is revealed.

(c) Where exposure to the gap is revealed, the car shall not relevel with open doors.

(d) Edges forming the gap shall be configured to prevent hazards.

2.15.10 Maximum Allowable Stresses in Car Frame and Platform Members and Connections

2.15.10.1 The stresses in car frame and platform members and their connections, based on the static load imposed on them, shall not exceed the following:

(a) for steels meeting the requirements of 2.15.6.2.1 and 2.15.6.2.2, see Table 2.15.10.1

(b) for steels of greater or lesser strength, as permitted by 2.15.6.2.3, the allowable stresses listed in Table 2.15.10.1 are to be adjusted proportionally, based on the ratio of the ultimate strengths

(c) for metals other than steel, as permitted by 2.15.6.3, the allowable stresses listed in Table 2.15.10.1 are to be adjusted proportionally, based on the ratio of the ultimate strengths

2.15.10.2 Car frame members, brackets, and their connections subject to forces due to the application of the emergency brake (see 2.19.4) shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of emergency braking so that the resulting stresses due to emergency braking and all other loads acting simultaneously, if applicable, shall not exceed 190 MPa (27,500 psi).

2.15.11 Maximum Allowable Deflections of Car Frame and Platform Members

The deflections of car frame and platform members based on the static load imposed on them shall be not more than the following:

(a) for crosshead, plank, and platform frame members, $\frac{1}{960}$ of the span

(b) for uprights (stiles), as determined by 8.2.2.5.3

2.15.12 Car Frames With Sheaves

Where a hoisting-rope sheave is mounted on the car frame, the construction shall conform to 2.15.12.1 through 2.15.12.3.

2.15.12.1 Where multiple sheaves mounted on separate sheave shafts are used, provision shall be made to take the compressive forces developed by tension in the

hoisting ropes between the sheaves on a strut or struts between the sheave shaft supports, or to add compressive strength in the car frame or car-frame members supporting sheave shafts.

2.15.12.2 Where the sheave shaft extends through the web of a car-frame member, the reduction in area of the member shall not reduce the strength of the member below that required. Where necessary, reinforcing plates shall be welded or riveted to the member to provide the required strength. The bearing pressure shall in no case be more than that permitted in [Table 2.15.10.1](#) for bolts in clearance holes.

2.15.12.3 Where the sheave is attached to the car crosshead by means of a single-threaded rod or a specially designed member(s) in tension, the requirements of [2.15.12.3.1](#) and [2.15.12.3.2](#) shall be conformed to.

2.15.12.3.1 The single rod, member, or members shall have a factor of safety 50% higher than the factor of safety required for the suspension wire ropes, but in no case shall they have a factor of safety less than 15.

2.15.12.3.2 The means for fastening the single-threaded rod, member, or members to the car frame shall conform to [2.15.13](#).

2.15.13 Suspension-Rope Hitch Plates or Shapes

Where cars are suspended by hoisting ropes attached to the car frame or to the overhead supporting beams by means of rope shackles, the shackles shall be attached to steel hitch plates or to structural or formed steel shapes.

Such plates or shapes shall be secured to the underside or to the webs of the car-frame member with bolts, rivets, or welds located so that the tensions in the hoisting ropes will not develop direct tension in the bolts or rivets.

The stresses shall not exceed those permitted by [2.9.3.3](#).

2.15.14 Calculation of Stresses in Car-Frame and Platform-Frame Members

The calculation of the stresses and deflection in the car-frame plank and uprights and platform frames shall be based on the formulas and data in [8.2.2](#).

2.15.15 Platform Side Braces

Where side bracing and similar members are attached to car-frame uprights, the reduction in area of the upright shall not reduce the strength of the upright below that required by [Section 2.15](#).

2.15.16 Hinged Platform Sills

Hinged platform sills, where used, shall conform to [2.15.16.1](#) through [2.15.16.3](#).

2.15.16.1 Hinged platform sills shall be provided with electric contacts conforming to the following requirements that will prevent operation of the elevator by the normal operating device unless the hinged sill is within 50 mm (2 in.) of its fully retracted position, provided that when in this position, the sill does not reduce the clearance specified in [2.5.1.4](#). The electric contacts shall

(a) be positively opened by a lever or other device attached to and operated by the hinged platform sill

(b) be maintained in the open position by the action of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by positive mechanical means

(c) be designed or located so that they shall not be accessible from within the car

(d) not use mercury tube switches

2.15.16.2 The elevator shall be permitted to be operated by the leveling device in the leveling zone with the sill in any position.

2.15.16.3 The strength of the sills shall conform to [2.11.11.1](#).

2.15.17 Fastening of Compensation Means

Fastenings to the car of the suspension ropes' compensation means shall conform to [2.21.4](#).

SECTION 2.16 CAPACITY AND LOADING

2.16.1 Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators

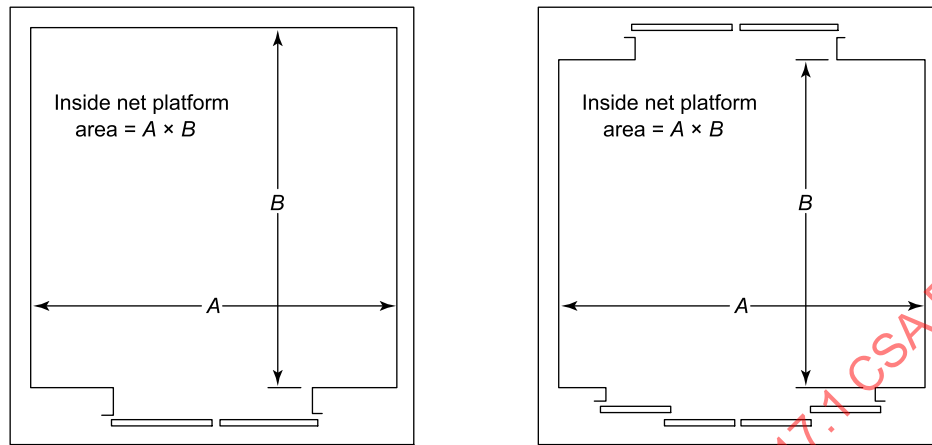
2.16.1.1 Minimum Load Permitted. The rated load in kilograms (pounds) for passenger elevators shall be based on the inside net platform area, and shall be not less than shown by [Figure 8.2.1.2](#) (see [Nonmandatory Appendix D](#)).

The inside net platform area shall be determined at a point 1 000 mm (39 in.) above the floor and inside of any panels or wall surfaces, but exclusive of any handrails and space for doors as shown in [Figure 2.16.1.1](#). To allow for variations in car designs, an increase in the maximum inside net area not exceeding 5% shall be permitted for the various rated loads. See [Table 2.16.1.1](#).

2.16.1.2 Use of Partitions for Reducing Inside Net Platform Area. Where partitions are installed in elevator cars for the purpose of restricting the platform net area for passenger use, they shall be permanently bolted, riveted, or welded in place. Gates, doors, or handrails shall not be used for this purpose. Partitions shall be installed to provide for approximately symmetrical loading.

2.16.1.3 Carrying of Freight on Passenger Elevators. When freight is to be carried on a passenger elevator, the requirements of [2.16.1.3.1](#) and [2.16.1.3.2](#) shall be conformed to.

Figure 2.16.1.1
Inside Net Platform Areas for Passenger Elevators



2.16.1.3.1 The minimum rated load shall conform to 2.16.1 or 2.16.2, whichever is greater.

2.16.1.3.2 The elevator shall be designed for the applicable class of freight elevator loading.

2.16.2 Minimum Rated Load for Freight Elevators

2.16.2.1 Minimum Load Permitted. The minimum rated load for freight elevators in pounds shall be based on the weight and class of the load to be handled, but shall in no case be less than the minimum specified in 2.16.2.2 for each class of loading based on the inside net platform area.

2.16.2.2 Classes of Loading and Design Requirements. Freight elevators shall be designed for one of the following classes of loading.

2.16.2.2.1 Class A: General Freight Loading. Where the load is distributed, the weight of any single piece of freight or of any single hand truck and its load is not more than 25% of the rated load of the elevator, and the load is handled on and off the car platform manually or by means of hand trucks, it is Class A general freight loading.

For this class of loading, the rated load shall be based on not less than 240 kg/m^2 (49 lb/ft^2) of inside net platform area.

2.16.2.2.2 Class B: Motor Vehicle Loading. Where the elevator is used solely to carry automobile trucks or passenger automobiles up to the rated capacity of the elevator, it is Class B loading.

For this class of loading, the rated load shall be based on not less than 145 kg/m^2 (30 lb/ft^2) of the inside net platform area.

2.16.2.2.3 Class C. There are three types of Class C loadings:

(a) **Class C1: Industrial Truck Loading.** Where the static load during loading and unloading does not exceed the rated load, it is Class C1 loading.

(b) **Class C2: Industrial Truck Loading.** Where the static load during loading and unloading is permitted to exceed the rated load, it is Class C2 loading.

(c) **Class C3: Other Loading With Heavy Concentrations.** Where the static load during loading and unloading does not exceed the rated load, it is Class C3 loading.

2.16.2.2.4 The Class C loadings in 2.16.2.2.3 apply where the weight of the concentrated load including a powered industrial or hand truck, if used, is more than 25% of the rated load and where the load to be carried does not exceed the rated load. (For concentrated loads exceeding the rated load, see 2.16.6.)

The following are additional requirements:

(a) For Class C1, Class C2, and Class C3 loadings, the rated load of the elevator shall be not less than the load (including any truck) to be carried, and shall in no case be less than 240 kg/m^2 (49 lb/ft^2) of the inside net platform area.

The elevator shall be provided with a two-way automatic leveling device (see Section 1.3).

(b) For Class C1 and Class C2

(1) For elevators with rated loads of 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or less, the car platform shall be designed for a loaded truck of weight equal to the rated load or for the actual weight of the loaded truck to be used, whichever is greater.

(2) For elevators with rated loads exceeding 9 000 kg (20,000 lb), the car platform shall be designed for a loaded truck weighing 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or for the actual weight of the loaded truck to be used, whichever is greater.

(c) For Class C2

(1) The maximum load on the car platform during loading or unloading shall not exceed 150% of the rated load.

Table 2.16.1.1
Maximum Inside Net Platform Areas for the Various
Rated Loads

SI Units		Imperial Units	
Rated Load, kg	Inside Net Platform Area, m ²	Rated Load, lb	Inside Net Platform Area, ft ²
230	0.65	500	7.0
270	0.77	600	8.3
320	0.89	700	9.6
450	1.23	1,000	13.3
550	1.45	1,200	15.6
700	1.76	1,500	18.9
800	2.05	1,800	22.1
900	2.25	2,000	24.2
1 150	2.70	2,500	29.1
1 350	3.13	3,000	33.7
1 600	3.53	3,500	38.0
1 800	3.92	4,000	42.2
2 000	4.29	4,500	46.2
2 250	4.65	5,000	50.0
2 700	5.36	6,000	57.7
3 200	6.07	7,000	65.3
3 600	6.77	8,000	72.9
4 100	7.48	9,000	80.5
4 500	8.18	10,000	88.0
5 400	9.57	12,000	103.0
7 000	11.62	15,000	125.1
8 000	13.65	18,000	146.9
9 000	14.98	20,000	161.2
11 500	18.25	25,000	196.5
13 500	21.46	30,000	231.0

GENERAL NOTE: To allow for variations in cab designs, an increase in the maximum inside net platform area not exceeding 5% shall be permitted for the various rated loads.

(2) For any load in excess of the rated load on elevators with a rated load of 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or less, the driving-machine motor, brake, and traction relation shall be adequate to sustain and level the full 150% of the rated load.

(3) For any load in excess of the rated load on elevators with a rated load exceeding 9 000 kg (20,000 lb), the driving-machine motor, brake, and traction relation shall be adequate to sustain and level the rated load plus either

4 500 kg (10,000 lb) or the weight of the unloaded truck to be used, whichever is greater.

NOTES (2.16.2):

- (1) When the entire rated load is loaded or unloaded in increments by an industrial truck, the load imposed on the car platform, while the last increment is being loaded or the first increment unloaded, will exceed the rated load by part of the weight of the empty industrial truck.
- (2) Requirement 2.16.2 does not prohibit carrying an industrial truck on a freight elevator of Class C2 or Class C3 loading, provided that the total weight on the elevator does not exceed the rated load of the elevator, and the elevator is designed to meet the requirements of 8.2.2 and 8.2.9, as appropriate, for the load involved.

2.16.3 Capacity and Data Plates

2.16.3.1 Plates Required and Locations. Every elevator shall be provided with a capacity plate and a data plate complying with 8.13.1.

The capacity plate shall be located in a conspicuous position inside the car.

The data plate shall be located on the car crosshead, or for elevators having no crosshead or no exposed crosshead, in a conspicuous location on the car top or inside the car.

2.16.3.2 Information Required on Plates

2.16.3.2.1 Capacity plates shall indicate the rated load of the elevator in kilograms or pounds or both (see [Nonmandatory Appendix D](#)), and, in addition, this plate or a separate plate shall indicate

(a) the capacity lifting one-piece loads where the elevator conforms to 2.16.7

(b) for freight elevators designed for Class C2 loading, the maximum load the elevator is designed to support while being loaded or unloaded [see 2.16.2.2.4(c)]

2.16.3.2.2 Data plates shall indicate

(a) the weight of the complete car, including the car safety and all auxiliary equipment attached to the car

(b) the rated load and speed

(c) the suspension means data required by 2.20.2.1

(d) the name or trademark of the manufacturer and the year manufactured

(e) rail lubrication instructions (see 2.17.16)

(f) the percent counterweight overbalance range (see 2.24.2.3.5)

2.16.3.3 Material and Marking of Permanent Plates. Plates shall comply with 8.13.1.

2.16.4 Carrying of Passengers on Freight Elevators

Freight elevators conforming to 2.16.4.1 through 2.16.4.8 shall be permitted to carry passengers.

2.16.4.1 The elevator shall not be accessible to the general public.

2.16.4.2 The rated load shall not be less than that required by 2.16.1.

2.16.4.3 The elevator shall conform to 2.16.8.

2.16.4.4 Hoistway entrances shall conform to 2.12.1.1 and 2.11.2.1, or shall be power-operated doors conforming to 2.11.2.2(e).

2.16.4.5 Car doors shall be provided, and shall conform to 2.14.5.

2.16.4.6 Openings in car enclosures shall conform to 2.14.2.2.

2.16.4.7 The factors of safety for suspension wire ropes shall conform to Table 2.20.3 for passenger elevators.

2.16.4.8 Power-operated vertically sliding doors shall be power closed conforming to the following:

(a) requirement 2.13.3.4

(b) supporting chains, cables, or ropes shall not be exposed to the car interior

2.16.5 Signs Required in Freight Elevator Cars

2.16.5.1 Signs Required. Signs complying with 8.13.2, in addition to the capacity and data plates required by 2.16.3.1, shall be provided inside the car and shall be located in a conspicuous position and permanently and securely fastened to the car enclosure, subject to the requirements of 2.16.5.1.1 through 2.16.5.1.3.

2.16.5.1.1 For every freight elevator, the sign shall specify the type of loading (see 2.16.2.2) for which the elevator is designed and installed, with one of the following markings:

(a) "CLASS A LOADING. ELEVATOR TO BE LOADED OR UNLOADED MANUALLY OR BY MEANS OF HAND TRUCKS ONLY. NO SINGLE PIECE OF FREIGHT OR SINGLE HAND TRUCK AND ITS LOAD SHALL EXCEED _____ KG (_____ LB)."

(b) "CLASS B LOADING. THIS ELEVATOR DESIGNED TO TRANSPORT MOTOR VEHICLES HAVING A MAXIMUM GROSS WEIGHT NOT TO EXCEED _____ KG (_____ LB)."

(c) "CLASS C1 LOADING. THIS ELEVATOR DESIGNED TO TRANSPORT LOADED INDUSTRIAL TRUCK. MAXIMUM COMBINED WEIGHT OF INDUSTRIAL TRUCK AND LOAD NOT TO EXCEED _____ KG (_____ LB)."

(d) "CLASS C2 LOADING. THIS ELEVATOR DESIGNED FOR LOADING AND UNLOADING BY INDUSTRIAL TRUCK. MAXIMUM LOADING AND UNLOADING WEIGHT WHILE PARKED NOT TO EXCEED _____ KG (_____ LB). MAXIMUM WEIGHT TRANSPORTED NOT TO EXCEED _____ KG (_____ LB)."

(e) "CLASS C3 LOADING. THIS ELEVATOR DESIGNED TO TRANSPORT CONCENTRATED LOADS NOT TO EXCEED _____ KG (_____ LB)."

2.16.5.1.2 For freight elevators not permitted to carry passengers, the sign shall read, "THIS IS A FREIGHT ELEVATOR, NOT A PASSENGER ELEVATOR, AND NOT FOR GENERAL PUBLIC USE."

2.16.5.1.3 For freight elevators permitted to carry passengers (see 2.16.4), a sign shall read, "PASSENGERS ARE PERMITTED TO RIDE THIS ELEVATOR."

2.16.5.2 Material and Marking of Signs. Signs shall conform to 8.13.2, and the letters shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.) high.

2.16.6 Overloading of Freight Elevators

Freight elevators shall not be loaded in excess of their rated load as specified on the capacity plate required by 2.16.3, except for

(a) static loads on elevators loaded and unloaded by industrial trucks as noted on the capacity plate or on a separate plate [see 2.16.2.2.3 and 2.16.3.2.1(b)]

(b) elevators designed and installed to conform to 2.16.7 to carry one-piece loads exceeding their rated load

2.16.7 Carrying of One-Piece Loads Exceeding the Rated Load

Passenger and freight elevators shall be permitted to be used, where necessary, to carry one-piece loads greater than their rated load, provided they are designed, installed, and operated to conform to 2.16.7.1 through 2.16.7.11.

2.16.7.1 A locking device shall be provided that will hold the car at any landing, independently of the hoisting ropes, while the car is being loaded or unloaded.

2.16.7.2 The locking device shall be designed so that it cannot be unlocked until the entire weight of the car and load is suspended on the ropes.

2.16.7.3 A removable wrench or other device shall be provided to operate the locking device.

2.16.7.4 The locking device shall be designed so that the locking bars will be automatically withdrawn should they come into contact with the landing locks when the car is operated in the up direction.

2.16.7.5 A special capacity plate complying with 8.13.1 shall be provided inside the elevator car in a conspicuous place that shall bear the words "CAPACITY LIFTING ONE-PIECE LOADS" in letters, followed by figures giving the special capacity in kilograms (pounds) for lifting one-piece loads for which the machine is designed.

2.16.7.6 The car frame, car platform, sheaves, shafts, ropes, and locking devices shall be designed for the specified “Capacity Lifting One-Piece Loads,” provided that

(a) in the design of the car frame, platform, sheaves, shafts, and ropes, the allowable stress is permitted to be 20% higher than those permitted for normal loading

(b) the factor of safety for the locking device is not less than 5

2.16.7.7 The car safeties shall be designed to stop and hold the specified “Capacity Lifting One-Piece Loads” with the ropes intact. The safety is not required to conform to the safety stopping distances specified in [Table 2.17.3](#) if applied while the elevator is carrying a one-piece load exceeding the rated load.

2.16.7.8 Where there is an occupied space, or an unoccupied space not secured against unauthorized access (see [Section 2.6](#)), under the hoistway, the requirements of [2.16.7.8.1](#) through [2.16.7.8.4](#) shall be conformed to.

2.16.7.8.1 The machine shall be designed to operate the “Capacity Lifting One-Piece Loads” at slow speed.

2.16.7.8.2 The car safety shall be designed to stop and hold the car with this load, independently of the hoisting ropes.

2.16.7.8.3 The counterweight safety, where required by [Section 2.6](#), shall be designed to stop and hold the entire weight of the counterweight, independently of the ropes.

2.16.7.8.4 Under the conditions described in [2.16.7.8.2](#) and [2.16.7.8.3](#), the car and counterweight safeties are not required to conform to the safety stopping distances specified in [Table 2.17.3](#) when the elevator is carrying a one-piece load exceeding the rated load and the counterweight is provided with additional weight as required by [2.16.7.9](#).

2.16.7.9 For traction machines, where it is necessary to secure adequate traction, an additional counterweight shall be added during the period of use with one-piece loads so that the total overbalance is at least equal to 45% of the “Capacity Lifting One-Piece Loads.”

2.16.7.10 A special operating device of the car switch or continuous pressure type shall be provided in a machine room, control space located outside the hoistway, or control room to operate the elevator.

Means shall be provided to visually observe the driving machine when this special operating device is operated. When this device is operative, all other operating devices shall be inoperative (see [2.26.1.3](#)).

2.16.7.11 The “Capacity Lifting One-Piece Loads” of any passenger traction elevator shall not exceed 1.33 times the rated load of the elevator.

2.16.8 Additional Requirements for Passenger Overload in the Down Direction

Passenger elevators and freight elevators permitted by [2.16.4](#) to carry passengers shall be designed and installed to safely lower, stop, and hold the car with an additional load up to 25% in excess of the rated load.

The elevator is not required to attain rated load performance under the passenger overload conditions specified but shall conform to

(a) requirement [2.17.2](#), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(b) requirement [2.17.3](#), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in the first paragraph in place of the rated load. In the second paragraph of [2.17.3](#), 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load, and the rated load performance including safety stopping distance is not required.

(c) requirement [2.24.2.3](#), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(d) requirement [2.24.8](#), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(e) requirement [2.25.2.1](#), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(f) requirement [2.26.9.8](#), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(g) requirement [2.26.10](#), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(h) requirement [2.19.2.2\(b\)](#), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(i) requirement [2.27.2.1](#), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(j) requirement [2.7.5.1.2\(b\)](#), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

2.16.9 Special Loading Means

Where special means (lift hooks, conveyor tracks, and support beams) that exert loads on the car frame or platform, or both, are used to carry loads other than as described in [2.16.2.2](#), the effects of their loading on the car frame and platform shall be considered in accordance with [8.2.2.1](#) and [8.2.9.1](#). The allowable stresses and deflections shall be as specified in [2.15.10](#) and [2.15.11](#). The connections shall conform to [2.15.7](#).

SECTION 2.17 CAR AND COUNTERWEIGHT SAFETIES

2.17.1 Where Required and Location

The car of every elevator suspended as required by [2.20.1](#) shall be provided with one or more car safety devices of one of the types identified in [2.17.5](#). Safeties shall be attached to the car frame, and at least one safety shall be located within or below the car frame.

All car safeties shall be mounted on a single car frame and shall operate only on one pair of guide rails between which the frame is located.

2.17.2 Duplex Safeties

Where duplex (two) safeties are provided, the lower safety device shall be capable of developing not less than one-half of the force required to stop the entire car with the rated load (see 2.16.8). Duplexed safety devices shall be arranged to function approximately simultaneously.

Type A or Type C safety devices (see 2.17.5) shall not be used in multiple (duplexed).

2.17.3 Function and Stopping Distance of Safeties

The safety device, or the combined safety devices, where furnished, shall be capable of stopping and sustaining the entire car with its rated load from governor tripping speed (see also 2.16.8).

Type B safeties shall stop the car with its rated load from governor tripping speed within the range of the maximum and minimum stopping distances as determined by the formulas in 8.2.6. Table 2.17.3 and Figure 8.2.6 show the maximum and minimum stopping distances for various governor tripping speeds, when tested in conformance with Sections 8.10 and 8.11.

2.17.4 Counterweight Safeties

Counterweight safeties, where furnished (see Section 2.6 and 2.19.3.2(a)(1)), shall conform to the requirements for car safeties, except as specified in 2.17.7 and 2.18.1.

2.17.5 Identification and Classification of Types of Safeties

Car safety devices (safeties) are identified and classified on the basis of performance characteristics after the safety begins to apply pressure on the guide rails. On this basis, there are three types of safeties.

2.17.5.1 Type A Safeties. Type A safeties develop a rapidly increasing pressure on the guide rails during the stopping interval; the stopping distance is very short due to the inherent design of the safety. The operating force is derived entirely from the mass and the motion of the car or the counterweight being stopped. These safeties apply pressure on the guide rails through eccentrics, rollers, or similar devices, without any flexible medium purposely introduced to limit the retarding force and increase the stopping distance.

2.17.5.2 Type B Safeties. Type B safeties apply limited pressure on the guide rails during the stopping interval and provide stopping distances that are related to the mass being stopped and the speed at which application of the safety is initiated. Retarding forces are reasonably

uniform after the safety is fully applied. Safeties that require or do not require continuous tension in the governor rope to operate the safety during the entire stopping interval shall be permitted. Minimum and maximum distances are specified on the basis of governor tripping speed (see 2.17.3).

2.17.5.3 Type C Safeties (Type A With Oil Buffers).

Type C safeties develop retarding forces during the compression stroke of one or more oil buffers interposed between the lower members of the car frame and a governor-operated Type A auxiliary safety plank applied on the guide rails. The stopping distance is equal to the effective stroke of the buffers.

2.17.6 Reserved for Future Use

2.17.7 Governor-Actuated Safeties and Car Safety Mechanism Switches Required

2.17.7.1 Counterweight safeties, where provided for rated speeds over 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), and car safeties shall be actuated by separate speed governors.

Counterweight safeties for rated speeds of not over 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) shall be permitted to be operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the suspension ropes and shall be permitted to be of the inertia or other approved type without governors.

Where counterweight safeties are furnished to provide ascending car overspeed protection in accordance with 2.19.1.1, they shall be actuated by a counterweight speed governor (see 2.17.4).

2.17.7.2 Every car safety shall be provided with a switch that is operated by the car safety mechanism (see 2.26.2.9).

A switch operated by the safety mechanism is not required on counterweight safeties.

2.17.7.3 The car safety mechanism switch shall operate before or at the time of application of the safety.

2.17.7.4 Switches operated by the car safety mechanism shall be a type that cannot be reset until the car safety mechanism has been returned to the unapplied position.

2.17.8 Limits of Use of Various Types of Safeties

2.17.8.1 Type A (Instantaneous) Safeties. Type A safeties shall be permitted on elevators having a rated speed of not more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

When overspeed occurs, with the hoisting rope intact, such safeties shall be actuated by the governor.

On the parting of the hoisting ropes (free fall), Type A governor-operated safeties shall apply without appreciable delay, and their application shall be independent of the speed action of the governor and of the location of the break in the hoisting ropes (inertia application), and shall be permitted to be accomplished by the use

Table 2.17.3
Maximum and Minimum Stopping Distances for Type B Car Safeties With Rated Load at Maximum Car Governor Tripping Speed

SI Units				Imperial Units			
Rated Speed, m/s	Maximum Governor Trip Speed, m/s	Stopping Distances, mm		Rated Speed, ft/min	Maximum Governor Trip Speed, ft/min	Stopping Distances, in.	
		Min.	Max.			Min.	Max.
0–0.63	0.90	25	380	0–125	175	1	15
0.75	1.05	50	415	150	210	2	16
0.87	1.25	75	485	175	250	3	19
1.00	1.40	100	540	200	280	4	22
1.12	1.55	125	605	225	308	5	24
1.25	1.70	150	675	250	337	6	27
1.50	2.00	200	840	300	395	8	33
1.75	2.30	250	1025	350	452	10	40
2.00	2.55	330	1200	400	510	13	48
2.25	2.90	430	1480	450	568	17	58
2.50	3.15	505	1700	500	625	20	68
3.00	3.70	710	2250	600	740	28	91
3.50	4.30	940	2950	700	855	38	128
4.00	4.85	1200	3680	800	970	49	150
4.50	5.50	1540	4660	900	1,085	61	183
5.00	6.00	1835	5500	1,000	1,200	75	222
5.50	6.60	2220	6600	1,100	1,320	90	268
6.00	7.20	2640	7800	1,200	1,440	107	316
6.50	7.80	3100	9110	1,300	1,560	126	371
7.00	8.40	3595	10530	1,400	1,680	146	427
7.50	9.00	4125	12050	1,500	1,800	168	490
8.00	9.60	4695	13670	1,600	1,920	191	555
8.50	10.20	5300	15400	1,700	2,040	215	628
9.00	10.80	5940	17240	1,800	2,160	241	700
9.50	11.40	6620	19180	1,900	2,280	269	779
10.00	12.00	7335	21220	2,000	2,400	299	862

of a governor and governor rigging having a sufficiently high value of inertia to apply the safety on free fall independently of the speed action of the governor (see [Section 8.10](#) for inertia-application test of car safety).

2.17.8.2 Type C (Combination Instantaneous and Oil-Buffer) Safeties. Type C safeties shall be permitted subject to the requirements of [2.17.8.2.1](#) through [2.17.8.2.8](#).

2.17.8.2.1 The rated speed shall be not more than 2.5 m/s (500 ft/min).

2.17.8.2.2 The oil buffers shall conform to all requirements specified in [Section 2.22](#) for oil buffers, except that the stroke shall be based on governor tripping

speed and on an average retardation not exceeding 9.81 m/s² (32.2 ft/s²).

2.17.8.2.3 After the buffer stroke, as defined in [2.17.8.2.2](#), has been completed, provision shall be made for an additional travel of the plunger or piston of not less than 10% of the buffer stroke, to prevent excessive impact on the buffer parts and the auxiliary safety plank.

2.17.8.2.4 Where the distance between guide rails exceeds 2450 mm (96 in.), the safety shall be provided with two oil buffers of substantially identical calibration, and the buffers shall be located to develop minimum

stresses in the auxiliary safety plank during safety operation.

Buffers shall be located in line with and symmetrically between the guide rails.

2.17.8.2.5 The auxiliary safety plank shall be supported and guided below the car frame so that the clearances specified in 2.17.10 for the safety parts are maintained during normal operation.

The auxiliary safety plank shall be designed so that the maximum stresses in the plank shall not exceed those specified for similar car-frame members in Section 2.15.

2.17.8.2.6 The rail-gripping device of the auxiliary safety plank shall be arranged and connected to prevent the plank from being out of level more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) in the length of the plank when the safety is operated to stop the car.

2.17.8.2.7 An electric switch shall be provided and arranged and connected so that the elevator cannot be operated by means of the normal operating device if any buffer is compressed more than 10% of its stroke (see 2.26.2.13).

2.17.8.2.8 Means shall be provided to prevent operation of the elevator by means of the normal operating device if the oil level in the buffer is below the minimum level (see 2.26.2.13).

2.17.9 Application and Release of Safeties

2.17.9.1 Means of Application. Safeties shall be applied mechanically. Electric, hydraulic, or pneumatic devices shall not be used to apply the safeties required by Section 2.17, nor to hold such safeties in the retracted position.

2.17.9.2 Level of Car on Safety Application. The application of a Type A or Type B safety to stop the car, with its rated load centered on each quarter of the platform symmetrically with relation to the centerlines of the platform, shall not cause the platform to be out of level more than 30 mm/m (0.36 in./ft) in any direction. (See 2.17.8.2.6 for Type C safeties.)

2.17.9.3 Release. When car safeties are applied, no decrease in tension in the governor rope or motion of the car in the down direction shall release the safeties, but such safeties shall be permitted to be released by the motion of the car in the up direction.

2.17.9.4 Force Providing Stopping Action to Be Compressive. Safeties shall be designed so that, on their application, the forces that provide the stopping action shall be compressive forces on each side of the guide-rail section.

2.17.10 Minimum Permissible Clearance Between Rail-Gripping Faces of Safety Parts

In the normally retracted position of the safety, the distance between the rail-gripping faces of the safety parts shall be not less than the thickness of the guide rail plus 3.5 mm (0.14 in.), and the clearance on any side between the gripping face and the guide rail shall be not less than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.), as measured on the side of the rail toward which the car frame is pressed with sufficient force to take up all clearances in the guide-shoe assembly. Safety jaws, while in the retracted position, shall be restrained to prevent a reduction of this minimum clearance.

2.17.11 Maximum Permissible Movement of Governor Rope to Operate the Safety Mechanism

For all Type B safeties, the movement of the governor rope, relative to the car or the counterweight, required to operate the safety mechanism from its fully retracted position to a position where the safety jaws begin to exert pressure against the guide rails, shall not exceed the following values based on rated speed:

- (a) for car safeties
 - (1) 1 m/s (200 ft/min) or less, 1070 mm (42 in.)
 - (2) 1.01 m/s (201 ft/min) to 1.9 m/s (375 ft/min), 915 mm (36 in.)
 - (3) over 1.9 m/s (375 ft/min), 756 mm (30 in.)
- (b) for counterweight safeties, all speeds, 1070 mm (42 in.)

Drum-operated car and counterweight safeties, requiring continual unwinding of the safety drum rope to fully apply the safety, shall be designed so that not less than three turns of the safety rope will remain on the drum after the overspeed test of the safety has been made with the rated load in the car.

2.17.12 Minimum Factors of Safety and Stresses of Safety Parts and Rope Connections

2.17.12.1 Parts of safeties, except springs, safety-rope drums, leading sheaves, bearings, and their supporting brackets and safety-jaw gibs, shall have a factor of safety not less than 3.5, and the materials used shall have an elongation of not less than 15% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E8. Forged, cast, or welded parts shall be stress relieved.

2.17.12.2 Springs are permitted in the operation of car or counterweight safeties. Where used, and where partially loaded prior to safety operation, the loading on the spring shall not produce a fiber stress exceeding one-half the elastic limit of the material. During operation of the safety, the fiber stress shall not exceed 85% of the elastic limit of the material. Helical springs, where used, shall be in compression.

2.17.12.3 Safety-rope drums, leading sheaves, and their supporting brackets and safety-jaw gibs are permitted to be made of cast iron and other metals, provided such parts have a factor of safety not less than 10.

2.17.12.4 Rope used as a connection from the safety to the governor rope, including rope wound on the safety-rope drum, shall be not less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) in diameter, shall be made of metal, and shall be corrosion resistant. The factor of safety of the rope shall be not less than 5. Tiller-rope construction shall not be used.

2.17.12.5 The factors of safety shall be based on the maximum stresses developed in the parts during the operation of the safety when stopping the rated load from the governor tripping speed.

2.17.12.6 Safety-rope leading sheave brackets and other safety operating parts shall not be attached to or supported by wood platform members.

2.17.13 Corrosion-Resistant Bearings in Safeties and Safety-Operating Mechanisms

Bearings in safeties and in the safety-operating mechanisms shall be of corrosion-resistant construction, with one or both members of the bearing made of, or electroplated with, a corrosion-resistant material.

2.17.14 Marking Plates for Safeties

A marking plate complying with 8.13.3 shall be securely attached to each safety, shall be readily visible, and shall be marked with letters and figures not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height indicating

- (a) the type of safety, based on 2.17.5
- (b) the maximum tripping speed in meters per second (feet per minute) for which the safety is permitted
- (c) the maximum weight in kilograms (pounds) that the safety is designed and installed to stop and sustain
- (d) the force in newtons (pounds-force) required to activate the safety or rope releasing carrier, if provided
- (e) the manufacturer's name or trademark

2.17.15 Governor-Rope Releasing Carriers

Where a governor-rope releasing carrier is used to prevent actuation of the safety by the inertial forces of the governor-rope system, or used for any other purpose, the governor-rope releasing carrier on the car (or on the counterweight) shall be set to require a tension in the governor rope, to pull the rope from the carrier, of not more than 60% of the pull-through tension developed by the governor. The means to regulate the governor-rope pull-out force shall be mechanical and shall be sealed. The carrier shall be designed so that the pull-out tension cannot be adjusted to exceed the amount specified without breaking the seal.

2.17.16 Rail Lubricants and Lubrication Plate

Rail lubricants or coatings that will reduce the holding power of the safety or prevent its functioning as required in 2.17.3 shall not be used (see Section 8.7 for maintenance requirements).

A marking plate as required by 8.13.3 shall be securely attached to the car crosshead in an easily visible location and, where lubricants are to be used, shall carry the notation, "CONSULT MANUFACTURER OF THE SAFETY FOR THE CHARACTERISTICS OF THE RAIL LUBRICANT TO BE USED." If lubricants are not to be used, the plate shall so state.

If lubricants other than those recommended by the manufacturer are used, a safety test shall be made to demonstrate that the safety will function as required by 2.17.3.

SECTION 2.18 SPEED GOVERNORS

2.18.1 Speed Governors Required and Location

2.18.1.1 Counterweight safeties, where provided with rated speeds over 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), and car safeties shall be actuated by separate speed governors.

Where counterweight safeties are furnished to provide ascending car overspeed protection in accordance with 2.19.1.1, they shall be actuated by a counterweight speed governor (see 2.17.4).

2.18.1.2 The governor shall be located where it cannot be struck by the car or the counterweight in case of overtravel, and where there is adequate space for full movement of governor parts.

2.18.2 Tripping Speeds for Speed Governors

2.18.2.1 Car Speed Governors. Speed governors for car safeties shall be set to trip at car speeds as follows:

- (a) at not less than 115% of the rated speed.
- (b) at not more than the tripping speed listed opposite the applicable rated speed in Table 2.18.2.1. Maximum tripping speeds for intermediate rated speeds shall be determined from Figure 8.2.5. For rated speeds exceeding 10 m/s (2,000 ft/min), the maximum tripping speeds shall not exceed 120% of the rated speed.

2.18.2.2 Counterweight Speed Governors. Speed governors, where provided for counterweight safeties, shall be set to trip at an overspeed greater than that at which the car speed governor is to trip, but not more than 10% higher.

2.18.3 Sealing and Painting of Speed Governors

2.18.3.1 Speed governors shall have their means of speed adjustment sealed after test. If speed governors are painted after sealing, all bearing and rubbing surfaces

Table 2.18.2.1
Maximum Car Speeds at Which Speed Governor Trips and Governor Overspeed Switch Operates

SI Units			Imperial Units		
Rated Speed, m/s	Maximum Car Governor Trip Speed, m/s	Maximum Car Speed at Which Governor Overspeed Switch Operates, Down, m/s [Note (1)]	Rated Speed, ft/min	Maximum Car Governor Trip Speed, ft/min	Maximum Car Speed at Which Governor Overspeed Switch Operates, Down, ft/min [Note (1)]
0-0.63	0.90	0.90	0-125	175	175
0.75	1.05	1.05	150	210	210
0.87	1.25	1.13	175	250	225
1.00	1.40	1.26	200	280	252
1.12	1.55	1.40	225	308	277
1.25	1.70	1.53	250	337	303
1.50	2.00	1.80	300	395	355
1.75	2.30	2.07	350	452	407
2.00	2.55	2.30	400	510	459
2.25	2.90	2.61	450	568	512
2.50	3.15	2.84	500	625	563
3.00	3.70	3.52	600	740	703
3.50	4.30	4.09	700	855	812
4.00	4.85	4.61	800	970	921
4.50	5.50	5.23	900	1,085	1,031
5.00	6.00	5.70	1,000	1,200	1,140
5.50	6.60	6.27	1,100	1,320	1,254
6.00	7.20	6.84	1,200	1,440	1,368
6.50	7.80	7.41	1,300	1,560	1,482
7.00	8.40	7.98	1,400	1,680	1,596
7.50	9.00	8.55	1,500	1,800	1,710
8.00	9.60	9.12	1,600	1,920	1,824
8.50	10.20	9.69	1,700	2,040	1,938
9.00	10.80	10.26	1,800	2,160	2,052
9.50	11.40	10.83	1,900	2,280	2,166
10.00	12.00	11.40	2,000	2,400	2,280

NOTE: (1) See 2.18.4.2.5.

shall be kept free or freed of paint and a hand test made to determine that all parts operate freely as intended.

2.18.3.2 Where the rope retarding means provides for adjustment of the rope pull-through force (tension), means shall be provided to seal the means of adjustment of the rope tension.

2.18.3.3 Seals shall be a type that will prevent readjustment of the sealed governor adjustments without breaking the seal. Provision shall be made to enable affixing seals after tests.

2.18.4 Speed Governor Overspeed Switch

2.18.4.1 Where Required and Function

2.18.4.1.1 A switch shall be provided on every car and counterweight speed governor (see 2.26.2.10).

2.18.4.1.2 The switches required in 2.18.4.1.1 shall be positively opened and operated by the overspeed action of the governor, except that the counterweight governor switch shall be permitted to be operated upon activation of the counterweight governor-rope retarding means (see 2.18.6.1).

2.18.4.1.3 The switches required in 2.18.4.1.1 shall remain in the open position until they are manually reset.

NOTE: Manual reset includes means such as a finger-, hand-, or cable-actuated lever or cam or some form of electromechanical actuation from the location of the elevator controllers located outside the hoistway or the enclosure as specified in 2.7.6.5.

2.18.4.2 Setting of Car Speed Governor Overspeed Switches. The setting of the car speed governor overspeed switch shall conform to 2.18.4.2.1 through 2.18.4.2.5.

2.18.4.2.1 For rated speeds more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), up to and including 2.5 m/s (500 ft/min), the car speed governor overspeed switch shall open in the down direction of the elevator at not more than 90% of the speed at which the governor is set to trip in the down direction.

2.18.4.2.2 For rated speeds more than 2.5 m/s (500 ft/min), the car speed governor overspeed switch shall open in the down direction of the elevator at not more than 95% of the speed at which the governor is set to trip in the down direction.

2.18.4.2.3 For elevators with static control, the car speed governor overspeed switch shall open in the down direction of the elevator at not more than 90% of the speed at which the governor is set to trip in the down direction.

2.18.4.2.4 The switch, when set as specified in 2.18.4.2.1, 2.18.4.2.2, or 2.18.4.2.3, shall open in the up direction at not more than 100% of the speed at which the governor is set to trip in the down direction.

2.18.4.2.5 The speed governor overspeed switch shall be permitted to open in the down direction of the elevator at not more than 100% of the speed at which the governor is set to trip in the down direction, subject to the following requirements:

(a) A speed-reducing switch conforming to 2.18.4.1.3 is provided on the governor to reduce the speed of the elevator in case of overspeed. The switch shall be set to open as specified in 2.18.4.2.1, 2.18.4.2.2, or 2.18.4.2.3.

(b) Subsequent to the first stop of the car following the opening of the speed-reducing switch, the car shall remain inoperative until the switch is manually reset.

2.18.4.3 Setting of the Counterweight Governor Switch. Where the counterweight governor switch is operated by the overspeed action (see 2.18.2.2), the switch shall be set to open when the counterweight is descending at a speed greater than the elevator rated speed, but not more than the speed at which the counterweight governor is set to trip.

2.18.5 Governor Ropes

Governor ropes shall comply with the requirements of ASME A17.6, Part 1, and 2.18.5.1 through 2.18.5.3.

2.18.5.1 Material and Factor of Safety. Governor ropes shall be made of iron, steel, monel metal, phosphor bronze, or stainless steel. They shall be of a regular-lay construction and not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter. The factor of safety of governor ropes shall be not less than 5. Where provided, ropes of a diameter less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) shall have a factor of safety not less than 8 and shall be a six-, eight-, or nine-strand construction. Tiller-rope construction shall not be used.

2.18.5.2 Speed Governor Rope Clearance. During normal operation of the elevator, the governor rope shall run free and clear of the governor jaws, rope guards, or other stationary parts.

2.18.5.3 Governor-Rope Tag. A metal data tag shall be securely attached to the governor-rope fastening. This data tag shall bear the following wire rope data:

- (a) the diameter (in millimeters or inches)
- (b) the manufacturer's rated breaking strength
- (c) the grade of material used
- (d) the year and month the rope was installed
- (e) whether nonpreformed or preformed
- (f) construction classification
- (g) name of the person or organization who installed the rope
- (h) name or trademark by which the manufacturer of the rope can be identified

A new tag shall be installed at each rope renewal. The rope data tag shall comply with 8.13.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.).

2.18.6 Design of Governor-Rope Retarding Means for Type B Safeties

Type B car and counterweight safeties shall be activated by a speed governor with a governor-rope retarding means conforming to 2.18.6.1 through 2.18.6.5.

2.18.6.1 Upon activation at the tripping speeds given by 2.18.2, the means shall retard the rope with a force that is at least 67% greater than the force required to activate the safety or to trip the governor-rope releasing carrier, where used (see 2.17.15).

2.18.6.2 The means shall be set to allow the governor rope to slip through the speed governor at a rope tension (the governor pull-through tension) higher than required to activate the safety or to trip the releasing carrier as specified in 2.17.15. The factors of safety of the rope shall not be less than those required by 2.18.5.1.

2.18.6.3 The means shall be designed to prevent appreciable damage to, or deformation of, the governor rope resulting from its application (stopping action).

Table 2.18.7.4
Multiplier for Determining Governor Sheave Pitch Diameter

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Number of Strands	Multiplier
1.00 or less (200 or less)	6	42
	8 or 9	30
Over 1.00 (over 200)	6	46
	8 or 9	32

2.18.6.4 The means shall provide a continuous tension in the governor rope as required to operate the safety during the entire stopping interval in accordance with 2.17.5.2.

2.18.6.5 The governor shall be arranged to be manually tripped or activated to facilitate the tests specified in Sections 8.10 and 8.11.

NOTE: "Manually tripped or activated" includes means such as, but not limited to, a finger-, hand-, or cable-actuated lever or cam or some form of electromechanical actuation.

2.18.7 Design of Speed Governor Sheaves and Traction Between Speed Governor Rope and Sheave

2.18.7.1 The arc of contact between the governor rope and the governor sheave shall, in conjunction with a governor-rope tension device, provide sufficient traction to cause proper functioning of the governor.

2.18.7.2 Where jawless governors are used and where the force imparted to the governor rope (see 2.18.6.1) is necessary to activate the safety, including tripping the releasing carrier, if used, and is dependent on the tension in the governor rope, a switch or switches shall be provided that are mechanically opened by the governor tension sheave before the sheave reaches its upper or lower limit of travel. This switch(es) shall be the manually reset type and shall conform to 2.26.4.3. Subsequent to the first stop of the car following the opening of the switch, the car shall remain inoperative until the switch is manually reset.

2.18.7.3 Governor sheave grooves shall have machine-finished surfaces. Governor tension sheaves shall have machine-finished grooves for rated car speeds of more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). Machined governor sheave grooves shall have a groove diameter not more than 1.15 times the diameter of the governor rope.

2.18.7.4 Where governor ropes of a diameter of 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) or greater are used, the pitch diameter of governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves shall be not less than the product of the diameter of the rope and the applicable multiplier listed in

Table 2.18.7.4, based on the rated speed and the number of strands in the rope. Where governor ropes of a diameter less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) are used, the governor sheave shall have a pitch diameter not less than the product of the diameter of the rope and a multiplier of 30.

2.18.8 Factors of Safety in Load-Bearing Parts of Speed Governor

2.18.8.1 Material, except cast iron, used in load-bearing parts of speed governors shall have a factor of safety not less than 3.5, and the materials used shall have an elongation of not less than 15% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E8. Forged, cast, or welded parts shall be stress relieved. Cast iron shall have a factor of safety not less than 10.

2.18.8.2 The factors of safety shall be based on the maximum stresses developed in the parts during normal or governor tripping operation.

2.18.9 Speed Governor Marking Plate

A marking plate complying with 8.13.3 shall be securely attached to each speed governor and shall be marked with letters and figures not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height indicating the following:

- (a) the speed in meters per second (feet per minute) at which the governor is set and sealed to trip the governor-rope retarding means
- (b) the size, material, and construction of the governor rope on which the governor-rope retarding means were designed to operate
- (c) the governor pull-through tension (force) in newtons (pounds-force) (see 2.18.6.2)
- (d) manufacturer's name or trademark
- (e) statement "DO NOT LUBRICATE GOVERNOR ROPE"

SECTION 2.19 **ASCENDING CAR OVERSPEED AND UNINTENDED CAR MOVEMENT PROTECTION**

2.19.1 Ascending Car Overspeed Protection

2.19.1.1 Purpose. Ascending car overspeed protection (22) shall be provided to prevent the car from striking the hoistway overhead structure as a result of a failure in

- (a) the electric driving-machine motor, brake, coupling, gear shaft, or gearing
- (b) the control system
- (c) any other component on which the speed of the car depends, except

(1) the suspension ropes and the drive sheave of the traction machine

(2) the driving machine sheave shaft, provided that any failure of this sheave shaft does not result in ascending car overspeed

2.19.1.2 Where Required and Function. All electric traction elevators, except those whose empty car weight exceeds the total weight of the suspension ropes and counterweight, shall be provided with a device to prevent an ascending elevator from striking the hoistway overhead structure. This device (see 2.26.2.29) shall

(a) detect an ascending car overspeed condition at a speed not greater than 10% higher than the speed at which the car governor is set to trip (see 2.18.2.1).

(1) If the overspeed detection means requires electrical power for its functioning

(-a) a loss of electrical power to the ascending car overspeed detection and control means shall cause the immediate activation of the emergency brake as required in (b)

(-b) any of the following shall not render the detection means inoperative:

(-1) the occurrence of a single ground

(-2) the failure of any mechanically operated switch that does not meet the requirements of 2.26.4.3.1

(-3) the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay

(-4) the failure of any single solid-state device

(-5) the failure of a software system not conforming to 2.26.4.3.2

(2) The failure of any single mechanically operated switch that does not meet the requirements of 2.26.4.3 shall not render the detection means inoperative.

(3) When a fault specified in (1)(-b) or (2) is detected, the car shall stop at or before the next landing for which a demand was registered, and shall not be permitted to restart.

(4) Once actuated by overspeed, the overspeed detection means shall remain actuated until it is manually reset, and the car shall not start or run unless the detection means is reset.

(b) decelerate the car when loaded with any load up to its rated load [see 2.16.8(h)] by applying an emergency brake conforming to 2.19.3. The car shall not start or run unless the emergency brake is reset.

2.19.2 Unintended Car Movement Protection

(22) **2.19.2.1 Purpose.** Protection shall be provided with a means to detect unintended car movement (see Section 1.3) and to stop the car movement, as a result of failure in any of the following:

(a) electric driving-machine motor, brake, coupling, gear shaft, or gearing

(b) control system

(c) any other component on which intended car movement depends, except

(1) the suspension ropes and the drive sheave of the traction machine

(2) the driving machine sheave shaft, provided that any failure of this sheave shaft does not result in unintended car movement

2.19.2.2 Where Required and Function. All electric traction elevators shall be provided with a means (see 2.26.2.30) that shall

(a) detect unintended car movement in either direction away from the landing with the hoistway door not in the locked position and the car door or gate not in the closed position.

NOTE [2.19.2.2(a)]: Freight elevators provided with combination mechanical locks and contacts on the hoistway door shall detect the closed position of the hoistway door and the closed position of the car door or gate.

(1) If the detection means requires electrical power for its functioning, then

(-a) a loss of electrical power to the unintended movement detection and control means shall cause the immediate activation of the emergency brake as required in (b)

(-b) any of the following shall not render the detection means inoperative:

(-1) the occurrence of a single ground

(-2) the failure of any mechanically operated switch that does not meet the requirements of 2.26.4.3.1

(-3) the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay

(-4) the failure of any single solid-state device

(-5) the failure of a software system not conforming to 2.26.4.3.2

(2) The failure of any single mechanically operated switch that does not meet the requirements of 2.26.4.3 shall not render the detection means inoperative.

(3) When a fault specified in (1)(-b) or (2) is detected, the car shall stop at or before the next landing for which a demand was registered, and shall not be permitted to restart.

(4) Once actuated by unintended movement, the detection means shall remain actuated until it is manually reset, and the car shall not start or run unless the detection means is reset.

(b) upon detection of unintended car movement, stop and hold the car, with any load up to rated load [see also 2.16.8(h)], by applying an emergency brake conforming to 2.19.3. The stopped position of the car shall be limited in both directions, to a maximum of 1 220 mm (48 in.) as measured from the landing sill to the car sill. The car shall not start or run unless the emergency brake provided for the unintended movement protection is reset.

2.19.3 Emergency Brake (See **Nonmandatory Appendix F**)

2.19.3.1 Where Required

2.19.3.1.1 When required by 2.19.1 for protection against ascending car overspeed, an emergency brake (see Section 1.3) conforming to 2.19.3.2 shall be provided.

2.19.3.1.2 When required by 2.19.2 for protection against unintended car movement, an emergency brake (see Section 1.3) conforming to 2.19.3.2 shall be provided.

2.19.3.1.3 When required by 2.25.4.1.1 to reduce the car and counterweight speed such that the rated buffer striking speed is not exceeded, an emergency brake (see Section 1.3) conforming to 2.19.3.2 shall be provided.

2.19.3.1.4 A single device shall be permitted to meet the requirements of 2.19.3.1.1 through 2.19.3.1.3, or separate devices shall be provided.

2.19.3.2 Requirements. The emergency brake is permitted to consist of one or more devices and shall

(a) function to decelerate the car by acting on one or more of the following (see also 2.19.4):

(1) the counterweight [e.g., counterweight safety (see 2.17.4 and 2.17.7)].

(2) the car.

(3) the suspension or compensation means system.

(4) the drive sheave of a traction machine.

(5) the brake drum or braking surface of the driving-machine brake, provided that one or more of the following are met:

(-a) the driving-machine brake surface is integral (cast or welded) with the driving-machine sheave.

(-b) the driving-machine brake surface is directly attached to the driving-machine sheave.

(-c) the driving-machine brake acts directly on the driving-machine sheave or sheave shaft and is fully constrained mechanically in the direction of application of the braking torque so that the braking torque is transmitted to the driving sheave.

Attachments, where used, shall conform to 2.24.3 and 2.24.4.1. Welding, where used, shall conform to Section 8.8.

(b) be mechanically independent of the driving-machine brake [see also (a)(5)].

(c) not be used to provide, or assist in providing, the stopping of the car when on automatic operation, unless applied as required in 2.19.1, 2.19.2, and 2.25.4.1.1, or as permitted in (e) and (f).

(d) be permitted to be applied only after the car is stopped when on automatic operation, except as required in 2.19.1, 2.19.2, and 2.25.4.1.1.

(e) be permitted to be applied to a stationary or moving braking surface when any electrical protective device (2.26.2) is actuated.

(f) be permitted to be applied to a stationary or moving braking surface when on continuous-pressure operation (e.g., continuous-pressure Inspection Operation, Inspection Operation with open door circuits, or Hoistway Access Operation).

(g) not require the application of electrical power for its activation, nor be rendered inoperative by the failure of any power supply.

(h) not on its own cause the car average retardation to exceed 9.8 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) during the stopping or slow-down phase of ascending car overspeed.

(i) be designed so that the factors of safety based on the maximum stresses developed in the parts subject to load during the operation of the emergency brake shall comply with the following:

(1) Where an emergency brake is applied when protecting against either an ascending car overspeed condition or unintended car movement with the car and hoistway doors open, the minimum factors of safety, when applied during the retardation phase of emergency braking, shall be not less than those specified in 2.17.12.1.

(2) Where an emergency brake is applied as permitted in (d) through (f), the minimum factors of safety, when applied during normal or continuous-pressure operation, shall be not less than those specified in 2.24.3 except 2.24.3.2. Degradation of the emergency brake due to wear shall be considered.

(3) Where an emergency brake acts on the suspension or compensation means, both of the following shall be complied with:

(-a) the factor of safety with respect to the breaking strength of the suspension and compensation member shall be not less than 5 at any time during the retardation phase

(-b) the emergency brake shall be designed to prevent appreciable damage or deformation to the suspension and compensation member resulting from its activation

(j) be arranged to be tested in accordance with the requirements specified in 8.10.2.

(k) if the design of the emergency brake is such that field adjustment or servicing is required and the emergency brake acts on the brake drum or braking surface of the driving-machine brake, it shall be provided with a sign complying with 8.13.2 stating, "EMERGENCY BRAKE." The sign shall be located on the emergency brake at a location visible from the area likely to require service.

2.19.3.3 Marking Plate Requirements. The emergency (22) brake shall be provided with a marking plate complying with 8.13.3 indicating the manufacturer, the model number, and criteria that are critical to its performance, such as rail lubrication requirements.

2.19.4 Emergency Brake Supports

All components and structural members, including their fastenings, subjected to forces due to the application of the emergency brake shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of emergency braking so that the resulting stresses shall not exceed those permitted for the applicable type of equipment as follows:

- (a) machinery and sheave beams (see 2.9.6)
- (b) guide rails and their supports (see 2.23.5.3)
- (c) counterweight frames (see 2.21.2.3.3)
- (d) car frames (see 2.15.10.2)
- (e) machines, sheaves, and bedplates (see 2.24.3.2)

SECTION 2.20

SUSPENSION MEANS AND THEIR CONNECTIONS

2.20.1 Suspension Means

Elevator cars and counterweights shall be suspended by steel wire ropes, aramid fiber ropes, or noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension members attached to the car frame or passing around sheaves attached to the car frame specified in 2.15.1. Suspension means that have previously been installed and used on another installation shall not be reused. All suspension members in a set of suspension means shall be the same material, grade, construction, and dimensions. A suitable means shall be provided to protect the suspension means during the installation process.

Only the following shall be permitted:

- (a) steel wire ropes constructed in accordance with ASME A17.6, Part 1
- (b) aramid fiber ropes constructed in accordance with ASME A17.6, Part 2
- (c) noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension members constructed in accordance with ASME A17.6, Part 3

2.20.2 Suspension Means Data

2.20.2.1 On Crosshead Data Plate. The crosshead data plate complying with 8.13.1 shall bear the following suspension means data:

- (a) type of suspension means
- (b) the number of suspension members
- (c) either the diameter or the width and thickness in millimeters or inches, as applicable
- (d) the elevator manufacturer's required minimum breaking force per suspension member in kilonewtons or pounds-force, as applicable

2.20.2.2 Data Tag at Suspension Means Fastening

2.20.2.2.1 Pertinent data on a data tag complying with 8.13.3 located on the suspension means shall be provided by one of the following:

(a) A data tag securely attached to one of the suspension means fastenings.

(b) Permanent marking of the required information on the suspension means and visible in the vicinity of the suspension means fastening.

(c) A combination of (a) and (b), provided that all required information is furnished.

(d) If (a) or (c) applies, the material and marking of the tag shall comply with 8.13.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.).

(e) If (a) or (c) applies, a new tag shall be installed at each suspension means replacement.

2.20.2.2.2 The following data on a data tag complying with 8.13.3 shall be provided:

(a) type of suspension (steel wire rope, aramid fiber rope, or noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member)

(b) either the diameter or the width and thickness in millimeters or inches, as applicable

(c) the suspension means manufacturer's minimum breaking force in kilonewtons or pounds-force, as applicable

(d) the residual strength determined by the elevator manufacturer in kilonewtons or pounds-force, as applicable

(e) the grade of material used or the suspension means manufacturer's designation, as applicable

(f) construction classification, where applicable

(g) for steel wire rope, nonpreformed, if applicable

(h) for steel wire rope, finish coating, if applicable

(i) for steel wire rope, compacted strands, if applicable

(j) name or trademark of the suspension means manufacturer

(k) name of person or organization who installed the suspension means

(l) the month and year the suspension means were installed

(m) the month and year the suspension means were first shortened

(n) lubrication information, if applicable

2.20.3 Factor of Safety

The factor of safety of the suspension means shall be not less than shown in Table 2.20.3. Figure 8.2.7 gives the minimum factor of safety for intermediate speeds. The factor of safety shall be based on the actual speed of the suspension means corresponding to the rated speed of the car.

Where suspension means are different from traditional steel wire ropes, technical criteria for essential safety requirements and parameters, such as minimum factor of safety, monitoring, residual strength, and replacement, shall be selected on the basis of sound engineering practice compatible with the product technology, including

Table 2.20.3
Minimum Factors of Safety for Suspension Members

Suspension Member Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Minimum Factor of Safety	
	Passenger	Freight
0.25 (50)	7.60	6.65
0.37 (75)	7.75	6.85
0.50 (100)	7.97	7.00
0.62 (125)	8.10	7.15
0.75 (150)	8.25	7.30
0.87 (175)	8.40	7.45
1.00 (200)	8.60	7.65
1.12 (225)	8.75	7.75
1.25 (250)	8.90	7.90
1.50 (300)	9.20	8.20
1.75 (350)	9.50	8.45
2.00 (400)	9.75	8.70
2.25 (450)	10.00	8.90
2.50 (500)	10.25	9.15
2.75 (550)	10.45	9.30
3.00 (600)	10.70	9.50
3.25 (650)	10.85	9.65
3.50 (700)	11.00	9.80
3.75 (750)	11.15	9.90
4.00 (800)	11.25	10.00
4.25 (850)	11.35	10.10
4.50 (900)	11.45	10.15
4.75 (950)	11.50	10.20
5.00 (1,000)	11.55	10.30
5.25 (1,050)	11.65	10.35
5.50 (1,100)	11.70	10.40
5.75 (1,150)	11.75	10.45
6.00 (1,200)	11.80	10.50
6.25 (1,250)	11.80	10.50
6.50 (1,300)	11.85	10.55
6.75 (1,350)	11.85	10.55
7.00–10.00 (1,400–2,000)	11.90	10.55

performance testing under elevator operating conditions for its range of application.

The minimum factor of safety for any suspension means shall be not less than the values shown in Table 2.20.3 except that the factor of safety of steel wire suspension ropes with diameters equal to or greater than 8 mm (0.315 in.) but less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) shall be not less than 12 or they shall meet the requirements of 2.20.8.2. See also Nonmandatory Appendix U.

The factor of safety shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$f = \frac{S \times N}{W}$$

where

N = number of runs of suspension members under load. For 2:1 arrangements, N shall be 2 times the number of suspension members used, etc.

S = manufacturer's rated breaking force of one suspension member, kN (lbf)

W = maximum static load imposed on all suspension members with the car and its rated load at any position in the hoistway, kN (lbf)

2.20.4 Minimum Number and Diameter of Suspension Means

2.20.4.1 Steel Wire Ropes. The minimum number of suspension members used shall be three for traction elevators and two for drum-type elevators.

Where a car counterweight is used, the number of counterweight ropes used shall be not less than two.

The term "diameter," where used in reference to ropes, shall refer to the nominal diameter as given by the rope manufacturer.

The minimum diameter of hoisting and counterweight ropes shall be 4.0 mm (0.156 in.). Outer wires of steel wire ropes shall be not less than 0.21 mm (0.008 in.) in diameter.

2.20.4.2 Aramid Fiber Ropes. The minimum number of suspension members used shall be three. The term "diameter," where used in reference to ropes, shall refer to the nominal diameter as given by the rope manufacturer. Aramid fiber ropes shall not be used on drum machines.

2.20.4.3 Noncircular Elastomeric-Coated Steel Suspension Members. The minimum number of suspension members used shall be three. Noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension members shall not be used on drum machines.

2.20.5 Suspension Member Equalizers

2.20.5.1 Suspension member equalizers, where provided, shall be of the individual compression-spring type or shall meet the requirements of 2.20.5.3.

Springs in tension shall not be used to attach suspension members.

2.20.5.2 Single-bar-type equalizers shall be permitted only for winding-drum machines with two steel wire ropes, to attach the ropes to the dead-end hitch plate, provided it meets the requirements of 2.20.5.3.

2.20.5.3 Equalizers other than the individual compression-spring type shall be permitted, provided that their strength is established through tensile engineering tests. Such tests shall show the ultimate strength of the equalizers and their fastenings in their several parts and assembly to be not less than 10% in excess of the strength of the suspension members as required by 2.20.3.

2.20.6 Securing of Suspension Steel Wire Ropes to Winding Drums

Suspension steel wire ropes of winding-drum machines shall have the drum ends of the ropes secured on the inside of the drum by clamps.

Where the ropes extend beyond their clamps or sockets, means shall be provided to prevent the rope ends from coming out of the inside of the drum and to prevent interference with other parts of the machine.

2.20.7 Rope Turns on Winding Drums

Suspension wire ropes of winding-drum machines shall have not less than one full turn of the rope on the drum when the car is resting on the fully compressed buffers. Winding-drum machines shall not have multiple layers of suspension wire ropes.

(22) 2.20.8 Suspension Means Monitoring and Protection

2.20.8.1 Protection Against Traction Loss. All electric traction elevators shall be provided with a traction-loss detection means to detect loss of traction between suspension members and the drive sheave [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(4)]. This means shall

(a) be based on the type of suspension members and the application.

(b) detect relative motion [see 2.20.11, 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3), and 8.6.4.19.12] between the drive sheave and suspension members before any suspension member parts, and function in accordance with (c) in not greater than the smaller of the following:

(1) 45 s

(2) the time for traveling the full travel, plus 10 s, with a minimum of 20 s if the full travel is less than 10 s

NOTE [2.20.8.1(b)]: This relative motion between suspension members and drive sheave is independent of normal creep (see Section 1.3) of the suspension members. Compliance with the detection requirement can be accomplished by any

method that will determine the relative position of the suspension means with respect to the rotational position of the drive sheave. This can be accomplished by timers or position- and velocity-measuring devices, as an example.

(c) when actuated, cause the removal of electrical power from the driving-machine motor and brake. The means shall comply with the requirements of 2.26.4.4, 2.26.7, 2.26.8.3, 2.26.9.5.3, and 2.26.9.6.3. No single ground shall render the traction-loss detection means ineffective.

(d) once actuated by traction loss, comply with the following:

(1) The traction-loss detection means shall remain actuated until it is manually reset.

(2) The car shall not start or run unless the traction-loss detection means is manually reset [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(4) and 8.6.11.11].

(3) The manual-reset means shall be key-operated or behind a locked cover. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(4) The removal or restoration of main line power shall not reset the traction-loss detection means.

(e) be arranged to be tested in accordance with the requirements in 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3)(-c) and 8.6.4.19.12.

(f) be included in the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(4)] with sufficient detail to ensure that testing can be accomplished by elevator personnel.

2.20.8.2 Broken Suspension Member. All electric traction elevators, excluding those with steel wire ropes greater than or equal to 8 mm (0.315 in.), shall be provided with a broken-suspension-member detection means. The means shall

(a) operate at or before the separation of a suspension member

(b) when actuated, automatically function to

(1) prevent the elevator from automatically starting if stopped at a landing.

(2) stop the elevator at the next available landing.

(3) cause automatic power-operated doors to open and then initiate reclosing within 15 s when stopped at a landing. The door open button(s) shall remain operative and when released, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s.

(4) prevent a stopped elevator from restarting except on Hoistway Access Operation or Inspection Operation.

(c) be arranged to be tested in accordance with the requirements in 8.10.2.2.2(ss)(1), and instructions for testing shall be included in the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(4)] with sufficient detail to ensure that testing can be accomplished by elevator personnel

(d) remain actuated until it is manually reset

NOTE [2.20.8.2(d)]: This does not require the means itself to remain actuated, only that the elevator shall not be permitted to restart except on Hoistway Access Operation or Inspection Operation until a manual reset is performed.

2.20.8.3 Suspension Member Residual Strength. All electric traction elevators, excluding those with steel wire ropes, shall be provided with residual-strength detection means. The means shall

(a) operate before any suspension member is reduced in strength to 60% of its rated breaking force

(b) when actuated, except as specified in (e), automatically function to

(1) prevent the elevator from automatically starting if stopped at a landing.

(2) stop the elevator at the next available landing.

(3) cause automatic power-operated doors to open and then initiate reclosing within 15 s when stopped at a landing. The door open button(s) shall remain operative and when released, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s.

(4) prevent a stopped elevator at a landing from restarting except on Hoistway Access or Inspection Operation.

(c) be arranged to be tested in accordance with the requirements in 8.10.2.2.2(ss)(2), and instructions for testing shall be included in the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(4)] with sufficient detail to ensure that testing can be accomplished by elevator personnel

(d) remain actuated until it is manually reset

NOTE [2.20.8.3(d)]: This does not require the means itself to remain actuated, only that the elevator shall not be permitted to restart except on Hoistway Access Operation, Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation, Occupant Evacuation Operation, Earthquake Emergency Condition, Flood Detection Operation, or Inspection Operation until a manual reset is performed.

(e) be ineffective when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation, Occupant Evacuation Operation, operation of elevators under Earthquake Emergency Conditions (see 8.4.10), or Flood Detection Operation is initiated

2.20.9 Suspension Member Fastening

Both ends of all suspension members shall be fastened in such a manner that all portions of the individual suspension members, except the portion inside the sockets, shall be readily visible.

2.20.9.1 Types of Suspension Member Fastenings

2.20.9.1.1 Fastenings shall be (a), (b), or (c) and (d).

(a) Fastenings shall be by individual tapered member sockets conforming to 2.20.9.4 or other types of fastenings that have undergone adequate tensile engineering tests, provided that

(1) such fastenings conform to 2.20.9.2 and 2.20.9.3

(2) the member socketing shall be such as to develop at least 80% of the ultimate breaking strength (minimum breaking force) of the strongest member to be used in such fastenings

(b) They shall be by individual wedge rope sockets conforming to 2.20.9.5.

(c) They shall be by individual wedge noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member sockets conforming to 2.20.9.9.

(d) They shall be from the same manufacturer and type for any one dead-end hitch plate.

2.20.9.1.2 U-bolt-type rope clamps or similar devices shall not be used for suspension rope fastenings.

2.20.9.2 Adjustable Shackle Rods. The car ends, or the car or counterweight dead ends where multiple roping is used, of all suspension means of traction-type elevators shall be provided with shackle rods of a design that will permit individual adjustment of the suspension member lengths. Similar shackle rods shall be provided on the car or counterweight ends of compensation means.

2.20.9.3 General Design Requirements. Suspension means fastenings shall conform to 2.20.9.3.1 through 2.20.9.3.9.

2.20.9.3.1 The portion of the suspension means fastening that holds the suspension means socket and the shackle rod may be in one piece (unit construction), or they may be separate.

2.20.9.3.2 The socket shall be fabricated, cast, or forged steel, provided that where the socket and the shackle rod are in one piece (unit construction), the entire fastening shall be of forged steel.

2.20.9.3.3 Where the shackle rod and suspension means socket are not in one piece, the shackle rod shall be of forged or rolled steel having an elongation of not less than 20% in a gauge length of 50 mm (2 in.).

2.20.9.3.4 Cast or forged steel suspension means sockets, shackle rods, and their connections shall be made of unwelded steel having an elongation of not less than 20% in a gauge length of 50 mm (2 in.) when measured in accordance with ASTM E8, and conforming to ASTM A668, Class B for forged steel and ASTM A27, Grade 60/30 for cast steel, and shall be stress relieved. Steels of greater strength shall be permitted, provided they have an elongation of not less than 20% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.).

2.20.9.3.5 Fabricated sockets shall be permitted, provided that the following conditions are met:

(a) Socket components shall be of rolled steel construction having an elongation of not less than 20% in a gauge length of 50 mm (2 in.).

(b) The factor of safety of the weld and heat-affected zone shall not be less than 12.

(c) Welding shall be performed by welders qualified to 8.8.1.

(d) Welds shall conform to 8.8.2.

2.20.9.3.6 Where the shackle rod is separate from the socket, the fastening between the two parts shall be positive, and such as to prevent their separation under all conditions of operation of the elevator.

Where the connection of the two parts is threaded, the thread design, tolerance, and manufacture shall conform to the requirements of ASME B1.13M, M-6H/6g, or equivalent, coarse or fine threads (ASME B1.1, UNC or UNF Class 2A and Class 2B threads). The thread size and the length of the thread engagement of the rod in the socket shall be sufficient to ensure that the engaged members are aligned and that the strength requirements of 2.20.9.3.7 are met. In addition, means shall be provided to restrict the turning of the rod in the socket and prevent unscrewing of the connection in normal operation.

Eye bolts used as connections with clevis-type sockets shall be forged steel conforming to ASTM A668, Class B (heat treated), without welds.

2.20.9.3.7 Sockets shall be of such strength that the suspension member will break before the socket is materially deformed.

2.20.9.3.8 The shackle rod, eye bolt, or other means used to connect the suspension member socket to the car or counterweight shall have a strength at least equal to the manufacturer's minimum breaking force of the suspension member.

2.20.9.3.9 Fastenings incorporating antifricition devices that will permit free spinning of the suspension members shall not be used.

2.20.9.4 Tapered Rope Sockets. The use of tapered rope sockets shall be permitted only for steel wire ropes 8 mm ($\frac{5}{16}$ in.) or greater. When used, the tapered rope sockets shall be of a design as shown in Figure 2.20.9.4 and shall conform to 2.20.9.2, 2.20.9.3, and 2.20.9.4.1 through 2.20.9.4.5.

2.20.9.4.1 The axial length, L , of the tapered portion of the socket shall be not less than 4.75 times the diameter of the wire rope used.

2.20.9.4.2 The axial length, L' , of the open portion of the rope socket shall be not less than 4 times the diameter of the wire rope used.

2.20.9.4.3 The length of the straight bore, L'' , at the small end of the socket shall be not more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) nor less than 3 mm (0.125 in.), and its outer edge shall be rounded and free from cutting edges.

2.20.9.4.4 The diameter, d , of the hole at the large end of the tapered portion of the socket shall be not less than 2.25 times nor more than 3 times the diameter of the wire rope used.

2.20.9.4.5 The diameter, d' , of the hole at the end of the tapered portion of the socket shall be not more than shown in Table 2.20.9.4.5.

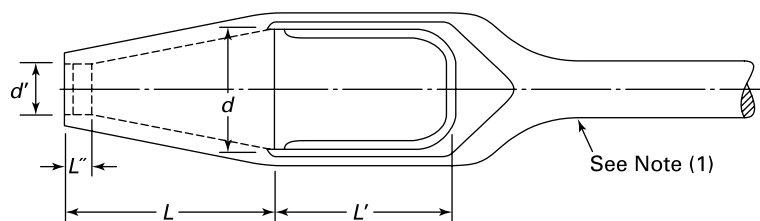
2.20.9.5 Wedge Rope Sockets. The use of wedge rope socket assemblies shall be permitted only for steel wire and aramid ropes. When used, the wedge rope socket assemblies shall be of a design as shown in Figure 2.20.9.5 and shall conform to 2.20.9.2, 2.20.9.3, and 2.20.9.5.1 through 2.20.9.5.7. Socket and wedge surfaces that contact the rope shall be free of burrs or sharp edges that could damage the rope.

2.20.9.5.1 A test specimen consisting of the strongest suspension rope for a given dimension and wedge socket assembly shall be subjected to a destructive tensile engineering test. The rope socketing shall develop at least 80% of the minimum breaking force of the strongest rope to be used in such a fastening without the rope slipping through the assembly.

2.20.9.5.2 Wedge socket assemblies shall be of such strength that when tested as in 2.20.9.5.1, the rope shall break before the socket or wedge is materially deformed.

2.20.9.5.3 Suppliers of wedge sockets shall submit certification showing that the sockets, with visible permanent manufacturer's identification, have successfully passed the tests described in 2.20.9.5.1 and 2.20.9.5.2 at a testing laboratory.

**Figure 2.20.9.4
Tapered Rope Sockets**



NOTE: (1) Rope socket and shackle rod may be in one piece, as shown (unit construction), or the socket and rod may be separate (see 2.20.9.3).

Table 2.20.9.4.5
Relation of Rope Diameter to Diameter of the Small Socket Hole

SI Units		Imperial Units	
Nominal Rope Diameter, mm	Maximum Diameter of Hole, d' , mm	Nominal Rope Diameter, in.	Maximum Diameter of Hole, d' , in.
8 to 12 inclusive	2.5 larger than nominal rope diameter	$\frac{5}{16}$ to $\frac{7}{16}$ inclusive	$\frac{3}{32}$ larger than nominal rope diameter
13 to 19 inclusive	3 larger than nominal rope diameter	$\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inclusive	$\frac{1}{8}$ larger than nominal rope diameter
22 to 29 inclusive	4 larger than nominal rope diameter	$\frac{7}{8}$ to $1\frac{1}{8}$ inclusive	$\frac{5}{32}$ larger than nominal rope diameter
32 to 40 inclusive	5 larger than nominal rope diameter	$1\frac{1}{4}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inclusive	$\frac{3}{16}$ larger than nominal rope diameter

2.20.9.5.4 When the steel wire rope has been seated in the wedge socket by the load on the rope, the wedge shall be visible, and at least two wire rope retaining clips shall be provided to attach the termination side to the load-carrying side of the rope (see Figure 2.20.9.5). The first clip shall be placed a maximum of 4 times the rope diameter above the socket, and the second clip shall be located within 8 times the rope diameter above the first clip. The purpose of the two clips is to retain the wedge and prevent the rope from slipping in the socket should the load on the rope be removed for any reason. The clips shall be designed and installed so that they do not distort or damage the rope in any manner.

2.20.9.5.5 Means shall be provided to prevent the aramid fiber rope from slipping in the socket should the load on the rope be removed for any reason.

2.20.9.5.6 Markings on the wedge socket assembly components shall be as follows:

(a) Each socket shall be permanently and legibly marked or color coded to identify the corresponding wedge, or wedges, and rope size and material to be used in the assembly. The markings shall be visible after installation.

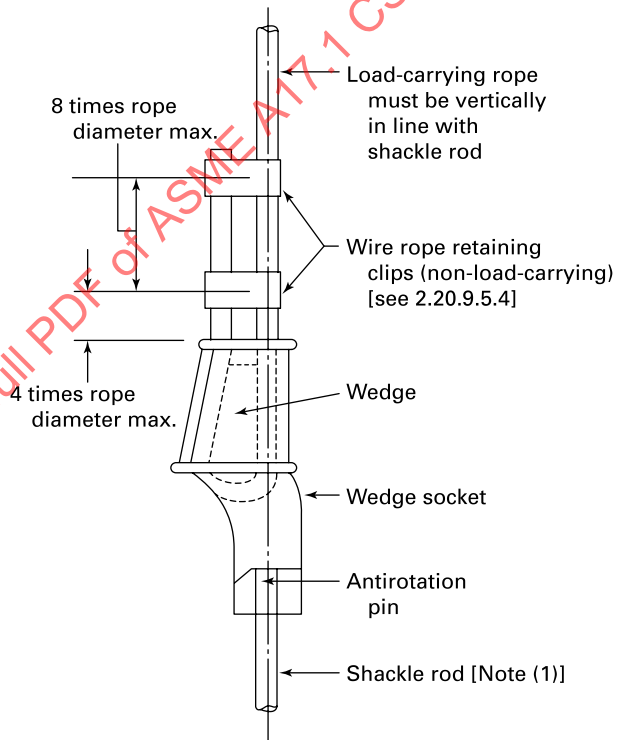
(b) Each wedge shall be permanently and legibly marked or color coded to identify the corresponding socket, or sockets, and rope size and material, within which it is to be inserted to form an assembly. The markings shall be visible after installation.

2.20.9.5.7 Load-carrying rope shall be in line with the shackle rod, and the sockets shall be permitted to be staggered in the direction of travel of the elevator and counterweight, where used.

2.20.9.6 Rope Socket Embedment Medium. Only babbitt metal or thermosetting resin compositions intended for elevator wire rope socketing shall be used to secure ropes in tapered sockets. The embedment material shall conform to 2.20.9.6.1 through 2.20.9.6.3.

2.20.9.6.1 Babbitt Metal. Babbitt metal shall contain at least 9% of antimony and shall be clean and free from dross.

Figure 2.20.9.5
Wedge Rope Sockets



NOTE: (1) Rope socket and shackle rod may be in one piece, as shown (unit construction), or the socket and rod may be separate (see 2.20.9.3).

2.20.9.6.2 Thermosetting Resin Composition

(a) *Physical Properties.* The thermoset resin composition shall have the following properties:

(1) *Uncured (Liquid) Material*

(-a) *Viscosity of Resin-Catalyst Mixture.* The viscosity of the resin-catalyst mixture shall be sufficiently low to permit rapid, complete saturation of the rope rosette in order to prevent entrapment of air.

(-b) *Flash Point.* All components shall have a minimum flash point of 27°C (80°F).

(-c) *Shelf Life.* All components shall have a minimum shelf life of 1 yr at 21°C (70°F).

(-d) *Pot Life and Cure Time.* After mixing, the resin-catalyst mixture shall be pourable for a minimum of 8 min at 21°C (70°F) and shall cure within 1 h after hardening. Heating of the resin mixture in the socket to accelerate curing shall follow the resin manufacturer's instructions.

(2) *Cured Resin*

(-a) *Socket Performance.* Resin, when cured, shall develop sufficient holding strength to solvent-washed wire in wire rope sockets to develop 80% of the ultimate strength of all types of elevator wire rope. No slippage of wire is permissible when testing resin-filled rope socket assemblies in tension; however, after testing, some seating of the resin cone shall be permitted to be apparent and is acceptable. Resin terminations shall also be capable of withstanding tensile shock loading.

(-b) *Shrinkage.* The volumetric shrinkage of fully cured resin shall not exceed 2%. The use of an inert filler in the resin is permissible.

(-c) *Curing.* The resin-catalyst mixture shall be capable of curing either at ambient [16°C to 38°C (60°F to 100°F)] or elevated temperatures. At temperatures below 16°C (60°F), an elevated-temperature cure shall be used.

(b) *Materials Required.* The thermoset resin composition intended for elevator wire rope socketing shall be supplied in two parts consisting of preweighed resin and preweighed catalyst, each packaged separately within a kit. Each kit containing the thermoset resin composition shall consist of the following:

- (1) preweighed thermoset resin
- (2) preweighed catalyst
- (3) necessary materials for mixing and pouring
- (4) detachable label on resin container

(c) *Marking of the Resin Container.* The label on the resin container shall show the following information:

- (1) product name
- (2) part designation (e.g., "Part A" or "Resin")
- (3) manufacturer's name or trademark and address
- (4) mixing instructions
- (5) ICC information
- (6) safety warnings and cautions
- (7) packaging date
- (8) flash point
- (9) shelf life
- (10) storage instructions
- (11) curing instructions
- (12) net weight
- (13) a statement certifying that the product conforms to 2.20.9.6.2 of ASME A17.1/CSA B44

2.20.9.6.3 Catalyst Container. The label on the catalyst container shall show the following information:

- (a) product name
- (b) part designation (e.g., "Part B," "Catalyst," or "Hardener")
- (c) manufacturer's name or trademark and address
- (d) safety warnings and cautions

- (e) flash point
- (f) storage instructions
- (g) net weight

2.20.9.7 Method of Securing Wire Ropes in Tapered Sockets. Where the tapered type of socket is used, the method and procedure to be followed in making up the fastening shall conform to 2.20.9.7.1 through 2.20.9.7.10, as applicable.

2.20.9.7.1 Handling. The rope to be socketed shall be carefully handled to prevent twisting, untwisting, or kinking.

2.20.9.7.2 Seizing of Rope Ends. The rope ends to be socketed shall be seized before cutting, with seizing in accordance with the following:

(a) The seizing shall be done with annealed iron wire, provided that other methods of seizing that give the same protection from loss of rope lay are permitted. Where iron wire is used for seizing, the length of each seizing shall be not less than the diameter of the rope.

(b) For nonpreformed rope, three seizings shall be made at each side of the cut in the rope. The first seizing shall be close to the cut end of the rope, and the second seizing shall be spaced back from the first the length of the end of the rope to be turned in. The third seizing shall be at a distance from the second equal to the length of the tapered portion of the socket.

(c) For preformed rope, one seizing shall be made at each side of the cut in the rope. The seizing shall be at a distance from the end of the rope equal to the length of the tapered portion of the socket plus the length of the portion of the rope to be turned in.

2.20.9.7.3 Spreading of Rope Strands. After the rope has been seized, it shall be inserted into the socket through the hole in the small end, a sufficient distance for manipulation, and where nonpreformed rope is used, the first two seizings shall be removed. The rope strands shall then be spread apart, and where rope with fiber core is used, the fiber core shall be cut away as close as possible to the remaining seizing.

2.20.9.7.4 Removal of Grease or Oil. Thorough cleaning of the outer wires of the strand surface and the inside of the rope socket is required for good adhesion. Brush or dip in clean solvents is recommended.

2.20.9.7.5 Turning in of Rope Strands. The exposed rope strands shall then be bent, turned in, and bunched closely together, each strand being turned back the same distance. The portion turned in (rope rosette) shall have a length not less than 2.5 times the diameter of the rope and such that, when the rope is pulled as far as possible into the socket, the bend of the turned-in strands shall be slightly overflush with the mouth of the tapered socket (large end) and will be visible when the socket has been completed (see 2.20.9.7.9). Where rope with steel core is used, the

steel core shall be cut off even with tops of the looped strands.

2.20.9.7.6 Insertion of Bent-In Rope Strands in Socket. The rope end shall be pulled as far as possible into the socket, so that the remaining seizing projects outside the hole at the small end of the socket.

2.20.9.7.7 Position of Socket Preparatory to Pouring Embedment Medium. The socket shall be held in a vertical position with the large end up, and the rope held in a position truly axial with the socket. Tape or waste shall be permitted to be wound around the rope at the small end of the socket to prevent the embedment medium from seeping through but shall be removed after completion of the socket.

2.20.9.7.8 Preparation of Embedment Medium

(a) Babbitt Metal

(1) Heating of Babbitt. The babbitt shall be heated to a fluidity just sufficient to char a piece of soft wood such as white pine without igniting it. Care shall be taken not to overheat the babbitt sufficiently to damage the rope.

(2) Heating of Socket Basket and Pouring of Babbitt. The rope socket basket shall be heated by a blowtorch flame sufficiently to prevent chilling of the babbitt and to ensure that the babbitt, when poured, will completely fill the basket, including all the spaces between the rope strands. Following this, the molten babbitt shall be poured slowly and evenly into the basket until it is filled to a point level with the top of the opening in the large end.

(b) Thermosetting Resin Composition

(1) The manufacturer's directions shall be strictly followed in handling, mixing, pouring, and curing the resin material.

(2) New containers of resin and catalyst shall be used for each set of rope sockets. The entire quantity of resin and catalyst shall be mixed when the containers are opened.

(3) Resin sockets shall not be poured at a temperature below 16°C (60°F) without first warming the socket and the resin composition to 21°C to 32°C (70°F to 90°F). The socket shall be permitted to be warmed using the electrical resistance heating devices intended for curing resin sockets.

(4) Curing of resin sockets shall be accomplished by heating at elevated temperature following the manufacturer's suggested schedule and directions. Cure time shall not exceed 30 min. Electrical resistance heating devices designed to fit around the sockets, or other means of providing controlled, evenly distributed heat, shall be used to provide the elevated temperature for curing. Open flames or exposed electrical resistance heating elements shall not be used.

(5) Upon completion of the socketing, the label from the container of resin shall be attached to one of the rope sockets for inspection purposes and shall be suitably protected.

2.20.9.7.9 Inspection of Sockets After Completion. A visual inspection of the completed sockets shall be made after they have cooled and the tape or waste has been removed from the small end of the sockets. The visual inspection shall verify that

(a) the embedment medium is visible at the small end of the socket

(b) the bends of all the individual rope strands (see 2.20.9.7.5) are approximately the same height above the embedment medium and are visible within the range of not less than one-half the diameter of the rope strand above the embedment medium and that there is not more than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) clearance between the embedment medium and the underside of the bend in the rope strand

(c) no loss of rope lay has occurred where the wire rope enters the socket

2.20.9.7.10 Lubrication of Wire Rope After Socket Attachment. After the resin has cured, the wire ropes shall be lubricated at the base of the socket (small end) to replace the lubricant that was removed during the cleaning operation required under 2.20.9.7.4.

2.20.9.8 Antirotation Devices. Where rotation of suspension members can occur, means shall be provided to prevent the rotation of the suspension members without restricting their movement horizontally or vertically.

2.20.9.9 Wedge Noncircular Elastomeric-Coated Steel Suspension Member Sockets. Wedge socket assemblies for noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension members shall conform to 2.20.9.2, 2.20.9.3, and 2.20.9.9.1 through 2.20.9.9.5.

2.20.9.9.1 A test specimen consisting of the strongest noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member for given noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member dimensions and wedge socket assembly shall be subjected to a destructive tensile engineering test. The noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member socket shall develop at least 80% of the manufacturer's minimum breaking force of the strongest noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member to be used in such a fastening without the noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member slipping through the assembly.

2.20.9.9.2 Wedge noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member socket assemblies shall be of such a strength that when tested as in 2.20.9.9.1, the noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension

member shall break before the socket or wedge is materially deformed.

2.20.9.9.3 Suppliers of noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member wedge sockets shall submit certification showing that the sockets, with visible permanent manufacturer's identification, have successfully passed the tests described in 2.20.9.9.1 and 2.20.9.9.2 at a testing laboratory.

2.20.9.9.4 When the noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member has been seated in the wedge socket by the load on the noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member, the wedge shall be visible and the end of the noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member shall be prevented from slipping in the socket should the load on the noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member be removed for any reason.

2.20.9.9.5 Markings on the wedge socket assembly components shall be as follows:

(a) Each socket shall be permanently and legibly marked or color coded to identify the noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member size to be used in the assembly. The markings shall be visible after installation.

(b) Each wedge shall be permanently and legibly marked or color coded to identify the corresponding socket or sockets and noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member size within which it is to be inserted to form an assembly. The markings shall be visible after installation.

2.20.10 Auxiliary Rope Fastening Devices

Auxiliary rope fastening devices, designed to support elevator cars or counterweights if any regular rope fastening fails, shall be permitted to be provided, subject to the requirements of 2.20.10.1 through 2.20.10.9.

2.20.10.1 Auxiliary rope fastening devices shall be approved on the basis of adequate tensile and fatigue engineering tests.

2.20.10.2 The auxiliary rope fastening device and its fastenings, in its several parts and assembly, shall have a strength at least equal to that of the manufacturer's breaking strength of the rope to which it is to be attached.

2.20.10.3 Steel parts used in the auxiliary rope fastening device shall be cast or forged with an elongation of not less than 20%, conforming to ASTM A668, Class B for forgings and ASTM A27, Grade 60/30 for cast steel, and shall be stress relieved.

2.20.10.4 The auxiliary rope fastening device shall be designed and installed so that

(a) it will not become operative unless there is a failure of the normal rope fastening

(b) it will function in a rope movement of not over 38 mm (1.5 in.)

(c) it will not interfere with the vertical or rotational movements of the rope during normal service

2.20.10.5 Means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake when any auxiliary fastening device operates. Such means shall

(a) have all electrical parts enclosed

(b) be of the manually reset type that can be reset only when the wire rope or ropes have been resocketed and the auxiliary rope fastening device has been restored to its normal running position

2.20.10.6 The method used to attach the auxiliary rope fastening device to the rope shall prevent injury to, or appreciable deformation of, the rope.

2.20.10.7 The installation of the auxiliary rope fastening device shall not reduce the required overhead clearances.

2.20.10.8 The car-frame supports for the fastening members of the auxiliary rope fastening device shall conform to 2.15.13 or, where existing conditions will not permit compliance with this requirement, other means of fastening shall be permitted to be used subject to the approval of the enforcing authority.

2.20.10.9 Each auxiliary rope fastening device shall be marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer by means of tags or plates complying with 8.13.1 with the following data of the wire rope for which they are designated to be used:

(a) diameter of the rope in millimeters or inches

(b) manufacturer's rated breaking strength of the rope

(c) construction classification of the wire rope

The height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.).

2.20.11 Suspension Member Test

Each type of suspension means designed to support elevator cars or counterweights shall be subjected to the engineering tests specified in 8.3.12 except suspension means conforming to the following:

(a) steel wire ropes conforming to the requirements of 5.2.1.20, 5.3.1.13, 5.4.8, 7.2.6, and 7.5.6

(b) steel wire ropes conforming to the requirements of Section 2.20 with diameters 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) and greater with outer wire diameters not less than 0.56 mm (0.024 in.)

(c) steel wire ropes conforming to the requirements of Section 2.20 with diameters not less than 8.0 mm (0.315 in.) and outer wire diameters not less than 0.48 mm (0.019 in.)

in.) when used with a safety factor not less than 12, per 2.20.3

SECTION 2.21 COUNTERWEIGHTS

2.21.1 General Requirements

2.21.1.1 Frames. Weight sections of a counterweight shall be mounted in structural or formed metal frames designed to retain them securely in place (see 2.21.2.6).

2.21.1.2 Retention of Weight Sections. Means shall be provided to retain weight sections in place in the event of buffer engagement or safety application or if they become broken.

Where tie-rods are used, a minimum of two shall be provided, which shall pass through all weight sections. Tie-rods shall be provided with a locknut and cotter pin at each end.

2.21.1.3 Guiding Means

2.21.1.3.1 Counterweight frames shall be guided on each guide rail by upper and lower guiding members attached to the frame. Guiding members shall be designed to withstand the forces imposed during normal operation of the elevator, loading and unloading, emergency stopping, and the application of safeties.

2.21.1.3.2 Means shall be provided to prevent the counterweight from being displaced by more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) from its normal running position.

This protection shall be provided by either of the following:

(a) a guiding means wherein no failure or wear of the guiding member shall allow the counterweight to be displaced more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) from its normal running position

(b) a retention means that shall be permitted to be integral with the guiding means

2.21.1.3.3 All components of the means required to limit the displacement in accordance with 2.21.1.3.2 shall have a minimum factor of safety of 5.

2.21.1.4 Independent Car Counterweights. Where an independent car counterweight is provided, it shall run in separate guide rails and shall not be sufficient weight to cause undue slackening of the hoisting ropes during acceleration or retardation of the elevator car.

2.21.2 Design Requirements for Frames and Rods

2.21.2.1 Material. Frames and rods shall be made of steel or other metals conforming to 2.15.6.2 and 2.15.6.3, provided that where steels of greater strength than those specified, or where metals other than steel, are used, the factor of safety used in the design shall conform to 2.21.2.3.

2.21.2.2 Frame Connections. Connections between frame members shall conform to 2.15.7.

2.21.2.3 Factor of Safety

2.21.2.3.1 The frame members and their connections shall be designed with a factor of safety not less than 5 with the elevator at rest and the counterweight at the top of its travel.

2.21.2.3.2 The counterweight frame shall be designed with a factor of safety not less than 2.5 at buffer engagement or safety application.

2.21.2.3.3 The frame members, brackets, and their connections subject to forces due to the application of the emergency brake (see 2.19.4) shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of the emergency braking so that the resulting stresses due to the emergency braking and all other loading acting simultaneously, if applicable, shall not exceed 190 MPa (27,500 psi).

2.21.2.4 Sheaves. Where a hoisting sheave or sheaves are mounted in the frame, the requirements of 2.15.12 shall apply (see also 2.24.2 and 2.24.3 for requirements for sheaves).

2.21.2.5 Suspension Rope Hitch or Shapes. Where counterweights are suspended by ropes attached directly to the frames by means of rope fastenings, the rope attachments shall conform to 2.15.13.

2.21.2.6 Securing of Weights in Frames. The weights shall be mounted and secured in the frames to prevent shifting of the weights by an amount that will reduce the running clearances to less than those specified in 2.5.1.2.

2.21.3 Cars Counterbalancing One Another

An elevator car shall not be used to counterbalance another elevator car.

2.21.4 Compensation Means

Compensation means, such as compensating ropes or chains or other mechanical means and their attachments (except for safety hooks, where used) to tie the counterweight and car together, shall be capable of withstanding, with a factor of safety of 5, any forces to which the means is subjected with the elevator at rest.

The maximum suspended weight of the compensation means with the car or counterweight at the top of its travel and one-half of the total weight of the tension sheave assembly, where used, shall be included.

The factor of safety for compensation means shall be based on the minimum, breaking load, or breaking force as appropriate to the tensile testing method.

2.21.4.1 Connections. A connection shall be provided between the car or counterweight and the compensation means. The connection shall be bolted or welded and shall conform to 2.15.7.3.

2.21.4.1.1 Cast iron, where used, shall have a factor of safety not less than 10, based on maximum stress developed.

2.21.4.1.2 When compensation ropes are used with a tension sheave, one end of each rope shall be provided with a means to individually adjust rope length.

2.21.4.2 Tie-Down Compensation Means. For rated speeds greater than 3.5 m/s (700 ft/min), a tie-down compensation means shall be provided and fastened to the building structure to limit the jump of the car or counterweight as a result of car or counterweight buffer engagement or safety application.

The compensation means, connection, building structural members, and fastenings shall be capable of withstanding the maximum forces to which they are subjected due to car or counterweight buffer engagement or safety application with a factor of safety not less than 2.5.

SECTION 2.22 BUFFERS AND BUMPERS

2.22.1 Type and Location

2.22.1.1 Type of Buffers. Buffers of the spring, oil, elastomeric, or equivalent type shall be installed under the cars and counterweights of passenger and freight elevators subject to the requirements of 2.22.1.1.1 through 2.22.1.1.5. Buffers shall be designed in accordance with sound engineering practice.

2.22.1.1.1 Spring buffers or their equivalent shall be permitted to be used where the rated speed is not in excess of 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

2.22.1.1.2 Oil buffers or their equivalent shall be used where the rated speed is in excess of 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

2.22.1.1.3 Where Type C safeties are used (see 2.17.8.2), car buffers are not required if solid bumpers are installed.

2.22.1.1.4 Elastomeric buffers shall be permitted to be used where the rated speed is not in excess of 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

2.22.1.1.5 The use of elastomeric buffers shall comply with all conditions of use as specified by the buffer manufacturer. Such conditions may include, but are not limited to, temperature, humidity, or other environmental and life-cycle conditions that may affect buffer performance.

2.22.1.1.6 Elastomeric buffers shall be securely fastened to their support structures.

2.22.1.2 Location. Buffers or bumpers shall be located so as to retard the car and counterweight without exceeding allowable design stresses in the car frame and counterweight frame.

2.22.2 Solid Bumpers

Solid bumpers, where permitted, shall be made of wood or other suitably resilient material of sufficient strength to withstand without failure the impact of the car with rated load, or the counterweight, descending at governor tripping speed. Solid bumpers are permitted on elevators having a rated speed of 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min) or less.

The material used shall be a type that will resist deterioration or be treated to resist deterioration.

2.22.3 Spring Buffers

2.22.3.1 Stroke. The stroke of the buffer spring, as marked on its marking plate complying with 2.22.3.3, shall be equal to or greater than the value specified in Table 2.22.3.1.

2.22.3.2 Load Rating

2.22.3.2.1 Buffers for cars and counterweights shall be capable of supporting, without being compressed solid or to a fixed stop, a static load having a minimum of 2 times the total weight of

- (a) the car and its rated load for car buffers
- (b) the counterweight for counterweight buffers

2.22.3.2.2 Buffers for cars and counterweights shall be compressed solid or to a fixed stop with a static load of 3 times the weight of

- (a) the car and its rated load for car buffers
- (b) the counterweight for counterweight buffers

2.22.3.2.3 Where the space below the hoistway is not permanently secured against access, the load rating specified in 2.22.3.2.1 shall be increased to meet the requirements of 2.6.1(b) and 2.6.2.

2.22.3.3 Marking Plates. Each spring buffer shall be provided with a marking plate complying with 8.13.3 showing its load rating and stroke and the number of springs. Where the springs are removable, each spring

**Table 2.22.3.1
Minimum Spring Buffer Strokes**

Rated Car Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Minimum Stroke, mm (in.)
0.5 or less (100 or less)	38 (1.5)
0.51 to 0.75 (101 to 150)	63 (2.5)
0.76 to 1.00 (151 to 200)	100 (4.0)

shall be identified, and the assembly marking plate shall indicate this identification.

2.22.4 Oil Buffers

2.22.4.1 Stroke. The minimum stroke of oil buffers shall be based on the requirements of 2.22.4.1.1 or 2.22.4.1.2. See also Table 2.22.4.1.

2.22.4.1.1 The stroke shall be such that the car or the counterweight, on striking the buffer at 115% of the rated speed, shall be brought to rest with an average retardation of not more than 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2).

2.22.4.1.2 Where a terminal speed-reducing device is installed that conforms to 2.25.4.1 and that will limit the speed at which the car or counterweight can strike its buffer, the buffer stroke shall be based on at least 115% of such reduced striking speed and on an average retardation not exceeding 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2). In no case shall the stroke used be less than 50% of the stroke required by 2.22.4.1.1 for rated speeds under 4 m/s (800 ft/min), nor less than $33\frac{1}{3}\%$ or 450 mm (18 in.), whichever is greater, for rated speeds of 4 m/s (800 ft/min) or more.

NOTE (2.22.4.1): Figure 8.2.4 indicates the minimum buffer strokes for various initial velocities. Table 2.22.4.1 indicates the minimum buffer strokes for the most usual rated speeds. See 8.2.4 for the formula for calculation of buffer strokes differing from or exceeding those listed in Table 2.22.4.1.

2.22.4.2 Retardation. Oil buffers shall develop an average retardation not in excess of 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) and shall develop no peak retardation greater than 24.5 m/s^2 (80.5 ft/s^2), having a duration exceeding 0.04 s with any load in the car, from rated load to a minimum load of 70 kg (154 lb), when the buffers are struck with an initial speed of not more than

(a) 115% of the rated speed for buffers conforming to 2.22.4.1.1

(b) 115% of the predetermined reduced speed for buffers conforming to 2.22.4.1.2

2.22.4.3 Factor of Safety for Oil-Buffer Parts. The factor of safety of parts of oil buffers, based on the yield point for compression members and on the ultimate strength and elongation for other parts, at gravity retardation with the maximum load for which the buffer is designed, when tested in accordance with ASTM E8 using a 50 mm (2 in.) gauge length, shall be not less than

(a) 3 for materials having an elongation of 20% or more

(b) 3.5 for materials having an elongation from 15% to 20%

(c) 4 for materials having an elongation from 10% to 15%

(d) 5 for materials having an elongation of less than 10%

(e) 10 for cast iron parts

2.22.4.4 Slenderness Ratio for Members Under Compression as Columns. The slenderness ratio (L/R) for members of oil buffers under compression as columns shall be not more than 80.

The slenderness ratio (L/R) specified applies only to those main buffer members that are subject to the impact of the fully loaded car when striking the buffer.

2.22.4.5 Plunger Requirements

2.22.4.5.1 Plunger Return Requirements. Oil buffers shall be designed so that

(a) the buffer plunger of gravity-return- and spring-return-type oil buffers, when the buffer is filled with oil, shall, when released after full compression, return to its fully extended position within 90 s

(b) the plunger of a spring-return-type oil buffer with a 20 kg (44 lb) weight resting on it shall, when released after being depressed 50 mm (2 in.), return to the fully extended position within 30 s

(c) gas spring-return oil buffers shall be provided with a switch conforming to 2.26.2.22 that shall be actuated if the plunger is not within 13 mm (0.5 in.) of the fully extended position

2.22.4.5.2 Plunger Lateral Movement Requirements. The clearance between the plunger and the cylinder in spring-return- or gravity-return-type oil buffers shall be limited and the materials and surface finishes specified and controlled to ensure that the plunger will not seize or stick in the cylinder during or after an impact of the fully loaded car on the buffer at 115% of rated speed. In addition, the clearance shall be limited to ensure that one-half of the total lateral movement of the plunger relative to the cylinder shall not exceed 5 mm/m (0.06 in./ft) of buffer stroke. This corresponds to a maximum angle of inclination from the vertical of 0.005 rad (17.18 min of arc).

2.22.4.6 Means for Determining Oil Level. Oil buffers shall be provided with means for determining that the oil level is within the maximum and minimum allowable limits. Transparent sight gauges shall be permitted to be used, provided they meet the requirements for the purpose in accordance with good engineering practice. They shall resist shock loading on the buffer or pressure rise as a result of impact, and shall not be stained by the presence of buffer oil, or a means shall be provided to ensure that any staining does not affect the reading of the oil level.

2.22.4.7 Type Tests and Certification for Oil Buffers

2.22.4.7.1 Each type of oil buffer shall be subjected to the type tests specified in 8.3.2 and to the certification process specified in 8.3.1.

Table 2.22.4.1
Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes

SI Units			Imperial Units		
Rated Speed, m/s	115% of Rated Speed, m/s	Minimum Stroke, mm	Rated Speed, ft/min	115% of Rated Speed, ft/min	Minimum Stroke, in.
1.00	1.15	65	200	230	2.75
1.12	1.29	85	225	259	3.50
1.25	1.44	105	250	288	4.25
1.50	1.73	155	300	345	6.25
1.75	2.01	205	350	403	8.25
2.00	2.30	270	400	460	11.00
2.25	2.59	340	450	518	13.75
2.50	2.88	425	500	575	17.00
3.00	3.45	605	600	690	24.75
3.50	4.03	825	700	805	33.25
4.00	4.60	1080	800	920	43.75
4.50	5.18	1365	900	1,035	55.50
5.00	5.75	1685	1,000	1,150	68.50
5.50	6.32	2040	1,100	1,265	83.00
6.00	6.90	2425	1,200	1,380	98.50
6.50	7.48	2845	1,300	1,495	115.50
7.00	8.05	3300	1,400	1,610	134.50
7.50	8.63	3790	1,500	1,725	154.00
8.00	9.20	4310	1,600	1,840	175.25
8.50	9.78	4870	1,700	1,955	197.75
9.00	10.35	5460	1,800	2,070	221.75
9.50	10.93	6080	1,900	2,185	247.00
10.00	11.50	6740	2,000	2,300	273.75

2.22.4.7.2 A type test on an oil buffer shall be permitted to be acceptable for similarly designed buffers, provided that the longest stroke of the type is subjected to the type test and the load range of the buffer is within the maximum and minimum range for the oil portings of the given buffer.

2.22.4.7.3 Oil buffers tested in accordance with the test requirements of prior editions of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 shall be acceptable without being retested, provided the buffer has been listed/certified to a previous edition of the Code or on submittal by the person or organization installing the buffers of the test certificate stating that the buffer, when tested, met the specified test requirements of that edition of the Code.

2.22.4.8 Compression of Buffers When Car Is Level With Terminal Landings. Car and counterweight oil buffers of the mechanical spring-return type shall be permitted to be compressed not to exceed 25% of their stroke when the car is level with the terminal landings (see 2.4.2.1(b)).

2.22.4.9 Buffer Oil Requirements. Oils used in oil buffers shall have a pour point of -18°C (0°F), or lower, as defined in ASTM D97, and a viscosity index of 75, or higher, as defined in ASTM D2270.

2.22.4.10 Load Ratings of Oil Buffers. The minimum and maximum load ratings of car and counterweight oil buffers, as indicated on the buffer marking plate conforming to 2.22.4.11, shall conform to 2.22.4.10.1 through 2.22.4.10.3.

2.22.4.10.1 The minimum load rating shall be not greater than

(a) for car oil buffers, the total weight of the car as marked on the car crosshead data plate plus 70 kg (150 lb)

(b) for counterweight oil buffers, the weight of the counterweight used

2.22.4.10.2 The maximum load rating shall be not less than

(a) for car oil buffers, the total weight of the car as marked on the crosshead data plate plus the rated load

(b) for counterweight oil buffers, the weight of the counterweight used

2.22.4.10.3 When compensating-rope tie-down is present, the increase in load shall be taken into account (see 2.21.4.2).

2.22.4.11 Buffer Data Plate. Every installed oil buffer shall have permanently attached thereto a data plate complying with 8.13.1, marked by the manufacturer indicating

(a) the maximum and minimum loads and the maximum striking speeds for which the buffer has been rated for use in conformance with the requirements in Section 2.22

(b) the permissible range in viscosity of the buffer oil to be used, stated in Saybolt Seconds Universal at 38°C (100°F)

(c) the viscosity index number of the oil to be used

(d) the pour point in degrees Celsius (Fahrenheit) of the oil to be used

(e) the stroke of the buffer in millimeters (inches)

(f) the composition of the gas, if used

(g) the name, trademark, or file number by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified

(h) the certification marking in accordance with 8.3.1.3

2.22.5 Elastomeric Buffers

2.22.5.1 Retardation. Buffers shall not develop the following:

(a) an average retardation in excess of 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2)

(b) a retardation greater than 24.5 m/s^2 (80.5 ft/s^2), having a duration exceeding 0.04 s with any load in the car, from rated load to a minimum load of 70 kg (154 lb), when the buffers are struck with an initial speed of not more than 115% of the rated speed

2.22.5.2 Return Speed. Upon activation (compression) of the buffer, the return speed of the car or counterweight shall not exceed 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

2.22.5.3 Deformation. There shall be no permanent deformation of the buffer after actuation, and the buffer shall return back to its uncompressed state within 30 min.

2.22.5.4 Full Compression. For elastomeric buffers, “full compression” means a compression of 90% of the installed buffer height without considering fixation elements of the buffer that might limit the compression to a lower value.

2.22.5.5 Type Tests and Certification for Elastomeric Buffers. Each type of elastomeric buffer shall be subjected to the type tests as specified in 8.3.13 and to the certification process as specified in 8.3.1.

2.22.5.6 Buffer Marking Plate. Elastomeric buffers shall be provided with a marking plate. The buffer marking plate shall include the following data provided in a legible and permanent manner:

(a) the maximum and minimum loads and the maximum striking speeds for which the buffer has been rated for use in conformance with the requirements in Section 2.22

(b) the name, trademark, or file number by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified

(c) the certification marking in accordance with 8.3.13.7

(d) specific conditions of use (where applicable) for elastomeric buffers (see 2.22.1.1.5)

(e) the maximum stroke (compression) of the buffer

SECTION 2.23

CAR AND COUNTERWEIGHT GUIDE RAILS, GUIDE-RAIL SUPPORTS, AND FASTENINGS

2.23.1 Guide Rails Required

Elevator cars and counterweights shall be provided with guide rails.

2.23.2 Material

Guide rails, guide-rail brackets, rail clips, fishplates, and their fastenings shall be either of the following:

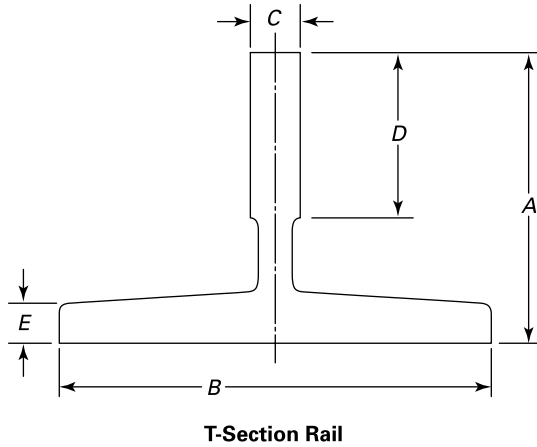
(a) of steel or other metals conforming to Section 2.23

(b) where steel presents an accident hazard, as in chemical or explosive plants, guide rails shall be permitted to be of selected wood or other suitable nonmetallic materials, provided the rated speed of the car does not exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min)

2.23.2.1 Requirements for Steel, Where Used

(a) Rails, brackets, fishplates, and rail clips shall be made of open-hearth steel, or its equivalent, having a tensile strength not less than 380 MPa (55,000 psi) and having an elongation of not less than 22% in a

Figure 2.23.3
Elevator Guide Rails



length of 50 mm (2 in.) when measured in accordance with ASTM E8.

- (b) Bolts shall conform to ASTM A307.
- (c) Rivets shall conform to ASTM A502.
- (d) Maximum permissible stresses and deflections shall conform to 2.23.5.

2.23.2.2 Requirements for Metals Other Than Steel.

Metals other than steel shall be permitted to be used, provided the factor of safety is not less than, and the deflections are not more than, the values specified in this Section, and provided that cast iron is not used.

2.23.3 Rail Section

Guide rails shall be either of the following:

(a) T-section, conforming to the nominal weights and dimensions shown in Figure 2.23.3 and Table 2.23.3

(b) other shapes, subject to the following requirements:

- (1) They shall have a section modulus and moment of inertia equal to or greater than that of the section shown in Figure 2.23.3 for a given loading condition.
- (2) They shall have a sectional area sufficient to withstand the compressive forces resulting from the application of the car or counterweight safety device, if used.

2.23.4 Maximum Load on Rails in Relation to the Bracket Spacing

The maximum load on guide rails in relation to the bracket spacing shall conform to 2.23.4.1 through 2.23.4.3. In addition to the loads specified therein, any static and dynamic loads imposed by the support of machines, sheaves, and hitches, if any, on one or more guide rails shall be taken into account in determining rail size and bracket spacing.

The combination of all vertical loads on any single guide rail shall not exceed one-half of the values specified in Figure 2.23.4.1-1 in relation to the bracket spacing. This load requirement is not intended to limit design, and more detailed design and calculation methods shall be permitted to be used, provided that the moments and vertical loads induced into the rail system are taken into account in the calculations.

EXAMPLES (2.23.4):

- (1) *SI Units.* For 2 750 kg total weight of car plus load and a 2 150 kg counterweight, both roped 2:1; 90 kg suspension weight, 70 kg compensation weight, 20 kg traveling cable weight, and a machine weight of 360 kg; and with the machine supported in the overhead by one guide rail; the impacted reaction on that guide rail due to the machine loading is 2 750 kg + 2 150 kg + 90 kg + 70 kg + 20 kg + 360 kg =

Table 2.23.3
T-Section Guide-Rail Dimensions

SI Units						Imperial Units					
Nominal Mass, kg/m	Nominal Dimensions, mm					Nominal Weight, lb/ft	Nominal Dimensions, in.				
	A	B	C	D	E		A	B	C	D	E
8.5	68.3	82.6	9.1	25.4	6.0	5 ³ / ₄	2 ¹¹ / ₁₆	3 ¹ / ₄	2 ³ / ₆₄	1	1 ⁵ / ₆₄
9.5	49.2	69.9	15.9	25.4	7.9	6 ¹ / ₄	1 ¹⁵ / ₁₆	2 ³ / ₄	5 ⁵ / ₈	1	5 ⁵ / ₁₆
12.0	61.9	88.9	15.9	31.8	7.9	8	2 ⁷ / ₁₆	3 ¹ / ₂	5 ⁵ / ₈	1 ¹ / ₄	5 ⁵ / ₁₆
16.5	88.9	114.3	15.9	38.1	7.9	11	3 ¹ / ₂	4 ¹ / ₂	5 ⁵ / ₈	1 ¹ / ₂	5 ⁵ / ₁₆
18.0	88.9	127.0	15.9	44.5	7.9	12	3 ¹ / ₂	5	5 ⁵ / ₈	1 ³ / ₄	5 ⁵ / ₁₆
22.5	88.9	127.0	15.9	50.0	12.7	15	3 ¹ / ₂	5	5 ⁵ / ₈	1 ³¹ / ₃₂	1 ¹ / ₂
27.5	108.0	139.7	19.1	50.0	12.7	18 ¹ / ₂	4 ¹ / ₄	5 ¹ / ₂	3 ³ / ₄	1 ³¹ / ₃₂	1 ¹ / ₂
33.5	101.6	139.7	28.6	50.8	14.3	22 ¹ / ₂	4	5 ¹ / ₂	1 ¹ / ₈	2	9 ⁹ / ₁₆
44.5	127.0	139.7	31.8	57.2	17.5	30	5	5 ¹ / ₂	1 ¹ / ₄	2 ¹ / ₄	1 ¹¹ / ₁₆

5 440 kg. The equivalent static loading per pair of guide rails is 5 440 kg and, given a 22.5 kg/m rail, there is a maximum bracket spacing of 4 050 mm.

- (2) *Imperial Units.* For 6,000 lb total weight of car plus load and a 4,700 lb counterweight, both roped 2:1; 200 lb suspension weight, 150 lb compensation weight, 45 lb traveling cable weight, and a machine weight of 800 lb; and with the machine supported in the overhead by one guide rail; the impacted reaction on that guide rail due to the machine loading is 6,000 lb + 4,700 lb + 200 lb + 150 lb + 45 lb + 800 lb = 11,895 lb. The equivalent static loading per pair of guide rails is 11,895 lb and, given a 15 lb rail, there is a maximum bracket spacing of 13 ft 3 in.

2.23.4.1 With Single Car or Counterweight Safety.

Where a single car or counterweight safety is used, the maximum suspended weight of the car and its rated load, or the maximum suspended weight of the counterweight, including the weight of any compensation means and of any traveling cables suspended therefrom per pair of guide rails, shall not exceed the maximum specified in Figure 2.23.4.1-1 for the size of the rail and the bracket spacing used, except that the bracket spacing shall be permitted to exceed the values specified in Figure 2.23.4.1-1, provided that

- (a) the guide rail is reinforced or a larger rail is used
- (b) the moment of inertia of a single reinforced rail or of a single larger T-section about the x-x axis parallel to the base of the rail is not less than that required by Figure 2.23.4.1-1 for the given weight of car plus load, or the counterweight with safety device, at the bracket spacing used

- (c) where the bracket spacings exceed those shown on Figures 2.23.4.1-1 and 2.23.4.1-2, the rail system

- (1) conforms to 2.23.5

- (2) is designed to limit the deflection during the application of the safety with a fully loaded car to not more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) per rail

EXAMPLES [2.23.4.1(c)]:

- (1) *SI Units.* For 5 500 kg total weight of car plus load and a bracket spacing of 4 875 mm, there is required
 - (a) 27.5 kg/m rail without reinforcement; or
 - (b) 22.5 kg/m rail with reinforcement having a combined moment of inertia of $3.3 \text{ mm} \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^4$
- (2) *Imperial Units.* For 12,000 lb total weight of car plus load and a bracket spacing of 16 ft 0 in., there is required
 - (a) 18.5 lb rail without reinforcement; or
 - (b) 15 lb rail with reinforcement having a combined moment of inertia of 8 in.⁴

2.23.4.2 With Two (Duplex) Car or Counterweight Safeties. Where the car or counterweight is provided with two safety devices, the loads specified in Figure 2.23.4.1-1 shall be permitted to be increased by the factors specified in Table 2.23.4.2.

2.23.4.3 Counterweight With No Safety

2.23.4.3.1 Guide rails for counterweights not provided with a safety device shall be fastened to the building structure at intervals specified in Table 2.23.4.3.1, except as specified in 2.23.4.3.2, and the weight of the counterweight for each size of guide rail shall not exceed that specified in Table 2.23.4.3.1.

2.23.4.3.2 The bracket spacing specified shall be permitted to be increased by an amount determined by Figures 2.23.4.1-1 and 2.23.4.1-2, subject to the following requirements:

- (a) guide rails are reinforced or a larger rail section is used having a moment of inertia, about an axis parallel to the base (x-x axis in Figure 2.23.4.1-2), at least equal to that of the rail sections shown in Table 2.23.3, based on the weight of the counterweight

- (b) where intermediate tie brackets, approximately equally spaced, are provided between the guide rails at intervals of not over 2 130 mm (84 in.)

2.23.4.3.3 Intermediate tie brackets, approximately equally spaced, shall be provided between the guide rails at intervals as specified in Table 2.23.4.3.3. Intermediate tie brackets are not required to be fastened to the building structure.

2.23.5 Stresses and Deflections

2.23.5.1 Guide Rails

2.23.5.1.1 For steels conforming to 2.23.2.1, the stresses in a guide rail or in the rail and its reinforcement shall not exceed 105 MPa (15,000 psi), based on the class of loading, and the deflection shall not exceed 6 mm (0.25 in.). The loads used to determine the guide-rail stress and deflection shall include vertical and moment loads transferred into the rail, that are imposed by equipment supported by the guide rail, combined with the horizontal forces imposed on the rail during loading, unloading, or running, calculated without impact (see 2.16.2.2 and 8.2.2.6).

2.23.5.1.2 Where steels of greater strength than those specified in 2.23.2.1 are used, the stresses specified may be increased proportionately, based on the ratio of the ultimate strengths.

2.23.5.2 Brackets, Fastenings, and Supports. The guide-rail brackets, their fastenings, and supports, such as building beams and walls, shall be capable of resisting the horizontal forces imposed by the class of loading (see 2.16.2.2 and 8.2.2.6) with a total deflection at the point of support not in excess of 3 mm (0.125 in.).

2.23.5.3 Allowable Stresses Due to Emergency Braking. Guide rails, brackets, supports, and their fastenings subject to forces due to the application of the emergency brake (see 2.19.4) shall be designed to withstand

Figure 2.23.4.1-1
Maximum Weight of a Car With Rated Load or of Counterweight With Safety Device for a Pair of Guide Rails as Specified
in 2.23.4.1

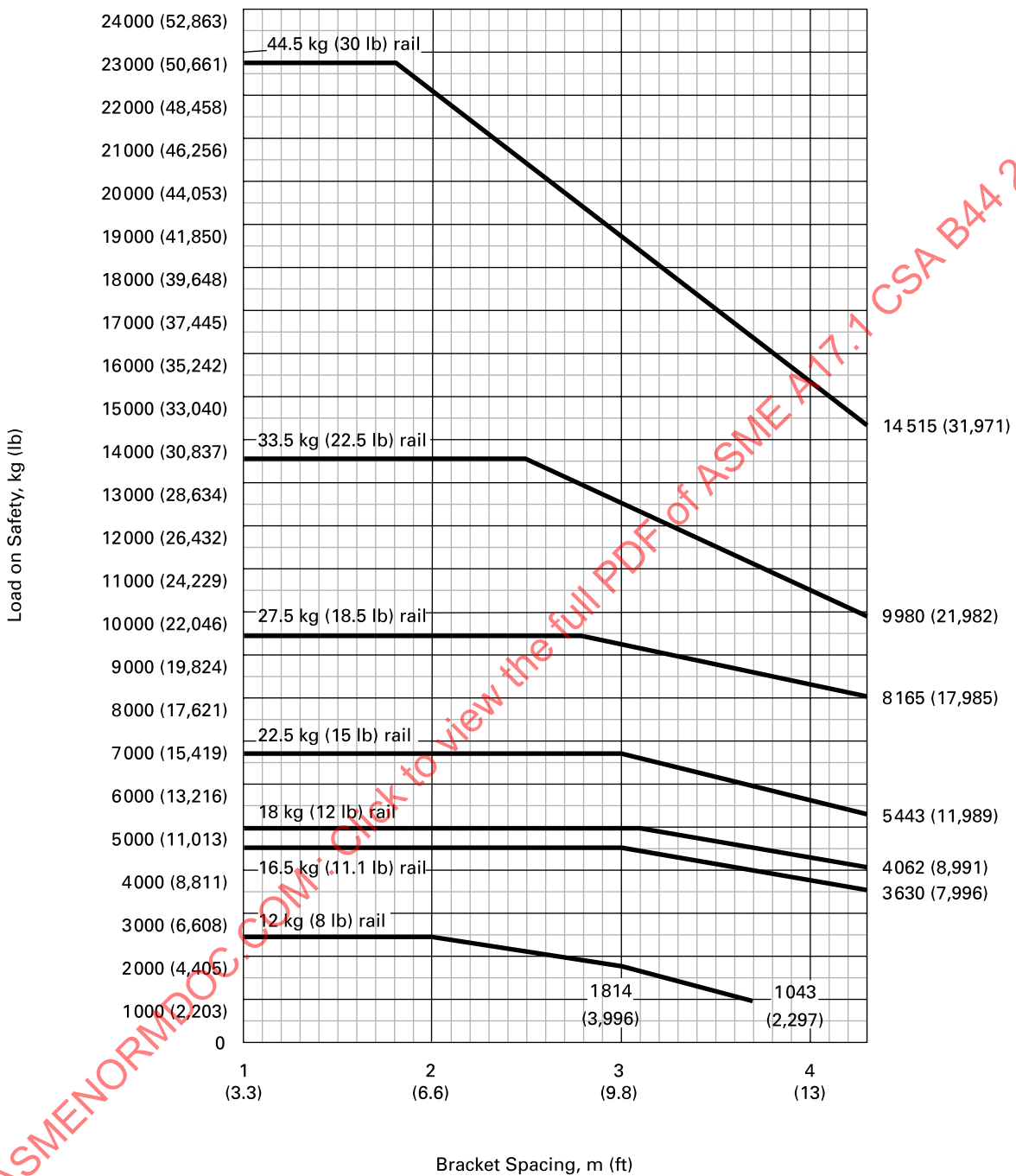


Figure 2.23.4.1-2
Minimum Moment of Inertia About x-x Axis for a Single Guide Rail With Its Reinforcement

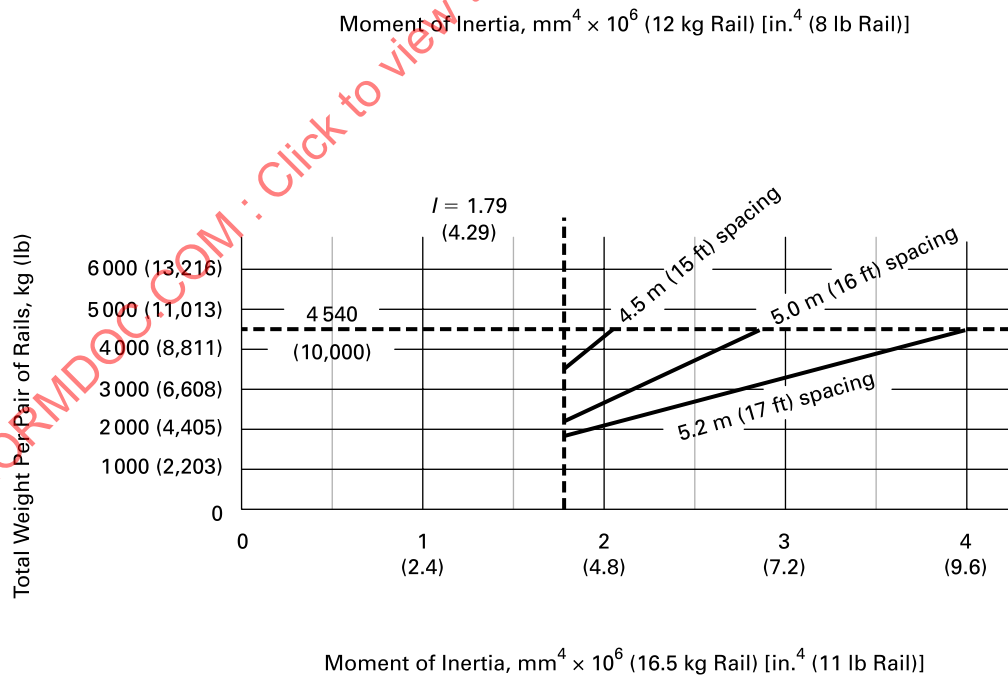
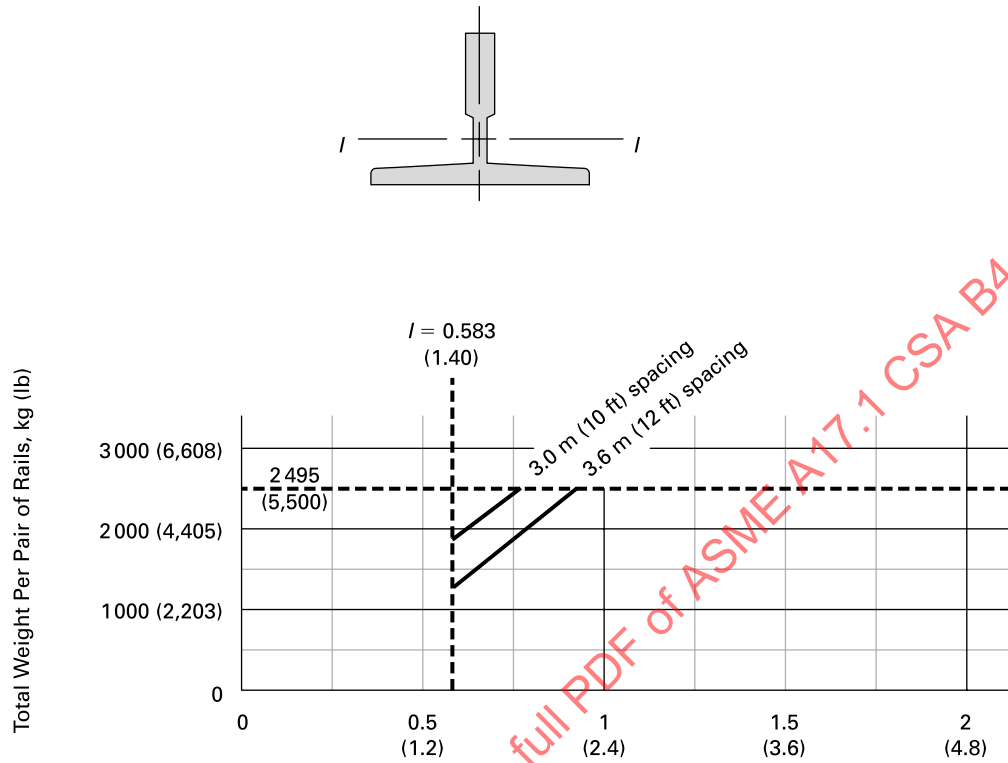


Figure 2.23.4.1-2
Minimum Moment of Inertia About x-x Axis for a Single Guide Rail With Its Reinforcement (Cont'd)

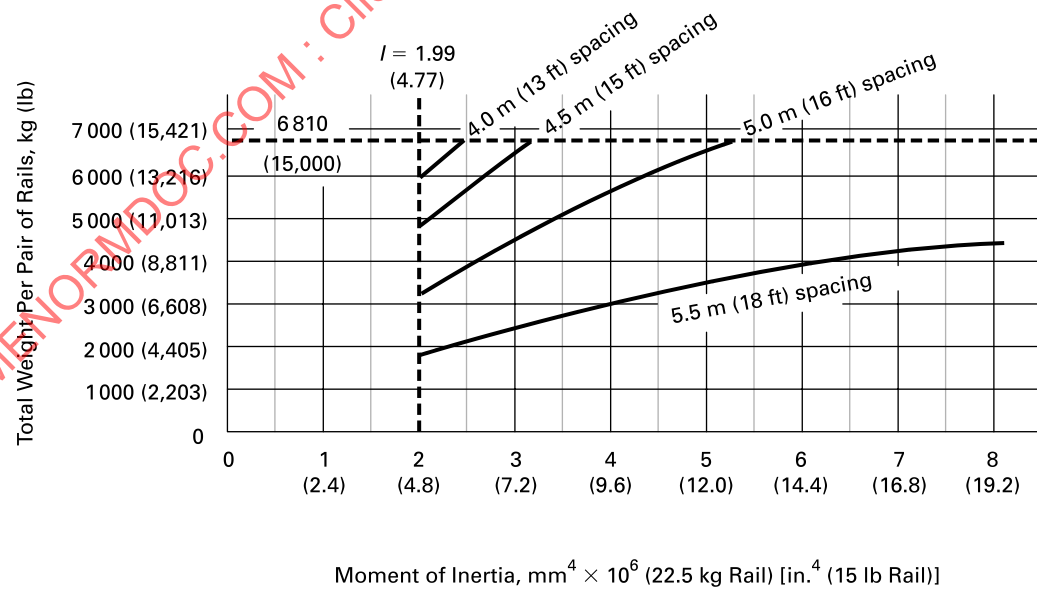
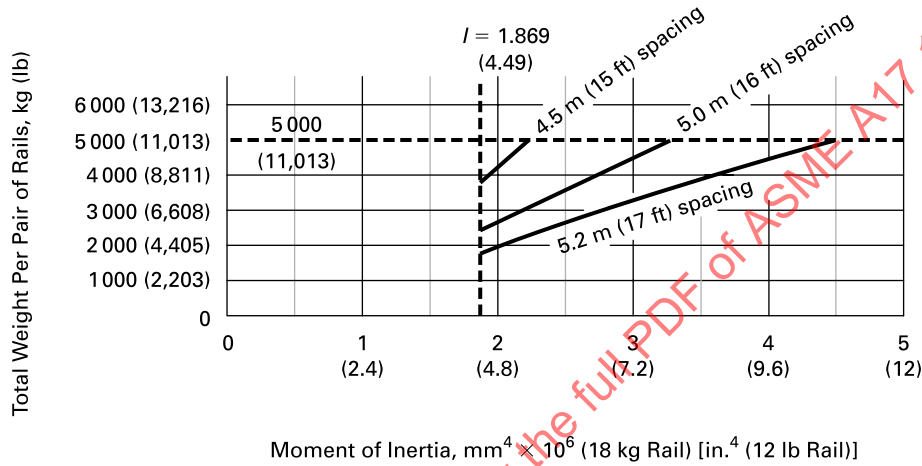
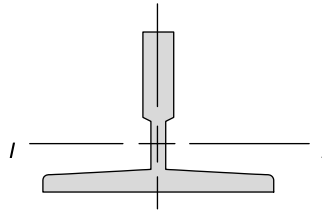


Figure 2.23.4.1-2
Minimum Moment of Inertia About x-x Axis for a Single Guide Rail With Its Reinforcement (Cont'd)

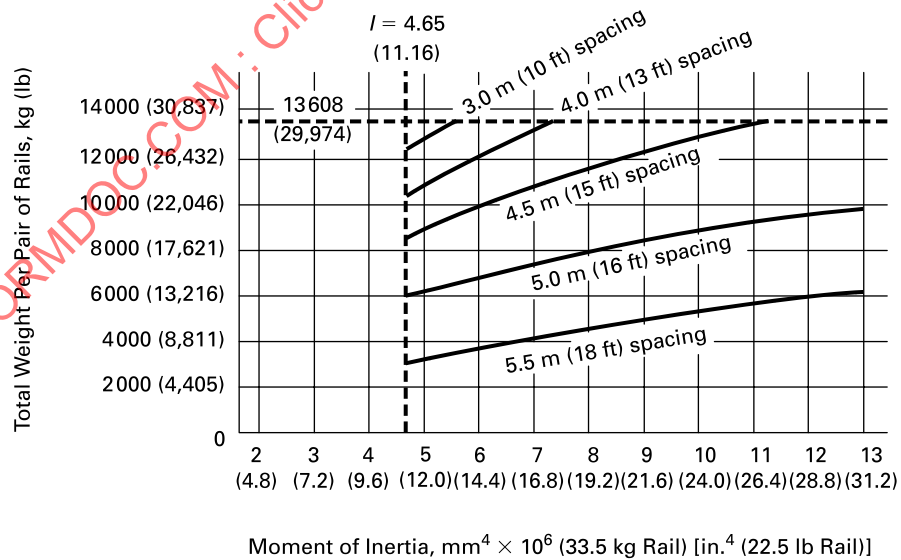
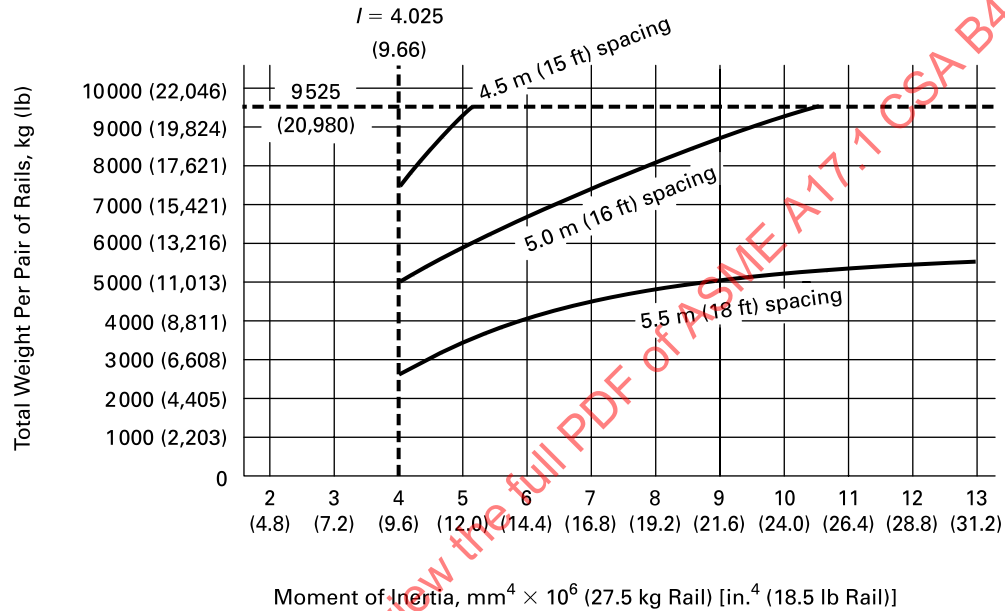
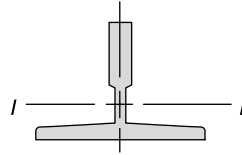


Figure 2.23.4.1-2
Minimum Moment of Inertia About x-x Axis for a Single Guide Rail With Its Reinforcement (Cont'd)

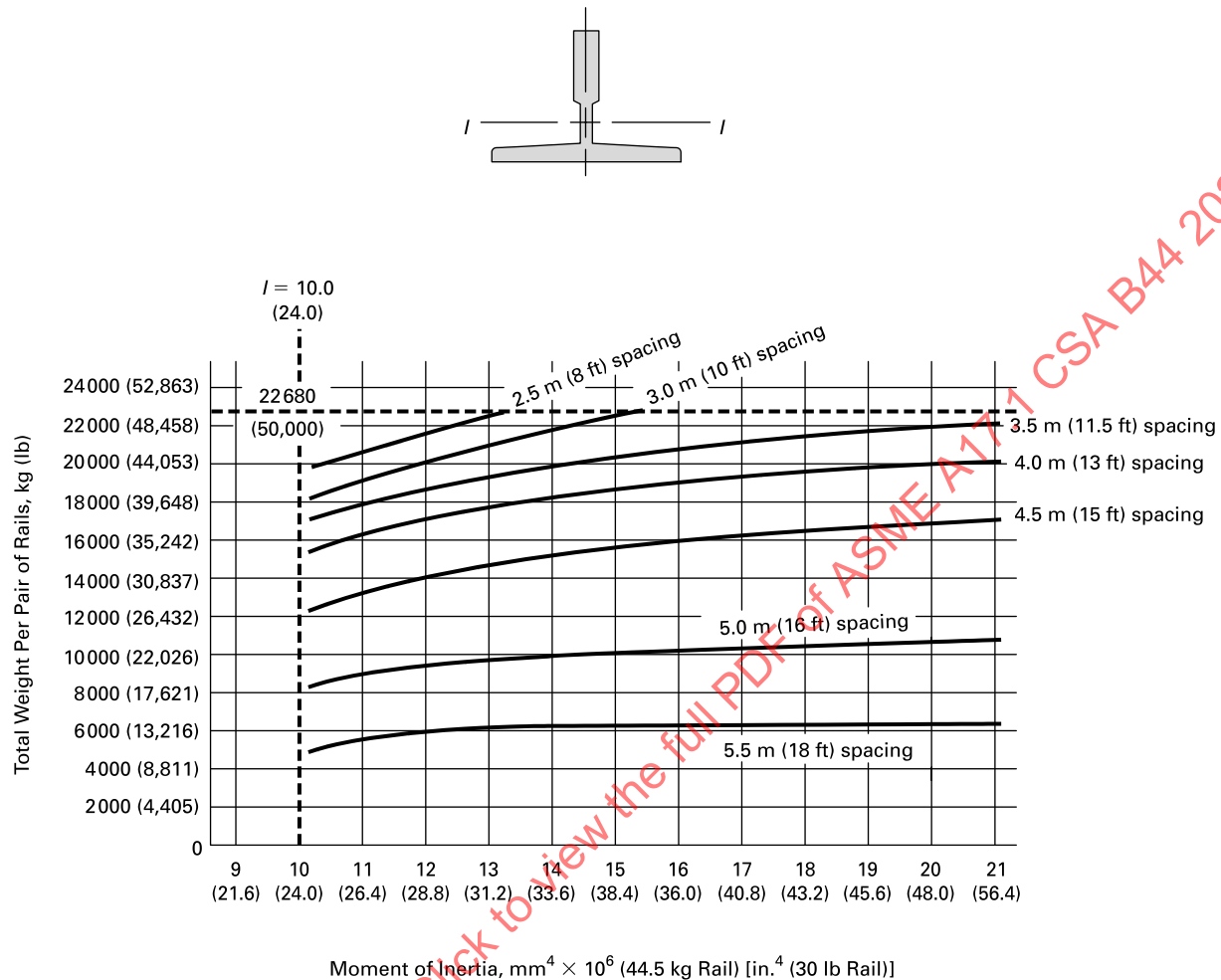


Table 2.23.4.2
Load Multiplying Factor for Duplex Safeties

Vertical Distance Between Safeties, mm (in.)	Multiply Load in Figure 2.23.4.1-1 by
5 400 (212) or more	2.00
4 600 (182)	1.83
3 700 (146)	1.67
2 700 (106)	1.50

the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of emergency braking so that the resulting stresses due to the emergency braking and all other loading acting simultaneously, if applicable, shall not exceed 190 MPa (27,500 psi).

2.23.6 Guide-Rail Surfaces

Guide-rail surfaces used for guiding a car or counterweight shall be sufficiently smooth and true to operate properly with the guiding members. Those surfaces that the car or counterweight safeties engage shall be smooth and true within the tolerances required to ensure proper safety application without excessive retardation or excessive out-of-level platform conditions resulting (see 2.17.3, 2.17.9.2, and 2.17.16).

2.23.7 Rail Joints and Fishplates

2.23.7.1 Type and Strength of Rail Joints. Metal guide-rail sections shall be joined together as specified in 2.23.7.2. The jointed rail sections shall withstand the forces specified in 2.23.5.1 without exceeding the stress and deflection limitations.

Table 2.23.4.3.1
Guide Rails for Counterweight Without Safeties

SI Units			Imperial Units		
Mass of Counter weight, kg	Nominal Mass of Guide Rail, kg/m	Maximum Bracket Spacing Without Reinforcement, mm	Weight of Counterweight, lb	Nominal Weight of Guide Rail, lb/ft	Maximum Bracket Spacing Without Reinforcement, ft
3 000	9.5	3 000	6,600	6 ¹ / ₄	10
4 000	8.5	4 400	8,800	5 ³ / ₄	14.5
7 000	12.0	4 900	15,000	8	16
12 000	16.5	4 900	27,000	11	16
13 000	18.0	4 900	29,000	12	16
18 000	22.5	4 900	40,000	15	16
25 000	27.5	4 900	56,000	18 ¹ / ₂	16
36 000	33.5	4 900	80,000	22 ¹ / ₂	16
60 000	44.5	4 900	133,000	30	16

Table 2.23.4.3.3
Intermediate Tie Brackets

Nominal Distance Between Fastenings to Building Structure, mm (in.)		Number of Intermediate Tie Brackets
For 8.5 kg (6 ¹ / ₄ lb) Rail	For All Other Rails	
0–3 300 (0–130)	0–3 700 (0–146)	0
3 301–3 800 (130–150)	3 701–4 300 (147–169)	1
3 801–4 400 (150–173)	4 301–4 900 (170–193)	2

2.23.7.2 Design and Construction of Rail Joints

2.23.7.2.1 The joints of metal guide rails with T-section profiles as specified in 2.23.3(a) shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) The ends of the rails shall be accurately machined with a tongue and matching groove centrally located in the web.

(b) The backs of the rail flanges shall be accurately machined, in relation to the rail-guiding surfaces, to a uniform distance front to back of the rails to form a flat surface for the fishplates.

(c) The ends of each rail shall be bolted to the fishplates with not fewer than four bolts that conform to Table 2.23.7.2.1.

(d) The width of the fishplate shall be not less than the width of the back of the rail.

(e) The thickness of the fishplates and the diameter of the bolts for each size of guide rail shall be not less than specified in Table 2.23.7.2.1.

(f) The diameter of bolt holes shall not exceed the diameter of the bolts by more than 2 mm (0.08 in.) for guide rails and 3 mm (0.125 in.) for fishplates.

2.23.7.2.2 Joints of different design and construction shall be permitted to be used, provided they are equivalent in strength and will adequately maintain the accuracy of the rail alignment.

2.23.8 Overall Length of Guide Rails

The car and counterweight guide rails shall extend at the top and bottom to prevent the guiding members (see 2.15.2 and 2.21.1.3) from disengaging from the guide rails in the event that either the car or the counterweight reaches its extreme limit of travel.

2.23.9 Guide-Rail Brackets and Building Supports

2.23.9.1 Design and Strength of Brackets and Supports

2.23.9.1.1 The building construction forming the supports for the guide rails and the guide-rail brackets shall be designed to

(a) safely withstand the application of the car or counterweight safety when stopping the car and its rated load or the counterweight

(b) withstand the forces specified in 2.23.5.2 within the deflection limits specified

2.23.9.1.2 Walls of bricks, terra-cotta, hollow blocks, and similar materials shall not be used for attachment of guide-rail brackets unless they are adequately reinforced.

2.23.9.1.3 Where necessary, the building construction shall be reinforced to provide adequate support for the guide rails.

2.23.9.2 Bracket Fastenings

2.23.9.2.1 Guide-rail brackets shall be secured to their supporting structure by one of the following means:

Table 2.23.7.2.1
Minimum Thickness of Fishplates and Minimum Diameter of Fastening Bolts

SI Units			Imperial Units		
Nominal Mass of Guide Rail, kg/m	Minimum Thickness of Fishplates, mm	Minimum Diameter of Bolts, mm	Nominal Weight of Guide Rail, lb/ft	Minimum Thickness of Fishplates, in.	Minimum Diameter of Bolts, in.
8.5	9.5	M12	5 ³ / ₄	³ / ₈	¹ / ₂
9.5	9.5	M12	6 ¹ / ₄	³ / ₈	¹ / ₂
12.0	14.0	M12	8	⁹ / ₁₆	¹ / ₂
16.5	17.0	M16	11	¹¹ / ₁₆	⁵ / ₈
18.0	17.0	M16	12	¹¹ / ₁₆	⁵ / ₈
22.5	17.0	M16	15	¹¹ / ₁₆	⁵ / ₈
27.5	20.0	M20	18 ¹ / ₂	¹³ / ₁₆	³ / ₄
33.5	20.0	M20	22 ¹ / ₂	¹³ / ₁₆	³ / ₄
44.5	23.0	M20	30	¹⁵ / ₁₆	³ / ₄

(a) by bolts or rivets

(b) by using clip fastenings to mount brackets to the building structure, provided that

(1) the friction force of such clips has a minimum factor of safety of 10

(2) an additional means, having a safety factor not less than 5, of resisting horizontal shear is incorporated

(c) by welding conforming to [Section 8.8](#)

2.23.9.2.2 Fastening bolts and bolt holes in brackets and their supporting beams shall conform to [2.23.10](#).

2.23.9.3 Slotted guide-rail brackets having single-bolt fastenings shall be provided with an additional means to prevent lateral movement of the rail bracket. Such means shall have a factor of safety not less than 5.

2.23.10 Fastening of Guide Rails to Rail Brackets

2.23.10.1 Type of Fastenings. Guide rails shall be secured to their brackets by clips, welds, or bolts.

Bolts used for fastening shall be of such strength as to withstand the forces specified in [2.23.5.2](#) and [2.23.9.1](#).

Welding, where used, shall conform to [Section 8.8](#).

2.23.10.2 Size of Bolts for Fastening. The size of bolts used for fastening the guide rails or rail clips to the brackets shall be not less than specified in [Table 2.23.10.2](#).

2.23.10.3 Bolt Holes for Fastenings. The diameter of holes or the width of slots for fastening bolts shall not exceed the diameter of the bolt by more than 2 mm (0.08 in.).

SECTION 2.24 DRIVING MACHINES AND SHEAVES

2.24.1 Type of Driving Machines

All driving machines shall be the traction type, except that winding-drum machines shall be permitted for freight elevators, subject to the following:

(a) They shall not be provided with counterweights.

(b) The rated speed of the elevator shall not exceed 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min).

(c) The travel of the elevator car shall not exceed 12.5 m (40 ft).

NOTE (2.24.1): See [Section 4.1](#) for rack-and-pinion machines and [Section 4.2](#) for screw machines.

Table 2.23.10.2
Minimum Size of Rail-Fastening Bolts

SI Units		Imperial Units	
Nominal Mass of Guide Rail, kg/m	Minimum Diameter of Rail Bolts, mm	Nominal Weight of Guide Rail, lb/ft	Minimum Diameter of Rail Bolts, in.
8.5	M12	5 ³ / ₄	¹ / ₂
9.5	M12	6 ¹ / ₄	¹ / ₂
12.0	M12	8	¹ / ₂
16.5	M16	11	⁵ / ₈
18.0	M16	12	⁵ / ₈
22.5	M16	15	⁵ / ₈
27.5	M16	18 ¹ / ₂	⁵ / ₈
33.5	M20	22 ¹ / ₂	³ / ₄
44.5	M20	30	³ / ₄

2.24.2 Sheaves and Drums

2.24.2.1 Material and Grooving. Sheaves and drums used with suspension and compensating members shall be constructed of materials conforming to 2.24.2.1.1 or 2.24.2.1.2 and provided with finished grooves or shall be permitted to be lined with nonmetallic groove material. Sheaves and drums shall comply with 2.24.3.

2.24.2.1.1 Sheaves. Driving-machine sheaves shall be integral with or directly attached to driving-machine shafts. Sheaves shall be provided with steel shafts and metal bearings. Sheaves constructed of plastic, fiber-reinforced plastic, or combinations thereof shall be non-regroovable. Permanent and legible marking shall be provided on or adjacent to the nonmetallic sheaves stating, "Regrooving of sheave is not permitted."

2.24.2.1.2 Drums. Drums used with suspension and compensating members shall be constructed of metal.

2.24.2.2 Minimum Pitch Diameter. Sheaves and drums used with suspension and compensating means (see 2.20.1) shall have a pitch diameter of not less than

(a) 40 times the diameter of steel wire rope where used for suspension ropes

(b) 40 times the cord diameter (see ASME A17.6, 3.3.3.1.1) of noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension members where used for suspension

(c) 16 times the functional diameter (see ASME A17.6, 2.3.3.1.2) of the load-carrying fibers of aramid ropes where used for suspension or compensation

(d) 32 times the diameter of steel wire ropes and the cord diameter of noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension members where used for compensation

2.24.2.3 Traction

2.24.2.3.1 For Steel Wire Ropes. Where the grooves are used to provide traction, sufficient traction shall be provided between the rope and groove, and in the event of nonmetallic lining failure, between the rope and the remaining sheave groove, to safely stop and hold the car with rated load [see 2.16.8(c)] from rated speed in the down direction.

2.24.2.3.2 For Aramid Fiber Ropes. Where grooves are used to provide traction, sufficient traction shall be provided between the rope cover and the groove, and in the event of failure of the cover, between the load-carrying portion of the rope and the sheave groove, to safely stop and hold the car with rated load [see 2.16.8(c)] from rated speed in the down direction. Undercut grooves shall not be permitted with aramid fiber rope.

2.24.2.3.3 For Noncircular Elastomeric-Coated Steel Suspension Members. Where surfaces are used to provide traction, sufficient traction shall be provided between the noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension member and the surface, and in the event of failure of the elastomeric coating, between the load-carrying cords and the sheave contact surface, to safely stop and hold the car with rated load [see 2.16.8(c)] from rated speed in the down direction.

2.24.2.3.4 If either the car or the counterweight bottoms on its buffers or becomes otherwise immovable, one of the following shall apply:

- (a) the suspension members shall slip on the drive sheave and not allow the car or counterweight to be raised
- (b) the driving system shall stall and not allow the car or counterweight to be raised

2.24.2.3.5 Percent Counterweight Overbalance Data Plate. The designed maximum and minimum percent counterweight overbalance range that is required to meet the traction requirements of 2.24.2.3.1, 2.24.2.3.2, or 2.24.2.3.3 shall be provided on a data plate. This data plate shall be integral with or adjacent to the data plate required in 2.16.3. Where this data plate is adjacent to the data plate required by 2.16.3, the material and markings shall conform to 2.16.3.3.

NOTES:

- (1) The percent counterweight overbalance is the percentage of an elevator's rated capacity that the counterweight is heavier than the car.
- (2) The percent counterweight overbalance range refers to the upper and lower limits, expressed as a percentage of the elevator's rated capacity, that the counterweight is heavier than the car.

2.24.2.4 Minimum Sheave and Drum Diameter. Drive sheaves and drums shall be permanently and legibly marked to state the minimum sheave or drum diameter, measured at the bottom of the groove, that is required to maintain structural integrity (see 2.24.3).

2.24.2.5 Retaining and Guarding of Suspension Members

2.24.2.5.1 Retaining Means. A means shall be provided to retain each suspension member in its respective position on all sheaves used in the suspension of the elevator when subjected to any retardation that can cause a slackening of the suspension members. Where suspension system retainers are designed in accordance with 8.4.3.1, this requirement is met.

2.24.2.5.2 Guarding Means. Guards shall be provided to a minimum height of 1000 mm (39 in.) above the machine room floor or base of a working platform, where used, to protect the suspension members from accidental contact by foreign objects. Guards shall be designed to allow easy access for inspection purposes.

(22) **2.24.3 Factor of Safety for Driving Machines, Driving Machine Brakes, Sheaves, and Drums**

The factor of safety to be used in the design of driving machines, driving machine brakes, sheaves, and drums used with suspension means and compensating means shall be not less than

(a) 8 for metals having an elongation of at least 14% in a gauge length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E8.

(b) 10 for cast iron or for metals having an elongation of less than 14% in a gauge length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E8.

(c) 10 for sheaves of plastic, fiber-reinforced plastic, or combinations thereof. The material used shall ensure that the factor of safety is not less than 8 during the service life of the sheave.

The load to be used in determining the factor of safety shall be the resultant of the maximum tensions in the suspension means leading from the sheave or drum with the elevator at rest and with the rated load in the car. Factor of safety shall not apply to the friction surfaces of driving machine brakes.

2.24.3.1 Factors of Safety Based on Alternating/Reversing Stresses

2.24.3.1.1 Driving-machine components subjected to alternating or reversing stresses shall have a factor of safety not less than 1.5.

2.24.3.1.2 This factor of safety shall be the ratio of the endurance limit of the components (see [Section 1.3](#)) to the actual alternating or reversing stress to which the components can be subjected under any normal operating condition. The endurance limit shall be based on 10^7 cycles of stress reversals. The actual stress shall include all designed or anticipated load conditions and stress risers, such as sharp corners, shock loading, surface finish, keyways, material variations, and alignment tolerances.

2.24.3.2 Factors of Safety at Emergency Braking. Driving-machine components including bedplate, where used, subject to forces due to the application of the emergency brake (see [2.19.4](#)) shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of emergency braking so that the factor of safety resulting from the emergency braking and all other loading acting simultaneously, if applicable, shall be not less than specified in [2.24.3\(a\)](#) and [2.24.3\(b\)](#).

2.24.4 Fasteners and Connections Transmitting Load

2.24.4.1 Fasteners and Rigid Connections. Fasteners and rigid connections shall comply with [2.24.4.1.1](#) through [2.24.4.1.4](#) in accordance with good engineering practice.

2.24.4.1.1 When fasteners are used to transmit load, the shearing load shall not be applied to the threaded portion of fasteners. Where more than one fastener shares the shearing load, the clearance between the fasteners and holes shall be designed with tolerance fits that will provide even distribution of the shear loading across all of the fasteners.

2.24.4.1.2 Set screws shall not be permitted to transmit torque.

2.24.4.1.3 When the connection is designed to transmit the torque by the friction of the clamped surfaces resulting from the applied fastener torques, [2.24.4.1.1](#) shall not apply.

2.24.4.1.4 The factors of safety to be used in the design of fasteners transmitting load or clamped surfaces transmitting torque in driving machines and sheaves shall be not less than those specified in [2.24.3](#).

2.24.4.2 Flexible Connections. Where flexible couplings are used to transmit load, means shall be provided to prevent disengagement of the coupling components in the event of the failure of or excessive motion in the flexible connection.

2.24.5 Shaft Fillets and Keys

A fillet shall be provided at any point of change in the diameter of driving-machine shafts and sheave shafts to prevent excessive stress concentrations in the shafts (see [2.24.3.1](#)).

Shafts that support drums, sheaves, gears, couplings, and other members, and that transmit torque, shall be provided with tight-fitting keys.

2.24.6 Cast Iron Worms and Worm Gears

Worms and worm gears made of cast iron shall not be used in elevator driving machines.

2.24.7 Friction Gearing and Clutches

Friction gearing or a clutch mechanism shall not be used to connect a driving-machine drum or sheave to the main driving mechanism.

2.24.8 Braking System and Driving-Machine Brakes (See [Nonmandatory Appendix F, Table F-1](#))

2.24.8.1 General Requirements. The elevator shall be provided with a braking system conforming to [2.24.8.2](#).

2.24.8.2 Braking System

2.24.8.2.1 The braking system shall consist of a driving-machine brake and shall be permitted to include other braking means, such as electrically assisted braking.

2.24.8.2.2 The braking system shall be capable of decelerating the car from its rated speed when it is carrying its rated load (see 2.16.8) in the down direction, or empty car in the up direction, from the speed at which the governor overspeed switch is set. Any deceleration not exceeding 9.8 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) is acceptable, provided that all factors such as, but not limited to, system heat dissipation and allowable buffer striking speeds are considered. The loss of main line power shall not reduce the braking system capacity below the requirements stated here.

- (22) **2.24.8.3 Driving-Machine Brake.** The driving machine shall be equipped with a friction brake applied by a spring or springs, or by gravity, and released electromechanically or electrohydraulically (see Section 1.3) in conformance with 2.24.3 and 2.26.8. The driving-machine brake, on its own, shall be capable of

(a) holding the car at rest with its rated load (see 2.16.8 and 2.26.8).

(b) holding the empty car at rest.

(c) decelerating the empty car traveling in the up direction from the speed at which the governor overspeed switch is set. Any deceleration not exceeding 9.8 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) is acceptable, provided that all factors such as, but not limited to, system heat dissipation and allowable buffer striking speeds are considered.

2.24.8.4 Means for Manual Release. Means shall be permitted for manual release of the driving-machine brake. The means shall permit car movement in a gradual, controllable manner. Provision shall be made to prevent unintended actuation of the device. The manual release device shall be designed to be hand applied only with continuous effort. The brake shall reapply at its fully adjusted capacity in the absence of the hand-applied effort. Devices required in accordance with Section 2.19 are permitted to be temporarily disabled when the manual release device is in use.

- (22) **2.24.8.5 Driving Machine Brake Data or Marking Plates.** The brake setting and method of measurement shall be provided on the driving machine on a data plate complying with 8.13.1 or a marking plate complying with 8.13.3 and shall be readily visible after installation.

The following information shall be conveyed on the data or marking plate:

(a) the type of brake (see 2.24.8.7)

(b) for Type A brakes

(1) adjustments on the brakes that affect the brakes' holding capacity or decelerating capacity

(2) the method of measuring these adjustments to verify the brakes' correct holding capacity and decelerating capacity (see 2.24.8.3)

(c) for Type B brakes "Brake holding and decelerating capacity not field adjustable—see on-site documentation for method to verify"

Any unique or product-specific procedures for the adjustment or method of measurement of Type B driving machine brakes shall be included in the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(5)] with sufficient detail to ensure that testing can be accomplished by elevator personnel.

2.24.8.6 Driving-Machine Brake Design. The driving-machine brake design shall ensure contact of the friction material on the braking surface consistent with sound engineering practice. Means shall be provided to protect the braking surfaces from contamination caused by any driving-machine fluid leak.

2.24.8.7 Identification, Classification, and Seals on Driving Machine Brakes (22)

2.24.8.7.1 Identification. Driving machine brakes shall be identified as either Type A or Type B, and the identification shall be included on the brake data or marking plate [see 2.24.8.5(a)].

2.24.8.7.2 Classification. Driving machine brakes shall be classified based on their ability to field adjust the brake holding capacity or decelerating capacity as follows:

(a) Type A driving machine brakes have holding capacity or decelerating capacity that can be adjusted on-site (see 2.24.8.3).

(b) Type B driving machine brakes are brakes where the holding capacity or decelerating capacity is not field adjustable (see 2.24.8.3).

2.24.8.7.3 Seals

(a) All seals shall be of a type that shall be broken if they meet one of the following criteria:

(1) There is a change to the adjustment of brake holding capacity or decelerating capacity of a Type A brake.

(2) There is a replacement of a Type B brake.

(b) Seals used on

(1) Type A brakes shall have a unique identifier and shall meet the requirements defined for an adjustment seal

(2) Type B brakes shall have a unique identifier, unless the brake is marked with a unique serial number, and shall meet the documentation requirements defined for an adjustment seal

(c) For Type A brakes, the adjustments shall be sealed to prevent readjustment once the correct holding capacity or decelerating capacity of the driving machine brake has been established.

(d) For Type B brakes, a seal shall be provided at a suitable location that would require the seal to be broken in the event the nonadjustable Type B brake is replaced.

(e) Provisions shall be made to enable affixing seals after tests.

NOTE [2.24.8.7.3(e)]: Factory applied seals meeting the requirements of (a) through (d) are acceptable.

(f) Adjustments that do not affect the brake holding capacity or decelerating capacity do not need to be sealed.

(g) The method to seal the adjustment shall not alter the structural integrity of any component or assembly.

2.24.9 Indirect Driving Machines

2.24.9.1 Belt and Chain Drives. Indirect driving machines, using V-belt drives, tooth drive belts, or drive chains, shall include not less than three belts or chains operating together in parallel as a set. Belt and chain drive sets shall be preloaded and matched for length in sets.

2.24.9.2 General Requirements

2.24.9.2.1 Belt sets shall be selected on the basis of the manufacturer's rated breaking strength and a factor of safety of 10. Chain and sprocket sets shall be selected on the basis of recommendations set forth in the Supplementary Information section of ASME B29.1, using a service factor of 2. Offset links in chain are not permitted.

2.24.9.2.2 Sprockets in a chain drive set and also in a driven set shall be assembled onto a common hub, with teeth cut in-line after assembly to assure equal load distribution on all chains. Tooth sheaves for a belt drive shall be constructed in a manner to assure equal load distribution on each belt in the set.

2.24.9.2.3 Load determination for both the belt and chain sets shall be based on the maximum static loading on the elevator car, that is, the full load in the car at rest and at a position in the hoistway that creates the greatest load, including either the car or counterweight resting on its buffer.

2.24.9.2.4 Chain drives and belt drives shall be guarded to protect against accidental contact and to prevent foreign objects from interfering with the drives.

2.24.9.3 Monitoring and Brake Location. Each belt or chain shall be continuously monitored by a broken belt or chain device, which shall function to stop the car at the next available landing and prevent it from running, in the event that any belt or chain in the set breaks or becomes excessively slack. The driving-machine brake shall be located on the traction sheave or drum assembly side of the driving machine so as to be fully effective in the event that the entire belt set or chain set breaks.

2.24.10 Means for Inspection of Gears

Each gear case of geared machines shall have access to permit inspection of the contact surfaces of the gears. Such access need not provide a direct view of all gears, but shall

be located and sized adequately to allow access by fiber-optic or similar visual inspection instrumentation.

SECTION 2.25 TERMINAL STOPPING DEVICES

2.25.1 General Requirements

2.25.1.1 Normal terminal stopping devices required by 2.25.2, emergency terminal stopping devices required by 2.25.4.2, and emergency terminal speed-limiting devices required by 2.25.4.1 shall be permitted to use mechanically operated, magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state devices for determining car position and speed.

2.25.1.2 Final terminal stopping devices required by 2.25.3 shall use only mechanically operated switches for determining car position.

2.25.1.3 Terminal stopping devices that are located on the car or in the hoistway shall be the enclosed type and securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect the operation of the device.

2.25.2 Normal Terminal Stopping Devices

2.25.2.1 Where Required and Function. Normal terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.2.1.1 through 2.25.2.1.3.

2.25.2.1.1 Normal terminal stopping devices shall be provided and arranged to detect the position of the car and cause the car to slow down and stop the car automatically, at or near the top and bottom terminal landings, with any load up to and including rated load in the car and from any speed attained in normal operation (see 2.16.8).

2.25.2.1.2 The normal terminal stopping devices (i.e., those devices used for sensing relative changes in car position) shall function independently of the operation of the normal stopping means and of the final terminal stopping device, such that the failure of the normal stopping means and/or the failure of the final terminal stopping devices shall not prevent the normal terminal stopping device from functioning as specified in 2.25.2.1.1, except that

(a) a common position-sensing actuating means (e.g., a cam) that is not physically part of the position-sensing devices shall be permitted for the actuation of the position-sensing device(s) of the normal terminal stopping devices and the position-sensing device of (1) and/or (2)

(1) the normal stopping means

(2) the final terminal stopping devices

(b) a common member (e.g., tape, target, or wire) that is sensed by both the normal terminal stopping devices and normal stopping means shall be permitted, provided that both of the following apply:

(1) the member is monitored such that when its presence is not detected, this shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(2) the common member is securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect the operation of the sensors

(c) a common mounting means shall be permitted for the position-sensing devices of the normal terminal stopping devices and the position-sensing device of (1) and/or (2)

(1) the normal stopping means

(2) the final terminal stopping devices

(d) on elevators with a rated speed of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) or less, the normal terminal stopping device shall be permitted to be used as the normal stopping means

2.25.2.1.3 The device shall be designed and installed so that it will continue to function until the final terminal stopping device operates.

2.25.2.2 Location of Stopping Devices. Normal terminal stopping devices shall be located as specified in 2.25.2.2.1 and 2.25.2.2.2.

2.25.2.2.1 Stopping devices for traction machines shall be located on the car or in the hoistway, a machinery space, a machine room, a control space, or a control room, and shall be operated by the movement of the car.

2.25.2.2.2 Stopping devices for winding-drum machines shall be located on the car or in the hoistway, and shall be operated by the movement of the car.

2.25.2.3 Indirectly Operated Normal Terminal Stopping Devices. Stopping devices that are not located on the car or in the hoistway shall conform to 2.25.2.3.1 through 2.25.2.3.3.

2.25.2.3.1 The stopping device shall be mounted on and operated by a stopping means mechanically connected to and driven by the car.

Stopping means depending on friction or traction shall not be used.

2.25.2.3.2 Tapes, chains, ropes, or similar devices mechanically connecting the stopping device to the car and used as a driving means shall be provided with a device that will cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake if the driving means fails (see 2.26.2.6).

2.25.2.3.3 If mechanically operated switches are used, only one set of floor-stopping contacts is necessary for each terminal landing on floor controllers or other similar devices used to stop the car automatically at the landings (such as automatic operation or signal operation), provided these contacts and the means for operating them conform to 2.25.2.3.1 and 2.25.2.3.2. These contacts

shall be permitted to serve also as the normal terminal stopping devices.

2.25.3 Final Terminal Stopping Devices

2.25.3.1 General Requirements. Final terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.1 and the following:

(a) They shall be mechanically operated.

(b) Operating cams shall be metal.

(c) The switch contacts shall be directly opened mechanically.

2.25.3.2 Where Required and Function. Final terminal stopping devices shall be provided and arranged to cause the electric power to be removed automatically from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake after the car has passed a terminal landing.

The device shall be set to function as close to the terminal landing as practicable, but so that under normal operating conditions it will not function when the car is stopped by the normal terminal stopping device.

Where spring buffers or elastomeric buffers are provided, the device shall function before the buffer is engaged.

The device shall be designed and installed so that it will continue to function

(a) at the top terminal landing, until the car has traveled above this landing a distance equal to the counterweight runby plus 1.5 times the buffer stroke, but in no case less than 0.6 m (2 ft)

(b) at the bottom terminal landing, until the car rests on its fully compressed buffer

The operation of final terminal stopping devices shall prevent movement of the car by the normal operating devices in both directions of travel.

2.25.3.3 Location. Final terminal stopping devices shall be located as specified in 2.25.3.3.1 and 2.25.3.3.2.

2.25.3.3.1 Traction machine elevators shall have final terminal stopping switches operated by cams.

One of the assemblies (i.e., switch or cam) shall be mounted on the car and the other in the hoistway. Where the final terminal stopping switch assembly is located on the car, and the signals from the switches are transmitted through wiring in the traveling cable, the design shall be such that any single ground or short circuit shall not render the final terminal stopping device ineffective.

2.25.3.3.2 Winding-drum-machine elevators shall have two sets of final terminal stopping switches, one located on and operated by the driving machine, and the other located in the hoistway and operated by cams attached to the car (see 2.25.3.5).

2.25.3.4 Controller Devices Controlled by Final Terminal Stopping Device. The normal terminal stopping device and final terminal stopping devices shall not

control the same controller devices unless two or more separate and independent controller devices are provided, two of which shall complete both the driving-machine motor and the driving-machine brake circuits in either direction of travel.

Elevators employing a two- or three-phase alternating-current (AC) driving-machine motor, which is not driven from a direct-current (DC) source through a static inverter, shall be provided with a means to inhibit the flow of alternating current in each phase.

The control circuits shall be designed and installed so that a single ground or short circuit shall not prevent both the normal terminal stopping device and final terminal stopping device control circuits from stopping the car.

2.25.3.5 Additional Requirements for Winding-Drum Machines. Final terminal stopping devices for winding-drum machines shall conform to 2.25.3.5.1 through 2.25.3.5.3.

2.25.3.5.1 Stopping switches, located on and operated by the driving machine, shall not be driven by chains, ropes, or belts.

2.25.3.5.2 Where a two- or three-phase AC driving-machine motor is used, the main line circuit to the driving-machine motor and the circuit of the driving-machine brake coil shall be directly opened either by the contacts of the machine stop switch or by stopping switches mounted in the hoistway and operated by a cam attached to the car. The opening of these contacts shall occur before or coincident with the opening of the final terminal stopping switch required by 2.25.3.2.

2.25.3.5.3 Driving machines equipped with a DC brake and having a DC main line control switch in the driving-machine motor circuit controlled by a final terminal stopping switch located in the hoistway and operated by a cam attached to the car need not conform to 2.25.3.5.2. This does not eliminate the need for a machine-operated switch.

2.25.4 Emergency Terminal Stopping Means

2.25.4.1 Emergency Terminal Speed-Limiting Device. Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall be installed on all elevators where reduced-stroke buffers are used (see 2.22.4.1.2 and 2.26.2.12), and shall conform to 2.25.4.1.1 through 2.25.4.1.9.

- (22) **2.25.4.1.1** If the normal terminal stopping device fails to slow down the car at the terminal as intended, the emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall reduce the car and counterweight speed such that the rated buffer striking speed is not exceeded. The emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall remove power from the driving-machine motor and brake and shall either

(a) apply an emergency brake(s) conforming to 2.19.3 in combination with the removal of power from the driving-machine motor and brake (see also 2.25.4.1.3) or

(b) apply an emergency brake(s) conforming to 2.19.3 if removal of power from the driving-machine motor and brake fails to reduce the car and counterweight speed as intended

2.25.4.1.2 The operation of the emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall be independent of the operation of the normal terminal stopping device such that the failure of the normal terminal stopping device shall not prevent the emergency terminal speed-limiting device from functioning as specified, except that

(a) a common position-sensing actuating means (e.g., a cam) not physically part of the position-sensing devices shall be permitted for the actuation of both the position-sensing device of the emergency terminal speed-limiting device and the position-sensing device of the normal terminal stopping device

(b) a common member (e.g., tape, target, or wire) that is sensed by both the emergency terminal speed-limiting device and the normal terminal stopping means shall be permitted, provided that both of the following apply:

(1) the member is monitored such that when its presence is not detected, this shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(2) the common member is securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect the operation of the sensors

(c) a common mounting means shall be permitted for the position-sensing devices of the emergency terminal speed-limiting device and the normal terminal stopping device

2.25.4.1.3 The car speed-sensing device used for the emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall be permitted to be either a separate car speed-sensing device from that of the normal speed control system or the same car speed-sensing device, provided that a separate means is used to continuously verify the proper operation of this speed-sensing device. Where the same car speed-sensing device is used, the detection of a failure of this car speed-sensing device shall cause the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake.

The car speed-sensing device(s) and, where required, the verification means described above, shall conform to the following:

(a) A common actuating means (e.g., a driving-machine shaft or brake drum) shall be permitted, provided that it is not dependent on the following connection types, unless the connection is continuously monitored:

(1) traction (excluding the traction between the drive sheave and suspension means and the traction between the governor and governor rope)

(2) friction (except for interference fits)

(3) a flexible coupling where positive engagement is not assured between coupling halves

Where monitoring is required, the monitoring shall detect a failure that prevents conformance with this requirement and shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

(b) A common member (e.g., tape, target, or wire) that is sensed by both speed-sensing devices shall be permitted, provided that

(1) the member is monitored such that when its presence is not detected, this shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(2) the common member is securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect the operation of the sensors

(c) A common mounting means shall be permitted.

2.25.4.1.4 The emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall provide a retardation not in excess of 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2).

2.25.4.1.5 The emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall be designed and installed so that a single short circuit caused by a combination of grounds, or by other conditions, shall not render the device ineffective.

2.25.4.1.6 The emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall be located on the car or in the hoistway, a machinery space, a machine room, a control space, or a control room, and shall be operated by the movement of the car.

2.25.4.1.7 Mechanically operated switches, where located on the car or in the hoistway, shall conform to 2.25.3.1.

2.25.4.1.8 Where the operation of emergency terminal speed-limiting devices is dependent on car position relative to the terminal landings

(a) friction or traction drives shall not be used for the determination of the position of the car relative to the terminal landings, except where (1) or (2) is complied with

(1) The position-sensing device for the emergency terminal speed-limiting device is driven by the overspeed governor, and the car position is corrected before the car approaches a terminal landing and compensates for governor rope creep over the governor sheave.

(2) An additional, separate emergency terminal speed-limiting position-sensing device not relying on the same friction or traction drive is used to verify the emergency terminal speed-limiting device position-sensing device. When the verification determines that the position-sensing devices deviate to the extent that the emergency terminal speed-limiting device cannot

stop the car as required, the power shall be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake.

(b) if tape, chain, or rope is used for connection to the car, a switch shall be provided to remove electrical power from the driving-machine motor and brake should this connection fail (see 2.26.2.6)

2.25.4.1.9 Where magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state devices are used for position sensing, a single short circuit caused by a combination of grounds or by other conditions, or the failure of any single magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state device shall not

(a) render the emergency terminal speed-limiting device inoperative

(b) permit the car to restart after a normal stop

2.25.4.2 Emergency Terminal Stopping Device. Emergency terminal stopping devices shall be installed on all elevators with static control and rated speeds over 1 m/s (200 ft/min) and shall conform to 2.25.4.2.1 and 2.25.4.2.2, except for elevators with static generator-field control that use the normal terminal stopping device to limit the generator-field current directly, or elevators that have an emergency terminal speed-limiting device that complies with 2.25.4.1.

2.25.4.2.1 The emergency terminal stopping device shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake should the normal stopping means and the normal terminal stopping device fail to cause the car to slow down at the terminal as intended.

2.25.4.2.2 The emergency terminal stopping device shall function independently of the normal terminal stopping device and the normal speed control system such that the failure of the normal terminal stopping device and/or the failure of the normal speed control system shall not prevent the emergency terminal stopping device from functioning as specified, except that (22)

(a) for both the position-sensing device of the emergency terminal stopping device and the position-sensing device of the normal terminal stopping device

(1) a common actuating means (e.g., a cam) that is not physically part of the position-sensing devices shall be permitted

(2) a common member (e.g., tape, target, or wire) that is sensed by both the emergency terminal stopping device and normal terminal stopping means shall be permitted, provided that both of the following apply:

(-a) the member is monitored such that when its presence is not detected, this shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(-b) the common member is securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect the operation of the sensors

(3) a common mounting means shall be permitted for the position-sensing devices of the emergency terminal stopping device and the normal terminal stopping device

(b) The car speed-sensing device used for the emergency terminal stopping device shall be permitted to be either a separate car speed-sensing device from that of the normal speed control system or the same car speed-sensing device, provided that a separate means is used to continuously verify the proper operation of this speed-sensing device. Where the same car speed-sensing device is used, the detection of a failure of this car speed-sensing device shall cause the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake.

The car speed-sensing device(s) and, where required, the verification means described above, shall conform to the following:

(1) A common actuating means (e.g., a driving-machine shaft or brake drum) shall be permitted, provided that it is not dependent on any of the following connection types, unless the connection is continuously monitored:

(-a) traction (excluding the traction between the drive sheave and suspension means and the traction between the governor and governor rope),

(-b) friction (except for interference fits), or

(-c) a flexible coupling where positive engagement is not assured between coupling halves

Where monitoring is required, the monitoring shall detect a failure that prevents conformance with this requirement and shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

(2) A common member (e.g., tape, target, or wire) that is sensed by both speed-sensing devices shall be permitted, provided that

(-a) the member is monitored such that when its presence is not detected, this shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(-b) the common member is securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect the operation of the sensors

(3) A common mounting means shall be permitted.

SECTION 2.26

OPERATING DEVICES AND CONTROL EQUIPMENT

2.26.1 Operation and Operating Devices

2.26.1.1 Types of Operating Devices. All operating devices shall be the enclosed electric type.

Rope or rod operating devices actuated manually, or rope operating devices actuated by wheels, levers, or cranks, shall not be used.

2.26.1.2 For Car-Switch Operation Elevators. Handles of lever-type operating devices of car-switch operation elevators shall be arranged so that they will return to the stop position and latch there automatically when the hand of the operator is removed.

2.26.1.3 Additional Operating Devices for Elevators Equipped to Carry One-Piece Loads Greater Than Their Rated Load.

Elevators equipped to carry one-piece loads greater than their rated load shall be provided with an additional operating device of the continuous-pressure type to operate the elevator at a speed not exceeding 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) under such conditions. The normal operating devices shall be inoperative during such operation (see 2.16.7.10).

2.26.1.4 Inspection Operation. See [Nonmandatory Appendix R, Table R-1](#).

2.26.1.4.1 General Requirements

(a) *Operating Devices*

(1) Operating devices for Inspection Operation shall be provided

(-a) on the top of the car

(-b) at the inspection and test panel when required by 2.7.6.5.2(h)

(2) Operating devices for Inspection Operation shall also be permitted

(-a) in the car

(-b) in a machinery space outside the hoistway

(-c) in a machine room

(-d) in a control space outside the hoistway

(-e) in a control room

(-f) in the pit in accordance with 2.7.5.2.2

(-g) at a working platform in accordance with 2.7.5.3.6

(b) A switch for transferring control of the elevator to the operating devices for Inspection Operation shall be provided; the switch shall

(1) be manually operated

(2) be labeled "INSPECTION"

(3) have two positions, labeled "INSPECTION" or "INSP" and "NORMAL" or "NORM"

(4) when in the "INSPECTION" position

(-a) enable Inspection Operation by means of the inspection operating devices

(-b) except as provided in 2.26.1.4.2(f), cause the movement of the car to be solely under the control of the inspection operating devices that shall be one of the following:

(-1) through a contact that is positively opened mechanically; their opening shall not depend solely on springs

(-2) SIL rated with a SIL equal to or greater than the SIL indicated for the applicable device shown in [Table 2.26.4.3.2](#)

(-c) disable automatic power door opening and closing and car leveling, except as provided in 2.26.1.4.2(f)

(5) when in the "NORMAL" position, disable Inspection Operation by means of the inspection operating devices

(c) Inspection operating devices shall be

(1) the continuous-pressure type

(2) labeled "UP" and "DOWN," respectively

(d) Inspection Operation shall conform to the following:

(1) The speed of the car shall not exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

For elevators with static control, a means independent from the normal means to control the speed shall be provided to limit the inspection speed to a maximum of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), should the normal means to control this speed (mechanical, electrical, or solid-state devices) fail to do so.

The car speed-sensing device used for the means to limit the speed of the car while on Inspection Operation shall be permitted to be either a separate car speed-sensing device from that of the normal speed control system or the same car speed-sensing device, provided that a separate means is used to continuously verify the proper operation of this speed-sensing device. Where the same car speed-sensing device is used, the detection of a failure of this car speed-sensing device while on Inspection Operation shall cause the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake.

The car speed-sensing device(s) and, where required, the verification means described above shall conform to the following:

(-a) A common actuating means (e.g., a driving-machine shaft or brake drum) shall be permitted, provided that it is not dependent on any of the following connection types, unless the connection is continuously monitored:

(-1) traction (excluding the traction between the drive sheave and suspension means and the traction between the governor and governor rope)

(-2) friction (except for interference fits)

(-3) a flexible coupling where positive engagement is not assured between coupling halves

Where monitoring is required, the monitoring shall detect a failure that prevents conformance with this requirement while on Inspection Operation and shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

(-b) A common member (e.g., tape, target, or wire) that is sensed by both speed-sensing devices shall be permitted, provided that

(-1) the member is monitored such that when its presence is not detected while on Inspection Operation, this shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(-2) the common member is securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect the operation of the sensors

(-c) A common mounting means shall be permitted.

(2) Inspection Operation shall be subject to the electrical protective devices required by 2.26.2, except as permitted by 2.26.1.5

(3) Fully closed doors shall be permitted to be held in the closed position with power applied.

(e) Inspection Operation shall be used only by elevator personnel.

2.26.1.4.2 Top-of-Car Inspection Operation. Top-of-car Inspection Operation shall conform to 2.26.1.4.1 and the following:

(a) A stop switch (see 2.26.2.8) shall be permanently located on the car top and readily accessible to a person while standing at the hoistway entrance normally used for access to the car top.

(b) The transfer switch [see 2.26.1.4.1(b)] shall be located on the car top and shall be designed to prevent accidental transfer from the "INSPECTION" position to the "NORMAL" position. Where the inspection operating devices are of the portable type [see (e)], the transfer switch shall be permitted to be included in the portable unit.

(c) A separate device of the continuous-pressure type labeled "ENABLE" shall be provided adjacent to the inspection operating devices.

(d) The inspection operating devices shall become effective only when the "ENABLE" device is activated.

(e) The inspection operating devices [see 2.26.1.4.1(c)] shall be permitted to be the portable type, provided that

(1) the "ENABLE" device [see (c)] and a stop switch, in addition to the stop switch required in (a), are included in the portable unit

(2) the flexible cord is permanently attached so that the portable unit cannot be detached from the car top

(f) Separate additional devices of the continuous-pressure type shall be permitted to be provided on the car top to make power door opening and closing and automatic car leveling operative from the top of the car for testing purposes.

(g) When on top-of-car Inspection Operation, a separate additional device shall be permitted to render ineffective the top final terminal stopping device, and the buffer switch for gas spring-return counterweight oil buffers, in conformance with the requirements of 2.26.4.3, 2.26.9.3, 2.26.9.3.1(a), and 2.26.9.4, and it shall allow the car to be moved to a position in conformance with the requirements of 2.7.4.5 and 2.7.5.1.3(c).

(h) The inspection operating devices shall be readily accessible to a person while standing in one of the horizontal areas described in 2.14.1.6.2 on the car enclosure top.

2.26.1.4.3 In-Car Inspection Operation. When in-car Inspection Operation is provided, it shall conform to 2.26.1.4.1, and the transfer switch [see 2.26.1.4.1(b)]

(a) shall be located in the car.

(b) shall be key-operated or placed behind a locked cover. Keys to operate or access the switch shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(c) shall be rendered ineffective if top-of-car Inspection Operation is activated.

(d) when in the “INSPECTION” position, shall not enable hoistway access switch(es). A third switch position labeled “ACCESS ENABLE” shall be permitted to enable the hoistway access switches (see 2.12.7.3.1).

2.26.1.4.4 Machinery Space Outside the Hoistway, Machine Room, Control Space Outside the Hoistway, Control Room, Pit, Landing, and Working Platform Inspection Operations. Where Inspection Operation in a machinery space outside the hoistway, in a machine room, in a control space outside the hoistway, in a control room, in the pit, or at an inspection and test panel or a working platform is provided, it shall conform to 2.26.1.4.1 and the following:

(a) The transfer switch [see 2.26.1.4.1(b)] shall be

(1) located in the pit, where provided in accordance with 2.7.5.2.2 (Pit Inspection Operation)

(2) located in the inspection and test panel as required by 2.7.6.5.2(h) (Landing Inspection Operation)

(3) located in the machinery space outside the hoistway, in a machine room, in a control space outside the hoistway, or in a control room, as applicable

(4) located at a working platform where required by 2.7.5.3.6 (Working Platform Inspection Operation)

(5) rendered ineffective if top-of-car Inspection Operation, in-car Inspection Operation, or Hoistway Access Operation is activated, or when a car door or hoistway door bypass switch is in the “BYPASS” position

(b) Only one mode of the Inspection Operation as described in (a)(1) through (a)(4) shall be permitted to be operative at any time. If more than one Inspection Operation transfer switch, as permitted in (a)(1) through (a)(4), is in the “INSPECTION” position, the controls shall prevent operation of the car from any location as described in (a)(1) through (a)(4).

(c) Pit Inspection Operation, where provided, shall also conform to 2.26.1.4.2(c) and 2.26.1.4.2(d). When the pit transfer switch is in the “INSPECTION” position, the controls shall prevent operation of the car when any inspection transfer switch, other than that in the pit, is in the “INSPECTION” position, or when Hoistway Access Operation is enabled.

(d) Where Inspection Operation from a working platform is provided and the working platform transfer switch is in the “INSPECTION” position, the controls shall prevent operation of the car when any other inspection transfer switch, other than that at the working platform, is in the

“INSPECTION” position, or when Hoistway Access Operation is enabled.

2.26.1.5 Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits. A single set of switches marked “CAR DOOR BYPASS” and “HOISTWAY DOOR BYPASS” shall be provided. The switches shall be accessible from outside of the hoistway. They shall be located in one of the following:

(a) a controller enclosure for the elevator located outside the hoistway in a control room, a control space, the machine room, a machinery space, or a motor controller complying with 2.7.6.3.2

(b) the inspection and test panel (see 2.7.6.5)

The switches shall prepare the control system so that, only when top-of-car or in-car Inspection Operation is activated, the car shall be permitted to be moved with the door closed detection means or door locked detection means bypassed. The switches shall conform to 2.26.1.5.1 through 2.26.1.5.8.

2.26.1.5.1 When switching to either “BYPASS” or the “OFF” position, the switches shall either (22)

(a) have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs or

(b) be SIL rated with a SIL equal to or greater than the SIL indicated for the applicable device shown in Table 2.26.4.3.2

2.26.1.5.2 The positions of the “BYPASS” switches shall be clearly marked “BYPASS” and “OFF.”

2.26.1.5.3 The related circuits shall comply with 2.26.9.3 and 2.26.9.4.

2.26.1.5.4 When either or both of the switches are in the “BYPASS” position, all means of operation shall be made inoperative except top-of-car and in-car Inspection Operation [see also 2.26.1.4.4(c) and 2.26.1.4.4(d)].

2.26.1.5.5 When the “CAR DOOR BYPASS” switch is in the “BYPASS” position, it shall permit top-of-car and in-car Inspection Operation with bypassed car door interlocks or car door or gate closed detection means.

2.26.1.5.6 When the “HOISTWAY DOOR BYPASS” switch is in the “BYPASS” position, it shall permit top-of-car and in-car Inspection Operation with bypassed hoistway door interlocks or bypassed door closed detection means.

2.26.1.5.7 Each of the “BYPASS” switches shall be permitted to be replaced by a set of switches used to bypass individual groups of hoistway door interlocks, car door interlocks, or car door or gate closed detection means. Each switch in this set shall be marked to identify the specific hoistway or car door interlocks or door or gate closed detection means bypassed.

2.26.1.5.8 A warning sign shall be mounted adjacent to the “BYPASS” switches stating, “Jumpers shall not be used to bypass hoistway door or car door interlocks or door or gate closed detection means.”

2.26.1.6 Operation in Leveling or Truck Zone. Operation of an elevator in a leveling or truck zone at any landing by a car-leveling or truck-zoning device, when the hoistway doors, or the car doors or gates, or any combination thereof, are not in the closed position, is permissible, subject to the requirements of 2.26.1.6.1 through 2.26.1.6.7.

2.26.1.6.1 Operating devices of manually operated car-leveling devices or truck-zoning devices shall be the continuous-pressure type and located in the car.

2.26.1.6.2 Car platform guards, conforming to 2.15.9, shall be provided. Where a car-leveling device is used, landing-sill guards, conforming to 2.11.12.7, shall also be provided.

2.26.1.6.3 The leveling zone at any landing shall not extend more than 450 mm (18 in.) above and below any landing where an automatic leveling device is used, and not more than 250 mm (10 in.) above and below any landing where a manually operated leveling device is used.

2.26.1.6.4 The truck zone at any landing shall not extend more than 1 700 mm (67 in.) above the landing.

2.26.1.6.5 Where a truck or leveling zone for one hoistway entrance extends into the door interlocking zone for a second entrance, the truck-zoning or leveling operation shall be inoperative unless the hoistway door at the second entrance is in the closed position.

Where a truck or leveling zone for one hoistway entrance extends into the leveling zone for a second entrance, the leveling operation for the second entrance shall be inoperative while the hoistway door at the first entrance is open.

2.26.1.6.6 A leveling or truck-zoning device shall not move the car at a speed exceeding 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

For elevators with static control, a means independent from the normal means to control the speed shall be provided to limit the leveling speed to a maximum of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) with the doors open, should the normal means to control this speed (mechanical, electrical, or solid-state devices) fail to do so.

The car speed-sensing device used for the means to limit the speed of the car while leveling with open doors shall be permitted to be either a separate car speed-sensing device from that of the normal speed control system or the same car speed-sensing device, provided that a separate means is used to continuously verify the proper operation of this speed-sensing device. Where the same car speed-sensing device is used, the detection of a failure of this car speed-sensing device while leveling with open doors shall cause

the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake.

The car speed-sensing device(s) and, where required, the verification means described above shall conform to the following:

(a) A common actuating means (e.g., a driving-machine shaft or brake drum) shall be permitted, provided that it is not dependent on any of the following connection types, unless the connection is continuously monitored:

(1) traction (excluding the traction between the drive sheave and suspension means and the traction between the governor and governor rope)

(2) friction (except for interference fits)

(3) a flexible coupling where positive engagement is not assured between coupling halves

Where monitoring is required, the monitoring shall detect a failure that prevents conformance with this requirement while leveling with open doors and shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

(b) A common member (e.g., tape, target, or wire) that is sensed by both speed-sensing devices shall be permitted, provided that

(1) the member is monitored such that when its presence is not detected, this shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(2) the common member is securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect the operation of the sensors

(c) A common mounting means shall be permitted.

2.26.1.6.7 For elevators with static control, an inner landing zone extending not more than 75 mm (3 in.) above and 75 mm (3 in.) below the landing shall be provided. A car shall not move if it stops outside of the inner landing zone unless the doors are fully closed.

2.26.1.7 Executable Software

2.26.1.7.1 Executable software used in performing (22) one or more of the functions listed below shall have a unique software identifier (USI) for each software version. Changes in executable software for any of the following functions shall require a new USI:

(a) working areas in the pit (see 2.7.5.2) with device active [see 2.7.5.2.1(b)(3)]

(b) hoistway access switches (see 2.12.7)

(c) power operation of hoistway doors and car doors (see Section 2.13)

(d) protection against traction loss (see 2.20.8.1)

(e) broken suspension member (see 2.20.8.2)

(f) suspension-member residual strength (see 2.20.8.3)

(g) normal terminal stopping devices (see 2.25.2)

(h) emergency terminal stopping means (see 2.25.4)

(i) operating devices and control equipment (see Section 2.26)

- (j) emergency communications (see 2.27.1.1)
- (k) emergency or standby power system (see 2.27.2)
- (l) Firefighters' Emergency Operation: automatic elevators (see 2.27.3 through 2.27.6)
- (m) Occupant Evacuation Operation (see 2.27.11)
- (n) emergency operation and signal devices (see 8.4.10)
- (o) test enable operation (see 2.26.14)
- (p) any operating mode restricted to Group 1 (see 8.1.2)
- (q) restricted opening of car doors (see 2.14.5.7)
- (r) the additional requirements for passenger overload in the down direction (see 2.16.8)
- (s) a function, device, or means that is required by the Code to be manually reset

- (22) **2.26.1.7.2** Software-based parameters are permitted and shall not modify the USI when adjusted or selected in the field. See also 8.14.1(b).

2.26.1.7.3 The control system shall include a means to view the USI(s) on-site. Examples of viewing means include, but are not limited to, one or more of the following:

- (a) electronic viewing that is part of the elevator or group of elevators
- (b) labeling of device
- (c) labeling or tags on the control or assembly

(22) **2.26.2 Electrical Protective Devices**

When an electrical protective device is activated (operated, opened), it shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake. [See also 2.26.3, 2.26.4.3, 2.26.4.4, 2.26.7, 2.26.8.3(c), 2.26.9.3, and 2.26.9.4.] Electrical protective devices shall be provided as specified in 2.26.2.1 through 2.26.2.39.

When an electrical protective device is activated (operated, opened), it shall be permitted to cause the emergency brake to apply (see 2.19.3).

2.26.2.1 Slack-Rope Switch. Winding-drum machines shall be provided with a slack-rope device equipped with a slack-rope switch of the enclosed manually reset type. This switch shall operate whenever the ropes are slack.

2.26.2.2 Motor-Generator Running Switch. Where generator-field control is used, means shall be provided to prevent the application of power to the elevator driving-machine motor and brake unless the motor-generator set connections are properly switched for the running condition of the elevator. It is not required that the electrical connections between the elevator driving-machine motor and the generator be opened in order to remove power from the elevator motor.

2.26.2.3 Compensating-Rope Sheave Switch.

Compensating-rope sheaves shall be provided with a compensating-rope sheave switch or switches mechanically opened by the compensating-rope sheave before the sheave reaches its upper or lower limit of travel.

2.26.2.4 Motor Field Sensing Means. Where direct current is supplied to an armature and shunt field of an elevator driving-machine motor, a motor field current sensing means shall be provided, which shall cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor armature and brake unless current is flowing in the shunt field of the motor, except for static control elevators provided with a device to detect an overspeed condition prior to, and independent of, operation of the governor overspeed switch, except that

(a) a common actuating means (e.g., a governor shaft or sheave) that is not physically part of the speed-sensing devices shall be permitted for the actuation of both the speed-sensing device of the overspeed detection device and the governor overspeed switch

(b) a common mounting means shall be permitted for the speed-sensing device of the overspeed detection device and the governor overspeed switch

This device shall cause power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor armature and machine brake.

2.26.2.5 Emergency Stop Switch. An emergency stop switch shall not be provided on passenger elevators. On all freight elevators, an emergency stop switch shall be provided in the car, and located in or adjacent to each car operating panel.

When open ("STOP" position), this switch shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

Emergency stop switches shall

- (a) be of the manually opened and closed type
- (b) have red operating buttons of the push-to-stop configuration
- (c) be conspicuously and permanently marked "STOP," and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions
- (d) while opened, cause the audible device to sound (see 2.27.1.2)

NOTE (2.26.2.5): See 2.26.2.21 for in-car stop switch requirements for passenger elevators.

2.26.2.6 Broken Rope, Tape, or Chain Switches. The switch or switches that shall be opened by a failure of a rope, tape, or chain shall be provided when required by 2.25.2.3.2 or 2.25.4.1.8(b).

2.26.2.7 Stop Switch in Pit. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided in the pit of every elevator (see 2.2.6).

2.26.2.8 Stop Switch on Top of Car. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided on the top of every elevator car.

2.26.2.9 Car Safety Mechanism Switch. A switch, conforming to 2.17.7, shall be required where a car safety is provided.

2.26.2.10 Speed Governor Overspeed Switch. A speed governor overspeed switch shall be provided when required by 2.18.4.1 and shall conform to 2.18.4.1.2, 2.18.4.1.3, 2.18.4.2, and 2.18.4.3.

2.26.2.11 Final Terminal Stopping Devices. Final terminal stopping devices, conforming to 2.25.3, shall be provided for every electric elevator.

2.26.2.12 Emergency Terminal Speed-Limiting Devices. Where reduced-stroke oil buffers are provided, as permitted by 2.22.4.1.2, emergency terminal speed-limiting devices conforming to 2.25.4.1 shall be provided.

2.26.2.13 Buffer Switches for Oil Buffers Used With Type C Car Safeties. Oil level and compression switches conforming to 2.17.8.2.7 and 2.17.8.2.8 shall be provided for all oil buffers used with Type C safeties (see 2.17.5.3).

2.26.2.14 Hoistway Door Interlocks and Hoistway Door Closed Detection Means. Hoistway door interlocks or hoistway door closed detection means conforming to Section 2.12 shall be provided for all elevators.

2.26.2.15 Car Door and Gate Closed Detection Means. Car door or gate closed detection means conforming to 2.14.4.2 shall be provided for all elevators, except when a car door interlock conforming to 2.26.2.28 is provided.

2.26.2.16 Emergency Terminal Stopping Devices. Emergency terminal stopping devices conforming to 2.25.4.2 shall be provided for all elevators where static control is used, unless exempted by 2.25.4.2.

2.26.2.17 Reserved for Future Use

2.26.2.18 Car Top Emergency Exit Electrical Device. An electrical device conforming to 2.14.1.5.1(f) shall be provided on the car top emergency exit cover.

2.26.2.19 Motor-Generator Overspeed Protection. Means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed automatically from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake should a motor-generator set, driven by a DC motor, overspeed excessively.

2.26.2.20 Electric Contacts for Hinged Car Platform Sills. Hinged car platform sills, where provided, shall be equipped with electric contacts conforming to 2.15.16.

2.26.2.21 In-Car Stop Switch. On passenger elevators, a stop switch, either key operated or behind a locked cover, shall be provided in the car and located in or adjacent to the car operating panel. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

The switch shall be clearly and permanently marked "STOP" and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions.

When opened ("STOP" position), this switch shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

2.26.2.22 Buffer Switches for Gas Spring-Return Oil Buffers. Buffer switches conforming to 2.22.4.5.1(c) shall be provided.

2.26.2.23 Stop Switch in Remote Machine and Control Rooms. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided in remote machine and control rooms where required by 2.7.8.

2.26.2.24 Stop Switch for Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided where required by 2.7.3.5.

2.26.2.25 Blind Hoistway Emergency Door Electric Contact. An electric contact conforming to 2.11.1.2(e) shall be provided on every emergency door in a blind hoistway.

2.26.2.26 Pit Access Door Electric Contact. An electric contact shall be provided on each pit access door where required by 2.2.4.5.

2.26.2.27 Stop Switch in Remote Counterweight Hoistways. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided in the remote counterweight hoistway where required by 2.3.3.3.

2.26.2.28 Car Door Interlock. An interlock conforming to 2.14.4.2 shall be provided where required by 2.14.4.2.1.

2.26.2.29 Ascending Car Overspeed Protection Device. An overspeed device shall be provided when required by 2.19.1 and shall meet the requirements of 2.19.1.2(a).

2.26.2.30 Unintended Car Movement Device. An unintended car movement device shall be provided when required by 2.19.2 and shall meet the requirements of 2.19.2.2(a). Where generator-field control is used, this electrical protective device shall also cause the power to be removed from the drive motor of the motor-generator set.

2.26.2.31 Car Access Panel Locking Device. A locking device conforming to 2.14.2.6 shall be provided where required by 2.14.2.6(e).

2.26.2.32 Hoistway Access Opening Locking Device. Access openings in the hoistway shall be provided with a locking device where required by 2.11.1.4.

2.26.2.33 Firefighters' Stop Switch. Where required by 2.27.3.3.1(m), a firefighters' stop switch shall

- (a) be the manually opened and closed type
- (b) have red operating handles or buttons
- (c) be conspicuously and permanently marked "STOP," and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions
- (d) be a toggle or push-to-stop configuration

2.26.2.34 Unexpected Car Movement Device. An unexpected car movement device shall be provided where required by 2.7.5.1.2(c). This requirement shall be permitted to be satisfied by another device specified in 2.26.2, provided that the means required by 2.7.5.1.1 actuates the electrical device.

2.26.2.35 Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device. An electric contact on equipment access panels in the car shall be provided where required by 2.7.5.1.4 or 2.14.2.2(g).

2.26.2.36 Working Platform Electrical Device. An electric contact conforming to 2.14.4.2.4(b), 2.14.4.2.4(c), and 2.14.4.2.4(e) shall be provided where required by 2.7.5.3.1.

2.26.2.37 Retractable Stop Electrical Device. An electric contact conforming to 2.14.4.2.4(b), 2.14.4.2.4(c), and 2.14.4.2.4(e) shall be provided where required by 2.7.5.5(a).

- (22) **2.26.2.38 Ladder Electrical Device.** A ladder electrical device shall be provided where required by 2.2.4.2.7 or 2.2.4.2.8. Mercury tube switches shall not be used for this device.

2.26.2.39 Sway Control Guide Slack Suspension Detection Means. An electrical device conforming to the following shall be provided where required by 2.30.2(d):

- (a) It shall operate whenever any of the suspension members of the sway control guide become slack.
- (b) It shall be the manually reset type.

2.26.3 Contactors and Relays for Use in Critical Operating Circuits

Where electromechanical contactors or relays are provided to fulfill the requirements of 2.26.8.2 and 2.26.9.3 through 2.26.9.7, they shall be considered to be used in critical operating circuits. If a contact(s) on these electromechanical contactors or relays is used for monitoring purposes, it shall be prevented from changing state if the contact(s) used in a critical operating circuit fails to open in the intended manner. The ability of the monitoring contact(s) to perform this function shall not be solely dependent on springs.

2.26.4 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

2.26.4.1 All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

2.26.4.2 Electrical equipment shall comply with the requirements of 2.26.4.2.1 through 2.26.4.2.4. (22)

NOTE: Enclosures for motor controllers installed outside the specified spaces listed in 2.7.6.3.2 will require the additional marking "AGP" (accessible to general public) to indicate that the equipment enclosure is suitable for this application.

2.26.4.2.1 The following shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked in accordance with requirements of CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5:

- (a) motor controllers
- (b) motion controllers
- (c) operation controllers
- (d) assemblies containing (a), (b), or (c)

2.26.4.2.2 Operating devices shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked to one of the following:

- (a) CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5
- (b) the approved product safety standard or code applicable to the country where the equipment is installed (e.g., Canada or U.S.)

2.26.4.2.3 Electrical equipment that is not an electrical protective device, does not perform any other safety function(s), and is not described in 2.26.4.2.1 and 2.26.4.2.2 is not required to be listed/certified if it meets the following criteria:

- (a) The equipment does not include any component operating at voltage greater than 30 V rms or 42.4 V peak.
- (b) The equipment is located entirely in a Class 2 circuit in accordance with CSA C22.1, Part 1 or NFPA 70, as applicable, and is supplied with a certified/listed Class 2 power supply/transformer.
- (c) Failure of the equipment shall not render an electrical protective device ineffective.

2.26.4.2.4 Electrical equipment not covered by 2.26.4.2.1, 2.26.4.2.2, or 2.26.4.2.3 shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked to the approved safety standard or code applicable to the country where the equipment is installed (e.g., Canada or U.S.).

2.26.4.3 The devices covered by 2.26.2 and 2.26.14.1 shall meet the requirements of either 2.26.4.3.1 or 2.26.4.3.2. The SIL rating of the test enable device (see 2.26.14.1) that does not comply with 2.26.4.3.1 shall be not less than SIL 3. (22)

2.26.4.3.1 The devices covered by 2.26.2 shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs. Exceptions are devices described by 2.26.2.4, 2.26.2.19, 2.26.2.29, and 2.26.2.30; and 2.26.2.12, 2.26.2.16, and 2.26.2.38 where magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state devices are used. (22)

NOTE: Positive opening is achieved when all the contact-breaking elements are brought to their open position and when, for a significant part of the travel, there are no resilient

members (e.g., springs) between the moving contacts and the part of the actuator to which the actuating force is applied. An example of this is a contact complying with the requirements of IEC 60947-5-1:2009, Annex K.

2.26.4.3.2 The devices covered by 2.26.2 shall be listed/certified to a SIL rating in accordance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3 with a SIL rating equal to or greater than the SIL indicated for the applicable device shown in Table 2.26.4.3.2. They shall be labeled/marked with part identification. Wiring diagrams (see 8.6.1.6.3) shall include part identification, SIL, and certification information that shall be in accordance with the certifying organization's requirements.

Assemblies containing SIL rated devices shall be labeled or tagged with the statement: "Assembly contains SIL rated devices. Refer to Maintenance Control Program and wiring diagrams prior to performing work."

The detection of a dangerous fault (e.g., with diagnostic tests, proof-tests, or by any other means) in SIL rated devices that can tolerate a single fault shall cause the elevator to revert to a known fail-safe condition. Where necessary, to maintain the integrity of the SIL rated devices and to maintain the fail-safe condition prior to a second fault that could lead to a dangerous condition, a manual reset shall be required to remove the SIL rated devices from the fail-safe condition.

2.26.4.4 Control equipment shall be tested in accordance with the testing requirements of ISO 22200:2009. Control equipment tested in accordance with the testing requirements of EN 12016:1998 prior to 1 yr after the effective date of the 2013 edition of this Code need not be retested in accordance with the testing requirements of ISO 22200:2009.

The control equipment shall be exposed to interference levels at the test values specified for "safety circuits." The interference shall not cause any of the conditions described in 2.26.9.3.1(a) through 2.26.9.3.1(e) or render the traction-loss detection means ineffective, and shall not cause the car to move while on Inspection Operation. Testing shall be performed at a minimum of two frequencies in each of the ranges specified for safety circuits in Tables 1 through 7 of ISO 22200:2009. One frequency shall be within 5% of the low value of each range, and the second frequency shall be within 5% of the top value of each range.

2.26.4.4.1 The test for voltage dips in Table 6 of EN 12016:1998 shall be permitted to be conducted by either using the times specified in Table 6 or a voltage reduction of 30% of the nominal input voltage for 0.5 cycle at 60 Hz and a voltage reduction of 60% of nominal input voltage for 5 cycles at 60 Hz.

NOTE: The test requirements for voltage dips in 2.26.4.4.1 are adjusted for 60 Hz operation.

2.26.4.4.2 If enclosure doors or suppression equipment must remain installed to meet the above requirements, warning signs to that effect shall be posted on the control equipment.

2.26.4.5 In jurisdictions enforcing CSA C22.1, main line power disconnecting means shall not be opened automatically by a fire alarm system. (22)

2.26.5 System to Monitor and Prevent Automatic Operation of the Elevator With Faulty Door Circuits (22)

2.26.5.1 Power-Operated Mechanically Coupled Doors. Means shall be provided to monitor the position of power-operated car doors that are mechanically coupled with the landing doors while the car is in the unlocking zone, in order to:

(a) prevent automatic operation of the car if the car door is not closed (see 2.14.4.11), regardless of whether the portion of the circuits incorporating the car door closed detection means, car door interlock, or the door locked detection means of the landing door coupled with the car door, or any combination thereof, is closed or open, except as permitted in 2.26.1.6

(b) prevent the power closing of the doors during automatic operation if the car door is fully open and any combination of the following conditions exist:

(1) the car door closed detection means has detected the closed position or the car door interlock detection means has detected the closed and locked position

(2) the door locked detection means of the landing door that is coupled to the opened car door has detected the closed and locked position, except as required in 2.27.3.3.9

(3) the portions of the circuits incorporating the closed detection means or door locked detection means of the car door or landing door that is coupled to the opened car door are bypassed

2.26.5.2 Power-Operated Car Doors with Manually Operated Swing Hoistway Doors Means shall be provided to monitor the position of the car doors while the car is in the unlocking zone in order to

(a) prevent automatic operation of the car if the car door is not closed (see 2.14.4.11), regardless of whether the portion of the circuits incorporating the car door closed detection means, car door interlock, or door locked detection means of the landing door, or any combination thereof, is closed or open, except as permitted in 2.26.1.6

(b) prevent the power closing of the car door during automatic operation if the car door is fully open and any combination of the following conditions exists:

(1) the car door closed detection means has detected the closed position or the car door interlock detection means has detected the closed and locked position

(22)

Table 2.26.4.3.2
SIL for Electrical Protective Devices and Other Electrical Safety Functions

Requirement	Device Name	Safety Function	SIL
2.12.7.2.4	Hoistway access switches	Check Hoistway Access Operation	3
2.26.1.4.1(b)	Inspection transfer switch	Check on ability to enable Inspection Operation	3
2.26.1.5	Bypass switches	Check bypass device for bypassing landing and car door device(s)	3
2.26.1.6	Car-leveling or truck-zoning device	Check on leveling (releveling) with car and hoistway doors not in the closed position	2
2.26.2.1	Slack-rope switch	Check the tension of winding-drum-machine ropes	2
2.26.2.2	Motor-generator running switch	Check that the motor-generator is switched for the running condition	1
2.26.2.3	Compensating-rope sheave switch	Check the position limits of compensating-rope sheave	2
2.26.2.4	Motor field sensing means	Check for current flow in the motor shunt field	1
2.26.2.5	Emergency stop switch	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.6	Broken rope, tape, or chain switches	Check for a failure of a rope, tape, or chain	2
2.26.2.7	Stop switch in pit	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.8	Stop switch on top of car	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.9	Car safety mechanism switch	Check on the operation of the car safety mechanism	1
2.26.2.10	Speed governor overspeed switch	Check on overspeed	2
2.26.2.11	Final terminal stopping devices	Check that the car has passed a terminal landing	1
2.26.2.12	Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices	Check on retardation in the case of reduced-stroke buffers	2
2.26.2.13	Buffer switches for oil buffers used with Type C car safeties	Check on the return to normal extended position of buffer	1
2.26.2.14	Hoistway door interlocks and hoistway door closed detection means	Check on locked and/or closed position of landing doors	3
2.26.2.15	Car door and gate closed detection means	Check on closed position of car door [Note (1)]	3
2.26.2.16	Emergency terminal stopping devices	Check on stopping at terminal landings	1
2.26.2.18	Car top emergency exit electrical device	Check on the closed position of the car top exit	2
2.26.2.19	Motor-generator overspeed protection	Check on overspeed of DC-driven motor-generator sets	1
2.26.2.20	Electric contacts for hinged car platform sills	Check on the retracted position of the car platform sill (obsolete technology)	SIL rated device not permitted
2.26.2.21	In-car stop switch	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.22	Buffer switches for gas spring-return oil buffers	Check on the return to normal extended position of buffer	3
2.26.2.23	Stop switch in remote machine rooms and control rooms	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.24	Stop switch for machinery spaces and control spaces	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.25	Blind hoistway emergency door electric contact	Check on the closed position of blind hoistway door	2
2.26.2.26	Pit-access door electric contact	Check on the closed position of pit access doors	2
2.26.2.27	Stop switch in remote counterweight hoistways	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.28	Car door interlock	Check on locked and closed position of car doors	3
2.26.2.29	Ascending car overspeed protection device	Check on the ascending car overspeed protection means	2
2.26.2.30	Unintended car movement device	Check on unintended car movement with doors open	2
2.26.2.31	Car access panel locking device	Check on locked position of car access panel	SIL rated device not permitted [Note (2)]

Table 2.26.4.3.2
SIL for Electrical Protective Devices and Other Electrical Safety Functions (Cont'd)

Requirement	Device Name	Safety Function	SIL
2.26.2.32	Hoistway access opening locking device	Check on locked position of hoistway access openings	SIL rated device not permitted [Note (2)]
2.26.2.33	Firefighters' stop switch	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.34	Unexpected car movement device	Check on actuation of unexpected car movement means	3
2.26.2.35	In-car equipment access panel device	Check on closed position of access panel in the car	2
2.26.2.36	Working platform electrical device	Check on fully retracted position of working platform	4
2.26.2.37	Retractable stop electrical device	Check on fully retracted position of retractable stops	2
2.26.2.38	Ladder electrical device	Check on use of ladder	2
2.26.2.39	Sway control guide electrical device	Check for slack suspension on guide	2
2.26.14.1	Test enable device	Enable test enable operation	3

GENERAL NOTES:

- For the purposes of this Code, the SIL represents the requirement for a device operating in the low-demand mode and the probability of failure to perform its safety function on demand (see CEI IEC 61508-1, Table 2). However, where the device is used for continuous control to maintain functional safety, e.g., when the use of a stop switch solely prevents an elevator controller from operating in automatic operation, the SIL shall represent the requirement for a device considered operating in the high-demand mode and the dangerous failure rate of the device (see CEI IEC 61508-1, Table 3 and definition).
- For the purposes of this Code, SIL refers to SIL rating of an E/E/PES to the applicable requirements of CEI IEC 61508-2 and CEI IEC 61508-3.
- The SIL values specified in this Table are based on a proof-test frequency of no more than half the rate of demand on the safety function. The inspection frequencies provided in [Nonmandatory Appendix N](#) serve as a reference to this proof-test interval and are addressed in the Maintenance Control Program. See [8.6.1.4.1\(a\)](#).
- It is possible to use several lower SIL systems to satisfy the need for a higher SIL function, provided that the implementation is certified.
- The summary of functions described in the "Safety Function" column are for reference only. The referenced Code item in the "Requirement" column must be used to determine the safety function of the item in the "Device Name" column.

NOTES:

- For the application of a SIL 3 E/E/PES device for freights and cars with swing hoistway doors, independent monitoring of the closed car door gate position by the elevator control is required to prevent the car from moving if the car/gate door is open.
- A device rated SIL 4 or less cannot fulfill this function.

(2) the door locked detection means of the landing door associated with the opened car door has detected the closed and locked position, except as required in [2.27.3.3.9](#)

(3) the portions of the circuits incorporating any combination of the following are bypassed:

- (-a) closed detection means of the car door
- (-b) door locked detection means of the car door
- (-c) door locked detection means of the landing door associated with the opened car door

2.26.6 Phase Protection of Motors

Elevators having a polyphase AC power supply shall be provided with means to prevent the starting of the elevator drive motor or door motor if a reversal of phase rotation, or phase failure of the incoming polyphase AC power, will cause the elevator car or elevator door(s) to operate in the wrong direction.

2.26.7 Installation of Capacitors or Other Devices or Means to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective (22)

The installation of capacitors or other devices or means, the operation or failure of which will cause unsafe operation of the elevator, is prohibited.

Means (e.g., hardware, software, or parameter) that render electrical protective devices (see [2.26.2](#)) or the traction-loss detection means (see [2.20.8.1](#)) ineffective shall not be permanently installed (see [8.6.1.6.1](#)) except as permitted in the following:

- (a) landing Inspection Operation [see [2.7.6.5.2\(h\)](#)]
- (b) hoistway access switch operation (see [2.12.7.3.3](#))
- (c) top-of-car Inspection Operation additional device [see [2.26.1.4.2\(g\)](#)]
- (d) Inspection Operation with open door circuits (see [2.26.1.5](#))
- (e) operation in leveling or truck zone (see [2.26.1.6](#))
- (f) test enable operation (see [2.26.14](#))

2.26.8 Release and Application of Driving-Machine Brakes

2.26.8.1 Driving-machine brakes shall not be electrically released until power has been applied to the driving-machine motor except as permitted by 2.7.6.4.3.

2.26.8.2 Two means shall be provided to independently remove power from the brake. The electrical protective devices required by 2.26.2 shall control both means, except that leveling shall be permitted to take place with power opening of doors and gates in conformance with 2.13.2.1.1 and 2.13.2.2.1.

One of the means shall be either a contactor or a SIL rated device(s) with a SIL of not less than the highest SIL of the function for the electrical protective devices involved with removing power from the brake and shall be listed/certified in accordance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3. SIL rated devices shall be identifiable on wiring diagrams [see 8.6.1.2.2(a)] with part identification, SIL, and certification identification information that shall be in accordance with the certifying organization's requirements. This means is not required to remove power from the driving-machine motor.

If the brake circuit is ungrounded, power shall be interrupted at all power feed lines to the brake.

Assemblies containing SIL rated devices shall be labeled or tagged with the statement: "Assembly contains SIL rated devices. Refer to Maintenance Control Program and wiring diagrams prior to performing work."

2.26.8.3 The driving-machine brake shall apply automatically when

- (a) the operating device of a car switch or continuous-pressure-operation elevator is in the stop position
- (b) a normal stopping means functions
- (c) any electrical protective device is activated
- (d) there is a loss of power to the driving-machine brake
- (e) the traction-loss detection means is actuated [see 2.20.8.1(c)]

2.26.8.4 The application of the brake shall be permitted to occur on or before the completion of the slowdown and leveling operations, under conditions described in 2.26.8.3(a) and 2.26.8.3(b).

2.26.8.5 The brake shall not be permanently connected across the armature or field of a DC elevator driving-machine motor.

2.26.9 Control and Operating Circuits

The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 2.26.9.1 through 2.26.9.8.

2.26.9.1 If springs are used to actuate switches, contactors, or relays to break the circuit to stop an elevator at the terminal landings, they shall be the compression type.

2.26.9.2 The completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to interrupt the power to the elevator driving-machine motor or brake at the terminal landings, nor to stop the car when any of the electrical protective devices (see 2.26.2) operate. Requirement 2.26.9.2 does not apply to dynamic braking, nor to speed control switches.

2.26.9.3 Protection Against Failures

2.26.9.3.1 The occurrence of a single ground, the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; the failure of any single device that limits the leveling or truck zone; the failure of any single solid-state device not a part of a software system; or a failure of a software system in circuits not in conformance with 2.26.9.3.2(b) shall not (22)

(a) render any electrical protective device ineffective (see 2.26.2)

(b) permit the car to move beyond the leveling or truck zone if any hoistway door or car door interlock is unlocked or if any hoistway door or car door or gate closed detection means is not detecting the closed position (see 2.26.1.6)

(c) permit speeds in excess of those specified in 2.12.7.3.3(b), 2.26.1.4.1(d)(1), and 2.26.1.6.6

(d) permit the car to revert to normal operation when the electrical contact required by 2.7.5.2.1(b)(3) is in the open position or the electrical device as permitted in 2.7.5.5(b) is activated or on hoistway access switch operation (see 2.12.7.3), Inspection Operation (see 2.26.1.4), bypass operation (see 2.26.1.5), or test enable operation (see 2.26.14)

(e) render ineffective any hoistway door or car door interlock, car door or gate closed detection means, or hoistway door combination mechanical lock and closed detection means when either a hoistway access switch (see 2.12.7.3) or a "BYPASS" switch (see 2.26.1.5) is in the "OFF" position

(f) render ineffective the means in 8.14.1(b) that prevents changes to executable software or its related parameters

2.26.9.3.2 Methods used to satisfy 2.26.9.3.1 using software systems are permitted, provided that one of the following applies:

(a) a non-software-controlled means is also used to remove power from the driving-machine motor and brake.

(b) the software system and related circuits are listed/certified to a SIL rating that is in accordance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3. This software system and its related circuits shall have a SIL not less than the highest SIL value of the safety function(s) in Table 2.26.4.3.2 used in the circuit. The software system and related circuits shall be identifiable on wiring diagrams [see 8.6.1.2.2(a)] with part identification, SIL, and certification identification information that shall be in accordance with the certifying organization's requirements.

Assemblies containing SIL rated devices shall be labeled or tagged with the statement: "Assembly contains SIL rated devices. Refer to Maintenance Control Program and wiring diagrams prior to performing work."

2.26.9.4 Methods used to satisfy 2.26.9.3 shall be checked prior to each start of the elevator from a landing, when on automatic operation. When a single ground or failure as specified in 2.26.9.3 occurs, the car shall not be permitted to restart.

2.26.9.5 Except for elevators employing AC hoist motors driven from a DC source through a static inverter (see 2.26.9.6), elevators with driving motors employing static control without motor-generator sets shall conform to 2.26.9.5.1 through 2.26.9.5.4.

- (22) **2.26.9.5.1** Two means shall be provided to remove power independently from the driving-machine motor. At least one shall conform to either (a) or (b).

(a) An electromechanical contactor arranged to either

(1) open each time the car stops or

(2) open, at the latest, each time the car reverses direction, except for releveling; it shall be verified at each stop that there is no current flow exceeding normal leakage current through the other means

(b) An E/E/PES with a SIL not less than the highest SIL value of the applicable function as shown in Table 2.26.4.3.2 for the electrical protective devices involved and shall be listed/certified to a SIL rating that is in accordance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3. It shall be identifiable on wiring diagrams (see 8.6.1.6.3) with part identification, SIL, and certification identification information that shall be in accordance with the certifying organization's requirements.

Assemblies containing SIL rated devices shall be labeled or tagged with the statement: "Assembly contains SIL rated devices. Refer to Maintenance Control Program and wiring diagrams prior to performing work."

2.26.9.5.2 The means used for conformance with 2.26.9.5.1 shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine brake.

2.26.9.5.3 The electrical protective devices required by 2.26.2 and the traction-loss detection means required by 2.20.8.1 shall control both means, except that leveling shall be permitted to take place with power opening of doors and gates in conformance with 2.13.2.1.1 and 2.13.2.2.1.

2.26.9.5.4 Where contactors are used to satisfy 2.26.9.5.1 or 2.26.8.2, after each time the contactor is required to open in conformance with 2.26.9.5.1(a) or 2.26.9.5.2, the car shall not respond to a signal to start unless the contactor(s) is in the de-energized position. After each stop in conformance with 2.26.9.5.1(a)(2), the car shall not respond to a signal to start if current

flow exceeding normal leakage current through the other means is detected.

2.26.9.6 Elevators employing AC driving motors driven from a DC power source through a static inverter shall conform to 2.26.9.6.1 through 2.26.9.6.4.

2.26.9.6.1 Two separate means shall be provided to (22) independently inhibit the flow of alternating current through the solid-state devices that connect the DC power source to the AC driving motor. At least one of the means shall conform to either (a) or (b).

(a) An electromechanical relay arranged to either

(1) open each time the car stops or

(2) open, at the latest, each time the car reverses direction, except for releveling; it shall be verified at each stop that there is no current flow exceeding normal leakage current through the other means

(b) An E/E/PES with a SIL not less than the highest SIL value of the applicable function as shown in Table 2.26.4.3.2 for the electrical protective devices involved and shall be listed/certified to a SIL rating that is in accordance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3. It shall be identifiable on wiring diagrams (see 8.6.1.6.3) with part identification, SIL, and certification identification information that shall be in accordance with the certifying organization's requirements.

Assemblies containing SIL rated devices shall be labeled or tagged with the statement: "Assembly contains SIL rated devices. Refer to Maintenance Control Program and wiring diagrams prior to performing work."

2.26.9.6.2 The means used for conformance with 2.26.9.6.1(a) or 2.26.9.6.1(b) shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine brake circuit.

2.26.9.6.3 The electrical protective devices required by 2.26.2 and the traction-loss detection means required by 2.20.8.1 shall control both means that inhibit the flow of alternating current through the solid-state devices, except that leveling shall be permitted to take place with power opening of the doors and gates as restricted by 2.13.2.1.1 and 2.13.2.2.1.

2.26.9.6.4 Where relays are used to satisfy 2.26.9.6.1(a) and contactors are used to satisfy 2.26.8.2, after each time the relay is required to open in conformance with 2.26.9.6.1(a) or the contactor is required to open in conformance with 2.26.9.6.2, the car shall not respond to a signal to start unless the relay that inhibits the flow of alternating current through the solid-state devices, as well as the contactors in the brake circuit, are in the de-energized position. After each stop in conformance with 2.26.9.6.1(a)(2), the car shall not respond to a signal to start if current flow exceeding normal leakage current through the other means is detected.

2.26.9.7 Where generator-field control is used, means shall be provided to prevent the generator from building up and applying sufficient current to the elevator driving-machine motor to move the car when the elevator motor control switches are in the "OFF" position. The means used shall not interfere with maintenance of an effective dynamic-braking circuit during stopping and standstill conditions.

2.26.9.8 The control circuits shall be designed and installed so that the car speed in the down direction with rated load in the car, under normal operating conditions with the power supply on or off, shall not exceed governor tripping speed or 125% of rated speed, whichever is the lesser (see also 2.16.8).

2.26.10 Absorption of Regenerated Power

When a power source is used that, in itself, is incapable of absorbing the energy generated by an overhauling load, means for absorbing sufficient energy to prevent the elevator from attaining governor tripping speed or a speed in excess of 125% of rated speed, whichever is less, shall be provided on the load side of each elevator power supply line disconnecting means (see 2.16.8).

(22) 2.26.11 Car Platform to Hoistway Door Sills Vertical Distance

Where ICC A117.1, ADAAG, or ADA/ABAAG is not applicable, the vertical distance between the car platform sill and the hoistway door sill on passenger elevators shall be in accordance with the following:

- (a) The vertical distance shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.) on initial stop at a landing.
- (b) The car shall releve if the vertical distance exceeds 25 mm (1 in.) while loading or unloading.

2.26.12 Symbols

2.26.12.1 Where reference is made requiring wording to designate a specific function, the symbols shown in Table 2.26.12.1 shall be substituted for, or used in conjunction with, the required wording.

2.26.12.2 The emergency stop switch shall have the "STOP" and "RUN" positions conspicuously and permanently marked as required by 2.26.2.5(c).

(22) 2.26.12.3 Where Braille is provided, it shall conform to the requirements in Table 2.26.12.1.

NOTE [2.26.12]: See also ICC A117.1, ADAAG, ADA/ABAAG, and Nonmandatory Appendix E.

(22) 2.26.13 Remote Interaction Operation

When remote interaction operation (RIO) is provided, requirements 2.26.13.1 through 2.26.13.5 shall apply (see also Section 8.14).

2.26.13.1 When RIO is provided, a sign conforming to 8.13.2 shall be provided in letters not less than 25 mm (1 in.) high on the outside surface of the elevator controller or not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) high at the inspection and test panel, if provided, stating, "REMOTE INTERACTION OPERATION PROVIDED."

2.26.13.2 RIO shall only be permitted to perform the following actions on elevators on automatic operation:

- (a) register a car or hall call to cause a car to move to a non-secured floor
- (b) activate, deactivate, or set the state of features, operations, or functions associated with automatic or group automatic operation subject to the limitations identified in 2.26.13.3 through 2.26.13.5

NOTES [2.26.13.2(b)]:

- (1) Examples of features include but are not limited to parking the elevator, door dwell time, actuating sabbath or penthouse operation, actuation or deactivation of the automatic car lighting power saving feature (see 2.14.7.2.2), and changing the car parking floor. The ICC A117.1 minimum door dwell time requirement is an example of a limit specified in a referenced standard.
- (2) Documentation should be provided to confirm the request to remove service to any floor prior to using RIO for this function (see 8.6.11.16).
- (c) remove the car from group automatic operation, except as limited by 2.26.13.3 and 2.26.13.4

2.26.13.3 RIO shall not enable, disable, override, reset, or interfere with any of the following:

- (a) Hoistway Access Operation (see 2.12.7.3)
- (b) Inspection Operation (see 2.26.1.4)
- (c) emergency or standby power system (see 2.27.2)
- (d) Firefighters' Emergency Operation and signaling (see 2.27.3 through 2.27.6 and 2.27.10)
- (e) Occupant Evacuation Operation (see 2.27.11)
- (f) operation of elevators under Earthquake Emergency Conditions (see 8.4.10.1)
- (g) operation in leveling or truck zone (see 2.26.1.6)
- (h) any operating mode restricted to Group 1 (see 8.1.2)
- (i) any operation established by a nonmomentary switch in the car or on-site

NOTE [2.26.13.3(i)]: Where elevator status information is displayed on the status of the automatic operation of the elevators in other building information systems, such as building management systems or traffic displays, the information should be consistent on all systems.

- (j) designated attendant operation (see Section 1.3 and 2.27.5)
- (k) power-operated car and hoistway door or panel closing speed or force (see 2.13.3 and 2.13.4)

2.26.13.4 RIO shall not interfere with, modify, reset, render ineffective, nor render inoperative

- (a) any electrical protective device (see 2.26.2)

Table 2.26.12.1
Symbol Identification

Function	Tactile Symbol	Braille Message Where Provided	Proportions (Open Circles Indicate Unused Dots Within Each Braille Cell)
Door Open		 OP"EN"	
Rear/Side Door Open		 REAR/SIDE OP"EN"	
Door Close		 CLOSE	
Rear/Side Door Close		 REAR/SIDE CLOSE	
Main		 MA"IN"	
Alarm		 AL"AR"M	
Phone		 PH"ONE"	
Emergency Stop		 "ST"OP	

(b) the system to monitor and prevent automatic operation of the elevator with faulty door contact circuits (see 2.26.5)

(c) protection against traction loss (see 2.20.8.1)

(d) broken-suspension-member detection means (see 2.20.8.2)

(e) suspension member residual-strength detection means (see 2.20.8.3)

(f) normal terminal stopping (see 2.25.2)

(g) in-car door open buttons (see 2.13.3.3.2)

(h) car door reopening devices (see 2.13.5)

(i) restricted opening of car doors (see 2.14.5.7)

(j) the additional requirements for passenger overload in the down direction (see 2.16.8)

(k) any safety device or means incorporated through application of ASME A17.7

(l) motion control parameters

(m) a function or device that is required by the Code to be manually reset

(n) the software system or software in circuits used to comply with requirements in 2.26.9.3.2 and 2.26.9.4

(o) Inspection Operation with open door circuit (see 2.26.1.5)

2.26.13.5 RIO shall be designed to prohibit activation, deactivation, setting, or resetting the state of features, operations, or functions associated with automatic or group automatic operation that would violate any requirements of this Code or reference standards (see Part 9).

NOTE (2.26.13.5): Where RIO is used and the elevator is connected to an elevator management system, the status and initiated functions of automatic operation should be consistent between these systems.

2.26.13.6 RIO shall be restricted to and used only by elevator personnel or authorized personnel.

(22) 2.26.14 Test Enable Operation

Test enable operation shall be permitted to conduct limited and general tests with specific electrical protective devices made ineffective. Limited tests shall be permitted to be used for inspection and testing purposes only. The operation shall be enabled by the test enable device (TED).

Test enable operation shall not override or interfere with the manual reset means of any safety device that requires a manual reset.

2.26.14.1 TED Function, Location, Circuitry, Marking, and Security

2.26.14.1.1 Where test enable operation is provided, a sign shall be provided at the main line disconnect to indicate the location of the TED. The TED shall be a single device used to enable test enable operation and shall

(a) when not in the "OFF" position, cause test enable operation to permit car operation only from inspection operating devices or the test initiating means and

disable power operation of the hoistway door and car door or gate.

(b) be in a single location outside the hoistway meeting the following criteria:

(1) in a machine room, machinery space, control room, control space, or an inspection and test panel

(2) adjacent to an Inspection Operation transfer switch (see 2.26.1.4.1) and a stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), 2.26.2.5(b), and 2.26.2.5(c)

(c) be marked "TEST ENABLE DEVICE" or "TED" and it shall have three positions marked "LIMITED," "OFF," and "GENERAL" in that order from left to right.

(d) be identified with a sign in conformance with the requirements of 8.13.2. The sign shall be prominently posted adjacent to the TED and marked "WARNING! Test Enable Operation to bypass electrical protective devices."

(e) be key-operated or behind a locked cover. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(f) not enable test enable operation in the "LIMITED" position (see 2.26.14.3) until the car door contact and hoistway door interlock contacts are closed.

(g) not enable test enable operation in the "GENERAL" position (2.26.14.4) until the inspection transfer switch is in the "INSP" position and Inspection Operation is active.

(h) illuminate a visual indicator labeled "TEST ENABLE DEVICE ENABLED" or "TED ENABLED" provided on or adjacent to each inspection station (see 2.26.1.4.1) and the pit stop switch if a pit Inspection Operation device is not provided. The indicator(s) shall illuminate when the device is not in the "OFF" position [see (c)].

(i) permit test enable operation to render electrical protective device ineffective, except the unintended car movement device (see 2.26.2.30), according to the requirements of 2.26.14.3 (limited test) and 2.26.14.4 (general test).

(j) permit test enable operation to render traction-loss detection (see 2.20.8.1) ineffective according to the requirements of 2.26.14.4.

(k) cause Inspection Operation with open door circuits (see 2.26.1.5) to be ineffective.

2.26.14.1.2 The TED shall permit a test initiating means to request test enable operation to render electrical protective devices ineffective, individually or as a group.

2.26.14.1.3 Limited test operation shall be enabled only on completion of the following sequence:

Step 1. Actuate Inspection Operation.

Step 2. Position TED to "LIMITED"

Step 3. Remove from Inspection Operation.

2.26.14.1.4 General test operation shall be enabled only on completion of the following sequence:

Step 1. Actuate Inspection Operation.

Step 2. Position TED to "GENERAL."

2.26.14.1.5 If Firefighters' Emergency Operation or Occupant Evacuation Operation becomes effective while the elevator is in the general or limited test mode, the visual signal in 2.26.14.1.1(h) shall illuminate intermittently and the elevator shall remain in general or limited test mode.

2.26.14.2 Test Initiating Means. The test initiating means shall be permanently or temporarily wired to the elevator control system. The test initiating means shall include a manually operated device (e.g., keypad, switch).

NOTE (2.26.14.2): The manually operated device used for the test initiating means is permitted to be used for other functions.

2.26.14.3 Limited Test. When the TED is in the "LIMITED" position, test enable operation shall comply with 2.26.14.3.1 through 2.26.14.3.9.

2.26.14.3.1 Only a test initiating means located outside the hoistway, where a stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), 2.26.2.5(b), and 2.26.2.5(c) is also located, shall be permitted to request a limited test. Only one test initiating means shall be permitted to request a test at any time. When the TED is in the "LIMITED" position, test enable operation shall permit one or more of only the following electrical protective devices to be made ineffective provided the electrical protective device is not required to be manually reset prior to positioning the TED to the "LIMITED" position:

- (a) speed-governor overspeed switch (see 2.26.2.10)
- (b) emergency terminal speed-limiting devices (see 2.26.2.12)
- (c) emergency terminal stopping devices (see 2.26.2.16)
- (d) buffer switch, when provided (see 2.26.2.22)
- (e) ascending car overspeed device (see 2.26.2.29)
- (f) final terminal stopping devices (see 2.26.2.11)

2.26.14.3.2 Test enable operation shall not cause electrical protective devices to become ineffective if either or both of the following conditions apply:

- (a) a test is being requested by the test initiating means while test enable operation is terminating a test
- (b) the TED is not in the "LIMITED" position

2.26.14.3.3 Test enable operation shall only make ineffective the electrical protective devices requested by the test initiating means for test and inspection.

2.26.14.3.4 Electrical protective devices shall only be made ineffective for a single occurrence of the test. Electrical protective devices involved in the test shall only be made ineffective by manually operating the test initiating means.

2.26.14.3.5 Electrical protective devices made ineffective by test enable operation shall automatically be made effective when the test is complete (see 2.26.14.5).

2.26.14.3.6 Traction-loss detection means and any electrical protective devices requiring a manual reset that were actuated during the test shall remain actuated until manually reset.

2.26.14.3.7 Test enable operation shall be permitted to render electrical protective devices ineffective only if the electrical protective devices were effective prior to initiating the test.

2.26.14.3.8 When the TED is not in the "OFF" position and when the fire recall switch(es) (see 2.27.3.1 and 2.27.11.1.2) is in the "ON" position or when the fire alarm initiating device (see 2.27.3.2 and 2.27.11.5) is activated, the visual indicator(s) [see 2.26.14.1.1(h)] shall illuminate intermittently to alert the operator of an emergency.

2.26.14.3.9 If the car is in motion, the actuation of the seismic detection device (see 8.4.10.1.3) or counterweight displacement detection device (see 8.4.10.1.4) shall initiate an emergency stop by immediately removing power from the driving-machine motor and brake.

2.26.14.4 General Test. When the TED is in the "GENERAL" position, test enable operation shall comply with the requirements of 2.26.14.4.1 through 2.26.14.4.6.

2.26.14.4.1 General tests shall only be initiated by a test initiating means at the location of an Inspection Operation transfer switch.

2.26.14.4.2 Unless in the "LIMITED" position (see 2.26.14.3), test enable operation shall not permit electrical protective devices to become ineffective if a test is being requested by the test initiating means while the TED is not in the "GENERAL" position and one of the inspection stations is not in the "INSPECTION" position.

2.26.14.4.3 The inspection transfer switch used to take control of the elevator shall conform to the following:

- (a) A stop switch shall be adjacent to the inspection transfer switch used to take control.
- (b) Where the inspection transfer switch is inside the hoistway, the TED, when actuated, shall enable the test initiating means to select one or more electrical protective devices to be made ineffective, except the unintended car movement protection (see 2.26.2.30) and the electrical protective devices identified in 2.26.14.3.1(a) through 2.26.14.3.1(e).
- (c) Where the inspection transfer switch is outside the hoistway (see Nonmandatory Appendix R, Table R-1), the TED, when actuated, shall enable the test initiating means to select one or more electrical protective devices to be made ineffective.

2.26.14.4.4 Electrical protective devices selected that are made ineffective shall only remain ineffective while the TED is in the "GENERAL" position.

2.26.14.4.5 Test enable operation shall not make ineffective

(a) stop switches
(b) the following, unless the test initiating means is operated from the car top or inside the car:

- (1) hoistway door interlock detection means
- (2) hoistway door closed detection means
- (3) car door or gate closed detection means
- (4) car door interlock detection means

(c) any electrical protective device with a minimum required SIL rating greater than SIL 3 or any electrical protective device where a SIL rated device is not permitted (see [Table 2.26.4.3.2](#)).

2.26.14.4.6 When the TED is in the “GENERAL” position, test enable operation shall not reset any safety function that requires a manual reset.

2.26.14.5 Test Termination. Any test selected by the test initiating means shall be terminated and all electrical protective devices shall be made effective by any of the following:

(a) The TED is not in the “LIMITED” or “GENERAL” position.

(b) The TED is in the “LIMITED” position and an inspection transfer switch is actuated or Hoistway Access Operation is enabled (see [2.12.7](#)).

(c) The TED is in the “LIMITED” position and the seismic detection device (see [8.4.10.1.3](#)) or counterweight displacement detection device (see [8.4.10.1.4](#)) is actuated.

(d) The TED is in the “GENERAL” position and an Inspection Operation transfer switch is moved from the “INSP” position.

(e) Power is removed from the driving-machine motor and brake by any means or device that is not part of the limited or general test.

(f) A test is completed when the TED is in the “LIMITED” position.

(g) A stop switch is actuated.

(h) There is a power loss.

(i) A nonpermanent test initiating means is removed from its access point.

2.26.14.6 Monitoring the Test Initiating Means. Test enable operation shall monitor the status of the test initiating means (see [2.26.14.2](#)). Test enable operation shall not permit requests from the test initiation means to be effective and the indicator(s) of [2.26.14.1.1\(h\)](#) shall illuminate intermittently when the monitoring of the test initiating means detects any of the following conditions:

(a) The test initiating means is requesting a test when the TED is in the “OFF” position.

(b) The TED is in the “LIMITED” position and the test initiating means has not ceased to request a test for at least 10 s on the completion of a test.

2.26.14.7 Documentation. The electrical protective devices that can be made ineffective by test enable operation for limited and general tests and the TED shall be identified in the on-site documentation [see [8.6.1.2.2\(i\)](#)].

SECTION 2.27 EMERGENCY OPERATION AND SIGNALING DEVICES

NOTE ([Section 2.27](#)): Additional requirements, including those for firefighters’ communications systems, Fire Service Access Elevators (see [2.27.10](#)), and Occupant Evacuation Operation (see [2.27.11](#)) may be found in the building code.

2.27.1 Car Emergency Signaling Devices

2.27.1.1 Emergency Communications. The two-way communications shall conform to [2.27.1.1.1](#) through [2.27.1.1.6](#).

2.27.1.1.1 A communications means between the car and a location staffed by authorized personnel who can take appropriate action shall be provided.

2.27.1.1.2 If the call is not acknowledged [[2.27.1.1.3\(c\)](#)] within 45 s, the call shall be automatically directed to an alternate on- or off-site location.

2.27.1.1.3 The communications means within the car shall comply with the following requirements: (22)

(a) In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, see [Nonmandatory Appendix E](#). In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, see ICC A117.1, ADAAG, or ADA/ABAAG.

(b) On the panel that contains the “FIRE OPERATION” switch, there shall be a phone push button and either a message display [see (c)] or a visual indicator [see (d)]. Where the message display is on a panel adjacent to the car operating panel containing the “FIRE OPERATION” switch, an additional phone push button shall be permitted on that panel. Each push button shall be visible and permanently identified with the phone symbol (see [2.26.12.1](#)). The identification shall be on or adjacent to each phone push button. Actuation of a phone push button shall initiate the communications means

(c) A means to display a message shall be provided on the car operating panel that contains the “FIRE OPERATION” switch or an adjacent panel. A message shall be displayed that is activated by authorized personnel to acknowledge that communications are established. The message shall be permitted to be extinguished where necessary to display a new message [see (1) and (2)] or when the communications are terminated.

(1) Visual messages shall be displayed that permit authorized personnel to communicate with and obtain responses from a trapped passenger(s), including a passenger(s) who cannot verbally communicate or hear.

(2) A visual message shall be displayed that is activated by the authorized personnel to indicate when help is on the way. The message shall continue to be displayed until a new message is displayed [see 2.27.1.1.4(c)] or the communications are terminated.

(d) A visual indicator, when provided, shall illuminate to acknowledge when communication is established and shall extinguish when communication is terminated.

(e) The communications means shall provide on demand to authorized personnel information that identifies the building location and elevator number.

(f) The communications, once established, shall be disconnected only when authorized personnel terminate the call or a timed termination occurs. A timed termination by the communications means in the elevator, with the ability to extend the call by authorized personnel, is permitted if voice notification is sent by the communications means to authorized personnel a minimum of 3 min after communication has been established. Upon notification, authorized personnel shall have the ability to extend the call; automatic disconnection shall be permitted if the means to extend are not enacted within 20 s of the voice notification.

(g) The communications means shall not use a handset in the car.

(h) The communications shall not be transmitted to an automated answering system. The call shall be answered by authorized personnel.

(i) Additional operating instructions when provided shall be incorporated with or adjacent to the phone push button or be incorporated with the in-car message display.

(j) A means to display video to observe passengers at any location on the car floor, to authorized personnel for entrapment assessment, shall be provided.

(k) The in-car messages display [see (c)] characters shall be conventional in form. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual forms. The uppercase letter "I" shall be used to determine the allowable height of all characters of the font. The uppercase letter "I" of the font shall be 4.8 mm (0.1875 in.) minimum in height. Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

(22) **2.27.1.1.4** Where the elevator rise is 18 m (60 ft) or more, a communications means within the building accessible to emergency personnel shall be provided and shall comply with the following requirements:

(a) The means shall enable emergency personnel within the building to establish communications to each car individually. The communications shall be established without any intentional delay and shall not require intervention by a person within the car. The means shall override voice communications to outside of the building.

(b) The communications, once established, shall be disconnected only when emergency personnel terminate the call or a timed termination occurs. A timed termination by the communications means in the elevator, with the ability to extend the call by emergency personnel, is permitted if voice notification is sent by the communications means to emergency personnel a minimum of 3 min after communication has been established. Upon notification, emergency personnel shall have the ability to extend the call; automatic disconnection shall be permitted if the means to extend are not enacted within 20 s of the voice notification.

(c) Once the communications have been established, a message shall be displayed [see 2.27.1.1.3(c)] that is activated by emergency personnel to indicate that help is on-site. The message shall be permitted to be extinguished where necessary to display a new message [see (e)] or when the communications are terminated.

(d) Operating instructions shall be incorporated with or adjacent to the communications means outside the car. Instructions shall conform to 2.27.7.3.

(e) On the same panel as the phone push button, messages shall be displayed that permit emergency personnel to communicate with and obtain responses from a trapped passenger, including a passenger who cannot verbally communicate or hear.

(f) A means to display video to observe passengers at any location on the car floor, to emergency personnel for entrapment assessment, shall be provided.

(g) When provided, the communication means within the building accessible to emergency personnel shall be located in one of the following locations:

(1) in jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, the fire command center (FCC).

(2) in jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, the central alarm and control facility (CACF).

(3) in buildings without an FCC or CACF, on the designated level in a location approved by the fire authority. The means shall be key operated or behind a locked cover. The key shall be Group 3 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.27.1.1.5 If the communications means is connected to the normal building power, it shall automatically transfer to an auxiliary power supply as required by the applicable building code or, where applicable, NFPA 99, after the normal building power fails. This power source(s) shall be capable of providing for the means of communications (see 2.27.1.1.3 and 2.27.1.1.4) for at least 4 h and the audible signaling device (see 2.27.1.2) for at least 1 h.

2.27.1.1.6

(a) The voice communication means within the car shall include a means to verify operability of the telephone line, where

(1) verification of the telephone line operability shall be automatically performed

(2) verification may be continuous or periodic

(3) periodic verification shall be at least on a daily basis

(4) verification shall not require activation of the communications link(s)

If means other than a telephone line (e.g., VOIP, network, intercom) are used for the communications, similar verification of this equivalent means shall be performed.

(b) If the verification means in (a) determines that the telephone line or equivalent means is not functional, an audible and illuminated visual signal shall be activated. A minimum of one visual and one audible signal shall be provided for each group of elevators controlled by a fire recall switch.

(1) The visual signal shall

(-a) be located at the designated landing in the vicinity of the fire recall switch and visible to elevator user(s)

(-b) be labeled "ELEVATOR COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE" in red letters a minimum of 5 mm (0.25 in.) high

(-c) illuminate intermittently

(-d) continue illuminating intermittently until the telephone line or equivalent means is functional

(2) The audible signal shall

(-a) be 10 dBA minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dBA measured at the designated landing fire recall switch

(-b) sound at least once every 30 s with a minimum duration of $\frac{1}{2}$ s

(-c) continue to sound until silenced by authorized personnel or the telephone line or equivalent means is functional

(3) A means to silence the audible signal shall be provided and shall be accessible only to authorized personnel. The signal when silenced shall remain silent for a period of no less than 12 h or until activated by the next failed periodic verification [see (a)(3)].

(4) The verification means in (a) shall continue to monitor the operability of the telephone line or equivalent means while the telephone line or equivalent means is not functional on a continuous basis or periodically with intervals of not more than 5 min.

When the verification determines that the operability of the telephone line or equivalent means has been restored after being nonfunctional, the audible signal shall be silenced unless the signal has already been silenced in accordance with (b)(3) and the illuminated visual signal shall be extinguished.

2.27.1.2 Emergency Stop Switch Audible Signal.

When an emergency stop switch (see 2.26.2.5) is provided, an audible signaling device shall be provided. The audible signaling device shall

(a) have a rated sound pressure rating of not less than 80 dBA nor greater than 90 dBA at 3 m (10 ft)

(b) respond without delay after the switch has been activated

(c) be located inside the building and audible inside the car and outside the hoistway

(d) for elevators with a rise greater than 30 m (100 ft), be duplicated as follows:

(1) one device shall be mounted on the car

(2) a second device shall be placed at the designated level

2.27.2 Emergency or Standby Power

(22)

Elevators provided with emergency or standby power to operate the elevator in case the normal building power fails shall comply with the requirements of 2.27.2.1 through 2.27.2.5.

NOTE (2.27.2): Requirements for emergency or standby power are addressed in the building code. Requirements for health care facilities are addressed in NFPA 99 and NFPA 70, Article 517.

2.27.2.1 The emergency or standby power shall be capable of operating the elevator(s) with rated load (see 2.16.8), at least one at a time, unless otherwise required by the building code.

2.27.2.1.1 Where elevators are provided with Occupant Evacuation Operation, they shall be provided with emergency or standby power systems of the type, class, and level required by the building code.

2.27.2.2 The transfer between the normal building power and the emergency or standby power shall be automatic.

2.27.2.2.1 The failure and subsequent restoration of electrical power (normal or standby) shall not cause any elevator to be removed from Occupant Evacuation Operation. Upon restoration of power, an elevator that is stopped away from a landing shall be permitted to proceed as necessary to restore car position before resuming Occupant Evacuation Operation.

2.27.2.3 An illuminated signal(s) marked "ELEVATOR EMERGENCY POWER" shall be provided in the elevator lobby at the designated level for each group of elevators or for any single elevator not in a group. The signal(s) shall indicate that the normal building power has failed and the emergency or standby power is in effect for one or more of the cars in that group of elevators or that single elevator.

2.27.2.4 Where the emergency or standby power is not sufficient to operate all elevators simultaneously, the elevators shall conform to 2.27.2.4.1 through 2.27.2.4.6.

2.27.2.4.1 A manually operated means marked "ELEVATOR EMERGENCY POWER" in red lettering a minimum of 5 mm (0.25 in.) high shall be provided to permit the selection of the elevator(s) to operate on emergency or standby power. The selection means shall be operated or secured by the key type specified in 2.27.8.

2.27.2.4.2 The selection means shall have a marking or display indicating the elevator identification number(s) (see [Section 2.29](#)) of the associated elevator(s) and shall indicate which elevator(s) is selected. Where automatic selection is provided, the selection means shall have an associated marking or display that shall indicate “AUTO” when no elevator is manually selected.

2.27.2.4.3 The selector switch(es) shall be located at the designated level in view of all elevator entrances; if located elsewhere, means shall be provided adjacent to the selector switch(es) to indicate that the elevator is at the designated level with the doors in the normally open position.

2.27.2.4.4 An automatic means shall be provided to select each elevator one or more at a time. The selection shall be transferred from one elevator to another until all the elevators have been selected. After all elevators have been selected, the process shall repeat for any cars that failed to move, to give them a second opportunity. The operation, when selected, shall be as follows:

(a) An elevator that is not on designated attendant operation, Hoistway Access Operation, Inspection Operation, test enable operation (see [2.26.14](#)), Firefighters’ Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, or Firefighters’ Phase II In-Car Emergency Operation shall return to the designated level where the power-operated doors at the landing where the illuminated signal (see [2.27.2.3](#)) is located shall open and remain open. Where more than one entrance is provided at the designated level, the other doors are permitted to open. Once the selected car has returned to the designated level or fails to move within 30 s, the selection shall be automatically transferred to another elevator.

NOTE [\[2.27.2.4.4\(a\)\]](#): See requirement [2.27.12.1\(a\)](#) for modification to requirements of [2.27.2.4.4\(a\)](#) during Flood Detection Operation.

(b) An elevator on designated attendant operation, Hoistway Access Operation, Inspection Operation, test enable operation (see [2.26.14](#)), or Firefighters’ Phase II In-Car Emergency Operation shall operate in accordance with those requirements and shall remain selected until the car is stopped for a period of not less than 2 min and not more than 3 min, before the selection shall be automatically transferred to another elevator. For cars on Firefighters’ Phase II In-Car Emergency Operation, the in-car visual signals [see [2.27.3.1.6\(h\)](#) and [2.27.3.3.8](#)] shall activate only while the car is selected.

(c) An elevator that is on Firefighters’ Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall return to the recall level in accordance with [2.27.3.1](#) or [2.27.3.2](#). Once recall is complete, or the selected car fails to move within 30 s, the selection shall be automatically transferred to another elevator.

(d) The number of elevators required by the building code to be available for occupant evacuation that are on Occupant Evacuation Operation shall continue to operate in accordance with [2.27.11](#). Additional occupant evacuation elevators as defined by the building code but not required to be available for occupant evacuation by the building code that are on Occupant Evacuation Operation shall return to the designated level in accordance with [\(a\)](#).

2.27.2.4.5 Except for elevators required by the building code to be available for occupant evacuation, once all other cars have been recalled, moved to a floor, or failed to move after a second opportunity, one or more of the elevators, identified by the manual selection means (see [2.27.2.4.1](#)), shall be selected to remain in operation. If no elevator(s) has been manually selected (i.e., the selection means indicates “AUTO”), it shall be permissible to automatically select the elevator(s) to remain in operation. Preference shall be given to cars on Hospital Service followed by cars on Firefighters’ Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation followed by additional occupant evacuation elevators as defined by the building code, but not required to be available for occupant evacuation by the building code that are on Occupant Evacuation Operation.

The manual selection means shall not override the automatic power selection until one of the following applies:

(a) the automatic return sequence is complete (see [2.27.2.4.4](#))

(b) a fire recall switch is in the “ON” position (see [2.27.3.1](#))

Operation of the manual selection means shall not cause a car to be deselected until the elevator is stopped.

2.27.2.4.6 A visual means, located adjacent to or integrated with the manual selection means, shall be provided to indicate which elevator(s) is currently selected.

2.27.2.5 When emergency or standby power is designed to operate only one elevator at a time, the energy absorption means (if required) shall be permitted to be located on the supply side of the elevator main line power disconnecting means, provided all other requirements of [2.26.10](#) are conformed to when operating any of the elevators the power might serve. Other building loads, such as power and lights that can be supplied by emergency or standby power, shall not be considered as a means of absorbing the regenerated energy for the purposes of conforming to [2.26.10](#), unless such loads are normally supplied by emergency or standby power.

(22) 2.27.3 Firefighters' Emergency Operation: Automatic Elevators

Firefighters' Emergency Operation shall apply to all automatic elevators except where the hoistway or a portion thereof is not required to be fire-resistive construction (see 2.1.1.1), the rise does not exceed 2000 mm (80 in.), and the hoistway does not penetrate a floor.

When the structure (building, etc.) is located in a flood hazard area, the alternate level (see 2.27.13 and 8.12.1) shall be above the flood elevation. Where there is no available landing above the flood elevation, the highest available landing shall be used.

2.27.3.1 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation

- (22) 2.27.3.1.1 A three-position key-operated switch that will not change position without a deliberate action by the user shall be

(a) provided only at the designated level for each single elevator or for each group of elevators.

(b) labeled "FIRE RECALL" and its positions marked "RESET," "OFF," and "ON" (in that order), with the "OFF" position as the center position. The "FIRE RECALL" letters shall be a minimum of 5 mm (0.25 in.) high. Text shall be either red on a background that contrasts with red, or a color that contrasts with red on a red background.

(c) located in the lobby, installed a minimum of 915 mm (36 in.) and a maximum of 1680 mm (66 in.) above the floor as measured to the centerline of the switch, within sight of the elevator or all elevators in that group and shall be readily accessible.

2.27.3.1.2 An additional key-operated fire recall switch, with two positions that will not change position without a deliberate action by the user, marked "OFF" and "ON" (in that order), shall be permitted. It shall be labeled "FIRE RECALL" and identify the elevator(s) it controls.

NOTE (2.27.3.1.2): The building code or fire authority may require this switch to be at a specific location.

2.27.3.1.3 The switch(es) shall be rotated clockwise to go from the "RESET" position (designated level switch only), to the "OFF" position to the "ON" position. Keys shall be removable only in the "OFF" and "ON" positions.

2.27.3.1.4 Only the fire recall switch(es) or fire alarm initiating device located at floors that are served by the elevator, in the hoistway, in an elevator machine room, in a control space, or in a control room (see 2.27.3.2) shall initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

2.27.3.1.5 All fire recall switches shall be provided with an illuminated visual signal to indicate when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect.

2.27.3.1.6 When Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is initiated by placing a fire recall switch in the "ON" position, all cars controlled by the switch shall operate as follows:

(a) A car traveling toward the designated level shall continue nonstop to the designated level and power-operated doors shall open and remain open. On cars with more than one entrance, if the doors for another entrance can be opened at the designated level, only the doors serving the lobby where the fire recall switch is located shall automatically open and remain open. Once at the designated level, all in-car door open button(s) shall be operative. Once the doors at an entrance other than the entrance serving the lobby where the fire recall switch is located are opened by means of an in-car door open button, they shall initiate reclosing within 15 s of reaching the normal open position.

(b) A car traveling away from the designated level shall reverse at or before the next available landing without opening its doors and proceed to the designated level.

(c) When provided, the in-car stop switch (see 2.26.2.21) or the emergency stop switch in the car (see 2.26.2.5) shall not be made ineffective.

(d) A car standing at a landing other than the designated level with the in-car stop switch and the emergency stop switch in the car, when provided, in the "RUN" position shall proceed to the designated level if the doors are closed, or shall conform to the following if the doors are not closed:

(1) Elevators having automatic power-operated horizontally sliding doors shall close the doors without delay and proceed to the designated level.

(2) Elevators having power-operated vertically sliding doors provided with automatic or momentary-pressure closing operation shall have the closing sequence initiated without delay in accordance with 2.13.3.4, and the car shall proceed to the designated level.

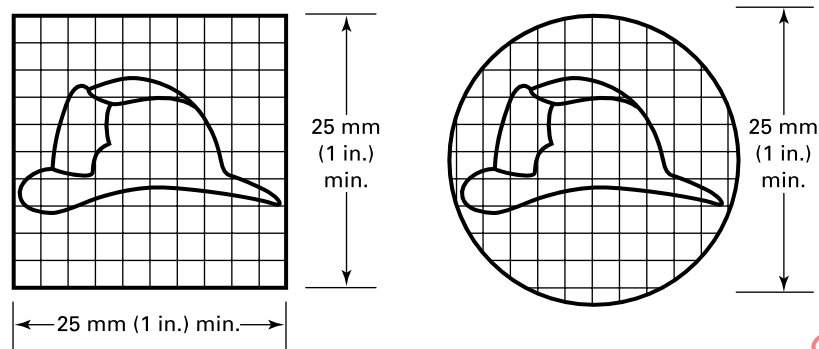
(3) Elevators having power-operated doors provided with continuous-pressure closing operation (see 2.13.3.2), or elevators having manual doors, shall be provided with a visual and audible signal system [see (h)] to alert an operator to close the doors and shall, when the doors are closed, proceed to the designated level. Sequence operation, if provided, shall remain effective.

(e) Door reopening devices for power-operated doors that are sensitive to smoke or flame shall be rendered inoperative without delay. Door reopening devices not sensitive to smoke or flame (e.g., mechanically actuated devices) are permitted to remain operative.

(1) Door closing for power-operated horizontally sliding doors shall conform to 2.13.5.

(2) Door closing for power-operated vertically sliding doors shall conform to 2.13.6.1.2 and shall have an average closing car door or gate speed not to exceed 0.20 m/s (0.67 ft/s).

Figure 2.27.3.1.6
Visual Signal



(f) Floor Selection Means, Lanterns, and Indicators

(1) In the car

(-a) floor selection means shall be rendered inoperative

(-b) car call-registered lights and car lanterns, where provided, shall be extinguished and remain inoperative

(-c) position indicators and car-direction indicators, where provided, shall remain operative

(2) At the fire command center, position indicators and car-direction indicators, where provided, shall remain operative.

(3) At the designated level

(-a) hall call-registered lights and hall lanterns, where provided, shall be extinguished and remain inoperative

(-b) position indicators and car-direction indicators, where provided, shall remain operative

(4) At all landings, except at the designated level

(-a) hall call-registered lights and hall lanterns, where provided, shall be extinguished and remain inoperative

(-b) position indicators and car-direction indicators, where provided, shall be extinguished and remain inoperative

NOTE [2.27.3.1.6(f)(2)]: In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, the Fire Command Center (FCC) is known as the Central Alarm and Control Facility (CACF).

(g) Where provided on elevators with vertically sliding doors, corridor door open and door close buttons shall remain operative.

(h) Visual and Audible Signals

(1) The visual signal shall

(-a) be one of the symbols shown in Figure 2.27.3.1.6 and located on the car operating panel

(-b) illuminate the entire circular or square area or the outline of the hat, or the outline of the area shown in Figure 2.27.3.1.6

(-c) activate and remain illuminated until the car is restored to automatic operation

(2) The audible signal shall

(-a) sound when the doors are open and the car is away from the recall level

(-b) sound for a minimum of 5 s when the doors are in the fully closed position and the car is away from the recall level

(-c) be silent when the car is at the recall level

(3) At all landings, except at the designated level

(-a) hall call-registered lights and hall lanterns, where provided, shall be extinguished and remain inoperative

(-b) position indicators and car-direction indicators, where provided, shall be extinguished and remain inoperative

(i) A car stopped at a landing shall have the in-car door open button(s) rendered inoperative as soon as the car moves away from the landing. The in-car door open button(s) shall remain inoperative when a car stops to reverse direction. Once the in-car door open button(s) has been rendered inoperative, it shall remain inoperative until the car has returned to the designated level.

(j) When recalled to the alternate level (see 2.27.3.2.4) and the fire recall switch (see 2.27.3.1.1) is rotated to the "ON" position, the elevator shall recall to the designated level, except where an additional two-position fire recall switch (see 2.27.3.1.2) is provided, both fire recall switches shall be in the "ON" position to recall the elevator to the designated level.

(k) To remove the elevator(s) from Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, the fire recall switch shall be rotated first to the "RESET" position, and then to the "OFF" position, provided that

(1) the additional two-position fire recall switch and car fire recall switch(es) (see 2.27.11.1.2), where provided, are in the "OFF" position

(2) no fire alarm initiating device is activated (see 2.27.3.2)

(l) Means used to remove elevators from normal operation shall not prevent Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, except

(1) as specified in this Code

(2) as controlled by elevator personnel

(m) No device that measures load shall prevent operation of the elevator at or below the capacity and loading required in [Section 2.16](#).

(n) If normal building power and emergency or standby power are not available and the elevator is equipped with an auxiliary power supply that can move the car to a floor but is insufficient to move the car to the recall level, the following requirements shall apply:

(1) The visual signal [see (h)] shall extinguish.

(2) A car that is not at a landing shall move to the closest landing it is capable of reaching.

(3) A car that has automatic power-operated horizontally sliding doors or power-operated vertically sliding doors provided with automatic closing operation and is stopped at a landing shall open the doors, and then within 15 s, initiate reclosing.

(4) A car that is stopped at a landing shall have its door open button operative.

(5) A car stopped at a landing shall not move until normal power, emergency power, or standby power becomes available.

2.27.3.2 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by Fire Alarm Initiating Devices

(22) **2.27.3.2.1** In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, smoke detectors or other automatic fire detectors in environments not suitable for smoke detectors (fire alarm initiating devices) used to initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be installed in conformance with the requirements of NFPA 72 and shall be located

(a) at each elevator lobby served by the elevator

(b) in the associated elevator machine room, a machinery space containing a motor controller or driving machine, a control space, or a control room

(c) in the elevator hoistway when sprinklers are located in those hoistways more than 600 mm (24 in.) above the pit floor or when required by other applicable codes or standards to actuate elevator hoistway smoke relief equipment

NOTES:

(1) **2.27.3.2.1(b)**: A machinery space containing a motor controller or driving machine located in the elevator hoistway or a control space located in the elevator hoistway requires a fire alarm initiating device regardless of the presence of sprinklers.

(2) **2.27.3.2.1(c)**: A fire alarm initiating device is not required in the pit regardless of the presence of sprinklers.

(22) **2.27.3.2.2** In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, smoke detectors, or heat detectors in environments not suitable for smoke detectors (fire alarm initiating

devices), used to initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be installed in conformance with the requirements of the NBCC and shall be located

(a) at each elevator lobby served by the elevator

(b) in the associated elevator machine room, a machinery space containing a motor controller or driving machine, a control space, or a control room

(c) in the elevator hoistway when sprinklers are located in those hoistways more than 600 mm (24 in.) above the pit floor or when required by other applicable codes or standards to actuate elevator hoistway smoke relief equipment

NOTES:

(1) **2.27.3.2.2**: Smoke and heat detectors (fire alarm initiating devices) are referred to as "fire detectors" in the NBCC. Pull stations are not deemed to be fire detectors.

(2) **2.27.3.2.2(b)**: A machinery space containing a motor controller or driving machine located in the elevator hoistway or a control space located in the elevator hoistway requires a fire alarm initiating device regardless of the presence of sprinklers.

(3) **2.27.3.2.2(c)**: A fire alarm initiating device is not required in the pit regardless of the presence of sprinklers.

2.27.3.2.3 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to the designated level shall conform to the following:

(a) The activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in **2.27.3.2.1(a)** or **2.27.3.2.2(a)** at any floor, other than at the designated level, shall cause all elevators that serve that lobby, and any associated elevator of a group automatic operation, to be returned nonstop to the designated level.

(b) The activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in **2.27.3.2.1(b)** or **2.27.3.2.2(b)** shall cause all elevators having any equipment located in that room or space, and any associated elevators of a group automatic operation, to be returned nonstop to the designated level. If the machine room is located at the designated level, the elevator(s) shall be returned nonstop to the alternate level.

(c) In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, the activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in **2.27.3.2.1(c)** shall cause all elevators having any equipment in that hoistway, and any associated elevators of a group automatic operation, to be returned nonstop to the designated level, except that initiating device(s) installed at or below the lowest landing of recall shall cause the car to be sent to the upper recall level.

(d) In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, the initiation of a fire detector in the hoistway shall cause all elevators having any equipment in that hoistway, and any associated elevators of a group automatic operation, to be returned nonstop to the designated level, except that initiating device(s) installed at or below the lowest landing of recall shall cause the car to be sent to the upper recall level.

(e) The Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to the designated level shall conform to 2.27.3.1.6(a) through 2.27.3.1.6(n).

2.27.3.2.4 When Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to the designated level is not in effect, Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to an alternate level (see Section 1.3) shall conform to the following:

(a) the activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in 2.27.3.2.1(a) or 2.27.3.2.2(a) that is located at the designated level shall cause all elevators serving that level to be recalled to an alternate level

(b) the requirements of 2.27.3.1.6(c), 2.27.3.1.6(e) through 2.27.3.1.6(h), and 2.27.3.1.6(j) through 2.27.3.1.6(n)

(c) the requirements of 2.27.3.1.6(a), 2.27.3.1.6(b), 2.27.3.1.6(d), and 2.27.3.1.6(i), except that all references to the “designated level” shall be replaced with “alternate level”

2.27.3.2.5 The recall level shall be determined by the first activated fire alarm initiating device for that group (see 2.27.3.2.1 or 2.27.3.2.2).

If the car(s) is recalled to the designated level by the fire recall switch(es) [see also 2.27.3.1.6(j)], the recall level shall remain the designated level.

(22) **2.27.3.2.6** When Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is initiated by a fire alarm initiating device for any of the following locations, as required by 2.27.3.2.3 or 2.27.3.2.4, the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h) and Figure 2.27.3.1.6] shall illuminate intermittently only in a car(s) with equipment in that location:

- (a) machine room
- (b) machinery space containing a motor controller or driving machine
- (c) control room
- (d) control space
- (e) hoistway

If the fire alarm system that includes the fire alarm initiating devices in (a) through (e) is reset, the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall not change from illuminating intermittently to illuminating continuously.

2.27.3.2.7 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, listed relay(s) or other listed appliance(s) as specified and defined in NFPA 72 for connection to the fire alarm system shall be provided and shall be

- (a) installed in conformance with the requirements of NFPA 72
- (b) used to initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation
- (c) located outside of any room or space requiring Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1)

2.27.3.3 Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation. A three-position (“OFF,” “HOLD,” and “ON,” in that order) key-operated switch that will not change position without a deliberate action by the user shall be labeled “FIRE OPERATION,” provided in an operating panel in

each car, and be readily accessible. The “FIRE OPERATION” label’s letters shall be a minimum 5 mm (0.25 in.) high. Text shall be either red on a background that contrasts with red, or a color that contrasts with red on a red background. It shall become effective only when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect and the car has been returned to the recall level. The switch shall be rotated clockwise to go from “OFF” to “HOLD” to “ON.”

The key shall only be removable in the “OFF” or “HOLD” position. For elevators with power-operated doors, the “OFF,” “HOLD,” and “ON” positions shall not change the mode of operation within Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation until the car is at a landing with the doors in the normal open position, except as required by 2.27.3.3.4 and 2.27.3.4. The three modes of operation within Phase II In-Car Operation (“OFF,” “HOLD,” and “ON”) are specified by 2.27.3.3.1 through 2.27.3.3.4.

For elevators with manual doors, after the car and hoistway doors have been opened at least once at the recall level, the “OFF,” “HOLD,” and “ON” positions shall then change the mode of operation in accordance with 2.27.3.3.1 through 2.27.3.3.4.

2.27.3.3.1 When the “FIRE OPERATION” switch is in the “ON” position, the elevator shall be on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation, for use by emergency personnel only, and the elevator shall operate as follows:

(a) The elevator shall be operable only by a person in the car.

(b) *Floor Selection Means, Lanterns, and Indicators*

(1) In the car

(-a) floor selection means shall function as required in (i)

(-b) car call-registered lights, where provided, shall remain operative

(-c) car lanterns, where provided, shall remain inoperative

(-d) position indicators and car-direction indicators, where provided, shall remain operative

(2) At the fire command center, position indicators and car-direction indicators, where provided, shall remain operative.

(3) At the designated level

(-a) the car shall not respond to hall calls

(-b) hall call-registered lights, where provided, shall remain inoperative, except where associated cars of a group have been returned to group automatic operation

(-c) position indicators and car-direction indicators, where provided, shall remain operative

(4) At all landings, except at the designated level

(-a) the car shall not respond to hall calls

(-b) hall call-registered lights, where provided, shall remain inoperative, except where associated cars of a group have been returned to group automatic operation

(-c) position indicators, car-direction indicators, and hall lanterns, where provided, shall remain inoperative

(c) Door open and door close buttons shall be provided for power-operated doors only and located as required by 2.27.3.3.7. Buttons shall be a minimum 19 mm (0.75 in.) in the smallest dimension. The door open and door close buttons shall be labeled "OPEN" and "CLOSE," and, when applicable, "REAR OPEN" and "REAR CLOSE" or "SIDE OPEN" and "SIDE CLOSE," in lettering a minimum 5 mm (0.25 in.) in height with a contrasting background. The labeling shall be on or adjacent to the buttons. Requirement 2.26.12 does not apply to these buttons. The door open and door close buttons shall be operative when the elevator is stopped within an unlocking zone (see 2.12.1).

(d) The opening of power-operated doors shall be controlled only by a continuous-pressure door open button. If the button is released prior to the doors reaching the normal open position, the doors shall automatically reclose. Requirements 2.13.3.3, 2.13.3.4, 2.13.4.2.1(b)(2), and 2.13.4.2.1(c) do not apply. All door open button(s) in the car shall be operational.

(e) Open power-operated doors shall be closed only by continuous pressure on the door close button. If the button is released prior to the doors reaching the fully closed position, horizontally sliding doors shall automatically reopen, and vertically sliding doors shall automatically stop or stop and reopen. Where provided, an additional door close button(s) in the car shall be operational.

(f) Opening and closing of power-operated car doors or gates that are opposite manual swing or manual slide hoistway doors shall conform to (d) and (e).

(g) All door reopening devices, except the door open button(s), shall be rendered inoperative. Full-speed closing shall be permitted.

Landing door opening and closing buttons, where provided, shall be rendered inoperative.

(h) Every car shall be provided with a button labeled "CALL CANCEL," located as required in 2.27.3.3.7, that shall be effective during Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation. When activated, all registered calls shall be canceled and a traveling car shall stop at or before the next available landing. The button shall be a minimum 19 mm (0.75 in.) in the smallest dimension. Button labeling shall be in lettering a minimum 5 mm (0.25 in.) in height with a contrasting background. The labeling shall be on or adjacent to the button.

(i) Floor selection means shall be provided in the car to permit travel to all landings served by the car, and shall be operative at all times, except as in 2.27.3.3.2, 2.27.13.1(c), and 2.27.13.1(d). Means to prevent the operation of the floor selection means or door-operating buttons shall be rendered inoperative. Floor selection means that provide access to all landings served by the elevator shall be located below the firefighters' operation panel specified

by 2.27.3.3.7. The floor selection means shall be operable without the use of keys, cards, tools, or special knowledge. The floor selection means shall be permitted to be located behind the locked cover specified in 2.27.3.3.7, only if floor selection means for all landings served are included behind the locked cover. Where buttons not accessible to the public are provided, they shall be a minimum 19 mm (0.75 in.) in the smallest dimension.

(j) A traveling car shall stop at the next available landing for which a car call was registered. When a car stops at a landing, all registered car calls shall be canceled.

(k) Means used to remove elevators from normal operation shall not prevent Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation, except

(1) as specified in this Code

(2) as controlled by elevator personnel

(l) No device that measures load shall prevent operation of the elevator at or below the capacity and loading required in Section 2.16.

(m) Every car shall be provided with a switch, conforming to the requirements of 2.26.2.33 and located as required in 2.27.3.3.7. When the switch is in the "STOP" position, all registered calls shall be canceled and power shall be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake. When the switch is moved to the "RUN" position from the "STOP" position, the car shall not move, except for leveling, until a call is entered. If the type of switch used is a button, it shall be a minimum 19 mm (0.75 in.) in the smallest dimension.

NOTE [2.27.3.3.1(m)]: This requirement does not limit the fire-fighters' stop switch to a specific style of switch. Toggle switches and push/pull buttons are two possible styles. A switch, if provided, should be operable to the "STOP" position by a fire-fighter wearing protective gloves (see NFPA 1971).

(n) If normal building power and emergency or standby power are not available and the elevator is equipped with an auxiliary power supply that can move the car to a floor but is insufficient to move the car to all landings, the following requirements shall apply:

(1) The visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall illuminate intermittently.

(2) A car that is not at a landing shall not start until a car call is entered. After a car call is entered, the car shall move to the closest landing it is capable of reaching.

(3) A car stopped at a landing shall not move until normal building power or emergency or standby power becomes available.

2.27.3.3.2 For elevators with power-operated doors, (22) when the car is at a landing, with the doors open, and the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is in the "HOLD" position, the car shall remain at the landing with the doors open. The door close buttons shall be inoperative, and car calls shall not be registered.

For elevators with manual doors, when the car is at a landing and the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is in the "HOLD" position, the car shall remain at the landing and car calls shall not be registered.

If normal building power and emergency or standby power are not available, the elevator is equipped with an auxiliary power supply, and the "FIRE OPERATION" switch in the car is in the "HOLD" position, the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall illuminate intermittently.

2.27.3.3.3 When the car is at a landing other than the recall level, with the doors in the normal open position, and the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is in the "OFF" position, power-operated doors shall operate as follows:

(a) Horizontal sliding doors shall close automatically. All door reopening devices shall remain inoperative. Door open buttons in the car shall remain operative. Full-speed closing is permitted. If the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is turned to the "ON" or "HOLD" position prior to the completion of door closing, the doors shall reopen.

(b) Elevators having vertically sliding doors shall have corridor door open and door close buttons rendered operative. All door reopening devices shall remain inoperative. Door closing shall be in accordance with 2.27.3.3.1(e). Full-speed closing is permitted. If the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is turned to the "ON" or "HOLD" position prior to the completion of door closing, the doors shall reopen.

- (22) **2.27.3.3.4** When the doors are in the closed position and the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is placed in the "OFF" position, the car shall return to the recall level in conformance with 2.27.3.1.6(a) through 2.27.3.1.6(n) and 2.27.3.2.5.

If normal building power and emergency or standby power are not available, the elevator is equipped with an auxiliary power supply that can move the car to a floor, and the "FIRE OPERATION" switch in the car is in the "OFF" position, the following requirements shall apply:

(a) The visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall illuminate intermittently.

(b) The requirements of 2.27.3.1.6(n)(2) through 2.27.3.1.6(n)(5) shall apply.

- (22) **2.27.3.3.5** Elevators shall be removed from Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation only when the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is in the "OFF" position, the car is at the recall level, and the doors are in the normal open position.

2.27.3.3.6 The occurrence of an accidental ground or short circuit in elevator electrical equipment located on the landing side of the hoistway enclosure and in associated wiring, as a result of exposure to water, shall not disable Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation once it has been activated.

2.27.3.3.7 The "FIRE OPERATION" switch (see 2.27.3.3), the "CALL CANCEL" button [see 2.27.3.3.1(h)], the stop switch [see 2.27.3.3.1(m)], the door open button(s), the door close button(s), the additional visual signal (see 2.27.3.3.8), and the operating instructions shown in Figure 2.27.7.2 shall be grouped together on the firefighters' operation panel behind a locked cover. The floor selection means [see 2.27.3.3.1(i)] shall be permitted to be located behind the locked cover.

When required as part of the fire department communication system, a phone jack shall be permitted to be installed in the firefighters' operation panel below the level of the "FIRE OPERATION" switch. No other equipment shall be permitted behind the locked cover.

The firefighters' operation panel cover shall be operable by the same key that operates the "FIRE OPERATION" switch. The key shall be rotated clockwise to allow the panel to be opened. When open, the cover shall not restrict access to the buttons or switches or the view of the instructions. The cover shall be permitted to open automatically when the car is on Phase I Emergency Recall Operation and at the recall level. When the key is in the "FIRE OPERATION" switch, the cover shall not be capable of being closed. When closed, the cover shall be self-locking.

Where rear or side doors are provided, buttons for the front, rear, or side doors shall be provided in the firefighters' operation panel. The door open and door close buttons for the rear entrance (where provided) shall be labeled "REAR OPEN" and "REAR CLOSE." The door open and door close buttons for the side entrance (where provided) shall be labeled "SIDE OPEN" and "SIDE CLOSE."

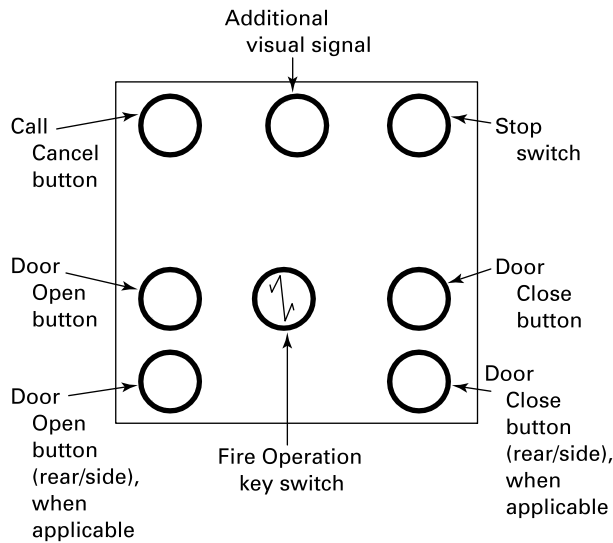
All buttons, switches, and the lock for the panel shall be located more than 1 220 mm (48 in.) and less than 1 830 mm (72 in.) above the floor as measured to the centerline of the button, switch, or lock, and shall be arranged as shown in Figure 2.27.3.3.7. Requirement 2.26.12 does not apply to these buttons and switches. The front of the cover shall contain the words "FIREFIGHTERS' OPERATION" in red letters at least 10 mm (0.4 in.) high.

The firefighters' operation panel shall be located as follows:

(a) The panel shall be on the same vertical centerline as a floor selection means that provides access to all floors served by the elevator.

(b) The panel and the floor selection means shall be located on the wall of the car containing the door that opens to the lobby where the fire recall switch is located, or immediately adjacent to that wall on a side wall.

2.27.3.3.8 An additional visual signal shall be provided and located as required by 2.27.3.3.7. The additional visual signal shall be one of the symbols shown in Figure 2.27.3.1.6. The entire circular or square area shown in Figure 2.27.3.1.6 shall be illuminated. This additional visual signal shall be activated and deactivated whenever

**Figure 2.27.3.3.7
Panel Layout****GENERAL NOTES:**

- (a) Switches and buttons show only the location, not the labeling.
 (b) Not to scale.

the visual signal in 2.27.3.1.6(h) is activated and deactivated.

- (22) **2.27.3.3.9** Requirement 2.26.5.1(b)(2) shall not apply when the elevator is on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation.

- (22) **2.27.3.4 Interruption of Power.** The failure and subsequent restoration of normal building power, emergency power, or standby power shall not cause any elevator to be removed from Phase I Emergency Operation or Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation.

(a) Elevators on Phase I Emergency Operation shall be permitted to move only to the next floor in the direction of the recall level to reestablish absolute car position prior to conforming to 2.27.3.1 and 2.27.3.2.

(b) Elevators on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation with the key in the "OFF" position shall be permitted to move only to the next floor in the direction of the recall level to reestablish absolute car position prior to conforming to 2.27.3.3.3 and 2.27.3.3.4. If the key is moved to the "ON" or "HOLD" position before the doors are fully closed, (c) or (d) shall apply, and automatic power-operated doors shall open if the car is in a leveling zone.

(c) Elevators on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation with the key in the "HOLD" position shall not move, except for leveling within a leveling zone. If the car is in an unlocking zone, automatic power-operated doors shall open. The elevator shall then conform to 2.27.3.3.2.

(d) Elevators on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation with the key in the "ON" position shall not move, except for leveling within a leveling zone, until a car call is entered. Automatic power-operated doors shall not move under power until a door open or door close button is pressed, after which they shall conform to 2.27.3.3.1(d) and 2.27.3.3.1(e). After a car call is entered, the car shall be permitted to move only to the next floor in the direction of the recall level to reestablish absolute car position prior to answering car calls.

2.27.3.5 Multicompartment Elevators. Multicompartment elevators shall also conform to 2.27.3.5.1 through 2.27.3.5.4.

2.27.3.5.1 The fire recall switch (see 2.27.3.1) shall be located at the designated level served by the upper compartment.

2.27.3.5.2 The "FIRE OPERATION" switch (see 2.27.3.3) shall be located in the upper compartment.

2.27.3.5.3 A means to display the entire floor area in the lower compartment shall be located in the upper compartment. The means shall display the lower compartment only when Firefighters' Emergency Operation is in effect.

2.27.3.5.4 A switch labeled "LOWER CAR LOCKOUT" with two positions, marked "OFF" and "ON," shall be located behind the firefighters' operation panel cover (see 2.27.3.3.7).

NOTE (2.27.3.5.4): The switch should be operable by a firefighter wearing protective gloves (see NFPA 1971).

(a) The lower car lockout switch shall only be functional when Phase II is in effect.

(b) When placed in the "ON" position, the lower car lockout switch shall

(1) disable all door reopening devices in the lower compartment

(2) initiate closing of the lower compartment doors in accordance with 2.13.4.2.1(c)

(c) When the car is stopped at a landing and the lower car lockout switch is in the "OFF" position, the lower compartment doors shall be opened.

2.27.4 Firefighters' Emergency Operation: Nonautomatic Elevators

Firefighters' Emergency Operation shall apply to all nonautomatic elevators, except where the hoistway or a portion thereof is not required to be fire-resistive construction (see 2.1.1.1), the rise does not exceed 2000 mm (80 in.), and the hoistway does not penetrate a floor.

2.27.4.1 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation. A three-position key-operated switch shall be provided at the designated level for each single elevator or for

each group of elevators. The three-position switch shall be labeled “FIRE RECALL” and its positions marked “RESET,” “OFF,” and “ON” (in that order), with the “OFF” position as the center position. The “FIRE RECALL” letters shall be a minimum 5 mm (0.25 in.) high in red or a color contrasting with a red background. The three-position switch shall be located in the lobby within sight of the elevator or all elevators in that group and shall be readily accessible.

An additional key-operated fire recall switch with two positions, that will not change position without a deliberate action by the user, marked “OFF” and “ON” (in that order), shall be permitted. It shall be labeled “FIRE RECALL” and shall identify the elevator(s) it controls.

The switch(es) shall be rotated clockwise to go from the “RESET” position (designated level switch only) to the “OFF” position to the “ON” position.

All keys shall be removable only in the “OFF” and “ON” positions.

Only the fire recall switch(es) or fire alarm initiating devices located at floors that are served by the elevator or in the hoistway, an elevator machine room, a control space, or a control room (see 2.27.3.2) shall initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

All fire recall switches shall be provided with an illuminated visual signal to indicate when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect.

When all switches are in the “OFF” position, normal elevator service shall be in effect and the fire alarm initiating devices required by 2.27.4.2 shall be operative.

When a fire recall switch is in the “ON” position, a visual and audible signal shall be provided to alert the attendant to return nonstop to the designated or alternate level. The visual signal shall read “FIRE RECALL — RETURN TO ___” [insert level to which the car should be returned (the designated or alternate level)]. The signal system shall be activated when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect.

Where an additional two-position fire recall switch is provided, both fire recall switches must be in the “ON” position to recall the elevator to the designated level if the elevator was recalled to the alternate level.

Where an additional two-position fire recall switch is provided, it shall not affect the visual signal if the designated level fire alarm initiating device (see 2.27.3.2.4) has been activated.

To extinguish the audible and visual signals, the fire recall switch shall be rotated first to the “RESET” position and then to the “OFF” position, provided that

(a) the additional two-position fire recall switch, where provided, is in the “OFF” position

(b) no fire alarm initiating device is activated (see also 2.27.3.2.4)

No device that measures load shall prevent operation of the elevator at or below the capacity and loading required in Section 2.16.

NOTE (2.27.4.1): The building code or fire authority may require this switch at a specific location.

2.27.4.2 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by Fire Alarm Initiating Devices (22)

(a) Fire alarm initiating devices shall be installed, in the locations listed in (1) through (3), in compliance with the requirements in NFPA 72 or the NBCC, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), as follows:

(1) at each elevator lobby served by the elevator

(2) in the associated elevator machine room, machinery space containing a motor controller or driving machine, control space, or control room

(3) in the elevator hoistway, when sprinklers are located in those hoistways

(b) Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, conforming to 2.27.4.1, shall be initiated when any Phase I Emergency Recall Operation fire alarm initiating device specified in (a) is activated.

(c) Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, when initiated by a Phase I Emergency Recall Operation fire alarm initiating device, shall be maintained until canceled by moving the fire recall switch to the “RESET” position, then to the “OFF” position.

(d) When a fire alarm initiating device in a location specified by (a)(2) or (a)(3) initiates Phase I Emergency Recall Operation as required by 2.27.3.2.3 or 2.27.3.2.4, the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h) and Figure 2.27.3.1.6] shall illuminate intermittently only in a car(s) with equipment in that location. If the fire alarm system that includes the fire alarm initiating devices in (a)(2) or (a)(3) is reset, the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall not change from illuminating intermittently to illuminating continuously.

2.27.5 Firefighters’ Emergency Operation: Automatic Elevators With Designated-Attendant Operation

2.27.5.1 When designated-attendant operation is not in effect, elevators shall conform to 2.27.3; when Occupant Evacuation Operation is provided, they shall also conform to 2.27.11.6.

2.27.5.2 When operated by a designated attendant in the car, except hospital service

(a) elevators parked at the recall level shall conform to 2.27.3; when Occupant Evacuation Operation is provided, they shall also conform to 2.27.11.6 without delay. Elevators parked at a floor other than the recall level shall conform to 2.27.3.1.6(h). At the completion of a time delay not less than 10 s and not more than 30 s, elevators parked at a floor away from the recall level shall conform

to 2.27.3, and when Occupant Evacuation Operation is provided, they shall also conform to 2.27.11.6.

(b) a moving car shall conform to 2.27.3, and when Occupant Evacuation Operation is provided, it shall also conform to 2.27.11.6.

2.27.5.3 When an elevator that is provided with Firefighters' Emergency Operation or Occupant Evacuation Operation is on hospital service, a visual signal as shown in Figure 2.27.3.1.6 shall illuminate and a continuous audible signal, audible within the car, shall sound when the fire recall switch(es) (see 2.27.3.1 and 2.27.11.1.2) is in the "ON" position, or when a fire alarm initiating device (see 2.27.3.2) is activated to alert the operator of an emergency. A means located in the car shall be permitted for manually silencing the audible signal, after the signal has been active for at least 5 s. The signal shall be automatically reactivated when the doors open.

The car shall remain under control of the operator until it is removed from hospital service. An elevator on Firefighters' Emergency Operation or Occupant Evacuation Operation shall not be placed on hospital service.

(22) **2.27.6 Firefighters' Emergency Operation or Occupant Evacuation Operation: Inspection Operation**

When an elevator that is provided with Firefighters' Emergency Operation or Occupant Evacuation Operation is on Inspection Operation (see 2.26.1.4 and 2.26.1.5), test enable operation (see 2.26.14), or when the hoistway access switch(es) has been enabled (see 2.12.7.3.2), an audible signal, audible at the location where the Inspection Operation is activated, shall sound when the fire recall switch(es) (see 2.27.3.1 and 2.27.11.1.2) is in the "ON" position or when the fire alarm initiating device (see 2.27.3.2 and 2.27.11.5) is activated to alert the operator of an emergency. When the flood detection means (see 2.2.9) is actuated, the audible signal shall be activated for a minimum of 30 s. The audible signal shall be active when on Inspection Operation or Hoistway Access Operation [see 2.27.13.1(e)].

The car shall remain under the control of the operator until it is removed from Inspection Operation, test enable operation, or Hoistway Access Operation. Inspection Operation or Hoistway Access Operation shall take precedence over Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation, Occupant Evacuation Operation, and Flood Detection Operation.

2.27.7 Firefighters' Emergency Operation: Operating Procedures

2.27.7.1 Instructions for operation of elevators under Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall only be incorporated with or adjacent to the fire recall switch required

by 2.27.3.1.1 at the designated level. The instructions shall include only the wording shown in Figure 2.27.7.1.

2.27.7.2 A sign containing instructions for operation of elevators under Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation shall be incorporated with or adjacent to the switch in each car and shall be visible only when the cover (see 2.27.3.3.7) is open. The sign shall include only the wording and graphics shown in Figure 2.27.7.2, except

(a) for elevators with manually operated doors, the instructions for opening and closing the doors shall be permitted to be replaced with short phrases such as "PUSH DOOR" or "PULL DOOR UP"

(b) for elevators with vertically sliding doors, the instructions for returning the car to the recall level shall be permitted to be expanded to include instructions for closing the door

2.27.7.3 Instructions shall be in letters not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.) in height and shall be permanently installed and protected against removal or defacement.

2.27.8 Switch Keys

The key switches required by 2.27.2 through 2.27.5 and 2.27.11 for all elevators in a building shall be operable by the FEO-K1 key. The keys shall be Group 3 Security (see Section 8.1). A separate key shall be provided for each switch. These keys shall be kept on the premises in a location readily accessible to firefighters and emergency personnel, but not where they are available to the public. This key shall be a tubular, 7-pin, style 137 construction and shall have a bitting code of 6143521 starting at the tab sequenced clockwise as viewed from the barrel end of the key; cutting depths shall be in accordance with Figure 2.27.8. The key shall be coded "FEO-K1." The possession of the FEO-K1 key shall be limited to elevator personnel, emergency personnel, elevator equipment manufacturers, and authorized personnel during checking of Firefighters' Emergency Operation (see Section 8.1 and 8.6.11.1).

Figure 2.27.7.1
Phase I Emergency Recall Operation Instructions

FIREFIGHTERS' OPERATION

To recall elevators
Insert fire key and turn to "ON"

Figure 2.27.7.2
Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation

FIRE OPERATION	
When	 flashing, exit elevator
To operate car	Insert fire key and turn to "ON." Enter floor selection.
To cancel floor selection	Press "CALL CANCEL" button.
To close door	Press and hold "CLOSE" button.
To open door	Press and hold "OPEN" button.
To hold car at floor	With doors open, turn key to "HOLD."
For emergency stop	Use "STOP" switch.
To automatically return to recall floor	Turn key to "OFF."

Where provided, a lock box, including its lock and other components, shall conform to the requirements of UL 1037 (see [Part 9](#)).

NOTE (2.27.8): Local authorities may specify additional requirements for a uniform keyed lock box, and its location, to contain the necessary keys.

2.27.9 Elevator Corridor Call Station Pictograph

When the building code requires a sign be posted adjacent to hall call fixtures instructing occupants not to use the elevator in case of fire, the sign shown in [Figure 2.27.9](#) shall be provided. The sign shall include only the wording and graphics shown in [Figure 2.27.9](#). When the building code specifies a different design, [2.27.9](#) shall not apply.

(22) 2.27.10 Elevator(s) for Use by Firefighters

Freight elevators and hydraulic elevators shall not be designated as Fire Service Access Elevators (see [2.27.10.1](#)) nor Firefighters' Elevators (see [2.27.10.2](#)).

NOTE (2.27.10): Requirements for automatic sprinklers are addressed in the building code and NFPA 13, which may require the installation of sprinklers in specific locations, such as in machine rooms, elevator machinery spaces,

control rooms, control spaces, and elevator hoistways of elevators.

2.27.10.1 Fire Service Access Elevators. In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, Fire Service Access Elevators shall be provided when required by the building code and shall

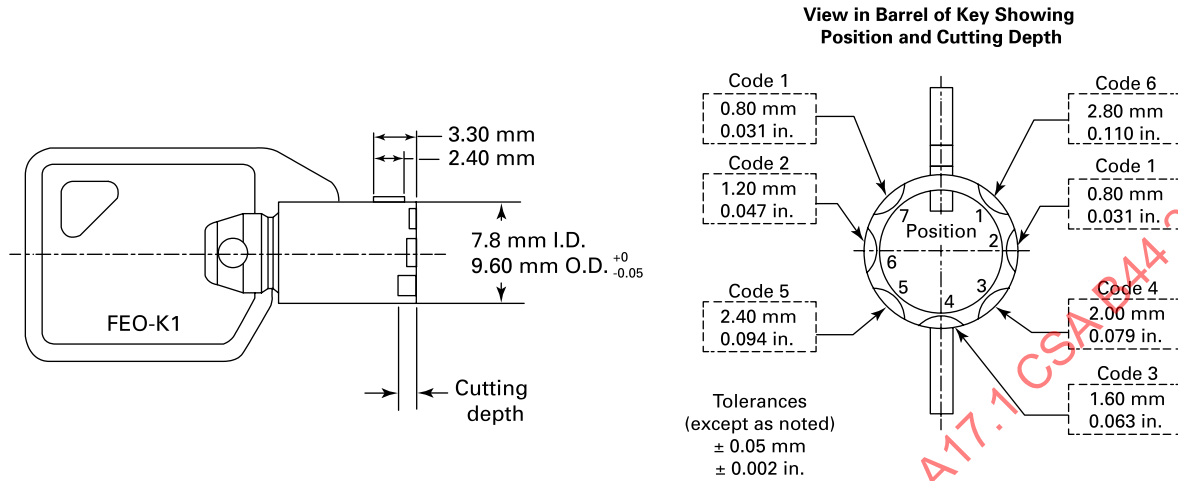
(a) provide control signal(s) to the building system for lighting the hoistway when Firefighters' Emergency Operation is active

(b) be identified as Fire Service Access Elevators in accordance with the requirements of the building code

NOTE (2.27.10.1): See [2.1.7.1.3\(c\)](#) and [2.1.7.1.5](#) for hoistway lighting requirements during Firefighters' Emergency Operation.

2.27.10.2 Firefighters' Elevator. In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, a symbol showing a red firefighter's hat on a contrasting background, as shown in [Figure 2.27.3.1.6](#) (figure not to scale), shall be used exclusively to identify elevators that comply with both [2.27.3](#) and additional NBCC requirements. This identification shall be located on the elevator entrance frame or adjacent to it at each emergency recall level. The identification on the

Figure 2.27.8
FEO-K1 Key



entrance frame, or adjacent to it, shall be a minimum 50 mm (2 in.) in height.

2.27.11 Occupant Evacuation Operation

Where elevators are designated as occupant evacuation elevators by the building code, Occupant Evacuation Operation (OEO) shall be provided and shall conform to 2.27.11.1 through 2.27.11.6. See also [Nonmandatory Appendix V](#).

NOTE (2.27.11): Where destination-oriented control for operation is used, “car destination demand” should be substituted for “car call” and “landing call demand” should be substituted for “landing call.”

2.27.11.1 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation With OEO. When OEO is provided, the requirements of 2.27.3.1 shall be modified as follows.

2.27.11.1.1 For groups of two or more elevators only, the labels for the three-position switch in the lobby (see 2.27.3.1.1) and the two-position switch (see 2.27.3.1.2) shall be modified to “GROUP FIRE RECALL.”

2.27.11.1.2 For groups of two or more elevators only, an additional three-position switch shall be provided for each elevator. This switch shall

(a) conform to 2.27.3.1 and 2.27.8, except 2.27.3.1.2, and as modified by (b) through (d).

(b) be labeled “CAR FIRE RECALL” or “CAR ___ FIRE RECALL” with black text on a yellow background. The elevator identification assigned in 2.29.1.1 shall be adjacent to the label “CAR FIRE RECALL” or inserted in the label “CAR ___ FIRE RECALL.” When the identification is not inserted in the label, the elevator identification shall be black text on a background that contrasts with black.

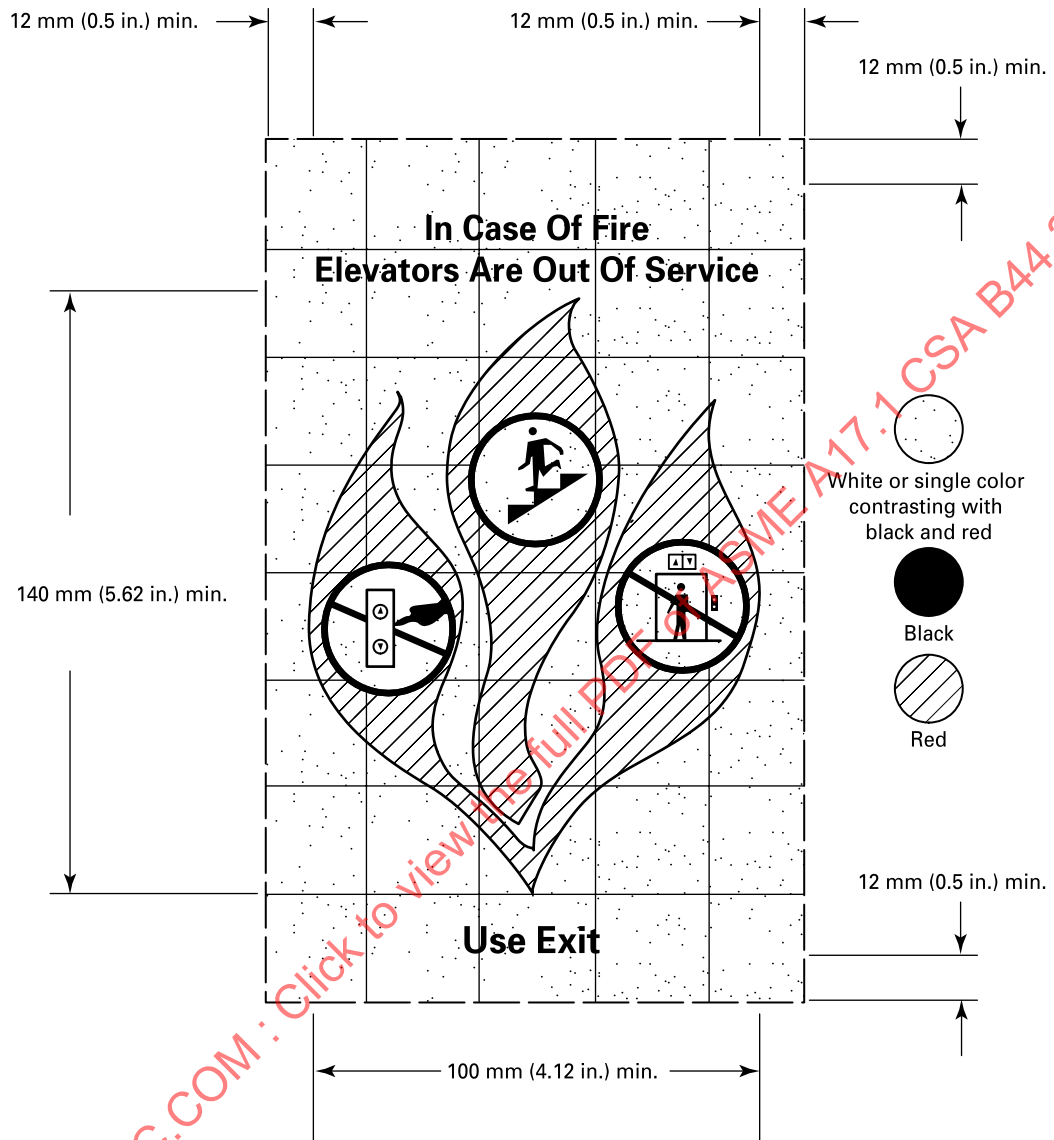
(c) be located at the elevator discharge level adjacent to the elevator it controls.

(d) control the associated elevator in conformance with 2.27.3.1.6 but shall not control the other elevators controlled by the group fire recall switch (see 2.27.11.1.1).

NOTE [2.27.11.1.2(b)]: For example, “CAR A1 FIRE RECALL.”

2.27.11.1.3 Each individual car fire recall switch shall initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation for the elevator it controls when placed in the “ON” position. Each group fire recall switch shall initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation for the elevators it controls when placed in the “ON” position.

Figure 2.27.9
Elevator Corridor Call Station Pictograph



Lettering: 6 mm (0.25 in.) high min., black filled

GENERAL NOTES:

- (a) Grid lines shown for scaling purposes only.
- (b) Aspect ratio shall be maintained as shown.
- (c) The color of the circle interior is permitted to be a different color than the background.

2.27.11.1.4 Each individual car fire recall switch shall be provided with an illuminated visual signal in compliance with [2.27.3.1.5](#).

2.27.11.1.5 To remove an individual elevator from Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, the individual car fire recall switch shall be rotated first to the "RESET" position and then to the "OFF" position, and the following conditions shall exist:

- (a) the group fire recall switch is in the "OFF" position
- (b) the additional two-position group fire recall switch (see [2.27.3.1.2](#)), where provided, is in the "OFF" position
- (c) no fire alarm initiating device is activated (see [2.27.3.2](#))

When an individual elevator is removed from Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by its individual car fire recall switch per [2.27.11.1.5](#) while other elevators in the group are operating under OEO, the individual elevator shall return to OEO.

NOTE ([2.27.11.1.5](#)): See [2.27.3.1.6\(k\)](#).

2.27.11.1.6 An elevator in a group of two or more shall be removed from Phase I Emergency Recall Operation when the group fire recall switch is rotated to the "RESET" position and then to the "OFF" position and the following conditions exist:

- (a) The car fire recall switch (see [2.27.11.1.2](#)) is in the "OFF" position
- (b) the additional two-position group fire recall switch (see [2.27.3.1.2](#)), where provided, is in the "OFF" position
- (c) no fire alarm initiating device is activated (see [2.27.3.2](#))

NOTE ([2.27.11.1.6](#)): See [2.27.3.1.6\(k\)](#).

2.27.11.1.7 The designated level shall be the same floor as the elevator discharge level. Only the door(s) serving the lobby where the group fire recall switch is located shall open.

2.27.11.1.8 When Firefighters' Emergency Operation, activated by key switch(es) in [2.27.3.1](#) or fire alarm initiating devices specified in [2.27.3.2](#), is in effect and the signal(s) provided in [2.27.11.5](#) to initiate OEO is not actuated, the sign(s) required in [2.27.11.2.2](#) shall indicate that the elevator(s) in this group is not available.

NOTE ([2.27.11.1.8](#)): Example text for all floors served by this group is "Elevators not available."

2.27.11.2 OEO Lobby Signage

2.27.11.2.1 The sign required by [2.27.9](#) shall not be installed.

- (22) **2.27.11.2.2** A variable message sign shall
- (a) be installed for each elevator group or any single elevator not in a group at each landing served.

(b) be located not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) and not more than 3 000 mm (120 in.) above the floor and in a central visible location within the elevator lobby.

(c) have message text a minimum 50 mm (2 in.) high that conforms to ICC A117.1 or [Nonmandatory Appendix E, clause E-20](#), whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#) and [Nonmandatory Appendix E, clause E-1](#)).

(d) be powered by the same power supply as the elevator, including emergency or standby power.

(e) when not on OEO or Firefighters' Emergency Operation, display an indication that it is powered.

(f) when not prohibited by the building code or when not on OEO or Firefighters' Emergency Operation, be permitted to display information other than elevator system information in lieu of an indication that it is powered.

2.27.11.3 Reserved for Future Use

2.27.11.4 Where provided, position indicators at the elevator discharge level shall remain operative. The position indicator shall be powered by the same power supply as the elevator, including emergency or standby power.

2.27.11.5 Fire Alarm System Interface

2.27.11.5.1 The fire alarm system interface shall conform with the requirements of (a) through (i).

(a) An active automatic fire alarm initiating device as specified by NFPA 72 that does not initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation in this group shall cause the fire alarm system to provide signal(s) to the elevator system in conformance with NFPA 72.

(b) The floors to be evacuated shall be a contiguous block of floors, designated as the "elevator evacuation zone," and shall consist of at least the floor with an active alarm, two floors above it, and two floors below it.

(c) When the discharge level falls within the contiguous block, it shall be included in the contiguous block of floors but shall not be evacuated by the elevator(s).

(d) If the active alarm is on the elevator discharge level for this group, automatic initiation of OEO in accordance with [2.27.11.6](#) shall not be permitted.

(e) If activation of an additional automatic fire alarm initiating device that does not initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation in this group occurs on an additional floor(s) including the discharge level at any time while OEO in accordance with [2.27.11.6](#) is in effect, the elevator evacuation zone shall be expanded.

(f) The expanded evacuation zone shall include all floors with an active alarm, all floors between the highest and lowest floors with an active alarm plus two floors above the highest floor with an active alarm and two floors below the lowest floor with an active alarm.

(g) Manual initiation of OEO by authorized or emergency personnel in conformance with NFPA 72 shall be permitted.

(h) The elevator group or any single elevator not in a group shall indicate to the fire alarm system the status of its availability for OEO.

(i) The elevator group or any single elevator not in a group shall indicate to the fire alarm system when OEO is active.

NOTES (2.27.11.5.1):

- (1) An "active alarm" refers to the condition caused by the "activation of an automatic fire alarm initiating device" that does not initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation in this group or any single elevator not in a group as used in this requirement.
- (2) Coordination between the fire alarm system installer and the elevator system installer is required, for example, when a group of elevators do not service all the same floors.

2.27.11.5.2 The elevator system shall initiate elevator total building evacuation in response to a signal from the fire alarm system in accordance with NFPA 72.

NOTE (2.27.11.5.2): See NFPA 72 and the applicable building code for the location of the activation means for elevator total building evacuation.

2.27.11.6 When any of the signals provided in 2.27.11.5 actuate, for group(s) of elevators or any single elevator not in a group, that serve the elevator evacuation zone, OEO shall be in effect and shall conform to 2.27.11.6.1 through 2.27.11.6.10 to evacuate occupants from the elevator evacuation zone to the elevator discharge level.

(22) **2.27.11.6.1** The variable message signs required by 2.27.11.2.2 shall indicate one of the following messages:

(a) On all floors in the elevator evacuation zone, with the exception of (d), the signs shall indicate that the elevators are available for evacuation and once a landing call is registered at the floor, the estimated time duration in minutes for the next elevator to arrive, including when the estimated time is less than a minute.

NOTE [2.27.11.6.1(a)]: Example text: "Press button for evacuation"; "Next elevator in about 2 minutes."

(b) On all floors not in the elevator evacuation zone, excluding the elevator discharge level, the signs shall indicate that elevator service is not available.

NOTE [2.27.11.6.1(b)]: Example text: "Elevators temporarily dedicated to other floors."

(c) On the elevator discharge level, the signs shall indicate that the elevators are in OEO and that occupants should not use elevators.

NOTE [2.27.11.6.1(c)]: Example text: "Elevators dedicated to evacuation. Do not enter elevator."

(d) If no elevator(s) for a group is available to serve a floor(s) in the elevator evacuation zone, they shall indicate that elevator service is not available and that occupants should use the stairs for the affected floor(s).

NOTE [2.27.11.6.1(d)]: Example text for floors being evacuated: "Elevators not available. Use stairs to evacuate."

2.27.11.6.2 An automatic visual signal or variable message sign and voice notification in each elevator shall (22)
(a) indicate that the elevator is being used for evacuation.

(b) in the event that the elevator stops to pick up passengers at a floor other than the elevator discharge level, instruct the passengers to remain in the elevator.

(c) upon or prior to arrival at the elevator discharge level, instruct passengers that they have arrived at the exit floor and to exit.

Where used, the variable message sign text shall be a minimum 25 mm (1 in.) high and conform to ICC A117.1 or Nonmandatory Appendix E, clause E-20, whichever is applicable (see Part 9 and Nonmandatory Appendix E, clause E-1). Voice notification shall be at least 10 dBA above ambient but not more than 80 dBA measured 1525 mm (60 in.) above the floor, at the center of the car.

NOTE (2.27.11.6.2): Example text for when the elevator stops at a floor other than the discharge level: "Remain in the elevator." Example text for when the elevator arrives at the discharge level: "Exit the elevator."

2.27.11.6.3 When OEO is in effect

(a) all landing calls outside of the elevator evacuation zone shall be canceled and disabled.

(b) car calls for all floors, except for the elevator discharge level, shall be canceled and disabled.

(c) building security systems that limit service to the elevator evacuation zone shall be overridden.

(d) landing calls entered at the floor(s) with an active alarm shall be given higher priority than the calls at the floors without an active alarm.

(e) if a subsequent active alarm is received from a different floor, the evacuation priority shall be assigned in the sequence received.

(f) after answering a landing call and passengers have entered the elevator, the car

(1) shall proceed toward the elevator discharge level, except as required by 8.4.10.13.

(2) is permitted to answer additional landing call(s).

2.27.11.6.4 Reserved for Future Use

2.27.11.6.5 When OEO is initiated, elevators without car calls

(a) shall proceed to a floor within the elevator evacuation zone.

(b) when traveling away from the elevator evacuation zone, shall reverse at or before the next available landing without opening its doors and proceed to the elevator

evacuation zone. If no landing call is registered within the elevator evacuation zone, the elevator shall park with its door(s) closed and the door open button(s) shall remain operative.

2.27.11.6.6 When OEO is initiated, elevators with car calls

- (a) shall proceed to the elevator discharge level.
- (b) when traveling away from the discharge level, shall reverse at or before the next available landing without opening its doors and proceed to the discharge level.

After opening and closing its doors at the elevator discharge level, the elevator(s) shall proceed to a floor within the elevator evacuation zone.

If no landing call is registered within the elevator evacuation zone, the elevator shall park with its door(s) closed and the door open buttons shall remain operative.

2.27.11.6.7 When the elevator answers a landing call at a floor within the elevator evacuation zone, a car call for the elevator discharge level shall be automatically registered. Additional landing call(s) shall be accepted at a floor where an elevator is currently loading and shall not prevent the loading elevator from closing its doors and leaving the floor. Devices that determine the number of passengers waiting at the landing shall be permitted to be used to determine the number of elevator(s) to be assigned to the landing.

2.27.11.6.8 While passengers are entering the elevator at a floor being evacuated

- (a) the door(s) shall be operated in conformance with [Section 2.13](#) and as modified in (b).
- (b) at a load within the range of 60% to 80% of rated load, the door reopening device(s) shall be disabled and the doors shall initiate closing at reduced kinetic energy in accordance with [2.13.4.2.1\(c\)](#). The in-car door open button(s) shall remain operative.
- (c) if doors are closing at reduced kinetic energy, the audible signal shall sound until the doors are closed.
- (d) if the load exceeds 100% of capacity
 - (1) the doors shall reopen and remain open and a voice notification and visual signal shall indicate that the elevator is overloaded.
 - (2) if no additional landing call was entered at the floor while the elevator was loading (see [2.27.11.6.7](#)), then a landing call shall be automatically entered for the floor of the overloaded elevator.

NOTE [\[2.27.11.6.8\(d\)\]](#): Example text for the visual sign when the elevator is overloaded: "Elevator is overloaded."

2.27.11.6.9 Once the floors within the elevator evacuation zone are evacuated, as indicated by a 60 s period in which no landing calls are registered, an available elevator shall park with its doors closed within the elevator evacuation zone for this group ready to answer subsequent landing calls within the elevator evacuation

zone. The remaining elevator(s) shall park with doors closed at the elevator discharge level. If additional demand is registered, calls shall be answered in accordance with [2.27.11.6.3](#).

2.27.11.6.10 OEO shall be terminated for this group of elevators or for any single elevator not in a group when one of the following occurs:

- (a) the fire alarm system is reset
- (b) the signals provided in [2.27.3.2](#) are actuated (see [2.27.11.1.3](#))

2.27.12 Emergency Responder Radio Coverage Equipment Inside Cars (22)

Components of emergency responder radio coverage (ERRC) equipment, when provided, shall be installed within the elevator car enclosure for exclusive use by emergency responders.

2.27.12.1 Components of ERRC Equipment. Components of ERRC equipment shall

- (a) be installed and accessible only from inside the elevator car enclosure (see [2.27.12.3](#))
- (b) not be accessible to the general public
- (c) be installed and identified in accordance with IFC or NFCC; UL 2524; NFPA 1221 or NFPA 1225; and NFPA 72

2.27.12.2 Individual Components. Components of ERRC equipment shall be limited to

- (a) antenna
- (b) remote repeater unit
- (c) power supply supporting the remote repeater unit

2.27.12.3 ERRC Antennas. Antennas installed in the car enclosure shall comply with the following:

- (a) The nonradiating coaxial cable connecting the antenna to the radio frequency source shall be permitted to be included in the elevator traveling cables.
- (b) The nonradiating coaxial cable from the antenna to the elevator traveling cable shall be permitted to pass through or terminate in the car operating panel.
- (c) The nonradiating coaxial cable feeding the antenna shall be permitted to pass through the machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms.

2.27.12.4 Remote Repeater Units. Remote repeater units and associated power supplies installed in the car enclosure shall comply with the following:

- (a) A fiber optic cable connecting the remote repeater unit shall be permitted to be included in the elevator traveling cables.
- (b) Power for the remote repeater unit shall be permitted to pass through the elevator traveling cables.
- (c) When the power source for the remote repeater unit is not in the elevator car enclosure, the power feeders for the remote repeater unit shall be permitted to terminate in the elevator controller in the machine room, control room,

or control space. The installation shall be in accordance with NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1 (see 2.26.4.1).

(d) Repair, replacement, and testing of the remote repeater unit by authorized personnel shall be permitted.

2.27.12.5 Repair, Replacement, and Testing. Repair, replacement, and testing of ERRC equipment by authorized personnel shall be permitted when access is provided by any of the following:

- (a) from inside the car enclosure
- (b) elevator personnel
- (c) accordance with 2.8.7.3.1

(22) 2.27.13 Flood Detection Operation

2.27.13.1 The flood detection means (see 2.2.9), when actuated, shall for all affected elevators

(a) cause automatic elevators that are not on hospital service, Inspection Operation (see 2.26.1.4), Firefighters' Emergency Operation (see 2.27.3), Earthquake Emergency Operation (see 8.4.10), or Hoistway Access Operation (see 2.12.7.3) to proceed to the next available landing above the flood elevation or, in the case where there is no available landing above the flood elevation, the highest available landing. Upon arrival at the landing, power-operated doors shall open and then initiate reclosing within 15 s. The door open button(s) shall remain operative and when released, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s. For elevators operating in accordance with the requirements of 2.27.2.4.4(a), replace "designated level" with "the next available landing above the flood elevation or, in the case where there is no available landing above the flood elevation, the highest available landing."

(b) where the designated level is at or below the flood elevation

(1) cause automatic elevators that are on Phase 1 Emergency Recall Operation by fire alarm initiating devices (see 2.27.3.2) to proceed to the alternate level (see 2.27.3). The alternate level shall become the recall level [see 2.27.2.4.4(c) and 2.27.3.2.4(c)] and remain as the recall level until Flood Detection Operation is terminated [see (f)].

(2) not initiate recall to the designated level per requirement 2.27.3.1.6 during Flood Detection Operation.

(c) cancel and disable landing calls and car calls for upper floors where the bottom of the counterweight could descend below the flood elevation.

(d) cancel and disable landing calls and car calls for floors at or below the flood elevation and prohibit movement of the car to a position at or below the flood elevation due to any automatic mode of operation.

(e) activate visual and audible signals inside the car and at locations where Inspection Operation is active (see 2.26.1.4 and 2.26.1.5). These signals shall meet the following requirements:

(1) The audible signal required by 2.27.3.1.6(h) shall be permitted to be used for this purpose in the car and the audible signal required by 2.27.6 shall be permitted to be used at the location of inspection switches in lieu of a separate audible signal. The audible signal shall remain active for a minimum of 30 s. The audible signal shall be active when on Inspection Operation or Hoistway Access Operation.

(2) A visual signal, labeled or displaying "FLOOD" in red lettering a minimum of 5 mm (0.25 in.) in height, shall be located in the car operating panel above the floor selection means and at all other inspection stations except for pit inspection. The visual signal shall remain activated until the flood detection means is reset.

(f) cause Flood Detection Operation to remain activated until the flood detection means is manually reset by elevator personnel. The reset means shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

2.27.13.2 For elevators on Inspection Operation or Hoistway Access Operation, the elevator car shall not be permitted to travel down when below the flood elevation or travel up where the bottom of the counterweight will descend below the flood elevation, except that travel shall always be permitted to allow elevator personnel to exit the car top at a landing.

2.27.13.3 For elevators on Earthquake Emergency Operation, the elevator shall conform to

(a) 8.4.10.1.3 except that hoistway scan operation [see 8.4.10.1.3(d)] shall not operate when the flood detection means is actuated

(b) 8.4.10.1.4 except that the elevator car shall not be permitted to travel down when below the flood elevation

2.27.13.4 An elevator on OEO shall indicate to the fire alarm system it is unavailable for OEO and shall conform to 2.27.13.1 [see 2.27.11.6.1(d)].

SECTION 2.28 LAYOUT DRAWINGS

2.28.1 Information Required on Layout Drawings (22)

Elevator layout drawings shall, in addition to other data, indicate the following:

(a) the maximum bracket spacing (see Section 2.23)

(b) the estimated maximum vertical forces on the guide rails on application of the safety or other retarding device (see Section 2.23 and 2.19.3)

(c) in the case of freight elevators for Class B or Class C loading (see 2.16.2.2), the horizontal forces on the guide-rail faces during loading and unloading, and the estimated maximum horizontal forces in a post-wise direction on the guide-rail faces on the application of the safety device (see Section 2.23)

(d) the size and linear weight in kilograms per meter (pounds per foot) of any rail reinforcement, where provided (see [Section 2.23](#))

(e) the total static and impact loads imposed on machinery and sheave beams, supports, and floors or foundations (see [Section 2.9](#))

(f) the impact load on buffer supports due to buffer engagement at the maximum permissible speed and load (see [8.2.3](#))

(g) where compensation tie-down is applied (see [2.21.4.2](#)), the load on the compensation tie-down supports

(h) the total static and dynamic loads from the governor, ropes, and tension system

(i) the horizontal forces on the building structure stipulated by [2.11.11.8](#), [2.11.12.4.6](#), or [2.11.13.3.5](#), whichever is applicable

(j) the maximum upward movement (see [2.4.6](#))

(k) locations of access panels and protective guards when provided in compliance with [2.8.2.4\(b\)](#)

(l) locations of emergency responder radio coverage (ERRC) radiating coaxial cables, antennas, and access panels, where provided

(m) location for hoistway lighting fixtures (see [2.1.7](#))

(n) the flood elevation (see definition in [Section 1.3](#))

SECTION 2.29 IDENTIFICATION

2.29.1 Identification of Equipment

2.29.1.1 In buildings with more than one elevator, each elevator in the building shall be assigned a unique alphabetic, numeric, or alphanumeric identification. Where destination-oriented control for operation is provided, the same unique identifier for each elevator shall be used for both the destination-oriented designation and the designation required by [2.29.1.1](#).

2.29.1.2 The identification assigned in [2.29.1.1](#) shall be a minimum 50 mm (2 in.) in height unless otherwise specified, and a contrasting color to its background. The identification shall be painted on, engraved on, securely attached to, or adjacent to the following equipment associated with each elevator or the enclosures housing the following equipment associated with each elevator:

- (a) the driving machine
- (b) motor-generator set
- (c) operation controller, motion controller, and motor controller
- (d) selector
- (e) governor
- (f) disconnecting means (see NFPA 70, Article 620, or CSA C22.1, Section 38)
- (g) the crosshead, or where there is no crosshead, the car frame, such that it is visible from the hoistway landing
- (h) the car operating panel, a minimum 13 mm (0.5 in.) in height

(i) on both doorjamb of every elevator entrance at the designated level, the alternate level, the level where means necessary for tests are provided (see [2.7.6.4](#)), and the level where an inspection and test panel is provided (see [2.7.6.5](#)); this identification shall be a minimum 50 mm (2 in.) in height and shall be located immediately below the floor designation, where provided (see [Nonmandatory Appendix E, clause E-17](#))

(j) separately enclosed control components (e.g., motor circuit transformers, dynamic braking resistors, line rectifiers, or chokes)

(k) means to trip and/or reset the governor from outside the hoistway as permitted by [2.7.6.3.4](#)

(l) means necessary for tests (see [2.7.6.4](#))

(m) inspection and test panel (see [2.7.6.5](#))

(n) buffers or pit channel in the pit, visible from the pit access door landing

2.29.1.3 Where any of the following devices for more than one elevator are located in the same enclosure, such devices or a grouping of devices for one elevator with demarcation to establish that all devices within the demarcation belong to that identified elevator shall be identified with the unique alphabetical or numerical identification letter(s) or number(s) of its associated elevator as assigned in [2.29.1.1](#):

(a) means to trip the governor and/or means to reset the governor from outside the hoistway as permitted by [2.7.6.3.4](#)

(b) display devices or their equivalent as required by [2.7.6.4.1](#)

(c) means to move the car from outside the hoistway as required by [2.7.6.4.3](#)

(d) stop switches as required by [2.7.6.5.2](#)

(e) landing Inspection Operation transfer switches and operating devices as required by [2.7.6.5.2](#) (see also [2.26.1.4.4](#))

(f) "CAR DOOR BYPASS" and "HOISTWAY DOOR BYPASS" switches as required by [2.26.1.5](#)

(g) means to manually reset the ascending car over-speed detection means as required by [2.19.1.2\(a\)\(4\)](#)

(h) means to manually reset the unintended motion detection means as required by [2.19.2.2\(a\)\(4\)](#)

(i) the earthquake reset button or switch as required by [8.4.10.1.1\(d\)](#)

2.29.2 Identification of Floors

Hoistways shall have floor numbers, not less than 100 mm (4 in.) in height, on the hoistway side of the enclosure or hoistway doors.

SECTION 2.30 SWAY CONTROL GUIDES

2.30.1 General Requirements

Where provided, sway control guides shall conform to the following:

(a) Sheaves and drums shall conform to requirements of 2.24.2.1 and 2.24.2.2(b).

(b) There shall be sufficient traction to lower, stop, and hold the car in the event the sway control guide becomes separated from the elevator system.

(c) Safeties shall not be provided for the sway control guide.

(d) All members of the sway control guide shall be designed to meet the strength requirements of 2.15.10.

(e) A sway control guide position switch shall be provided, conforming to the requirements of 2.25.1.2, located in the hoistway, and be operated by a cam attached to the sway control guide frame. The switch shall be located so that it operates after the car final terminal stop switch is actuated.

2.30.2 Suspension Means

A suspension means system for a sway control guide shall conform to the following:

(a) It shall consist of not less than two suspension members.

(b) The factor of safety of suspension members shall conform to the requirements of 2.20.3.

(c) Means shall be provided to prevent the displacement of the suspension means of the sway control guide during safety or buffer operations.

(d) It shall be provided with a slack suspension detection means conforming to the requirements of 2.26.2.39.

2.30.3 Abrasion Protection

Means shall be provided to minimize the abrasion between the sway control guide and the components being stabilized by this device.

2.30.4 Guiding Members

Sway control frames shall be guided by guiding means attached to the frame. Retention means shall be provided to prevent the frame from being displaced more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) from its normal running position should any part of the guiding means fail, excluding the guiding member base and its attachment to the frame. The retention means shall be permitted to be integral with the base.

Part 3

Hydraulic Elevators

SCOPE

Part 3 applies to direct-acting hydraulic elevators and roped-hydraulic elevators.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to hydraulic elevators.

SECTION 3.1 CONSTRUCTION OF HOISTWAYS AND HOISTWAY ENCLOSURES

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 2.29.2 and 2.1.1 through 2.1.6, except 2.1.2.3 and 2.1.3.1.2.

3.1.1 Strength of Pit Floor

The pit equipment, beams, floor, and their supports shall be designed and constructed to meet the applicable building code requirements and to withstand the following loads in the manner in which they occur:

- (a) the impact load due to car buffer engagement (see 8.2.3 and 3.22.2)
- (b) where a plunger gripper or a car or counterweight safety is furnished, the part of the load transmitted by the application of such gripper(s) or safety(s)
- (c) loads imposed by the hydraulic jack
 - (1) to the cylinder during normal operation
 - (2) to the buffer when resting on the buffer or during conditions described in (a)
- (d) hoist rope up-pull, where applicable, for indirect roped-hydraulic elevators

3.1.2 Floors Over Hoistways

The floor shall be located entirely above the horizontal plane required for hydraulic elevator top car clearance.

When a hydraulic pump unit and/or control equipment is located on a floor over the hoistway, access shall comply with 2.7.3.

SECTION 3.2 PITS

Pits shall conform to Section 2.2, except 2.2.7.

3.2.1 Minimum Pit Depths Required

The pit depth shall not be less than is required for the installation of the buffers, hydraulic jack, platform guard (apron), and all other elevator equipment located therein, and to provide the minimum bottom clearance and runby required by 3.4.1 and 3.4.2, respectively.

SECTION 3.3 LOCATION AND GUARDING OF COUNTERWEIGHTS

The location and guarding of counterweights, where provided, shall conform to Section 2.3.

SECTION 3.4 BOTTOM AND TOP CLEARANCES AND RUNBYS FOR CARS AND COUNTERWEIGHTS

Section 2.4 does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

3.4.1 Bottom Car Clearance

3.4.1.1 When the car rests on its fully compressed buffers or bumpers, there shall be a vertical clearance not less than 600 mm (24 in.) between the pit floor and the lowest structural or mechanical part, equipment, or device installed beneath the car platform, including a plunger-follower guide, if provided, except as specified in 3.4.1.2.

3.4.1.2 The 600 mm (24 in.) clearance does not apply to the following:

- (a) any equipment on the car within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from any side of the car platform
- (b) any equipment located on or traveling with the car located within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from either side of the car frame centerline parallel to the guide rails
- (c) any equipment mounted in or on the pit floor located within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from either side of the car frame centerline parallel to the guide rails

3.4.1.3 In no case shall the available refuge space be less than either of the following:

- (a) a horizontal area 600 mm × 1 200 mm (24 in. × 47 in.), with a height of 600 mm (24 in.)
- (b) a horizontal area 450 mm × 900 mm (18 in. × 35 in.), with a height of 1 070 mm (42 in.)

3.4.1.4 Trenches and depressions or foundation encroachments permitted by 2.2.2 shall not be considered in determining these clearances.

3.4.1.5 When the car is resting on its fully compressed buffers or bumpers, no equipment traveling with the car, including a plunger-follower guide, if provided, shall strike any part of the pit or any equipment mounted therein.

3.4.1.6 Where the vertical clearance outside the refuge space is less than 600 mm (24 in.), that area shall be clearly marked on the pit floor. Markings shall not be required in the area under the apron and guiding means. The marking shall consist of alternating 100 mm (4 in.) diagonal red and white stripes. In addition, a sign with the words "DANGER LOW CLEARANCE" in minimum 50 mm (2 in.) high letters shall be prominently posted on the hoistway enclosure and shall be visible from within the pit and at the entrance to the pit. The sign shall conform to ANSI Z535.2 and ANSI Z535.4, or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). The sign shall be made of a durable material and shall be securely fastened. The letters and figures shall remain permanently and readily legible.

3.4.2 Minimum Bottom and Top Car Runby

3.4.2.1 Bottom Car Runby. The bottom car runby shall be

- (a) not less than 75 mm (3 in.) for operating speed(s) in the down direction up to 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min)
- (b) increased from 75 mm (3 in.) to 150 mm (6 in.) in proportion to the increase in operating speed(s) in the down direction from 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min) to 1 m/s (200 ft/min)
- (c) a minimum 150 mm (6 in.) for operating speed(s) in the down direction exceeding 1 m/s (200 ft/min)

3.4.2.2 Car Top Minimum Runby. The top runby of the car shall be

- (a) not less than 75 mm (3 in.) for rated speeds up to 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min)
- (b) increased from 75 mm (3 in.) to 150 mm (6 in.) in proportion to the increase in rated speed from 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min) to 1 m/s (200 ft/min)
- (c) a minimum 150 mm (6 in.) for rated speeds exceeding 1 m/s (200 ft/min)

3.4.3 Car Top and Bottom Maximum Runby

Neither the top nor the bottom runby of the car shall be more than 600 mm (24 in.).

3.4.4 Maximum Upward Movement

The maximum upward movement shall be the distance the car sill is above the top landing when the plunger stop (see 3.18.4) is engaged.

3.4.5 Top-of-Car Clearances

The top-of-car clearances shall conform to 2.4.7 except as specified in 3.4.8.

NOTE (3.4.5): See Nonmandatory Appendix G.

3.4.6 Top Clearance and Bottom Runby of Counterweight

Where a counterweight is provided, the top clearance and the bottom runby of the counterweight shall conform to 3.4.6.1 and 3.4.6.2.

3.4.6.1 Top Clearance. The top clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following:

- (a) the bottom car runby
- (b) the stroke of the car buffers used
- (c) 150 mm (6 in.)

3.4.6.2 Bottom Runby. The bottom runby shall be not less than the sum of the following:

- (a) the distance the car can travel above its top terminal landing until the plunger strikes its mechanical stop
- (b) 150 mm (6 in.)

The minimum runby specified shall not be reduced by rope stretch (see 3.22.2 prohibiting counterweight buffers).

3.4.7 Equipment on Top of Car Not Permitted to Strike Overhead Structure

Equipment on top of the car shall conform to the requirements in 2.4.9.

3.4.8 Clearances Above Hydraulic Jack Projecting Above the Car

When the car has reached its maximum upward movement, a vertical clearance of 100 mm (4 in.) shall be provided from a hydraulic jack attached to the car and the jack's attachment means to the horizontal plane described by the lowest part of the overhead structure or other obstruction adjacent to the car enclosure top within the vertical projection of the hydraulic jack and its attachment means. Additionally, a horizontal clearance in the direction of the centerline of the car top of at least 300 mm (12 in.) shall be provided from the top of the hydraulic jack to any object creating a shearing hazard.

NOTE (3.4.8): See Nonmandatory Appendix G, Figure G-5.

SECTION 3.5 HORIZONTAL CAR AND COUNTERWEIGHT CLEARANCES

The horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to Section 2.5.

SECTION 3.6

PROTECTION OF SPACES BELOW HOISTWAY

Section 2.6 does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

Where there is space below the hoistway that is accessible to persons, the requirements of 3.6.1 through 3.6.4 shall be conformed to.

3.6.1 Jack-Supporting Structure

The hydraulic jack shall be supported by a structure of sufficient strength to support the entire static load at rated capacity that is capable of being imposed upon it. The design factor of safety shall be not less than 5, based on ultimate strength for static loads transmitted.

3.6.2 Counterweight Safety Actuation

Where the space referred to in Section 3.6 falls underneath the counterweight and/or its guides, the counterweight shall be provided with a safety device that functions as a result of the breaking or slackening of the counterweight suspension ropes.

3.6.3 Buffer Types

The car shall be provided with buffers of one of the following types:

- (a) oil buffers conforming to 3.22.1
- (b) spring buffers of a design that will not be fully compressed when struck by a car with rated load at the operating speed in the down direction (see 3.22.1)
- (c) elastomeric buffers of a design that will not be fully compressed when struck by a car with rated load at the operating speed in the down direction (see 3.22.1)

3.6.4 Buffer Supports

Car buffer supports shall be provided that will withstand, without permanent deformation, the impact resulting from buffer engagement by a car with rated load at the operating speed in the down direction. The design factor of safety shall conform to 2.22.4.3.

SECTION 3.7

MACHINERY SPACES, MACHINE ROOMS, CONTROL SPACES, AND CONTROL ROOMS

A machinery space outside the hoistway containing a hydraulic machine and a motor controller shall be a machine room.

(22) 3.7.1 Requirements

Machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.1 through 2.7.7 and 2.7.9.

NOTE (3.7.1): See 8.12.1 for additional requirements that could affect location of equipment.

3.7.1.1 In 2.7.5.1.1, 2.7.5.2, and 2.7.5.2.4, replace the words “elevator driving-machine brake or an emergency brake” with the words “hydraulic machine.”

3.7.1.2 In 2.7.5.1 and 2.7.5.1.2(a), replace the words “elevator driving-machine brake, emergency brake” with the words “hydraulic machine.”

3.7.1.3 In 2.7.5.1.2(b), replace the wording with the following: “for a roped-hydraulic elevator support not less than twice the unbalanced weight of the system with no load and up to rated load in the car and all suspension ropes in place; and for a direct-acting hydraulic elevator support not less than twice the weight of the car with rated load.”

3.7.1.4 In 2.7.5.1.2(c), 2.7.5.3.1, and 2.7.5.5(a), replace the words “elevator driving-machine motor and brake” with the words “hydraulic machine.”

3.7.1.5 In 2.7.5.1.2(e) and 2.7.5.2.1(b)(4), replace the words “before maintaining or inspecting brake, emergency brake” with the words “before maintaining or inspecting the hydraulic machine.”

3.7.1.6 In 2.7.5.2.1(b)(1) and 2.7.5.5(d), replace the words “115% of rated speed” with the words “operating speed in the down direction.”

3.7.1.7 In 2.7.6.3.1, replace the words “electric driving machine” with the words “hydraulic machine.”

3.7.1.8 In 2.7.6.4, replace the wording with the following: “Where a hydraulic machine or an elevator motion controller or motor controller is located in the hoistway or pit, means necessary for tests that require movement of the car shall be provided and arranged so that they can be operated from outside the hoistway and shall conform to 2.7.6.4.1 and 2.7.6.4.2. These means are also permitted to be used by elevator personnel for passenger rescue.”

3.7.1.9 In 2.7.6.4.1, replace the first paragraph with the following: “Where direct observation of the elevator or ropes in the case of a roped-hydraulic elevator is not possible from the location of the means necessary for tests that require movement of the car, display devices or the equivalent shall be provided. They shall be visible from the location of the means and shall convey the following information about the elevator simultaneously:”

3.7.1.10 Requirement 2.7.6.4.3 does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

SECTION 3.8 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, WIRING, PIPES, AND DUCTS IN HOISTWAY, MACHINERY SPACES, MACHINE ROOMS, CONTROL SPACES, AND CONTROL ROOMS

Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts shall conform to [Section 2.8](#).

SECTION 3.9 MACHINERY AND SHEAVE BEAMS, SUPPORTS, AND FOUNDATIONS

Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to [Section 2.9](#).

SECTION 3.10 GUARDING OF EXPOSED AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT

Guarding of exposed auxiliary equipment shall conform to [Section 2.10](#).

SECTION 3.11 PROTECTION OF HOISTWAY LANDING OPENINGS

Protection of hoistway landing openings shall conform to [Section 2.11](#), except as excluded by [3.11.1](#).

3.11.1 Emergency Doors

Emergency doors, where required by [2.11.1](#), are required only when car safeties are provided.

SECTION 3.12 HOISTWAY DOOR LOCKING DEVICES, CLOSED DETECTION MEANS, AND HOISTWAY ACCESS SWITCHES

3.12.1 General

The requirements of [Section 2.12](#) shall apply.

3.12.2 Car Door or Gate Closed Detection Means and Car Door Interlocks

Car door or gate closed detection means and car door interlocks shall conform to [2.14.4.2](#).

SECTION 3.13 POWER OPERATION, POWER OPENING, AND POWER CLOSING OF HOISTWAY DOORS AND CAR DOORS OR GATES

Power operation, power opening, and power closing of hoistway doors and car doors or gates shall conform to [Section 2.13](#).

SECTION 3.14 CAR ENCLOSURES, CAR DOORS AND GATES, AND CAR ILLUMINATION

Car enclosures, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to [Section 2.14](#) except [2.14.2.3.3\(b\)](#) does not apply where the elevator conforms to the requirements of [3.26.10](#).

SECTION 3.15 CAR FRAMES AND PLATFORMS

3.15.1 Requirements

3.15.1.1 Direct-acting hydraulic elevators shall be provided with car frames and platforms conforming to [Section 2.15](#), subject to the modification hereinafter specified. (See [3.18.2.3](#) for connection between plunger and platform or car frame.)

A car frame shall not be required, provided [3.15.1.1.1](#) through [3.15.1.1.6](#) are conformed to.

3.15.1.1.1 The platform frame shall be of such design and construction that all eccentric loads are carried through the structure and plunger attachment into the hydraulic jack (see [3.18.2.3](#)).

3.15.1.1.2 The platform frame shall be guided on each guide rail by single-guiding members attached to the frame.

3.15.1.1.3 The platform frame shall be designed to withstand the forces resulting from the class of loading for which the elevator is designed without exceeding the stresses and deflections in [2.15.10](#) and [2.15.11](#) (see [8.2.2.6](#)).

3.15.1.1.4 The hydraulic jack connection to the car shall be designed to transmit the full eccentric moment into the plunger with a factor of safety not less than 4 (see [3.18.2.3](#)).

3.15.1.1.5 The hydraulic jack shall be designed to withstand the stresses due to bending during the loading and unloading of the platform based on the type of loading for which the elevator is designed (see [8.2.8.1.2](#)).

3.15.1.1.6 Car safeties shall not be provided.

3.15.1.2 Roped-hydraulic elevators shall be provided with car frames and platforms conforming to [Section 2.15](#).

3.15.2 Maximum Allowable Stresses and Deflections in Car Frame and Platform Members

3.15.2.1 Direct-Acting Hydraulic Elevators. The stresses and deflections in car frame and platform members and their connections, based on the static load imposed on them, shall be not more than those permitted by [Section 2.15](#), provided that the maximum stresses in the car frame uprights that are normally subject to compression conform to [8.2.9.1.1](#).

3.15.2.2 Roped-Hydraulic Elevators. The stresses and deflection in car frame and platform members and their connections, based on the static load imposed on them, shall be not more than those permitted by [Section 2.15](#), and shall conform to [8.2.2](#).

3.15.3 Calculations of Stresses and Deflections in Car Frame and Platform Members

3.15.3.1 Direct-Acting Hydraulic Elevators. The calculations of the stresses and deflections in side-post car frame and platform members shall be based on the formulas and data in [8.2.9](#).

For cars with corner-post or sub-post car frames, the formulas and specified methods of calculation do not generally apply and shall be modified to suit the specific conditions and requirements in each case.

3.15.3.2 Roped-Hydraulic Elevators. The calculations of the stresses and deflections in side-post car frame and platform members shall be based on the formulas and data in [8.2.2](#).

For cars with corner-post or sub-post car frames, or where the rope hitches are not on the crosshead, the formulas and specified methods of calculation do not generally apply and shall be modified to suit the specific conditions and requirements in each case.

SECTION 3.16 CAPACITY AND LOADING

3.16.1 Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators

The requirements of [2.16.1](#) shall apply.

3.16.2 Minimum Rated Load for Freight Elevators

The requirements of [2.16.2](#) shall apply, except in [2.16.2.2.4\(c\)](#), the wording “hydraulic jack, hydraulic machine, pressure piping, and fittings” shall be substituted for the wording “driving-machine motor, brake, and traction relation.”

3.16.3 Capacity and Data Plates

The requirements of [2.16.3](#) shall apply, except (a) requirement [2.16.3.2.1\(a\)](#) shall not apply to hydraulic elevators.

(b) on data plates (see [2.16.3.2.2](#)), the weight of the plunger shall not be included in the weight of the complete car, even though it is attached. The plunger weight shall be indicated independently. The operating speed in the down direction shall also be indicated.

(c) requirement [2.16.3.2.2\(c\)](#) applies only for roped-hydraulic elevators.

(d) requirement [2.16.3.2.2\(e\)](#) applies only where car safeties are provided.

3.16.4 Carrying of Passengers on Freight Elevators

The requirements of [2.16.4](#) shall apply, except [2.16.4.3](#) shall not apply to hydraulic elevators.

3.16.5 Signs Required in Freight Elevators

The requirements of [2.16.5](#) shall apply.

3.16.6 Overloading of Freight Elevators

The requirements of [2.16.6](#) shall apply, except [2.16.6\(b\)](#) shall not apply to hydraulic elevators.

3.16.7 One-Piece Loads Exceeding the Rated Load

Requirement [2.16.7](#) shall not apply. One-piece loads exceeding the rated load shall not be carried on hydraulic elevators.

3.16.8 Additional Requirements for Passenger Overload

Requirement [2.16.8](#) shall not apply. Hydraulic passenger elevators shall be designed based on 100% of rated load.

3.16.9 Special Loading Means

The requirements of [2.16.9](#) shall apply.

SECTION 3.17 CAR SAFETIES, COUNTERWEIGHT SAFETIES, PLUNGER GRIPPER, AND GOVERNORS

3.17.1 Car Safeties

Car safeties shall be provided for roped-hydraulic elevators and shall be permitted to be provided for direct-acting hydraulic elevators. When provided, car safeties shall conform to [Section 2.17](#) and [3.17.1.1](#) through [3.17.1.3](#).

3.17.1.1 The slack-rope device required by [3.18.1.2](#) shall be permitted to be an additional means of activating the car safety on roped-hydraulic elevators using hydraulic jacks equipped with plungers. The slack-rope

device required by 3.18.1.2.5 shall be an additional means of activating the car safety on roped-hydraulic elevators using hydraulic jacks equipped with pistons.

3.17.1.2 The safety shall be a type that can be released only by moving the car in the up direction. To return a car to normal operation after a safety set, the car shall be moved hydraulically in the up direction. For repairs of obvious or suspected malfunction, the car shall be permitted to be raised by other means capable of holding the entire car weight. Prior to releasing the other means, the car shall be run hydraulically in the up direction.

If an auxiliary pump is used to move the car in the up direction to release the safeties, it shall

(a) have a relief valve that limits the pressure to not more than 2.3 times the working pressure

(b) be connected between the check valve or control valve and the shutoff valve

3.17.1.3 The switches required by 2.17.7 shall, when operated, remove power from the hydraulic machine motor and control valves before or at the time of application of the safety.

3.17.2 Counterweight Safeties

Counterweight safeties, where provided in accordance with 3.6.2, shall conform to Section 2.17, provided that safeties shall be operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the counterweight suspension ropes, irrespective of the rated speed of the elevator.

3.17.3 Plunger Gripper

A plunger gripper shall be permitted to be provided for direct-acting hydraulic elevators using hydraulic jacks equipped with plungers. A plunger gripper shall be capable of stopping and holding the car with its rated load from the actual measured tripping speed per Table 2.18.2.1 and shall conform to 3.17.3.1 through 3.17.3.9. In Table 2.18.2.1 the words "rated speed" shall be replaced by "operating speed in the down direction."

3.17.3.1 Limits of Application. A plunger gripper shall be permitted, provided that

(a) the external pressure applied to the plunger by the device is symmetrically distributed at locations around the circumference of the plunger. The resulting stress in the plunger shall not exceed 67% of the yield strength at any point of the plunger.

(b) the external pressure applied to the plunger by the device does not exceed 67% of the value that will cause local buckling. Where the external pressure is applied over substantially the full circumference of the plunger, the maximum value shall be permitted to be determined by 8.2.8.6.

(c) during the application, the plunger and the plunger gripper are capable of withstanding any vertical forces imposed on them, and transfer such forces to the supporting structure. During the application of the device, any loading on the plunger shall not damage the cylinder.

(d) power is removed from the hydraulic machine before or at the time of application.

3.17.3.2 Means of Application. A plunger gripper shall mechanically grip the plunger when a loss of hydraulic pressure or fluid causes uncontrolled downward motion to occur. The plunger gripper shall be actuated by either a hydraulic means or an electrical means.

3.17.3.2.1 Electrical Actuation Means. Where an electrical actuation means is provided, it shall comply with the following:

(a) The plunger gripper shall be fully operational during a primary electrical system power failure.

(b) The elevator shall not be permitted to restart after a normal stop in the event of a failure within the electrical means used to actuate the gripper of any of the following:

(1) a single mechanically operated switch

(2) a single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay

(3) a single solenoid

(4) a single solid-state device

(5) the software system

(6) the occurrence of a single ground

3.17.3.2.2 Inspection and Test Means. Hydraulic or electrical means other than those required in 3.17.3.2 are permitted to actuate the plunger gripper for inspection and test purposes. Electrical inspection and test means are not required to comply with 3.17.3.2.1.

3.17.3.3 Release

3.17.3.3.1 The plunger gripper shall be released by establishing at least no-load static pressure on the hydraulic system, or by other means capable of holding the entire car weight.

3.17.3.3.2 The elevator shall not be permitted to be restarted without establishing at least no-load static pressure on the hydraulic system.

3.17.3.4 Normally Retracted Position. In the normally retracted position, 3.17.3.4.1 and 3.17.3.4.2 shall apply.

3.17.3.4.1 Clearance. In the normally retracted position of the plunger gripper, any contact between the gripping surface and the plunger shall not cause degradation of the plunger or premature degradation of the gripping surface.

3.17.3.4.2 Hydraulic Holding Means. Hydraulic means are permitted to maintain the plunger gripper in the normally retracted position.

3.17.3.5 Deceleration. The deceleration of the elevator upon actuation of the plunger gripper shall comply with the following criteria:

(a) The average deceleration rate at rated load shall be not less than $0.1g$, where g is gravity, nor more than $1.0g$. (See [Nonmandatory Appendix P](#) for minimum and maximum stopping distances.)

(b) Any peak deceleration rate in excess of $2.0g$ shall have a duration not greater than 0.04 s.

3.17.3.6 Minimum Factors of Safety and Stresses of Safety Parts and Rope Connections

3.17.3.6.1 Compliance with [2.17.12.1](#) and [2.17.12.6](#) is required. Springs shall be permitted in the operation of the plunger gripper. The maximum fiber stress in the spring shall not exceed 85% of the elastic limit in the material at any time. The factor of safety of wire ropes, if provided in the construction of the plunger gripper, shall not be less than 5. Tiller-rope construction shall not be used.

3.17.3.6.2 Leaf and roller chains, if provided in the construction of the plunger gripper, shall conform to ASME B29.100 or ASME B29.8.

3.17.3.6.3 The factors of safety shall be based on the maximum stresses developed in the parts during operation of the gripper when stopping the rated load from the tripping speed (see [3.17.3](#)) of the speed-measuring device.

3.17.3.6.4 Rope or tape used to drive an electrical encoder is not required to comply with the requirements for governor rope.

3.17.3.6.5 If a governor is used, it shall comply with [2.18.5.1](#), except lang-lay construction is permitted and the diameter is permitted to be less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.).

3.17.3.7 Corrosion-Resistant Bearings in Plunger Gripper and Gripper Operating Mechanisms. Compliance with [2.17.13](#) is required.

3.17.3.8 Marking Plate for a Plunger Gripper. A permanent marking plate shall be securely attached to each plunger gripper. The plate shall be of such material and construction that it is permanent and readily legible. The letters and symbols shall be stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied with depressed or raised letters and symbols not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.) in height, indicating

(a) that it is a plunger gripper.

(b) the maximum operating speed in the down direction in meters per second (feet per minute) for which the plunger gripper shall be permitted to be used.

(c) the maximum load in newtons (pounds-force) for which the gripper is designed and installed to stop and sustain.

(d) the manufacturer's name or trademark and identification number of the device.

(e) space for the date of the acceptance test. The date shall be permanently marked following the test.

(f) the diameter and minimum wall thickness of the plunger for which the device is applicable.

3.17.3.9 Flexible Hoses. Flexible hoses used for the operation of a plunger gripper shall be permitted, provided that their failure does not cause an uncontrolled descent. These flexible hoses are not required to meet the requirements of [3.19.3.3](#).

3.17.4 Governors

Governors, when provided, shall comply with [Section 2.18](#), except [2.18.4](#). In addition, governors shall conform to [3.17.4.1](#) and [3.17.4.2](#).

3.17.4.1 The term "operating speed in the down direction with rated load" shall be substituted for the words "rated speed" whenever these words appear.

3.17.4.2 For governors located inside the hoistway, see [2.7.6.3.4](#).

SECTION 3.18 HYDRAULIC JACKS

3.18.1 Hydraulic Jack and Connections

Where multiple hydraulic jacks are used, they shall be hydraulically connected to form a single hydraulic system.

3.18.1.1 Direct-Acting Hydraulic Elevators. The driving member of the hydraulic jack shall be attached to the car frame or car platform with fastenings of sufficient strength to support that member with a factor of safety not less than 4 and shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, any forces resulting from a plunger stop as described in [3.18.4.2](#).

Any plunger or cylinder head mechanical connector or connection shall conform to [3.18.2.1](#), [3.18.2.4](#), [3.18.4](#), and [3.18.5](#).

3.18.1.2 Roped-Hydraulic Elevator

3.18.1.2.1 The driving member of the hydraulic jack shall be vertical. Cars shall be suspended with not less than two suspension members per hydraulic jack in conformance with [2.15.13](#) and [Section 2.20](#).

3.18.1.2.2 The roping ratio that relates the driving member of the hydraulic jack speed to the car speed shall not exceed 1:2.

3.18.1.2.3 Sheaves used to transfer load from the hydraulic jack to the car frame through wire ropes shall conform to [2.24.2](#), [2.24.3](#), and [2.24.5](#).

3.18.1.2.4 Means shall be provided to prevent the ropes, if slack, from leaving the sheave grooves.

3.18.1.2.5 A slack-rope device with an enclosed manually reset switch shall be provided that shall cause the electric power to be removed from the hydraulic machine pump motor and the control valves should any rope become slack.

3.18.1.2.6 The traveling sheave shall be attached with fastenings having a minimum factor of safety of 4, based on the ultimate strength of the material used. The load to be used in determining the factor of safety shall be the resultant of the maximum tensions in the ropes leading from the sheave with the elevator at rest and with rated load in the car.

3.18.2 Plungers

3.18.2.1 Material. The plunger and connecting couplings for the plunger shall be of materials in accordance with 3.18.2.1.1 and 3.18.2.1.2.

3.18.2.1.1 Tensile, compressive, bending, and torsional loading shall have a factor of safety not less than 5, based on ultimate strength.

3.18.2.1.2 Pressure loadings shall have a factor of safety not less than that calculated per 8.2.8.5.

3.18.2.2 Plunger Design. Plungers made of steel shall be designed and constructed in compliance with the applicable formula in 8.2.8.1 for calculation of elastic stability, bending, and external pressure. For other materials, the appropriate modulus of elasticity must be utilized.

Plungers subject to internal pressure shall also be designed and constructed in accordance with the cylinder design formula in 8.2.8.2.

3.18.2.3 Plunger Connection

3.18.2.3.1 When the hydraulic jack is not subjected to eccentric loading, it shall

(a) carry in tension the weight of the plunger with a factor of safety not less than 4

(b) restrict total vertical movement to less than 20% of the buffer stroke, where vibration damping means are provided

3.18.2.3.2 When the hydraulic jack is subjected to eccentric loading, the following shall also apply:

(a) The plunger connection to the car shall be designed and constructed to transmit the full eccentric moment into the plunger with a factor of safety not less than 4.

(b) The plunger and the plunger connection to the car shall be designed and constructed so that the total vertical deflection of the loading edge of the car platform due to eccentric loading of the car shall not exceed 19 mm (0.75 in.).

3.18.2.4 Plunger Joints. Plungers composed of more than one section shall have joints designed and constructed to

(a) carry in tension the weight of all plunger sections below the joint with a factor of safety not less than 4

(b) transmit in compression the gross load on the plunger with a factor of safety not less than 5, based on ultimate strength

(c) withstand without damage any forces resulting from a plunger stop as described in 3.18.4.2

(d) for eccentric loading, the joints shall conform to 3.18.2.2 and 3.18.2.3

3.18.2.5 Plungers Subject to External Pressure. For plungers subjected to external pressure, the working pressure shall be not greater than indicated by the formula in 8.2.8.1.3.

3.18.2.6 Plunger Heads Subject to Fluid Pressure. Heads of plungers subject to fluid pressure shall conform to 3.18.3.6.

3.18.2.7 Plunger-Follower Guide

3.18.2.7.1 A plunger-follower guide shall be permitted to be used, provided it is arranged so that the elevator is always in a position where the unsupported length of the plunger conforms to the "maximum free length" as defined in 8.2.8.1. If this length is exceeded, upward movement of the car shall immediately stop, and it shall be permitted to allow the car to return nonstop to the lowest landing; power-operated doors shall open, and electric power shall be removed from the motor and the control valve. After not less than 15 s nor more than 60 s, the doors shall close in compliance with 2.11.3. A manual reset of the means shall be required before the elevator is returned to service. The in-car door open button shall remain operative.

Plunger-follower guides shall be designed and constructed to comply with all applicable requirements of Section 2.15.

3.18.2.7.2 Telescopic plungers shall have each plunger section internally guided. If more than two movable sections are used, external guides shall be provided for each plunger section. External guides shall be designed and constructed to comply with all applicable requirements of Section 2.15.

3.18.3 Cylinders

3.18.3.1 Material. The cylinder and connecting couplings for the cylinder shall be made of materials in compliance with 3.18.3.1.1 and 3.18.3.1.2.

3.18.3.1.1 For tensile, compressive, bending, and torsional loading, the cylinder and connecting couplings shall have a factor of safety not less than 5, based on ultimate strength.

3.18.3.1.2 For pressure calculations, the cylinder and connecting coupling shall have a factor of safety not less than that calculated as specified in 8.2.8.5.

3.18.3.2 Cylinder Design. Cylinders shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the formula in 8.2.8.2.

3.18.3.3 Clearance at the Bottom of the Cylinder. Clearance shall be provided at the bottom of the cylinder so that the bottom of the plunger will not strike the safety bulkhead of the cylinder when the car is resting on its fully compressed buffer (see 3.22.1).

3.18.3.4 Safety Bulkhead. Cylinders buried in the ground shall be provided with a safety bulkhead having an orifice sized to permit the car to descend at a speed not greater than 0.075 m/s (15 ft/min), nor less than 0.025 m/s (5 ft/min). A space not less than 25 mm (1 in.) shall be left between the welds of the safety bulkhead and the cylinder head. Safety bulkheads shall conform to 3.18.3.6.

A safety bulkhead shall not be required where a double cylinder is used and where both inner and outer cylinders conform to 3.18.3.

3.18.3.5 Cylinder Packing Heads. Cylinder packing heads shall conform to the appropriate requirements of 3.18.4 and 8.2.8.3.

3.18.3.6 Closed Cylinder and Plunger Heads. Closed heads of cylinders and heads of plungers subject to fluid pressure shall conform to 3.18.3.6.1 through 3.18.3.6.3.

3.18.3.6.1 Closed Cylinder Heads. Closed heads of cylinders shall be only dished seamless construction and concave to pressure, except if the bottom of the cylinder is supported and if the cylinder is not buried.

3.18.3.6.2 Design Formulas. Closed heads of cylinders and plunger heads shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the applicable formulas in 8.2.8.3, provided that steel heads shall in no case have a thickness less than that required for the adjoining shell.

3.18.3.6.3 Dished Seamless Heads, Convex to Pressure. If used on plungers, dished seamless heads, convex to pressure, shall have a maximum allowable working pressure of not more than 60% of that for heads of the same dimensions with pressure on the concave side.

3.18.3.7 Collection of Oil Leakage. Means shall be provided to collect for removal any oil leakage from the cylinder head seals or packing gland. The amount collected before removal shall not exceed 19 L (5 gal).

3.18.3.8 Cylinders Buried in the Ground

3.18.3.8.1 Cylinders buried in the ground shall be protected from corrosion due to galvanic or electrolytic action, salt water, and other underground conditions.

3.18.3.8.2 The methods specified in 3.18.3.8.3 shall be considered acceptable, provided that they

(a) are designed and installed with means for monitoring and maintaining them in accordance with accepted industry practices applicable to the methods

(b) are effective for specific conditions where the cylinder is installed

(c) provide means for checking ongoing compliance with 3.18.3.8.1

3.18.3.8.3 Cylinders buried in the ground shall be provided with protection from corrosion by one or more of the following methods:

(a) The cylinder shall be constructed of a material that is immune to the stated conditions.

(b) The cylinder shall be completely covered or encased in a material that completely surrounds the exterior surface and is immune to the stated conditions. If the space between the protective casing and the cylinder is empty, the casing must be designed to withstand a static head of water from ground level to the bottom of the cylinder, based on the manufacturer's rating of the material used.

(c) The cylinder shall be protected by a monitored cathodic protection system.

(d) The cylinder shall be protected by a means that will provide an immunity level not less than that provided by the above methods for the stated conditions.

3.18.3.9 Means for Relief of Air or Gas. Cylinders shall be provided with a means to release air or other gas.

3.18.4 Plunger Stops

3.18.4.1 Metal Stops and/or Other Means. Metal stops (22) and/or other means shall be provided at one end of the plunger and at the packing head end of the cylinder to prevent the plunger from traveling beyond the limits of the cylinder.

The metal stops and/or other means shall be designed and constructed to stop the plunger traveling in the up direction at maximum speed under full-load pressure, should the normal terminal stopping device (see 3.25.1) fail to operate, or at a reduced speed when a terminal speed-reducing device is provided as required by 3.25.2. No running test onto the stop ring is required [see 8.10.3.2.2(z)].

3.18.4.2 Hydraulic System. The connections to the hydraulic machine, plunger, plunger connection, couplings, plunger joints, cylinder, cylinder connecting couplings, and any other parts of the hydraulic system shall be designed and constructed to withstand, without damage, a plunger stop in accordance with 3.18.4.1.

3.18.5 Welding

All welding of hydraulic jack components shall conform to Section 8.8.

3.18.6 Marking of the Hydraulic Jack

The hydraulic jack shall be permanently and legibly marked. The marking shall be visible after installation. The letters and symbols shall be stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied with depressed or raised letters and symbols not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.) in height with the following information:

- (a) the name or trademark by which the organization that manufactured the hydraulic jack can be identified
- (b) the manufacturer's designation of the type or model
- (c) the year of manufacture

SECTION 3.19

VALVES, PRESSURE PIPING, AND FITTINGS

3.19.1 Materials and Working Pressures

3.19.1.1 Materials. Pressure piping, valves, fittings, and mufflers shall be designed and made of materials having properties such that a factor of safety not less than that calculated per 8.2.8.5 is achieved.

Piping and fittings of a grade not subjected to listed/certified testing (ASTM or equivalent) shall not be used for hydraulic pressure piping and fittings.

NOTE (3.19.1.1): Examples of two acceptable pipe standards are ASTM A106 and ASTM A53, Type E or Type S.

3.19.1.2 Working Pressures. The working pressure (see Section 1.3) shall not exceed the component rated pressure (see Section 1.3) of the pipes, valves, mufflers, and fittings used on the pressure side of the hydraulic system.

3.19.1.3 Component Proof-Test. For elongations greater than or equal to 10%, the component design shall be substantiated either in accordance with 8.2.8.5 or by an unrestrained proof-test of 5 times the component rated pressure without resulting in fracture. For elongations of less than 10%, the test value shall be 1.5 times the value indicated by 8.2.8.5 multiplied by the component rated pressure.

3.19.1.4 Component Markings. Valves, fittings, and mufflers shall be pressure rated and shall bear the manufacturer's name or trademark by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified and identification symbols to indicate the materials and service designations for which the manufacturer's rating applies.

NOTE: Valves and fittings rated for a different system may be used in hydraulic elevator systems when substantiated in accordance with the elevator code.

3.19.2 Pressure Piping

3.19.2.1 Wall Thickness. The minimum wall thickness shall conform to 8.2.8.4.

3.19.2.2 Threading. Pipe lighter than Schedule 40 shall not be threaded.

3.19.2.3 Pipe Supports. Piping shall be supported to eliminate undue stresses at joints and fittings, particularly at any section of the line subject to vibration.

3.19.2.4 Pipe, Tubing, or Fittings. Pipe, tubing, or fittings shall be permitted to be used for instrument or control purposes and shall conform to ASME B31.1, para. 122.3.

3.19.2.5 Jack-Side Pressure Measurement Means

(a) A pressure gauge fitting shall be provided on the jack side of the check valve in or immediately adjacent to the hydraulic control valve.

(b) A pressure measurement means, accessible from outside the hoistway, only by elevator personnel (see Section 8.1), shall be provided by one of the following methods:

(1) a pressure gauge fitting, and where a permanent gauge is installed, a shutoff means shall be provided to protect the gauge

(2) a pressure-sensing means display, and the pressure gauge fitting shall be located either inside or outside the hoistway

3.19.2.6 Hydraulic Pipeline Identification. A marking shall be applied to accessible piping located outside the elevator machine room or hoistway, stating "Elevator Hydraulic Line" in letters that are at least 19 mm (0.75 in.) high in a contrasting color. The marking shall be visible after installation and applied at intervals not greater than 3000 mm (120 in.).

3.19.2.7 Where the hydraulic machine is located in the hoistway and any piping, tubing, or fitting permitted by 3.19.2.4 is located outside the hoistway, means shall be provided to either (22)

(a) protect the specified piping, tubing, or fittings from damage, which would cause unsafe elevator operation or

(b) prevent uncontrolled movement of the elevator in the event of failure of the specified piping, tubing, or fittings

3.19.2.8 Where the pressure piping is outside the machine room, machinery space, or hoistway, the pressure piping shall be protected from external damage. Where the pressure piping is buried underground or extends beyond the building containing the hydraulic machine or machine room, the elevator shall be fitted with at least one of the following:

(a) a car safety conforming to 3.17.2

(b) an overspeed valve(s) conforming to 3.19.4.7

(c) a plunger gripper(s) conforming to 3.17.3

3.19.3 Connections and Fittings

3.19.3.1 Connections. All piping connections shall be the welded, grooved, threaded, or bolted flange type. Threads of valves, piping, and fittings shall conform to the requirements of ASME B1.20.1 or ASME B1.20.3. Hydraulic tube fittings shall conform to SAE J514.

3.19.3.2 Grooved Pipe Fittings

3.19.3.2.1 Grooved pipe fitting assemblies shall be permitted to be used for hydraulic connections. They shall be installed in conformance with the manufacturer's specifications. They shall be installed in locations that will permit disassembly and inspection of all of their component parts.

3.19.3.2.2 Grooved pipe fittings shall be designed and constructed so that failure of a sealing element will not permit separation of the parts connected. The devices or means used to prevent the separation of the parts connected shall be removable only with the use of tools. Devices or means that are removable with hand-operated quick-release levers or toggles are prohibited.

3.19.3.3 Flexible Hydraulic Connections. Flexible hose and fitting assemblies and flexible couplings shall be permitted to be used for hydraulic connections. Where installed between the check valve or control valve and the cylinder, they shall conform to 3.19.3.3.1 and 3.19.3.3.2.

3.19.3.3.1 Flexible hose and fitting assemblies shall

(a) not be installed within the hoistway nor project into or through any wall. Installation shall be accomplished without introducing any twist in the hose and shall conform to the minimum bending radius of SAE 100, R2-type, high-pressure, steel-wire-reinforced, rubber-covered hydraulic hose specified in SAE J517.

(b) have a bursting strength sufficient to withstand not less than 10 times the working pressure (see Section 1.3). They shall be tested in the factory or in the field prior to installation at a pressure not less than 5 times the working pressure and shall be marked with the date and pressure of the test.

(c) conform to the requirements of SAE 100, R2-type hose specified in SAE J517 and be compatible with the fluid used.

(d) be nonreusable-type fittings.

(e) be permanently labeled/marked, indicating

- (1) the name or trademark by which the manufacturer of the hose and fittings can be identified
- (2) the type of hose and fitting
- (3) the minimum factory test pressure
- (4) the minimum bending radius of the hose
- (5) the date of installation
- (6) the inspection procedure
- (7) the name of the elevator contractor

(f) have a line overspeed valve conforming to 3.19.4.7.

3.19.3.3.2 Flexible couplings are permitted for hydraulic connections. Such couplings shall be designed and constructed so that failure of the sealing element will not permit separation of the connected parts. The devices or means used to prevent the separation of the connected parts shall be removable only with the use of tools. Any devices or means that are removable with hand-operated quick-release levers are prohibited.

3.19.4 Valves

3.19.4.1 Shutoff Valve. A manually operated shutoff valve shall be provided between the hydraulic machines and the hydraulic jack.

3.19.4.1.1 When the hydraulic machine is located outside the hoistway, the shutoff valve shall be located adjacent to the hydraulic machine (see Section 8.1).

3.19.4.1.2 When the hydraulic machine is located in the hoistway, the operation of the shutoff valve shall be located so that it is accessible from outside the hoistway, only by elevator personnel (see Section 8.1). The shutoff valve shall have a means to indicate the fully opened and fully closed positions at the location of the operation.

3.19.4.2 Pump Relief Valve

3.19.4.2.1 Each pump or group of pumps shall be equipped with one or more relief valves conforming to the following requirements:

(a) *Type and Location.* The relief valve shall be located between the pump and the check valve and shall be of a type and so installed in the bypass connection that the valve cannot be shut off from the hydraulic system.

(b) *Size.* The size of the relief valve and bypass shall be sufficient to pass the maximum rated capacity of the pump without raising the pressure more than 50% above the working pressure. Two or more relief valves shall be permitted to be used to obtain the required capacity.

(c) *Sealing.* Relief valves shall be sealed after being set to the correct pressure.

3.19.4.2.2 No relief valve is required for centrifugal pumps driven by induction motors, provided the shutoff, or maximum pressure that the pump can develop, is not greater than 135% of the working pressure at the pump.

3.19.4.3 Check Valve. A check valve shall be provided and shall be installed so that it will hold the elevator car with rated load at any point when the pump stops and the down valves are closed or the maintained pressure drops below the minimum operating pressure.

3.19.4.4 Manual Lowering Valve. A manually operated valve, located on or adjacent to the control valves, shall be provided and identified, which permits lowering the car at a speed not exceeding 0.10 m/s (20 ft/min). This valve or a means to manually operate the valve shall be

marked to indicate the lowering position. Where the hydraulic machine is located in the hoistway, the valve or the means to manually operate the valve shall be accessible from outside the hoistway, only by elevator personnel (see [Section 8.1](#)).

3.19.4.5 Reserved for Future Use

3.19.4.6 Type Tests, Certification, and Marking Plates for Control Valves

3.19.4.6.1 Each type or model and make of hydraulic control valve shall be subjected to the engineering tests and certification process as specified in [8.3.5](#).

3.19.4.6.2 Hydraulic control valves shall be plainly marked in a permanent manner with the following information:

- (a) certifying organization's name or identifying symbol
- (b) the name, trademark, or file number by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified
- (c) statement of compliance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44
- (d) type designation
- (e) component rated pressure

3.19.4.6.3 The electrical coil data shall be marked on each individual coil.

3.19.4.7 Overspeed Valves. When provided, overspeed valves and their connections and attachments shall conform to [3.19.4.7.1](#) through [3.19.4.7.6](#).

3.19.4.7.1 Overspeed Valve Tests. Each type or model of overspeed valve shall be subjected to the engineering tests specified in [8.3.9](#).

3.19.4.7.2 Marking of Overspeed Valves. The overspeed valves shall be plainly marked in a permanent manner with the following:

- (a) the name or trademark by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified
- (b) type designation
- (c) component rated pressure
- (d) maximum and minimum rated flow

3.19.4.7.3 Installation of Overspeed Valves. Overspeed valves shall be installed and mounted as follows:

(a) *Single-Jack Arrangements.* Where a single valve is used, it shall be located in the pressure piping within 300 mm (12 in.) of the hydraulic jack. Multiple parallel valves are permitted in lieu of a single valve. These shall be located to minimize the distance from the valves to the hydraulic jack.

(b) *Multiple-Jack Arrangements.* Multiple-jack arrangements shall conform to one of the following:

(1) A single overspeed valve shall be located in the pressure piping within 300 mm (12 in.) of each hydraulic jack. Multiple parallel valves are permitted in lieu of single

valves at each hydraulic jack. These shall be located to minimize the distance from the valves to each hydraulic jack.

(2) A single overspeed valve shall be located in the pressure piping on the hydraulic machine side of, and immediately before, the tee junction, wye junction, or branch junction that connects the branch pressure pipes to the jacks. Multiple parallel valves are permitted in lieu of a single valve at the junction. For dual-hydraulic-jack systems, the total length of branch pressure pipe between the tee junction or wye junction and the jacks shall not exceed the distance between the jacks, measured horizontally, plus 1 m (39 in.). For multiple-jack systems, the length of branch pressure piping shall be minimized.

3.19.4.7.4 Strength of Overspeed Valve Pressure Piping and Fittings Between the Overspeed Valve and the Jacks. The factor of safety of the overspeed valve pressure piping and fittings shall be not less than 1.5 times the value obtained using [8.2.8.5](#), provided that the minimum factor of safety is not less than 4.5 and the minimum percentage elongation is not less than 5 for the overspeed valve and fittings and not less than 20 for the pressure piping.

3.19.4.7.5 Performance Requirements. The overspeed valve shall be constructed, installed, and adjusted to ensure that the elevator obtains the following performance:

(a) The overspeed valve tripping speed shall be not less than 110% nor greater than 140% of the elevator operating speed in the down direction, but in no case shall exceed 0.3 m/s (60 ft/min) above the rated elevator speed.

(b) The average deceleration rate shall be not less than 1.96 m/s^2 (6.44 ft/s^2) nor more than 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2).

(c) Any peak deceleration rate in excess of 24.53 m/s^2 (80.5 ft/s^2) shall have a duration not greater than 0.04 s.

3.19.4.7.6 Sealing of the Overspeed Valve. Field-adjustable overspeed valves shall be sealed after field setting.

3.19.5 Piping Buried in the Ground

3.19.5.1 Protection. Piping buried in the ground shall be provided with protection from corrosion by one or more of the following methods:

- (a) monitored cathodic protection
- (b) a coating to protect the piping from corrosion that will withstand the installation process
- (c) a protective casing, immune to galvanic or electrolytic action, salt water, and other known underground conditions, completely surrounding the exterior surfaces of the piping

3.19.5.2 Seals. Piping buried in the ground shall not include seals or other elements potentially requiring service or replacement.

3.19.6 Welding

3.19.6.1 All welding of valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to [Section 8.8](#).

3.19.6.2 Field welding of pressure piping and fittings shall also be permitted to be performed by welders certified to the requirements pertaining to pressure systems.

3.19.7 Electrical Requirements

Hydraulic control valves shall conform to the electrical requirements in Clause 4 of CSA C22.2 No. 139.

SECTION 3.20 ROPES AND ROPE CONNECTIONS

Where a counterweight is provided, the counterweight shall be connected to the car by not fewer than two steel wire ropes.

The wire ropes and their connections shall conform to [Section 2.20](#), except that the factor of safety of the wire ropes shall be not less than 7.

SECTION 3.21 COUNTERWEIGHTS

3.21.1 Counterweights

Counterweights, where provided, shall conform to [Section 2.21](#). In the event of the separation of the counterweight from the car, the static pressure shall be not more than 140% of the working pressure.

3.21.2 Counterweight Sheaves

Sheaves for counterweight ropes shall conform to [2.24.2](#), [2.24.3](#), and [2.24.5](#).

SECTION 3.22 BUFFERS AND BUMPERS

3.22.1 Car Buffers or Bumpers

Car buffers or bumpers shall be provided and shall conform to [Section 2.22](#), provided that, in applying the requirements of [Section 2.22](#) to hydraulic elevators, [3.22.1.1](#) through [3.22.1.5](#) are complied with.

3.22.1.1 The term “operating speed in the down direction with rated load” shall be substituted for the words “rated speed” wherever these words appear.

3.22.1.2 In place of [2.22.3.2](#), the requirements specified in [3.22.1.2.1](#) and [3.22.1.2.2](#) shall be substituted.

- (22) **3.22.1.2.1** Spring buffers shall be capable of withstanding the loading per [8.2.3.2](#) without being compressed solid.

3.22.1.2.2 Spring buffers shall be compressed solid with a loading 2 times that described in [8.2.3.2](#).

3.22.1.3 Requirement [2.22.4.1.2](#) shall not apply. Reduced-stroke buffers shall not be provided on hydraulic elevators. Car buffers or bumpers shall be located so that the car will come to rest on the bumper or fully compressed buffer, or to a fixed stop, before the plunger reaches its down limit of travel.

3.22.1.4 When multiple buffers are used, each shall be identical and designed for an equal proportion of the loading described in [3.22.1.2](#).

3.22.1.5 Plunger weight, minus the buoyant effects of the plungers at the buffer strike point, shall be added, if applicable, and used in buffer calculations.

3.22.1.6 Solid bumpers are permitted on hydraulic elevators having an operating speed in the down direction of 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min) or less. See [2.22.2](#) for solid bumper material.

3.22.2 Counterweight Buffers

Where counterweights are provided, counterweight buffers shall not be provided. (See [3.4.6](#) for required counterweight runby.)

SECTION 3.23 GUIDE RAILS, GUIDE-RAIL SUPPORTS, AND FASTENINGS

3.23.1 Direct-Acting Hydraulic Elevators

Guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to [Section 2.23](#), with the exceptions specified in [3.23.1.1](#) through [3.23.1.4](#).

3.23.1.1 Requirement [2.23.4.1](#) shall apply only where car safeties are used and the maximum load on the car side for direct-acting hydraulic elevators is the maximum weight of the car and its rated load plus the weight of the plunger or cylinder, as applicable.

3.23.1.2 Requirement [2.23.4.2](#) shall apply only where safeties are used.

3.23.1.3 Requirement [2.23.9.1.1\(a\)](#) shall apply only where safeties are used.

3.23.1.4 [Section 2.28](#) shall not apply.

3.23.2 Roped-Hydraulic Elevators

3.23.2.1 Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to [Section 2.23](#).

3.23.2.2 The traveling sheave, if provided, shall be guided by means of suitable guide shoes and guide rails adequately mounted and supported.

SECTION 3.24 HYDRAULIC MACHINES AND TANKS

3.24.1 Hydraulic Machines (Power Units)

3.24.1.1 Marking Plate. The working pressure that is developed in the system shall be measured at the acceptance inspection and test. This pressure shall be labeled/ marked on a marking plate. The marking plate shall be mounted permanently on the hydraulic machine. The marking plate shall be such material and construction that it is permanent and readily legible. The letters and symbols shall be stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied with a height not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.).

3.24.2 Tanks

3.24.2.1 Capacity. Tanks shall be sufficient capacity to provide for an adequate liquid reserve to prevent the entrance of air or other gas into the system.

3.24.2.2 Minimum Level Indication. The permissible minimum liquid level shall be clearly indicated.

3.24.3 Atmosphere Storage and Discharge Tanks

3.24.3.1 Covers and Venting. Tanks shall be covered and suitably vented to the atmosphere. Where tanks are located in the hoistway, they shall be vented to prevent accumulation of fumes in the hoistway and their covers shall be of sufficient strength to resist falling objects.

3.24.3.2 Factor of Safety. Tanks shall be designed and constructed so that when they are completely filled, the factor of safety shall be not less than 4, based on the ultimate strength of the material.

- (22) **3.24.3.3 Means for Checking Liquid Level.** Tanks shall be provided with means for checking the liquid level. Such means shall be readily accessible (see [Section 1.3](#)).

3.24.4 Welding

All welding of hydraulic machine components shall conform to [Section 8.8](#).

SECTION 3.25 TERMINAL STOPPING DEVICES

3.25.1 Normal Terminal Stopping Devices

3.25.1.1 Where Required and Function. Upper and lower normal terminal stopping devices shall be provided and arranged to detect the position of the car and cause the car to slow down and stop automatically, at or near the top and bottom terminal landings, with any load up to and including rated load in the car from any speed attained in normal operation. The normal terminal stopping device shall function independently of the operation of the normal stopping means and the terminal speed-reduc-

ing device, where provided, such that the failure of the normal stopping means and/or the failure of the terminal speed-reducing device, where provided, shall not prevent the normal terminal stopping device from functioning as specified except

(a) a common actuating means (e.g., a cam) that is not physically part of the position-sensing devices shall be permitted for the actuation of the position-sensing device of the normal terminal stopping device and the position-sensing device of one or both of the following:

- (1) the normal stopping means
- (2) the terminal speed-reducing device

(b) a common mounting means shall be permitted for the position-sensing device of the normal terminal stopping device and the position-sensing device of one or both of the following:

- (1) the normal stopping means
- (2) the terminal speed-reducing device

The device shall be designed and installed so that it will continue to function until the car reaches its extreme limits of travel.

The device shall be permitted to be rendered inoperative during recycling operation (see [3.26.7](#)).

3.25.1.2 Location of Stopping Devices. Stopping devices shall be located on the car, in the hoistway, in the machine room or control room, or in overhead spaces, and shall be operated by movement of the car.

3.25.1.3 Requirements for Stopping Devices on the Car or in the Hoistway. Stopping devices located on the car or in the hoistway and operated by cams on the car or in the hoistway shall conform to [2.25.1](#).

3.25.1.4 Requirements for Stopping Devices in a Machine Room, Control Room, or Overhead Space. Stopping devices located in a machine room, a control room, or an overhead space shall conform to [2.25.2.3](#), except that the device required by [2.25.2.3.2](#) shall cause the electric power to be removed from the main control valve or from its control switch operating magnets and, in the case of electrohydraulic elevators, where stopping the car is effected by stopping the pump motor, from the pump motor and associated valves.

3.25.2 Terminal Speed-Reducing Devices

3.25.2.1 Where Required. Terminal speed-reducing devices shall be installed for the up direction where the car speed exceeds 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min), to ensure that the plunger does not strike its solid limit of travel at a speed in excess of 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min) (see [3.18.4.1](#)).

3.25.2.2 General Requirements. Terminal speed-reducing devices shall conform to [3.25.2.2.1](#) through [3.25.2.2.3](#).

3.25.2.2.1 Terminal speed-reducing devices shall operate by mechanical, hydraulic, or electrical means independently of the normal terminal stopping device. They shall function to reduce the speed of the car if the normal terminal stopping device fails to cause the car to slow down at the top terminal as intended such that the failure of the normal terminal stopping device shall not prevent the terminal speed-reducing device from functioning as specified except

(a) a common actuating means (e.g., a cam) that is not physically part of the position-sensing devices shall be permitted for the actuation of both the position-sensing device of the terminal speed-reducing device and the position-sensing device of the normal terminal stopping device

(b) a common mounting means shall be permitted for the position-sensing devices of the terminal speed-reducing device and the normal terminal stopping device

3.25.2.2.2 Terminal speed-reducing devices shall provide retardation not in excess of 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2).

3.25.2.2.3 Terminal speed-reducing devices shall be designed and installed so that a single short circuit caused by a combination of grounds or by other conditions shall not render the device ineffective.

3.25.2.3 Requirements for Mechanical or Hydraulic Means. Where the terminal speed-reducing devices are implemented by mechanical or hydraulic means, a means shall be provided to prevent overheating of the drive system (pump and motor). The mechanical or hydraulic means shall not cause permanent deformation to any part on which the means act.

3.25.2.4 Requirements for Electrical Means. Where the terminal speed-reducing devices are implemented by electrical means, they shall conform to 3.25.2.4.1 through 3.25.2.4.5.

3.25.2.4.1 They shall be designed and installed so that a single short circuit caused by a combination of grounds or by other conditions shall not render the device ineffective.

3.25.2.4.2 Where magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state devices are used for position sensing, a single short circuit caused by a combination of grounds or by other conditions or the failure of any single magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state device shall not

(a) render the terminal speed-reducing device inoperative

(b) permit the car to restart after a normal stop

3.25.2.4.3 Mechanically operated switches, where located on the car or in the hoistway, shall conform to the following:

(a) be operated by the movement of the car

(b) have metal operating cams

(c) have contacts that are positively opened mechanically

(d) be the enclosed type

(e) be securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect operation of the device

3.25.2.4.4 Electrohydraulic elevators with two means to control upward movement (e.g., pump motor and valve) shall conform to the following:

(a) One or both means to control upward movement of the elevator shall be controlled by the terminal speed-reducing device, either directly or through an intermediate device.

(1) Where an intermediate device is implemented with a solid-state device or software system to satisfy (a), the failure of any single solid-state device or a software system failure in the intermediate device shall not render the terminal speed-reducing device ineffective.

(2) Redundant devices used to satisfy (1) shall be checked prior to each start of the elevator from a landing, when on automatic operation. When a failure as specified occurs, the car shall not be permitted to restart.

(b) The other means or both means to control upward movement of the elevator are to be controlled by the normal terminal stopping device, either directly or through an intermediate device.

3.25.2.4.5 For electrohydraulic elevators with one means to control upward movement (e.g., pump motor only), one or both of the devices required in 3.26.6.4(a) shall be controlled by the terminal speed-reducing device and the other device or both devices by the normal terminal stopping device.

3.25.3 Final Terminal Stopping Devices

Final terminal stopping devices are not required.

SECTION 3.26

OPERATING DEVICES AND CONTROL EQUIPMENT

3.26.1 Operating Devices and Control Equipment (22)

Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to Section 2.26, except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirement 2.26.1.3 does not apply.

(b) Requirement 2.26.1.4 applies as specified by 3.26.2.

(c) Requirement 2.26.1.6 applies as specified by 3.26.3.

(d) Requirement 2.26.2 applies as specified by 3.26.4.

(e) Requirement 2.26.6 does not apply.

(f) Requirement 2.26.14.5 applies except the words "driving-machine motor and brake" in 2.26.14.5 shall be replaced with "hydraulic machine."

(g) Requirement 2.26.8 does not apply.

(h) Requirements 2.26.9.1, 2.26.9.2, and 2.26.9.5 through 2.26.9.7 do not apply.

- (i) Requirement 2.26.10 does not apply.
- (j) Requirement 2.26.1.7.1 is replaced by 3.26.11.1.
- (k) Requirement 2.26.13 applies as modified by 3.26.12.

3.26.2 Inspection Operation

Top-of-car operating devices shall be provided and shall conform to 2.26.1.4. In-car and those Inspection Operations conforming to 2.26.1.4.4 shall be permitted.

The bottom normal terminal stopping device shall be permitted to be made ineffective while the elevator is under the control of the Inspection Operation device.

3.26.3 Anticreep and Leveling Operation

3.26.3.1 Anticreep Operation. Each elevator shall be provided with an anticreep operation to correct automatically a change in car level. It shall conform to 2.26.1.6.2 and 2.26.1.6.3, and 3.26.3.1.1 through 3.26.3.1.5.

3.26.3.1.1 The anticreep device shall operate the car at a speed not exceeding 0.125 m/s (25 ft/min).

3.26.3.1.2 The anticreep device shall maintain the car within 25 mm (1 in.) of the landing, irrespective of the position of the hoistway door.

3.26.3.1.3 For electrohydraulic elevators, the anticreep device shall be required to operate the car only in the up direction.

- (22) **3.26.3.1.4** Operation that is dependent on the availability of the electric power supply is permitted, provided that

(a) the main line power disconnecting means is kept in the closed position at all times except during maintenance, repairs, and inspection

(b) a sign is placed on the switch stating, "KEEP SWITCH CLOSED EXCEPT DURING MAINTENANCE, REPAIRS, AND INSPECTIONS"

(c) the sign shall be made of durable material and be securely fastened and have letters with a height not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.)

3.26.3.1.5 Only the following, when activated, shall prevent operation of the anticreep device:

- (a) the electrical protective devices listed in 3.26.4.1
- (b) recycling operation (see 3.26.7)
- (c) inspection transfer switch
- (d) hoistway access switch
- (e) low oil protection means (see 3.26.9)
- (f) oil tank temperature shutdown (see 3.26.5 and 3.26.6.5)

3.26.3.2 Operation in Leveling or Truck Zone. Operation of an elevator in a leveling or truck zone at any landing by a car-leveling or truck-zoning device, when the hoistway doors, the car doors or gates, or any combination thereof are not in the closed position, is permissible, subject to the requirements of 2.26.1.6.1 through

2.26.1.6.5. A leveling or truck-zoning device shall operate the car at a speed not exceeding 0.125 m/s (25 ft/min).

3.26.4 Electrical Protective Devices

Electrical protective devices shall be provided in conformance with 2.26.2 and the following requirements, except the words "driving-machine motor and brake" in 2.26.2 shall be replaced with "hydraulic machine," and shall conform to 3.26.4.1 and 3.26.4.2.

3.26.4.1 When in the open position, the electrical protective devices shall prevent operation by all operating means, except as specified in 3.26.4.2.

3.26.4.2 When in the open position, the following devices shall initiate removal of power from the hydraulic machine in such a manner as to produce an average deceleration rate not greater than 9.8 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) and shall prevent operation by all operating means except the anticreep device:

- (a) emergency stop switches, where required by 2.26.2.5
- (b) broken rope, tape, or chain switches provided in connection with normal stopping devices, when such devices are located in the machine room, control room, or overhead space
- (c) hoistway door interlocks or hoistway door closed detection means
- (d) car door or gate closed detection means or car door interlocks
- (e) hinged car platform sill electric contacts
- (f) in-car stop switch, where required by 2.26.2.21

3.26.5 Phase Reversal and Failure Protection

Hydraulic elevators powered by a polyphase AC motor shall be provided with the means to prevent overheating of the drive system (pump and motor) due to phase rotation reversals or failure.

3.26.6 Control and Operating Circuits

The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 3.26.6.1 and 3.26.6.2.

3.26.6.1 Springs, where used to actuate switches, contactors, or relays to stop an elevator at the terminals or to actuate electrically operated valves, shall be the compression type.

3.26.6.2 The completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to interrupt the power to the control valve, the pump driving motor of electrohydraulic elevators, or both under the following conditions:

- (a) to stop the car at the terminals
- (b) to stop the car when any of the electrical protective devices operate

3.26.6.3 For electrohydraulic elevators where there are two means of controlling upward movement of the elevator (e.g., a pump motor and a valve), at least one means shall be directly controlled by an electromechanical contactor or relay unless the terminal speed-reducing device (see 3.25.2) directly removes power from one of the control means.

3.26.6.4 For electrohydraulic elevators where the only means of controlling upward movement of the elevator is the pump motor, the pump motor control shall conform to the following:

(a) Two devices shall be provided to remove power independently from the pump motor. At least one device shall be an electromechanical contactor.

(b) The contactor shall be arranged to open each time the car stops.

(c) The electrical protective devices shall control both devices [see (a)] in accordance with 3.26.4.

3.26.6.5 In the pump motor controller for electrohydraulic elevators, when the occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; or the failure of any single solid-state device; or a software-system failure causes the temperature of the liquid in the hydraulic driving machine to rise above its maximum operating temperature, the following shall occur:

(a) Power shall be removed from the hydraulic driving-machine motor.

(b) The hydraulic driving-machine motor shall not be permitted to restart.

(c) When the doors are closed, the car shall automatically be brought to the lowest landing and then shall operate in conformance with 3.26.9.2 and 3.26.9.3.

3.26.7 Recycling Operation for Multiple or Telescopic Plungers

Recycling operation shall permit the car to be lowered more than 25 mm (1 in.) below the bottom landing, but not require lowering to restore the relative vertical position of the multiple plunger sections, provided that

- (a) the car is at rest at the bottom landing
- (b) the doors and gates are closed and locked
- (c) no car calls are registered
- (d) the speed during recycling does not exceed normal down leveling speed but in no case shall be more than 0.10 m/s (20 ft/min)

(e) normal operation cannot be resumed until the car is returned to the bottom landing and normal terminal stopping devices are restored to normal operation

3.26.8 Pressure-Sensing Means

When cylinders are installed with the top of the cylinder above the top of the storage tank, a pressure-sensing means shall be provided in the line between the cylinder

and the check valve, which shall detect the loss of positive pressure at the top of the cylinder. When the loss of positive pressure is detected, the control system shall prevent automatic door opening and the operation of the lowering valve or valves. The door(s) shall be permitted to open by operation of the in-car door open button(s), when the car is within the unlocking zone.

3.26.9 Low Oil Protection

3.26.9.1 A means shall be provided to render an elevator on normal operation inoperative if for any reason the liquid level in the tank falls below the permissible minimum. Suitable means include, but are not limited to, the following:

(a) direct sensing of the liquid level

(b) a pump-run timer

Actuation of the means shall automatically bring the car down to the lowest landing when the doors are closed.

3.26.9.2 When at the lowest landing, the doors shall comply with the following:

(a) For elevators with power-operated doors that automatically close, the door(s) shall open and shall initiate automatic closing within 15 s.

(b) For elevators with manual doors or with doors that do not automatically close, they shall be provided with a signal system to alert an operator to close the doors.

3.26.9.3 The car shall then shut down. The means shall require manual reset before returning the car to service. For elevators with power-operated doors, the in-car door open button(s) shall remain operative, but the doors shall not be able to be power-opened from the landing.

3.26.10 Auxiliary Power Lowering Operation

(22)

Where the auxiliary power supply is provided solely for the purpose of lowering the car, in the case of main line power failure, the auxiliary lowering operation shall conform to 3.26.10.1 through 3.26.10.3.

3.26.10.1 Auxiliary lowering shall be permitted to be initiated, provided that all operating and control devices, including door open and door close buttons, function as with normal building power, except that the following devices shall be permitted to be bypassed or made inoperative:

(a) landing and car floor registration devices (or call buttons)

(b) devices enabling operation by designated attendant (hospital service, attendant operation)

(c) devices initiating emergency recall operation to the recall level, unless otherwise specified in Section 3.27

(d) the "FIRE OPERATION" switch, unless otherwise specified in Section 3.27

3.26.10.2 When the auxiliary lowering operation has been initiated, the car shall descend directly to the lowest landing, except that the operating system shall be

permitted to allow one or more intermediate stops, and then, after a predetermined interval, the car shall proceed to the lowest landing, provided the auxiliary power supply is of sufficient capacity to open and close the doors at each intermediate stop.

3.26.10.3 If the car and landing doors are power operated, and if the auxiliary power supply is of adequate capacity, the doors shall open when the car stops at the lowest landing and shall close after a predetermined interval.

NOTE (3.26.10): For the main disconnect switch auxiliary contact, see NFPA 70 and CSA C22.1 requirements, where applicable (see Part 9).

3.26.11 Executable Software

- (22) **3.26.11.1** Executable software used in performing one or more of the following functions shall have a USI for each software version. Changes in executable software for any of the following functions shall require a new USI:
- (a) 2.27.1.7.1(a) through 2.26.1.7.1(c), 2.26.1.7.1(e), and 2.26.1.7.1(i) through 2.26.1.7.1(n)
 - (b) power operation of hoistway doors and car doors (see Section 3.13)
 - (c) electrical activation means (plunger gripper) (see 3.17.3.2.1)
 - (d) normal terminal stopping device (see 3.25.1)
 - (e) terminal speed-reducing device (see 3.25.2)
 - (f) phase reversal and failure protection (see 3.26.5)
 - (g) control and operating circuits (see 3.26.6)
 - (h) recycling operation for multiple or telescopic plungers (see 3.26.7)
 - (i) pressure switch (see 3.26.8)
 - (j) low oil protection (see 3.26.9)
 - (k) auxiliary power lowering operation (see 3.26.10)
 - (l) emergency operation and signaling devices (see Section 3.27)
 - (m) test enable operation (see 2.26.14)
 - (n) anticreep releveing (see 3.26.3)
 - (o) plunger follower (see 3.18.2.7)
 - (p) any operating mode restricted to Group 1 (see 8.1.2)
 - (q) restricted opening of car doors (see 2.14.5.7)
 - (r) a function, device, or means that is required by the Code to be manually reset

- (22) **3.26.11.2** Software-based parameters are permitted and shall not modify the USI when adjusted or selected in the field. See also 8.14.1(b).

3.26.11.3 The control system shall include a means to view the USI(s) on-site. Examples of viewing means include, but are not limited to, one or more of the following:

- (a) electronic viewing that is part of the elevator or group of elevators
- (b) labeling of device(s)

- (c) labeling or tags on the control or assembly

3.26.12 Remote Interaction Operation

(22)

3.26.12.1 When remote interaction is provided, in addition to applicable functions indicated in 2.26.13.3, remote interaction operation (RIO) shall not enable, disable, override, reset, nor interfere with any of the following operations:

- (a) auxiliary power lowering operation (see 3.26.10)
- (b) anticreep releveing (see 3.26.3)
- (c) recycling operation (see 3.26.7)

3.26.12.2 When remote interaction is provided, in addition to the applicable functions indicated in 2.26.13.4, RIO shall not interfere with, modify, reset, render ineffective, nor render inoperative

- (a) low oil protection (see 3.26.9)
- (b) phase reversal protection (see 3.26.5)
- (c) plunger gripper electrical actuation means (see 3.17.3.2.1)
- (d) plunger follower (see 3.18.2.7)
- (e) pressure sensing means (see 3.26.8)

SECTION 3.27 EMERGENCY OPERATION AND SIGNaling DEVICES

(22)

Emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to Section 2.27, except as modified by the following:

(a) In requirement 2.27.2.4.4(a), replace the wording with the following: "An elevator that is not on designated attendant operation, Hoistway Access Operation, Inspection Operation, Firefighters' Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, or Firefighters' Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation shall return to the designated level where the power-operated doors shall open at the landing where the illuminated signal (see 2.27.2.3) is located. Where more than one entrance is provided at the designated level, the other doors are permitted to open and, when open, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s. When the selected elevator is at the designated level or fails to move within 30 s, the selection shall be automatically transferred to another elevator. The door open button(s) shall be operative and when released, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s. If the doors are open when the selection means selects another elevator, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s."

(b) In requirement 2.27.2.4.4(c), replace the wording with the following: "An elevator that is on Firefighters' Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall return to the recall level in accordance with 2.27.3.1 or 2.27.3.2 and upon arrival, automatic power doors shall open. Once recall is complete, or the selected elevator fails to move within 30 s, the selection shall be automatically transferred to another elevator. The door open

button(s) shall be operative and when released, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s. When selected and at the recall level, the door shall open in accordance with 2.27.3.1 or 2.27.3.2. If the doors are open when the selection means selects another elevator, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s.”

(c) The requirements of 3.26.9 and 3.18.2.7 shall be modified when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation and Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation are in effect, as specified in 3.27.1 through 3.27.4.

(d) The requirements of 2.27.3.2.1(b) and 2.27.3.2.2(b) shall be modified to include a machinery space containing a hydraulic machine.

3.27.1 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation After Device Actuation

If Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is activated while the elevator is responding to any of the following devices, the car shall return to the recall level:

- (a) low oil protection (see 3.26.9)
- (b) plunger-follower guide protection, provided the car is capable of being moved (see 3.18.2.7)
- (c) auxiliary power lowering (see 3.26.10)
- (d) oil tank temperature shutdown (see 3.26.6.5)

If the elevator is incapable of returning to the recall level, the car shall descend to an available floor. Upon arrival at the recall level or available floor, automatic power-operated doors shall open, and when open, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s. The door open button(s) shall remain operative and, when released, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s. The visual signal (see Figure 2.27.3.1.6) shall extinguish.

3.27.2 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation Prior to Device Actuation

(a) If any of the devices specified in 3.27.1(a) through 3.27.1(d) is activated while Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect but before the car reaches the recall level, the car shall do one of the following:

- (1) If the car is above the recall level, it shall complete Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.
- (2) If the car is below the recall level, it shall descend to an available floor.

(b) Upon arrival at the recall level or available floor, automatic power-operated doors shall open, and when open, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s. The door open button(s) shall remain operative and, when released, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s. The visual signal (see Figure 2.27.3.1.6) shall extinguish.

3.27.3 Device Actuation at Recall Level

If any of the devices specified in 3.27.1(a), 3.27.1(c), or 3.27.1(d) is activated while the car is stationary at the recall level and Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect, the following shall apply:

(a) Automatic power-operated doors shall initiate closing within 15 s.

(b) The door open button(s) shall remain operative and, when released, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s.

(c) The visual signal (see Figure 2.27.3.1.6) shall illuminate intermittently.

3.27.4 Device Actuation With Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation in Effect

If any of the devices specified in 3.27.1(a) through 3.27.1(d) activate while the elevator is on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation, an upward-traveling car shall stop and a downward-traveling car shall stop at or before the next available floor. All calls shall be canceled. The visual signal (see Figure 2.27.3.1.6) shall illuminate intermittently. The elevator shall accept calls only to landings below its location and shall respond in compliance with the requirements for Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation.

3.27.5 Flood Detection Operation

(a) Flood Detection Operation shall conform to 2.27.13.

(b) If the elevator is incapable of returning to the next available landing above the flood elevation, the car shall proceed to the highest possible floor. Upon arrival, automatic power-operated doors shall open, and then initiate reclosing within 15 s. The door open button(s) shall remain operative and, when released, automatic closing shall be initiated within 15 s.

(c) If any of the operations specified in 3.18.2.7, 3.26.6.5, 3.26.7, 3.26.9, 3.26.10, 3.27.1(a), 3.27.1(b), 3.27.1(c), or 3.27.1(d) are actuated, the car shall not be permitted to travel down when below the flood elevation.

SECTION 3.28 LAYOUT DATA

3.28.1 Information Required on Layout Drawing (22)

Elevator layout drawings shall, in addition to other data, indicate the following:

- (a) required clearances and basic dimensions
- (b) the bracket spacing (see Section 3.23)
- (c) the estimated maximum vertical forces on the guide rails on application of the safety, where provided (see Section 3.23)

(d) in the case of freight elevators for Class B or Class C loading (see 2.16.2.2), the horizontal forces on the guide-rail faces during loading and unloading, and the estimated maximum horizontal forces in a post-wise direction on the guide-rail faces on the application of the safety device, where provided (see Section 3.23)

(e) the size and weight per meter (foot) of any rail reinforcement, where provided (see Section 3.23)

(f) the impact loads imposed on machinery and sheave beams, supports, and floors or foundations (see Section 2.9)

(g) the impact load on buffer supports due to buffer engagement at the maximum permissible load and operating speed in the down direction (see 8.2.3)

(h) the net vertical load from the elevator system, which includes the total car weight and rated load; plunger, cylinder, and oil; and any structural supports

(i) the outside diameter and wall thickness of the cylinder, plunger, and piping, and the working pressure

(j) the total static and dynamic loads from the governor, ropes, and tension system

(k) rated speed and operating speed in the down direction

(l) the minimum “grade” of pipe (ASTM or recognized standard) required to fulfill the installation requirements for pressure piping or, in lieu of a specific “grade” of pipe, the minimum tensile strength of pipe to be used for the installation (see Section 3.19)

(m) the horizontal forces on the building structure stipulated by 2.11.11.8

(n) the length of the plunger and cylinder

(o) the clearance between the bottom of the plunger and the bottom head of the cylinder as required by 3.18.3.3

(p) the flood elevation (see definition in Section 1.3)

SECTION 3.29 IDENTIFICATION

Identification of equipment and floors shall conform to Section 2.29, as applicable.

Part 4

Elevators With Other Types of Driving Machines

SCOPE

Part 4 applies to elevators with other types of driving machines.

- (a) Section 4.1 applies to rack-and-pinion elevators.
- (b) Section 4.2 applies to screw-column elevators.
- (c) Section 4.3 applies to hand elevators.

SECTION 4.1 RACK-AND-PINION ELEVATORS

This Section applies to an elevator with a car raised and lowered by a pinion(s) on a rack(s).

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to rack-and-pinion elevators.

4.1.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

Hoistways and hoistway enclosures shall conform to 2.1.1, 2.1.2, and 2.1.4 through 2.1.6. When a floor is provided over a hoistway, it shall conform to 2.1.3.

4.1.2 Pits

Pits shall conform to Section 2.2.

4.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights

When provided, counterweights shall conform to Section 2.3.

4.1.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights

Vertical clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to Section 2.4.

4.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to Section 2.5.

4.1.6 Protection of Space Below Hoistways

Where a hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building or structure and there is space below the hoistway that is accessible, the requirements of 4.1.6.1 and 4.1.6.2 shall apply.

4.1.6.1 Space Underneath the Counterweight and/or Its Guides. Where the space below the hoistway is underneath the counterweight and/or its guides, the following shall apply:

- (a) The counterweight shall be provided with a counterweight safety conforming to 4.1.17.
- (b) When spring buffers are used, they shall conform to 4.1.22, except that they shall not be fully compressed when struck by the counterweight at the following speeds:
 - (1) governor tripping speed (see Table 4.1.18.1) where the counterweight safety is governor operated
 - (2) 125% of the rated speed where the counterweight safety is not governor operated

4.1.6.2 Where the Space Is Underneath the Car and/or Its Guides. Where the space below the hoistway is underneath the car and/or its guides, spring buffers, when used, shall be designed and installed so that they will not be compressed solid or to a fixed stop when struck by the car with its rated load at the governor tripping speed (see Table 4.1.18.1).

4.1.7 Machinery Spaces, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

4.1.7.1 Location of Machinery Spaces, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

4.1.7.1.1 Location of Control Rooms. Rack-and-pinion elevator control rooms, where provided, shall conform to 2.7.6.1.

4.1.7.1.2 Location of Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces. The location of machinery spaces and control spaces shall conform to 2.7.6.2.

NOTE: For rack-and-pinion elevators, inside the hoistway is limited to on or in the car.

4.1.7.1.3 Location of Equipment. The location of equipment used directly in connection with the rack-and-pinion elevator shall conform to 2.7.6.3.1 through 2.7.6.3.4.

4.1.7.1.4 Means Necessary for Test. Where a rack-and-pinion elevator driving-machine brake or an emergency brake, elevator brake, or elevator motion controller or motor controller is located in the hoistway, means necessary for tests that require movement of the car or release of the driving-machine brake or emergency brake shall be provided and arranged so that they can be operated from outside the hoistway.

4.1.7.1.5 Equipment Exposed to the Weather. Equipment exposed to the weather shall conform to 2.7.6.6.

4.1.7.2 Control Rooms. Control rooms shall conform to the following:

(a) be separated from the remainder of the building where the building code requires fire-resistive construction.

(b) be enclosed with noncombustible material to a height not less than 2 000 mm (79 in.) where the building code does not require fire-resistive construction of the control room. The enclosure, if of openwork material, shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

(c) provide a clear maintenance path of not less than 450 mm (18 in.) to all components that require maintenance.

(d) have clear headroom of not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.).

(e) be provided with natural or mechanical means to keep the ambient air temperature and humidity in the range specified by the elevator equipment manufacturer.

(f) be provided with permanent lighting providing minimum illumination of 200 lx (19 fc) at the floor level. The lighting control switch shall be located within easy reach of the access door.

(g) be provided with an access door having a minimum width of 750 mm (29.5 in.) and a minimum height of 2 030 mm (80 in.). The door shall be self-closing and self-locking, provided with a spring-type lock arranged to permit the door to be opened from the inside without a key, and kept closed and locked.

(h) A permanent means of communication shall be provided between the elevator car and a remote control room.

(i) Keys to unlock the access door shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

4.1.7.3 Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces on the Car Top. Machinery spaces and control spaces on the car top shall conform to the following:

(a) A rack-and-pinion machine and its controls shall be protected by a noncombustible enclosure(s) to prevent accidental contact. Openwork noncombustible enclosure material shall be permitted to be used for rack-and-pinion machines located on top of the car, provided the openwork material will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

(b) Access to the machinery space and/or control space located on the car top shall be permitted by means of the top emergency exit and shall be subject to the following:

(1) The top emergency exit shall conform to the requirements of 2.14.1.5.

(2) All edges of the top emergency exit shall be smooth and free of burrs.

(3) Means shall be provided to ascend and descend safely between the floor of the elevator and the car top.

(4) The top emergency exit shall be keyed to Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(c) Machinery spaces and control spaces on the car top shall be provided with permanent lighting providing minimum illumination of 200 lx (19 fc) at the standing surface on the car top. The lighting control switch shall be located at the point of entry.

4.1.7.4 Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces in the Car. Machinery spaces and control spaces in the car shall conform to the following:

(a) be protected by noncombustible solid enclosure(s) to prevent accidental contact.

(b) be provided with an access panel subject to the following:

(1) shall be provided with an electric contact and lock.

(2) shall not be self-closing and shall be self-locking.

(3) shall be kept closed and locked.

(4) The electric contact shall be designed to prevent operation of the rack-and-pinion machine when the access panel is open.

(5) shall be keyed to Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(c) be provided with permanent lighting having a minimum illumination of 200 lx (19 fc) at the floor level. The lighting control switch shall be located at the point of entry.

4.1.7.5 Machinery Space Beneath the Car. Machinery spaces beneath the car shall conform to the following:

(a) The rack-and-pinion machine shall be protected by noncombustible enclosure(s) to prevent accidental contact. Openwork noncombustible enclosure material shall be permitted to be used for rack-and-pinion machines located beneath the car, provided the openwork material will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

(b) Access to the machinery space shall be permitted by means of the pit access and shall comply with 2.2.4.

(c) A retractable stop shall be permanently installed and shall be subject to the following:

(1) The retractable stop shall maintain the car no less than 2 100 mm (83 in.) from the pit floor position when in its extended position.

(2) Means shall be provided to secure the retractable stop in its fully extended position.

(3) Hoistway Access Operation or pit Inspection Operation shall be provided to position the car at the retractable stop.

(4) A retractable stop electric device (see 4.1.26.2.37) shall be provided and shall comply with 2.7.5.5(a).

(d) The machinery space beneath the car shall be provided with permanent lighting having a minimum illumination of 200 lx (19 fc) at the level of the standing surface when the car is in the blocked position. The lighting control switch shall be located at the point of entry.

NOTE: For rack-and-pinion elevators, beneath the car is limited to on the car.

4.1.7.6 Control Spaces Exterior to the Hoistway. Control spaces exterior to the hoistway shall conform to the following:

(a) Control spaces exterior to the hoistway shall be protected by noncombustible solid enclosure(s) to prevent accidental contact.

(b) Access shall be provided to the control space and shall be subject to the following:

(1) Access panels to control equipment shall be provided with an electric contact and lock.

(2) The access panel door(s) shall not be self-closing and shall be self-locking.

(3) The access panel shall be kept closed and locked.

(4) An electric contact shall be provided to remove power from the rack-and-pinion machine when the access panel is open. A means shall be provided to permit operation of the rack-and-pinion machine while performing testing and troubleshooting.

(5) Keys to access control equipment shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

(c) Control spaces shall be provided with permanent lighting having a minimum illumination of 200 lx (19 fc) at the floor level. The lighting control switch shall be located within easy reach of the access door.

4.1.8 Equipment in Hoistways or Machinery Spaces, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in the hoistway or machinery spaces, control spaces, and control rooms shall conform to Section 2.8, except that the main feeder of a rack-and-pinion machine located on the car shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway.

4.1.9 Supports and Foundations

Supports and foundations shall be designed to support all loads imposed by the elevator (including impact loading in the event of a safety application, the car striking the car buffers in accordance with 4.1.22, or the counterweight striking the counterweight buffers in accordance with 4.1.22) in accordance with the applicable building code. Allowable stresses for machinery and sheave

beams or floors and their supports shall be in accordance with 2.9.4.

4.1.10 Guarding of Equipment and Standard Railing

4.1.10.1 Equipment. In machinery spaces, control spaces, and control rooms, the following shall be guarded to protect against accidental contact:

(a) sheaves

(b) exposed gears, sprockets, or drums of selectors, floor controllers, or signal machines, and their driving ropes, chains, or tapes

(c) keys, keyways, and screws in projecting shafts

4.1.10.2 Standard Railing. When required in Section 4.1, the railing shall conform to 2.10.2.

4.1.11 Protection of Hoistway Openings

Protection of hoistway openings shall conform to Section 2.11 except that emergency doors in 2.11.1.2 are not required when the elevator is restricted to access by authorized personnel and is equipped with a manually operated device that permits lowering the car at an automatically controlled speed to the nearest landing.

4.1.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts and Hoistway Access Switches

Hoistway door locking devices and electric contacts and hoistway access switches shall conform to Section 2.12.

4.1.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors

Power operation of hoistway doors and car doors shall conform to Section 2.13.

4.1.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

Car enclosures, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to Section 2.14.

4.1.15 Car Frames and Platforms

Car frames and platforms shall conform to Section 2.15, except for 2.15.12 and 2.15.13.

4.1.16 Capacity and Loading

Capacity and loading shall conform to Section 2.16.

4.1.17 Car and Counterweight Safeties

The car shall be provided with one of the following safeties:

(a) a rack-and-pinion safety. The safety shall be attached to the car frame. All rack-and-pinion car safeties shall be mounted on a single car frame and shall operate on one or more vertical racks. A rack-and-pinion safety shall be permitted to be located above, below, or in the car, provided that the members to which it is fixed are part of the car frame and are designed to withstand the forces imposed. Rack-and-pinion safeties are safeties in which a freely rotating safety pinion, a governor, and a safety device shall be permitted to form an integral unit. The freely rotating pinion travels on a stationary rack mounted vertically on a supporting structure. The rotating pinion drives the governor. When the speed of the car reaches the tripping value, the rotating governor actuates the safety device that, in turn, brings the car to a stop.

(b) a safety complying with [Section 2.17](#).

4.1.17.1 Stopping Distances. The stopping distances for rack-and-pinion safeties and the travel of the car measured from the governor tripping time to the full stop time shall not exceed the values based on rated speed given in [Table 4.1.18.1](#).

When calculating stopping distances, the kinetic energy from the driving unit shall be taken into account.

4.1.17.2 Minimum Factors of Safety and Stresses of Safety Parts. Parts of rack-and-pinion safeties complying with [4.1.17\(a\)](#), except springs, shall have a factor of safety not less than 3.5, and the materials used shall have an elongation of not less than 15% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E8. Forged, cast, or welded parts shall be stress relieved.

4.1.17.3 Marking Plates for Rack-and-Pinion Safeties. A metal plate shall be securely attached to each safety so as to be readily visible, and shall be marked in a legible and permanent manner with letters and figures not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height indicating the following:

(a) the maximum tripping speed in meters per second (feet per minute) for which the safety is permitted

(b) the maximum weight in kilograms (pounds) for which the safety is designed and installed to stop and sustain

(c) the manufacturer's date of expiration (see [8.6.6.1](#)), if applicable

(d) the manufacturer's name or trademark

4.1.18 Speed Governors

Speed governors shall conform to [4.1.18.1](#) or [4.1.18.2](#).

4.1.18.1 Rack-and-Pinion Speed Governors. Rack-and-pinion speed governors shall conform to the following:

(a) Tripping speeds shall conform to those given in [Table 4.1.18.1](#).

(b) Rack-and-pinion speed governors shall be provided with a governor overspeed switch that shall open at 100% of the governor tripping speed in the down direction and shall be actuated by the action of the integral rack-and-pinion speed governor.

(c) The actuation of the governor overspeed switch shall cause power to be removed from the rack-and-pinion drive motor(s) and brake(s).

(d) The overspeed switch shall be positively opened, shall be the manually reset type, and shall comply with [4.1.26.2.10](#).

(e) Minimum factors of safety of integral rack-and-pinion speed governor(s) shall conform to [4.1.17.2](#).

(f) Sealing and painting of rack-and-pinion speed governors shall conform to [2.18.3](#).

4.1.18.2 Speed Governors. Speed governors shall conform to [Section 2.18](#).

4.1.19 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection

Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection, when required by [Section 2.19](#), shall conform to one of the following:

(a) requirements [2.19.1](#) through [2.19.3](#) as applicable to rack-and-pinion elevators

(b) on a multiple-drive system where each drive system brake is capable of holding the car at a stationary position, [2.19.3.2\(h\)](#) through [2.19.3.2\(j\)](#)

4.1.20 Suspension Ropes and Their Connections

When provided, suspension ropes and their connections shall conform to [Section 2.20](#).

4.1.21 Counterweights

When provided, counterweights shall conform to [Section 2.21](#). In addition, where a hoisting sheave or sheaves are mounted in the frame, the requirements for sheaves in [2.24.2](#) and [2.24.3](#) shall apply.

4.1.22 Buffers and Bumpers

Buffers and bumpers shall conform to [Section 2.22](#), except that where car spring buffers are used, the following apply:

(a) The buffers shall be designed and installed so that they will not be fully compressed when struck by the car with its rated load at the governor tripping speed. Kinetic energy from the drive unit shall be taken into account in the design calculations. The effect of the counterweight, where used, shall also be taken into account in the design calculations.

(b) The requirements of [2.22.3.2](#) do not apply to car buffers.

Table 4.1.18.1
Maximum and Minimum Stopping Distances for Rack-and-Pinion Safeties With Rated Load

SI Units				Imperial Units			
Rated Speed, m/s	Maximum Governor Trip Speed, m/s	Stopping Distance, mm		Rated Speed, ft/min	Maximum Governor Trip Speed, ft/min	Stopping Distance, in.	
		Min.	Max.			Min.	Max.
0–0.63	0.90	80.0	1 650.0	0–125	175	3	65
0.75	1.05	110.0	1 700.0	150	210	4	67
0.87	1.3725	160.0	1 790.0	175	250	6	70
1.00	1.40	200.0	1 870.0	200	280	8	73
1.12	1.55	250.0	1 945.0	225	308	10	76
1.25	1.70	300.0	2 030.0	250	337	12	80
1.50	2.00	410.0	2 240.0	300	395	16	88
1.75	2.30	540.0	2 470.0	350	452	21	97
2.00	2.55	680.0	2 730.0	400	510	26	108
2.25	2.90	850.0	3 030.0	450	568	33	119
2.50	3.15	1 025.0	3 100.0	500	625	40	122
3.00	3.70	1 440.0	4 100.0	600	740	56	161
3.50	4.30	1 920.0	4 975.0	700	855	75	196
4.00	4.85	2 475.0	5 975.0	800	970	97	235
4.50	5.50	3 100.0	7 100.0	900	1,085	122	280
5.00	6.00	3 775.0	8 300.0	1,000	1,200	149	327
5.50	6.60	4 575.0	9 800.0	1,100	1,320	180	385
6.00	7.20	5 450.0	11 400.0	1,200	1,440	214	448
6.50	7.80	6 400.0	13 100.0	1,300	1,560	252	515
7.00	8.40	7 420.0	14 900.0	1,400	1,680	292	588
7.50	9.00	8 070.0	16 900.0	1,500	1,800	333	667
8.00	9.60	9 640.0	19 050.0	1,600	1,920	381	750
8.50	10.20	10 940.0	21 300.0	1,700	2,040	430	839
9.00	10.80	12 260.0	23 700.0	1,800	2,160	483	934
9.50	11.40	13 670.0	26 750.0	1,900	2,280	538	1,054
10.00	12.00	15 145.0	28 925.0	2,000	2,400	596	1,140

4.1.23 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to [Section 2.23](#).

4.1.24 Rack-and-Pinion Drive Machine

Rack-and-pinion-type drives shall conform to [4.1.24.1](#) through [4.1.24.8](#).

4.1.24.1 Rack-and-Pinion Drive Machine. The rack-and-pinion drive machine shall

(a) consist of one or more power-driven rotating pinions arranged to travel on a stationary rack mounted on the supporting structure.

(b) have at least one pinion, one rack, and two backup rollers, where at least one pinion, one rack, and one backup roller shall act on the same section of rack as the drive pinion. Driving machines using a two-sided rack, where two drive pinions are located so that they are opposite each other and act as backup rollers, shall be deemed to have met this requirement.

(c) have all moving parts of the driving machine properly protected from accidental contact (see [4.1.7.3](#) and [4.1.7.4](#)).

(d) have the rack and pinion designed to limit the separation of the pinion from the rack in all directions to 25% of the tooth depth or 6 mm (0.25 in.), whichever is greater.

(e) have the pinion guarded to prevent foreign material from falling onto and lodging between the teeth of the pinion and rack. The clearance between the moving parts and the guard shall not exceed 5 mm (0.1875 in.).

(f) be provided with a sign that shall

(1) include information on checking tooth wear of the pinion and rack

(2) show the maximum allowable wear limits for the rack and the pinion

(3) be metal securely fastened and conspicuously displayed on top of the car with permanent lettering not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.) high

4.1.24.2 Factor of Safety

(a) Pinions and racks shall be steel or material having mechanical properties equivalent to or better than those of steel, with a minimum factor of safety of 8 based on ultimate stress for the pinion and the rack. They shall be designed to conform to AGMA 218.01, including surface hardening and an assumption of a minimum of 200 000 life cycles.

(b) Rack sections shall be fastened to the supporting structure with a factor of safety of 5 based on ultimate stress and with dowels at each joint.

4.1.24.3 Fasteners Transmitting Load. Fasteners transmitting load shall conform to 4.1.24.3.1 and 4.1.24.3.2.

4.1.24.3.1 Fasteners and Rigid Connections. Set screws or threaded portions located in the shear plane of bolts and screws shall not be used to transmit load. Means shall be provided to ensure that there is no relative motion between rigidly joined components transmitting load. The factors of safety to be used in the design of fasteners transmitting load in driving machines and sheaves shall be not less than those specified in 4.1.24.2.

4.1.24.3.2 Flexible Connections. Where flexible couplings are used to transmit load, means shall be provided to prevent disengagement of the coupling components in the event of the failure of or excessive motion in the flexible connection.

4.1.24.4 Shaft Fillets and Keys. A fillet shall be provided at any point of change in the diameter of driving-machine shafts and sheave shafts to prevent excessive stress concentrations in the shafts (see 4.1.24.3.1). Shafts that support gears, couplings, and other members and that transmit torque shall be provided with tight-fitting keys.

4.1.24.5 Cast Iron Gears. Gears made of cast iron shall not be used in rack-and-pinion driving machines.

4.1.24.6 Friction Gearing and Clutches. Friction gearing or a clutch mechanism shall not be used to connect a driving-machine pinion(s) to the main driving mechanism.

4.1.24.7 Braking System and Rack-and-Pinion Driving-Machine Brakes. The braking system and rack-and-pinion driving-machine brakes shall conform to 2.24.8.

4.1.24.8 Means of Inspection of Gears. Each gear case of geared machines shall have access to permit inspection of the contact surfaces of the gears. Such access need not provide a direct view of all gears but shall be located and sized adequately to allow access by fiber optic or similar visual inspection instrumentation.

4.1.25 Terminal Stopping Devices

4.1.25.1 General. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.1 through 2.25.3, except 2.25.2.2, 2.25.3.3, and 2.25.3.5. Terminal stopping devices shall be permitted to be located on the car and operated by cams attached to the hoistway structure.

4.1.25.2 Emergency Terminal Speed-Limiting Devices. Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall conform to 2.25.4.

4.1.26 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 4.1.26.1 through 4.1.26.12.

4.1.26.1 Operating Devices

4.1.26.1.1 Types of operating devices shall conform to 2.26.1.1.

4.1.26.1.2 Car-switch operation elevators shall conform to 2.26.1.2.

4.1.26.1.3 Rack-and-pinion elevators equipped to carry one-piece loads greater than the rated load shall conform to 2.16.7 and 2.26.1.3.

4.1.26.1.4 Inspection Operation shall conform to 2.26.1.4.1 through 2.26.1.4.4.

4.1.26.1.5 Inspection Operation with open door circuits shall conform to 2.26.1.5, including 2.26.1.5.1 through 2.26.1.5.8.

4.1.26.1.6 Operation in the leveling or truck zone shall conform to 2.26.1.6, including 2.26.1.6.1 through 2.26.1.6.7.

4.1.26.2 Electrical Protective Devices. When an electrical protective device is activated (operated, opened), it shall cause the electric power to be removed from the rack-and-pinion driving-machine motor and brake. Electrical protective devices, when provided, shall conform as indicated in 4.1.26.2.1 through 4.1.26.2.39.

NOTE: The requirements of 4.1.26.2 are organized to parallel those in 2.26.2, as indicated by the last digit(s) of the paragraph designations (e.g., 2.26.2.1 and 4.1.26.2.1 both address slack-rope switch requirements).

4.1.26.2.1 A slack-rope switch shall conform to 2.26.2.1.

4.1.26.2.2 A motor-generator running switch shall conform to 2.26.2.2.

4.1.26.2.3 Compensating-rope sheave switches shall conform to 2.26.2.3.

4.1.26.2.4 Motor field sensing means shall conform to 2.26.2.4.

4.1.26.2.5 An emergency stop switch shall conform to 2.26.2.5.

4.1.26.2.6 Broken rope, tape, or chain switches shall conform to 2.26.2.6.

4.1.26.2.7 A stop switch in the pit shall conform to 2.26.2.7.

4.1.26.2.8 A stop switch on top of the car shall conform to 2.26.2.8.

4.1.26.2.9 A car safety mechanism switch conforming to 2.26.2.9 shall be required where a car safety is provided conforming to 4.1.17(b).

4.1.26.2.10 A speed governor overspeed switch, when required by 4.1.18, shall conform to 4.1.18.1.

4.1.26.2.11 Final terminal stopping devices shall conform to 4.1.25.

4.1.26.2.12 Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall conform to 4.1.25.

4.1.26.2.13 Buffer switches for oil buffers used with Type C car safeties shall conform to 4.1.17.

4.1.26.2.14 Hoistway door interlocks and hoistway door electric contacts shall conform to 4.1.12.

4.1.26.2.15 Car door and gate electric contacts shall conform to 2.26.2.15.

4.1.26.2.16 Emergency terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.26.2.16.

4.1.26.2.17 Reserved for Future Use

4.1.26.2.18 A car top emergency exit electrical device shall conform to 2.26.2.18.

4.1.26.2.19 Motor-generator overspeed protection shall conform to 2.26.2.19.

4.1.26.2.20 Electrical contacts for hinged car platform sills shall conform to 2.26.2.20.

4.1.26.2.21 An in-car stop switch shall conform to 2.26.2.21.

4.1.26.2.22 Buffer switches for gas spring-return oil buffers shall conform to 2.26.2.22.

4.1.26.2.23 Stop switches in remote control rooms shall conform to 2.26.2.23.

4.1.26.2.24 A stop switch in an overhead machinery space in the hoistway shall conform to 2.26.2.24.

4.1.26.2.25 A blind hoistway emergency door locking device shall conform to 2.26.2.25.

4.1.26.2.26 A pit access door electric contact shall conform to 2.26.2.26.

4.1.26.2.27 Stop switches in remote counterweight hoistways shall conform to 2.26.2.27.

4.1.26.2.28 A car door interlock shall conform to 2.26.2.28.

4.1.26.2.29 An ascending car overspeed protection device shall conform to 2.26.2.29.

4.1.26.2.30 An unintended car movement device shall conform to 2.26.2.30.

4.1.26.2.31 A car access panel locking device shall conform to 2.26.2.31.

4.1.26.2.32 A hoistway access opening locking device shall conform to 2.26.2.32.

4.1.26.2.33 A firefighters' stop switch shall conform to 2.26.2.33.

4.1.26.2.34 An unexpected car movement device shall conform to 2.26.2.34.

4.1.26.2.35 An electric contact on equipment access panels in the car shall conform to 2.26.2.35.

4.1.26.2.36 An electric contact used on a working platform shall conform to 2.26.2.36.

4.1.26.2.37 An electric contact used on a retractable stop shall conform to 2.26.2.37.

4.1.26.2.38 An electric contact used on a retractable ladder shall conform to 2.26.2.38.

4.1.26.2.39 A sway control guide slack suspension detection means shall conform to 2.26.2.39.

4.1.26.3 Contactors and Relays for Use in Critical Operating Circuits. Contactors and relays for use in critical operating circuits shall conform to 2.26.3.

4.1.26.4 Electrical Equipment and Wiring. Electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to 2.26.4.1 through 2.26.4.5 and the following:

(a) A disconnecting means shall be provided conforming to NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). The disconnecting means shall be located in a control room, a machinery space, or a control space located outside the hoistway.

(b) When the controller is located on the car, an auxiliary disconnecting means conforming to NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)), shall be located adjacent to and within sight of the controller.

4.1.26.5 System to Monitor and Prevent Automatic Operation of the Elevator With Faulty Door Contact Circuits. The system to monitor and prevent automatic operation of the elevator with faulty door contact circuits shall conform to [2.26.5](#).

4.1.26.6 Phase Protection of Motors. Phase protection of motors shall conform to [2.26.6](#).

(22) **4.1.26.7 Installation of Capacitors or Other Devices or Means to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective.** Installation of capacitors or other devices to make electrical protective devices ineffective are prohibited in accordance with [2.26.7](#).

4.1.26.8 Release and Application of Driving-Machine Brakes. Release and application of driving-machine brakes shall conform to [2.26.8](#).

4.1.26.9 Control and Operating Circuits. Control and operating circuits shall conform to [2.26.9](#).

4.1.26.10 Absorption of Regenerated Power. Absorption of regenerated power shall conform to [2.26.10](#).

4.1.26.11 Car Platform to Hoistway Door Sills Vertical Distances. Vertical distances between the car platform sill and the hoistway door sill shall conform to [2.26.11](#).

4.1.26.12 Symbols. Symbols shall conform to [2.26.12](#).

4.1.27 Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices

Emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to [Section 2.27](#).

4.1.28 Layout Drawings

Layout drawings shall, in addition to the data required by [2.28.1](#), indicate the following:

- (a) the dimensions of the rack and its location with respect to the guide rail
- (b) the magnitude of the loads from the rack imposed on the building structure

4.1.29 Identification

Identification shall conform to [Section 2.29](#).

4.1.30 Sway Control Guides

Sway control guides shall conform to [Section 2.30](#).

4.1.31 Welding

Welding shall conform to [Section 8.8](#).

SECTION 4.2 SCREW-COLUMN ELEVATORS

This Section applies to an elevator having an uncounterweighted car that is supported by a screw column and is raised and lowered by screw thread means.

NOTE: See also [Part 8](#) for additional requirements that apply to screw-column elevators.

4.2.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to [Sections 2.1, 2.2](#), and [2.10](#) through [2.13](#).

4.2.2 Vertical Clearance and Runby for Cars

4.2.2.1 Bottom Car Clearance. The bottom car clearance shall conform to [2.4.1](#), provided that, in the determination of the required clearance, any undercar machinery and bracing located within 150 mm (6 in.) horizontally from the edge of the car platform or 75 mm (3 in.) horizontally from the centerline of the guide rails are not considered.

4.2.2.2 Minimum and Maximum Bottom and Top Car Runby. The minimum bottom and top car runby shall be not less than

- (a) 75 mm (3 in.) for rated speeds not exceeding 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min)
- (b) 150 mm (6 in.) for rated speeds exceeding 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min)

The maximum bottom and top car runby shall be not more than 600 mm (24 in.).

4.2.2.3 Maximum Upward Movement of the Car. The maximum upward movement of the car shall be the top maximum design car runby in [4.2.2.2](#).

4.2.2.4 Top-of-Car Clearance. When the car has reached its maximum upward movement, the clearance above the car top shall comply with [2.4.7](#).

4.2.3 Horizontal Car Clearance

The horizontal car clearances shall conform to [Section 2.5](#), except [2.5.1.2](#).

4.2.4 Protection of Spaces Below the Hoistway

Where the space below the hoistway is used for a passageway, is occupied by persons, or, if unoccupied, is not secured against unauthorized access, the requirements specified in [4.2.4.1](#) through [4.2.4.3](#) shall be conformed to.

4.2.4.1 The screw column, and any associated framing, shall be supported by a structure of sufficient strength to support the entire load imposed upon it, including the impact if the drive nut should fail.

4.2.4.2 The guide rails shall be supported by a structure of sufficient strength to withstand, without permanent deformation, the impact of a safety application with a fully loaded car.

4.2.4.3 The buffers shall be supported by a structure of sufficient strength to withstand, without permanent deformation, the impact resulting from buffer engagement by the car with its rated load at the maximum speed in the down direction.

4.2.5 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces

The machine rooms, machinery spaces, and location of elevator components shall conform to 4.2.5.1 through 4.2.5.6.

4.2.5.1 Motors and other integral mechanical or electrical equipment shall be permitted to be located in a machinery space within the hoistway, on the car, in the pit, or in a separate machine room or machinery space.

4.2.5.2 The controller shall be permitted to be located on the car or on the exterior of the hoistway wall or other location apart from the hoistway, machine room, or machinery space. A controller so located shall be readily accessible for maintenance and inspection at all times. Controllers located apart from the hoistway, machine room, or machinery space shall be housed in a locked metal cabinet. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

4.2.5.3 A separate machine room or machinery space, apart from the hoistway, shall conform to Section 2.7.

4.2.5.4 A screw machine and its controls, if located on the car, shall be protected by a noncombustible enclosure to prevent accidental contact. Openwork enclosures of noncombustible material shall be permitted to be used for screw machines located on top of the car, provided the openwork material rejects a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter.

4.2.5.5 Access shall be provided to the screw machine for maintenance. Access panels to screw machines located on the car shall be provided with an electric contact and lock. The electric contact shall be designed to prevent operation of the screw machine when the access panel is open. The access panel shall be kept closed and locked. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

4.2.5.6 Where the screw machine is located in the pit, means shall be permanently provided in the pit for supporting the car and its frame or platform during repairs or adjustments. Clear headroom under the platform shall be not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) when the car is landed on the supports.

4.2.6 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms

Electrical wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways, machine rooms, and machinery spaces shall conform to Section 2.8, except the main feeder of a screw-column elevator shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway if the screw machine is located in the hoistway, provided there is no intermediate access to the conductors between the disconnecting means and the termination at the motor or controller.

4.2.7 Supports and Foundations

4.2.7.1 The supports and foundations shall be designed to support all loads imposed by the elevator in accordance with the building code, including impact loading in the event of a car safety application, stop by a safety nut, or controlled descent by a speed-limiting device. The unit stresses in elevator-supporting members and their supports, based on 2 times the normal loading, shall not exceed those permitted for static loading in accordance with the requirements of the following standards:

(a) AISC Book No. S326 or CAN/CSA-S16.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9) for structural steel

(b) ANSI/ACI 318 or CAN3-A23.3, whichever is applicable (see Part 9) for reinforced concrete

4.2.7.2 Where stresses due to loads other than elevator loads supported on the beams, floor, or structure exceed those due to the elevator loads, 100% of the permitted stresses shall be permitted to be used.

NOTE: In determining unit stresses, the maximum normal loading is doubled to take care of impact, accelerating stresses, etc.

4.2.8 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

The car enclosure, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to Section 2.14.

4.2.9 Car Frames and Platforms

The car frame and platform shall conform to Section 2.15, except 2.15.12 and 2.15.13.

4.2.10 Capacity and Loading

The capacity and loading shall conform to Section 2.16.

4.2.11 Car Safeties and Speed Governor

A car safety device and speed governor shall be provided, which shall conform to the design and performance requirements of Sections 2.17 and 2.18, except as specified in 4.2.11.1 and 4.2.11.2.

- (22) **4.2.11.1** For elevators driven by an alternating-current squirrel cage induction motor and having a down speed not more than 0.37 m/s (75 ft/min), the car safety and governor are not required if another safety device is provided to either

(a) limit the down speed of the car with rated load to not over 0.87 m/s (175 ft/min) in the event of failure of the driving means or

(b) limit the fall of the elevator in the event of failure of the driving nut to a distance not exceeding 13 mm (0.5 in.), by using a safety nut or other equivalent means

4.2.11.2 The capability of the alternate safety devices described in 4.2.11.1(a) and 4.2.11.1(b) to function as required shall be verified by engineering tests as described in 8.3.10.

4.2.12 Reserved for Future Use

4.2.13 Car Buffers

Car buffers conforming to Section 2.22 shall be provided, except that solid bumpers shall be permitted to be used for elevators provided with a safety nut [see 4.2.11.1(b)] and having a maximum speed in the down direction of 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min).

4.2.14 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to Section 2.23, except 2.23.4.2, 2.23.4.3, 2.23.9.1, and 2.23.10.

The fastening of guide rails to brackets or to the elevator-supporting frame shall be by clips, welds, or bolts. The rail structure and the structural members to which it is attached shall withstand the forces specified in 2.23.5.2, and the application of the car safety shall be within the deflection limits specified.

4.2.15 Driving Machine and Screw Column

The screw machine shall function to raise or lower the elevator car acting in conjunction with a screw column that directly supports the elevator car.

The screw column and machine shall conform to 2.24.4 through 2.24.6, 2.24.8, Section 2.29, and 4.2.15.1 through 4.2.15.11.

4.2.15.1 Screws shall be made of steel. Nuts shall be made of bronze or other materials having an elongation of at least 14% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.).

4.2.15.2 Means shall be provided to maintain the screw in its vertical position under all conditions of operation. Screws suspended from their upper end shall be restrained at their lower end.

4.2.15.3 A vertical casing, closed at the end, shall be provided to enclose and protect the screw column in cases where the screw column extends outside the hoistway and machine room.

4.2.15.4 The screw column and nut and their attachments to the car frame, car platform, or other structure shall provide sufficient strength to support the loads imposed on these connections with a factor of safety of 5.

4.2.15.5 Factors of safety for the driving machine, excluding the screw column and nut and their attachments to the car frame, car platform, or other structure, shall conform to 2.24.3, except that the load used in determining the factor of safety shall be based on the total weight supported with rated load in the car.

4.2.15.6 Screw machines of the indirect drive type shall conform to 2.24.9. The elevator shall be designed so that the elevator car, while carrying 125% of rated load and traveling at rated speed, shall decelerate and stop in the event the driving-belt system or driving-chain system should break.

4.2.15.7 Means shall be provided to prevent the disengagement of the nut from the screw column. This means shall be designed and constructed to prevent disengagement in the event of overtravel at full speed without damage to any part of the elevator installation. Any additional loads imposed by this action shall also be considered in the computations made in accordance with 4.2.15.8.

4.2.15.8 Where the screw column is a compression member, column formulas of 8.2.8.1.1 shall be used in the design with the words "screw column" substituted for the word "plunger" and

A = net cross-sectional area of the screw at the root of the thread, mm² (in.²)

L = maximum free length of the screw, mm (in.)

R = radius of gyration of the screw at the root of the thread, mm (in.)

W = the total weight with rated load plus one-half the weight of the screw column, kg (lb)

W/A = maximum allowable fiber stress

4.2.15.9 Where the screw column is a tension member, the unit stress (considering the root dimension and any associated stress concentration and/or the reduced section at any joints in the screw) shall not exceed one-fifth of the ultimate strength of the material with a maximum fiber stress not to exceed 124 MPa (18,000 psi).

4.2.15.10 Positive mechanical means shall be provided to prevent rotation or separation of sections of a multiple-section screw column.

4.2.15.11 Means shall be provided to permit authorized personnel from a position outside the elevator car to raise or lower the car manually in the event of a normal (22)

building power failure, unless emergency or standby power is provided, except that, for private residence elevators and special purpose personnel elevators, means to allow a passenger within a stalled car to manually move the car to a landing is acceptable, and no other means of moving the stalled car is required.

4.2.16 Terminal Stopping Devices

4.2.16.1 Normal Terminal Stopping Devices. Normal terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.1 and 2.25.2.

4.2.16.2 Final Terminal Stopping Devices. Final terminal stopping devices conforming to 2.25.3.1 and 2.25.3.3 shall be provided for elevators having a rated speed exceeding 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min). Final terminal stopping devices shall be located in the hoistway and operated by cams attached to the car.

Elevators having a rated speed of 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min) or less shall be designed so that the elevator car will be brought to a stop without damage to the elevator system in the event of overtravel of the elevator at either terminal due to a malfunction.

4.2.16.3 Emergency Terminal Speed-Limiting Devices. Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall be installed where reduced-stroke buffers are used (see 2.22.4.1.2). These devices shall conform to 2.25.4.

4.2.17 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

4.2.17.1 Applicable Requirements. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to the following:

- (a) Requirement 2.26.1.1.
- (b) Requirement 2.26.1.4, except that top-of-car operating devices are not required on private residence elevators and special purpose personnel elevators. Top-of-car operating devices are not required on any screw-column elevator if there is no mechanical or electrical equipment that requires maintenance from the top of the car.
- (c) Requirements 2.26.2.5, 2.26.2.7 through 2.26.2.10, 2.26.2.12 through 2.26.2.15, 2.26.2.18 through 2.26.2.21, 2.26.2.25, and 2.26.2.28.
- (d) Requirement 2.26.3.
- (e) Requirement 2.26.4.
- (f) Requirement 2.26.5.
- (g) Where the screw machine and its controller are located on the car, in the hoistway, or outside the hoistway, the disconnecting means shall be located adjacent to the controller.
- (h) Requirement 2.26.6.
- (i) Requirement 2.26.7.
- (j) Requirement 2.26.8.
- (k) Requirement 2.26.9.
- (l) Requirement 2.26.11.
- (m) Requirement 2.26.12.

4.2.18 Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices

Emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to Section 2.27.

4.2.19 Layout Drawings

Elevator layout drawings shall, in addition to the data required by Section 2.28, indicate the following:

- (a) the material and dimensions of the screw column, including thread dimensions
- (b) the location and amount of the maximum loadings on the building structure

4.2.20 Welding

All welding shall conform to Section 8.8.

SECTION 4.3 HAND ELEVATORS

This Section applies to hand-operated elevators.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to hand elevators.

4.3.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to Part 2, except for the following, which do not apply:

- 2.1.3 Floor Over Hoistways
- 2.1.6 Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks in Hoistway Enclosures
- Section 2.2 Pits
- Section 2.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights
- Section 2.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights
- Section 2.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances
 - 2.7.1.1 Fire-Resistive Construction
 - 2.7.1.2 Non-Fire-Resistive Construction
 - 2.7.2 Maintenance Path and Clearance
 - 2.7.4 Headroom in Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms
 - 2.7.9.2 Temperature and Humidity
- Section 2.8 Equipment in Hoistways, Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms
- Section 2.10 Guarding of Equipment and Standard Railing
 - 2.11.2.1 Passenger Elevators

- 2.11.2.2 Freight Elevators
- 2.11.3 Closing of Hoistway Doors
- 2.11.7 Glass in Hoistway Doors
- 2.11.9 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Power Operation
- Section 2.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Closed Detection Means, and Hoistway Access Switches
- Section 2.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors

4.3.2 Pits

Pits are not required.

4.3.3 Top Clearances

4.3.3.1 Top Car Clearance. The top car clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following:

- (a) the bottom counterweight runby, if any
- (b) the stroke of the counterweight buffer where a spring-type buffer is used (buffer is not required for sidewalk elevators)
- (c) 300 mm (12 in.)

4.3.3.2 Top Counterweight Clearance. The top counterweight clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following:

- (a) the bottom car runby, if any
- (b) the stroke of the car buffer where a spring-type buffer is used (buffer is not required for sidewalk elevators)
- (c) 150 mm (6 in.)

4.3.4 Enclosures for Machines and Control Equipment

Elevator machines and their control equipment shall be permitted to be located inside the hoistway enclosure at the top or bottom without intervening enclosures or platforms.

Machines of sidewalk elevators having a rise of not more than one floor, and having an opening into the building at the bottom terminal landing only, are not required to be enclosed.

4.3.5 Overhead Beams and Supports, and Access to Machines and Sheaves

4.3.5.1 Overhead Beams and Supports. Overhead beams and their supports shall conform to [Section 2.9](#).

4.3.5.2 Access to Machines and Sheaves. Adequate and permanent means of access shall be provided to machines and sheaves for maintenance and inspection (see [2.7.3](#)).

4.3.6 Hoistway Entrances

4.3.6.1 Types of Entrances. Entrances shall be the following types:

- (a) self-closing or manually operated horizontally sliding or swinging, single section
- (b) self-closing or manually operated horizontally swinging, two section (Dutch type) with one section above the other and the lower section extending not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.) above the floor, and arranged to be opened only when the car is in the landing zone and after the upper section has been opened, and to be closed by the closing of the upper section
- (c) manually operated vertically sliding counterweighted single or multisection
- (d) manually operated vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced
- (e) for sidewalk elevator doors in sidewalks or other areas exterior to the building, see [5.5.1.11.2](#)

4.3.6.2 Closing of Hoistway Doors. All doors shall be kept closed, except the door at the floor where the car is being operated or is being loaded or unloaded.

Manually operated doors shall be equipped with approved devices to close them automatically when released by the action of heat. Self-closing doors equipped with hold-open devices shall be equipped with fusible links that will release the door in case of excessive heat.

Landing doors shall be provided with mechanical locks arranged so that the car cannot leave the landing unless the door is closed. The lock or latch shall be arranged to ensure that the door is in a position to be locked when or before the car leaves the landing.

These requirements do not apply to bottom landing doors of sidewalk elevators.

4.3.6.3 Signs on Hoistway Doors. Every hoistway door shall have conspicuously displayed on the landing side in letters not less than 50 mm (2 in.) high the words: "DANGER—ELEVATOR—KEEP CLOSED."

4.3.7 Hoistway Gates for Landing Openings

Hoistway landing openings equipped with horizontally sliding or swinging doors shall also be provided with vertically sliding semiautomatic gates, not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.) high and of a design that will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter. Gates shall be constructed and guided to withstand a lateral force of 445 N (100 lbf) concentrated at the center of the gate without being deflected beyond the line of the landing sill, and a force of 1 112 N (250 lbf) without forcing the gate from its guides or causing it to break or be permanently deformed.

4.3.8 Hoistway Door and Hoistway Gate Locking Devices

Hoistway doors and hoistway gates, where required, shall be provided with locking devices as specified in 4.3.8.1 and 4.3.8.2.

4.3.8.1 Door Latches. Hoistway doors shall be provided with spring-type latches to hold them in the closed position. Such latches shall be capable of being released from both the hoistway and the landing side, irrespective of the position of the car.

4.3.8.2 Gate Locks. Hoistway gates required with horizontally sliding or swinging-type hoistway doors (see 4.3.7) shall be provided with hoistway gate separate mechanical locks.

(a) *Type Required.* Hoistway gate separate mechanical locks shall be a type actuated only when the car is within the landing zone by a cam attached to the car.

(b) *General Design Requirements.* The lock shall hold the gate in the closed position by means of gravity or a restrained compression spring, or both.

(c) *Closed Position.* Hoistway gates provided with hoistway gate separate mechanical locks shall be considered to be in the closed position when the gate is within 10 mm (0.375 in.) of contact with the landing sill.

4.3.9 Car Enclosures

Cars shall be enclosed on the sides not used for entrance. The deflection of the enclosure shall be not more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) when subjected to a force of 334 N (75 lb) applied perpendicularly to the car enclosure at any point. The enclosure shall be secured to the car platform or frame in such a manner that it cannot work loose or become displaced in ordinary service.

These requirements do not apply to sidewalk elevators.

4.3.10 Use of Glass in Cars

Glass shall not be used in elevator cars, except as permitted in 2.14.1.8.

4.3.11 Car Frames and Platforms

Car frames and platforms shall be metal or sound seasoned wood designed with a factor of safety not less than 4 for metal and 6 for wood, based on the rated load uniformly distributed. Connections between frame members of the car frame and the platform shall be riveted, bolted, or welded.

Sidewalk elevator platforms shall be provided with steel bow irons or stanchions to open sidewalk doors or covers (see 5.5.1.15.2).

4.3.12 Car Compartments

Elevator cars on which an operator is permitted to ride shall have not more than one compartment.

4.3.13 Cars Counterbalancing One Another

Elevator cars on which persons are permitted to ride shall not be arranged to counterbalance each other.

4.3.14 Capacity and Loading

4.3.14.1 Minimum Rated Load. The rated load of hand elevators shall be not less than 240 kg/m^2 (50 lb/ft^2) of the inside net car area.

4.3.14.2 Capacity Plate. A metal plate shall be fastened in a conspicuous place in the elevator car and shall bear the following information in not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) letters or numerals, stamped, etched, or raised on the surface of the plate:

(a) rated load in kilograms (pounds)

(b) the maximum number of passengers to be carried based on 68 kg (150 lb) per person (if a passenger elevator)

(c) suspension data required by 4.3.16.5

4.3.15 Car Safeties

Elevators having a rise of more than 4.6 m (15 ft) shall be provided with a car safety, attached to the underside of the car frame, capable of stopping and sustaining the car with rated load.

The car safety device is not required to be operated by a speed governor, and is permitted to be the instantaneous type operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the suspension members.

Where the rise exceeds 12.5 m (40 ft), driving machines having hand-operated brakes shall also be equipped with an automatic speed retarder.

4.3.16 Suspension Means

4.3.16.1 Type and Number Required. Suspension means shall consist of not less than two wire ropes or chains.

4.3.16.2 Factor of Safety. The factor of safety used in determining the size and number of the suspension members shall be not less than 5, based on the weight of the car and its rated load.

4.3.16.3 Length of Suspension Members. The length of suspension members shall be such as to provide the minimum top car and counterweight clearances specified in 4.3.3.

4.3.16.4 Securing of Drum Ends, and Turns on Drum. Drum ends of suspension members shall be secured to the inside of the drum by clamps or babbitted sockets, and there shall be not less than one complete turn of the suspension members around the winding drum when the car or counterweight is resting on its buffers.

4.3.16.5 Suspension Member Data. The capacity plate required by 4.3.14.2 shall show the size, rated ultimate strength, and material of the suspension members. The date of installation of the suspension members shall be shown on a metal tag attached to the suspension fastening.

4.3.17 Counterweights

4.3.17.1 Counterweight Construction. Sections of counterweights, whether carried in frames or not, shall be secured by at least two tie-rods passing through holes in the sections. The tie-rods shall have locknuts at each end, secured by cotter pins.

4.3.18 Guide Rails and Fastenings

4.3.18.1 Material and Finish. Car and counterweights shall be provided with guide rails of steel or straight-grained seasoned wood free of knots, shakes, dry rot, and other imperfections.

Guide rails for sidewalk elevators shall be steel. The guiding surfaces of the guide rails for elevators equipped with car safeties shall be finished smooth.

4.3.18.2 Strength of Rails and Fastenings. Guide rails shall be securely fastened with through bolts or clips of such strength, design, and spacing that

(a) the guide rails and their fastenings shall not deflect more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) under normal operation

(b) the guide rails and their fastenings shall withstand the application of the safety, where provided, when stopping the car with rated load or when stopping the counterweight

4.3.18.3 Extension of Guide Rails at Top and Bottom of Hoistway. Car and counterweight guide rails shall rest on suitable supports and extend at the top of the hoistway

sufficiently to prevent the guide shoes from running off the guide rails in case the car or counterweight travels beyond the terminal landings.

4.3.19 Driving Machines and Sheaves

4.3.19.1 Factors of Safety. The factors of safety, based on static loads, to be used in the design of driving machines and sheaves shall be not less than 8 for wrought iron or wrought steel and 10 for cast iron or other materials.

4.3.19.2 Driving-Machine Brakes. Driving machines shall be equipped with a hand brake or an automatic brake operating in either direction of motion of the elevator, and capable of stopping and holding the car with its rated load. When the brake has been applied, it shall remain in the "ON" position until it is released by the operator.

4.3.20 Power Attachments

Power attachments are prohibited. Elevators shall not be equipped with any means or attachment for applying electric or other power unless the elevator is permanently and completely converted into a power elevator conforming to all requirements of this Code for electric or hydraulic elevators.

4.3.21 Layout Data

The information provided on layout data shall conform to Section 2.28.

4.3.22 Inspections and Tests

See Sections 8.10 and 8.11 for the testing requirements for hand elevators.

Part 5

Special Application Elevators

SCOPE

Part 5 applies to special application elevators as specified in the following requirements:

- (a) Section 5.1 applies to inclined elevators.
- (b) Section 5.2 applies to limited-use/limited-application elevators.
- (c) Section 5.3 applies to private residence elevators.
- (d) Section 5.4 applies to private residence inclined elevators.
- (e) Section 5.5 applies to power sidewalk elevators.
- (f) Section 5.6 applies to rooftop elevators.
- (g) Section 5.7 applies to special purpose personnel elevators in jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC.
- (h) Section 5.8 applies to marine elevators.
- (i) Section 5.9 applies to mine elevators in jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC.
- (j) Section 5.10 applies to elevators used for construction.
- (k) Section 5.11 applies to elevators used in wind turbine towers.
- (l) Section 5.12 applies to outside emergency elevators.

SECTION 5.1 INCLINED ELEVATORS

Section 5.1 applies to inclined elevators (see Section 1.3) at other than private residences.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to inclined elevators.

5.1.1 General Requirements

5.1.1.1 Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 5.1.2, Sections 2.1 through 2.13, and Section 2.29, except as modified by 5.1.1 through 5.1.6 and 5.1.8 through 5.1.10.

5.1.1.2 Machinery and equipment shall conform to Sections 2.14 through 2.28, 8.8, and 8.9, except as modified by 5.1.7 and 5.1.11 through 5.1.22.

5.1.2 Construction of Hoistway and Hoistway Enclosures

5.1.2.1 Fire-Resistive Construction. Hoistway enclosures shall conform to 2.1.1.1.

5.1.2.2 Non-Fire-Resistive Construction. Where fire-resistive construction of the hoistway is not required by the building code, the hoistway shall be enclosed as specified in 5.1.2.2.1 through 5.1.2.2.4.

5.1.2.2.1 Enclosures shall be of solid construction or openwork at least 2 140 mm (84 in.) high. If of openwork, it shall reject a ball 19 mm (0.750 in.) in diameter and be located a minimum 150 mm (6 in.) from the nearest moving component, or shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter and be located a minimum 914 mm (36 in.) from the nearest moving component. Areas of the enclosure located adjacent to landing entrances and entrances of openwork construction shall reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter. All enclosures shall be supported and braced so as to deflect not more than 50 mm (2 in.) when subjected to a force of 444 N (100 lbf) applied horizontally over any 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) area of the enclosure, and the running clearance shall not be reduced to less than 25 mm (1 in.).

5.1.2.2.2 Those portions of the hoistway where the lowest member of the guides or any moving component is at least 2 440 mm (96 in.) above the surface below shall not be required to have any enclosure. Adjacent hoistway enclosures shall be joined under the guides. The underside of any area of the hoistway that crosses any passageway, such as a pathway or roadway, shall be enclosed. The enclosure shall be of solid or openwork construction, shall be full width, and shall extend beyond the area of the passageway on each side a distance at least equal to one-half of the vertical distance between the lowest member of the guides and each edge of the passageway, respectively. If of openwork construction, it shall reject a ball 19 mm (0.75 in.) in diameter.

5.1.2.2.3 Structures used to support the hoistway, and located outside of the enclosure, shall be designed to protect against climbing.

5.1.2.2.4 Acrylics, laminated glass, or wired glass used for enclosures and doors shall be the following minimum thicknesses:

- (a) acrylics, 6 mm (0.250 in.)
- (b) laminated glass, 9.5 mm (0.375 in.)
- (c) wired glass, 6 mm (0.250 in.)

5.1.3 Pits and Work Spaces

5.1.3.1 Work Space Dimensions. If not otherwise provided by the pit design, each inclined elevator shall be provided with a work space below the guides extending to each side a minimum 450 mm (18 in.) beyond the running line of the car or counterweight with a length in the direction of travel not less than 1830 mm (72 in.) throughout the length measured from the top of the guides. Such work spaces shall be provided with stop switches and lighting conforming to 2.2.5 and 2.2.6 and shall be equipped with a convenience outlet. On exterior installations, these devices shall be weather-proof.

5.1.3.2 Pit and Work Space Water Removal. In addition to the requirements of Section 2.2, the means provided for the removal of water on exterior installations shall be ample for weather-caused water collection.

5.1.4 Counterweight Pit Guards

Requirement 2.3.2.1 does not apply.

5.1.5 Clearances for Cars and Counterweights

5.1.5.1 Bottom Car Clearances. Inclined elevators shall conform to 2.4.1 or be provided with one of the following refuge spaces:

- (a) a minimum of 610 mm × 610 mm × 2 134 mm (24 in. × 24 in. × 84 in.)
- (b) a minimum of 610 mm × 1 220 mm × 1 220 mm (24 in. × 48 in. × 48 in.)

The refuge space shall be clear of the car and counterweight resting on their fully compressed buffers. This space shall be located to either side of, or toward the downhill end of, the pit in the direction of travel.

5.1.5.2 Top Car Clearance for Uncounterweighted Inclined Elevators. The top car clearance for inclined elevators of less than 20 deg inclination from the horizontal shall include the gravity stopping distance based on 115% of rated speed plus the top car clearance required by 2.4.7.

5.1.6 Protection of Spaces in Line With the Direction of Travel

Section 2.6 applies, except that where it states “below the hoistway,” it shall mean “beyond the bottom terminal in the direction of travel.”

(a) Where 2.6.1 states “underneath,” it shall refer to the location beyond the bottom terminal in the direction of travel.

(b) Where 2.6.2 states “underneath,” it shall refer to the location beyond the bottom terminal in the direction of travel.

5.1.7 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms

5.1.7.1 Protection of Traveling Cables. Traveling cables shall be suitably protected against abrasion and fouling. This protection shall be permitted to be provided in conjunction with the protection required by 5.1.16.1.

5.1.7.2 Weatherproofing. Components subject to corrosion on installations exposed to the weather shall be weatherproofed with exterior coatings, anodizing, plating, galvanizing, noncorrosive metals, or other accepted forms of protection.

5.1.8 Protection of Hoistway Openings

5.1.8.1 Hoistway Door Vision Panels. Where the hoistway enclosure is not required to be fire-resistive construction (see 5.1.2.2), hoistway door vision panels are not required to conform to 2.11.7. The hoistway entrances of such elevators shall be permitted to be provided with larger vision panels, including complete door panels, made of any materials conforming to 5.1.2.2.4 and ANSI Z97.1; 16 CFR Part 1201; or CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, and CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable.

5.1.8.2 Landing-Sill Guards. When a car-leveling device is provided, the landing sills shall be guarded in conformance with 2.11.10.1. The guards shall also extend 75 mm (3 in.) beyond the horizontal leveling zone.

5.1.9 Reserved for Future Use

5.1.10 Access to Hoistways for Inspection, Maintenance, and Repairs

5.1.10.1 Hoistway Access Switches. Elevators installed conforming to 5.1.2.2 are not required to conform to 2.12.7, provided that

- (a) the means of access provides equivalent safety to that provided by 2.12.7
- (b) if the means of access includes entrance through the hoistway guarding, it is locked under Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1) and is equipped with a contact meeting the requirements of 2.26.2.26

5.1.10.2 Work Space Access. Where a work space is required by 5.1.3.1, access to the workplace shall comply with 2.12.7 or 5.1.10.1, except where a separate work space access door is provided.

5.1.10.3 Special Operating Requirements

5.1.10.3.1 The speed under 2.12.7.3.3(b) shall be not greater than 0.64 m/s (125 ft/min).

5.1.10.3.2 The movement of the car under 2.12.7.3.3(c) shall be limited to the point where the platform guard is even with the uphill edge of the open hoistway door.

5.1.10.3.3 The movement of the car under [2.12.7.3.3\(d\)](#) shall be limited to the point where the uppermost chassis member is even with the downhill edge of the open hoistway door.

5.1.11 Car Enclosures

5.1.11.1 Car Emergency Exits

5.1.11.1.1 Top Emergency Exits. Requirement [2.14.1.5](#) applies only where installations are at an angle greater than 49 deg and where an uphill end emergency exit is not provided.

5.1.11.1.2 Uphill End Emergency Exit. If the installation arrangement is such that the car door cannot be used for an emergency exit when the car is located between landings, the car shall be provided with an emergency exit located in the uphill end of the car. The emergency exit door shall

- (a) be the hinged type.
- (b) open only into the car.
- (c) extend from the floor or base moulding to a clear height not less than 1 524 mm (60 in.) and shall provide a clear width not less than 356 mm (14 in.) when the door is open.
- (d) be provided with a locking means with a nonremovable handle that can be opened only from the exterior of the car. The device shall be permitted to be openable from the interior of the car by use of a special key, which shall be Group 1 Security (see [Section 8.1](#)).
- (e) be provided with an electric contact, which shall not permit the car to start or run, except under inspection conditions as provided for in [5.1.10.1](#) and [5.1.10.3](#). The contact shall conform to the following:
 - (1) It shall not be accessible from the inside of the car.
 - (2) It shall be positively opened by a lever or other device attached to and operated by the door.
 - (3) It shall be maintained in the open position by the action of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or both, or by positive mechanical means.
- (f) be of the same material and construction as required for the car enclosure.

5.1.11.1.3 Emergency Exit Unloading Platforms. An emergency exit unloading platform is not required. If provided, an emergency exit unloading platform shall be attached to the car and shall be retractable and operable only from the exterior of the car. It shall be located only on the uphill end of the car and shall be provided with an electric contact conforming to [5.1.11.1.2\(e\)](#), which shall only be made in the retracted position of the platform.

5.1.11.2 Car Enclosure Tops. Requirement [2.14.1.6](#) does not apply. However, if equipment is placed or installed on inclined elevators that will require servicing from the top of the car or a car top emergency exit is provided, the car top shall conform to [2.14.1.6](#) and [2.14.1.7](#).

5.1.11.3 Glass and Plastic for Cars and Doors. Glass and safety plastic used in the car or for doors shall be one of the following:

- (a) laminated glass or safety plastic conforming to the requirements of ANSI Z97.1, 16 CFR Part 1201.1, or 16 CFR Part 1202.2
- (b) laminated glass, safety glass, or safety plastic conforming to the requirements of CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, or CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable

5.1.11.4 Restricted Opening of Car Doors. Inclined elevators shall conform to [2.14.5.7](#), except that the unlocking zone (see [2.12.1](#)) shall not exceed 152 mm (6 in.) beyond the landing measured in the direction of travel.

5.1.11.5 Collapsible Gates. Requirement [2.14.6.3](#) shall not apply. Collapsible-type gates are not permitted.

5.1.12 Car Frames and Platforms

5.1.12.1 Materials for Car Frames and Platform Frames. Car frames and platform frames shall conform to [2.15.6.1](#), except that cast iron shall not be used for guiding supports or guide shoes.

5.1.12.2 Platform Guards (Aprons). The entrance side of the platform shall be provided with smooth metal guard plates of not less than 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) thick steel, or material of equivalent strength and stiffness, reinforced and braced to the car platform and conforming to [5.1.12.2.1](#) through [5.1.12.2.5](#).

5.1.12.2.1 The guard shall extend not less than the full width of the widest hoistway door opening plus the leveling zone in each direction.

5.1.12.2.2 The guard shall have a straight vertical face in the direction of travel throughout the length described in [5.1.12.2.1](#) plus 75 mm (3 in.).

5.1.12.2.3 The ends of the guard in each direction of travel shall be bent back at an angle not less than 60 deg nor more than 75 deg from the face provided for in [5.1.12.2.2](#).

5.1.12.2.4 The straight vertical facing wall shall extend a minimum of 25 mm (1 in.) below the landing sills at any position above or below the landing to the extent of the leveling zones.

5.1.12.2.5 The guard plate shall be able to withstand a constant force not less than 667 N (150 lbf) applied at right angles to and at any position on its face without deflecting more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) and without permanent deformation.

5.1.12.2.6 Platform Stringers. Platform stringers made of wood are not permitted.

5.1.13 Capacity and Loading

5.1.13.1 Benches or Seats. The inside net platform area (see [Table 2.16.1.1](#)) shall be permitted to be increased by an amount not greater than 50% of the area of the bench or seat, when a permanently located and nonfolding bench or seat is installed.

5.1.13.2 Data Plates. Data plates shall be located on the uphill member of the car chassis (frame).

5.1.14 Car and Counterweight Safeties

5.1.14.1 Requirements for Safeties. Car and counterweight safeties shall meet the requirements of [Section 2.17](#), except as modified by [5.1.14.2](#), [5.1.14.3](#), [5.1.15](#), and [5.1.18.4](#).

5.1.14.2 Functions and Stopping Distance of Safeties. The safety device, or the combined safety devices where furnished, shall be capable of stopping and sustaining the entire car with its rated load from governor tripping speed (see also [2.16.8](#)) with an average horizontal retardation, measured over the total retardation time, not exceeding 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2).

Type B safeties shall stop the car with its rated load from governor tripping speed within range of the minimum and maximum stopping distances as determined by the formulas in [8.2.11](#). [Table 5.1.14.2](#) shows the minimum and maximum stopping distances for various governor tripping speeds, when tested in conformance with [Sections 8.10](#) and [8.11](#).

5.1.14.3 Limits of Use of Various Types of Safeties

5.1.14.3.1 Type A (Instantaneous) Safeties

(a) Type A safeties shall not be used on inclined elevators having a rated speed in excess of 0.64 m/s (125 ft/min) or with a governor tripping speed in excess of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

(b) Type A safeties that develop horizontal retardations exceeding 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2) shall not be used on inclined elevators.

5.1.14.3.2 Type C Safeties. Type C safeties shall conform to [2.17.8.2](#), except as modified by the following:

(a) Type C safeties that develop horizontal retardations exceeding 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2) shall not be used on inclined elevators.

(b) The oil buffers shall conform to all requirements specified in [Section 2.22](#) for oil buffers, except that the stroke shall be based on governor tripping speed and an average horizontal retardation not exceeding 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2).

5.1.15 Speed Governor Drive

5.1.15.1 Rope-Driven Governors. Rope-driven governors are not required.

5.1.15.2 Other Driving Means of Governors. The means used to drive the speed governor shall be positive and fail-safe.

5.1.15.3 Counterweight-Mounted Governor. Where a counterweight operates on guide rails, which are located below the car guide rails, and the governor, if required, is located on the counterweight, the overspeed switch shall be permitted to be omitted.

5.1.16 Suspension Ropes and Their Connections

5.1.16.1 Protection of Ropes. Suspension, governor, and compensation ropes shall be protected against abrasion.

5.1.17 Car and Counterweight Buffers

5.1.17.1 Type and Location. The maximum rated speed of inclined elevators for the use of spring-type buffers shall be 0.64 m/s (125 ft/min).

5.1.17.2 Spring Buffer Stroke. The stroke of a spring buffer shall be not less than as specified in [Table 5.1.17.2](#).

5.1.17.3 Vertical and Horizontal Components of Velocity. The speed shall be considered as having vertical and horizontal components defined as in [Figure 5.1.17.3](#).

5.1.17.4 Oil Buffers. Oil buffers shall conform to [2.22.4](#), except as modified by [5.1.17.4.1](#) through [5.1.17.4.5](#).

5.1.17.4.1 The average horizontal retardation at buffer engagement, with rated load in the car, measured over the stopping distance, shall not exceed 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2).

5.1.17.4.2 In [2.22.4.1.1](#), [2.22.4.1.2](#), and [2.22.4.2](#), the phrase "an average retardation of not more than 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2)" is replaced by the phrase "an average horizontal retardation not in excess of 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2)."

5.1.17.4.3 In [2.22.4.2](#), the phrase "peak retardation greater than 24.54 m/s^2 (80.5 ft/s^2)" is replaced by the phrase "peak horizontal retardation greater than 6.13 m/s^2 (20.1 ft/s^2)."

5.1.17.4.4 [Table 2.22.4.1](#) is replaced by [Table 5.1.17.4.4](#), which indicates the minimum buffer strokes for most usual rated speeds and selected angles of inclination.

5.1.17.4.5 The minimum buffer strokes for speeds differing from the values in [Table 5.1.17.4.4](#) shall be based on the formula in [8.2.10](#).

Table 5.1.14.2
Minimum and Maximum Stopping Distances at Given Angles From Horizontal

SI Units									
Rated Speed, m/s	Governor Trip, m/s	Minimum and Maximum Stopping Distances, mm, at Angle From Horizontal, deg							
		30		45		60		70	
		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
0-0.63	0.90	139	453	114	417	81	369	55	333
0.75	1.05	201	541	164	489	116	420	79	367
0.87	1.25	285	661	232	586	164	489	113	415
1.00	1.40	357	765	292	671	206	549	141	456
1.12	1.55	432	872	353	758	249	611	171	498
1.25	1.70	517	993	422	858	299	681	204	546
1.50	2.00	711	1270	580	1084	410	840	281	655
1.75	2.30	930	1584	760	1340	537	1022	368	780
2.00	2.55	1185	1948	967	1637	684	1232	468	923
2.25	2.90	1469	2355	1200	1970	848	1467	580	1084
2.50	3.15	1779	2798	1453	2331	1027	1723	700	1259
3.00	3.70	2494	3820	2036	3166	1440	2313	985	1663
3.50	4.30	3329	5015	2718	4141	1922	3003	1315	2134
4.00	4.85	4285	6382	3499	5257	2474	3792	1692	2674
Imperial Units									
Rated Speed, ft/min	Governor Trip, ft/min	Minimum and Maximum Stopping Distances, in., at Angle From Horizontal, deg							
		30		45		60		70	
		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
0-125	175	5.5	18.0	4.5	16.5	3.5	14.5	2.5	13.0
150	210	8.0	21.5	6.5	19.5	5.0	17.0	3.5	14.5
175	250	11.5	26.0	9.5	23.0	6.5	19.5	4.5	16.5
200	280	14.5	30.0	11.5	26.5	8.5	22.0	6.0	18.0
225	308	17.5	34.5	14.0	30.0	10.0	24.0	7.0	20.0
250	337	20.5	39.0	17.0	34.0	12.0	27.0	8.5	21.5
300	395	28.0	50.0	23.0	43.0	16.5	33.0	11.5	26.0
350	452	37.0	62.5	30.0	53.0	21.5	40.5	14.5	31.0
400	510	47.0	77.0	38.5	64.5	27.0	48.5	18.5	36.5
450	568	58.0	93.0	47.5	77.5	33.5	58.0	23.0	43.0
500	625	70.5	110.5	57.5	92.0	40.5	68.0	28.0	50.0
600	740	98.5	150.5	80.5	125.0	57.0	91.0	39.0	65.5
700	855	131.5	197.5	107.5	163.0	76.0	118.5	52.0	84.5
800	970	169.0	251.5	138.0	207.0	97.5	149.5	67.0	105.5

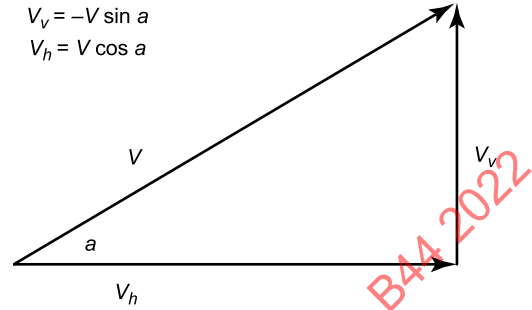
Table 5.1.17.2
Spring Buffer Stroke

Rated Car Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stroke, mm (in.)
Less than 0.38 (75)	63 (2.5)
0.38–0.63 (75–125)	125 (5.0)

Figure 5.1.17.3
Vertical and Horizontal Components of Velocity

$$V_v = -V \sin a$$

$$V_h = V \cos a$$



Legend:

a = angle of travel above horizontal
 V = linear velocity of elevator in direction of travel
 V_h = horizontal component of velocity
 V_v = vertical component of velocity

Table 5.1.17.4.4
Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes at Given Angle From Horizontal

SI Units						Imperial Units					
Rated Speed, m/s	Minimum Stroke, mm, at Angle From Horizontal, deg					Rated Speed, ft/min	Minimum Stroke, in., at Angle From Horizontal, deg				
	15	30	45	60	70		15	30	45	60	70
1.00	269	241	197	139	95	200	10.58	9.49	7.74	5.48	3.75
1.12	340	305	249	176	120	225	13.39	12.00	9.80	6.93	4.74
1.25	420	376	307	217	149	250	16.53	14.82	12.10	8.56	5.85
1.50	605	542	443	313	214	300	23.80	21.34	17.43	12.32	8.43
1.75	823	738	602	426	291	350	32.40	29.05	23.72	16.77	11.47
2.00	1075	964	787	556	380	400	42.32	37.94	30.98	21.90	14.98
2.25	1360	1220	996	704	482	450	53.56	48.02	39.21	27.72	18.96
2.50	1679	1506	1229	869	595	500	66.12	59.28	48.40	34.23	23.41
3.00	2418	2168	1770	1252	856	600	95.21	85.37	69.70	49.29	33.71
3.50	3292	2951	2410	1704	1166	700	129.60	116.19	94.87	67.08	45.89
4.00	4299	3855	3147	2226	1522	800	169.27	151.76	123.91	87.62	59.93

5.1.18 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

5.1.18.1 Guide-Rail Section. The guide-rail sections, in conjunction with the guiding members, shall be designed to retain the car and counterweights on the rails in case of upthrust or side thrust force, such as caused by foreign objects in or on the guide rail, or from the effects of wind, frost, or snow.

5.1.18.2 Maximum Load on Rails. On inclined elevators where a single system of guide rails or brackets is employed, the sum of the car and counterweight forces shall be used to determine the maximum acceptable rated load. The guide rails, guide-rail brackets, and their supports shall be capable of resisting the bending loads of a fully loaded car and its counterweight with a total deflection not in excess of 3 mm (0.125 in.).

5.1.18.3 Guide-Rail Surfaces. Guide rails shall conform to 2.23.6, except that guide rails for inclined elevators with Type A and Type C safeties shall not be required to have finished guiding surfaces.

5.1.18.4 Safety Guide Rail. A single guide rail shall be permitted to be provided for application of the safety and for lateral guiding. It shall be located between the main guide rails.

5.1.19 Driving Machines

Driving machines shall conform to Section 2.24, except as modified by 5.1.19.1.

5.1.19.1 Winding-Drum Machines. Winding-drum machines without counterweights shall be permitted to be used for inclined elevators when the net rated load (sine of the angle of inclination times the gross load) does not exceed 454 kg (1,000 lb), the distance of travel does not exceed 38 m (125 ft), and the rated speed does not exceed 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min).

5.1.20 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

5.1.20.1 Inspection Operation. Requirements 2.26.1.1 through 2.26.1.4 apply, except as referenced and modified in 5.1.20. Where "car top" is stated in 2.26.1.1 through 2.26.1.4, it shall also mean the uphill end emergency exit exterior inspection device location. Where an inspection operating device is located at the uphill exit, it is permitted to omit one on the car top.

5.1.20.2 Operating Requirements

(a) Requirement 2.26.1.3. The speed shall be limited to not exceed 0.64 m/s (125 ft/min).

(b) Requirement 2.26.1.4.1(d)(1). The speed shall be limited to not exceed 0.64 m/s (125 ft/min).

5.1.20.3 Top-of-Car Stop Switch. The top-of-car stop switch is not required except where access is provided to the top of car.

5.1.20.4 Machine Room Inspection. Machine room inspection shall not be provided.

5.1.20.5 Slack-Rope Device. Slack-rope devices shall be provided on traction driving machines of elevators having an inclination of less than 35 deg from horizontal. The devices shall be located on both the car and counterweight sides of the driving machine and shall conform to 2.26.2.1.

5.1.20.6 Horizontal Retardations at Emergency Electrical Stopping. Horizontal retardations induced on the car due to emergency stopping of an inclined elevator caused by the removal of electrical power shall meet the requirements of 5.1.20.6.1 and 5.1.20.6.2.

5.1.20.6.1 The average horizontal retardation, measured over the total retardation time, shall not exceed 0.98 m/s^2 (3.22 ft/s^2).

5.1.20.6.2 No peak horizontal retardation value exceeding 0.98 m/s^2 (3.22 ft/s^2) shall have a time duration exceeding 0.125 s.

5.1.21 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices

5.1.21.1 Emergency Signal and/or Communications. (22)

Each elevator shall be equipped with an alarm button or switch in the car operating station and an alarm device mounted in a location that shall be readily available to a person who is normally situated in the vicinity when the elevator is in use or with a means of voice communication to a receiving station that is always attended when the installation is in use. If the alarm device or means of voice communication is activated by normal building power, it shall be backed up by a manual device or a device powered by an auxiliary power supply.

5.1.22 End-Loading Inclined Elevators

5.1.22.1 Additional Requirements. Inclined elevators that load and unload passengers through car doors located at the uphill and downhill ends of the car shall conform to the additional requirements of 5.1.22.2 through 5.1.22.6.

5.1.22.2 Speed. The rated speed shall not exceed 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min).

5.1.22.3 Buffers. The buffers shall be oil type only, be installed at both terminals, and conform to 5.1.17.4.

Requirement 2.22.4.8 does not apply to end-loading inclined elevators. The buffer shall be compressed to within the overtravel distance when the car is level with the terminal landing. Each buffer shall be provided with a switch that shall prevent operation of the elevator by means of the normal operating device in the direction of

travel toward that buffer unless it has returned to at least 90% of its stroke.

5.1.22.4 Final Terminal Stopping Devices. The final terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.3.1 and 2.25.3.2, except for 2.25.3.2(a), and shall be located to operate within the reduced runby of end-loading inclined elevators.

5.1.22.5 Retractable Sills. End-loading inclined elevators shall be permitted to be equipped with a retractable sill conforming to the following:

(a) They shall be designed to function without creating any pinching or shearing hazards.

(b) They shall be equipped with return switches conforming to 2.25.2.1.1 and 2.25.2.1.3, which shall prevent operation of the car in the direction of travel toward that terminal unless the retractable sill returns to its normal position.

5.1.22.6 Locking Car Doors. Car door locking devices on end-loading inclined elevators shall conform to 2.14.4.2.

5.1.23 Special Requirements for Inclined Elevator Layout Drawings

The forces and loads covered by 2.28.1(b), 2.28.1(c), and 2.28.1(f) shall be calculated based on the angle of inclination from the horizontal.

SECTION 5.2 LIMITED-USE/LIMITED-APPLICATION ELEVATORS

This Section applies to limited-use/limited-application elevators (see Section 1.3).

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to limited-use/limited-application elevators.

5.2.1 Electric Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators

5.2.1.1 Construction of Hoistway and Hoistway Enclosures. The construction of hoistway enclosures shall conform to Section 2.1, except as modified by 5.2.1.1.1 and 5.2.1.1.2.

5.2.1.1.1 Requirement 2.1.1.4 does not apply. Elevators shall be installed in a single hoistway.

5.2.1.1.2 Requirement 2.1.3 applies only when a floor is provided at the top of the hoistway.

(a) Requirement 2.1.3.1.1. If a floor is provided, it shall be permitted to be wood.

(b) Requirement 2.1.3.2 does not apply. The floor shall be designed in accordance with other floors in the building. Where the machine is to be supported by the

machine room floor, the floor shall be designed in accordance with 2.9.4 and 2.9.5.

(c) Requirement 2.1.3.3. The floor shall be permitted to be of wood.

5.2.1.2 Pits. Pits shall conform to Section 2.2, except that 2.2.2.5 does not apply.

5.2.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights.

The location and guarding of counterweights shall conform to Section 2.3, except as follows: Where counterweight guards conforming to 2.3.2 are not provided, lightweight chains, approximately 600 mm (24 in.) long shall be attached to the bottom of the counterweight. These chains shall be spaced at 150 mm (6 in.) intervals to provide a warning to a person in the path of the descending counterweight.

5.2.1.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights. Bottom and top car clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to Section 2.4, except as specified in 5.2.1.4.1 through 5.2.1.4.4.

5.2.1.4.1 Bottom Car Clearance. Elevators shall conform to 2.4.1 or 5.2.1.4.2.

5.2.1.4.2 Alternative to Bottom Car Clearance Requirements. When the car rests on its solid bumper or fully compressed buffer, no part of the car or any equipment attached thereto shall strike the pit or any part of the equipment located therein.

5.2.1.4.2.1 Where a machinery space or control space is not located in the pit, a nonremovable means shall be provided to mechanically hold the car above the pit floor to provide an area in the pit for maintenance and inspection, conforming to the following:

(a) It shall hold the car at a height not less than 900 mm (35 in.) nor more than 2 000 mm (79 in.) above the pit floor and not less than 300 mm (12 in.) above the bottom landing sill, as measured from the underside of the car platform.

(b) The means shall be designed and constructed to stop and hold the car at governor tripping speed with rated load in the car.

(c) It shall not cause the stresses and deflections in the car frame and platform members and their connections to exceed the limits specified in 2.15.10 and 2.15.11.

(d) If the means does not automatically activate when the lowest hoistway door is opened with the car not at the landing

(1) it shall be capable of being operated without complete bodily entry into the pit.

(2) a sign conforming to ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.4, or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), shall be conspicuously displayed inside the hoistway, which shall include a warning that there is an insufficient bottom car clearance and instructions for operating the

device. The letters shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.) in height. The sign shall be made of a durable material and shall be securely fastened.

5.2.1.4.2.2 Where a machinery space or control space is located in the pit, 2.7.5.2 applies.

5.2.1.4.3 Top-of-Car Clearances. Top car clearances shall conform to 2.4.6 and either 2.4.7 or 5.2.1.4.4.

5.2.1.4.4 Alternative to Top-of-Car Clearances. In existing buildings where the top car clearance conforming to 2.4.7 cannot be provided, the following shall apply:

(a) When the car has reached its maximum upper movement, no part of the car or any equipment attached thereto, other than as permitted by (b), shall strike the overhead structure or any part of the equipment located in the hoistway.

(b) Nonremovable means, independent of the brake, shall be provided to mechanically and electrically prevent upward movement of the car to provide an area above the car for maintenance and inspection, conforming to the following:

(1) The means shall prevent upward movement of the car to provide a space complying with 5.2.1.4.5.

(2) The means shall be designed and constructed to stop upward movement of the car at governor tripping speed with and without rated load in the car.

(3) The means shall not cause the stresses and deflections in car frame and platform members and their connections to exceed the limits specified in 2.15.10 and 2.15.11.

(4) A sign conforming to ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.4, or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), shall be conspicuously displayed inside the hoistway, which shall include a warning that there is insufficient top car clearance and instructions for operating the means. The letters shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.) in height. The sign shall be made of a durable material and shall be securely fastened.

(5) The means shall be capable of being operated without complete bodily entry into the hoistway.

(6) The force to actuate the means shall not require more than 90 N (20 lbf).

(7) The top-of-car operating device shall not allow car movement until the means is actuated.

5.2.1.4.5 Space on Top-of-Car Enclosure

(a) An unobstructed horizontal area not less than 0.5 m² (5.4 ft²) shall be provided on top of the car enclosure. It shall measure not less than 600 mm (24 in.) on any side. This area shall be permitted to include the space used for the top emergency exit [see 2.14.1.5.1(f)]. The minimum vertical distance in the space between the top of the car enclosure and the overhead structure or other obstruction shall be not less than 1 100 mm (43 in.) when the car has reached its maximum upward movement.

(b) Any horizontal area above the car enclosure top and within the railing, if supplied, that could contain a circle with a diameter equal to or greater than 350 mm (14 in.) that does not have a vertical clearance of 1 100 mm (43 in.) when the car has reached its maximum upward movement shall be clearly marked. The marking shall consist of alternating 50 mm (2 in.) diagonal red and white stripes. In addition, when markings are provided, sign(s) with the words "DANGER LOW CLEARANCE" shall be prominently posted and shall be visible from the hoistway entrance(s). The sign(s) shall

(1) conform to the requirements of ANSI Z535.4 or CAN/CSA-Z321 (see Part 9)

(2) be made of durable material and be securely fastened

5.2.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to Section 2.5.

5.2.1.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways. The protection of spaces below hoistways shall conform to Section 2.6.

5.2.1.7 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms. Machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall conform to Section 2.7, except as modified by 5.2.1.7.1. Equipment shall be permitted to be located in rooms containing other equipment essential to the operation of the building.

NOTE: See 5.2.1.1.2 for floors of machine rooms and machinery spaces over or at the top of a hoistway.

5.2.1.7.1 Requirement 2.7.4.1 does not apply. The minimum headroom shall be 2 000 mm (79 in.).

5.2.1.8 Equipment in Hoistways, Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms. Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways, machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall comply with Section 2.8.

5.2.1.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to Section 2.9.

5.2.1.10 Guarding. The guarding of exposed auxiliary equipment shall conform to Section 2.10.

5.2.1.11 Protection of Hoistway Landing Openings. The protection of hoistway landing openings shall conform to Section 2.11, except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirement 2.11.2. Entrances shall be the horizontal slide or single-section swing type.

(b) Requirement 2.11.10.3 does not apply.

(c) Requirement 2.11.12 does not apply.

(d) Requirement 2.11.13.5 does not apply.

(e) Requirement 2.11.15.3 does not apply.

5.2.1.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches. Hoistway door locking devices, hoistway door and car door electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to [Section 2.12](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) Requirement [2.12.1.5](#) does not apply. Combination mechanical locks and electric contacts are not permitted.
- (b) Requirement [2.12.2.3\(a\)](#). Truck zoning devices are not permitted.
- (c) Requirement [2.12.3](#) does not apply.
- (d) Requirement [2.12.7.3.3\(b\)](#). The car cannot be operated at a speed greater than 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min).

5.2.1.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors. Power operation of hoistway doors and car doors shall conform to [Section 2.13](#) except that vertically sliding doors shall not be permitted.

5.2.1.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors, and Car Illumination. Car enclosures, car doors, and car illumination shall conform to [Section 2.14](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) Requirement [2.14.1.4](#). Cars shall not have more than one compartment.
- (b) Requirement [2.14.1.5](#) applies only where manual operation (see [5.2.1.28](#)) is not provided. If a top emergency exit is provided, it shall conform to [2.14.1.5](#).
- (c) Requirement [2.14.1.9.1\(c\)](#) does not apply. Equipment mounted to the car for freight handling shall not be permitted.
- (d) Requirement [2.14.3](#) does not apply.
- (e) Requirement [2.14.4.1](#) does not apply. An unperforated door shall be provided at each entrance to the car.
- (f) Requirement [2.14.4.4](#) does not apply.
- (g) Requirement [2.14.4.7](#) does not apply.
- (h) Requirement [2.14.4.9](#) does not apply.
- (i) Requirement [2.14.4.11\(b\)](#) does not apply.
- (j) Requirement [2.14.5.1](#) does not apply. There shall not be more than two entrances to the car.
- (k) Requirement [2.14.5.3](#) does not apply.
- (l) Requirement [2.14.5.7](#). The dimension for the unlocking zone (see [2.12.1](#)) shall be not more than the straight vertical face of the platform guard minus 75 mm (3 in.).
- (m) Requirement [2.14.6.4](#) does not apply. Folding doors are not permitted.

5.2.1.15 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to [Section 2.15](#), except as modified by [5.2.1.15.1](#) and [5.2.1.15.2](#).

5.2.1.15.1 Underslung or Sub-Post Frames. Requirement [2.15.4](#) applies, except the term “guiding surfaces” shall be substituted for the term “guide rails.”

5.2.1.15.2 Platform Guards. Requirement [2.15.9.2](#) does not apply. The platform guard shall have a straight vertical face, extending below the floor surface of the platform not less than the depth of the unlocking zone (see

[2.12.1](#)) plus 75 mm (3 in.) but in no case less than the maximum distance from the landing that it takes to stop and hold the car upon detection and actuation of the device as prescribed in [2.19.2](#).

5.2.1.16 Capacity, Loading, Speed, and Rise

5.2.1.16.1 Rated Load and Platform Area. The minimum rated load shall conform to [2.16.1](#), except as follows:

- (a) The maximum rated load shall not exceed 635 kg (1,400 lb).
- (b) The inside net platform area shall not exceed 1.67 m² (18 ft²).
- (c) Requirements [2.16.1.2](#) and [2.16.1.3](#) do not apply.

5.2.1.16.2 Capacity and Data Plates

- (a) Capacity plates shall indicate the rated load of the elevator in kilograms, pounds, or both.
- (b) Data plates shall conform to [2.16.3.2.2](#) and shall be located as required by [2.16.3.1](#).
- (c) The material and marking of plates shall conform to [2.16.3.3](#).

5.2.1.16.3 Additional Requirements for Passenger Overload. Elevators shall conform to [2.16.8](#).

5.2.1.16.4 Maximum Rated Speed. The rated speed shall not be more than 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min).

5.2.1.16.5 Maximum Rise. The maximum rise shall not be more than 7.6 m (25 ft).

5.2.1.17 Car and Counterweight. Car and counterweight safeties shall conform to [Section 2.17](#), except as modified by [5.2.1.17.1](#).

5.2.1.17.1 Application of Safeties. The force providing the stopping action shall conform to [2.17.9.4](#) or the following: Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in [2.23.3\(a\)](#) are used, the application of safety stopping forces shall not cause deformation of the guide-rail section upon whose dimensional stability the stopping capability is dependent.

5.2.1.18 Speed Governors. Speed governors shall conform to [Section 2.18](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) Requirement [2.18.2.1\(b\)](#) does not apply. The tripping speed shall not exceed 0.38 m/s (75 ft/min). On the breakage of the suspension means, the safety shall operate without delay and independently of the governor's speed action.
- (b) Requirement [2.18.4](#) does not apply.
- (c) Requirement [2.18.5](#). Governor ropes shall be not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter.

5.2.1.19 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall conform to [Section 2.19](#) and [5.2.1.19.1](#).

5.2.1.19.1 Marking Plate Requirements. The marking plate requirements in [2.19.3.3](#) shall include the maximum distance from the landing that it takes to stop and hold the car upon detection and actuation of the device as prescribed in [2.19.2](#).

- (22) **5.2.1.20 Suspension Means and Their Connections.** Suspension means and their connections shall conform to [Section 2.20](#), except as modified by [5.2.1.20.1](#) and [5.2.1.20.2](#).

5.2.1.20.1 Suspension Means. Suspension means shall comply with [2.20.1](#) or [5.2.1.20.1.1](#). Suspension means that have previously been installed and used on another installation shall not be reused.

5.2.1.20.1.1 Alternate Suspension Means. Aircraft cable rope of 7 × 19 construction, classified as MIL-DTL-83420M Spec, shall be permitted in those applications where aircraft cable rope is not subjected to crushing pressures, with the following exceptions permitted:

- (a) nonjacketed, carbon steel, tin- or zinc-coated (Type 1A) 7 × 19 construction (Section 3.4.3.3 of MIL-DTL-83420M Spec)
- (b) identifying color tracer filaments are not required (Section 3.6.2 of MIL-DTL-83420M Spec)

5.2.1.20.2 Factor of Safety. The factor of safety shall comply with [2.20.3](#) or [5.2.1.20.2.1](#).

5.2.1.20.2.1 Aircraft Cable Rope. Aircraft cable rope (see [5.2.1.20.1.1](#)) shall have a factor of safety of not less than 7.5.

5.2.1.21 Counterweights. Counterweights shall conform to [Section 2.21](#), except as modified by [5.2.1.21.1](#).

5.2.1.21.1 Independent Car Counterweights. Requirement [2.21.1.4](#) applies, except that the counterweight shall be permitted to use the same guide rails as the car.

5.2.1.22 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to [Section 2.22](#).

5.2.1.23 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings. Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, and fastenings shall conform to [Section 2.23](#), except as modified by [5.2.1.23.1](#) and [5.2.1.23.2](#).

5.2.1.23.1 Use of Common Guide Rails. The same set of guide rails shall be permitted to be used for both the car and the counterweight.

5.2.1.23.2 Guide-Rail Sections. Requirements [2.23.3\(a\)](#) and [2.23.3\(b\)\(1\)](#) do not apply. Guide rails, supports, joints, fishplates, and fastenings that do not conform to [Section 2.23](#) are permitted, provided that the strengths and stresses are consistent with [Section 2.23](#) for the loads imposed.

Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in [2.23.3\(a\)](#) are used

- (a) requirement [2.23.10.2](#) does not apply.
- (b) the rail joints shall be designed in accordance with [2.23.5.1](#) and shall adequately maintain the accuracy of the rail alignment.

- (c) the deflections shall comply with [Section 2.23](#). The allowable deflection of the guide rail shall be limited to prevent the safety device from disengaging the rail during the application of the load.

5.2.1.24 Driving Machine and Sheaves. Driving machines and sheaves shall conform to [Section 2.24](#), except for [2.24.1](#), [2.24.2.1](#), and [2.24.2.2](#). Driving machines and sheaves shall also conform to [5.2.1.24.1](#) through [5.2.1.24.3](#).

5.2.1.24.1 Type of Driving Machines. All driving machines shall be the traction type, except that winding-drum machines that do not have multiple cable layers on the drum shall be permitted for elevators, but they shall not be provided with counterweights.

5.2.1.24.2 Material and Grooving. Sheave material and grooving shall be subject to the following:

- (a) Sheaves and drums used with elevator wire rope [see [5.2.1.20.1\(a\)](#)] shall be metal and provided with finished grooves for ropes or shall be permitted to be lined with nonmetallic groove material.
- (b) Sheaves and drums used with aircraft cable rope [see [5.2.1.20.1\(b\)](#)] shall be metal and provided with finished “U” grooves that do not subject the rope to crushing pressure.

5.2.1.24.3 Minimum Pitch Diameter. Sheaves and drums used with suspension and compensating ropes shall have a pitch diameter not less than the following:

- (a) For all elevator wire rope, the diameter shall not be less than 30 times the diameter of the rope, where used with suspension ropes.
- (b) For all elevator wire rope, the diameter shall not be less than 30 times the diameter of the rope, where used with compensating ropes.
- (c) For 7 × 19 aircraft cable rope, the diameter shall not be less than 21 times the diameter of the rope, where used with either suspension ropes or compensating ropes.

5.2.1.25 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to [Section 2.25](#), except as follows:

- (a) Requirement [2.25.4](#) does not apply.

(b) If the driving machine is the winding-drum type, a lower final terminal stopping device shall be used in addition to the slack-rope switch, and two independent upper final terminal stopping devices shall be provided. A separate device shall be used to operate the lower final terminal and one upper final terminal stopping device. All final terminal stopping and slack-rope devices shall operate independently of one another. The power feed lines to the driving machine and brake shall be opened by one or both of the upper final terminal stopping devices and either the slack-rope switch or the lower terminal stopping device, or both.

(22) **5.2.1.26 Operating Devices and Control Equipment.** Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to [Section 2.26](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) Requirement [2.26.1.3](#) does not apply.
- (b) Requirement [2.26.2.5](#) does not apply.
- (c) Requirement [2.26.2.10](#) does not apply.
- (d) Requirement [2.26.2.12](#) does not apply.
- (e) Requirement [2.26.2.16](#) does not apply.
- (f) Remote interaction operation is prohibited (see [2.26.13](#)).

5.2.1.27 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices. Emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to [Section 2.27](#), except that Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation shall not be provided.

5.2.1.28 Manual Operation. Elevators shall be permitted to be arranged for manual operation in case of power failure. The manual operating device shall conform to the following:

- (a) It shall not be accessible from inside the car.
- (b) It shall not release the brake.
- (c) Upon removal of the device, the car shall not move.
- (d) It shall be actuated by mechanical means only.
- (e) Instructions shall be posted at or near the manual operating device.

5.2.1.29 Layout Data. The information provided on layout data shall conform to [Section 2.28](#).

5.2.1.30 Welding. Welding shall conform to [Section 8.8](#).

5.2.1.31 Identification. Identification shall conform to [Section 2.29](#).

5.2.2 Hydraulic Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators

Hydraulic limited-use/limited-application elevators shall conform to [5.2.1](#), except as modified by [5.2.2.1](#) through [5.2.2.15](#).

5.2.2.1 Bottom and Top Clearances and Runbys. Bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to [Section 3.4](#), except as follows:

(a) Bottom car clearances shall conform to [3.4.1](#) or [5.2.1.4.2](#).

(b) Requirement [3.4.2.1](#) does not apply. The bottom car runby shall not be less than 50 mm (2 in.).

(c) The top car clearances shall conform to [5.2.1.4.4](#) or [5.2.2.1.1](#).

5.2.2.1.1 Top-of-Car Clearances. The top-of-car (22) clearance shall conform to [3.4.4](#) and either [3.4.5](#) or [5.2.1.4.4](#).

5.2.2.2 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms. Machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall comply with [Section 3.7](#), except as modified by [5.2.1.7](#).

5.2.2.3 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to [Section 3.15](#), except as modified by [5.2.1.15.2](#).

5.2.2.4 Capacity and Loading. The capacity and loading shall conform to [Section 3.16](#), except as modified by [5.2.1.16.1](#) and [5.2.1.16.2](#). Requirement [5.2.1.16.3](#) does not apply.

5.2.2.5 Car Safeties, Counterweight Safeties, Plunger Grippers, and Governors. Car and counterweight safeties and plunger grippers shall conform to [Section 3.17](#), except as modified by [5.2.2.5.1](#).

NOTE: See also [5.2.1.18](#).

5.2.2.5.1 The safeties on roped-hydraulic elevators shall be operated by a speed governor, or, where an overspeed valve conforming to [3.19.4.7](#) is provided, the safeties shall be permitted to be operated by inertia.

Upon the parting of the suspension ropes, the safeties shall apply without appreciable delay and their application shall be independent of the location of the break in the ropes and shall be permitted to be accomplished by the use of restrained compression springs or by the action of gravity, or by both, or by positive mechanical means.

5.2.2.6 Hydraulic Jacks and Sheaves. Hydraulic jacks and sheaves shall conform to [Section 3.18](#). The reference in [3.18.1.2.1](#) to [Section 2.20](#) shall be modified by [5.2.1.20](#). The reference in [3.18.1.2.3](#) to [2.24.2](#) shall be modified by [5.2.1.24.2](#) and [5.2.1.24.3](#).

5.2.2.7 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings. Valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to [Section 3.19](#). Requirement [5.2.1.28](#) does not apply.

5.2.2.8 Counterweights. Counterweights shall conform to [Section 3.21](#).

5.2.2.9 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to [Section 3.22](#), except as modified by [5.2.1.22](#).

5.2.2.10 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Their Fastenings. Guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to [Section 2.23](#), except as modified by [Section 3.23](#) and [5.2.1.23.2](#).

5.2.2.11 Hydraulic Machines and Tanks. Hydraulic machines and tanks shall conform to [Section 3.24](#). Requirement [5.2.1.24](#) does not apply, except as modified by [5.2.2.6](#).

5.2.2.12 Terminal Stopping Devices. Requirement [5.2.1.25](#) does not apply. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to [3.25.1](#) and [3.25.3](#).

5.2.2.13 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. Requirement [5.2.1.26](#) does not apply. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to [Section 3.26](#).

5.2.2.14 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices. Requirement [5.2.1.27](#) does not apply. Emergency operations and signaling devices shall conform to [Section 3.27](#), except that Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation shall not be provided.

5.2.2.15 Layout Data. Requirement [5.2.1.29](#) does not apply. The information provided on layout data shall conform to [Section 3.28](#).

SECTION 5.3 PRIVATE RESIDENCE ELEVATORS

Requirements in [Section 5.3](#) apply to elevators installed in or at a private residence. [Section 5.3](#) also applies to similar elevators installed in buildings as a means of access to private residences within such buildings, provided the elevators are installed so that they are not accessible to the general public or to other occupants of the building. Elevators conforming to the requirements of [Part 2](#), [Part 3](#), or [Section 4.1](#), [Section 4.2](#), or [Section 5.2](#) are not prohibited from being installed in or at a private residence.

NOTE: See also [Part 8](#) for additional requirements that apply to private residence elevators.

5.3.1 Private Residence Electric Elevators

5.3.1.1 Construction of Hoistway and Hoistway Enclosures. The hoistway shall be solidly enclosed throughout its height without grillwork or openings other than for landing or access doors, except that any exterior windows within the hoistway shall be protected by metal grillwork. Grillwork shall reject a ball 76 mm (3 in.) in diameter and shall be securely fastened from the inside of the hoistway. Enclosures shall be of sufficient strength to support in true alignment the hoistway doors and gates and their locking equipment. The fire resistance rating shall be in accordance with the requirements of the

building code. Non-fire-resistive enclosures shall be permitted to be glass complying with [2.1.1.2.2\(e\)](#).

5.3.1.1.1 The enclosure shall be permitted to be omitted on the lowest landing served, provided the elevator

(a) does not open directly into a garage.

(b) has continuous-pressure operation.

(c) car platform is equipped with a device that, if the platform is obstructed in its downward travel by a force of 18 N (4 lbf) or more applied anywhere at its lower surface, will open an electric contact in the control circuit and thus stop the downward travel of the car within 75 mm (3 in.). The stroke of the device shall be not less than the stopping distance of the platform. This device shall be a type that will not reset unless it has been returned to its normal position. The elevator shall be permitted to operate in the up direction.

5.3.1.1.2 The enclosure shall be permitted to be omitted on the upper landing on continuous-pressure-operation elevators serving only adjacent landings (one-floor rise) conforming to one of the following:

(a) The floor opening at the upper landing is protected by a partial enclosure and gate at least 910 mm (36 in.) high with openings that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter, and the gate is provided with a combination mechanical lock and electric contact.

(b) The floor opening is provided with a vertically lifting hatch cover that is automatically raised and lowered vertically by the ascending and descending car, provided this cover meets the following requirements:

(1) It is fitted with guides to ensure its proper seating.

(2) It is designed and installed to sustain a total load of 3.6 kPa (75 lbf/ft²) or 135 kg (300 lb) at any one point.

(3) It is equipped with an electric contact that will prevent the upward travel of the car when a force of 90 N (20 lbf) is placed at any point on the top of the hatch cover.

5.3.1.2 Pits

5.3.1.2.1 Guarding of Pits. A pit provided in other than a fully enclosed hoistway shall be guarded by a solid enclosure at least 2130 mm (84 in.) high. The entrance shall be provided with a door conforming to [5.3.1.8](#). When the enclosure does not extend from floor to ceiling, only solid car doors or gates rejecting a 13 mm (0.5 in.) diameter ball shall be used.

5.3.1.2.2 Pit Maintenance. Where a pit is provided, it shall be kept clean and free from dirt and rubbish and the accumulation of water. It shall not be used for storage purposes.

5.3.1.2.3 Stop Switch in Pits. Stop switches conforming to [2.2.6](#) shall be installed in the pit of each elevator.

5.3.1.3 Top Car Clearance. The top car clearance shall conform to 5.3.1.3.1 through 5.3.1.3.3.

5.3.1.3.1 Top car clearance shall be not less than 150 mm (6 in.) plus 25 mm (1 in.) for each 0.017 m/s (3.3 ft/min) of the rated speed in excess of 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min).

5.3.1.3.2 When the car has reached its maximum upper movement, no part of the car or any equipment attached thereto, other than as permitted for the nonremovable means in 5.3.1.3.3, shall strike the overhead structure or any part of the equipment located in the hoistway.

5.3.1.3.3 Where bodily entry into the hoistway is required for inspection, testing, or maintenance, while power has not been disconnected from the elevator driving machine and/or brake, the top car clearance shall comply with 2.4.7, or a nonremovable means meeting the requirements of 5.2.1.4.4(b) shall be provided.

5.3.1.4 Horizontal Car Clearances

5.3.1.4.1 Between the Car and Hoistway Enclosures or Counterweight. There shall be a clearance of not less than 20 mm (0.75 in.) between the car and the hoistway enclosure, and between the car and its counterweight.

5.3.1.4.2 Between the Car and the Landing Sill. The clearance between the car platform sill and the landing sill shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.) nor more than 32 mm (1.25 in.).

5.3.1.5 Pipes and Other Equipment in Hoistways. Pipes conveying steam, gas, or liquids that, if discharged into the hoistway would endanger life, shall not be installed in the hoistway. Only machinery and equipment used directly in connection with the elevator shall be permitted in elevator hoistways.

5.3.1.6 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

5.3.1.6.1 Where elevator equipment is located in a room or space that contains other machinery and equipment

(a) the elevator equipment shall be guarded in conformance with 2.10.1. Where the guarding can be removed, a sign in conformance with the requirements of ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable, shall be located on or adjacent to the guarding warning of the potential hazards.

(b) pipes conveying steam, gas, or liquids shall be guarded or located to prevent discharge onto the equipment.

5.3.1.6.2 The motor controller and operation controller shall be located in a cabinet(s). The cabinet(s) shall be

(a) readily accessible for maintenance and inspection at all times.

(b) provided with a cabinet door(s) or panel(s) that is not self-closing and shall be kept closed.

Where the cabinets are located outside the hoistway or are accessible from inside the car, the cabinet door(s) or panel(s) shall be secured using Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1) lock(s) or tamper-resistant fasteners.

5.3.1.6.3 In machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms, and control spaces, all sheaves and sprockets shall be guarded to protect against accidental contact.

5.3.1.6.4 Maintenance Path and Clearance. A permanent and unobstructed path shall be provided to machinery spaces and control spaces. The path shall provide a clear width 450 mm (18 in.) minimum. Where elevator equipment is located in a room or space containing other machinery and equipment

(a) the elevator equipment shall be located to eliminate any obstructions that prohibit operating or servicing the equipment.

(b) if an obstruction does not prohibit the operation or servicing of the equipment but creates an interference with servicing the equipment, a sign in conformance with the requirements of ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable, shall be prominently posted at the entrance to the work space warning of the obstruction.

5.3.1.6.5 Temperature and Humidity in Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms. Temperature and humidity shall comply with 2.7.9.2.

5.3.1.6.6 Access Doors and Openings

(a) Access doors shall be

(1) kept closed and locked

(2) provided with a spring-type lock arranged to permit the doors to be opened from the inside without a key

(b) Access openings in elevator hoistway enclosures where full bodily entry is not necessary for maintenance and inspection of components shall be

(1) located to permit the required maintenance and inspection.

(2) a maximum width of 600 mm (24 in.) and a maximum height of 600 mm (24 in.). These dimensions shall be permitted to be increased, provided any resultant opening through the access opening into the hoistway shall reject a 300 mm (12 in.) diameter ball.

(3) provided with doors or panels that shall be kept closed and locked.

(c) Keys to unlock the access doors or openings shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

(d) Hoistway access doors or panels shall be provided with an electrical switch that shall cause the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake when opened.

5.3.1.6.7 Machinery Space or Control Space Within the Hoistway

(a) Where the machine is mounted in the hoistway, a means to move the car from outside the hoistway shall be provided. The means shall have a display device or equivalent to convey the following information about the elevator simultaneously:

- (1) the direction of travel
- (2) the arrival at a position within the door unlocking zone

The display device or equivalent shall remain operable during a failure of the normal building power supply. The power source shall be capable of providing for the operation of the display device or equivalent for at least 4 h.

(b) Where the controller is mounted inside the hoistway, it shall be located so that it can be inspected, tested, and maintained from inside the car or from outside the hoistway without full bodily entry into the hoistway.

5.3.1.6.8 Machine and/or Controller Mounted on the Car

(a) Where the machine or its controls are mounted on the car and are located so they can be inspected, tested, or maintained from inside the car, the car top clearance shall comply with 5.3.1.3.1.

(b) Where the machine or its controls are mounted on the car and are located so they can only be inspected, tested, or maintained from the top of the car while power is not disconnected from the elevator, the top car clearance shall comply with 5.3.1.3.3. A sign in conformance with the requirements of ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable, shall be prominently posted at the entrance to the work space warning of the hazard. A means to disable the landing stations shall be provided at the controller.

5.3.1.6.9 Lighting for Machine Rooms, Machinery Spaces, Control Rooms, and Control Spaces. Lighting in all machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms, and control spaces shall comply with 2.7.9.1.

5.3.1.7 Guarding of Suspension Means and Other Equipment

5.3.1.7.1 Suspension Means Passing Through Floors or Stairs. Ropes and chains passing through a floor or stairway outside the hoistway enclosure shall be enclosed with a solid or openwork enclosure. If openwork, the enclosure shall reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter. Means for inspection shall be provided. The floor openings

shall not be larger than is necessary to clear the suspension means.

5.3.1.7.2 Suspension or Support Means Having an Opening Facing Away From the Stair. Suspension or support means that operate within a guide or track whose segments total a minimum of 270 deg shall be considered suitably guarded, provided that the centerline of the opening in the guide or track is 180 deg from the closest point of the stair. See [Nonmandatory Appendix H, Figure H-1](#).

5.3.1.7.3 Remote Machine Rooms and Control Rooms or Remote Machinery Spaces. Where machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms, or control spaces are located remotely from the hoistway, any equipment passing through intervening spaces that poses a hazard shall be guarded to protect against contact.

Where the guarding can be removed, a sign in conformance with the requirements of ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable, shall be located on or adjacent to the guarding warning of the potential hazards.

5.3.1.8 Protection of Hoistway Openings

5.3.1.8.1 Hoistway Enclosure Provided. Where a hoistway enclosure is provided, landing openings shall be protected by swinging or horizontally sliding doors. The full height and width of the landing openings in solid hoistway enclosures shall be protected by solid swinging or horizontally sliding doors except

(a) for swing doors, the clearance between the door panel and the frame shall not exceed

- (1) 10 mm (0.375 in.) on the sides and top of the door
- (2) 13 mm (0.5 in.) at the bottom of the door

(b) for horizontally sliding doors, door panels shall

- (1) overlap the top and sides of the opening by not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.)
- (2) not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.) above the sill
- (3) have a clearance between the panel and the frame not exceeding 10 mm (0.375 in.)

The doors' fire-protection rating shall be not less than required by the building code (see [Section 1.3](#)). The doors shall be designed to withstand a force of 670 N (150 lbf) applied horizontally, in either direction, over an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) in the center of the doors without permanent displacement or deformation.

5.3.1.8.2 Clearance Between Hoistway Doors and Landing Sills. The distance between the hoistway face of the hoistway doors and the hoistway edge of the landing sill shall not exceed 19 mm (0.75 in.) for swinging doors and 57 mm (2.25 in.) for sliding doors.

5.3.1.8.3 Projection of Hoistway Doors or Gates Into the Hoistway. The hoistway face of the hoistway door or gate shall not project into the hoistway beyond the line of the landing sill. No hardware, except that required for door

locking and door operating or signaling devices, shall project into the hoistway beyond the line of the landing sill.

5.3.1.8.4 Locking Devices for Hoistway Doors and Gates. Hoistway doors or gates shall be provided with locking devices.

The locking device shall be a type that will either

(a) prevent car movement unless the door is locked in the closed position.

(b) permit the car to start if the door or gate is in the closed position but not locked, provided that the device stops the car if the door or gate fails to lock before the car has moved 150 mm (6 in.) away from the landing. The device shall also prevent the opening of the hoistway door or gate unless the car is within 150 mm (6 in.) of the landing.

The locking device shall conform to 2.12.4.

5.3.1.8.5 Opening of Hoistway Doors or Gates. Hoistway doors or gates shall be arranged so that it will not be necessary to reach behind any panel, jamb, or sash to operate them.

5.3.1.8.6 Hangers and Stops for Hoistway Sliding Doors. Means shall be provided to prevent a sliding hoistway door from disengaging from its track.

5.3.1.8.7 Access to the Hoistway for Emergency Purposes. Hoistway door unlocking devices shall be provided for all hoistway doors and gates, conforming to 2.12.6.

5.3.1.8.8 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Gates. Power opening shall be permitted for hoistway doors and gates and shall conform to 2.13.2.2.1 and 2.13.2.2.2. Power closing shall be permitted for hoistway doors and gates and shall conform to 2.13.3.2 through 2.13.4, and 2.13.6.

5.3.1.8.9 Landing-Sill Guards. Where the elevator is equipped with a two-way leveling device or anticreep device and the hoistway landing sill projects into the hoistway, a landing-sill guard shall be provided conforming to the following:

(a) It shall have a straight vertical face extending below the sill not less than the depth of the zone where the hoistway door is unlocked below the landing sill plus 50 mm (2 in.).

(b) It shall extend not less than the width of the clear car opening exposed to the landing sill.

(c) It shall be securely braced and fastened in place to withstand a force of 670 N (150 lbf) applied horizontally over an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) in the center of the guard without permanent displacement or deformation.

5.3.1.9 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

5.3.1.9.1 Car Enclosure

(a) *Car Enclosure Required.* Except at entrances, cars shall be enclosed on all sides and on the top. The enclosure shall be constructed of solid or openwork material that will reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter.

(b) *Securing Enclosures.* Car enclosures shall be secured in conformance with 2.14.1.2 and 2.14.1.3.

(c) *Glass, Plastic, or Acrylics in Elevator Cars.* Glass, plastic, or acrylics, where used in elevator cars, shall conform to the following:

(1) Glass shall meet the requirements of 2.14.1.8.

(2) Plastic or acrylic shall meet the requirements of ANSI Z97.1, 16 CFR Part 1201, or CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, and CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable.

(d) *Access Panels for Elevator Equipment Outside of the Car.* Equipment access panels in the car for access to equipment outside the car shall comply with 2.7.5.1.4.

(e) *Number of Compartments.* The car shall not have more than one compartment.

(f) *Car Top.* Where bodily entry onto the top of the car is required for inspection or maintenance, 2.14.1.6.1, 2.14.1.7.1, and 2.14.1.7.2 shall apply.

5.3.1.9.2 Car Doors and Gates. A car door or gate that, when closed, will guard the opening to a height of at least 1675 mm (66 in.) shall be provided at each entrance to the car. Car doors shall be permitted to be of solid or openwork construction that will reject a ball 75 mm (3 in.) in diameter.

Collapsible car gates shall be a design that, when fully closed (extended position), will reject a ball 75 mm (3 in.) in diameter.

(a) *Power Operation of Car Doors and Gates.* Power opening shall be permitted for car doors and gates, and shall conform to 2.13.2.1. Power closing shall be permitted for car doors and gates, and shall conform to 2.13.3 through 2.13.5, except 2.13.3.4 does not apply.

(b) *Car Door or Gate Locking Devices.* Where the hoistway enclosure is not continuous for the full travel of the car, the car door or gate shall be provided with a mechanical lock that will lock the car door or gate if the car is more than 150 mm (6 in.) vertically away from a landing.

(c) *Car Door or Gate Electric Contacts.* Every car door or gate shall be provided with an electric contact conforming to 2.14.4.2.3 and 2.14.4.2.7.

The design of the car door or gate electric contacts shall be such that for a sliding door or gate, the car cannot move unless the door or gate is within 50 mm (2 in.) of the closed position. If the door or gate swings outward to open, the car door or gate must be closed and locked before the car can move.

(d) Strength and Deflection of Doors, Gates, and Their Guides, Guide Shoes, Track, and Hangers

(1) Horizontally sliding car doors and gates shall be designed and installed to withstand a force of 335 N (75 lbf) applied horizontally on an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) at right angles to and at any location on the car door without permanent deformation. The deflection shall not exceed 19 mm (0.75 in.) and shall not displace the door from its guides or tracks. The force shall be applied while the door is in the fully closed position.

(2) Folding car doors shall be designed and installed to withstand a force of 335 N (75 lbf) applied horizontally using a 100 mm (4 in.) diameter sphere at any location within the folds on the car door without permanent deformation. The deflection shall not exceed 19 mm (0.75 in.) and shall not displace the door from its guides or tracks. The force shall be applied while the door is in the fully closed position.

5.3.1.9.3 Clearance Between Hoistway Doors and Car Doors or Gates. The distance between the hoistway face of the landing door and the hoistway face of the car door or gate shall conform to one of the following:

(a) *Power-Operated Horizontally Sliding Hoistway and Car Doors.* Where power-operated horizontally sliding hoistway and car doors are used, the measurement between the leading edge of the doors or sight guard, if provided, shall not exceed 100 mm (4 in.). If it is possible for a user to detach or disconnect either door from the operator (such as in the event of operator failure) and such detachment or disconnection allows the user to operate the door manually, (e) shall apply.

(b) *Swinging Hoistway Doors and Folding Car Doors.* Where swinging hoistway doors and folding car doors are used and both doors are in the fully closed position, the space between the hoistway door and the folding door shall reject a 100 mm (4 in.) diameter ball at all points.

(c) *Swinging Hoistway Doors and Car Gates.* Where swinging hoistway doors and car gates are used, the space between the hoistway door and the car gate shall reject a 100 mm (4 in.) diameter ball at all points.

(d) *Swinging Hoistway Doors and Power-Operated Horizontally Sliding Car Doors.* Where a car door(s) is power-operated and arranged so that the car door(s) cannot be closed until after the hoistway door is closed, and the car door(s) automatically opens when the car is at a landing and the hoistway door is opened, the measurement between the hoistway face of the hoistway door and the hoistway face of the car door at its leading edge shall not exceed 100 mm (4 in.). If it is possible for a user to detach or disconnect either door from the operator (such as in the event of operator failure) and such detachment or disconnection allows the user to operate the door manually, (e) shall apply.

(e) *Swinging or Horizontally Sliding Hoistway Doors and Manually Operated Horizontally Sliding Car Doors.* Where swinging or horizontally sliding hoistway doors and

manually operated horizontally sliding car doors are used and both doors are in the fully closed position, the space between the swinging or horizontally sliding hoistway doors and the manually operated horizontally sliding car doors shall reject a 100 mm (4 in.) diameter ball at all points.

5.3.1.9.4 Light in Car. The car shall be provided with (22) electric lighting, which shall

(a) be controlled by a switch located in the car and near the car entrance, or by automatic means in conformance with 2.14.7.2.2. The minimum illumination at the car threshold, with the door closed, shall be not less than 50 lx (5 fc).

(b) be provided with an auxiliary power source that will activate after normal car lighting power fails. The auxiliary power source is permitted to supply power to the normal car lighting fixtures or to independent lighting fixtures. The auxiliary power source shall be automatically activated and provide power for illumination for a minimum of 4 h.

(c) produce an intensity of illumination of not less than 2 lx (0.2 fc) measured at any point between 890 mm and 1 225 mm (35 in. and 48 in.) above the car floor and approximately 300 mm (12 in.) centered horizontally in front of a car operating panel.

5.3.1.10 Car Frames and Platforms

5.3.1.10.1 Car Frame

(a) *Where Required.* Every elevator shall have a car frame to which the suspension or support means and the safeties are attached.

(b) *Material Permitted.* Car frames shall be made of metal.

(c) *Factor of Safety.* The factor of safety shall be not less than 5 based on the rated load.

(d) *Use of Cast Iron.* Cast iron shall not be used in any member other than for guides or guide shoe brackets.

(e) *Location of Guiding Means.* Primary guiding means shall be attached to the car frame.

5.3.1.10.2 Platforms

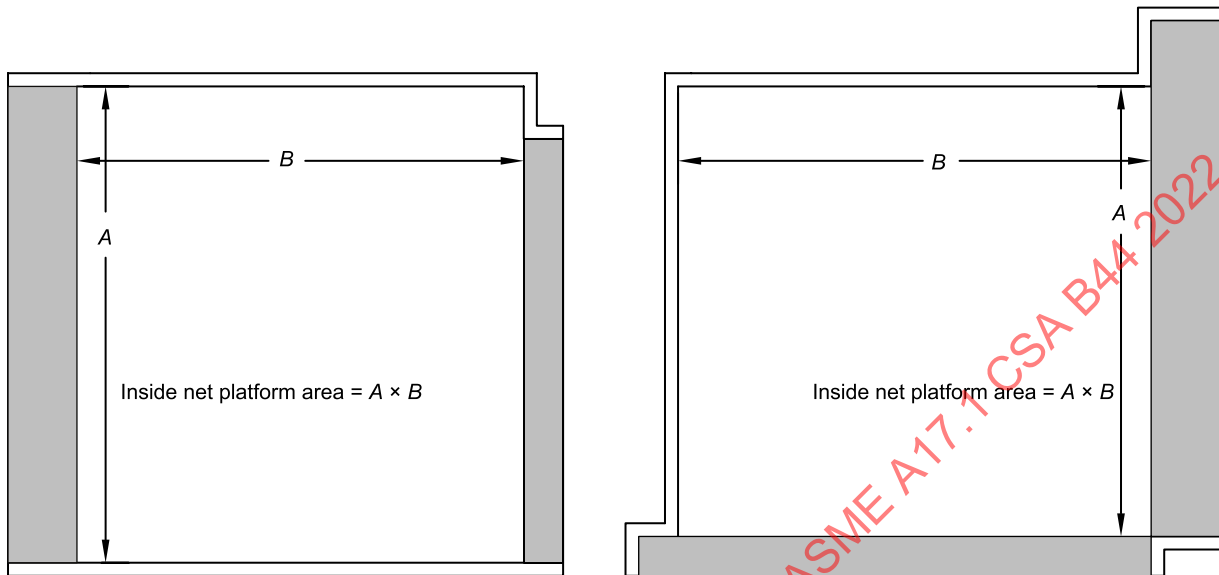
(a) *Construction.* Platforms shall be nonperforated metal or wood. If constructed of wood, they shall be laminated.

Platforms shall be supported by a platform frame or formed metal support pan attached to the car frame. Platforms and platform frame assemblies shall have a safety factor of 5.

(b) *Platform Guards (Aprons).* Where the elevator is equipped with a two-way leveling device, the entrance side(s) of the platform shall be provided with a guard conforming to 2.15.9, except that 2.15.9.2 does not apply. The platform guard shall have a straight vertical face, extending below the floor surface of the platform not less than the depth of the zone where the hoistway

Figure 5.3.1.11.1
Inside Net Platform Areas for Private Residence Elevators

(22)



GENERAL NOTE: Shaded area represents the space occupied by various doors or gates.

door is unlocked above the landing sill plus 50 mm (2 in.). The platform guard shall not strike the pit floor or any obstruction when the elevator is at its lowest point of travel.

5.3.1.11 Capacity, Loading, Speed, and Rise

- (22) **5.3.1.11.1 Capacity.** The inside net platform area shall be determined at a point 1 000 mm (39 in.) above the floor and inside of any panels or wall surfaces, but exclusive of any handrails and space for doors or gates as shown in Figure 2.16.1.1 for horizontal sliding car doors or as shown in Figure 5.3.1.11.1 for other car doors or gates. To allow for variations in car designs, an increase in the maximum inside net area not exceeding 5% shall be permitted.

The maximum inside net platform area shall not exceed 1.4 m^2 (15 ft^2). The minimum rated load shall be not less than the following:

- (a) For net platform areas up to and including 1.1 m^2 (12 ft^2), the rated load shall be not less than 195 kg/m^2 (40 lb/ft^2) or 159 kg (350 lb), whichever is greater.
- (b) For net platform areas greater than 1.1 m^2 (12 ft^2), the rated load shall be based on 305 kg/m^2 (62.5 lb/ft^2).

5.3.1.11.2 Speed. The rated speed shall not exceed 0.20 m/s (40 ft/min).

5.3.1.11.3 Rise. The rise shall not exceed 15 m (50 ft).

5.3.1.12 Safeties and Governors

5.3.1.12.1 Safeties Required. Each elevator shall be provided with a car safety as specified in 2.17.5. Where the space below the hoistway is not permanently secured against access, the counterweight shall be provided with a safety.

5.3.1.12.2 Operation of Safeties. The safety shall be the inertia, rack-and-pinion, or another type operated by the breakage of the suspension means or by the action of a speed governor. If the speed governor type, the governor shall operate the safety at a maximum tripping speed of 0.38 m/s (75 ft/min). On the breakage of the suspension means, the safety shall operate without delay and independently of the speed governor action.

5.3.1.12.3 Application of Safeties. The application of safeties shall conform to 2.17.9.1 through 2.17.9.3. The forces providing the stopping action shall conform to 2.17.9.4 or the following:

(a) Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used, the application of safety stopping forces shall not cause deformation of the guide-rail section upon whose dimensional stability the stopping capability of the safeties is dependent.

(b) Where the car safety is the rack-and-pinion type, it shall conform to 4.1.17.

5.3.1.12.4 Materials Used in Safeties. The minimum factors of safety and stresses of safety parts and rope connections shall conform to 2.17.12.

5.3.1.12.5 Location of Speed Governor. Where a speed governor is used, it shall be located where it is readily accessible from outside the hoistway and it cannot be struck by any moving object in normal operation or under conditions of overtravel, and where there is sufficient space for full movement of the governor parts.

5.3.1.12.6 Opening of the Motor and Brake Circuit on Safety Application. Where a speed governor is used, the motor circuit and the brake circuit shall be opened before or at the time that the safety applies.

5.3.1.12.7 Speed Governor Marking Plate. Where a speed governor is provided, a metal plate shall be securely attached to each speed governor and shall be marked in a legible and permanent manner with letters and figures not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height indicating the following:

- (a) the speed in meters per second (feet per minute) at which the governor is set and sealed to cause the governor to trip
- (b) the size, material, and construction of the governor rope
- (c) if the governor is the governor rope retarding type, the governor pull-through tension (force) in newtons (pounds-force)
- (d) the manufacturer's name or trademark
- (e) the statement "DO NOT LUBRICATE GOVERNOR ROPE"

5.3.1.12.8 Governor Ropes. The governor ropes, where used, shall be iron, steel, monel metal, or phosphor bronze not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter. Tiller-rope construction shall not be used.

5.3.1.13 Suspension Means

5.3.1.13.1 Types Permitted

(a) Suspension means shall be not less than two wire ropes or two steel roller-type chains conforming to ASME B29.1.

(b) Aircraft cable rope of 7 × 19 construction, classified as MIL-DTL-83420M Spec, shall be permitted in applications where aircraft cable rope is not subjected to crushing pressures. The following exceptions to MIL-DTL-83420M Spec are permitted:

- (1) nonjacketed carbon steel, tin- or zinc-coated (Type 1-A) 7 × 19 construction (Section 3.2.4 of MIL-DTL-83420M Spec)
- (2) identifying color tracer filaments are not required (Section 3.5.2 of MIL-DTL-83420M Spec)

5.3.1.13.2 Suspension Ropes. On elevators having a rated load of 230 kg (500 lb) or less and operating at a rated speed of 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min) or less, suspension ropes shall be not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter. Where the rated load exceeds 230 kg (500 lb) or the rated speed exceeds 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min), the ropes shall be not less than 9 mm (0.375 in.) in diameter.

5.3.1.13.3 Factor of Safety of Suspension Means. The factor of safety of the suspension means shall be not less than 7 for cars with less than or equal to 1.1 m² (12 ft²) of net platform area, and not less than 7.5 for cars with more than 1.1 m² (12 ft²) of net platform area, based on the manufacturer's rated breaking strength.

When the car and counterweight are suspended by steel ropes and the driving means is an endless steel roller-type chain, the factor of safety of the chain with the rated load in the car shall be not less than 8 based on the ultimate tensile strength.

5.3.1.13.4 Arc of Contact of Suspension Means on Sheaves and Sprockets. The arc of contact of a wire rope on a traction sheave shall be sufficient to produce traction under all load conditions up to rated load. The arc of contact of a chain with a driving sprocket shall not be less than 140 deg.

5.3.1.13.5 Spare Rope Turns on Winding Drums. The spare rope turns on winding drums shall conform to 2.20.7.

5.3.1.13.6 Securing of Wire Suspension Ropes to Winding Drums. The securing of wire suspension ropes to winding drums shall conform to 2.20.6.

5.3.1.13.7 Fastening of Wire Rope Suspension Means to the Car or to the Counterweight. The fastening of a wire rope suspension means to a car or to a counterweight shall conform to 2.20.9 or be accomplished by properly attached fittings as recommended by wire rope manufacturers.

5.3.1.14 Counterweights

5.3.1.14.1 General Requirements. Counterweights, where used, shall conform to the following:

- (a) Counterweights shall run in guide rails.
- (b) Where a car counterweight is used, it shall not be sufficient weight to cause slackening of any rope during acceleration or retardation of the car.
- (c) The counterweight sections, whether carried in a frame or not, shall be fastened together and shall also be secured to prevent shifting by an amount that will reduce the running clearance to less than 19 mm (0.75 in.) between the counterweight and hoistway.

5.3.1.14.2 Location and Guarding of Counterweights

(a) *Counterweight on Cars Operating Through Hatch Covers.* If a car operates through a hatch cover, the counterweight runway shall be enclosed throughout its height.

(b) *Counterweight Coming Down to Floors or Passing Floors or Stairs.* Where the counterweight runway comes down to a floor or passes floors or stairs, it shall be guarded to a height of at least 2 130 mm (84 in.) above the floor or the stair treads by a solid or openwork enclosure. Openwork enclosures shall reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter.

(c) *Access to Enclosed Counterweights and Ropes.* Access shall be provided for inspection, maintenance, and repair of an enclosed counterweight and its ropes. Doors on the counterweight enclosure shall be self-closing and self-locking and openable from the outside only with a suitable key. If the enclosure is such size that the door can be closed when the enclosure is occupied by a person, the door shall be easily openable from the inside without the use of a key or other instrument. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5 shall be located adjacent to and inside the opening and be operable without entering the enclosure.

5.3.1.15 Buffers and Buffer Supports

5.3.1.15.1 The car and counterweight shall be provided with spring, oil, or elastomeric buffers, except as specified in 5.3.1.15.3.

(a) Spring buffers shall be designed and installed so that they will not be fully compressed when struck by the car with its rated load or by the counterweight traveling at 125% of the rated speed, or at governor tripping speed where a governor-operated safety is used.

(b) Oil buffers shall comply with 2.22.4.

(c) Elastomeric buffers capable of absorbing the energy of a fully loaded car shall be permitted to be used. The average deceleration shall be less than 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) with any load between 61 kg (135 lb) and rated load.

The elastomeric buffers shall be marked with the manufacturer's recommended replacement criteria.

5.3.1.15.2 Car and counterweight buffer supports shall be of sufficient strength to withstand without failure the impact resulting from buffer engagement at 125% of the rated speed, or at governor tripping speed where a governor-operated safety is used.

5.3.1.15.3 Buffers shall be permitted to be omitted when the striking speed is 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min) or less if the space below the car and counterweight consists of a nonoccupiable area and the floor below the car and counterweight has sufficient strength to withstand, without failure, the impact of the car with rated load and counterweight descending at 125% of rated speed, or at governor tripping speed if a governor is provided.

5.3.1.16 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails and Guide Fastenings. Car and counterweight guide rails and their fastenings shall conform to 2.23.2, 2.23.5, 2.23.6, 2.23.8, and 2.23.9. Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used, the allowable deflection of the guide rail shall be limited to prevent the safety device from disengaging the rail during the application of the load.

5.3.1.17 Driving Machines, Sheaves, and Their Supports

5.3.1.17.1 Overhead Machinery Beams and Supports

(a) *Securing of Machinery Beams and Types of Supports.* All machinery and sheaves shall be supported and secured to prevent any part from becoming loose or displaced.

Beams supporting machinery shall be steel, sound timber, or reinforced concrete.

(b) *Overhead Beams and Their Supports.* Overhead beams and their supports shall be designed for not less than the sum of the following:

(1) the load resting on the beams and their supports, which shall include the complete weight of the machine, sheaves, controller, and any other equipment supported thereon

(2) the sum of the tension on all suspension ropes or chains times 2

(c) *Factor of Safety for Overhead Beams and Supports.* The factor of safety for overhead beams and supports based on ultimate strength of material shall be not less than 5 for steel and 6 for timber and reinforced concrete.

5.3.1.17.2 Driving Machines: General Requirements

(a) *Types of Driving Means.* The driving means shall be one of the following types:

- (1) traction
- (2) winding drum (see 5.3.1.17.3)
- (3) direct plunger hydraulic (see 5.3.2)
- (4) roped-hydraulic (see 5.3.2)
- (5) screw machine (see 5.3.1.17.4)
- (6) chain drive
- (7) chain-hydraulic (see 5.3.2)
- (8) rack-and-pinion

(b) *Material for Sheaves and Drums and Minimum Diameter*

(1) Winding drums, traction sheaves, and overhead and deflecting sheaves shall be metal and the pitch diameter shall be not less than one of the following:

(-a) 30 times the diameter of the wire suspension means

(-b) 21 times the diameter of the wire suspension means for 8×19 steel rope or for 7×19 aircraft cable allowed by 5.3.1.13.1

(2) The rope grooves shall be machined and designed to conform to 2.24.2.1 and 2.24.2.3.

(3) The factor of safety shall comply with 2.24.3.

(c) *Fastening of Driving Machines and Sheaves to the Underside of Overhead Beams*

(1) Overhead driving machines or sheaves shall not be fastened to the underside of the supporting beams, except for idlers or deflecting sheaves including their guards and frames.

(2) Cast iron in tension shall not be used for supporting idler and deflecting sheaves where they are hung beneath the beams.

(d) *Fastenings Transmitting Load.* Fasteners transmitting load shall conform to 2.24.4.

(e) *Friction Gearing, Clutch Mechanisms, or Couplings.* Friction gearings or clutch mechanisms shall not be used for connecting the drum or drive sheave to the main drive gear. Couplings shall not be used for connecting the output shaft to the main drive gear.

(f) *Use of Cast Iron in Gears.* Worm gearing having cast iron teeth shall not be used.

(g) *Driving-Machine Roller Chains and Sprockets.* Driving-machine chains and sprockets shall be steel and shall conform in all particulars of design and dimensions to ASME B29.1.

(h) *Driving-Machine Brakes.* Driving machines, except hydraulic driving machines, shall be equipped with electrically released, mechanically applied brakes conforming to 2.24.8. The operation of the brake shall conform to 2.26.8.

(i) *Manual Operation.* Private residence elevators shall be arranged for manual operation in case of power failure. The manual operating device shall conform to the following:

(1) It shall not be accessible from inside the car.

(2) It shall not release the brake.

(3) Upon removal of the device, the car shall not move.

(4) The device shall be actuated by mechanical means only.

(5) Elevators with hydraulic driving machines shall be provided with a manual lowering valve conforming to 3.19.4.4.

(6) Instructions shall be posted at or near the manual operating device.

(j) *Car-Top-Mounted Machine or Controller.* Where the machine or its controls are located on top of the car

(1) they shall be protected by a solid, noncombustible enclosure.

(2) the car top enclosure shall be designed and installed in conformance with 2.14.1.6.1 and 5.3.1.6.8.

(3) a top-of-car operating device shall be provided in conformance with 2.26.14.2.

(4) access shall be provided to the machine or its controls for maintenance. Access panels shall conform to 5.3.1.9.1(d) or 5.3.1.6.6.

5.3.1.17.3 Winding-Drum Machines. Winding-drum machines shall not be provided with counterweights.

5.3.1.17.4 Screw Machines. Screw machines, where used, shall conform to 4.2.15 and 4.2.20, except that the rated speed shall not exceed 0.20 m/s (40 ft/min).

5.3.1.17.5 Traction Machines. Traction machines shall be provided with a suspension means retainer or restraint on the drive sheave conforming to one of the following:

(a) *Suspension Means Retainers.* Suspension means retainers shall be continuous over not less than two-thirds of the arc of contact between the suspension means and its sheave or drum and shall be located so that not more than one-sixth of the arc of contact is exposed at each end of the retainer. For double-wrap traction applications, the arc of contact for sheaves or drums shall be the length of arc that is uninterrupted by the entry/exit of the suspension means leading to/from the car or counterweight.

(b) *Suspension Means Restraints.* One suspension means restraint, where the arc of contact is 30 deg or less, shall be located at the midpoint of the arc of contact; where the arc of contact exceeds 30 deg, suspension means restraints shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 30 deg of arc along the arc of contact and at each end of the arc of contact.

5.3.1.18 Terminal Stopping Devices

5.3.1.18.1 Stopping Devices Required

(a) Upper and lower normal terminal stopping devices operated by the car shall be provided and shall be set to stop the car at or near the upper and lower terminal landings.

(b) Upper and lower final terminal stopping devices operated by the car to remove power from the motor and the brake shall be provided. They shall be set to stop the car after it travels past the normal terminal stopping device and before an obstruction is struck.

A slack-rope switch conforming to 2.26.2.1 shall be permitted to be used as the lower final terminal stopping device.

(c) If the driving machine is the winding-drum or sprocket-and-chain-suspension type

(1) a final terminal stopping device operated by the driving machine shall also be provided.

(2) driving-machine-operated final terminal stopping devices are not required when a lower final terminal stopping device is used in addition to the slack-rope switch and two independent upper final terminal stopping devices are provided. A separate device shall be used to operate the lower final terminal device and one upper final terminal stopping device. All final terminal stopping and slack-rope devices shall operate independently of one another. The power feed lines to the driving machine and brake shall be opened by one or both of the upper final terminal stopping devices and either the slack-rope switch or the lower terminal stopping device, or both.

(3) indirect connections between the final terminal stopping device and the driving machine shall be designed to prevent slippage.

(d) Terminal stopping switches shall conform to 2.25.1.

5.3.1.18.2 Operation of the Stopping Devices. The final terminal stopping device shall act to prevent movement of the car in both directions of travel. The normal and

final terminal stopping devices shall not control the same switches on the controller unless two or more separate and independent switches are provided, two of which shall be closed to complete the motor and brake circuit in each direction of travel.

5.3.1.19 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

5.3.1.19.1 Type of Operation. The operation of the car shall be by continuous-pressure means or by automatic means.

(22) **5.3.1.19.2 Control and Operating Circuit Requirements.** The design and installation of the operating circuits shall conform to 5.3.1.19.2.1 and 5.3.1.19.2.2.

5.3.1.19.2.1 Design and Installation

(a) The completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to either interrupt the power to the elevator driving machine or brake at the terminal landings or to stop the car when any electrical protective device operates.

(b) If springs are used to actuate switches, contactors, or relays to stop an elevator at the terminal landings, they shall be the restrained compression type.

(c) The occurrence of a single ground; the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; the failure of any single solid-state device; or the failure of a software system shall not

(1) render any electrical protective devices ineffective

(2) permit the car to start if any hoistway door or car door or gate is not in the closed position

(d) If an instantaneous reversible motor is not used, a protective device or circuit shall be provided to prevent the motor from continuing in the same direction if the reversing control is actuated.

5.3.1.19.2.2 Monitoring of the Car Door or Gate Switch Electric Contacts. The elevator controls shall be designed in such a manner that when the car stops at a floor and the landing door or gate and its related electric contact are opened and closed and the car door or gate switch electric contact(s) fails to open, the car shall not be permitted to respond to a call. The elevator shall only be permitted to answer calls if the landing door contacts are not cycled or if the landing door contacts are cycled and the car door or gate electric contacts have cycled at least once.

5.3.1.19.3 Key-Operated Switches. Any car exterior to a residence shall be operated by means of a key switch. Key-operated switches shall be the continuous-pressure spring-return type, and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination, with the key removable only when the switch is in the "OFF" position. The key shall be Group 4 Security (see Section 8.1).

5.3.1.19.4 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

(a) All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable.

(b) Electrical equipment shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked. CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 defines the scope and applicable requirements for this listing/certification.

(c) The installation of capacitors or other devices, the operation or failure of which will cause unsafe operation of the elevator, is prohibited.

5.3.1.19.5 Disconnecting Means. Where the (22) controller is located on the car, the disconnecting means shall be located adjacent to the controller. Auxiliary disconnecting means shall be provided at the main landing when the main line power disconnecting means is mounted adjacent to the controller on the car.

5.3.1.19.6 Phase Reversal and Failure Protection. If a polyphase alternating-current power supply is used, protection in conformance with 2.26.6 and 3.26.5 shall be provided.

5.3.1.19.7 Emergency Stop Switch. An emergency stop switch, conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c), shall be provided in every car and shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their openings shall not be solely dependent on springs.

5.3.1.19.8 Slack-Rope and Slack-Chain Devices for Winding-Drum and Roller-Chain-Type Driving Machines. Winding-drum machines with rope suspension shall be provided with a slack-rope device of the manually reset type that will remove power from the motor and brake if the car is obstructed in its descent and the hoisting ropes slacken.

Elevators with roller-chain suspension shall be provided with a slack-chain device that will remove power from the motor and brake if the car is obstructed in its descent and the suspension means slacken. This device need not be the manually reset type if the chain sprockets are guarded to prevent the chain from becoming disengaged from the sprockets.

5.3.1.19.9 Remote Operation Indicator. Where direct (22) observation of the elevator drive sheave, sprocket, or suspension means is not possible from the control room or control space, display devices shall be provided in the control room or control space. The devices shall convey the following information about the elevator simultaneously:

- (a) the direction of movement
- (b) the arrival at a position within the door unlocking zone

The display devices shall remain operable during a failure of the normal building power. The power source shall be capable of providing for the operation of the display devices or the equivalent for at least 4 h.

5.3.1.20 Emergency Signaling Devices

(22) **5.3.1.20.1 Two-Way Communications Means.** A two-way communications means permanently installed in the car shall be provided to summon personnel who can take the appropriate action 24 h each day. The two-way communications means shall not be transmitted to an automated answering device.

If the normal building power for the communications means fails, the communications means shall automatically transfer to an auxiliary power supply capable of providing service for at least 4 h.

(22) **5.3.1.20.2 Emergency Signaling Device.** An emergency signaling device operable from inside the car and audible outside the hoistway shall be provided. The operating means shall be labeled "ALARM" or with the appropriate symbol as defined in Table 2.26.12.1.

If the normal building power for the emergency signaling device fails, the emergency signaling device shall automatically transfer to an auxiliary power supply capable of providing service for at least 1 h.

5.3.1.21 Marking Plates

5.3.1.21.1 Capacity Plate. A capacity plate indicating the rated load of the elevator in pounds shall be furnished by the manufacturer and fastened in a conspicuous place inside the car. The letters and figures on such plates shall be not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height.

5.3.1.21.2 Data Plates. A data plate indicating the weight of the elevator, the rated speed, the suspension means, the manufacturer's name, and the date of installation shall be furnished by the manufacturer. This plate shall be installed in a conspicuous place in the machinery area. The letters and figures on such plates shall be not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height.

5.3.1.22 Maintenance Documentation

5.3.1.22.1 The owner shall be provided with an owner's manual documenting proper operation and the hazards involved in the operation and maintenance of the elevator. The maintenance shall include a Maintenance Control Program in compliance with Section 8.6. A copy of the owner's manual shall also be retained with the equipment and be readily available.

5.3.2 Private Residence Hydraulic Elevators

Machinery and equipment for private residence hydraulic elevators shall conform to 5.3.2.

5.3.2.1 General Requirements for Private Residence Hydraulic Elevators. Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction; cars; counterweights; safeties and governors; guide rails and fastenings; car and counterweight buffer; operating devices; and suspension means

shall meet the requirements of 5.3.1.1 through 5.3.1.17 and 5.3.1.19 through 5.3.1.21, except as modified in 5.3.2.

5.3.2.2 Driving Machines, Sheaves, and Supports for Direct-Plunger and Roped-Hydraulic Driving Machines

5.3.2.2.1 Direct-plunger, roped-hydraulic, and chain-hydraulic private residence elevator driving machines, sheaves, valves, supply piping, fittings, and tanks shall conform to Sections 3.18, 3.19, and 3.24, except as modified by 5.3.1.17.2 and 5.3.2.

5.3.2.2.2 A pressure switch shall be provided to remove power from the pump motor and the control valve unless there is positive pressure at the control valve.

5.3.2.3 Terminal Stopping Devices. Direct-plunger, roped-hydraulic, and chain-hydraulic private residence elevator terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 3.25, except as modified in 3.25.2.

5.3.2.4 Anticreep Leveling Devices. Each elevator shall be provided with an anticreep leveling device conforming to 5.3.2.4.1 through 5.3.2.4.7.

5.3.2.4.1 The anticreep leveling device shall maintain the car within 25 mm (1 in.) of the landing irrespective of the position of the hoistway door.

5.3.2.4.2 For electrohydraulic elevators, the anticreep leveling device shall be required to operate the car only in the up direction.

5.3.2.4.3 For maintained-pressure hydraulic elevators, the anticreep leveling device shall be required to operate the car in both directions.

5.3.2.4.4 The operation of the anticreep leveling device shall be permitted to depend on the availability of the main line power, provided that the main line power disconnecting means is kept in the closed position at all times, except during maintenance, repairs, and inspection. (22)

5.3.2.4.5 The anticreep leveling device shall be permitted to be rendered inoperative during recycling operation.

5.3.2.4.6 The following devices shall prevent operation of the elevator by the normal operating device and movement of the car in response to the anticreep leveling device:

- (a) low-pressure switch when required by 5.3.2.2.2
- (b) slack-rope switch when required by 3.18.1.2.5
- (c) platform switch when required by 5.3.1.1.1
- (d) hatch-cover switch when required by 5.3.1.1.2(b)
- (e) speed governor switch when required by 5.3.1.12.6

5.3.2.4.7 The following devices shall prevent the operation of the elevator by the normal operating device, but the anticreep leveling device shall remain operable:

- (a) hoistway door locking device when required by 5.3.1.8.4
- (b) car door or gate electric contacts when required by 5.3.1.9.2(c)
- (c) emergency stop switch when required by 5.3.1.19.7

SECTION 5.4 PRIVATE RESIDENCE INCLINED ELEVATORS

Section 5.4 applies to inclined elevators installed in or at a private residence. Section 5.4 also applies to similar elevators installed in buildings as a means of access to private residences within such buildings, provided the inclined elevators are installed so that they are not accessible to the general public or other occupants of the building. Inclined elevators conforming to the requirements of Section 5.1 are not prohibited from being installed in or at a private residence.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to private residence inclined elevators.

5.4.1 Runway Protection

If the car sides extend less than 1 825 mm (72 in.) above the floor of the car, there shall be no obstruction along the runway, within the arc formed by a 600 mm (24 in.) radius whose center is the outer corner of the top rail of the car enclosure.

When solid guards are installed on the obstruction in both directions of travel, which project at least 350 mm (14 in.) in line with the direction of travel, the running clearance shall be permitted to be reduced to 175 mm (7 in.). The exposed edge of the guard shall be rounded to eliminate shear hazards.

5.4.2 Landing Enclosures and Gates (Where Required)

5.4.2.1 Landing Enclosures. Where a landing platform is provided or if a portion of an existing structure is used as a landing platform, it shall be protected by an enclosure not less than 915 mm (36 in.) high.

5.4.2.2 Landing Gates. The opening in the enclosure shall be guarded by a gate to a height equal to that of the enclosure. The gates shall be permitted to be the horizontally sliding or the swinging type and shall be equipped with a combination mechanical lock and electric contact conforming to 2.12.4 and 5.3.1.8.4 through 5.3.1.8.7 where doors and gates exceed 915 mm (36 in.) in height.

5.4.2.3 Construction of Landing Enclosures and Gates. The landing enclosure and gates shall either be solid construction or openwork rejecting a 25 mm (1 in.) ball. A force of 670 N (150 lbf) applied at any area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) on the walls of the enclosure shall not reduce the running clearance below 19 mm (0.75 in.) nor cause a deflection exceeding 25 mm (1 in.).

5.4.2.4 Clearance Between Landing Doors or Gates and Landing Sills and Car Doors or Gates. Clearances shall conform to 5.3.1.8.2.

5.4.2.5 Horizontal Clearance Between the Car and Landing Sills. The horizontal clearance between the car and landing sills shall conform to 5.3.1.4.2.

5.4.3 Machinery Beams and Supports

5.4.3.1 Securing of Machinery Beams and Type of Support. All machinery and sheaves supports and machinery beams shall conform to 5.3.1.17.1.

5.4.3.2 Fastening of Driving Machines and Sheaves to the Underside of Beams. Fastening of driving machines and sheaves shall conform to 5.3.1.17.2(c).

5.4.3.3 Factor of Safety of Beams and Supports. The factor of safety for beams and their supports shall conform to 5.3.1.17.1(c).

5.4.4 Car Enclosures, Car Doors, and Gates

5.4.4.1 Car Enclosures

5.4.4.1.1 Car Enclosures Required. Except at the entrance, cars shall be enclosed on all sides to a height not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.).

5.4.4.1.2 Securing of Car Enclosures. Car enclosures shall be secured in conformance with 2.14.1.2 and 2.14.1.3.

5.4.4.1.3 Deflection of Car Enclosure Walls. The car enclosure walls shall be of such strength and designed and supported so that when subjected to a force of 334 N (75 lbf) applied horizontally at any point on the walls of the enclosure, the deflection will not reduce the running clearance below 19 mm (0.75 in.) nor to more than 25 mm (1 in.).

5.4.4.1.4 Platform Guards (Aprons). Requirement 5.3.1.10.1(b) applies, and the guard shall extend horizontally within the zone where the doors or gates are unlocked.

5.4.4.2 Car Doors or Gates

5.4.4.2.1 Doors or Gates Required. A car door or gate that, when closed, will guard the opening to a height of at least 1 070 mm (42 in.) or to the height of the car enclosure, whichever is greater, shall be provided at each entrance to the car. Through openings in car gates shall reject a ball 75 mm (3 in.) in diameter. The car door or gate shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with 5.3.1.9.2. Power operation shall be permitted for car doors and gates, and shall conform to 5.3.1.9.2(a).

5.4.4.2.2 Door or Gate Electric Contacts. Car doors or gates shall be provided with an electric contact conforming to 2.14.4.2.3 and 2.14.4.2.5.

5.4.4.2.3 Manual Operation. Car doors or gates shall be manually operated.

5.4.4.2.4 Latching of Swinging Gates. If the car gate is the swinging type, opening outward from the car, the electric contact required by 5.4.4.2.2 shall not close until the gate is securely latched.

5.4.4.3 Use of Glass or Plastics

5.4.4.3.1 Glass or plastics, where used in elevator cars, shall conform to the following:

- (a) Glass shall meet the requirements of 2.14.1.8.
- (b) Plastics shall meet the requirements of ANSI Z97.1; 16 CFR Part 1201; or CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, and CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable.

5.4.4.3.2 Glass or plastics shall be secured as required by 5.4.4.1.2.

5.4.4.3.3 Weatherproof Material. Materials shall be of a weatherproof type.

5.4.5 Car and Chassis Construction

5.4.5.1 Car and Platform. Inclined elevator cars shall have frames and platforms of metal or combination metal and wood, or other materials of equal strength. Car frames and platforms shall have a factor of safety not less than 5, based on the rated load; they should be suitably prepared and/or protected for exposure to the weather.

5.4.5.2 Chassis Construction. Inclined elevator chassis shall be constructed of metal, except for guiding members. Chassis shall have a factor of safety not less than 5, based on the rated load. The chassis-guiding members shall be retained and/or enclosed in guides or tracks in such a manner that the chassis cannot be derailed.

5.4.5.3 Use of Cast Iron. Cast iron shall not be used in the construction of any member of the car frame or chassis.

5.4.5.4 Number of Compartments. The car shall not have more than one compartment.

5.4.6 Capacity

5.4.6.1 Rated Load and Platform Area. The rated load and net platform area shall conform to 5.3.1.11.1.

5.4.6.2 Shelves or Benches. Shelves or benches permanently fixed to the car structure, which reduce the standing area of the platform, are permitted and shall not exceed 0.55 m^2 (1.8 ft^2). Fifty percent of the net area of shelves or benches shall be added to the standing platform area to calculate the net platform

area. Baskets, shelves, or other objects not necessary for operation of the elevator shall not protrude beyond the exterior of the car enclosure.

5.4.6.3 Rated Speed. The rated speed measured along the incline shall not exceed 0.38 m/s (75 ft/min).

5.4.7 Safeties and Governors

5.4.7.1 Car Safeties Required. Each inclined elevator shall be provided with a car safety capable of stopping and sustaining the car with rated load.

5.4.7.2 Operation of Car Safeties. The car safety shall be Type A, Type B, or Type C, as specified in 2.17.5, and shall be operated by a speed governor complying with the following requirements:

- (a) The governor shall be set to trip at not less than 115% nor more than 140% of the rated speed.
- (b) Type A safeties shall operate as required by 2.17.8.1.
- (c) Type C safeties shall operate as required by 2.17.8.2.

5.4.7.3 Counterweight Safeties. If the construction at the lower end of the rail is not at or below grade at the termination of the rail, counterweight safeties conforming to 5.4.7 shall be provided, except governor operation of the safeties is not required.

5.4.7.4 Location of the Speed Governor. The speed governor shall be located where it cannot be struck by the car or counterweight in case of overtravel and where there is sufficient space for full movement of the governor parts and it is accessible for examination.

5.4.7.5 Opening of Brake and Motor Control Circuits on Safety Application. Power shall be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake before or at the time the safety applies.

5.4.7.6 Governor Ropes. Governor ropes, where used, shall conform to 5.3.1.12.7.

5.4.7.7 Slack-Rope and Slack-Chain Devices for Winding-Drum and Roller-Chain-Type Driving Machines. Winding-drum and roller-chain-type driving machines shall conform to 5.3.1.19.8.

5.4.7.8 Application of Car Safety. The application of car safeties shall comply with 5.3.1.12.3.

5.4.7.9 Materials Used in Car Safeties. The minimum factors of safety and stresses of safety parts and rope connections shall conform to 5.3.1.12.4.

5.4.7.10 Corrosion-Resistant Bearings in Safeties. Materials used in safeties shall meet the requirements of 2.17.13.

5.4.8 Suspension Means

Suspension means shall conform to 5.3.1.13, except as modified by 5.4.8.1.

5.4.8.1 Types Permitted. Where the chassis is suspended from the driving machine by a wire rope or roller chain, a single suspension means shall be permitted to be used.

5.4.8.2 Factor of Safety of Suspension Means. The suspension means shall have a factor of safety not less than 8, based on the tension in the rope(s) or chain(s) when raising the car and its rated load. In no case shall the rated breaking strength of the rope(s) or chain(s) be less than 17 800 N (4,000 lbf).

5.4.8.3 Lengthening, Splicing, Repairing, or Replacing Suspension Means. No car or counterweight wire rope shall be lengthened or repaired by splicing. Broken or worn suspension chains shall not be repaired. If one wire rope or a chain of a set is worn or damaged and requires replacement, the entire set of ropes or chains shall be replaced. In the event that a worn chain is replaced, the drive sprocket shall also be replaced.

5.4.9 Counterweight Guiding and Construction

Counterweight guiding and construction shall conform to 5.3.1.14.

5.4.10 Bumpers and Buffers

5.4.10.1 Solid Bumpers. For rated speeds not exceeding 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min), if spring- or equivalent-type buffers are not used, solid bumpers shall be installed.

5.4.10.2 Construction and Requirements for Solid Bumpers. Solid bumpers shall be made of wood or other suitable resilient material of sufficient strength to withstand, without failure, the impact of the car with rated load or the counterweight, descending at 125% of the rated speed.

The material used shall be a type that will resist deterioration or be treated to resist deterioration.

5.4.10.3 Spring Buffers. For rated speeds exceeding 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min), buffers of the spring type shall be installed.

5.4.10.4 Construction and Requirements for Spring Buffers. Spring buffers shall be constructed to have a minimum stroke of 19 mm (0.75 in.) and a maximum stroke of 38 mm (1.5 in.) and shall not be fully compressed when struck by the car with its rated load or counterweight traveling at 125% of the rated speed.

5.4.11 Car and Counterweight Guide and Track Supports and Fastenings

Car and counterweight guide, track, and track supports and fastenings shall conform to 5.3.1.16. All supporting structures shall meet the requirements of the applicable building code.

5.4.12 Driving Machines and Sheaves

5.4.12.1 Driving machines and sheaves shall conform to 5.3.1.17.2 through 5.3.1.17.5.

5.4.12.2 Location of Driving Machine, Alignment, and Guarding of Sheaves. The driving machine shall be permitted to be mounted on the car chassis or placed at a remote location. If remotely located, all intervening sheaves or sprockets shall be placed to ensure that ropes or chains travel in proper alignment. All sheaves or sprockets shall be guarded.

5.4.12.3 Manual Operation. Manual operation shall conform to 5.3.1.17.2(i).

5.4.13 Terminal Stopping Devices

Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 5.3.1.18.

5.4.14 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

5.4.14.1 Type of Operation. The inclined elevator shall be operated by weatherproof constant-pressure or momentary-pressure key switches at each landing and on the car. Key-operated switches shall be the spring-return type and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination with the key removable only when the switch is in the "OFF" position. The key shall be Group 4 Security (see Section 8.1).

5.4.14.2 Emergency Stop Switches in Cars. Emergency stop switches shall be provided in the cars and shall conform to 5.3.1.19.7.

5.4.14.3 Control and Operating Circuit Requirements. The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 5.3.1.19.2.

5.4.14.4 Hand Rope Operation. Hand rope operation shall not be used.

5.4.14.5 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

5.4.14.5.1 Electrical Equipment and Wiring Requirements. Requirements 5.3.1.19.4 through 5.3.1.19.6 apply.

5.4.14.5.2 Electrical Connections. If the driving machine is mounted on the car chassis, electrical connections between the car and power source shall be provided with a means to remove power if the connecting traveling cable parts. All electrical connections to the moving chassis and the stationary connections shall be insulated flexible conductors, in accordance with NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

5.4.14.5.3 Traveling Cables. Traveling cables shall be Type EO, Type ETT, or Type ETP and shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Where traveling cable voltage

exceeds 30 V, a means shall be provided to remove the power automatically upon parting of the traveling cable.

5.4.15 Marking Plates

Capacity, data, and Code Data Plates shall be provided as required in 5.3.1.21.1, 5.3.1.21.2, and Section 8.9. All plates shall be weather resistant.

SECTION 5.5 POWER SIDEWALK ELEVATORS

Section 5.5 applies to power sidewalk elevators. Requirement 5.5.1 applies to electric elevators. Requirement 5.5.2 applies to direct-plunger hydraulic elevators.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to power sidewalk elevators.

5.5.1 Electric Sidewalk Elevators

5.5.1.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures. The construction of hoistway enclosures shall conform to Section 2.1, except as modified by the following:

- (a) Requirement 2.1.1.1. Hoistways are not required to be enclosed above the top landing.
- (b) Requirement 2.1.1.3 does not apply.
- (c) Requirement 2.1.2.1 does not apply.
- (d) Requirement 2.1.3 does not apply.

5.5.1.2 Pits. Pits shall conform to Section 2.2. Means shall be provided to automatically remove water from the pit.

5.5.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweight. The location and guarding of counterweights shall conform to Section 2.3.

5.5.1.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys. Where a car top is provided, bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to Section 2.4.

Where no car top is provided, clearances and runbys shall conform to 2.4.1 through 2.4.4 and 2.4.9. When the car has reached its maximum upward movement, no equipment shall strike the overhead structure or other obstructions.

On elevators with vertical lifting covers, there shall be a clearance of not less than 600 mm (24 in.) between the top of the cover and any obstruction vertically above it when the car has reached its maximum upward movement.

The clearance required by 2.4.1 does not apply below underslung elevators with the car resting on its fully compressed buffers, when a refuge space not less than either of the following is provided:

- (a) a horizontal area 600 mm × 1 200 mm (24 in. × 48 in.), with a height of 600 mm (24 in.)
- (b) a horizontal area 450 mm × 900 mm (18 in. × 36 in.), with a height of 1 070 mm (42 in.)

5.5.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to Section 2.5, except as modified by 5.5.1.5.

For sidewalk elevators with adjacent openings, the maximum clearance required by 2.5.1.5 shall be permitted to be increased on the side where the overhead sheaves are located, provided that in such cases this clearance shall not be greater than that required for the installation of the sheaves or sheave beams plus running clearance of not more than 25 mm (1 in.).

5.5.1.6 Protection of Spaces Below the Hoistway. Where the hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building, it shall conform to Section 2.6.

5.5.1.7 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to Section 2.7.

5.5.1.8 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms. Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways and machine rooms shall conform to Section 2.8 and 5.5.1.8.1 through 5.5.1.8.3.

5.5.1.8.1 Slack-rope switches (where required), lower normal and final terminal stopping devices, and pit stop switches shall be located not less than 600 mm (24 in.) above the pit floor.

5.5.1.8.2 All electrical equipment in the hoistway shall be weatherproof.

5.5.1.8.3 Electrical metallic tubing (EMT) shall not be used.

5.5.1.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to Section 2.9.

5.5.1.10 Guarding. The guarding of exposed auxiliary equipment shall conform to Section 2.10.

5.5.1.11 Protection of Hoistway Landing Openings

5.5.1.11.1 Vertical Openings. Vertical hoistway landing openings shall conform to Section 2.11, except that 2.11.2.1 does not apply.

5.5.1.11.2 Horizontal Openings in Sidewalks and Other Areas Exterior to the Building

(a) The clear opening in a sidewalk that is accessible to the general public when the sidewalk door or cover is open shall be such that the sidewalk permits a minimum 1 200 mm (48 in.) wide unobstructed pedestrian path, which is not normally accessible to vehicular traffic.

(b) Hoistways shall not be located either wholly or partially in front of any entrance to a building.

(c) The side of the door opening nearest to any building wall or other obstruction shall be less than or equal to 100 mm (4 in.), or greater than 914 mm (36 in.), from the wall or obstruction.

(d) Horizontal openings in sidewalks or other areas exterior to the building shall be protected by hinged metal doors or vertically lifting covers having a nonslip upper surface. Such doors or covers shall not be used where the hoistway is located inside the building. Doors or covers shall be of sufficient strength to safely support a static load of not less than 1460 kg/m^2 (300 lb/ft^2), uniformly distributed.

(e) When in the closed position, doors shall be flush with the adjacent sidewalk or other surface.

(f) Such doors and covers shall conform to 5.5.1.11.3 or 5.5.1.11.4.

(g) All openings between sidewalk door panels and frames shall be provided with gutters to collect rainwater. The gutters shall be piped rigidly to a discharge point exterior to the hoistway and pit or to the sump pit when provided and designed in accordance with 5.5.1.2.

(h) When subject to vehicular traffic, the doors or covers shall be designed to safely support the loads likely to be imposed on them.

5.5.1.11.3 Hinged-Type Swing Sidewalk Doors

(a) The line of the hinges shall be at right angles to the building wall.

(b) There shall be a minimum clearance of 450 mm (18 in.) between the face of the doors and any obstruction when the doors are in the open position.

(c) The doors shall be opened by the ascending car and shall be self-closing as the car descends, and shall be kept in the closed position when the car is not at the top landing, except as provided for in (d).

(d) The doors shall be permitted to be held or fastened in the open position when the car is not at the top landing, provided self-closing hinged metal screen panels, which will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter and support a static load of not less than 1135 N (300 lbf) applied on any area 600 mm (24 in.) on a side and not less than 68 kg (150 lb) applied at any point, are installed directly below the watertight sidewalk doors. Screen panels shall be opened and closed automatically by the ascending and descending car and shall always be closed when the car is not at the top landing.

(e) Stops shall be provided to prevent the doors from opening more than 90 deg from their closed position.

5.5.1.11.4 Vertical Lifting Sidewalk Covers

(a) The covers shall be raised and lowered vertically by the ascending and descending car and shall not be held or fastened in the open position when the car is not at the top landing.

(b) Recesses or guides, which will securely hold the cover in place on the stanchions, shall be provided on the underside of the cover.

5.5.1.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches. Hoistway door locking devices, car door or gate electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to Section 2.12, except as modified by 5.5.1.12.1 through 5.5.1.12.3.

5.5.1.12.1 Requirement 2.12.1.1 does not apply.

5.5.1.12.2 Interlocks or electric contacts are not required on horizontal hinged-type swinging covers and vertical lifting covers used at the top landing in sidewalks or other areas exterior to the building. Locks, if used, shall be the spring type and shall be automatically unlocked by the bow irons or stanchions of the car, unless the locks are the type that permit operation of the elevators to open the cover only if the locking device is in the unlocked position.

5.5.1.12.3 Requirement 2.12.7. Hoistway access switches are not required for access to the top of the car.

5.5.1.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors. Power operation, power opening, and power closing of the hoistway doors and car doors or gates shall conform to Section 2.13.

5.5.1.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

5.5.1.14.1 Car Enclosures. Car enclosures shall conform to 2.14.1 and 2.14.3, except as modified by the following:

(a) Car tops are not required. Where provided, the distance between the top of the car and the bow iron or stanchions shall be not less than 1067 mm (42 in.).

(b) Requirements 2.14.1.5 and 2.14.1.6 apply only when a car top is provided.

(c) The height of the car enclosure required by 2.14.3.1 shall be permitted to be reduced when the height of the bow iron or stanchion is reduced as permitted by 5.5.1.15.2(a).

5.5.1.14.2 Car Doors and Gates. Car doors and gates shall conform to 2.14.4 and 2.14.6.

5.5.1.14.3 Illumination of Cars. Illumination of cars and lighting fixtures shall conform to 2.14.7, except as modified by the following:

(a) Lighting devices are not required in the car if there are lighting devices exterior to the car, which will provide the minimum illumination specified in 2.14.7.1.2(b) for the full travel of the car.

(b) Requirement 2.14.7.1.3 does not apply.

(c) Requirement 2.14.7.1.4 applies only where a car top is provided.

5.5.1.15 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to Section 2.15.

5.5.1.15.1 Car Frames and Platforms of Elevators Traveling Above the Level of the Sidewalk. Sidewalk elevators arranged to travel above the level of the sidewalk or other area exterior to the building shall conform to the following:

(a) Car frames of underslung rope-suspended-type elevators shall be of sufficient depth to provide the minimum vertical clearance between the car rope hitches or car sheaves and any obstruction in the hoistway vertically above them, as specified in 2.4.8, when the car floor is level with its upper landing level.

(b) The depth of the car frame and the length and spacing of guiding members shall conform to 2.15.4 and shall prevent tipping of the platform when it is at the highest upper landing level.

(c) The car platform shall be provided with metal aprons or guards on all exposed sides conforming to the following:

(1) They shall be made of metal not less than 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) thick.

(2) They shall have a straight vertical face flush with the outer edge of the platform having a depth of not less than the distance between the normal upper terminal landing level and the highest upper landing level plus 75 mm (3 in.).

(3) The lower portion of the guard shall be rounded or beveled at an angle of approximately 75 deg with the horizontal.

5.5.1.15.2 Bow Irons and Stanchions. Where hinged doors or vertically lifting covers are provided at the sidewalk or other exterior area, bow irons or stanchions shall be provided on the car to operate the doors or covers.

Bow irons and stanchions shall conform to the following:

(a) They shall be not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) high, except that this height shall be permitted to be reduced by an amount necessary to permit the doors or covers to close when the car is at the landing next to the top terminal landing.

(b) They shall be designed, installed, and braced to withstand the impact when striking the doors or covers.

(c) Bow irons shall be located approximately symmetrical with respect to the center of the car platform.

(d) Stanchions shall be framed together at their upper ends and provided with spring buffers at the top.

5.5.1.16 Capacity and Loading. Capacity and loading shall conform to Section 2.16, except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirement 2.16.1 does not apply.

(b) Requirement 2.16.4 does not apply. Sidewalk elevators shall not be permitted to carry passengers.

5.5.1.17 Car and Counterweight Safeties. Safeties shall conform to Section 2.17, except as modified by the following: Where the rated speed does not exceed 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min), car safeties that operate as a result of

breaking or slackening of the hoisting ropes shall be permitted to be used in lieu of governor-actuated safeties required by 2.17.7.1. The safety shall operate without delay.

5.5.1.18 Speed Governors. Governors, where provided, shall conform to Section 2.18.

5.5.1.19 Suspension Ropes. Suspension ropes shall conform to Section 2.20.

5.5.1.20 Counterweights. Counterweights shall conform to Section 2.21.

5.5.1.21 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to Section 2.22.

5.5.1.22 Guide Rails. Guide rails shall conform to Section 2.23.

5.5.1.23 Driving Machines and Sheaves. Driving machines and sheaves shall conform to Section 2.24, except that the ratio of the drum diameter to the rope diameter (see 2.24.2) shall be permitted to be reduced to 24.

5.5.1.24 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 2.25 (see also 5.5.1.8).

5.5.1.25 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. (22) Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to Section 2.26, except as modified by 5.5.1.25.1 through 5.5.1.25.5. Where the top opening is located in an area exterior to the building, all electrical equipment on the car shall be weatherproof.

5.5.1.25.1 Types of Operating Devices. Operating devices shall be the automatic or continuous-pressure type. Operation through openings in the sidewalk or other area exterior to the building shall conform to 5.5.1.25.2.

5.5.1.25.2 Operation Through Openings in the Sidewalk or Other Area Exterior to the Building. The operation of elevators through openings in the sidewalk, or through openings in other exterior areas, which are protected by hinged doors or vertically lifting covers, shall conform to the following:

(a) The elevator shall be operated through the opening, in both the up and down directions, only from the sidewalk or other exterior area or from on the car as permitted by (g) and at a speed not exceeding 0.13 m/s (25 ft/min). The operation shall be by means of one of the following:

(1) key-operated continuous-pressure-type up-and-down switches

(2) continuous-pressure-type up-and-down operating buttons on the free end of a detachable, flexible cord not more than 1 525 mm (60 in.) long

(b) Key-operated switches shall be the continuous-pressure spring-return type and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination with the key removable only when the switch is in the "OFF" position.

(c) Key-operated switches and plug receptacles for flexible cords shall be weatherproof and shall be installed above the sidewalk or other area on the side of the building wall, located 450 mm (18 in.) or less horizontally from one side of the opening.

(d) Operating buttons, if provided in the elevator car and at any landing below the top landing, shall operate the car only when the bow iron or stanchions are not in contact with the doors or covers in the sidewalk or other exterior area.

(e) When the bow iron or stanchions are in contact with the doors or covers at the sidewalk or other exterior area, it shall be possible to operate the car only by means of either the key switches or the continuous-pressure-type up-and-down buttons on the free end of the flexible cord specified in (a).

(f) Flexible cords and operating keys shall not be left where they are accessible to unauthorized persons for operation of the elevator.

(g) On sidewalk door openings protected by hinged doors and hinged metal screen panels, once the hinged sidewalk doors are in the full opened position, the elevator shall be permitted to be operated from on the car with the sidewalk doors in the full opened position subject to the following:

(1) The elevator shall be provided with self-closing hinged metal screen panels in accordance with 5.5.1.11.3 that cover the entire sidewalk opening.

(2) Where the side of the sidewalk door opening is more than 100 mm (4 in.) from any building wall or other obstruction, it shall be provided with a secured barrier that can be removed for loading and unloading the elevator at the sidewalk level and that shall be put in place to protect the sidewalk opening when the elevator is being operated from on the car below the sidewalk level. The secured barrier shall comply with 2.10.2.

(3) All of the required sidewalk-level barriers are in place and their proper placement has electrically enabled the car operating circuit.

5.5.1.25.3 Top-of-Car Operating Devices and Stop Switch. The requirement for a top-of-car operating device (see 2.26.1.4) applies only where a car top is provided. It shall operate the car at a speed not greater than 0.13 m/s (25 ft/min). It shall not operate when the bow iron or stanchions are in contact with the doors or covers in the sidewalk or other exterior area.

The requirement for a stop switch on top of the car (see 2.26.2.8) applies only where a car top is provided.

5.5.1.25.4 Maximum Rated Speed. Where the car is not fully enclosed, the rated speed shall not exceed 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min), except as required by 5.5.1.25.2(a) and 5.5.1.25.3.

Where the car is fully enclosed, there is no limit on the rated speed, except as required by 5.5.1.25.2(a) and 5.5.1.25.3.

5.5.1.25.5 Remote Interaction Operation. Remote interaction operation is prohibited (see 2.26.13).

5.5.1.26 Car Emergency Signaling Devices. If car operating buttons are provided, car emergency signaling devices shall be provided conforming to 2.27.1.1.1 and 2.27.1.2. If the rise is more than 7.6 m (25 ft), the signaling devices shall also conform to 2.27.1.1.2.

5.5.1.27 Layout Data. The information provided on layout data shall conform to Section 2.28.

5.5.1.28 Welding. Welding shall conform to Section 8.8.

5.5.2 Direct-Plunger Hydraulic Sidewalk Elevators

5.5.2.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction. Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 5.5.1.1 through 5.5.1.13 and 5.5.2.1 through 5.5.2.18, except 5.5.1.4 and 5.5.1.6.

5.5.2.2 Vertical Clearances and Runbys. Where a car top is provided, bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to Section 3.4.

Where no car top is provided, clearances and runbys shall conform to 3.4.1, 3.4.2.1, and 3.4.6.2. When the car has reached its maximum upward movement, no equipment shall strike the overhead structure or other obstruction.

5.5.2.3 Protection of Spaces Below the Hoistway. Where the hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building, it shall conform to Section 3.6.

5.5.2.4 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to Section 3.7.

5.5.2.5 Emergency Doors. The requirements for emergency doors in single blind hoistways apply only where a car safety is provided.

5.5.2.6 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination. Car enclosures, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to 5.5.1.14.

5.5.2.7 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to Section 3.15, 5.5.1.15.1, and 5.5.1.15.2.

5.5.2.8 Capacity and Loading. Capacity and loading shall conform to [Section 2.16](#), except as modified by [Section 3.16](#) and [5.5.1.16](#).

5.5.2.9 Car and Counterweight Safeties. Car safeties, where provided, shall conform to [5.5.1.17](#) and shall be the type that can be released only by moving the car in the up direction.

Counterweight safeties, where provided, shall conform to [3.17.2](#).

5.5.2.10 Hydraulic Jacks. Hydraulic jacks shall conform to [Section 3.18](#).

5.5.2.11 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings. Valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to [Section 3.19](#).

5.5.2.12 Counterweights. Where provided, counterweights shall conform to [Section 3.21](#).

5.5.2.13 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to [Section 3.22](#).

5.5.2.14 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings. Guide rails and their supports and fastenings shall conform to [Section 3.23](#).

5.5.2.15 Tanks. Tanks shall conform to [Section 3.24](#).

5.5.2.16 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to [Section 3.25](#) (see also [5.5.1.8](#)).

5.5.2.17 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

5.5.2.17.1 Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to [Section 3.26](#), [5.5.1.25.1](#), [5.5.1.25.2](#), and [5.5.1.25.4](#), and all electrical equipment on the car shall be weatherproof.

5.5.2.17.2 The requirement for a top-of-car operating device (see [3.26.2](#)) applies only where a car top is provided. It shall operate the car at a speed not greater than 0.13 m/s (25 ft/min). It shall not operate when the bow iron or stanchions are in contact with the doors or covers in the sidewalk or other exterior area.

5.5.2.17.3 The requirement for a stop switch on top of the car (see [2.26.2.8](#) and [3.26.4.1](#)) applies only where a car top is provided.

5.5.2.18 Layout Data. The information provided on layout data shall conform to [Section 3.28](#).

SECTION 5.6 ROOFTOP ELEVATORS

[Section 5.6](#) applies to rooftop elevators. Requirement [5.6.1](#) applies to electric elevators. Requirement [5.6.2](#) applies to direct-plunger hydraulic elevators.

NOTE: See also [Part 8](#) for additional requirements that apply to rooftop elevators.

5.6.1 Electric Rooftop Elevators

5.6.1.1 Construction of Hoistway and Hoistway Enclosures. The construction of hoistway enclosures shall conform to [Section 2.1](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) Requirement [2.1.1.1](#). Hoistways are not required to be enclosed above the rooftop landing.
- (b) Requirement [2.1.1.3](#) does not apply.
- (c) Requirement [2.1.2.1](#) does not apply.
- (d) Requirement [2.1.3](#) does not apply.

5.6.1.2 Pits. Pits shall conform to [Section 2.2](#). Means shall be provided to automatically remove water from the pit.

5.6.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights. The location and guarding of counterweights shall conform to [Section 2.3](#).

5.6.1.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys. Bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to [Section 2.4](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) [Table 2.4.2.2](#), maximum speed 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min). See [5.6.1.25.4](#).
- (b) Requirement [2.4.7](#) does not apply if the rise is 6.1 m (20 ft) or less. When [5.6.1.25.3](#) is required, the top-of-car clearance shall be measured to the underside of the roof door when the bow iron or stanchion is in contact with the door.

5.6.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to [Section 2.5](#).

5.6.1.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway. Where the hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building, it shall conform to [Section 2.6](#).

5.6.1.7 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to [Section 2.7](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) Requirement [2.7.3.2.2](#) does not apply.
- (b) Requirement [2.7.3.5](#) does not apply.

5.6.1.8 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms. Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways and machine rooms shall conform to [Section 2.8](#) and the following:

- (a) Slack-rope switches (where required), lower normal and final terminal stopping devices, and pit stop switches shall be located not less than 600 mm (24 in.) above the pit floor.
- (b) All electrical equipment in the hoistway shall be weatherproof.
- (c) Electrical metallic tubing (EMT) shall not be used.

5.6.1.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to [Section 2.9](#).

5.6.1.10 Guarding. The guarding of exposed auxiliary equipment shall conform to [Section 2.10](#).

5.6.1.11 Protection of Hoistway Landing Openings

5.6.1.11.1 Vertical Openings. Vertical hoistway landing openings shall conform to [Section 2.11](#).

5.6.1.11.2 Horizontal Openings in Rooftops

(a) The pedestrian path on a rooftop, when the door or cover is open, shall be such that it permits a minimum 1 200 mm (48 in.) wide unobstructed path that is not normally accessible to vehicular traffic.

(b) Hoistways shall not be located either wholly or partially in front of any entrance to a building or openable window.

(c) The side of the door opening nearest to any building wall or other obstruction shall be 100 mm (4 in.) or less, or greater than 900 mm (36 in.), from the wall or obstruction.

(d) Horizontal openings in rooftops shall be protected by hinged metal doors or vertically lifting covers having a nonslip upper surface. Doors or covers shall be of sufficient strength to safely support a static load of not less than 14.4 kPa (300 lbf/ft²), uniformly distributed.

(e) When in the closed position, doors shall be flush with the landing sill.

(f) Such doors and covers shall conform to [5.6.1.11.3](#) or [5.6.1.11.4](#).

(g) All openings between rooftop door panels and frames shall be provided with minimum 50 mm (2 in.) gutters to collect rainwater. The gutters shall be piped rigidly to a discharge point exterior to the hoistway and pit.

5.6.1.11.3 Hinged-Type Rooftop Doors

(a) There shall be a minimum clearance of 450 mm (18 in.) between the face of the doors and any obstruction when the doors are in the open position.

(b) The doors shall be opened by the ascending car, shall be self-closing as the car descends, and shall be kept in the closed position when the car is not at the top landing.

(c) Stops shall be provided to prevent the doors from opening more than 90 deg from their closed position.

(d) Means shall be provided at the meeting edge of biparting rooftop doors to collect and discharge rain water.

(e) The landing sill shall be substantially flush with the floor surface of the elevator landings.

5.6.1.11.4 Vertical Lifting Rooftop Covers

(a) The covers shall be raised and lowered vertically by the ascending and descending car and shall not be held or fastened in the open position when the car is not at the top landing.

(b) Recesses or guides, which will securely hold the cover in place on the stanchions, shall be provided on the underside of the cover.

(c) The landing sill shall be substantially flush with the floor surface of the elevator landings.

5.6.1.11.5 Setting of the Door. The door shall be set in the roof in such a manner that the upper surface of the rooftop door is at least 25 mm (1 in.) above the surface of the roof and pitched at the same angle. The edge around the rooftop door and the surface of the roof shall be such that a gradual change in surface height is provided.

5.6.1.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts and Hoistway Access Switches. Hoistway door locking devices, car door or gate electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to [Section 2.12](#) or [2.14.4](#), except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirements [2.12.2](#) and [2.12.3](#). Interlocks or electric contacts are not required on hinged-type swinging covers and vertical lifting covers used at the top landing in rooftops. Locks, if used, shall be the spring type and shall be automatically unlocked by the bow irons or stanchions of the car, unless the locks are the type that permit operation of the elevators to open the cover only if the locking device is in the unlocked position.

(b) Requirement [2.12.7](#). Hoistway access switches are not required for access to the top of the car.

5.6.1.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors. Power operation, power opening, and power closing of the hoistway doors and car doors or gates shall conform to [Section 2.13](#).

5.6.1.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination. Car enclosures, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to [Section 2.14](#), except as modified by [5.6.1.14.1](#) and [5.6.1.14.2](#).

5.6.1.14.1 Requirement 2.14.3.1. The height of the car enclosure shall be permitted to be reduced when the height of the bow iron or stanchion is reduced as permitted by [5.6.1.15.2\(a\)](#).

5.6.1.14.2 All electrical equipment on the car shall be weatherproof.

5.6.1.15 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to [Section 2.15](#), [5.6.1.15.1](#), and [5.6.1.15.2](#).

5.6.1.15.1 Platforms

(a) Car frames of underslung rope-suspended-type elevators shall be of sufficient depth to provide the minimum vertical clearance between the car rope hitches or car sheaves and any obstruction in the hoistway vertically above them, as specified in [2.4.8](#), when the car floor is level with its upper landing level.

(b) The depth of the car frame and the length and spacing of guiding members shall conform to 2.15.4 and shall be such as to prevent tipping of the platform when it is at the highest upper landing level.

(c) The car platform shall be provided with metal aprons or guards on all exposed sides conforming to the following:

(1) They shall be made of metal not less than 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) thick.

(2) They shall have a straight vertical face flush with the outer edge of the platform having a depth not less than the distance between the normal upper terminal landing level and the highest upper landing level plus 75 mm (3 in.).

(3) The lower portion of the guard shall be rounded or beveled at an angle of approximately 75 deg with the horizontal.

5.6.1.15.2 Bow Irons and Stanchions. Where hinged doors or vertically lifting covers are provided at the rooftop, bow irons or stanchions shall be provided on the car to operate the doors or covers. Bow irons and stanchions shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) They shall be not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) high, measured from the finished car floor, except that this height shall be permitted to be reduced by an amount necessary to permit the doors or covers to close when the car is at the landing next to the top terminal landing.

(b) They shall be designed, installed, and braced to withstand the impact when striking the doors or covers.

(c) Bow irons shall be located approximately symmetrical with respect to the center of the car platform.

(d) Stanchions shall be framed together at their upper ends and provided with spring buffers at the top.

5.6.1.16 Capacity and Loading. Capacity and loading shall conform to Section 2.16.

5.6.1.17 Safeties. Safeties shall conform to Section 2.17.

5.6.1.18 Governors. Governors, where provided, shall conform to Section 2.18.

5.6.1.19 Suspension Ropes. Suspension ropes shall conform to Section 2.20.

5.6.1.20 Counterweights. Counterweights, when provided, shall conform to Section 2.21.

5.6.1.21 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to Section 2.22.

5.6.1.22 Guide Rails. Guide rails shall conform to Section 2.23.

5.6.1.23 Driving Machines and Sheaves. Driving machines and sheaves shall conform to Section 2.24, except that on freight elevators, the ratio of the drum diameter to the rope diameter (see 2.24.2) shall be

permitted to be reduced to 24 for elevators with a rated load of 1 150 kg (2,500 lb) or less.

5.6.1.24 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 2.25 and 5.6.1.8.

5.6.1.25 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. (22) Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to Section 2.26, except as modified by 5.6.1.25.1 through 5.6.1.25.6.

All electrical equipment on the car shall be weatherproof.

Actuation of a landing call button when the car is at the roof level shall illuminate a visual “in-use” signal at the landing station at which the landing call was registered and sound an audible and visual alarm at the roof level. The audible alarm shall have a sound pressure rating not less than 80 dBA nor greater than 90 dBA at 3.05 m (10 ft).

Operation to the roof level shall be in accordance with 5.6.1.25.1.

5.6.1.25.1 Types of Operating Devices. Operating devices in the car and at the lower landing are prohibited on two-stop elevators.

5.6.1.25.2 Operation to the Roof Level. The operation of elevators shall conform to the following:

(a) The operation of elevators between openings in the roof, which are protected by hinged doors or vertically lifting covers, and the first landing below the roof level shall conform to one of the following:

(1) key-operated continuous-pressure-type up-and-down switches

(2) continuous-pressure-type up-and-down operating buttons on the free end of a detachable, flexible cord not more than 1 525 mm (60 in.) in length

(b) Key-operated switches shall be the continuous-pressure spring-return type and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination with the key removable only when the switch is in the “OFF” position. The key shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

(c) Key-operated switches and plug receptacles for flexible cords shall be weatherproof and shall be installed above the roof level, located within 1 525 mm (60 in.) horizontally from one side of the opening in such a manner that the opening is within clear sight of the operator.

(d) It shall be possible to operate the car only by means of either the key switches or the continuous-pressure-type up-and-down buttons on the free end of the flexible cord specified in (a).

(e) Flexible cords and operating keys shall not be left where they are accessible to unauthorized persons for operation of the elevator.

(f) Means of two-way communication shall be provided between the car, lower terminal landing, the first landing below the roof level, and the rooftop operating station.

(g) On multiple-stop elevators, the car operating panels shall only be operational for floors below the roof level.

5.6.1.25.3 Top-of-Car Operating Devices and Stop Switch. A top-of-car operating device shall not be provided if the rise is 6.1 m (20 ft) or less.

Top-of-car operating devices, when required, shall conform to 2.26.1.4.

A stop switch shall be provided on top of the car, conforming to 2.26.2.8.

5.6.1.25.4 Maximum Rated Speed. When the car bow iron or stanchion is in contact with the rooftop door or cover, the rated speed shall not exceed 0.13 m/s (25 ft/min).

When the car is fully enclosed, other than when it is running through the rooftop door or cover, there is no limit on the rated speed except as required by 5.6.1.25.2 and 5.6.1.25.3.

5.6.1.25.5 Operation to the Roof Level. Operation to the roof level shall be in accordance with 5.6.1.25.2.

(22) **5.6.1.25.6 Remote Interaction Operation.** Remote interaction operation is prohibited (see 2.26.13).

5.6.1.26 Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices. Emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to Section 2.27.

5.6.1.27 Welding. Welding shall conform to Section 8.8.

5.6.2 Direct-Plunger Hydraulic Rooftop Elevators

5.6.2.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction. Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 5.6.1.1 through 5.6.1.13 and 5.6.2.2 through 5.6.2.5, except 5.6.1.4 and 5.6.1.6.

5.6.2.2 Vertical Clearances and Runbys. Where a car top is provided, bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to Section 3.4.

Where no car top is provided, clearances and runbys shall conform to 3.4.1, 3.4.2.1, and 3.4.6.2.

5.6.2.3 Protection of Spaces Below the Hoistway. Where the hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building, it shall conform to Section 3.6.

5.6.2.4 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to Section 3.7.

5.6.2.5 Emergency Doors. The requirements for emergency doors in single blind hoistways shall conform to Section 2.11.

5.6.2.6 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination. Car enclosures, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to Section 2.14.

5.6.2.7 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to Section 3.14, 5.6.1.15.1, and 5.6.1.15.2.

5.6.2.8 Capacity and Loading. Capacity and loading shall conform to Section 2.16, except as modified by Section 3.16.

5.6.2.9 Car and Counterweight Safeties

5.6.2.9.1 Car safeties, where provided, shall conform to Section 2.17, except as modified for freight elevators by 5.6.1.17, and shall be the type that can be released only by moving the car in the up direction.

5.6.2.9.2 Counterweight safeties, where provided, shall conform to Section 3.16.

5.6.2.10 Hydraulic Jacks. Hydraulic jacks shall conform to Section 3.18.

5.6.2.11 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings. Valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to Section 3.19.

5.6.2.12 Counterweights. Where provided, counterweights shall conform to Section 3.15.

5.6.2.13 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to Section 3.21 and 3.22.2.

5.6.2.14 Guide Rails. Guide rails and their supports and fastenings shall conform to Sections 3.23 and 3.28.

5.6.2.15 Tanks. Tanks shall conform to Section 3.24.

5.6.2.16 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 3.25 and 5.6.1.8.

5.6.2.17 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to Section 3.26. Requirements 5.6.1.25.1, 5.6.1.25.2, 5.6.1.25.4, 5.6.1.25.5, 5.6.1.26, and 5.6.1.27 and all electrical equipment on the car shall be weather-proof.

5.6.2.17.1 Top-of-Car Operating Device and Stop Switch. Top-of-car operating devices, when required, shall conform to 5.6.1.25.3.

SECTION 5.7

SPECIAL PURPOSE PERSONNEL ELEVATORS

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, Section 5.7 applies to elevators permanently installed in a wide variety of structures and locations to provide vertical transportation of authorized personnel and their tools and equipment only. Such elevators are typically installed in structures such as grain elevators, radio antennas and bridge towers, underground facilities, dams, power plants, and similar structures where, by reason of their limited use and the types of construction of the structures served, full compliance with Part 2 is not practicable or necessary.

Section 5.7 applies to special purpose personnel elevators having a traction, winding-drum, screw, or rack-and-pinion driving machine.

NOTE: See also **Part 8** for additional requirements that apply to special purpose personnel elevators.

5.7.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

5.7.1.1 Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures. Where the hoistway is adjacent to areas permitting passage of people (e.g., passageways, stairwells, elevator landings), it shall be enclosed to a height not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) above the floor or stair treads. The enclosure shall be of sufficient strength to prevent contact between the enclosure and the car or counterweight when the enclosure is subjected to a force of 1 112 N (250 lbf) applied at right angles at any point over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). Openwork enclosures shall be permitted to be used and shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

5.7.1.2 Floor Over the Hoistway. Where a floor is provided, the floor shall conform to 2.1.3.1 through 2.1.3.4.

5.7.2 Pits

Pits shall conform to 5.7.2.1 through 5.7.2.8.

5.7.2.1 General. A pit shall be provided for every special purpose personnel elevator.

5.7.2.2 Design and Construction of Pits. The design and construction of pits shall comply with 2.2.2.

5.7.2.3 Guards Between Adjacent Pits. Guards between adjacent pits shall comply with 2.2.3.

5.7.2.4 Access to Pits. Access to pits shall comply with 2.2.4.

5.7.2.5 Illumination of Pits. Illumination of pits shall comply with 2.2.5.

5.7.2.6 Stop Switch in Pits. A stop switch in the pit shall comply with 2.2.6.

5.7.2.7 Minimum Pit Depth Required. The pit depth shall not be less than is required for the installation of the buffers, compensating sheaves, if any, all other special purpose personnel elevator equipment located therein, and vertical clearances and bottom runby conforming to 5.7.4.1.

5.7.2.8 Access to the Underside of the Car. Access to the underside of the car shall comply with 2.2.8.

5.7.3 Location and Enclosing of Counterweights

5.7.3.1 Counterweight Coming Down to Floors or Passing Floors or Stairs. Where a counterweight runway comes down to a floor or passes a floor or stairs, it shall be enclosed to a height of at least 2 130

mm (84 in.) above the floor or the stair treads by a solid or openwork enclosure. The enclosure shall be of sufficient strength to prevent contact between the enclosure and the counterweight when the enclosure is subjected to a force of 1 100 N (250 lbf) applied at right angles at any point over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). Openwork enclosures shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter and shall be located to provide at least 100 mm (4 in.) between the outside of the enclosure and the closest member of the counterweight assembly.

5.7.3.2 Access to Enclosed Counterweights and Ropes. Access shall be provided for inspection, maintenance, and repair of an enclosed counterweight and its ropes. Doors in the counterweight enclosures shall be self-closing and self-locking and shall be provided with

(a) an electric contact, the opening of which will remove power from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(b) a lock keyed to Group 1 Security

5.7.4 Vertical Clearances and Runby

5.7.4.1 Bottom Runby. Bottom runby shall conform to 2.4.2 through 2.4.4.

5.7.4.2 Top-of-Car Clearance. There shall be a clearance of not less than 762 mm (30 in.) from the highest projection of the car top, the car crosshead, and the equipment mounted on the car top and the nearest part of the overhead structure when the car has reached its uppermost limit of travel.

5.7.4.3 Top Counterweight Clearances. The top counterweight clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following items:

(a) the bottom car runby (see 5.7.4.1)

(b) the stroke of the car buffer used, or the remaining stroke when the buffer is compressed with the car at the bottom terminal landing (see 2.4.2 and 2.22.4.8)

(c) 150 mm (6 in.)

5.7.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to Section 2.5 and 5.7.3.1.

5.7.6 Protection of Spaces Below the Hoistway

Protection of spaces below hoistways not extending to the lowest level of the structure shall conform to the applicable requirements of 2.6.1.

5.7.7 Overhead Machinery Beams and Supports

5.7.7.1 Securing of Machinery Beams and Type of Supports

5.7.7.1.1 All machinery and sheaves shall be supported and secured to effectively prevent any part becoming loose or displaced.

5.7.7.1.2 Beams directly supporting machinery shall be steel or reinforced concrete.

5.7.7.1.3 Machinery or equipment shall be secured to and supported on, or from the top of, overhead beams or floors, except for the following equipment:

- (a) secondary or deflecting sheaves of traction elevators
- (b) devices and their accessories for limiting or retarding car speed
- (c) driving machines on the car

5.7.7.1.4 Cast iron in tension shall not be used for supporting members for sheaves where they are hung beneath beams.

5.7.7.2 Loads on Overhead Beams and Supports. The total load on overhead beams shall be equal to the weight of all apparatus resting on the beams, plus twice the maximum load suspended from the beams.

5.7.7.2.1 The load resting on the beams shall include the complete weights of the driving machine, sheaves, controller, etc.

5.7.7.2.2 The load suspended from the beams shall include the sum of the tensions in all ropes suspended from the beams.

NOTE (5.7.7.2): The object in doubling the suspended load is to allow for impact, accelerating stresses, etc.

5.7.7.3 Factor of Safety of Overhead Beams and Supports. The factor of safety for overhead beams and their supports shall be not less than 5 for steel and 6 for reinforced concrete.

5.7.7.4 Allowable Stresses and Deflections. Overhead beams and supports shall conform to 2.9.4 and 2.9.5.

5.7.8 Hoistway Doors and Gates

5.7.8.1 Where Required. The full width of each landing opening shall be protected by doors or gates. The landing opening shall be at least 2 030 mm (80 in.) in height. The entire entrance assembly shall be capable of withstanding a force of 1 100 N (250 lbf) applied on the landing site at right angles to, and approximately at the center of, a panel. This force shall be distributed over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). There shall be no permanent displacement or deformation of any parts of the entrance assembly resulting from this test. Openwork entrances shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

5.7.8.2 Projections of Hoistway Doors or Gates Into the Hoistway. The hoistway face of the landing doors or gates shall not project into the hoistway beyond the landing sill. No hardware, except that required for door locking devices or contacts, signals, or door operating devices, shall project into the hoistway beyond the line of the landing sill.

5.7.8.3 Access to Hoistways for Emergency and Inspection Purposes. A device to unlock and permit opening of the hoistway door from the landing side, regardless of the location of the car in the hoistway, shall be provided at the top and bottom landings and shall be permitted at all landings. This device shall be designed to prevent unlocking the door with common tools.

The operating means for unlocking the door shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

5.7.8.4 Opening of Hoistway Doors and Gates. Hoistway doors or gates shall be arranged so that it will not be necessary to reach behind any panel or jamb to operate them.

5.7.8.5 Hangers and Stops for Sliding Hoistway Doors. Hangers, conforming to 2.11.11.4.1 and 2.11.11.4.2, shall be provided.

5.7.8.6 Distance Between Hoistway Doors or Gates and Landing Sills and Car Doors or Gates. The distance between the hoistway doors or gates and the hoistway edge of the landing sill shall not exceed 57 mm (2.25 in.), and the distance between the hoistway faces of the landing door or gate and the car door or gate shall not exceed 133 mm (5.25 in.).

5.7.9 Locking Devices for Hoistway Doors or Gates

Hoistway doors or gates shall be provided with hoistway door interlocks or with locking devices and electric contacts conforming to Section 2.12.

5.7.10 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

5.7.10.1 Enclosures Required. Except at the entrance, cars shall be fully enclosed with metal at the sides and top. The enclosure at the sides shall be solid or openwork that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter. The minimum clear height inside the car shall be 1 980 mm (78 in.).

5.7.10.2 Securing Enclosures. The car enclosure shall be secured to the platform in such a manner that it cannot work loose or become displaced in regular service.

5.7.10.3 Illumination in Car. Each car shall be provided with an electric light and a light control switch. The light shall provide illumination of at least 27 lx (2.5 fc) at the landing edge of the car platform.

5.7.10.4 Emergency Exits. When car size and construction permit, and other conditions warrant, an emergency exit with a cover shall be permitted in the top of the car enclosure conforming to 5.7.10.4.1 through 5.7.10.4.4.

5.7.10.4.1 The exit opening shall have an area not less than 0.26 m² (400 in.²), and shall not measure less than 400 mm (16 in.) on any side.

5.7.10.4.2 The exit shall be located to provide a clear passageway unobstructed by fixed elevator equipment located in, or on top of, the car.

5.7.10.4.3 The exit cover shall open outward and shall be hinged, or otherwise attached, to the car top.

5.7.10.4.4 The exit cover shall be equipped with a switch or contact that, when opened, will cause a device to remove power from the machine motor and brake. The exit cover switch or contact shall be a manual-reset type.

5.7.10.5 Car Doors or Gates. A car door or gate that, when closed, shall guard the opening to its full height, shall be provided at each entrance to the car. Car doors shall be solid or openwork construction that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter. Collapsible car gates shall be a design that, when fully closed (extended position), will reject a ball 75 mm (3 in.) in diameter.

5.7.11 Car Construction

5.7.11.1 Car Frames and Platforms. Elevator car frames shall be metal. Elevator car platforms shall be metal or a combination of metal and wood. Where wood is used, the platform shall conform to 2.15.8. Car frames and platforms shall have a factor of safety not less than 5, based on the rated load.

5.7.11.2 Use of Cast Iron. Cast iron shall not be used in the construction of any member of the car frame or platform other than for guide shoes and guide-shoe brackets.

5.7.11.3 Use of Glass. Glass shall not be used in elevator cars, except for the car light and accessories necessary for the operation of the car or car vision panels that, if provided, shall conform to 2.14.2.5.

5.7.11.4 Number of Compartments. The car shall not have more than one compartment.

5.7.12 Capacity and Loading

5.7.12.1 Capacity and Data Plates. Capacity and data plates, conforming to 2.16.3, shall be provided.

5.7.12.2 Limitation of Load, Speed, and Platform Area. The rated load shall not exceed 454 kg (1,000 lb). The inside net platform area shall not exceed 1.208 m² (13 ft²). The minimum rated load shall not be less than that based on 3.35 kPa (70 lbf/ft²) of inside net platform area or 113 kg (250 lb), whichever is greater. The rated speed shall not exceed 0.76 m/s

(150 ft/min). Winding-drum machines shall comply with 2.24.1.

5.7.13 Car Safeties and Governors

5.7.13.1 Car Safeties and Governors for Traction and Winding-Drum-Type Elevators. Cars suspended by wire ropes shall be provided with a car safety capable of stopping and sustaining the car with rated load. The safeties shall be Type A and shall conform to 2.17.5.1.

The car safety shall be actuated by a speed governor. The governor shall be operated to set the safety in accordance with Table 2.18.2.1, with the maximum permissible speed allowed being 1.05 m/s (210 ft/min). The operation of the safety shall conform to 2.17.8.1.

The speed governor shall be located where it cannot be struck by the car or counterweight in case of overtravel and where there is sufficient space for full movement of the governor parts. Governor ropes shall conform to 2.18.5.1 through 2.18.5.3.

5.7.13.2 Car Safeties and Governors for Rack-and-Pinion-Type Elevators. The car shall be provided with one or more safeties identified in 4.1.17.

5.7.13.2.1 Stopping Distances. The travel of the car measured from the governor tripping to the full stop shall not exceed the following values:

- (a) for car safeties: 1 625 mm (64 in.)
- (b) for counterweight safeties: 1 980 mm (78 in.)

5.7.13.2.2 Governor Ropes. Governor ropes shall conform to 2.18.5, when applicable.

5.7.13.3 Opening of Brake and Motor Control Circuits on Safety Application. The motor control circuit and the brake control circuit shall be opened before, or at the time, the safety applies.

5.7.13.4 Application of Car Safety. A car safety device that depends on the completion or maintenance of an electric circuit for the application of the safety shall not be used. Car safeties shall be applied mechanically.

5.7.13.5 Minimum Factors of Safety and Stresses of Safety Parts and Rope Connections. The minimum factors of safety and stresses of safety parts and any associated rope connections shall conform to 2.17.12.

5.7.14 Suspension Ropes

5.7.14.1 Types Permitted. Suspension means shall consist of not less than two wire ropes.

Only iron (low-carbon steel) or steel wire ropes, having the commercial classification "Elevator Wire Rope," or wire rope specifically constructed for elevator use shall be used for the suspension of elevator cars and for the suspension of counterweights. The wire material for ropes shall be manufactured by the open-hearth or electric furnace process or their equivalent.

5.7.14.2 Minimum Diameter of Suspension Ropes.

The minimum diameter of any suspension rope shall be not less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.).

5.7.14.3 Factor of Safety of Suspension Means. The factor of safety of the suspension means shall be not less than 7.95.

5.7.14.4 Arc of Contact of Suspension Means on Sheaves. The arc of contact of a wire rope on a traction sheave and the shape of the grooves shall be sufficient to produce adequate traction under all load conditions.

5.7.14.5 Arrangement of Wire Ropes on Winding Drums. All wire ropes anchored to a winding drum shall have not less than one full turn of rope on the drum when the car or counterweight has reached its limit of possible overtravel, including a fully compressed buffer. Each turn of the wire rope on the winding drum shall be in a separate groove on the drum.

5.7.14.6 Lengthening, Splicing, Repairing, or Replacing Suspension Means. No car or counterweight rope shall be lengthened or repaired by splicing. If one wire rope of a set is worn or damaged and requires replacement, the entire set of ropes shall be replaced.

5.7.14.7 Securing Ends of Suspension Ropes in Winding Drums. The winding-drum ends of car and counterweight wire ropes shall be secured by clamps on the inside of the drum or by one of the methods specified in 5.7.14.8 for fastening wire ropes to the car or counterweight.

5.7.14.8 Fastening of Rope Suspension Means to Cars and Counterweights. The car or counterweight ends of wire ropes shall be fastened by properly made individual tapered babbitted sockets or by properly attached fittings as recommended by wire rope manufacturers.

Tapered babbitted rope sockets and the method of babbitting shall conform to 2.20.9.4 and 2.20.9.6. The diameter of the hole in the small end of the socket shall not exceed the nominal diameter of the rope by more than 2.4 mm (0.094 in.).

5.7.15 Counterweight Guiding and Construction

5.7.15.1 Guiding. Counterweights shall be guided to prevent horizontal movement. Guide rails, where used, shall conform to 5.7.17.

5.7.15.2 Car Counterweights. A car counterweight on winding-drum elevators shall not be sufficient weight to cause slackening of any car hoisting rope during acceleration or retardation of the car.

5.7.15.3 Types of Counterweight Construction

(a) One-piece solid or laminated steel counterweights shall be permitted to be used.

(b) Means shall be provided to retain counterweight sections, if used, in place if they become broken, whether carried in a frame or not. If tie-rods are used, the sections shall be fastened together by a minimum of two tie-rods that pass through all weight sections. Tie-rods shall be provided with locknuts and cotter pins at each end.

5.7.16 Car and Counterweight Buffers

(22)

Car and counterweight buffers shall either

(a) conform to the applicable requirements of 2.22.1.1.1, 2.22.1.2, 2.22.2, and 2.22.3 or

(b) be designed and installed so that they will not be fully compressed when struck by the car with its rated load at the governor tripping speed. Kinetic energy from the drive unit and the effect of the counterweight shall be taken into account in the design. The effect of the counterweight, where used, shall also be taken into account in the design calculations. The requirements of 2.22.3.2 do not apply to car buffers.

5.7.17 Car Guide Rails and Guide-Rail Fastenings

Car guide rails shall be provided and shall conform to 5.7.17.1 through 5.7.17.3.

5.7.17.1 Material. Guide rails and guide-rail fastenings shall be steel or, where steel presents a hazard, as in chemical or explosive atmospheres, guide rails shall be permitted to be selected wood or other suitable nonferrous materials.

5.7.17.2 Fastenings, Deflections, and Joints. Guide rails shall be securely fastened, shall not deflect more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) under normal operation, and shall have their joints well fitted and strongly secured. Guide rails and their joints and fastenings shall withstand without failure the application of the car safety when stopping the car with its rated load.

5.7.17.3 Extension of Guide Rails at the Top and Bottom of the Hoistway. Guide rails shall extend from the bottom of the hoistway to a sufficient height above the top landing to prevent the guide shoes from running off the rails when the car or counterweight is at its extreme upper position.

5.7.18 Driving Machines and Sheaves

5.7.18.1 Types of Driving Machines. Driving machines shall be the traction, drum, screw, or rack-and-pinion type. The installation of belt-drive and chain-drive machines is prohibited.

5.7.18.1.1 Screw Machines. Screw machines shall conform to 4.2.15.

5.7.18.1.2 Rack-and-Pinion Machines. The rack-and-pinion drive shall comply with 4.1.24.

5.7.18.1.3 Traction Machines. The traction drive shall comply with [Section 2.24](#).

5.7.18.1.4 Winding-Drum Machines. The winding-drum drive shall comply with [Section 2.24](#).

5.7.18.2 Material and Grooving for Sheaves and Drums. Winding drums, traction sheaves, and overhead and deflecting sheaves shall be cast iron or steel and shall have a pitch diameter not less than 30 times the diameter of the wire suspension ropes, except that where 8 × 19 steel ropes are used on a drum-type machine installation, the pitch diameter of drums and sheaves shall be permitted to be reduced to 21 times the diameter of the rope. The rope grooves shall be machined.

5.7.18.3 Factor of Safety for Driving Machines and Sheaves. The factor of safety for driving machines and sheaves shall conform to [2.24.3.1](#) and [2.24.3.2](#), and [4.1.24.2](#) for rack-and-pinion machines.

5.7.18.4 Bolts Transmitting Torque, and Set Screws. Bolts transmitting torque, and set screws shall conform to [2.24.4](#).

5.7.18.5 Friction-Gearing or Clutch Mechanism. Friction-gearing or clutch mechanisms shall not be used for connecting the drum or sheaves to the main driving mechanism.

5.7.18.6 Use of Cast Iron in Gears. Worms and worm gears made of cast iron shall not be used.

5.7.18.7 Driving-Machine Brakes. Driving machines shall be equipped with electrically released spring-applied friction brakes.

5.7.18.8 Operation of the Brake. A single ground or short circuit, a countervoltage, or a motor field discharge shall not prevent the brake magnet from allowing the brake to set when the operating device is placed in the stop position.

5.7.18.9 Access to Machines and Sheaves. A permanent, safe, and convenient means of access to elevator machine rooms and overhead machinery spaces shall be provided for authorized personnel.

5.7.19 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to [5.7.19.1](#) through [5.7.19.10](#).

5.7.19.1 Operation and Operating Devices

5.7.19.1.1 Types of Operating Devices. Types of operating devices shall conform to [2.26.1.1](#).

5.7.19.1.2 Inspection Operation. Inspection Operation, if provided, shall conform to [2.26.1.4](#).

5.7.19.1.3 Inspection With Open Door Circuits. If Inspection Operation is provided (see [5.7.19.1.2](#)), Inspection Operation with open door circuits shall be provided and shall conform to [2.26.1.5](#).

5.7.19.2 Electrical Protective Devices. When an electrical protective device is activated (operated, opened), it shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake. Electrical protective devices shall be provided as specified in [5.7.19.2.1](#) through [5.7.19.2.39](#).

NOTE: The requirements of [5.7.19.2](#) are organized to parallel those in [2.26.2](#), as indicated by the last digit(s) of the paragraph designations (e.g., [2.26.2.1](#) and [5.7.19.2.1](#) both address slack-rope switch requirements). Where numbers skip (e.g., [5.7.19.2.11](#) is followed by [5.7.19.2.14](#)), [5.7.19.2](#) has no requirement parallel to that in [2.26.2](#).

5.7.19.2.1 Slack-Rope Switch. Winding-drum machines shall be provided with a slack-rope device equipped with a slack-rope switch of the enclosed manually reset type. This switch shall operate whenever the ropes are slack.

5.7.19.2.2 Motor-Generator Running Switch. Where motor-generator field control is used, it shall conform to [2.26.2.2](#).

5.7.19.2.3 Compensating-Rope Sheave Switch. Compensating-rope sheave switches, when provided, shall conform to [2.26.2.3](#).

5.7.19.2.4 Motor Field Sensing Means. Motor field sensing means shall conform to [2.26.2.4](#).

5.7.19.2.5 Emergency Stop Switch. An emergency stop switch shall conform to [2.26.2.5\(a\)](#) through [2.26.2.5\(c\)](#).

5.7.19.2.6 Broken Rope, Tape, or Chain Switches. Broken rope, tape, or chain switches shall be provided when required by [2.25.2.3.2](#) or [2.25.4.1.8\(b\)](#).

5.7.19.2.7 Stop Switch in the Pit. A stop switch conforming to [2.26.2.5\(a\)](#) through [2.26.2.5\(c\)](#) shall be provided in the pit of every elevator (see [2.2.6](#)).

5.7.19.2.8 Stop Switch on the Top of the Car. A stop switch conforming to [2.26.2.5\(a\)](#) through [2.26.2.5\(c\)](#) shall be provided on the top of every elevator car.

5.7.19.2.9 Car Safety Mechanism Switch. A switch conforming to [2.17.7.1](#) through [2.17.7.4](#), or to [4.1.18.1](#) for rack-and-pinion safeties with integral speed governors, shall be required where a car safety is provided.

5.7.19.2.10 Speed Governor Overspeed Switch. A speed governor overspeed switch shall be provided and shall conform to [2.18.4.1.1](#), [2.18.4.1.2](#), and [2.18.4.2.3](#), or to [4.1.18.1](#) for integral rack-and-pinion speed governors.

5.7.19.2.11 Final Terminal Stopping Devices. Final terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.3.1 through 2.25.3.5.

5.7.19.2.14 Hoistway Door Interlocks and Hoistway Door Electric Contacts. Hoistway door interlocks or hoistway door electric contacts conforming to 5.7.9 shall be provided for all elevators.

5.7.19.2.15 Car Door and Gate Electric Contacts. Car door and gate electric contacts conforming to 5.7.9 shall be provided for all elevators except when car door interlocks conforming to 5.7.19.2.28 are provided.

5.7.19.2.18 Car Top Emergency Exit Electrical Device. A car top emergency exit electrical device, when provided, shall conform to 5.7.10.4.4.

5.7.19.2.19 Motor-Generator Overspeed Protection. When a motor-generator set is provided, means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed automatically from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake should a motor-generator set, driven by a DC motor, overspeed excessively.

5.7.19.2.23 Stop Switch in Remote Machine Rooms and Control Rooms. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided in remote machine and control rooms where required by 2.7.8.

5.7.19.2.24 Stop Switch in Overhead Machinery Space in the Hoistway. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided in the overhead machinery space in the hoistway where required by 2.7.3.5.

5.7.19.2.26 Pit Access Door Electric Contact. An electric contact shall be provided on each pit access door where required by 2.2.4.5.

5.7.19.2.27 Stop Switch in Remote Counterweight Hoistways. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided in the remote counterweight hoistway where required by 2.3.3.3.

5.7.19.2.28 Car Door Interlock. A car door interlock conforming to 5.7.9 shall be provided where required by 2.14.4.2.1.

5.7.19.2.29 Ascending Car Overspeed Protection Device. An ascending car overspeed device shall be provided on counterweighted elevators, where the counterweight is heavier than the empty car. The ascending car overspeed device, when provided, shall meet the requirements of 2.19.1.2(a).

5.7.19.2.30 Unintended Car Movement Device. An unintended car movement device, when provided, shall meet the requirements of 2.26.2.30.

5.7.19.2.33 Firefighters' Stop Switch. A firefighters' stop switch, where provided, shall conform to the requirements of 2.26.2.33.

5.7.19.2.34 Unexpected Car Movement Device. An unexpected car movement device, where provided, shall conform to 2.26.2.34.

5.7.19.2.35 Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device. An electric contact on equipment access panels, where provided, shall conform to 2.26.2.35.

5.7.19.2.36 Working Platform Electrical Device. A working platform electrical contact, where provided, shall conform to 2.26.2.36.

5.7.19.2.37 Retractable Stop Electrical Device. A retractable stop electrical device contact, where provided, shall conform to 2.26.2.37.

5.7.19.2.38 Retractable Ladder Electrical Device. A retractable ladder electrical device contact, where provided, shall conform to 2.26.2.38.

5.7.19.2.39 Sway Control Guide Slack Suspension Detection Means. A sway control guide slack suspension detection means, when provided, shall meet the requirements of 2.26.2.39.

5.7.19.3 Contactors and Relays for Use in Critical Operating Circuits. Where electromechanical contactors or relays are provided, they shall conform to 2.26.3.

5.7.19.4 Electrical Equipment and Wiring. All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to 2.26.4.

5.7.19.5 System to Monitor and Prevent Automatic Operation of the Elevator With Faulty Door Contact Circuits. When power-operated car doors that are mechanically coupled with the landing doors are provided, they shall conform to 2.26.5.

5.7.19.6 Phase Protection of Motors. Elevators having a polyphase AC power supply shall conform to 2.26.6.

5.7.19.7 Installation of Capacitors or Other Devices or Means to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective. (22)
The installation of capacitors or other devices to make electrical protective devices ineffective shall conform to 2.26.7.

5.7.19.8 Release and Application of Driving-Machine Brakes. The release and application of driving-machine brakes shall conform to 2.26.8.

5.7.19.9 Control and Operating Circuits. The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 2.26.9.

5.7.19.10 Absorption of Regenerated Power. The absorption of regenerated power shall conform to 2.26.10.

5.7.20 Operation

5.7.20.1 Types of Operation. The following types of operation shall be permitted:

- (a) continuous-pressure operation.
- (b) momentary-pressure operation with up-down buttons or switches in the car and up-down buttons or switches, or call buttons, at each landing. It is not required that the operation be selective.
- (c) single automatic operation.

5.7.20.2 Hand-Rope Operation. Hand-rope operation shall not be used.

(22) 5.7.21 Emergency Signal and/or Communication

Each elevator shall be equipped with an alarm button or switch in the car operating station and an alarm device mounted in a location that shall be readily available to a person who is normally situated in the vicinity when the elevator is in use, or a means of voice communication to a receiving station that is always attended when the installation is in use. If the alarm device or means of voice communication is activated by normal building power, it shall be backed up by a manual device or a device powered by an auxiliary power supply.

5.7.22 Layout Drawings

Information provided on layout drawings shall conform to 2.28.1 or, for rack-and-pinion elevators, 4.1.28.

5.7.23 Welding

All welding shall conform to Section 8.8.

SECTION 5.8 MARINE ELEVATORS

Section 5.8 applies to elevators installed on board a marine vessel. See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to marine elevators.

5.8.1 Electric Marine Elevators

Electric marine elevators shall conform to Part 2, except as modified by Section 5.8.

5.8.1.1 Hoistway Enclosures. The hoistway shall be entirely enclosed over all of its height by means of a continuous solid steel fire-resistive enclosure with an equivalent fire-resistance rating of 1 h as defined in the 1974 Amendment of SOLAS Regulation 3. Elevators with total travel within one compartment of the vessel shall be permitted to be enclosed with expanded metal having openings a maximum of 25 mm (1 in.). The hoistway enclosure shall be of sufficient strength to prevent contact between the enclosure and the car or counterweight when the enclosure is subjected to a force of 1112 N

(250 lbf) applied at right angles at any point over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.).

5.8.1.2 Separate Counterweight Hoistways. The hoistway shall be entirely enclosed over all of its height by means of a continuous solid steel fire-resistive enclosure with an equivalent fire-resistance rating of 1 h as defined in the 1974 Amendment of SOLAS Regulation 3. Where a separate counterweight hoistway is provided on an elevator that has total travel within a single compartment of the vessel, it shall be permitted to be enclosed with expanded metal having openings a maximum of 25 mm (1 in.). The hoistway enclosure shall be of sufficient strength to prevent contact of the car or counterweight and its enclosure when the enclosure is subjected to a force of 1112 N (250 lbf) applied at right angles at any point over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.).

5.8.1.3 Protection of Space Below the Hoistway. All elevators shall be provided with elevator counterweight safeties conforming to 2.17.4.

5.8.1.4 Hoistway Entrances. Except when opening and closing in response to control signals, each hoistway door shall have means to prevent door movement and slamming when the vessel is subjected to conditions up to and including a 30-deg roll and a 10-deg pitch simultaneously.

5.8.1.5 Top Emergency Exits. It shall be permissible to open the top emergency exit cover from the top of the car or from within the car. This exit cover shall be provided with an electric contact conforming to 2.14.5.7. The breaking of this contact shall cause the power to be removed from the elevator driving motor and brake and the power shall be restored only by a manually operated reset switch located inside the elevator enclosure. Means shall be provided within the elevator car to gain access to the top emergency exit. A fixed vertical ladder of noncombustible material shall be provided on the inside of the hoistway to permit access from the top of the car to the hoistway entrance above. Means shall be provided to snap latch the cover closed or fully open.

5.8.1.6 Illumination of Cars. Elevators used primarily for the movement of personnel shall have the electrical power meet the requirements of IEEE 45, with car enclosure lighting to be supplied from the vessel's final emergency power source. In addition, a standby (emergency) lighting power source shall be furnished conforming to 2.14.7.1.3.

5.8.1.7 Traction Driving Machines

5.8.1.7.1 Traction driving machines shall be provided with a device to cause the elevator to stop and remain stopped if

- (a) when a start is initiated, the driving machine does not rotate

(b) the car or counterweight is stopped in a downward motion by an obstruction that causes the suspension ropes to slip on the driving sheave

5.8.1.7.2 This device shall function in a time that does not exceed the smaller of the following values:

- (a) 45 s
- (b) the time for the car to travel the full travel, plus 10 s, with a minimum of 20 s if the full travel time is less than 10 s

5.8.1.7.3 This device shall not affect operation from the top-of-car inspection station.

5.8.1.7.4 Driving machines shall be provided with a manual means of operation, allowing the car to be moved to the nearest landing in the event of a power failure. This shall be done by having the end of the drive motor shaft arranged to receive a crank. The manual effort required to move the car in the upward direction with rated load shall not exceed 400 N (90 lbf). One crank or tool shall be furnished for this purpose.

5.8.1.8 Emergency Operation and Signal Devices

(a) Marine elevators shall be required to conform to 2.27.1.1.

(b) In ships or offshore drilling rigs in which a watchman is not continuously available to take action when the required emergency signal is operated, the elevator shall be provided with one of the following additional emergency signaling devices:

- (1) a telephone connected to a central telephone exchange system
- (2) means within the car for communicating with or signaling to an emergency service that operates 24 h each day

5.8.1.9 Special Conditions. Elevators shall be designed and installed to function in accordance with Sections 2.14 through 2.28 when operating under the following conditions inherent to the installation location:

- (a) continuous vibration: 2 mm (0.08 in.) peak to peak of frequency 0 Hz to 25 Hz
- (b) rolling: ± 10 deg, period 10 s
- (c) pitching: ± 5 deg, period 7 s
- (d) heaving amplitude: $A = 3.8 - 0.01(L - 250)$, where L is the length of the ship, in meters, measured between the perpendicular taken at extremities of the deepest subdivision loadline

5.8.1.10 Handrails. Cars shall be fitted with at least one handrail.

5.8.1.11 Flooring. Cars shall be fitted with slip-resistant flooring.

5.8.2 Hydraulic Marine Elevators

Hydraulic marine elevators shall conform to Part 3, except as modified by 5.8.1 and 5.8.2.

5.8.2.1 Storage Tanks. Power unit oil storage tanks shall be constructed in such a manner to prevent spillage of hydraulic fluid under the following conditions inherent to the installation location:

- (a) rolling: ± 45 deg
- (b) pitching: ± 5 deg

5.8.2.2 Special Conditions. Elevators shall be designed and installed to function in accordance with Part 3 when operating under the following conditions inherent to the installation location:

- (a) continuous vibration: 2 mm peak to peak of frequency 0 Hz to 25 Hz
- (b) rolling: ± 10 deg, period 10 s
- (c) pitching: ± 5 deg, period 7 s
- (d) heaving amplitude: $A = 3.8 - 0.01(L - 250)$, where L is the length of the ship, in meters, measured between the perpendicular taken at extremities of the deepest subdivision loadline

5.8.2.3 Handrails. Cars shall be fitted with at least one handrail.

5.8.2.4 Flooring. Cars shall be fitted with slip-resistant flooring.

5.8.3 Rack-and-Pinion Marine Elevators

Rack-and-pinion marine elevators shall conform to Section 4.1, except as modified by 5.8.1 and 5.8.3.

5.8.3.1 Special Conditions. Elevators shall be designed and installed to function in accordance with Section 4.1 when operating under the following conditions inherent to the installation location:

- (a) continuous vibration: 2 mm peak to peak of frequency 0 Hz to 25 Hz
- (b) rolling: ± 10 deg, period 10 s
- (c) pitching: ± 5 deg, period 7 s
- (d) heaving amplitude: $A = 3.8 - 0.01(L - 250)$, where L is the length of the ship, in meters, measured between the perpendicular taken at extremities of the deepest subdivision loadline

5.8.3.2 Handrails. Cars shall be fitted with at least one handrail.

5.8.3.3 Flooring. Cars shall be fitted with slip-resistant flooring.

SECTION 5.9 MINE ELEVATORS

(22)

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, Section 5.9 applies to elevators permanently installed in mine shafts as covered by Part 2 and Section 4.1. The purpose is to provide vertical transportation of mine personnel, their tools and equipment, and mine supplies. By reason of their limited use, operating environment, and

the types of construction of the mines served, compliance with [Part 2](#) and [Section 4.1](#) is modified as follows (see also [Section 1.3](#)):

- (a) Substitute “Title 30 Code of Federal Regulations” or “state mine laws” (if applicable) for “building code.”
- (b) Substitute “mine” for “building.”
- (c) Requirements modified in [Section 5.9](#).

NOTES ([Section 5.9](#)):

- (1) Title 30 Code of Federal Regulations provides for certain additional and more stringent requirements. Where applicable, Title 30 requirements have been addressed in this Section.
- (2) See also [Part 8](#) for additional requirements that apply to mine elevators.

5.9.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

The construction of hoistway enclosures shall conform to [Section 2.1](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) Requirement [2.1.1](#) does not apply, except for [2.1.1.3](#) and [2.1.1.5](#), which do apply.
- (b) Requirement [2.1.6.2](#) does not apply.

5.9.2 Pits

Pits or the area below the elevator shall conform to [Section 2.2](#), except as modified by [5.9.2.1](#) through [5.9.2.3](#).

5.9.2.1 When the pit extends below the mine level, a pit water level alarm shall be provided in an attended location to annunciate water accumulation in the elevator pit. This water level alarm shall be powered from the elevator electrical source. The elevator shall return to the surface and shall not be permitted to start if the power to the water level annunciator is interrupted.

- (22) **5.9.2.2** When the pit extends below the mine level, a standard railing conforming to [2.10.2](#) shall be provided around the pit. Where necessary, guarding shall be provided to prevent accidental contact with moving elevator equipment.

5.9.2.3 When the bottom of the hoistway is located at or above the mine level, a walk-in pit is permitted. A ramp shall be permanently installed to provide access to the mine level from the bottom landing. Required bottom runby and space for the buffers, tension frames, and other equipment normally installed in the pit shall be considered when determining the location of the bottom landing. The pit floor shall be designed to prevent accumulation of water in the area. The area shall be protected with either an unperforated metal guard or, if openwork, guards shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter. Guards shall extend not less than 2 000 mm (78 in.) above the level of the pit floor.

5.9.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights

The location and guarding of counterweights shall conform to [Section 2.3](#).

5.9.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights

Bottom and top car clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to [Section 2.4](#), except [2.4.7.1](#) shall have the clearance above the car top protection conform to [2.4.7.1\(c\)](#).

5.9.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to [Section 2.5](#), except as modified by [5.9.5](#).

Requirement [2.5.1.5](#) only applies when the car is located at the lower landing.

5.9.6 Protection of Space Below Hoistways

The protection of space below the hoistways shall conform to [Section 2.6](#).

5.9.7 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to [Section 2.7](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) Requirement [2.7.1.1.2](#) does not apply.
- (b) [Note \(3\)](#) in [2.7.1.1](#) does not apply.

5.9.8 Equipment in Hoistways, Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways and machine rooms shall comply with [Section 2.8](#), except as modified by [5.9.8.1](#) and [5.9.8.2](#).

5.9.8.1 Hoistway and Car Wiring. In addition to the requirements of [2.8.1](#), all wiring, raceways, and traveling cables installed in the hoistway or on the car, used directly in connection with the elevator, shall be suitable for weatherproof (NEMA 4) application. Suitable expansion joints shall be provided in vertical raceways, if necessary, to prevent damage caused by extreme temperature changes.

5.9.8.2 Requirement [2.8.3](#) does not apply.

(a) All pipes shall be secured to prevent interference with the elevator equipment.

(b) The clearance between pipes, fittings, brackets, and elevator equipment shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.).

(c) All pipes shall be suitably identified as to their contents.

NOTE (5.9.8): [Note \(1\)](#) in [2.8.5](#) does not apply.

5.9.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations

Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to [Section 2.9](#).

5.9.10 Guarding of Equipment and the Standard Railing

The guarding of equipment and the standard railing shall conform to [Section 2.10](#).

5.9.11 Protection of Hoistway Openings

The protection of hoistway landing openings shall conform to [Section 2.11](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) Requirement [2.11.7.2](#) does not apply. Glass hoistway doors are prohibited.
- (b) Requirement [2.11.14](#) does not apply.
- (c) Requirement [2.11.15](#) does not apply.
- (d) Requirement [2.11.16](#) does not apply.
- (e) Requirement [2.11.17](#) does not apply.
- (f) Requirement [2.11.18](#) does not apply.
- (g) Requirement [2.11.19](#) does not apply.

5.9.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches

Hoistway door locking devices, hoistway door and car door or gate electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to [Section 2.12](#), except as modified by the following:

- (a) In addition, a car door interlock shall be provided.
- (b) Hoistway access switches are not required if a car top access panel is provided.

5.9.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors

When provided, power operation of hoistway doors and car doors and gates shall conform to [Section 2.13](#).

5.9.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

Car enclosures, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to [Section 2.14](#), except as modified by [5.9.14.1](#) through [5.9.14.5](#).

5.9.14.1 Car Top Access Panel. A car top access panel shall be provided in the top of all elevator cars. Car top access panels shall conform to the following:

- (a) Requirement [2.14.1.5](#) applies, except as modified by this requirement. The car top access panel will substitute for the car top emergency exit panel.
- (b) The car top access panel shall have an area not less than 0.58 m^2 (900 in.^2) and shall measure not less than 635 mm (25 in.) on any side. The panel shall open outward or slide over the car top. It shall be hinged, or be retained in a

track. The movable portion of the access panel, if hinged, shall be provided with means to counterbalance the panel and restrain it from closing when in the open position. The force required to open the access panel or prevent it from closing shall not exceed 45 N (10 lbf). When in the fully opened position, the access panel shall resist accidental closing. The movable portion of the access panel shall not reduce the running clearance. The access panel shall be openable without the use of tools or keys.

(c) The car top access panel shall be provided with a switch whose contacts are positively opened mechanically, and their opening shall not be dependent on springs that will initiate a controlled slowdown and stop when the access panel is opened. A permanently mounted emergency stop switch shall be located on top of the car, adjacent to the access panel, to secure the car prior to transferring to Inspection Operation.

5.9.14.2 A permanent fixed ladder shall be provided for passage through the car top access panel. The ladder shall project through the car canopy at least 1 070 mm (42 in.) above the car top, or handgrips shall be provided to the same height.

The rungs, cleats, or steps shall be spaced 300 mm (12 in.) on center. A clear distance of not less than 115 mm (4.5 in.) from the centerline of the rungs, cleats, or steps to the nearest permanent object in the back of the ladder shall be provided. Handgrips, if provided, shall have a clear distance of not less than 115 mm (4.5 in.) from their centerline to the nearest permanent object.

5.9.14.3 Car Top Protection. Protection from falling debris shall be provided on all car tops. The car top protection shall

- (a) not interfere with the use of the car top access panel
- (b) be solid without perforations and shall comply with the strength requirements of [2.14.1.6](#)
- (c) provide a minimum head height clearance of 2 m (78 in.)
- (d) be removable if the car top protection interferes with normal inspection, maintenance, repairs, or rescue

5.9.14.4 Requirement [2.14.1.7.2](#) does not apply.

5.9.14.5 Requirement [2.14.7.1.3](#) does not apply.

5.9.15 Car Frames and Platforms

Car frames and platforms shall conform to [Section 2.15](#) and [5.9.15.1](#).

5.9.15.1 Corrosion Protection. Car frames, platforms, bolts, rivets, and fastenings shall be treated with a corrosion-resistant protective coating, be electroplated, or be made of corrosion-resistant material.

5.9.16 Capacity and Loading

Capacity and loading requirements shall conform to [Section 2.16](#).

5.9.17 Car and Counterweight Safeties

Car and counterweight safeties shall conform to [Section 2.17](#), except as modified by [5.9.17.1](#) through [5.9.17.5](#).

5.9.17.1 Requirement [2.17.7.2](#) applies, except every safety shall be provided with a switch, operated by the safety mechanism (see [2.26.2.9](#)).

The counterweight safety switch shall be operated by the safety mechanism, or a means to detect application of the safety independent from the counterweight governor switch(es) shall be provided.

5.9.17.2 Requirement [2.17.7.3](#) applies to both car and counterweight safety mechanism switches.

5.9.17.3 Requirement [2.17.7.4](#) applies to both car and counterweight safety mechanism switches.

5.9.17.4 Requirement [2.17.9.1](#) applies, except safeties applied by rope drums are prohibited.

5.9.17.5 Requirement [2.17.9.3](#) applies to both car and counterweight safeties. When the counterweight safeties are furnished, means shall be provided to release the safeties if both safeties are applied simultaneously.

5.9.18 Speed Governors

Speed governors shall conform to [Section 2.18](#), except as modified by [5.9.18.1](#).

5.9.18.1 Governor Rope Tension Sheaves. In addition to the requirements of [2.18.7](#), the governor rope tension sheave shall be provided with a governor rope tension sheave switch or switches mechanically opened by the governor rope tension sheave before the sheave reaches its upper or lower limit of travel, to cause the elevator speed to be reduced to 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). This switch shall be manually reset.

5.9.19 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection

Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall conform to [Section 2.19](#).

5.9.20 Suspension Means and Their Connections

Suspension means and their connections shall conform to [Section 2.20](#).

5.9.20.1 Suspension and Compensating Means and Governor Ropes. When elevator suspension or compensating means or governor ropes are exposed to an environment that will cause corrosion, surface pitting, or loss of cross-sectional area, the wire ropes shall be constructed of electrogalvanized or other type of corrosion-resistant material suitable for the environment and application.

5.9.20.2 Prohibited Suspension Means Devices. (22)

Devices permanently attached to the suspension ropes that absorb moisture, accumulate debris, restrict suspension rope movement, or impede suspension rope examinations shall be prohibited, with the exception of the suspension means and their connections as specified in [Section 2.20](#).

5.9.21 Counterweights

Counterweights shall conform to [Section 2.21](#), except [2.21.4.2](#) does not apply.

5.9.22 Buffers and Bumpers

Buffers and bumpers shall conform to [Section 2.22](#), except as modified by the following:

(a) Oil buffers shall be suitable for operation at the extreme temperatures experienced in the anticipated mining environment.

(b) Requirement [2.22.4.5.1\(c\)](#) applies, except that all oil buffers shall be provided with a switch conforming to [2.26.4.3](#) that will cause the power to be removed from the driving machine when the plunger is not within 13 mm (0.5 in.) of the fully extended position.

(c) Reduced-stroke buffers shall not be provided on mine elevators.

5.9.23 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, and fastenings shall conform to [Section 2.23](#).

5.9.24 Driving Machines and Sheaves

Driving machines and sheaves shall conform to [Section 2.24](#).

5.9.25 Terminal Stopping Devices

Terminal stopping devices shall conform to [Section 2.25](#).

5.9.26 Operating Devices and Control Equipment (22)

Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to [Section 2.26](#), except [2.26.2.5](#), [2.26.2.21](#), [2.26.12](#), and [2.26.13](#).

5.9.26.1 Emergency Stop Switch. An emergency stop switch shall be provided in the car, located in or adjacent to each car operating panel.

When open ("STOP" position), this switch shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

Emergency stop switches shall

(a) be the manually opened and closed type

(b) have red operating buttons of the push-to-stop configuration and be designed, installed, or guarded to protect against inadvertent movement of the switch

(c) be conspicuously and permanently marked “STOP,” and shall indicate the “STOP” and “RUN” positions

(d) while open, cause the audible device to sound (see 2.27.1.2)

(e) conform to 2.26.4.3

5.9.26.2 Inspection Operation. Inspection Operation shall not be used to transport miners in elevators except in an emergency.

- (22) **5.9.26.3 Remote Interaction Operation.** Remote interaction operation is prohibited (see 2.26.13).

(22) **5.9.27 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices**

Elevators shall be provided with emergency or standby power to operate the elevator if the normal building power fails. The emergency or standby power shall be capable of operating the elevator with rated load. The emergency or standby power shall be capable of providing rated load power for a period of at least 4 h.

The transfer between the normal building power and the emergency or standby power shall be automatic. Conformance to Section 2.27 is not required, except 2.27.1.1.1 and 2.27.1.2 apply.

5.9.28 Layout Drawings

Information required on layout drawings shall conform to Section 2.28.

5.9.29 Identification

Identification of equipment shall conform to Section 2.29, except 2.29.2 does not apply.

5.9.30 Sway Control Guides

Sway control guides shall conform to Section 2.30.

5.9.31 Welding

Welding shall conform to Section 8.8, except when welding in or above the hoistway, requirements of 30 CFR 75.1106 and 30 CFR 75.1106-1 apply.

(22) **5.9.32 Elevators Under Construction or Disassembly**

Partially assembled elevators not complying with all the requirements of Section 5.9 shall not be placed in service and used to transport passengers or materials, with the exception of use by elevator personnel.

5.9.33 Rack-and-Pinion Elevators

(22)

Rack-and-pinion elevators shall comply with Section 4.1 and shall be equipped with supplemental mechanical safety devices (i.e., safety hooks) to prevent pinion separation from the rack in all directions if any roller fails. The supplemental mechanical safety devices (i.e., safety hooks) shall have a factor of safety of not less than 5. Obstructions in the hoistway shall be considered when calculating the maximum dynamic loads on the mechanical safety devices.

**SECTION 5.10
ELEVATORS USED FOR CONSTRUCTION**

Section 5.10 applies to elevators temporarily used for construction or demolition to provide transportation for construction personnel, tools, and materials only.

Such elevators use temporary or permanent equipment in a temporary or permanent location. Because of their special use in a special environment, full compliance with Part 2 and Part 3 is not practical or necessary.

Requirement 5.10.1 applies to electric elevators used for construction.

Requirement 5.10.2 applies to hydraulic elevators of the direct-plunger type used for construction.

Elevators used for construction shall not be accessible to the general public unless they comply with Part 2 or Part 3.

NOTE (Section 5.10): See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to elevators used for construction.

5.10.1 Electric Elevators Used for Construction

5.10.1.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

5.10.1.1.1 Hoistway Enclosures

(a) Where the hoistway is adjacent to areas permitting passage of people (e.g., stairwells, floors, and work space exterior to the hoistway), it shall be fully enclosed. The enclosure shall be of sufficient strength to prevent contact between the enclosure material and the car or counterweight when the enclosure is subjected to a force of 890 N (200 lbf) applied at right angles at any point on an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). Openwork enclosures shall be permitted to be used on all but the entrance side of the hoistway and shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter. Openwork enclosures shall be located to provide at least 150 mm (6 in.) clearance between the outside of the enclosure and the closest member of the car or counterweight assembly. Openwork enclosures shall not be used on elevators with car speeds over 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min).

(b) Overhead protection shall be provided across the entire cross-sectional area of the hoistway. It shall be located above the machine when the machine is

located directly over the elevator, and shall be capable of sustaining a concentrated load of 1 335 N (300 lbf) on any area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.).

(c) Where the elevator is operating in a multiple hoistway, and work is to be performed in an adjacent portion of that multiple hoistway, the construction elevator's hoistway shall be fully separated. The material used for this separation shall

(1) be as strong as or stronger than 1 mm (0.0437 in.) diameter wire

(2) have openings not exceeding 25 mm (1 in.)

(3) be supported and braced so that when subjected to a pressure of 4.79 kPa (100 lbf/ft²) applied horizontally at any point, the deflection shall not exceed 25 mm (1 in.)

5.10.1.1.2 Working Requirements in the Hoistway

(a) Hoisting of materials in any portion of the hoistway of an elevator used for construction is prohibited unless the car is not in use and is unoccupied.

(b) Conformance with 5.10.1.1.1(c) is required to allow work in adjacent portions of a multiple hoistway.

(c) Hoisting of materials in adjacent portions of a multiple hoistway is prohibited unless under the direct supervision of the elevator contractor.

5.10.1.2 Pits

(a) A pit shall be provided for every elevator.

(b) The design shall conform to 5.10.1.1.1.

(c) Guards between adjacent pits shall conform to 5.10.1.1.1(c).

(d) The minimum pit depth required shall conform to 2.2.7.

5.10.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights

5.10.1.3.1 Location of Counterweights. The location of the counterweights shall conform to 2.3.1.

5.10.1.3.2 Counterweight Pit Guards

(a) Counterweight guards shall be installed in the pit on all open sides of the counterweight runway, except as follows:

(1) Where compensating chains or ropes are attached to the counterweight, the guard shall be permitted to be omitted on the side facing the elevator car.

(2) Where pit-mounted buffers are used, the guard is permitted to be omitted where the bottom of the counterweight resting on its compressed buffer is 2 130 mm (84 in.) or more above the pit floor.

(b) The design, construction, and location of the guards shall conform to 2.3.2.2. Perforated material that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter shall be permitted to be used.

5.10.1.3.3 Separate Counterweight Hoistways. Where separate counterweight hoistways are provided, they shall conform to

(a) requirement 2.3.3 for a permanent separate hoistway

(b) requirement 5.10.1.1.1 for a temporary separate hoistway

5.10.1.4 Vertical Car Clearances and Runby. Top and bottom car clearances and runby shall conform to Section 2.4.

5.10.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

(a) Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to 2.5.1.1 through 2.5.1.3 and 2.5.1.6.

(b) The clearance between the car and landing sills shall conform to 2.5.1.4, except that the maximum clearance shall be not more than 100 mm (4 in.).

5.10.1.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways.

Protection of spaces below hoistways not extending to the lowest level of the structure shall conform to the applicable requirements of Section 2.6, or the space below the hoistway shall be temporarily secured from occupancy with a fence or wall.

5.10.1.7 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces

5.10.1.7.1 General Requirements

(a) Spaces containing machines, control equipment, sheaves, and other machinery shall be fully enclosed and protected from the elements. Enclosures shall be supported and braced to deflect not over 25 mm (1 in.) when subjected to a force of 450 N (100 lbf) applied horizontally over an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). The overhead protection of the machine room shall conform to 5.10.1.1.1(b). The floor of the machine room shall conform to 5.10.1.7.2.

(b) A safe means of access to the machine room and machinery spaces shall be provided for authorized personnel. Access doors shall be a minimum height of 1 830 mm (72 in.) and shall be kept closed and locked.

(c) Temporary electric lighting shall be provided in the machine room and machinery spaces. The illumination shall be not less than 100 lx (10 fc) at the floor level.

(d) Machine rooms shall be maintained free of refuse and shall not be used for the storage of material unnecessary for the construction, maintenance, or operation of the elevator. Flammable liquids having a flash point less than 38°C (100°F) shall not be kept in the machine room.

5.10.1.7.2 Machine Room and Machinery Space Floors

(a) A metal, concrete, or wood floor shall be provided, except that floors are not required below the following:

(1) secondary and deflecting sheaves of traction-type machines located over the hoistway

(2) overhead sheaves, governors, and other equipment where the elevator machine is located below or at the side of the hoistway, provided that

(-a) means of access for inspecting and servicing of governors is provided

(-b) sheaves and other equipment (except governors) shall be permitted to be inspected and serviced from the top of the car or by other means

(b) The floor shall be located above, level with, or directly below the machine beams.

(c) Floors shall be designed to carry a minimum live load of 195 kg/m² (40 lb/ft²).

(d) Floors shall be concrete, wood, or metal with or without perforations. Wood planking, when used, shall be scaffold grade or equivalent as recognized by approved grading rules for the species of wood used.

(e) The area to be covered by the floor shall conform to 2.1.3.4.

5.10.1.8 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to Section 2.9.

NOTE: Temporary structural reinforcement shall be permitted to be used to meet the requirements of 5.10.1.

5.10.1.9 Hoistway Doors and Gates

5.10.1.9.1 Where Required. The full width of each landing opening shall be protected to its full height by doors, gates, transoms, or any combination thereof. The entire entrance assembly shall be capable of withstanding a force of 1112 N (250 lbf) applied on the landing side at right angles to and approximately at the center of a panel. This force shall be distributed over an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). There shall be no permanent displacement or deformation of any parts of the entrance assembly resulting from this test. Openwork entrances shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter. Where permanent doors are provided, they shall conform to Sections 2.11 through 2.13.

5.10.1.9.2 Emergency Doors. Emergency doors shall conform to 2.11.1.2.

5.10.1.9.3 Projection of Hoistway Doors or Gates Into the Hoistway. All projections of hoistway doors or gates into the hoistway shall conform to 2.11.5.

5.10.1.9.4 Hoistway Door Vision Panels

(a) Where permanent hoistway doors are installed, vision panels shall conform to 2.11.7.

(b) Where temporary swinging solid hoistway doors are used, a vision panel covered with material that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter and have a deflection not greater than any other part of the door shall be provided. The total area of the vision panel shall be not more than 0.016 m² (25 in.²) and it shall be

located between 1370 mm (54 in.) and 1675 mm (66 in.) above the floor level.

5.10.1.9.5 Openings of Hoistway Doors or Gates From the Landing Side

(a) For elevators with car speeds up to 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min), hoistway doors or gates shall be provided with means that will latch the doors or gates mechanically so that they cannot be opened from the landing side, conforming to 5.10.1.21.1. Means shall be provided at a designated landing for unlatching the hoistway door or gate from the landing side to permit access to the car. At this landing, positive means shall be provided to lock the elevator entrance out of service.

(b) For elevators with car speeds over 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min), hoistway doors shall be provided with either of the following:

(1) interlocks conforming to 2.12.2

(2) combination mechanical locks and electric contacts conforming to 2.12.3

(c) The mechanical locking device, when used on temporary doors, shall be self-latching.

NOTE [5.10.1.9.5(c)]: When permanent doors are installed, it is recommended that the mechanical locking function of the permanent interlocks be used.

5.10.1.9.6 Closing of Hoistway Doors and Gates.

Temporary hoistway doors and gates shall be considered to be in the closed position when the door or gate is fully closed and latched.

Permanent hoistway doors shall conform to 2.12.1. The electrical circuitry for hoistway door interlocks, or combination mechanical locks and electric contacts, does not have to be operational at this time unless the car speed is over 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min).

5.10.1.9.7 Hangers and Stops for Sliding Hoistway Doors. Hangers conforming to 2.11.11.4 shall be provided.

Where permanent hoistway doors are installed, they shall conform to Sections 2.11 through 2.13.

5.10.1.9.8 Weights for Closing and/or Balancing Temporary Hoistway Doors or Gates. Weights used to close or balance hoistway doors or gates should be located outside the hoistway enclosure and shall run in guides or be enclosed. Weights located inside the hoistway enclosure shall conform to 2.11.8. Guides shall be metal, and the bottom of the guide or enclosure shall be constructed to retain the weights if their suspension members fail.

5.10.1.10 Car Enclosure, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

5.10.1.10.1 Enclosures Required. Except at the entrance, cars shall be fully enclosed with metal or wood on the sides and top. The enclosures shall be solid. The minimum clear height inside the car shall be

1 980 mm (78 in.). Car top enclosures shall be constructed to sustain a load of 135 kg (300 lb) on any 0.09 m² (1 ft²) area.

5.10.1.10.2 Securing Enclosures. The enclosure shall be securely fastened to the car platform and supported so that it cannot loosen or become displaced in regular service, on application of the car safety, or on engagement of the buffer.

5.10.1.10.3 Illumination in the Car. Each car shall be provided with an electric light and a light control switch. The light shall provide illumination of at least 50 lx (5 fc) at the landing edge of the car platform. Light bulbs and tubes shall be suitably protected against accidental breakage.

5.10.1.10.4 Top Emergency Exits. Emergency exits with a cover shall be provided in the top of all elevator cars and shall conform to the following:

(a) The exit opening shall have an area of not less than 0.26 m² (400 in.²) and shall measure not less than 400 mm (16 in.) on any side.

(b) The exit shall be located to provide a clear passage-way unobstructed by fixed elevator equipment located in or on top of the car.

(c) The exit cover shall open outward and shall be hinged or otherwise attached to the car top and arranged so that the cover can be opened only from the top of the car. When opened, the cover shall not protrude beyond the perimeter of the car.

(d) Operation of the car with the top emergency exit open is prohibited, except as specified in (e).

(e) Operation of the car with the top emergency exit open is permissible only when the load cannot be carried totally within the car enclosure and the operation is under the direct supervision of authorized personnel. The car shall not be operated at a speed faster than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

5.10.1.10.5 Use of Glass. Glass shall not be used in elevator cars, except for the car light and accessories necessary for the operation of the car. Glass used for the car light and accessories shall be laminated and meet the requirements of ANSI Z97.1 or CAN/CGSB-12.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), except for transparency.

5.10.1.10.6 Number of Compartments. The number of compartments shall conform to 2.14.1.4.

5.10.1.10.7 Car Emergency Signal. Elevators shall be provided with an audible signaling device or a permanent or portable means of two-way communication.

5.10.1.10.8 Car Doors or Gates. A car door or gate shall be provided at each entrance to the car. When closed, it shall guard the opening to its full height. Car doors shall be solid or openwork construction that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter. Collapsible car gates shall be a design that, when fully closed (extended position), will reject a ball 75 mm (3 in.) in diameter. Each

door or gate shall be equipped with a car door or gate electric contact conforming to the requirements of 2.14.4.2. Operation of the car with the car door or gate open is prohibited.

5.10.1.11 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to Section 2.15, except for 2.15.8.

5.10.1.12 Rated Load and Speed

5.10.1.12.1 Rated Load. The inside net platform area shall be determined by the temporary rated load and shall conform to 2.16.1.

The maximum number of passengers shall be based on the temporary rated load divided by 90 kg (200 lb).

5.10.1.12.2 Reduction of Inside Net Platform Area. Temporary partitions shall be permitted to be installed for the purpose of restricting the inside net platform area. Such partitions shall be securely fastened to prevent unauthorized removal.

The temporary partitions shall be installed to provide for approximately symmetrical loading.

Temporary partitions used within a car enclosure to reduce the inside net platform area shall be permitted to be removed only under the supervision of the elevator contractor to accommodate bulky loads that do not exceed the temporary capacity.

5.10.1.12.3 Speed. The car speed shall not exceed 5 m/s (1,000 ft/min) unless permission to do so is granted by the authority having jurisdiction. Related devices such as governors and buffers shall be calibrated to the car speed.

5.10.1.13 Car and Counterweight Safeties. Car and counterweight safeties shall conform to Section 2.17.

5.10.1.14 Governors. Governors shall conform to Section 2.18.

5.10.1.15 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall be provided on new elevators and on elevators being altered if required in Section 8.7, in conformance with Section 2.19.

5.10.1.16 Suspension Means. Elevator cars shall be suspended by steel wire ropes attached to the car frame or passing around sheaves attached to the car frame as required by 2.15.12, except as specified in 5.10.1.16.1 through 5.10.1.16.8.

Elevator cars arranged for progressive rises with continuous suspension ropes on storage reels shall have steel wire ropes attached to the car frame or the stationary hitch-ends with suitable anchorages on the basis of tensile and fatigue in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications and conforming to 5.10.1.16.7.

5.10.1.16.1 Types Permitted. Suspension means shall conform to [2.20.1](#).

5.10.1.16.2 Minimum Number and Diameter of Suspension Ropes. Ropes shall conform to [2.20.4](#).

5.10.1.16.3 Factor of Safety. Ropes shall conform to [2.20.3](#). The factor of safety of the suspension wire ropes shall be based on the requirements for freight elevators.

5.10.1.16.4 Spare Rope Turns on Winding Drums. Ropes shall conform to [2.20.7](#).

5.10.1.16.5 Splicing and Replacement of Suspension Ropes. Suspension wire ropes shall not be lengthened or repaired by splicing. Damaged ropes in a set shall be permitted to be replaced without replacing the whole set.

5.10.1.16.6 Securing of Suspension Wire Ropes to Winding Drums. Ropes shall conform to [2.20.6](#).

5.10.1.16.7 Suspension Rope Fastenings. The car and counterweight ends of suspension wire ropes, or the stationary hitch-ends where multiple roping is used, shall be fastened in such a manner that all portions of the rope, except the portion inside the rope sockets, shall be readily visible. Fastening shall be

(a) by individual tapered babbitted rope sockets (see [2.20.9.4](#))

(b) by means of clamps and wire rope thimbles or by special fastening devices. Where clamps are used, the fastening shall conform to the following:

(1) Clamps shall not be the U-bolt type.

(2) Both members of the clamps shall be provided with seats conforming to the lay of the rope.

5.10.1.16.8 Rope Data Tag. Tags shall conform to [2.20.2.2](#).

5.10.1.17 Counterweights. Counterweight guiding and construction shall conform to [Section 2.21](#).

5.10.1.18 Car and Counterweight Buffers. Car and counterweight buffers shall conform to [Section 2.22](#).

5.10.1.19 Car Guide Rails and Guide-Rail Fastenings. Car guide rails and guide-rail fastenings shall conform to [Section 2.23](#).

5.10.1.20 Driving Machines and Sheaves

5.10.1.20.1 Driving Machines. All driving machines shall conform to [2.24.1](#), except that winding-drum machines shall be permitted to be used for passenger elevators subject to the requirements of [2.24.1\(a\)](#) through [2.24.1\(c\)](#).

5.10.1.20.2 Material and Grooving for Sheaves and Drums. Permanent sheaves and drums shall conform to [2.24.2](#). Temporary sheaves and drums shall conform to [5.7.18.2](#).

5.10.1.20.3 Factor of Safety for Driving Machines and Sheaves. The factor of safety for driving machines and sheaves shall conform to [2.24.3](#).

5.10.1.20.4 Bolts Transmitting Torque, and Set Screws. Bolts transmitting torque, and set screws shall conform to [2.24.4](#).

5.10.1.20.5 Friction Gearing or Clutch Mechanism. Friction gearing or a clutch mechanism is prohibited.

5.10.1.20.6 Use of Cast Iron in Gears. Worms and worm gears made of cast iron are prohibited.

5.10.1.20.7 Driving-Machine Brakes. Driving-machine brakes shall conform to [2.16.8](#), [2.24.8](#), and [2.26.8](#).

5.10.1.21 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

5.10.1.21.1 Applicable Requirements

(22)

(a) Operating devices and control equipment on elevators with a car speed of up to 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min) shall conform to [Section 2.26](#), except that [2.26.1.6](#), [2.26.2.14](#), [2.26.4.4](#), [2.26.12](#), and [2.26.13](#) do not apply. See [5.10.1.21.3](#) regarding temporary wiring requirements.

(b) Operating devices and control equipment on elevators with a car speed of over 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min) shall also conform to [2.26.2.14](#), where applicable.

(c) Elevators used for construction shall not be required to conform to [2.26.11](#).

(d) Remote interaction operation is prohibited (see [2.26.13](#)).

5.10.1.21.2 Operation and Operating Devices. Operating devices shall conform to [2.26.1.1](#). All automatic operation elevators shall conform to [Section 2.14](#).

5.10.1.21.3 Temporary Wiring. Temporary wiring shall conform to Article 305 of NFPA 70 or Section 76 of CSA C22.1, Part I, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)).

5.10.1.22 Floor Numbers. Hoistways shall have floor numbers, not less than 100 mm (4 in.) in height, on the hoistway side of the enclosure or hoistway doors.

5.10.1.23 Capacity and Data Plates or Signs

5.10.1.23.1 Plates or Signs Required and Locations.

Every elevator car shall be provided with a capacity plate or sign and a data plate or sign temporarily fastened in place. The capacity plate or sign shall be located in a conspicuous position inside the car.

The data plate or sign shall be located on the car cross-head or, if there is no crosshead, inside the car.

5.10.1.23.2 Information Required on Plates or Signs

(a) Temporary capacity plates or signs shall indicate the maximum load and the maximum number of passengers allowed in the car during the use of the elevator for construction.

(b) Temporary data plates or signs shall indicate

(1) the approximate temporary weight of the car including the car safety and all auxiliary equipment attached to the car

(2) the temporary rated load and temporary speed

(3) the wire rope data required by 2.20.2.1

(4) the manufacturer's name and the date of installation

5.10.1.23.3 Marking of Plates or Signs. Plates or signs shall have letters and figures stamped, cast, etched, stenciled, or painted on the surface in such a manner as to be legible. The height of the letters and figures shall be not less than

(a) 25 mm (1 in.) for capacity plates

(b) 3 mm (0.125 in.) for data plates

5.10.2 Hydraulic Elevators Used for Construction

5.10.2.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures. Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 5.10.1.1.

5.10.2.2 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to 5.10.1.7.

5.10.2.3 Protection of Spaces Below the Hoistway. Protection of the space below the hoistway shall conform to Section 3.6.

5.10.2.4 Vertical Clearances and Runby for Cars and Counterweights. Bottom and top clearances and runby for cars and counterweights shall conform to Section 3.4.

5.10.2.5 Emergency Doors. Emergency doors shall conform to 3.11.1.

5.10.2.6 Mechanical Equipment. Mechanical equipment shall conform to 5.10.1.10, 5.10.1.11, 5.10.1.13 through 5.10.1.15, 5.10.1.17 through 5.10.1.19, and 5.10.1.23.

5.10.2.7 Hydraulic Jack. Hydraulic jacks shall conform to Section 3.18.

5.10.2.8 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings. Valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to Section 3.19.

5.10.2.9 Counterweight Ropes, Rope Connections, and Sheaves. Counterweight ropes, rope connections, and sheaves shall conform to Section 3.20.

5.10.2.10 Tanks. Tanks shall conform to Section 3.24.

5.10.2.11 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 3.25.

5.10.2.12 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 5.10.1.21.

SECTION 5.11 WIND TURBINE TOWER ELEVATORS

Elevators used in wind turbine towers shall conform to ASME A17.8/CSA B44.8.

SECTION 5.12 OUTSIDE EMERGENCY ELEVATORS

Section 5.12 applies to outside emergency elevators. These elevators are not designed to replace or lessen the number or availability of Firefighters' Emergency Operation (FEO) elevators, stairways, or other required means of firefighter or occupant access or egress, nor is this type of elevator intended for firefighting operations.

NOTE (Section 5.12): See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to outside emergency elevators.

5.12.1 Guidance in Use of ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7

5.12.1.1 Design and testing of outside emergency elevators shall conform to the requirements of ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7, except as modified in 5.12.1.2 through 5.12.1.4.

5.12.1.2 Global Essential Safety Requirement 3.1.6, Locking Landing Doors and Closing LCU (Car) Doors, shall not apply. Movement of the car shall be permitted without locking the landing doors when the risk of not moving from the landing exceeds the risk of moving the car without locking the landing doors.

5.12.1.3 Global Essential Safety Requirement 3.3.5, Gap Between the Landing Doors and LCU (Car) Doors, shall not apply. Means shall be provided to protect users from the hazard of falling or crushing when in the gap between the landing door and the car door.

5.12.1.4 Global Essential Safety Requirement 3.5.5, Restrictions on Equipment in Elevator Spaces, shall apply. The car shall not operate or continue to operate when equipment or other obstructions are present in its path, except when the risk of entrapment exceeds the risk of moving the car.

5.12.2 Performing Risk Assessments

The risk assessment team in conformance with ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 requirement 2.7.2, used to evaluate an outside emergency elevator, shall include a minimum of one member of the fire service experienced in high-rise firefighting and building evacuation. This person shall represent the viewpoint of emergency personnel who operate these elevators.

5.12.3 Operating Instructions

Comprehensive operating instructions, including all pertinent warnings, shall be provided

(a) to the fire department or fire service having jurisdiction

(b) with the Maintenance Control Program; see [8.6.2.1](#)

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME A17.1 CSA B44 2022

Part 6

Escalators and Moving Walks

SCOPE

Part 6 applies to escalators and moving walks used to transport passengers.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to escalators and moving walks.

SECTION 6.1 ESCALATORS

6.1.1 Protection of Floor Openings

Floor openings for escalators shall be protected against falls and the passage of flame, heat, and/or smoke in accordance with the provisions of the applicable building code (see Part 9).

6.1.2 Protection of Trusses and Machinery Spaces Against Fire

The sides and undersides of an escalator truss or group of adjacent trusses in a single wellway shall be enclosed in materials defined as either noncombustible or limited-combustible by the building code or NFPA 101, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Means provided for adequate ventilation of the driving machine and control spaces, when included in the truss enclosure area, shall be permitted.

6.1.3 Construction Requirements

6.1.3.1 Angle of Inclination. The angle of inclination shall be designed not to exceed 30 deg from the horizontal, but due to field conditions at the site shall be permitted to exceed this maximum by 1 deg. The angle shall be measured at the centerline of the steps.

6.1.3.2 Geometry

6.1.3.2.1 The width of the escalator shall be the width of the step tread. See 6.1.3.5.2 for step width requirements.

6.1.3.2.2 The handrail shall be a minimum 100 mm (4 in.) horizontally and 25 mm (1 in.) vertically away from adjacent surfaces, except that rounded fillets or beveled sides of the handrail stand are permitted to reduce the 25 mm (1 in.) clearance between the handrail and the point

where the handrail stand is connected to the balustrade. The centerline of the handrail shall be not more than 240 mm (9.5 in.), measured horizontally, from the vertical plane through the edge of the exposed step. (See Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figures I-1 and I-2.)

6.1.3.3 Balustrades. Balustrades shall be installed on each side of the escalator. (See Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-3.)

6.1.3.3.1 Construction

(a) For

(1) escalators not equipped with dynamic skirt panels, the balustrade on the step side shall have no areas or moldings depressed or raised more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) from the parent surface, except as permitted in 6.1.3.3.10

(2) escalators equipped with dynamic skirt panels, the balustrade on the step side shall have no areas or moldings parallel to the direction of travel that are depressed or raised more than 12 mm (0.47 in.) from the parent surface

(3) all escalators, the depressed or raised areas or moldings shall have boundary edges that are beveled or rounded

(b) The balustrade shall be totally closed, except

(1) where the handrail enters the newel base (see 6.1.3.4.3).

(2) gaps between interior panels shall be not wider than 5 mm (0.19 in.). The edges shall be rounded or beveled.

(3) where the dynamic skirt panels enter the balustrade [see 6.1.3.3.7(c)].

(c) The width between the balustrade interior panels in the direction of travel shall not be changed.

6.1.3.3.2 Strength. Balustrades shall be designed to resist the simultaneous application of a static lateral distributed force of 585 N/m (40 lbf/ft) applied to the side of the handrail and a vertical distributed force of 730 N/m (50 lbf/ft), applied to the top of the handrail.

6.1.3.3.3 Use of Glass or Plastic. Glass or plastic, if used in balustrades, shall conform to the requirements of the following standards, as applicable (see Part 9):

(a) ANSI Z97.1 or 16 CFR Part 1201

(b) one of the following: CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, or CAN/CGSB-12.12; except that there shall be no requirement for the panels to be transparent

Plastic bonded to basic supporting panels is not required to conform to these requirements.

6.1.3.3.4 Interior Low Deck. The interior low deck, where provided, shall conform to the following (see [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-1](#)):

(a) The width from the vertical face of the interior panel to the vertical plane of the skirt panel or the dynamic skirt panel cover, where provided, shall not exceed 150 mm (6 in.).

(b) The angle between the surface of the deck and the plane of the nose line of the steps shall be not less than 20 deg nor more than 30 deg.

(c) A horizontal section shall be permitted immediately adjacent to the interior panel. It shall be not greater than 35 mm (1.25 in.).

(d) The deck and the dynamic skirt panel cover, where provided, at the point closest to the step shall withstand a force of 900 N (200 lbf) perpendicular to the line of attachment of the element without detachment or permanent deformation. The force shall be applied to an area of 645 mm² (1 in.²).

6.1.3.3.5 Loaded Gap Between Skirt and Step. The clearance (loaded gap) between the step tread and the adjacent skirt panel shall be not more than 5 mm (0.2 in.) when 110 N (25 lbf) is laterally applied from the step to the adjacent skirt panel. The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) by more than ±11 N (±2.5 lbf). The load shall be distributed over an area not less than 1 940 mm² (3 in.²) and not more than 3 870 mm² (6 in.²).

6.1.3.3.6 Skirt Panels

(a) The height of the skirt above the tread nose line shall be at least 25 mm (1 in.) measured vertically (see [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-4](#)).

(b) The skirt panel design and installation shall not permit deflection of more than 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) under a force of 667 N (150 lbf).

(c) The exposed surfaces of the skirt panels adjacent to the steps shall be smooth.

(d) *Skirt Deflection Test and Marking/Labeling.* Each skirt panel design shall be tested for deflection with load per (b) as described in [8.3.15](#). Skirt panels shall be marked with the part number or identifying mark and marked/labeled with the following: "Replacement shall meet OEM and A17.1/B44 Code requirements."

6.1.3.3.7 Dynamic Skirt Panels. Dynamic skirt panels, where provided, shall conform to the following:

(a) The height of the dynamic skirt panel above the step tread nose line shall be at least 25 mm (1 in.) measured vertically (see [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-4](#)).

(b) The exposed surfaces of the dynamic skirt panels adjacent to the step treads shall be smooth and in one plane. Exposed edges shall be rounded or beveled.

(c) Guarding shall be provided at the point where the dynamic skirt panels enter the balustrade. The clearance between the guard and the dynamic skirt panels shall not exceed 3 mm (0.125 in.).

(d) The exposed panels that comprise the dynamic skirt panel shall overlap or interlock such that no clear-through spaces exist. The distance between exposed edges of dynamic skirt panel elements shall not exceed 4 mm (0.16 in.).

(e) There shall be a positive mechanical connection between the dynamic skirt panels and the running gear.

(f) The distance between the dynamic skirt panel and the dynamic skirt panel cover shall not exceed 5 mm (0.20 in.).

6.1.3.3.8 Dynamic Skirt Panel Loaded Gap. The gap clearance (loaded gap) at any point between the step tread and the adjacent dynamic skirt panel shall not exceed 5 mm (0.20 in.) when 110 N (25 lbf) is laterally applied from the step to the adjacent dynamic skirt panel. The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) by more than ±11 N (±2.5 lbf). The load shall be distributed over an area not less than 1 940 mm² (3 in.²) and not more than 3 870 mm² (6 in.²).

6.1.3.3.9 Step/Skirt Performance Index

(a) This requirement is not applicable to escalators with dynamic skirt panels. The step/skirt performance index, when the escalator is subjected to the test specified in [8.6.8.15.19](#), shall be the maximum value of the recorded instantaneous step/skirt index $e^v/(e^v + 1)$, where

(SI Units)

$$e = 2.7183$$

L_g = the clearance between the step and the adjacent skirt panel when 110 N is applied from the step to the skirt panel, mm

$$y = -3.77 + 2.37\mu + 0.37L_g$$

μ = the sliding coefficient of friction of a polycarbonate test specimen on the skirt panel at the measurement point calculated when subjected to a 110 N normal load. The coefficient of friction shall be measured without addition of any field-applied lubricant.

The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N by more than ±11 N. The load shall be distributed over a round or square area not less than 1 940 mm² and not more than 3 870 mm².

(Imperial Units)

$$e = 2.7183$$

L_g = the clearance between the step and the adjacent skirt panel when 25 lbf is applied from the step to the skirt panel, in.

$$y = -3.77 + 2.37\mu + 9.3L_g$$

μ = the sliding coefficient of friction of a polycarbonate test specimen on the skirt panel at the measurement point calculated when subjected to a 25 lbf normal load. The coefficient of friction shall be measured without addition of any field-applied lubricant.

The applied load shall not deviate from 25 lbf by more than ± 2.5 lbf. The load shall be distributed over a round or square area not less than 3 in.² and not more than 6 in.²

(b) The step/skirt performance index polycarbonate test specimen shall conform to the following specifications:

- (1) Material: polycarbonate without fillers
- (2) Color: natural, no pigments
- (3) Finish: glossy [roughness less than 0.8 μ m (32 μ in.)]

(4) Area in contact with skirt panel: 2 900 mm² $\pm$ 325 mm² (4.5 in.² $\pm$ 0.5 in.²) and at least 0.8 mm (0.03 in.) thick

(5) Specification: GE Lexan 100 series or equivalent polycarbonate

(c) The escalator step/skirt performance index shall be either of the following:

- (1) ≤ 0.15
- (2) ≤ 0.25 when a skirt deflector device complying with the requirements of 6.1.3.3.10 is provided

6.1.3.3.10 Skirt Deflector Devices. Deflector devices shall be permitted. Where provided, deflector devices shall extend from skirt panels parallel to the escalator's path of travel. Means to secure such deflector devices are permitted to be on the exposed surface of the skirt. Any exposed fastener heads shall be the tamper-resistant type and flush to within 1 mm (0.04 in.).

(a) Rigid elements shall be in conformance with the following conditions:

(1) Horizontal protrusions extending above the step shall be 18 mm (0.72 in.) maximum. Corners or changes in profile shall be rounded or beveled. The exposed surfaces of such elements shall be smooth and permanently treated with a low-friction material.

(2) On the incline, the area of any protrusion shall lie entirely above a line on the skirt panel positioned at least 25 mm (1 in.) vertically above the step nose line. The lower surface shall be beveled not less than 10 deg upward and the upper surface shall be beveled not less than 15 deg downward. (See Figure 6.1.3.3.10.)

(3) At the upper and lower landings, any protrusion shall lie entirely above a line on the skirt panel positioned at least 50 mm (2 in.) vertically above the step nose line. The lower surface shall be beveled not less than 10 deg upward and the upper surface shall be beveled not less than 15 deg downward. Any rigid elements at the landings shall smoothly blend into the rigid elements along the incline in accordance with the radius of curvature of the transition zone.

(4) When attached to the skirt, rigid elements shall withstand a force of 900 N (200 lbf) perpendicular to the line of attachment of the element without detachment or permanent deformation. The force shall be applied to an area of 645 mm² (1 in.²).

(b) Flexible elements shall be in conformance with the following conditions:

(1) The horizontal protrusion extending from the skirt surface above the step shall be 50 mm (2 in.) maximum.

(2) Flexible elements shall be capable of deflecting to an angle of 10 deg or greater above the horizontal.

(3) Noncontinuous flexible elements shall be allowed to deflect to allow a maximum of 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) interference with any point on the step surface.

(4) Continuous flexible elements shall not deflect such that they can contact the steps.

6.1.3.3.11 Guard at Ceiling Intersection

(22)

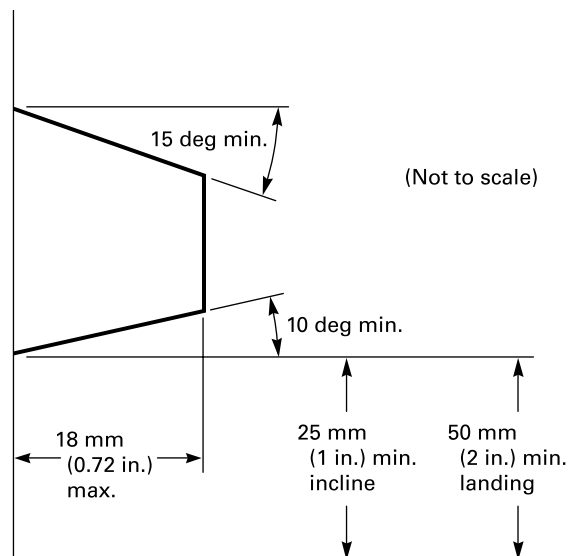
(a) On high-deck balustrades, a solid guard shall be provided in the intersection of the angle of the outside balustrade deck and the ceiling or soffit, under either of the following conditions:

(1) where the clearance between the outside edge of the deck and the ceiling or soffit is 300 mm (12 in.) or less

(2) where the projected intersection of the outside deck and the ceiling or soffit is 600 mm (24 in.) or less from the centerline of the handrail

(b) On low-deck balustrades, a solid guard shall be provided to protect the intersection formed by the top of the handrail and the plain of the ceiling or soffit

Figure 6.1.3.3.10
Dimensions



where the centerline of the handrail is 350 mm (14 in.) or less from the ceiling or soffit.

(c) The vertical edge of the guard shall be a minimum 350 mm (14 in.) in length.

(d) The escalator side of the vertical face of the guard shall be flush with the face of the wellway.

(e) The exposed edge of the guard shall present a minimum width of 25 mm (1 in.) and a minimum radius of 12 mm (0.5 in.).

(f) Guards are permitted to be glass or plastic, provided they meet the requirements of 6.1.3.3.3.

See also [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figures I-5, I-13, and I-14](#).

6.1.3.3.12 Antislid e Devices. On high-deck balustrades, antislid e devices shall be provided on decks or combinations of decks when the outer edge of the deck is greater than 200 mm (8 in.) from the edge of the handrail, or on adjacent escalators when the unobstructed distance between the edge of the facing handrails is greater than 300 mm (12 in.).

These devices shall consist of raised objects fastened to the decks, no closer than 100 mm (4 in.) to the handrail nor further than 300 mm (12 in.) from the handrail. They shall be spaced not more than 2 000 mm (78 in.) apart as measured on a line parallel to the direction of travel and not more than 300 mm (12 in.) as measured on a horizontal line perpendicular to the direction of travel. The height shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.). There shall be no sharp corners or edges. See [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-6](#).

6.1.3.3.13 Deck Barricades

(a) A barricade to restrict access to the outer deck on low-deck exterior balustrades shall be provided at the top and bottom ends of each escalator where the outer deck width exceeds 125 mm (5 in.). On parallel abutting units, this protection shall be provided where the combined outer deck width exceeds 125 mm (5 in.). The barricade shall extend to a height that is nominally 100 mm (4 in.) below the top of the handrail.

(b) When an escalator is not located at the edge of a floor surface, the barricade shall be installed on the outer deck at a point 1 000 mm (40 in.) above the floor where the bottom of the barricade intersects the outer deck.

(c) On parallel adjacent escalators, where the common low deck between adjacent interior panels exceeds 400 mm (16 in.), deck barricades should be spaced evenly up the incline at no greater than 4.6 m (15 ft) measured on a line parallel to the direction of travel.

(d) Barricades made of glass or plastic shall conform to the requirements of 6.1.3.3.3. All exposed barricade attachment fastener heads shall be the tamper-resistant type.

6.1.3.4 Handrails

6.1.3.4.1 Type Required. Each balustrade shall be provided with a handrail moving in the same direction and at substantially the same speed as the steps. In the case of curved escalators, this shall be substantially the same angular velocity. The speed of the handrail shall not change when a retarding force of 450 N (100 lbf) is applied to the handrail opposite to the direction of travel.

6.1.3.4.2 Extension Beyond Combplates. Each moving handrail shall extend at normal handrail height not less than 300 mm (12 in.) beyond the line of points of the combplate teeth at the upper and lower landings.

6.1.3.4.3 Guards. Hand or finger guards shall be provided at the point where the handrail enters the balustrade.

6.1.3.4.4 Splicing. Splicing of handrails shall be done in such a manner that the joint is free of any pinching effect.

6.1.3.4.5 Vertical Height. The vertical height from step nose to top of handrail shall be not less than 900 mm (35 in.) nor more than 1 100 mm (43 in.). See 6.1.1 for floor opening protection adjacent to escalator wellways. (22)

6.1.3.4.6 Handrail Clearance. The horizontal clearance between either lip of the handrail and the handrail stand shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.). (See [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-2](#).)

6.1.3.5 Steps

6.1.3.5.1 Material and Type

(a) Step frames, treads, risers, and dynamic skirt panels, excluding the step's attachments or inserts, shall be metal, except that magnesium alloys shall not be used; or the materials, in their end-use configuration, shall have a flame spread index of 0 to 50 based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E84, UL 723, NFPA 255, or CAN/ULC-S102.2, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)).

(b) Nonmetallic attachments and inserts (excluding wheels) shall be classified 94 HB or better in accordance with ANSI/UL 94.

(c) Step treads shall be horizontal and shall afford a secure foothold. The step supporting system shall be designed so that the back of the step cannot tip upward more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) at any point.

6.1.3.5.2 Dimensions of Steps. The depth of any step tread in the direction of travel shall be not less than 400 mm (15.75 in.), and the rise between treads shall be not more than 220 mm (8.5 in.). The width of a step tread shall be not less than 560 mm (22 in.) nor more than 1 020 mm (40 in.). (See [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-7](#).)

6.1.3.5.3 Cleated Step Risers. The step riser shall be provided with vertical cleats, which shall mesh with slots on the adjacent step tread wherever the steps are exposed. (See [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-8.](#))

6.1.3.5.4 Clearance Between Steps. The maximum clearance between step treads on the horizontal run shall be 6 mm (0.25 in.). (See [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-12.](#))

6.1.3.5.5 Slotting of Step Treads. The tread surface of each step shall be slotted in a direction parallel to the travel of the steps. Each slot shall be not more than 6.5 mm (0.25 in.) wide and not less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) deep, and the distance from center to center of adjoining slots shall be not more than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.).

Slots shall be located on the step tread surface to form a cleat on each side of the step tread adjacent to the skirt or dynamic skirt panel.

6.1.3.5.6 Step Demarcation. There shall be demarcation lines on the step tread along the back of the step to delineate the division between steps. These lines shall be marked by a yellow strip a minimum of 38 mm (1.5 in.) wide and a maximum of 50 mm (2 in.) wide. [See [6.1.3.5.1\(b\).](#)]

There shall be demarcation lines on the step tread along the sides of the step. These side lines shall be yellow and at least 13 mm (0.5 in.) wide and shall not exceed 50 mm (2 in.) wide. [See [6.1.3.5.1\(b\).](#)]

6.1.3.5.7 Step Fatigue Tests. Each step width shall be subjected to the step fatigue test as described in [8.3.11.](#)

6.1.3.5.8 Step Wheels. Where support wheels attached to the steps are not located within the width of the step, provision shall be made to prevent the step from falling into the escalator interior due to a loss of one or more of the support wheel assemblies.

6.1.3.6 Entrance and Egress Ends

6.1.3.6.1 Combplates

(a) There shall be a combplate, to which the combs shall be fastened, at the entrance and at the exit of every escalator.

(b) The comb teeth shall be meshed with and set into the slots in the tread surfaces so that the points of the teeth are always below the upper surface of the treads.

(c) Combplates shall be adjustable vertically. Sections forming the comb teeth shall be readily replaceable.

(d) The comb section, combplate, and landing plate assemblies shall not make contact with the step treads when a weight of 160 kg (350 lb) is applied to any area 200 mm × 300 mm (8 in. × 12 in.) centered on the plates with the 300 mm (12 in.) dimension parallel to the direction of travel.

6.1.3.6.2 Distinction Between Comb and Step. There shall be a visual contrast between the comb and the step, achieved by color, pattern, or texture.

6.1.3.6.3 Adjacent Floor Surfaces. The adjacent floor surfaces at each landing shall be continuous with the top of the landing plate with no abrupt change in elevation of more than 6 mm (0.25 in.).

6.1.3.6.4 Safety Zone. The entry and exit zone shall be kept clear of all obstacles. The width of the zone shall be not less than the width between the centerlines of the handrails plus 200 mm (8 in.). The length of the zone, measured from the end of the newel, shall be not less than twice the distance between the centerlines of the handrails. Space shall be provided to accommodate all traffic in the safety zone.

NOTE: These dimensions are absolute minimums.

6.1.3.6.5 Flat Steps. There shall be a minimum of two and a maximum of four flat steps at the entrance and exit of every escalator. (See [Section 1.3](#) and [6.1.3.5.2.](#))

6.1.3.7 Trusses or Girders. The truss or girder shall be designed to safely sustain the running gear in operation. In the event of a failure, the track system shall retain the running gear within the confines of this truss.

Where tightening devices are operated by means of tension weights, provision shall be made to retain these weights in the truss if they should be released.

6.1.3.8 Step Wheel Tracks. Step wheel tracks shall be designed to prevent displacement of the running gear if a step chain breaks.

6.1.3.9 Rated Load

6.1.3.9.1 Structural. For the purpose of structural design, the rated load shall be considered to be the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Structural rated load (kg)} = D_1(W + 203)A/1000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Structural rated load (lb)} = D_2(W + 8)A/12$$

where

A = length of the horizontal projection of the entire truss measured along its centerline, m (ft)

D_1 = loading factor = 270 kg/m²

D_2 = loading factor = 55.2 lb/ft²

W = width of the escalator, mm (in.) (see [6.1.3.2](#))

6.1.3.9.2 Machinery

(a) For the purpose of driving machine and power transmission calculations, the rated load for all single driving machines shall be considered to be the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (kg)} = D_3(W + 203)B_1/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (lb)} = D_4(W + 8)B_1/12$$

(b) The rated load per module for two or more modular driving machines shall be considered to be the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (kg)} = D_3(W + 203)B_2/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (lb)} = D_4(W + 8)B_2/12$$

where

$$B_1 = \cot \theta \times \text{total rise, m (ft)}$$

$$B_2 = \cot \theta \times \text{rise per module, m (ft)}$$

$$D_3 = \text{loading factor} = 210 \text{ kg/m}^2$$

$$D_4 = \text{loading factor} = 42.0 \text{ lb/ft}^2$$

$$W = \text{width of the escalator, mm (in.) (see 6.1.3.2)}$$

$$\theta = \text{the angle of inclination, deg (see 6.1.3.1)}$$

6.1.3.9.3 Brake

(a) For the purpose of brake calculations, the rated load for all single driving machines shall be considered to be the following:

(1) with escalator stopped

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = D_5(W + 203)B_1/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = D_6(W + 8)B_1/12$$

(2) with escalator running

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = D_3(W + 203)B_1/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = D_4(W + 8)B_1/12$$

(b) The rated load per module for two or more modular driving machines shall be considered to be the following:

(1) with escalator stopped

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = D_5(W + 203)B_2/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = D_6(W + 8)B_2/12$$

(2) with escalator running

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = D_3(W + 203)B_2/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = D_4(W + 8)B_2/12$$

where

$$B_1 = \cot \theta \times \text{total rise, m (ft)}$$

$$B_2 = \cot \theta \times \text{rise per module, m (ft)}$$

$$D_3 = \text{loading factor} = 210 \text{ kg/m}^2$$

$$D_4 = \text{loading factor} = 42.0 \text{ lb/ft}^2$$

$$D_5 = \text{loading factor} = 360 \text{ kg/m}^2$$

$$D_6 = \text{loading factor} = 73.7 \text{ lb/ft}^2$$

$$W = \text{width of the escalator, mm (in.) (see 6.1.3.2)}$$

$$\theta = \text{the angle of inclination, deg (see 6.1.3.1)}$$

6.1.3.9.4 Step. The step shall be designed to support a load of 135 kg (300 lb) on a 150 mm × 250 mm (6 in. × 10 in.) plate placed on any part of the step with the 250 mm (10 in.) dimension in the direction of step travel.

6.1.3.10 Design Factors of Safety. Factors of safety are based on either single driving-machine design or modular driving-machine design and shall comply with those stated in 6.1.3.10.1 through 6.1.3.10.4.

6.1.3.10.1 Trusses and all supporting structures, including tracks, shall conform to ANSI/AISC 360-05 or CAN/CSA-S16.1-09, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), based on the maximum static load calculated per 6.1.3.9.1.

6.1.3.10.2 For driving-machine parts, the factors of safety shall be as follows, based on lifting the machinery rated load calculated per 6.1.3.9.2, including all applicable system losses and any other imposed loads:

(a) not less than 8 where the parts are made of steel or bronze

(b) not less than 10 where the parts are made of cast iron or other materials

6.1.3.10.3 For power transmission members, the factor of safety shall be not less than 10, based on lifting the machinery rated load calculated per 6.1.3.9.2, including all applicable system losses and any other imposed loads.

6.1.3.10.4 For steps, the factor of safety shall be not less than 5, based on the loads designated in 6.1.3.9.4.

6.1.3.11 Chains. The use of chains with cast iron links shall not be permitted.

6.1.3.12 Headroom. The minimum headroom height shall be 2 130 mm (84 in.) measured vertically from the step nose line and the landings. The headroom width shall be not less than the width of the safety

zone (see 6.1.3.6.4). The length and width of the clear headroom space shall align with the length and width of the escalator, including the safety zone.

6.1.3.13 Welding. Welding shall conform to Section 8.8.

6.1.3.14 Non-Escalator-Related Equipment. Components not used directly in connection with the escalator are prohibited to be installed on, in, or through the escalator.

6.1.3.15 Water Accumulation. Permanent provisions shall be made to prevent accumulation of groundwater in the pit. Drains and sump pumps, where provided, shall comply with the applicable plumbing code.

6.1.4 Rated Speed

6.1.4.1 Limits of Speed

6.1.4.1.1 The rated speed shall be not more than 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min), measured along the centerline of the steps in the direction of travel.

The speed attained by an escalator after start-up shall not be intentionally varied, except as permitted by 6.1.4.1.2.

6.1.4.1.2 Variation of the escalator speed after start-up shall be permitted, provided the escalator installation conforms to all of the following:

(a) The acceleration and deceleration rates shall not exceed 0.3 m/s^2 (1.0 ft/s^2).

(b) The rated speed is not exceeded.

(c) The minimum speed shall be not less than 0.05 m/s (10 ft/min).

(d) The speed shall not automatically vary during Inspection Operation.

(e) Passenger detection means shall be provided at both landings of the escalator such that

(1) detection of any approaching passenger shall cause the escalator to accelerate to or maintain the full escalator speed conforming to (a) through (d)

(2) detection of any approaching passenger shall occur sufficiently in advance of boarding to cause the escalator to attain full operating speed before a passenger walking at normal speed [1.35 m/s (270 ft/min)] reaches the combplate

(3) it shall remain active at the egress landing to detect any passenger approaching against the direction of escalator travel and shall cause the escalator to accelerate to full rated speed and sound the alarm (see 6.1.6.3.1) at the approaching landing before the passenger reaches the combplate

(f) Automatic deceleration shall not occur before a period of time has elapsed since the last passenger detection that is greater than 3 times the amount of time necessary to transfer a passenger between landings.

(g) Means shall be provided to detect failure of the passenger detection means and shall cause the escalator to operate at full rated speed only.

6.1.5 Driving Machine, Motor, and Brake

6.1.5.1 Connection Between Driving Machine and Main Driveshaft. The driving machine shall be connected to the main driveshaft by toothed gearing, a mechanical coupling, or a chain.

6.1.5.2 Driving Motor. An electric motor shall not drive more than one escalator driving machine. A driving machine shall not operate more than one escalator.

6.1.5.3 Brakes

6.1.5.3.1 Escalator Driving-Machine Brake

(22)

(a) Each escalator driving machine shall be provided with an electrically released and mechanically or magnetically applied brake. If the brake is magnetically applied, a ceramic permanent magnet shall be used. There shall be no intentional time delay designed into the application of the brake, except as permitted in 6.1.5.3.4(b).

(b) The brake shall be applied automatically if the electrical power supply is interrupted. The brake shall be capable of stopping the down-running escalator with any load up to the brake rated load [see 6.1.3.9.3(a)(2) or 6.1.3.9.3(b)(2)]. The brake shall hold the stopped escalator with any load up to the brake rated load [see 6.1.3.9.3(a)(1) or 6.1.3.9.3(b)(1)].

(c) Driving-machine brakes shall stop the down-running escalator steps at an average rate not greater than 0.91 m/s^2 (3 ft/s^2) as measured over the total retardation time. No peak horizontal retardation value exceeding 0.91 m/s^2 (3 ft/s^2) shall have a time duration greater than 0.125 s (see **Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-11**). (See also 6.1.6.3.6.)

(d) The escalator brake shall be provided with a data plate conforming to 8.13.1 that is readily visible and located on the machine brake, and when necessary, a duplicate data plate with the certification mark shall be placed adjacent to the machine brake. The data plate shall indicate

(1) brake torque and related data as follows:

(-a) for fixed-torque brakes, the range of brake torque that complies with 6.1.5.3.1 and 6.1.6.3.6

(-b) for variable-torque brakes, the minimum brake torque for a loaded escalator and the minimum stopping distance for the unloaded escalator that comply with 6.1.5.3.1 and 6.1.6.3.6

(2) the method of measuring the torque, designated "BREAKAWAY" or "DYNAMIC," based on the method used when measuring the torque

(3) the location where the torque is to be measured, e.g., "MOTOR SHAFT," "MACHINE INPUT SHAFT," "MAIN DRIVESHAFT"

(4) the type of brake, i.e., fixed or variable torque

(5) the maximum stopping distance with rated load in the down direction that corresponds to the minimum distance between either

(-a) the comb and the step when the step is positioned to activate any of the safety devices required in 6.1.6.3.6, 6.1.6.3.9, 6.1.6.3.11, or 6.1.6.5 or

(-b) the activation point of the dynamic skirt panel obstruction device (see 6.1.6.3.16) and the entrance of the skirt panel into the balustrade

(e) Where means other than a continuous shaft, mechanical coupling, or toothed gearing is used to connect the motor to a gear reducer, the escalator driving-machine brake shall be located on the gear reducer or main driveshaft.

(22) **6.1.5.3.2 Main Driveshaft Braking.** If the escalator driving-machine brake is separated from the main driveshaft by chain used to connect the driving machine to the main driveshaft, either

(a) a mechanically applied or permanent magnet brake capable of stopping and holding a down-running escalator with brake rated load (see 6.1.3.9.3) shall be provided on the main driveshaft or

(b) multiple and separate chains, each with an individual drive-chain device in accordance with 6.1.6.3.4 and each with connection to the escalator driving-machine brake(s) and/or other brake(s) with capacity capable of stopping and holding a down-running escalator with brake rated load (see 6.1.3.9.3), shall be provided

6.1.5.3.3 Escalator driving-machine brakes and motor-controlled dynamic braking systems shall be certified to the requirements of 8.3.1 and 8.3.6.

6.1.5.3.4 Escalator Driving-Machine Motor-Controlled Dynamic Braking. Motor-controlled dynamic braking of an escalator by variable-frequency control of the escalator driving-machine motor shall be permitted, provided that

(a) The motor-controlled dynamic braking function conforms to the acceleration requirements in 6.1.5.3.1(c) and, where applicable, the stopping distance requirements in 6.1.5.3.1(d)(5).

(b) The escalator driving-machine brake complying with 6.1.3.9.3 and 6.1.5.3.1 shall be applied not later than when the escalator has stopped. Interruption of electrical power to the escalator or driving-machine motor shall automatically cause application of the machine brake.

(c) Activation of electrical protective devices that do not specifically permit dynamic braking shall stop the escalator only by the removal of electrical power from the driving-machine motor and brake.

(d) Stopping performance shall be monitored in conformance with 6.1.6.10 throughout the retardation period at intervals not greater than 25 ms and shall cause the removal of electrical power from the driving-machine motor and brake if the deceleration does not

conform to the requirements in 6.1.5.3.1(c) or it is determined that the stopping rate will not result in a stopping distance conforming to the requirements of 6.1.5.3.1(d)(5), where applicable. Nonconformance shall require a manual reset.

6.1.5.3.5 Auxiliary Brake. Escalators not utilizing (22) dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) and with a rise greater than 6.00 m (20 ft) shall be equipped with an auxiliary brake that complies with the brake requirements in 6.1.5.3.1 and 6.1.5.3.3.

(a) Application of the auxiliary brake shall be caused only by one of the following:

(1) by actuation of the escalator speed monitoring device (see 6.1.6.3.2)

(2) by actuation of the drive-chain device if the auxiliary brake is located on the main shaft and utilized to also function as a main driveshaft brake (see 6.1.5.3.2) when a main driveshaft brake is required

(b) In addition to (a), the auxiliary brake shall be applied after the escalator has stopped.

(c) Where simultaneous application of the driving machine brake and auxiliary brake occur, requirement 6.1.5.3.1(c) does not apply.

6.1.6 Operating and Safety Devices

6.1.6.1 General. Operating and safety devices conforming to the requirements of this Section shall be provided. When more than one driving machine per escalator is used, actuation of devices covered by this Section shall simultaneously control all driving machines.

6.1.6.1.1 Automatic Operation. Automatic starting by any means, or automatic stopping, except as required in 6.1.6, shall be prohibited.

6.1.6.2 Starting and Inspection Control Switches

6.1.6.2.1 Escalators shall be provided with a starting switch(es) conforming to the following:

(a) *Location and Design.* The switch(es) shall be

(1) located so that the escalator steps are within sight.

(2) key operated, the continuous-pressure spring-return type, and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination.

(3) clearly and permanently marked "DOWN," "RUN," and "UP," in that order, with the key removable only in the "RUN" (spring return) position. The switch(es) shall be rotated clockwise to go from the "DOWN" position to the "RUN" position to the "UP" position.

(b) *Operating Requirements.* The operation of the switch(es) shall initiate movement of the escalator. The escalator shall not start (restart) unless all starting switch(es) are in the "RUN" position.

(c) The starting switch(es) shall be located within reach of an emergency stop button (see 6.1.6.3.1).

(d) The key shall be Group 2 Security (see [Section 8.1](#)).

6.1.6.2.2 Inspection Control. Each escalator shall be equipped with inspection controls not accessible to the general public during normal operation to provide constant-pressure operation during maintenance, repair, or inspection by means of a manually operated control device.

(a) *General Requirements*

(1) Switches for transferring the control of the escalator to Inspection Operation shall be provided or a switch shall be provided at each landing in a portable control station; the switch(es) shall function as follows:

(-a) be through a contact that shall be positively opened mechanically and whose opening shall not depend solely on springs

(-b) be manually operated

(-c) be labeled "INSPECTION"

(-d) have two positions, labeled "INSPECTION" or "INSP" and "NORMAL" or "NORM"

(-e) when in the "INSPECTION" position, it shall cause the movement of the escalator to be solely under the control of constant-pressure operating devices at that landing or in that portable control station

(-f) be arranged so that if more than one inspection transfer switch is in the "INSPECTION" position, then all constant-pressure operating devices at all locations shall be inoperative

(-g) be protected against accidental contact

(2) Constant-pressure operating devices shall

(-a) allow movement of the escalator only by constant application of manual pressure

(-b) be distinctly recognizable from indications on the device as to the direction of travel controlled

(-c) be protected against accidental contact

(-d) be located so that the escalator steps are within sight

(3) A stop switch conforming to [6.1.6.3.15](#) shall be provided adjacent to the constant-pressure operating devices.

(4) When portable control stations are used, the cord length shall not exceed 3 000 mm (120 in.).

(b) *Plug-in Portable Control Station.* A plug-in portable control station shall be permitted, provided that

(1) either a transfer switch conforming to (a)(1) is complied with, or, when plugged in, the escalator shall automatically transfer to Inspection Operation

(2) when the switch, if provided, is in the "INSPECTION" position, or when the control station is plugged in, it shall cause the movement of the escalator to be solely under the control of constant-pressure operating devices contained in the portable unit

(3) the plug-in portable control station is stored at the upper landing machinery space

6.1.6.3 Electrical Protective Devices. Electrical protective devices shall be provided in accordance with [6.1.6.3.1](#) through [6.1.6.3.16](#).

6.1.6.3.1 Emergency Stop Buttons

(a) *Location.* A red stop button shall be visibly located at the upper and lower landings on the right side facing the escalator. In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, remote stop buttons are prohibited. In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, if remote buttons are provided, they shall be located such that the escalator is visible from the stop button location.

(1) On high-deck balustrades, they shall be located on the curved newel deck in the upper quadrant, with the centerline of the button at a 45 deg angle from the horizontal.

(2) On low-deck balustrades, they shall be located below the handrail height. The centerline of the button shall be located on a radial line 45 deg above the horizontal, such that no part of the button assembly is within 38 mm (1.5 in.) of the bottom of the handrail and the button is no more than 90 mm (3.5 in.) from the bottom of the handrail.

(b) *Cover, Alarm, and Marking.* The buttons shall be covered with a transparent cover that can be readily lifted or pushed aside. When the cover is moved, an audible warning signal shall be activated. The signal shall have a sound intensity of 80 dBA minimum at the button location. The cover shall be marked "EMERGENCY STOP," "MOVE COVER" or an equivalent legend (e.g., "LIFT COVER," "SLIDE COVER"), and "PUSH BUTTON." "EMERGENCY STOP" shall be in letters not less than 12 mm (0.5 in.) high. Other required wording shall be in letters not less than 4.8 mm (0.188 in.) high. The cover shall be self-resetting.

(c) *Operation.* The operation of either of these buttons shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see [6.1.5.3.4](#)) or the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake. It shall not be possible to start the escalator by these buttons.

6.1.6.3.2 Escalator Speed-Monitoring Device. An (22) escalator speed-monitoring device shall be provided.

(a) The operation of the device shall cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake, and the auxiliary brake (see [6.1.5.3.5](#)) if so equipped, if the speed exceeds the rated speed by more than 20%.

(b) The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.3 Broken Step-Chain Device

(a) A broken step-chain device shall be provided, which shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see [6.1.5.3.4](#)) or the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake

(1) if a step chain breaks

(2) where no automatic chain tension device is provided, if excessive sag occurs in either step chain

(b) The device shall be the manual-reset type.

- (22) **6.1.6.3.4 Drive-Chain Device.** When the driving machine is connected to the main driveshaft by chain, a device shall be provided that will cause the application of the brake on the main driveshaft, if so equipped [see 6.1.5.3.2(a) and 6.1.5.3.5(b)], and will also cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake if any drive chain between the machine and the main driveshaft becomes disengaged from the sprockets. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.5 Stop Switch in Machinery Spaces. A stop switch shall be provided in each machinery space and other spaces where means of access to the interior space is provided (see 6.1.7.3), except for the machinery space where the main line disconnect switch is located. The stop switch shall

(a) when opened ("STOP" position), cause the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake

(b) be the manually opened and closed type

(c) have red operating handles or buttons

(d) be conspicuously and permanently marked "STOP," and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions

(e) have contacts that are positively opened mechanically, and their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs

6.1.6.3.6 Escalator Skirt Obstruction Device. Means shall be provided to cause initiation of dynamic braking (6.1.5.3.4) or the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake if an object becomes caught between the step and the skirt as the step approaches the upper or lower combplate. The device shall be located at a point at which the step assumes a flat step position (see 6.1.3.6.5). The escalator shall stop before that object reaches the combplate with any load up to full brake rated load with the escalator running [see 6.1.3.9.3(a)(2) and 6.1.3.9.3(b)(2)]. The device shall be the manual-reset type, or it shall be permitted to automatically reset not more than one time within 24 h of operation and thereafter require a manual reset before the next restart. Interruption of power during operation should not cause the device to lose the status of the timer nor the count of events.

6.1.6.3.7 Escalator Egress Restriction Device. Egress restrictors that would prevent the free and continuous exiting of passengers, if used, shall provide a signal to a device on the escalator that shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake when the exit restrictors begin to close.

6.1.6.3.8 Reversal Stop Device. Means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake in case of reversal of travel while the escalator is operating in the ascending direction. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.9 Step Upthrust Device. Means shall be provided in the passenger-carrying line of the track system to detect a step forced upward in the lower transition curve at or prior to the point of tangency of the horizontal and curved track. The means shall actuate when the riser end of the step is displaced upward more than 5 mm (0.20 in.) at the lower landing. Actuation of the means shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. The escalator shall stop before the detected step reaches the combplate with any load up to brake rated load with the escalator running [see 6.1.3.9.3(a)(2) and 6.1.3.9.3(b)(2)]. The device shall be the manual-reset type, or it shall be permitted to automatically reset not more than one time within 24 h of operation and thereafter require a manual reset before the next restart. Interruption of power during operation should not cause the device to lose the status of the timer nor the count of events.

6.1.6.3.10 Disconnected Motor Safety Device. If the drive motor is attached to a gear reducer by means other than a continuous shaft, mechanical coupling, or toothed gearing, a device shall be provided that will cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake (see 6.1.5.3.1), if the motor becomes disconnected from the gear reducer. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.11 Step Level Device. Step level devices shall be located at the top and bottom of the escalator. These devices shall detect downward displacement of 3 mm (0.125 in.) or greater at the riser end at either side of the step. When activated, the device shall cause the escalator to stop before the step enters the combplate. The device shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. Devices shall be the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.12 Handrail Entry Device. A handrail entry device shall be provided at each newel. It shall be operative in the newels in which the handrail enters the balustrade. Activation of the device shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. It shall operate if either of the following occurs:

(a) an object becomes caught between the handrail and the handrail guard

(b) an object approaches the area between the handrail and the handrail guard

For those units that rely on an opening of the balustrade to prevent entrapment, all handrail entry devices shall be operative whenever the handrails are operating. The device shall be the manual-reset type, or it shall be permitted to automatically reset not more than one time within 24 h of operation and thereafter require a manual reset before the next restart. Interruption of power during operation should not cause the device to lose the status of the timer nor the count of events.

- (22) **6.1.6.3.13 Comb-Step Impact Devices.** Devices shall be provided that will cause the opening of the power circuit to the escalator driving-machine motor and brake if either

(a) a horizontal force not greater than 1 780 N (400 lbf) in the direction of travel is applied at either side, or not greater than 3 560 N (800 lbf) at the center of the front edge of the combplate or

(b) a resultant vertical force not greater than 670 N (150 lbf) in the upward direction is applied at the center of the front of the combplate

These devices shall be the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.14 Step Lateral Displacement Device. A device shall be provided on curved escalators to cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake should a step be excessively displaced horizontally due to a failure in the lateral support system. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.15 Stop Switch in Inspection Controls. A stop switch conforming to the following requirements shall be provided when required by 6.1.6.2.2:

(a) when opened ("STOP" position), cause the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake

(b) be the manually opened and closed type

(c) have red operating handles or buttons

(d) be conspicuously and permanently marked "STOP," and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions

(e) shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically, and their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs

6.1.6.3.16 Dynamic Skirt Panel Obstruction Device. Means shall be provided to cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake if an object becomes caught between the dynamic skirt panel and the dynamic skirt panel cover in the upper or lower transition zone. The device shall be the manual-reset type. The escalator shall stop before the object reaches the balustrade with any load up to full brake rated load with the escalator running [see 6.1.3.9.3(a)(2) and 6.1.3.9.3(b)(2)].

6.1.6.4 Handrail Speed-Monitoring Device. A handrail speed-monitoring device shall be provided that will cause the activation of the alarm required by 6.1.6.3.1(b) without any intentional delay, whenever the speed of either handrail deviates from the step speed by 15% or more. The device shall also cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake when the speed deviation of 15% or more is continuous within a 2 s to 6 s range. The device shall be the manual-reset type, or it shall be permitted to automatically reset not more than one time within 24 h of operation and thereafter require a manual reset before the next restart. Interruption of power during operation shall not cause the device to lose the status of the timer nor the count of events.

6.1.6.5 Missing Step and Missing Dynamic Skirt Devices

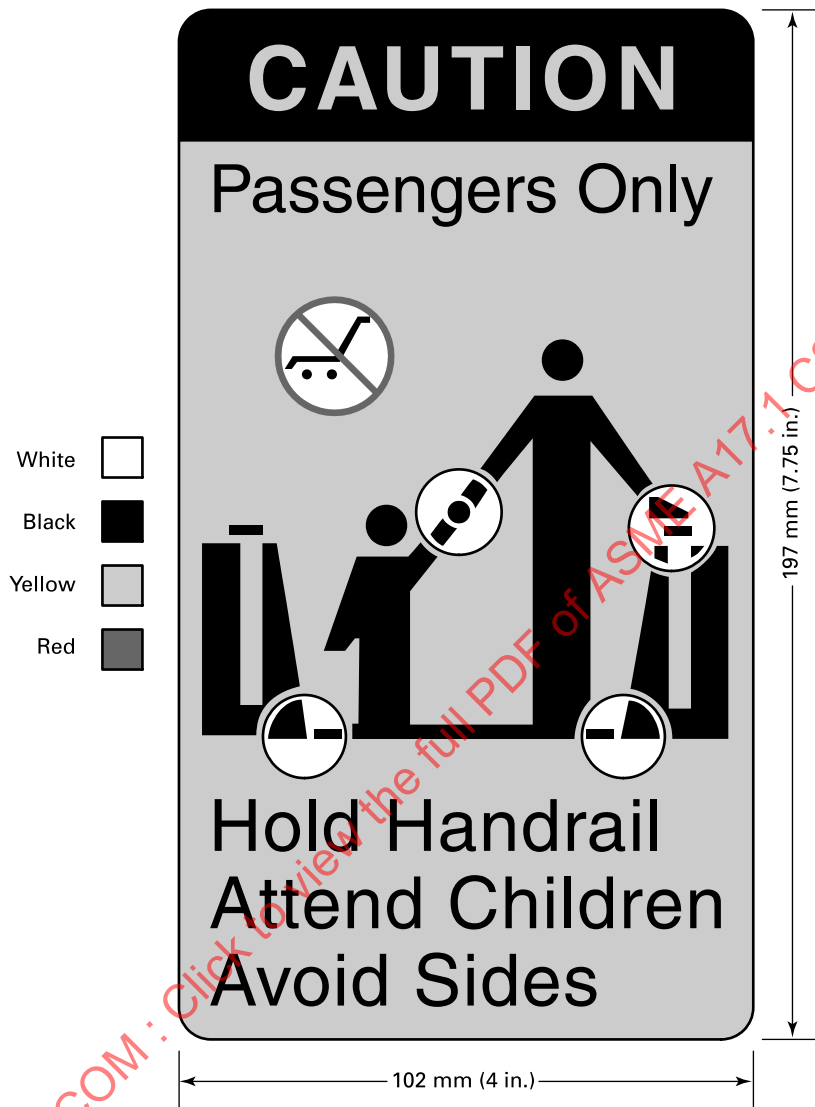
(a) A device shall be provided to detect a missing step and bring the escalator to a stop, before the gap resulting from the missing step emerges from the comb. The device shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

(b) For escalators with dynamic skirts, a device shall be provided to detect a missing dynamic skirt panel and bring the escalator to a stop, before the gap resulting from the missing dynamic skirt panel emerges from the balustrade. The device shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.6 Tandem Operation. Tandem operation escalators shall be electrically interlocked where traffic flow is such that bunching will occur if the escalator carrying passengers away from the intermediate landing stops. The electrical interlocks shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake of the escalator carrying passengers into the common intermediate landing if the escalator carrying passengers away from the landing stops. These escalators shall also be electrically interlocked to assure that they run in the same direction.

6.1.6.7 Escalator Braking-Distance Monitor. A device shall be provided to monitor the performance of the driving-machine brake(s). Whenever the driving-machine brake is applied, the device shall detect when the maximum stopping distance as determined by 6.1.5.3.1(d)(5) or the minimum stopping distance based on the average stopping rate in 6.1.5.3.1(c) is not achieved and prevent the escalator from restarting. The device shall be the manual-reset type (see 6.1.6.14).

Figure 6.1.6.9.1
Caution Sign



6.1.6.8 Escalator Smoke Detectors. Smoke detectors shall be permitted that shall activate the alarm required by 6.1.6.3.1(b) and, after at least 15 s, shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) or power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake.

6.1.6.9 Signs

6.1.6.9.1 Caution Signs. A caution sign shall be located at the top and bottom landings of each escalator, readily visible to boarding passengers.

The sign shall include the following wording:

- (a) "Caution"
- (b) "Passengers Only"
- (c) "Hold Handrail"

(d) "Attend Children"

(e) "Avoid Sides"

The sign shall be standard for all escalators and shall be identical in format, size, color, wording, and pictorials as shown in Figure 6.1.6.9.1. The sign shall be durable and have a maximum thickness of 6.4 mm (0.25 in.), with rounded or beveled corners and edges.

6.1.6.9.2 Signs or Graphics Relating to Safety. Signs or graphics relating to safety shall not be permitted on or adjacent to the escalator in such a manner that they obstruct boarding passengers' view of the signs required in 6.1.6.9.1, physically obstruct passenger flow at the landings as specified in the safety zone (see 6.1.3.6.4), or obstruct or reduce passenger access to the handrails.

The signs shall be legible and shall not be distracting, create passenger flow hazards, or impair the function of safety devices.

6.1.6.9.3 Additional Signs or Graphics. Signs or graphics other than those specified in 6.1.6.9.1 and 6.1.6.9.2 shall not be permitted adjacent to the escalator in such a manner that they obstruct boarding passengers' view of the signs required in 6.1.6.9.1 or obstruct or reduce passenger access to the handrails, within the safety zone (see 6.1.3.6.4), nor on the escalator except for signs, graphics, or markings required by this Code, manufacturer's identification, owner's identification, step riser signs or graphics, and handrail signs or graphics that are permitted on the escalator. The signs shall not be distracting, create passenger flow hazards, or impair the function of safety devices.

6.1.6.10 Control and Operating Circuits. The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 6.1.6.10.1 through 6.1.6.10.4.

6.1.6.10.1 The occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; or the failure of any single solid-state device; or a software system failure shall not

- (a) permit the escalator to start
- (b) render ineffective any electrical protective device required by 6.1.6.3
- (c) render ineffective the handrail speed-monitoring device required by 6.1.6.4
- (d) render ineffective the missing step device required by 6.1.6.5
- (e) render ineffective the missing dynamic skirt device required by 6.1.6.5
- (f) permit the escalator to revert to normal operation when on Inspection Operation (see 6.1.6.2.2)

NOTE [6.1.6.10.1(b) through 6.1.6.10.1(e)]: Requirements apply only to the circuits in which the devices are used and not to the devices themselves.

6.1.6.10.2 Methods used to satisfy 6.1.6.10.1 using software systems are permitted, provided that a non-software-controlled means is also used to remove power from the driving-machine motor and brake.

6.1.6.10.3 Methods used in the control and operating circuits to satisfy the requirements of 6.1.6.10.1 shall be checked prior to each start of the escalator. When a single ground or failure as specified in 6.1.6.10.1 occurs, the escalator shall not be permitted to restart.

6.1.6.10.4 Escalators with driving-machine motors employing static control shall conform to the following:

- (a) Two devices shall be provided to remove power from the driving-machine motor. At least one device shall be an electromechanical contactor.
 - (1) The contactor shall be arranged to open each time the escalator stops.

- (2) The contactor shall cause the removal of power from the driving-machine brake in accordance with 6.1.6.3.4.

- (b) An additional contactor shall be provided to also open the driving-machine brake circuit. This contactor is not required to have contacts in the driving-machine motor circuit.

- (c) The electrical protective devices required by 6.1.6.3 shall control the solid-state device and both contactors, or the dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4) as permitted.

- (d) After each stop of the escalator, the escalator shall not respond to a signal to start unless both contactors [see (a) and (b)] are in the de-energized position.

6.1.6.11 Electrically Powered Safety Devices. If the handrail speed-monitoring device required by 6.1.6.4, the missing step or missing skirt device required by 6.1.6.5, the stopping performance monitoring required by 6.1.5.3.4(d), or any electrical protective device required by 6.1.6.3 requires electrical power for its functioning

- (a) a loss of electrical power to the device shall cause power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake

- (b) the occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; the failure of any single solid-state device; or a software system failure shall not render any of the following inoperative:

- (1) the missing step or missing dynamic skirt device
- (2) the handrail speed-monitoring device
- (3) the stopping performance monitor
- (4) the electrical protective device

- (c) when a single ground or failure as described in (b) occurs, the escalator shall not be permitted to restart

6.1.6.12 Installation of Capacitors or Other Devices or Means to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective. (22)

The installation of capacitors or other devices, the operation or failure of which will cause an unsafe operation of the escalator, is prohibited. No permanent device shall be installed, except as provided for in this Code, which will make any required electrical protective device ineffective. (See also 6.1.6.3.4.)

6.1.6.13 Completion or Maintenance of a Circuit. The completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to stop the escalator when the emergency stop switch is opened or when any of the electrical protective devices operate. These requirements do not apply to speed control switches (see 6.1.6.3.2, 6.1.6.3.8, and 6.1.6.4) or to dynamic braking (see 6.1.5.3.4).

6.1.6.14 Escalator Manual Reset. Where manual reset is required, interruption of power to the escalator shall not cause a safety device to lose the status of the event upon return of power. The cause of the malfunction shall be indicated in some manner, so that an examination will be made prior to restarting the escalator. The starting

switch shall not be operable until the reset for each activated device is accomplished.

6.1.6.15 Contactors and Relays for Use in Critical Operating Circuits. Where electromechanical contactors or relays are provided to fulfill the requirements of 6.1.6.10.1 through 6.1.6.10.4, they shall be considered to be used in critical operating circuits. If a contact(s) on these electromechanical contactors or relays is used for monitoring purposes, it shall be prevented from changing state if the contact(s) used in a critical operating circuit fails to open in the intended manner. The monitoring contact(s) shall be positively actuated and shall not be solely dependent on springs.

6.1.7 Lighting, Access, and Electrical Work

6.1.7.1 Lighting of Machine Room and Truss Interior

6.1.7.1.1 Remote Machine Room. Permanent electric lighting and at least one duplex receptacle rated at not less than 15 A, 120 V shall be provided in every remote machine room.

The illumination shall be not less than 100 lx (10 fc) at the floor level. The lighting control switch shall be located within easy reach of the access to such rooms and located so that it can be operated without passing over or reaching over any part of the machinery.

6.1.7.1.2 Truss Interior. A duplex receptacle rated at not less than 15 A, 120 V, accessibly located, shall be provided under the access plates (see 6.1.7.3) at the top and bottom landings and in any machine areas located in the incline.

6.1.7.2 Lighting of the Escalator. Landing floor plates and all exposed step treads shall be illuminated with a lighting intensity not less than 50 lx (5 fc). The illumination of these surfaces shall be of uniform intensity and shall not contrast materially with that of the surrounding area.

6.1.7.3 Access to the Interior. Reasonable access to the interior of the escalator shall be provided for inspection and maintenance.

6.1.7.3.1 Access plates requiring no more than 310 N (70 lbf) effort to open shall be provided at the top and bottom landings for inspection and maintenance. The plates shall be made of a material that will afford a secure foothold. The use of stone, terrazzo, or concrete as a fill material is prohibited in panels within the confines of the escalator truss.

6.1.7.3.2 Access plates at the top and bottom landings shall be securely fastened by a mechanical means.

6.1.7.3.3 If access doors are provided in the side of the escalator enclosure, they shall be kept closed and locked. The key shall be removed only when in the locked position. The key shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

6.1.7.3.4 Where access is provided to a machinery enclosure, a fixed guard shall be provided to prevent accidental contact with the moving steps by a person servicing equipment from within the enclosure. The guard shall be made of material that will reject a 13 mm (0.5 in.) diameter ball and shall extend the full width of the step treads. A guard is not required where the only equipment normally serviced from within the enclosure is within the step band.

6.1.7.4 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

6.1.7.4.1 All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). In jurisdictions enforcing CSA C22.1, main line power disconnecting means shall not be opened automatically by a fire alarm system. (22)

6.1.7.4.2 Electrical equipment shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked. CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 defines the scope and applicable requirements for this listing/certification.

6.1.7.4.3 Control equipment shall be tested in accordance with the testing requirements of ISO 22200:2009. Control equipment tested in accordance with the testing requirements of EN 12016:1998 prior to 1 yr after the effective date of ASME A17.1-2016/CSA B44-16 need not be retested in accordance with the testing requirements of ISO 22200:2009.

The control equipment shall be exposed to interference levels at the test values specified for "safety circuits." The interference shall not cause any of the conditions described in 6.1.6.10.1(a) through 6.1.6.10.1(f). If enclosure doors or suppression equipment must remain installed to meet the above requirements, warning signs to that effect shall be posted on the control equipment.

6.1.8 Outdoor Escalators

6.1.8.1 Weatherproofing. Escalators shall be constructed so that exposure to the weather will not interfere with normal operation.

6.1.8.1.1 The escalator equipment and its supports shall be protected from corrosion.

6.1.8.1.2 Electrical equipment shall be provided with a degree of protection of at least Type 4 construction as specified in NEMA 250, and wiring shall be identified for use in wet locations in accordance with NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1 as applicable (see Part 9).

6.1.8.2 Precipitation. A cover, directly over the horizontal projection of the escalator, shall be provided. The cover shall extend outward from the centerline of the handrail so that a line extended from the edge of the cover to the centerline of the handrail forms an angle of not less than 15 deg from the vertical.

6.1.8.2.1 When the escalator is subjected to blowing snow or freezing rain, heating systems shall be operated to prevent accumulation of snow or ice on the steps, landings, and skirt deflector devices. The heating systems' operation shall be thermostatically controlled and independent of the escalator operation.

6.1.8.2.2 Drains suitable for all weather conditions shall be provided to prevent the accumulation of water where groundwater and runoff can collect within the equipment.

6.1.8.3 Slip Resistance. Landing plates and comb-plates shall be designed to provide a secure foothold when wet.

SECTION 6.2 MOVING WALKS

6.2.1 Protection of Floor Openings

Floor openings for moving walks shall be protected against the passage of flame, heat, and/or smoke in accordance with the provisions of the applicable building code (see [Part 9](#)).

6.2.2 Protection of Supports and Machinery Spaces Against Fire

The sides and undersides of the moving walk truss or group of adjacent trusses in a single wellway shall be enclosed in materials defined as either noncombustible or limited-combustible by the building code or NFPA 101, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)). Means provided for adequate ventilation of the driving machine and control spaces, when included in the truss enclosure area, shall be permitted.

6.2.3 Construction Requirements

- (22) **6.2.3.1 Angle of Inclination.** The angle of inclination for the treadway from the moving walk landing plate shall not exceed 3 deg within 900 mm (36 in.) of the comb intersection line with the treadway at the entrance and egress ends and shall not exceed 12 deg from the horizontal at any point.

6.2.3.2 Geometry

6.2.3.2.1 The width of the moving walk shall be the width of the exposed tread (see [6.2.3.7](#)).

- (22) **6.2.3.2.2** The height of the balustrade shall be not less than 900 mm (35 in.) nor more than 1 100 mm (43 in.) from the treadway to the top of the handrail, measured perpendicular to the treadway surface.

6.2.3.2.3 The handrail shall be a minimum of 100 mm (4 in.) horizontally and 25 mm (1 in.) vertically away from adjacent surfaces, except that rounded

fillets or beveled sides of the handrail stand are permitted to reduce the 25 mm (1 in.) clearance between the handrail and the point where the handrail stand is connected to the balustrade. The centerline of the handrail shall be not more than 240 mm (9.5 in.), measured horizontally, from the vertical plane through the edge of the exposed treadway (see [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-9](#)).

6.2.3.3 Balustrades. Balustrades shall be installed on each side of the moving walk (see [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-7](#)).

6.2.3.3.1 Construction

(a) The balustrade on the tread side shall have no areas or moldings depressed or raised more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) from the parent surface. Such areas or moldings shall have all boundary edges beveled or rounded.

(b) The balustrade shall be totally closed except

(1) where the handrail enters the newel base (see [6.2.3.4.3](#)).

(2) gaps between interior panels shall not be wider than 5 mm (0.19 in.). The edges shall be rounded or beveled.

(c) The width between the balustrade interior panels in the direction of travel shall not be changed.

6.2.3.3.2 Strength. Balustrades shall be designed to resist the simultaneous application of a static lateral distributed force of 585 N/m (40 lbf/ft) applied to the side of the handrail and a vertical distributed force of 730 N/m (50 lbf/ft) applied to the top of the handrail.

6.2.3.3.3 Use of Glass or Plastic. Glass or plastic, if used in balustrades, shall conform to the requirements of one of the following standards, as applicable (see [Part 9](#)):

(a) ANSI Z97.1 or 16 CFR Part 1201

(b) CAN2-12.1, CAN2-12.11, or CAN2-12.12, except that there shall be no requirement for the panels to be transparent

Plastic bonded to basic supporting panels is not required to conform to these requirements.

6.2.3.3.4 Interior Low Deck. The interior low deck, where provided, shall conform to the following (see [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-9](#)):

(a) The width from the vertical face of the interior panel to the vertical plane of the skirt panel shall not exceed 150 mm (6 in.).

(b) The angle between the surface of the deck and the plane of the nose line of the treadway shall be not less than 20 deg nor more than 30 deg.

(c) A horizontal section shall be permitted immediately adjacent to the interior panel. It shall be not greater than 35 mm (1.25 in.).

6.2.3.3.5 Skirtless Balustrade. On moving walks where the balustrade covers the edge of the treadway

(a) the clearance between the top surface of the treadway and the underside of the balustrade shall not exceed 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(b) the balustrade shall be vertical and smooth for at least 25 mm (1 in.), including the 6 mm (0.25 in.) clearance above the top of the tread

6.2.3.3.6 Skirt Panels. Where skirt panels are provided

(a) The clearance between each side of the treadway and the adjacent skirt panel shall be not more than 6 mm (0.25 in.).

(b) The height of the skirt above the top of the tread shall be at least 25 mm (1 in.), measured vertically.

(c) The skirt panel design and installation shall not permit deflection more than 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) under a force of 670 N (150 lbf).

(d) The exposed surface of the skirt panels adjacent to the tread shall be smooth.

(e) *Skirt Deflection Test and Marking/Labeling.* Each skirt panel design shall be tested for deflection with load per (b) as described in 8.3.15. This panel shall be marked with the part number or identifying mark and be marked/labeled with the following: "Replacement shall meet OEM and A17.1/B44 Code requirements."

6.2.3.3.7 Guard at Ceiling Intersections

(a) On high-deck balustrades, a solid guard shall be provided in the intersection of the angle of the outside balustrade deck and ceiling or soffit under either of the following conditions:

(1) where the clearance between the outside edge of the deck and the ceiling or soffit is 300 mm (12 in.) or less

(2) where the projected intersection of the outside deck and the ceiling or soffit is 600 mm (24 in.) or less from the centerline of the handrail

(b) On low-deck balustrades, a solid guard shall be provided to protect the intersection formed by the top of the handrail and the plane of the ceiling or soffit where the centerline of the handrail is 350 mm (14 in.) or less from the ceiling or soffit.

(c) The vertical edge of the guard shall be a minimum of 350 mm (14 in.) in length.

(d) The moving walk side of the vertical face of the guard shall be flush with the face of the wellway.

(e) The exposed edge of the guard shall present a minimum width of 25 mm (1 in.) and a minimum radius of 12 mm (0.5 in.).

(f) Guards made of glass or plastic shall conform to the requirements of 6.2.3.3.3. See also [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-5](#).

6.2.3.3.8 Deck Barricades

(a) A barricade to restrict access to the outer deck on low-deck exterior balustrades shall be provided on each moving walk when the exterior deck is greater than

915 mm (36 in.) above the floor in any part of its travel and the exterior deck width exceeds 125 mm (5 in.). On parallel abutting units, this protection shall be provided where the combined outer deck width exceeds 125 mm (5 in.). The barricade shall extend to a height that is nominally 100 mm (4 in.) below the top of the handrail.

(b) The barricades shall be located wherever the exterior deck exceeds the 915 mm (36 in.) height above the floor.

(c) On parallel adjacent moving walks, where the common low deck between adjacent interior panels exceeds 400 mm (16 in.), deck barricades should be spaced evenly along the treadway at not greater than 4.6 m (15 ft) measured on a line parallel to the direction of travel.

(d) Barricades made of glass or plastic shall conform to the requirements of 6.2.3.3.3.

All exposed barricade attachment fastener heads shall be the tamper-resistant type.

6.2.3.4 Handrails

6.2.3.4.1 Type Required. Each balustrade shall be provided with a handrail moving in the same direction and at substantially the same speed as the treadway. The speed of the handrail shall not change when a retarding force of 450 N (100 lbf) is applied to the handrail opposite to the direction of travel.

6.2.3.4.2 Extension Beyond Combplates. The moving handrail at both the entrance and exit landings shall extend at normal height not less than 300 mm (12 in.) beyond the end of the exposed treadway. The point at which the moving handrail enters or leaves an enclosure shall be not more than 250 mm (10 in.) above the floor line.

6.2.3.4.3 Guards. Hand or finger guards shall be provided at points where the handrails enter the balustrade.

6.2.3.4.4 Splicing. Splicing of handrails shall be done in such a manner that the joint is free of any pinching effect.

6.2.3.4.5 Handrail Clearance. The horizontal clearance between either lip of the handrail and the handrail stand shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.).

6.2.3.5 Pallet-Type Treadway

6.2.3.5.1 Slotting of Treadway. The treadway (22) surface of each pallet shall be slotted in a direction parallel to its travel. Each slot shall be not more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) wide at the treadway surface and not less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) deep; and the distance from center to center of adjoining slots shall be not more than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.). Sides of the slots shall be permitted to slope for mold draft purposes and shall be permitted to be filleted at the bottom. Slots shall be located on each side of the pallet

**Table 6.2.3.7
Treadway Width**

Maximum Treadway, Slope at Any Point on Treadway, deg	Maximum Moving Walk Treadway Width, mm (in.)		
	Maximum Treadway Speed, 0.45 m/s (90 ft/min)	Treadway Speed, Above 0.45 m/s (90 ft/min) to 0.7 m/s (140 ft/min)	Treadway Speed, Above 0.7 m/s (140 ft/min) to 0.9 m/s (180 ft/min)
0 to 4	Unrestricted	1525 (60)	1020 (40)
Above 4 to 8	1020 (40)	1020 (40)	1020 (40)
Above 8 to 12	1020 (40)	1020 (40)	Not permitted

to form a cleat adjacent to the skirt panel. (See [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-10](#).)

6.2.3.5.2 Intermeshing Pallets. Alternate cleats on adjacent pallets shall intermesh so that there is no continuous transverse gap between adjacent pallets.

6.2.3.5.3 Alignment of Pallet Tread Surfaces. Adjacent ends of pallets shall not vary in elevation more than 1.6 mm (0.06 in.).

6.2.3.5.4 Pallet Fatigue Tests. Each pallet width shall be subjected to the pallet fatigue test described in [8.3.11](#).

6.2.3.5.5 Material and Type

(a) Pallet frames and treads, excluding their attachments or inserts, shall be metal, except that magnesium alloys shall not be used; or the materials, in their end-use configuration, shall have a flame spread index of 0 to 50, based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E84, UL 723, NFPA 255, or CAN/ULC-S102.2, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)).

(b) Nonmetallic attachments and inserts (excluding wheels) shall be classified 94 HB or better, in accordance with ANSI/UL 94.

(c) Pallet treads shall afford a secure foothold.

6.2.3.5.6 Pallet Wheels. Where support wheels are attached to the pallets and are not located within the width of the pallet, provision shall be made to prevent the pallet from falling into the moving walk interior due to a loss of one or more of the support wheel assemblies.

6.2.3.6 Belt-Type Treadway. Belt-type treadways shall conform to [6.2.3.6.1](#) and [6.2.3.6.2](#).

6.2.3.6.1 Splices. Splicing of the treadway belt shall be done in such a manner as to result in a continuous unbroken treadway surface of the same characteristics as the balance of the belt.

(22) **6.2.3.6.2 Slotting of the Treadway.** The treadway surface shall be slotted in a direction parallel to its travel for purposes of meshing with combplates at the landings. Each slot shall be not more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) wide at the treadway surface and not less than 4.8 mm (0.188 in.) deep, and the distance from

center to center of adjoining slots shall be not more than 13 mm (0.50 in.). Sides of slots shall be permitted to slope for mold draft purposes and shall be permitted to be filleted at the bottom. Slots shall be located on each side of the belt to form a cleat adjacent to the skirt panel. (See [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-10](#).)

6.2.3.7 Width. The width of a moving walk (see [6.2.3.2.1](#)) shall be not less than 560 mm (22 in.). The maximum width shall depend both on the maximum slope at the point on the treadway and on the treadway speed. The width shall not exceed the value shown in [Table 6.2.3.7](#).

6.2.3.8 Entrance and Egress Ends

6.2.3.8.1 Combplates

(a) There shall be a combplate, to which combs shall be fastened, at the entrance and at the exit of every moving walk.

(b) The comb teeth shall be meshed with and set into the slots in the tread surfaces so that the points of the teeth are always below the upper surface of the treads.

(c) Combplates shall be adjustable vertically. Sections forming the comb teeth shall be readily replaceable.

(d) The comb section, combplate, and landing plate assemblies shall not make contact with the pallet or belt treadway surfaces when a weight of 160 kg (350 lb) is applied to any area 200 mm × 300 mm (8 in. × 12 in.) centered on the plates with the 300 mm (12 in.) dimension parallel to the direction of travel.

6.2.3.8.2 Distinction Between Comb and Treadway. There shall be a visual contrast between the comb and tread, achieved by color, pattern, or texture.

6.2.3.8.3 Adjacent Floor Surfaces. The adjacent floor surfaces at each landing shall be continuous with the top of the landing plate, with no abrupt change in elevation of more than 6 mm (0.25 in.).

6.2.3.8.4 Safety Zone. The entry and exit zones shall be kept clear of all obstacles. The width of the zones shall be not less than the width between the centerlines of the handrails plus 200 mm (8 in.). The length of the zones, measured from the end of the newel, shall be not less than twice the distance between the centerlines of the

handrails. Space shall be provided to accommodate all traffic in the safety zone.

NOTE: These dimensions are absolute minimums.

6.2.3.8.5 Floor Opening Protection Adjacent to the Moving Walk Wellway. Floor openings adjacent to the entire length of the moving walk wellway shall be provided with protection in accordance with the applicable building code (see [Part 9](#)).

6.2.3.9 Supporting Structure. Supports shall conform to the following:

(a) *Slider-Bed Type.* The carrying portion of the treadway shall be supported for its entire width and length, except where it passes from a support to a pulley. The surface of the slider bed shall be reasonably smooth. It shall be constructed so that it will not support combustion.

(b) *Roller-Bed Type.* Where the treadway is supported on a series of rollers, the combination of roller spacing, belt tension, and belt stiffness shall be such that the deflection of the treadway surface, midway between rollers, shall not exceed the quantity 0.25 mm (0.094 in.) plus 0.004 times the center-to-center distance of rollers in millimeters (inches) when measured as follows:

(1) The treadway surface shall be loaded midway between rollers with an 11.3 kg (25 lb) weight, concentrated on a cylindrical foot-piece 50 mm (2 in.) long by 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter, placed with its long axis across the belt. Deflection of this foot-piece from its unloaded position shall not exceed the figure obtained above.

(2) The rollers shall be concentric and true running within commercially acceptable tolerances.

(c) *Edge-Supported Belt Type.* When the treadway belt is transversely rigid and is supported by rollers along its edges, the following requirements shall apply:

(1) With the belt tensioned through the take-up system, the permissible slope of a straight line from the top of a treadway rib adjacent to the centerline of the treadway to the top of a treadway rib adjacent to the balustrade, in a plane perpendicular to the path of the treadway, shall not exceed 3% when the treadway is loaded with a 68 kg (150 lb) weight on a 150 mm × 250 mm (6 in. × 10 in.) plate, located on the centerline of the treadway with the 250 mm (10 in.) dimension in the direction of treadway travel.

(2) To support the treadway in case of localized overload, supports shall be supplied at intervals not exceeding 1830 mm (72 in.) along the centerline of the treadway. The supports shall be located at a level not more than 50 mm (2 in.) below the underside of the treadway when it is loaded under test conditions required by (1).

(d) *Pallet Type.* Pallet wheel tracks shall be designed and located to prevent more than 3 mm (0.125 in.) vertical displacement of the treadway should the pallet connection means break.

6.2.3.10 Rated Load

6.2.3.10.1 Structural. For the purpose of structural design, the rated load shall be considered to be the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Structural rated load (kg)} = D_7(W)A/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Structural rated load (lb)} = D_8(W)A/12$$

where

A = length of the horizontal projection of the entire truss, m (ft)

D_7 = loading factor = 490 kg/m²

D_8 = loading factor = 100 lb/ft²

W = width of the moving walk, mm (in.) (see [6.2.3.2.1](#) and [6.2.3.7](#))

6.2.3.10.2 Machinery

(a) For the purpose of driving machine and power transmission calculations, the rated load for all single driving machines shall be considered to be the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (kg)} = D_9(W)C_1/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (lb)} = D_{10}(W)C_1/12$$

(b) The rated load per module for two or more modular driving machines shall be considered to be the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (kg)} = D_9(W)C_2/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (lb)} = D_{10}(W)C_2/12$$

where

C_1 = length of exposed treadway, m (ft)

C_2 = length of exposed treadway per module, m (ft)

D_9 = loading factor = 370 kg/m²

D_{10} = loading factor = 75.0 lb/ft²

W = width of the moving walk, mm (in.) (see [6.2.3.2.1](#) and [6.2.3.7](#))

6.2.3.10.3 Brake

(a) For the purpose of brake calculations, the rated load for all single driving machines shall be considered to be the following:

(1) with moving walk stopped

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = D_7(W)C_1/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = D_8(W)C_1/12$$

(2) with moving walk running

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = D_9(W)C_1/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = D_{10}(W)C_1/12$$

(b) The rated load per module for two or more modular driving machines shall be considered to be the following:

(1) with moving walk stopped

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = D_7(W)C_2/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = D_8(W)C_2/12$$

(2) with moving walk running

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = D_9(W)C_2/1\,000$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = D_{10}(W)C_2/12$$

where

C_1 = length of exposed treadway, m (ft)

C_2 = length of exposed treadway per module, m (ft)

D_7 = loading factor = 490 kg/m²

D_8 = loading factor = 100 lb/ft²

D_9 = loading factor = 370 kg/m²

D_{10} = loading factor = 75.0 lb/ft²

W = width of moving walk, mm (in.) (see 6.2.3.2.1 and 6.2.3.7)

6.2.3.10.4 Pallet. The pallet shall be designed to support a load of 135 kg (300 lb) for each 0.42 m² (4.5 ft²) of area or part thereof. The load shall be applied on a 150 mm × 250 mm (6 in. × 10 in.) plate, placed on any part of the pallet with the 250 mm

(10 in.) dimension in the direction of pallet travel. If more than one load is required, the loads shall be located no closer than 910 mm (36 in.) to each other.

6.2.3.11 Design Factors of Safety. Factors of safety are based on either single driving-machine design or modular driving-machine design and shall comply with those in 6.2.3.11.1 through 6.2.3.11.5.

6.2.3.11.1 Trusses and all supporting structures, including tracks, shall conform to ANSI/AISC 360-05 or CAN/CSA-S16.1-09, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), based on the maximum static load calculated per 6.2.3.10.1.

6.2.3.11.2 For driving-machine parts, the factors of safety shall be as follows, based on lifting the machinery rated load calculated per 6.2.3.10.2, including all applicable system losses and any other imposed loads:

(a) not less than 8 where parts are made of steel or bronze

(b) not less than 10 where parts are made of cast iron or other materials

6.2.3.11.3 For power transmission members, the factor of safety shall be not less than 10, based on lifting the machinery rated load calculated per 6.2.3.10.2, including all applicable system losses and any other imposed loads.

6.2.3.11.4 For pallets, the factor of safety shall be not less than 5, based on the loads designated in 6.2.3.10.4.

6.2.3.11.5 For belts, the factor of safety shall be not less than 5, based on lifting the machinery rated load designated in 6.2.3.10.2.

6.2.3.12 Chains. The use of chains with cast iron links shall not be permitted.

6.2.3.13 Reserved for Future Use

6.2.3.14 V-Belt Drives. The load imposed on V-belt drives, when operating at the machinery rated load, shall not exceed the horsepower rating established by ANSI/RMA IP-20. The loading shall be considered to be uniform and the service to be 24 h per day.

6.2.3.15 Headroom. The minimum headroom height shall be 2 130 mm (84 in.) measured vertically from the treadway surface and the landings. The headroom width shall be not less than the width of the safety zone (see 6.2.3.8.4). The length and width of the clear headroom space shall align with the length and width of the moving walk, including the safety zone.

6.2.3.16 Welding. Welding shall conform to Section 8.8.

**Table 6.2.4.1.1
Treadway Speed**

Maximum Treadway Slope at Any Point on Treadway, deg	Maximum Treadway Speed, m/s (ft/min)
0 to 8	0.9 (180)
Above 8 to 12	0.7 (140)

6.2.3.17 Non-Moving-Walk-Related Equipment.

Components not used directly in connection with the moving walk are prohibited to be installed on, in, or through the moving walk.

6.2.3.18 Water Accumulation. Permanent provisions shall be made to prevent accumulation of groundwater in the pit. Drains and sump pumps, where provided, shall comply with the applicable plumbing code.

6.2.4 Rated Speed

6.2.4.1 Limits of Speed

6.2.4.1.1 The maximum speed of a treadway shall depend on the maximum slope at any point on the treadway. The speed shall not exceed the value determined by [Table 6.2.4.1.1](#).

The speed attained by a moving walk after start-up shall not be intentionally varied, except as permitted by [6.2.4.1.2](#).

6.2.4.1.2 Variation of the moving walk speed after start-up shall be permitted, provided the moving walk installation conforms to all of the following:

(a) The acceleration and deceleration rates shall not exceed 0.3 m/s^2 (1.0 ft/s^2).

(b) The rated speed is not exceeded.

(c) The minimum speed shall be not less than 0.05 m/s (10 ft/min).

(d) The speed shall not automatically vary during Inspection Operation.

(e) Passenger detection means shall be provided at both landings of the moving walk such that

(1) detection of any approaching passenger shall cause the moving walk to accelerate to or maintain the full moving walk speed conforming to (a) through (d)

(2) detection of any approaching passenger shall occur sufficiently in advance of boarding to cause the moving walk to attain full operating speed before a passenger walking at normal speed [1.35 m/s (270 ft/min)] reaches the combplate

(3) it shall remain active at the egress landing to detect any passenger approaching against the direction of the moving walk travel and shall cause the moving walk to accelerate to full rated speed and sound the alarm (see [6.2.6.3.1](#)) at the approaching landing before the passenger reaches the combplate

(f) Automatic deceleration shall not occur before a period of time has elapsed since the last passenger detection that is greater than 3 times the amount of time necessary to transfer a passenger between landings.

(g) Means shall be provided to detect failure of the passenger detection means and shall cause the moving walk to operate at full rated speed only.

6.2.5 Driving Machine, Motor, and Brake

6.2.5.1 Connection Between Driving Machine and Main Driveshaft. The driving machine shall be connected to the main driveshaft by toothed gearing, a mechanical coupling, or a chain.

6.2.5.2 Driving Motor. An electric motor shall not drive more than one moving walk driving machine. A driving machine shall not operate more than one moving walk.

6.2.5.3 Brakes

6.2.5.3.1 Moving Walk Driving-Machine Brakes

(22)

(a) Each moving walk driving machine shall be provided with an electrically released and mechanically or magnetically applied brake. If the brake is magnetically applied, a ceramic permanent magnet shall be used. There shall be no intentional time delay designed into the application of the brake, except as permitted in [6.2.5.3.3\(b\)](#).

(b) The brake shall be applied automatically if the electrical power supply is interrupted. The brake shall be capable of stopping the down- or horizontal-running moving walk with any load up to the brake rated load [see [6.2.3.10.3\(a\)\(2\)](#) or [6.2.3.10.3\(b\)\(2\)](#)]. The brake shall hold the stopped moving walk with any load up to the brake rated load [see [6.2.3.10.3\(a\)\(1\)](#) or [6.2.3.10.3\(b\)\(1\)](#)].

(c) Driving-machine brakes shall stop the down- or horizontal-running moving walk treadway at an average rate not greater than 0.91 m/s^2 (3 ft/s^2) as measured over the total retardation time. No peak horizontal retardation value exceeding 0.91 m/s^2 (3 ft/s^2) shall have a time duration greater than 0.125 s (see [Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-11](#)).

(d) The moving walk brake shall be provided with a data plate conforming to [8.13.1](#) that is readily visible and located on the machine brake and, when necessary, a duplicate data plate with the certification mark shall be placed adjacent to the machine brake. The data plate shall indicate

(1) brake torque and related data as follows:

(-a) for fixed-torque brakes, the range of brake torque that complies with [6.2.5.3.1](#)

(-b) for variable-torque brakes, the minimum brake torque for a loaded moving walk and the minimum stopping distance for the unloaded moving walk that comply with [6.2.5.3.1](#)

(2) the method of measuring the torque, designated “BREAKAWAY” or “DYNAMIC,” based on the method used when measuring the torque

(3) the location where the torque is to be measured, e.g., “MOTOR SHAFT,” “MACHINE INPUT SHAFT,” “MAIN DRIVESHAFT”

(4) the type of brake, i.e., fixed or variable torque

(5) the maximum stopping distance with rated load that corresponds to the minimum distance between the comb and the pallet when the pallet is positioned to activate any of the safety devices required in 6.2.6.3.9 and 6.2.6.5

(e) Where means other than a continuous shaft, mechanical coupling, or toothed gearing is used to connect the motor to a gear reducer, the moving walk driving-machine brake shall be located on the gear reducer, main driveshaft, or a specially attached braking surface attached directly to the treadway.

6.2.5.3.2 Main Driveshaft Brake. If the moving walk driving-machine brake is connected to the main driveshaft by a chain, and the moving walk, with the drive chain disconnected, is capable of running under gravity with any load up to and including rated load (see 6.2.3.10.2), a mechanically or magnetically applied brake capable of stopping a down-running moving walk with brake rated load (see 6.2.3.10.3) shall be provided on the main driveshaft or specially attached braking surface attached directly to the treadway. If the brake is magnetically applied, a ceramic permanent magnet shall be used.

6.2.5.3.3 Moving Walk Driving-Machine Motor-Controlled Dynamic Braking. Motor-controlled dynamic braking of a moving walk by variable-frequency control of the moving walk driving-machine motor shall be permitted, provided that

(a) The motor-controlled dynamic braking function conforms to the acceleration requirements in 6.2.6.3.1(c) and, where applicable, the stopping distance requirements in 6.2.5.3.1(d)(5).

(b) The moving walk driving-machine brake complying with 6.2.3.10.3 and 6.2.5.3.1 shall be applied not later than when the moving walk has stopped. Interruption of electrical power to the moving walk or machine motor shall automatically cause application of the machine brake.

(c) Activation of electrical protective devices that do not specifically permit dynamic braking shall stop the moving walk only by the removal of electrical power from the driving-machine motor and brake.

(d) Stopping performance shall be monitored in conformance with 6.2.6.9 throughout the retardation period at intervals not greater than 25 ms and shall cause the removal of electrical power from the driving-machine motor and brake if the deceleration is not conforming to the requirements in 6.2.5.3.1(c) or it is determined that the stopping rate will not result in a stop-

ping distance conforming to the requirements of 6.2.5.3.1(d)(5), where applicable. Nonconformance shall require a manual reset.

6.2.6 Operating and Safety Devices

6.2.6.1 General

6.2.6.1.1 Operating and safety devices conforming to 6.2.6 shall be provided. When more than one driving machine per moving walk is used, actuation of devices covered by 6.2.6 shall simultaneously control all driving machines.

6.2.6.1.2 Automatic Operation. Automatic starting by any means, or automatic stopping, except as required in 6.2.6, shall be prohibited.

6.2.6.2 Starting and Inspection Control Switches

6.2.6.2.1 Moving walks shall be provided with a starting switch(es) conforming to the following:

(a) *Location and Design.* The switch(es) shall be

(1) located so that the exposed treadway is within sight.

(2) key operated, the continuous-pressure spring-return type, and operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination.

(3) clearly and permanently marked “TOWARDS,” “RUN,” and “AWAY,” in that order, with the key removable only in the “RUN” (spring return) position. The switch(es) shall be rotated clockwise to go from the “TOWARDS” position to the “RUN” position to the “AWAY” position.

(b) *Operating Requirements.* The operation of the switch(es) shall initiate movement of the moving walk. The moving walk shall not start (restart) unless all starting switch(es) are in the “RUN” position.

(c) The starting switch(es) shall be located within reach of an emergency stop button (see 6.2.6.3.1).

(d) The key shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

6.2.6.2.2 Inspection Control. Each moving walk shall be equipped with inspection controls not accessible to the general public during normal operation to provide constant-pressure operation during maintenance, repair, or inspection by means of a manually operated control device.

(a) *General Requirements*

(1) Switches for transferring the control of the moving walk to Inspection Operation shall be provided or a switch shall be provided at each landing in a portable control station; the switch(es) shall function as follows:

(-a) be through a contact that shall be positively opened mechanically and whose opening shall not depend solely on springs

(-b) be manually operated

(-c) be labeled “INSPECTION”

(-d) have two positions, labeled “INSPECTION” or “INSP” and “NORMAL” or “NORM”

(-e) when in the “INSPECTION” position, it shall cause the movement of the moving walk to be solely under the control of constant-pressure operating devices at that landing or in that portable control station

(-f) be arranged so that if more than one inspection transfer switch is in the “INSPECTION” position, then all constant-pressure operating devices at all locations shall be inoperative

(-g) be protected against accidental contact

(2) Constant-pressure operating devices shall

(-a) allow movement of the moving walk only by constant application of manual pressure

(-b) be distinctly recognizable from indications on the device as to the direction of travel controlled

(-c) be protected against accidental contact

(-d) be located so that the moving walk treadway surface is within sight

(3) A stop switch conforming to 6.2.6.3.12 shall be provided adjacent to the constant-pressure operating devices.

(4) When portable control stations are used, the cord length shall not exceed 3 000 mm (120 in.).

(b) *Plug-in Portable Control Station.* A plug-in portable control station shall be permitted, provided that

(1) either a transfer switch conforming to (a)(1)(-a) through (a)(1)(-c) is complied with, or when plugged in, the moving walk shall automatically transfer to Inspection Operation

(2) when the switch, if provided, is in the “INSPECTION” position, or when the control station is plugged in, it shall cause the movement of the moving walk to be solely under the control of constant-pressure operating devices contained in the portable unit

(3) the plug-in portable control station is stored at the upper landing machinery space

6.2.6.3 Electrical Protective Devices. Electrical protective devices shall be provided in accordance with 6.2.6.3.1 through 6.2.6.3.12.

6.2.6.3.1 Emergency Stop Buttons

(a) *Location.* A red stop button shall be visibly located at the upper and lower landings on the right side facing the moving walk. In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, remote stop buttons are prohibited. In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, if remote buttons are provided, they shall be located such that the moving walk is visible from the stop button location.

(1) On high-deck balustrades, the stop buttons shall be located on the curved newel deck in the upper quadrant, with the centerline of the button at a 45 deg angle from the horizontal.

(2) On low-deck balustrades, the stop buttons shall be located below the handrail height. The centerline of the button shall be located on a radial line 45 deg above the horizontal, such that no part of the button assembly is within 38 mm (1.5 in.) of the bottom of the handrail

and the button is no more than 90 mm (3.5 in.) from the bottom of the handrail.

(b) *Cover, Alarm, and Marking.* The buttons shall be covered with a transparent cover that can be readily lifted or pushed aside. When the cover is moved, an audible warning signal shall be activated. The signal shall have a sound intensity of 80 dBA minimum at the button location. The cover shall be marked “EMERGENCY STOP,” “MOVE COVER” or an equivalent legend (e.g., “LIFT COVER,” “SLIDE COVER”), and “PUSH BUTTON.” “EMERGENCY STOP” shall be in letters not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.) high. Other required wording shall be in letters not less than 4.8 mm (0.188 in.) high. The cover shall be self-resetting.

(c) *Operation.* The operation of either of these buttons shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3) or the electric power to be removed from the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake. It shall not be possible to start the moving walk by these buttons.

6.2.6.3.2 Moving Walk Speed-Monitoring Device. A moving walk speed-monitoring device shall be provided.

(a) The operation of the device shall cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake should the speed exceed the rated speed by more than 20%.

(b) The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.3 Broken Treadway Device. A broken treadway device shall be provided that shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3) or the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake if the connecting means between the pallets or the belt breaks. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.4 Drive-Chain Device. When the driving machine is connected to the main driveshaft by a chain, a device shall be provided that will cause the application of the brake on the main driveshaft and also cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake if the drive chain between the machine and the main driveshaft becomes disengaged from the sprockets. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.5 Stop Switch in Machinery Spaces. A stop switch conforming to the following requirements shall be provided in each machinery space and other spaces where means of access to the interior space is provided (see 6.2.7.3), except for the machinery space where the main line disconnect switch is located:

(a) when opened (“STOP” position), cause the electric power to be removed from the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake

(b) be the manually opened and closed type

(c) have red operating handles or buttons

(d) be conspicuously and permanently marked “STOP,” and indicate the “STOP” and “RUN” positions

(e) have contacts that are positively opened mechanically, and their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs

6.2.6.3.6 Moving Walk Egress Restriction Device.

Egress restrictors, if used, that would prevent the free and continuous exiting of passengers, shall provide a signal to a device on the moving walk that shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3) or the electric power to be removed from the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake when the exit restrictors begin to close.

6.2.6.3.7 Reversal Stop Device. Means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake in case of reversal of travel while the moving walk is operating in the ascending direction. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

(22) **6.2.6.3.8 Disconnected Motor Safety Device.** If the drive motor is attached to a gear reducer by means other than a continuous shaft, mechanical coupling, or toothed gearing, a device shall be provided that will cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake (see 6.2.5.3.1) if the motor becomes disconnected from the gear reducer. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.9 Pallet Level Device. Moving walks equipped with pallets with trail wheels shall be provided with pallet level devices located at the top and bottom of the moving walk. These devices shall detect downward displacement of 3 mm (0.125 in.) or greater at either side of the trailing edge of the pallet. When activated, the device shall cause the moving walk to stop before the pallet enters the combplate. The device shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3) or the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. Devices shall be the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.10 Handrail Entry Device. A handrail entry device shall be provided at each newel. It shall be operative in the newels in which the handrail enters the balustrade. It shall cause the moving walk to stop by initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3) or removal of power from the driving-machine motor and brake. It shall operate if either of the following occurs:

(a) an object becomes caught between the handrail and the handrail guard

(b) an object approaches the area between the handrail and the handrail guard

For those units that rely on an opening of the balustrade to prevent entrapment, all handrail entry devices shall be operative whenever the handrails are operating. The device shall be the manual-reset type, or it shall be permitted to automatically reset not more than one

time within 24 h of operation and thereafter require a manual reset before the next restart. Interruption of power during operation should not cause the device to lose the status of the timer nor the count of events.

6.2.6.3.11 Comb-Pallet Impact Devices. Devices (22) shall be provided that will cause the opening of the power circuit to the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake if either

(a) a horizontal force not greater than 1 780 N (400 lbf) in the direction of travel is applied at either side, or not greater than 3 560 N (800 lbf) at the center of the front edge of the combplate or

(b) a resultant vertical force not greater than 670 N (150 lbf) in the upward direction is applied at the center of the front of the combplate

These devices shall be the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.12 Stop Switch in Inspection Controls. A stop switch conforming to the following requirements shall be provided when required by 6.2.6.2.2. The stop switch shall

(a) when opened (“STOP” position), cause the electric power to be removed from the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake

(b) be the manually opened and closed type

(c) have red operating handles or buttons

(d) be conspicuously and permanently marked “STOP,” and indicate the “STOP” and “RUN” positions

(e) have contacts that are positively opened mechanically, and their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs

6.2.6.4 Handrail Speed-Monitoring Device. A handrail speed-monitoring device shall be provided that will cause the activation of the alarm required by 6.2.6.3.1(b) without any intentional delay whenever the speed of either handrail deviates from the treadmill speed by 15% or more. The device shall also cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3) or electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake when the speed deviation of 15% or more is continuous within a 2 s to 6 s range. The device shall be the manual-reset type, or it shall be permitted to automatically reset not more than one time within 24 h of operation and thereafter require a manual reset before the next restart. Interruption of power during operation shall not cause the device to lose the status of the timer nor the count of events.

6.2.6.5 Missing Pallet Device. A device shall be provided to detect a missing pallet and bring the moving walk to a stop before the gap resulting from the missing pallet emerges from the comb. The device shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3) or power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. The device shall be the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.6 Tandem Operation. Tandem-operation moving walks shall be electrically interlocked where traffic flow is such that bunching will occur if the moving walk carrying passengers away from the intermediate landing stops.

The electrical interlocks shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3) or power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake of the moving walk carrying passengers into the common intermediate landing if the moving walk carrying passengers away from the landing stops. These moving walks shall also be electrically interlocked to assure that they run in the same direction.

6.2.6.7 Moving Walk Smoke Detectors. Smoke detectors shall be permitted, which shall activate the alarm required by 6.2.6.3.1(b) and, after at least 15 s, shall cause initiation of dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3) or power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake.

6.2.6.8 Moving Walk Braking-Distance Monitor. A device shall be provided to monitor the performance of the driving-machine brake(s). Whenever the driving-machine brake is applied, the device shall detect when the maximum stopping distance as determined by 6.2.5.3.1(d)(5) or the minimum stopping distance based on the average stopping rate in 6.2.5.3.1(c) is not achieved and prevent the moving walk from restarting. The device shall be the manual-reset type (see 6.2.6.14).

6.2.6.9 Signs

6.2.6.9.1 Caution Signs. A caution sign shall be located at the top and bottom landings of each moving walk, readily visible to boarding passengers.

The sign shall include the following wording:

- (a) "Caution"
- (b) "Passengers Only"
- (c) "Hold Handrail"
- (d) "Attend Children"
- (e) "Avoid Sides"

The sign shall be standard for all moving walks and shall be identical in format, size, color, wording, and pictorials as shown in Figure 6.1.6.9.1.

The sign shall be durable and have a maximum thickness of 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) with rounded or beveled corners and edges.

6.2.6.9.2 Signs or Graphics Relating to Safety. Signs or graphics relating to safety shall not be permitted on or adjacent to the moving walk in such a manner that they obstruct boarding passengers' view of the signs required in 6.2.6.9.1, physically obstruct passenger flow at the landings as specified in the safety zone (see 6.2.3.8.4), or obstruct or reduce passenger access to the handrails. The signs shall be legible and not be distracting, create

passenger flow hazards, or impair the function of safety devices.

6.2.6.9.3 Additional Signs or Graphics. Signs or graphics other than those specified in 6.2.6.9.1 and 6.2.6.9.2 shall not be permitted adjacent to the walk in such a manner that they would obstruct boarding passengers' view of the signs required in 6.2.6.9.1 or obstruct or reduce passenger access to the handrails, within the safety zone, nor on the moving walk except for signs, graphics, or markings required by this Code, manufacturer's identification, owner's identification, and handrail signs or graphics that are permitted on the moving walk. They shall not be distracting, create passenger flow hazards, or impair the function of safety devices.

6.2.6.10 Control and Operating Circuits. The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 6.2.6.10.1 through 6.2.6.10.4.

6.2.6.10.1 The occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; or the failure of any single solid-state device; or a software system failure shall not

- (a) permit the moving walk to start
- (b) render ineffective any electrical protective device required by 6.2.6.3
- (c) render ineffective the handrail speed-monitoring device required by 6.2.6.4
- (d) render ineffective the missing pallet device required by 6.2.6.5
- (e) permit the moving walk to revert to normal operation when on Inspection Operation (see 6.2.6.2.2)

NOTE [6.2.6.10.1(b) through 6.2.6.10.1(d)]: Requirements apply only to the circuits in which the devices are used and not to the devices themselves.

6.2.6.10.2 Methods used to satisfy 6.2.6.10.1 using software systems are permitted, provided that a non-software-controlled means is also used to remove power from the driving-machine motor and brake.

6.2.6.10.3 Methods used in the control and operating circuits to satisfy the requirements of 6.2.6.10.1 shall be checked prior to each start of the moving walk. When a single ground or failure as specified in 6.2.6.10.1 occurs, the moving walk shall not be permitted to restart.

6.2.6.10.4 Moving walks with driving-machine motors employing static control shall conform to the following:

(a) Two devices shall be provided to remove power from the driving-machine motor. At least one device shall be an electromechanical contactor.

(1) The contactor shall be arranged to open each time the moving walk stops.

(2) The contactor shall cause the removal of power from the driving-machine brake in accordance with 6.2.6.3.4.

(b) An additional contactor shall be provided to also open the driving-machine brake circuit. This contactor is not required to have contacts in the driving-machine motor circuit.

(c) The electrical protective devices required by 6.2.6.3 shall control the solid-state device and both contactors, or the dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3), as permitted.

(d) After each stop of the moving walk, the moving walk shall not respond to a signal to start unless both contactors [see (a) and (b)] are in the de-energized position.

6.2.6.11 Electrically Powered Safety Devices. If the handrail speed-monitoring device required by 6.2.6.4, the missing pallet device required by 6.2.6.5, the stopping performance monitoring required by 6.2.5.3.3(d), or any electrical protective device required by 6.2.6.3 requires electrical power for its functioning

(a) a loss of electrical power to the device shall cause power to be removed from the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake

(b) the occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; the failure of any single solid-state device; or a software system failure shall not render any of the following inoperative:

- (1) the missing pallet device
- (2) the handrail speed-monitoring device
- (3) the stopping performance monitor
- (4) the electrical protective device

(c) when a single ground or failure as described in 6.2.6.10.2 occurs, the moving walk shall not be permitted to restart

(22) **6.2.6.12 Installation of Capacitors or Other Devices or Means to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective.** The installation of capacitors or other devices, the operation or failure of which will cause an unsafe operation of the moving walk, is prohibited. No permanent device shall be installed, except as provided for in this Code, which will make any required electrical protective device ineffective.

6.2.6.13 Completion or Maintenance of a Circuit. The completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to stop the moving walk when the emergency stop switch is opened or when any of the electrical protective devices operate. These requirements do not apply to speed control switches (see 6.2.6.3.2, 6.2.6.3.7, and 6.2.6.4) or to dynamic braking (see 6.2.5.3.3).

6.2.6.14 Moving Walk Manual Reset. Where manual reset is required, interruption of power to the moving walk shall not cause a safety device to lose the status of the event upon return of power. The cause of the malfunction shall be indicated in some manner, so that

an examination will be made prior to restarting the moving walk. The starting switch shall not be operable until the reset for each activated safety device is accomplished.

6.2.6.15 Contactors and Relays for Use in Critical Operating Circuits. Where electromechanical contactors or relays are provided to fulfill the requirements of 6.2.6.10.1 through 6.2.6.10.4, they shall be considered to be used in critical operating circuits. If the contact(s) on these electromechanical contactors or relays are used for monitoring purposes, they shall be prevented from changing state if the contact(s) used in a critical operating circuit fails to open in the intended manner. The monitoring contact(s) shall be positively actuated and shall not be solely dependent on springs.

6.2.7 Lighting, Access, and Electrical Work

6.2.7.1 Lighting of Machine Room and Truss Interior

6.2.7.1.1 Remote Machine Room. Permanent electric lighting and a duplex receptacle rated at not less than 15 A, 120 V shall be provided in every remote machine room.

The illumination shall be not less than 100 lx (10 fc) at the floor level. The lighting control switch shall be located within easy reach of the access to such rooms and located so that it can be operated without passing over or reaching over any part of the machinery.

6.2.7.1.2 Truss Interior. A duplex receptacle rated at not less than 15 A, 120 V, accessibly located, shall be provided under the access plates (see 6.2.7.3) at both landings and in any machine areas located within the moving walk.

6.2.7.2 Lighting of Treadway. Treadways shall be illuminated with a light intensity not less than 50 lx (5 fc). The illumination shall be uniform intensity and should not contrast materially with that of the surrounding area.

6.2.7.3 Access to the Interior. Reasonable access to the interior of the moving walk shall be provided for inspection and maintenance.

6.2.7.3.1 Access plates requiring no more than 310 N (70 lbf) of effort to open shall be provided at the top and bottom landings for inspection and maintenance. The plates shall be made of a material that will afford a secure foothold. The use of stone, terrazzo, or concrete as a fill material is prohibited within the confines of the moving walk truss.

6.2.7.3.2 Access plates at the top and bottom landings shall be securely fastened by a mechanical means.

6.2.7.3.3 If access doors are provided in the side of the moving walk enclosure, they shall be kept closed and locked. The key shall be removable only when in the locked position. The key shall be Group 2 Security (see Section 8.1).

6.2.7.3.4 Where access is provided to a machinery enclosure, a fixed guard shall be provided to prevent accidental contact with the moving pallets and moving treadways by a person servicing equipment from within the enclosure. The guard shall be made of material that will reject a 13 mm (0.5 in.) diameter ball and shall extend the full width of the pallet treads. A guard is not required where the only equipment normally serviced from within the enclosure is within the pallet band.

6.2.7.4 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

(22) **6.2.7.4.1** All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)). In jurisdictions enforcing CSA C22.1, main line power disconnecting means shall not be opened automatically by a fire alarm system.

6.2.7.4.2 Electrical equipment shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked. CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 defines the scope and applicable requirements for this listing/certification.

6.2.7.4.3 Control equipment shall be tested in accordance with the testing requirements of ISO 22200:2009. Control equipment tested in accordance with the testing requirements of EN 12016:1998 prior to 1 yr after the effective date of ASME A17.1-2016/CSA B44-16 need not be retested in accordance with the testing requirements of ISO 22200:2009.

The control equipment shall be exposed to interference levels at the test values specified for "safety circuits." The interference shall not cause any of the conditions described in [6.2.6.10.1\(a\)](#) through [6.2.6.10.1\(e\)](#). If enclosure doors or suppression equipment must remain installed to meet the above requirements, warning signs to that effect shall be posted on the control equipment.

6.2.8 Outdoor Moving Walks

6.2.8.1 Weatherproofing. Moving walks shall be constructed so that exposure to the weather will not interfere with normal operation.

6.2.8.1.1 The moving walk equipment and its supports shall be protected from corrosion.

6.2.8.1.2 Electrical equipment shall be provided with a degree of protection of at least Type 4 construction as specified in NEMA 250, and wiring shall be identified for use in wet locations in accordance with NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable (see [Part 9](#)).

6.2.8.2 Precipitation. A cover, directly over the horizontal projection of the moving walk, shall be provided. The cover shall extend outward from the centerline of the handrail so that a line extended from the edge of the cover to the centerline of the handrail forms an angle of not less than 15 deg from the vertical.

6.2.8.2.1 When the moving walk is subjected to blowing snow or freezing rain, heating systems shall be operated to prevent accumulation of snow or ice on the treadway and landings. The heating systems' operation shall be thermostatically controlled and independent of the moving walk operation.

6.2.8.2.2 Drains suitable for all weather conditions shall be provided to prevent the accumulation of water where groundwater and runoff can collect within the equipment.

6.2.8.3 Slip Resistance. Landing plates and comb-plates shall be designed to provide a secure foothold when wet.

Part 7

Dumbwaiters and Material Lifts

SCOPE

Part 7 applies to all power dumbwaiters and material lifts. Hand dumbwaiters are prohibited.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to dumbwaiters and material lifts.

Where the term “elevator” is used in a referenced requirement, it shall mean “dumbwaiter” or “material lift.”

SECTION 7.1

POWER DUMBWAITERS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Section 7.1 applies to all power dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices.

7.1.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

The construction of hoistways and hoistway enclosures shall comply with Section 2.1, except as modified by 7.1.1.1 through 7.1.1.4.

7.1.1.1 Requirement 2.1.1.1 applies, except where dumbwaiters are installed in a private residence. In private residences, fire-resistive construction shall conform to the requirements of the building code.

7.1.1.2 Requirement 2.1.2.1 does not apply. Where a hoistway extends into the top floor of a building, the hoistway or machinery space enclosures, where required, shall be constructed in accordance with the requirements of the building code (see Section 1.3).

7.1.1.3 Requirement 2.1.3.1 does not apply. If a floor is provided at the top of the hoistway, it shall comply with 7.1.1.4.

7.1.1.4 Requirement 2.1.3.2 does not apply. The floor shall be designed in accordance with other floors in the building. Where the dumbwaiter machine is to be supported by the machine room floor, the floor shall be designed in accordance with 2.9.4 and 2.9.5.

7.1.2 Pits

Pits are not required, but shall be permitted. Where a pit is provided, it shall conform to Section 2.2, except as modified by 7.1.2.1 through 7.1.2.6.

7.1.2.1 Requirement 2.2.1 does not apply. Pits shall be permitted to be provided.

7.1.2.2 Requirement 2.2.4 does not apply. The access door shall be provided with an electric contact, which will cause an interruption of power to the motor and brake when the door is open.

7.1.2.3 Requirement 2.2.5 does not apply. If the level of illumination in the pit, where provided, does not meet the requirements of 2.2.5, then a permanent or portable lighting means complying with 2.2.5.1 shall be provided.

7.1.2.4 Requirement 2.2.6 applies only where pit access is provided by means of a ladder (see 2.2.4.2).

7.1.2.5 Requirement 2.2.7 does not apply.

7.1.2.6 Requirement 2.2.8 does not apply.

7.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights

Section 2.3 does not apply to the location and guarding of counterweights, except that the location of counterweights shall comply with 2.3.1.

7.1.4 Vertical Car Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights

Section 2.4 does not apply. Bottom and top car clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 7.1.4.1 and 7.1.4.2.

7.1.4.1 When the car or counterweight reaches its maximum limit of downward travel, no part of the car or counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the pit or floor beneath the lowest landing or equipment located in the hoistway, except a buffer or bumper.

7.1.4.2 When the car or counterweight reaches its maximum limit of upward travel, no part of the car or counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the overhead structure or equipment located in the hoistway, except a mechanical stop or buffer.

7.1.4.3 Where a top-of-car operating device is provided, a minimum vertical space shall be provided on the car top when the car reaches its maximum limit of upward travel. The space shall comply with 7.1.4.3.1 and 7.1.4.3.2.

7.1.4.3.1 The horizontal unobstructed area on the car top shall be not less than 0.370 m^2 (570 in.²), measured not less than 500 mm (20 in.) on one side.

7.1.4.3.2 The vertical height of the area on the car top shall be not less than 1 100 mm (43 in.), measured vertically between the top of the car enclosure and the overhead structure or other obstruction.

7.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to [Section 2.5](#), except as modified by [7.1.5.1](#) through [7.1.5.4](#).

7.1.5.1 Requirement [2.5.1.1](#) applies for dumbwaiters with a rated load over 227 kg (500 lb). For dumbwaiters with a rated load of 227 kg (500 lb) or less, the clearance between the car and the hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

7.1.5.2 Requirement [2.5.1.2](#) applies for dumbwaiters with a rated load over 227 kg (500 lb). For dumbwaiters with a rated load of 227 kg (500 lb) or less, clearances between the car and the counterweight shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

7.1.5.3 Requirement [2.5.1.4](#) applies, except when a counterbalanced car door is provided. The clearance shall be measured between the landing side of the car door sill and the hoistway edge of any landing sill, or the hoistway side of any vertically sliding counterweighted or counterbalanced hoistway door or of any vertically sliding counterbalanced biparting hoistway door sill.

7.1.5.4 Requirement [2.5.1.5](#) does not apply.

7.1.6 Protection of Spaces Below the Hoistway

[Section 2.6](#) applies, except as modified by [7.1.6.1](#) through [7.1.6.3](#).

7.1.6.1 Car and counterweight safeties shall be provided conforming to [7.2.4](#).

7.1.6.2 Buffers shall be provided conforming to [7.2.8.1](#) or [7.2.8.2](#).

7.1.6.3 Direct-plunger hydraulic dumbwaiters shall conform to [Section 3.6](#).

7.1.7 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

Machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall comply with [Section 2.7](#), except as modified by [7.1.7.1](#) through [7.1.7.11](#).

7.1.7.1 Requirement [2.7.1.1](#) applies only where a separate machinery space is provided.

7.1.7.2 Requirement [2.7.1.2](#) applies only where a separate machinery space is provided.

7.1.7.3 Dumbwaiter machine rooms shall conform to [2.7.2](#) or the following:

(a) Guards on dumbwaiter equipment shall prevent accidental contact with moving parts and shall permit visual inspection without complete removal.

(b) Where a dumbwaiter machine is located at the bottom of the hoistway, the control equipment shall be located outside the hoistway or in a cabinet on the inside surface of the access door.

7.1.7.4 Requirement [2.7.3.1](#) does not apply. A means of access to dumbwaiter machine rooms and overhead machinery spaces shall be provided, from outside the hoistway, for elevator personnel.

7.1.7.5 Requirement [2.7.3.3](#) applies only where a machine room or control room is provided for machine and control equipment.

7.1.7.6 Access doors and openings shall conform to [2.7.3.4](#), except as modified by [7.1.7.6.1](#) and [7.1.7.6.2](#).

7.1.7.6.1 Requirements [2.7.3.4.3](#) through [2.7.3.4.5](#) do not apply.

7.1.7.6.2 Requirement [2.7.3.4.6](#) applies, except the maximum width of an access opening located not more than 1525 mm (60 in.) above the lowest point of the hoistway, contiguous to and in vertical alignment with a hoistway entrance, shall be the lesser of 1220 mm (48 in.) or the hoistway entrance width.

Hoistway access openings shall be provided with an electric contact that will cause interruption of power to the motor and brake when the access door is open.

7.1.7.7 Requirement [2.7.3.5](#) does not apply.

7.1.7.8 Requirement [2.7.4](#) does not apply.

7.1.7.9 Lighting, temperature, and humidity shall conform to [2.7.9](#), except [2.7.9.2](#) does not apply. Where there is a machine room, it shall be provided with natural or mechanical ventilation to avoid overheating of the electrical equipment to ensure normal operation of the dumbwaiter.

7.1.7.10 Requirement [2.7.6](#) does not apply, except as follows: Controllers located outside the hoistway and not in machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces, or control spaces shall be enclosed in a locked cabinet. The locked cabinet shall comply with [2.7.6.3.2](#).

7.1.7.11 Requirement [2.7.8.4](#) does not apply.

7.1.8 Electrical Equipment, Wiring, Pipes, Ducts, and HVAC in Hoistways and Machine Rooms

Electrical equipment, pipes, and ducts in hoistways, machine rooms, and machinery spaces shall comply with [Section 2.8](#), except as modified by [7.1.8.1](#) through [7.1.8.3](#).

7.1.8.1 Type SF or equivalent wire is not required for the wiring to the hoistway door interlock from the hoistway riser.

7.1.8.2 Requirement [2.8.1](#) does not apply. Dumbwaiter machine and control equipment shall be permitted to be located in a room or space containing other equipment essential to the operation of the building, provided that all exposed moving parts are guarded.

7.1.8.3 Requirement [2.8.3.3](#) does not apply. Sprinklers shall be permitted in the hoistway when conforming to NFPA 13 or the NBCC, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)). All sprinkler risers and returns shall be located outside the hoistway.

7.1.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations

Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall comply with [Section 2.9](#), except as modified by [7.1.9.1](#) through [7.1.9.4](#).

7.1.9.1 Requirement [2.9.3.1](#) does not apply.

7.1.9.2 Machines and equipment directly over the hoistway shall be permitted to be hung underneath the supporting beams at the top of the hoistway.

7.1.9.3 Requirement [2.9.3.2](#) applies to the machine or sheave connections between the machine or sheave and the beams, foundation or floor, and machinery that is hung underneath the beams.

7.1.9.4 Requirement [2.9.3.3.1](#) does not apply. Machines, sheaves, equipment, and hitches shall be permitted to be secured to and supported by the guide rails and structural walls.

7.1.10 Guarding of Equipment

[Section 2.10](#) does not apply, except that the guarding of equipment shall comply with [2.10.1](#). Power dumbwaiter machines and sheaves shall be permitted to be located inside the hoistway enclosure at the top or bottom without intervening enclosures or platforms.

7.1.11 Protection of Hoistway Openings

The protection of hoistway openings shall conform to [Section 2.11](#), except as modified by [7.1.11.1](#) through [7.1.11.14](#).

7.1.11.1 Entrances. Requirement [2.11.1](#) does not apply. All hoistway landing openings shall be provided with entrances that shall guard the full height and width of the opening.

7.1.11.1.1 For power dumbwaiters, the doors shall not open to a 25 mm (1 in.) greater width and height than the width and height of the car, unless the car is being removed or installed.

7.1.11.2 Types of Entrances. Requirement [2.11.2](#) does not apply.

7.1.11.2.1 For power dumbwaiters, entrances shall be one of the following types:

- (a) horizontal slide, single- or multisection
- (b) swing, single-section
- (c) combination horizontal slide and swing
- (d) vertical slide biparting counterbalanced
- (e) vertical slide counterweighted, single- or multisection

7.1.11.3 Closing of Hoistway Doors. Requirement [2.11.3](#) does not apply.

7.1.11.3.1 For power dumbwaiters, all doors shall be kept closed, except the door at the floor at which the car is being loaded or unloaded.

7.1.11.4 Location of Hoistway Door Openings. Requirement [2.11.4](#) does not apply.

7.1.11.4.1 The bottom of the hoistway door opening shall be not less than 600 mm (24 in.) above the floor, except for power dumbwaiter applications conforming to [7.1.12.1.2](#) or [7.1.12.1.3](#).

7.1.11.4.2 Horizontally sliding or swinging doors shall be located so that the distance from the hoistway face of the doors to the edge of the hoistway landing sill, measured from the face of the door section nearest to the car, shall not be more than 75 mm (3 in.) for horizontally sliding or single-section swinging doors.

7.1.11.5 Hoistway Access Doors. Access openings shall be permitted to be provided in the hoistway enclosure for maintenance and inspection. Access openings, when provided, shall conform to [7.1.7.5](#).

7.1.11.6 Projection of Equipment Beyond Landing Sills. Requirement [2.11.5](#) does not apply.

7.1.11.7 Opening of Hoistway Doors From the Hoistway Side. Requirement [2.11.6](#) does not apply.

7.1.11.8 Hoistway Door Vision Panels. Hoistway door vision panels (see [2.11.7](#)) are not required. Where provided, they shall comply with [2.11.7.1.2](#) through [2.11.7.1.4](#) and [2.11.7.1.6](#), and the total area of one or more vision panels in any hoistway door shall not exceed 0.016 m² (25 in.²).

7.1.11.9 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Power Operation. Requirement 2.11.9 does not apply. Doors shall be provided with door locking devices conforming to 7.1.12. Where hoistway doors are power operated or are opened or closed by power, they shall conform to 7.1.13.

7.1.11.10 Landings and Landing Sills. Requirement 2.11.10.1 does not apply.

7.1.11.11 Horizontal Slide-Type Entrances. Requirement 2.11.11.1(b) does not apply.

7.1.11.12 Vertical Slide-Type Entrances. Requirements 2.11.12.1 through 2.11.12.3, 2.11.12.7, and 2.11.12.8 do not apply.

7.1.11.12.1 Landing sills shall be metal, securely fastened to the frame or building structure, and of sufficient strength to support the rated load of the dumbwaiter, applied vertically over an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) at the center of the sill, with no permanent displacement or deformation of the sill.

7.1.11.12.2 Either the panel guide rails or the jambs used to frame the opening shall be securely anchored to a masonry wall, or securely fastened to the building structure or wall-supporting members.

7.1.11.12.3 Panel guide rails not fastened in conformance with 7.1.11.12.2 shall be securely fastened to the jambs at intervals throughout the frame height and shall be permitted to be fastened to the building structure where the rails extend past the frame. Rails and their fastenings shall withstand the forces specified in 7.1.11.12.1, and any reactions resulting from the loading and unloading operations that are capable of being transmitted to the rails.

7.1.11.12.4 Requirement 2.11.12.4.2 applies only where truckable sills are required.

7.1.11.12.5 Requirements 2.11.12.4.3(a) and 2.11.12.4.3(b) do not apply. Panels of biparting counter-balanced entrances shall conform to the following:

(a) They shall be provided with means to stop the closing panels when the distance between the closing rigid members of the upper and lower panels is not less than 20 mm (0.8 in.).

(b) A fire-resistive, nonshearing, and noncrushing member of either the meeting or overlapping type shall be provided on the upper panel to close the distance between the rigid door panels when in contact with the stops.

7.1.11.12.6 Requirement 2.11.12.4.4 applies, except that the overlap shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

7.1.11.12.7 Requirement 2.11.12.4.6 does not apply. The entrance assembly shall be capable of withstanding a force of 1 110 N (250 lbf) applied on the landing side at

right angles to, and approximately at the center of a panel. This force shall be distributed over an area approximately 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). There shall be no appreciable permanent displacement or deformation of any parts of the entrance assembly resulting from this test.

7.1.11.12.8 Requirement 2.11.12.5.3 does not apply. Guide members shall be designed to withstand the forces specified in 7.1.11.12.7.

7.1.11.13 Swing-Type Entrances. For swing-type entrances, 2.11.13 applies, except as modified by 7.1.11.13.1 through 7.1.11.13.3.

7.1.11.13.1 Requirements 2.11.13.1(b) and 2.11.13.3.3 do not apply.

7.1.11.13.2 Requirement 2.11.13.3.5 does not apply. The panels and their assembled accessories shall be capable of withstanding normal attempts to open a closed and locked door by pulling the handle. The panel shall be designed to withstand a force of 1 110 N (250 lbf) applied on the landing side at right angles to and approximately at the center of the panel. This force shall be distributed over an area approximately 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). There shall be no appreciable permanent displacement or deformation of any parts of the entrance assembly resulting from this force.

7.1.11.13.3 Requirement 2.11.13.3.7 applies, except it shall be in conformance with 7.1.11.13.1.

7.1.11.14 Marking. Marking (see 2.11.15) shall apply, except as modified by 7.1.11.14.1 and 7.1.11.14.2.

7.1.11.14.1 Requirement 2.11.15.1.1(c) does not apply.

7.1.11.14.2 Requirement 2.11.15.1.2(b) applies, except it shall be in conformance with 2.11.11.5.1 and 2.11.11.5.2 or 7.1.11.12.6.

7.1.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices, Access Switches, and Unlocking Devices

Hoistway door locking devices, access switches, and unlocking devices shall comply with 7.1.12. Section 2.12 does not apply, except as referenced in 7.1.12.

7.1.12.1 Hoistway Door Locking Devices for Power Dumbwaiters. Hoistway door locking devices for power dumbwaiters shall comply with 7.1.12.1.1 through 7.1.12.1.3.

7.1.12.1.1 Hoistway door interlocks in conformance with 7.1.12.1.3 are required at all landings, except that hoistway door combination mechanical locks and electric contacts conforming to 7.1.12.1.2 shall be permitted to be used at landings where the bottom of the door opening is 600 mm (24 in.) or more above the floor.

7.1.12.1.2 Hoistway door combination mechanical locks and electric contacts, where provided, shall conform to the following:

- (a) requirement 2.12.3.2
- (b) requirement 2.12.3.3
- (c) requirement 2.12.3.4, except that
 - (1) requirement 2.12.3.4.4 applies to all types of multisection doors
 - (2) requirement 2.12.3.4.5 applies, but the force used should be 225 N (50 lbf)
 - (d) requirement 2.12.3.5
 - (e) requirement 2.12.4
 - (f) they shall be arranged so that the hoistway door is locked when the car is more than 75 mm (3 in.) from the landing

7.1.12.1.3 Hoistway door interlocks, where provided, shall conform to the following:

- (a) where the rated speed of the dumbwaiter is greater than 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min)
 - (1) requirement 2.12.2.2
 - (2) requirement 2.12.2.3
 - (3) requirement 2.12.2.4, except that
 - (-a) requirement 2.12.2.4.1 does not apply
 - (-b) requirement 2.12.2.4.6 applies, but the force used shall be 225 N (50 lbf)
 - (4) requirement 2.12.2.5
 - (5) requirement 2.12.2.6
 - (6) requirement 2.12.4
 - (b) where the rated speed of the dumbwaiter is less than or equal to 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min)
 - (1) requirement 2.12.2.2.
 - (2) the operation of a dumbwaiter driving machine when a hoistway door is not in the closed position (see 2.12.2.2) shall be permitted by a car-leveling device (see 7.2.12.6), a hoistway access switch (see 7.1.12.4), or an anticreep device (see 7.3.11.3). The operation of a dumbwaiter driving machine when a hoistway door is unlocked but in the closed position shall be permitted by a car-leveling device, a hoistway access switch, or an anticreep device, or by the normal operating device when the car is within 75 mm (3 in.) above or below the landing. Hoistway door close contacts (see 7.2.12.31) shall be provided when the driving machine is operated with the hoistway door or gate unlocked but in the closed position. The hoistway door close contacts shall be positively opened by the opening action of the door or gate. They shall be maintained in the open position by the action of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by a positive mechanical means.
 - (3) requirement 2.12.2.4, except that
 - (-a) requirement 2.12.2.4.1 does not apply.
 - (-b) requirement 2.12.2.4.3 does not apply. The interlock shall lock the door in the closed position with a minimum engagement of 7 mm (0.28 in.) of the locking members before the interlock contacts are

closed and before the driving machine can be operated except as permitted by (2).

(-c) requirement 2.12.2.4.6 applies, but the force used shall be 225 N (50 lbf).

(4) requirement 2.12.2.5.

(5) requirement 2.12.2.6.

(6) requirement 2.12.4.

7.1.12.2 Reserved for Future Use

7.1.12.3 Hoistway Door Unlocking Devices. Hoistway door unlocking devices conforming to 2.12.6.2.1, 2.12.6.2.2, 2.12.6.2.4, and 2.12.6.2.5 shall be provided at the top and bottom terminal landings.

7.1.12.4 Hoistway Access Switches. Hoistway access switches shall be permitted at the top and bottom landings. Requirement 2.12.7 does not apply. Where hoistway access switches are provided, they shall conform to the following:

(a) Requirement 2.12.7.2 applies.

(b) Requirement 2.12.7.3 applies, except 2.12.7.3.2(b) does not apply.

7.1.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors or Gates

The power operation, power opening, and power closing of hoistway doors and car doors or gates shall comply with Section 2.13, except as modified by 7.1.13.1 through 7.1.13.9.

7.1.13.1 Requirement 2.13.2.1.2 does not apply.

7.1.13.2 Requirement 2.13.2.2.3 does not apply.

7.1.13.3 Requirement 2.13.3.1 does not apply.

7.1.13.4 Requirements 2.13.3.2.3 and 2.13.3.2.4 do not apply. A closing means shall not be provided in the car.

7.1.13.5 Requirement 2.13.3.3.2 does not apply.

7.1.13.6 Requirement 2.13.3.4.2 does not apply; sequence operation is not required, however, if provided, it shall conform to 2.13.6.1. Requirement 2.13.3.4.3 does not apply when the only means for controlling the door is by a momentary-pressure switch at the landing within sight of the door, that, when operated, shall cause the doors to stop or to stop and reopen. Requirement 2.13.3.4.4 does not apply.

7.1.13.7 Requirement 2.13.4 also applies to power-operated vertically sliding doors. Requirements 2.13.4.2.3 and 2.13.4.2.4 do not apply.

7.1.13.8 Requirement 2.13.5 applies only to power-operated hoistway doors and car doors or gates where closing is by automatic means. Requirement 2.13.5.2(b) does not apply.

7.1.13.9 Requirement 2.13.6 does not apply.

7.1.14 Identification

Section 2.29 does not apply. When the machinery of more than one dumbwaiter is in the machine room, each driving machine shall be assigned a different number that shall be painted on or securely attached to the driving machine.

SECTION 7.2 ELECTRIC DUMBWAITERS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Section 7.2 applies to electric dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices.

7.2.1 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

Car enclosures and car doors and gates shall comply with Section 2.14, except as modified by 7.2.1.1 through 7.2.1.3.

7.2.1.1 Car Enclosures

7.2.1.1.1 Requirement 2.14.1.2 does not apply. The enclosure shall be securely fastened to the car platform or the point of suspension.

7.2.1.1.2 Requirement 2.14.1.3 does not apply. The car enclosure walls shall be solid, grille, or perforated construction. Car enclosure walls shall be of such strength and designed and supported so that when subjected to a leaning or falling rated load on the car, the car enclosure walls will not deflect or deform to the extent that the running clearances are reduced below the minimum specified in 7.1.5. Grilled or perforated portions of the enclosure shall reject a ball 38 mm (1.5 in.) in diameter. Nonmetal cars shall be reinforced with metal from the bottom of the car to the point of suspension. Metal car sections shall be riveted, welded, or bolted together. Cars shall be permitted to be provided with hinged, permanent, or removable shelves. The maximum inside height of the car at any point shall not exceed 1 220 mm (48 in.) (see also 7.2.3). Hinged or removable panels shall not be provided in car tops.

7.2.1.1.3 Requirement 2.14.1.4 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.4 Requirement 2.14.1.5 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.5 Requirement 2.14.1.6 does not apply. Car tops shall be capable of sustaining a load of 3.5 kPa (75 lbf/ft²) without permanent deformation. The resulting deflection under this load shall be limited to prevent damage to any equipment, device, or lighting assemblies fastened to or adjacent to the car enclosure top.

7.2.1.1.6 Requirement 2.14.1.7.1 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.7 Requirement 2.14.1.8 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.8 Requirement 2.14.1.9 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.9 Requirement 2.14.1.10 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.10 Requirement 2.14.2 does not apply. Vision panels are not required. Where vision panels are provided, the perforated portions shall reject a ball 38 mm (1.5 in.) in diameter. Glass vision panels shall be either laminated or wire glass and shall not exceed 0.016 m² (25 in.²).

7.2.1.1.11 Requirement 2.14.3 does not apply.

7.2.1.2 Car Doors and Gates. Car doors or gates shall be provided at entrances to the car, shall guard the full width of the opening, and shall conform to 7.2.1.2.1 through 7.2.1.2.12.

7.2.1.2.1 Requirement 2.14.4.1 does not apply.

7.2.1.2.2 Requirement 2.14.4.2 does not apply. Each door or gate shall be equipped with a contact that will prevent operation of the driving machine, unless the door or gate panel(s) is in the closed position as defined in 2.12.2.2(c) or 2.12.3.2.

7.2.1.2.3 Requirement 2.14.4.3 does not apply. Car doors shall be the horizontal or vertical sliding type and material conforming to 7.2.1.1.2.

7.2.1.2.4 Requirement 2.14.4.4 does not apply. Gates shall be the horizontally sliding collapsible type or the vertically sliding type.

(a) Horizontally sliding collapsible gates shall conform to the following:

- (1) They shall not be power operated, except as permitted by 2.13.2.1.2.
- (2) They shall not be used with power-operated vertically sliding hoistway doors.
- (3) When fully closed (extended position), they shall reject a ball 113 mm (4.5 in.) in diameter.

(4) They shall have at least every fourth vertical member guided at the top and every second vertical member guided at the bottom.

(5) Collapsible gate handles shall be provided with finger guards.

(b) Vertically sliding gates shall conform to the following:

- (1) They shall be the balanced counterweighted type or the biparting counterbalanced type.
- (2) They shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.
- (3) Balanced counterweighted gates shall be permitted to be either single- or multisection and shall be permitted to slide either up or down to open.
- (4) They shall be permitted to be either manually or power operated.

7.2.1.2.5 Requirement 2.14.4.5 does not apply.

7.2.1.2.6 Requirement 2.14.4.6 applies, except that the forces applied shall be not greater than the weight of the rated load or that specified in 2.14.4.6, whichever is less.

7.2.1.2.7 Requirement 2.14.4.7 does not apply.

7.2.1.2.8 Requirement 2.14.4.9 does not apply. Suspension members of vertically sliding car doors or gates, and of weights used with car doors or gates, shall have a factor of safety not less than 5.

7.2.1.2.9 Requirement 2.14.4.10 applies, except that they shall conform to 7.1.13 instead of Section 2.13.

7.2.1.2.10 Requirement 2.14.5 does not apply.

7.2.1.2.11 Requirement 2.14.6 does not apply.

7.2.1.2.12 Where car door or gate horizontal structural members are not fixed to the movable panel, they shall not be capable of entering into the access door area.

7.2.1.3 Lighting Fixtures. Requirement 2.14.7 does not apply; however, if lighting is provided in the car, it shall conform to 2.14.7.3 and 2.14.7.4.

7.2.2 Car Frames and Platforms

Car frames and platforms shall comply with Section 2.15, except as modified by 7.2.2.1 through 7.2.2.14.

7.2.2.1 Requirement 2.15.1 does not apply.

7.2.2.2 Requirement 2.15.2 does not apply. Cars shall be guided on each guide rail by upper and lower guiding members.

7.2.2.3 Requirement 2.15.3 applies, except that frames are not required.

7.2.2.4 Requirement 2.15.5 does not apply. The car shall be provided with a platform capable of withstanding the loading conditions for which the dumbwaiter is designed.

7.2.2.5 Requirements 2.15.6.1.2 and 2.15.6.1.3 do not apply. Requirements 2.15.6.1.1 and 2.15.6.1.4 apply only where car frames and car platform frames are used.

7.2.2.6 Requirement 2.15.7.3 does not apply.

7.2.2.7 Requirement 2.15.8 does not apply.

7.2.2.8 Requirement 2.15.9 does not apply. Leveling devices are not required. Guards shall be provided to close any opening to the hoistway above and below the car that occurs when leveling or inching devices are operated with the hoistway door(s) in the open position.

7.2.2.8.1 The guards shall

- (a) be located on the entrance side of the car
- (b) extend the full width of the car

(c) be made of smooth metal plates of not less than 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) thick steel or material of equivalent strength and stiffness and be braced to the car

7.2.2.8.2 The guards shall have a straight vertical face, extending not less than the following:

(a) for the car platform guard, the maximum length of the car travel in the up direction permitted by the car-leveling or inching device as installed, plus 13 mm (0.5 in.)

(b) for car head guard, the maximum length of the car travel in the down direction permitted by the car-leveling or inching device as installed, plus 13 mm (0.5 in.)

7.2.2.9 Requirement 2.15.11 does not apply.

7.2.2.10 Requirement 2.15.12 does not apply.

7.2.2.11 Requirement 2.15.13 does not apply.

7.2.2.12 Requirement 2.15.14 does not apply.

7.2.2.13 Requirement 2.15.15 does not apply.

7.2.2.14 Requirement 2.15.16.1 applies, except that either hinged platform sill electric contacts or car door electric contacts shall prevent operation of the car if the sill is not retracted.

7.2.3 Capacity and Loading

Section 2.16 does not apply to dumbwaiters.

7.2.3.1 Rated Load and Platform Area. The rated load shall be not less than 221 kg/m³ (13.9 lb/ft³) of the inside net car volume. The inside net platform area shall be not more than 1 m² (10.75 ft²).

7.2.3.2 Capacity Plate. A capacity plate shall be fastened in a conspicuous place in the car. The plate shall be such material and construction that the letters and figures stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied to the face shall remain permanently and readily legible. The plate shall indicate the rated load in letters and numerals not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) high.

7.2.3.3 Data Plate

7.2.3.3.1 A data plate shall be located on the car crosshead, on the car top, or inside the car. If the information required on the data plate is provided on the capacity plate inside the car (see 7.2.3.2), then a separate data plate is not required on the car top or crosshead.

7.2.3.3.2 The data plate shall indicate

- (a) the weight of the complete car, including the car safety and all auxiliary equipment attached to the car
- (b) the rated load and rated speed
- (c) the suspension means (see 7.2.6)
- (d) the manufacturer's name and the date of installation

7.2.3.3.3 The letters and numerals on the data plate shall be not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.) high and stamped, etched, or raised on the surface of the plate.

7.2.3.4 “No Riders” Signs. A sign stating “NO RIDERS” shall be located in the car in letters not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.) high.

7.2.4 Car and Counterweight Safeties

Car and counterweight safeties, where provided, shall conform to [Section 2.17](#), except as modified by [7.2.4.1](#) through [7.2.4.8](#).

- (22) **7.2.4.1 Where Required and Located.** Requirement [2.17.1](#) does not apply. When only one suspension means is provided or where required by [7.1.6](#), cars and counterweights shall be provided with one or more safety devices of the type identified in [2.17.5](#). Car safeties shall be attached to the supporting structure of the car.

7.2.4.2 Function and Stopping Distances. Requirement [2.17.3](#) does not apply. The safety device shall be capable of stopping and sustaining the entire car with its rated load within the maximum stopping distances as determined in [Table 2.17.3](#) and [8.2.6](#).

7.2.4.3 Reserved for Future Use

7.2.4.4 Governor-Actuated Safeties and Car Safety Mechanism Switches. Requirement [2.17.7](#) does not apply. Car and counterweight safeties shall be actuated by speed governors or as a result of breaking or slackening of the suspension means, and shall be permitted to be the inertia type without governors.

Every car safety shall be provided with a switch, operated by the car safety mechanism. This switch shall conform to [2.18.4](#), except that the switch does not have to be on the safety, provided that it is operated by the action of the safety.

7.2.4.5 Limits of Use of Various Types of Safeties. Requirement [2.17.8](#) applies, except that Type A safeties shall be permitted to be used regardless of the rated speed.

7.2.4.6 Application of Safeties. The application of safeties shall conform to [2.17.9.1](#) through [2.17.9.3](#). The forces providing the stopping action shall conform to [2.17.9.4](#) or [7.2.4.6.1](#).

7.2.4.6.1 Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in [2.23.3\(a\)](#) are used, the application of safety stopping forces shall not cause deformation of the guide-rail section upon whose dimensional stability the stopping capability of the safeties is dependent.

7.2.4.7 Marking Plates for Safeties. Requirement [2.17.14](#) applies only for governor-operated safeties.

7.2.4.8 Rail Lubricants. Requirement [2.17.16](#) applies only where safeties are provided.

7.2.5 Speed Governors

Speed governors are not required. Where provided, they shall conform to [Section 2.18](#), except that the diameter of the governor rope (see [2.18.5.1](#)) shall be permitted to be less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.); however, it shall be not less than the diameter of the suspension ropes.

7.2.6 Suspension Means

Suspension means shall comply with [Section 2.20](#), except as modified by [7.2.6.1](#) through [7.2.6.8](#).

7.2.6.1 Type of Suspension Means. Requirement [2.20.1](#) does not apply.

7.2.6.1.1 Power Dumbwaiters

(22)

(a) Cars and counterweights for power dumbwaiters, except for dumbwaiters having rack-and-pinion or screw-type driving machines, shall be suspended by one or more iron or steel-wire hoisting ropes or chains (see [7.2.4.1](#)).

(b) Wire ropes shall be permitted to have marlin covers.

(c) Chains, where used, shall be roller, block, or multiple-link silent type.

7.2.6.2 Rope Data. Requirement [2.20.2](#) only applies to dumbwaiters suspended by wire or non-wire rope. The information required in [2.20.2.1](#) shall be located on the car crosshead, on the car top, or inside the car. Requirement [2.20.2.2\(j\)](#) does not apply.

7.2.6.3 Chain Data

7.2.6.3.1 The data plate required by [7.2.3.3](#) shall bear the following chain data:

- (a) number of chains
- (b) type of chains
- (c) standard chain number
- (d) the manufacturer's minimum ultimate tensile strength per chain in pounds

7.2.6.3.2 A metal data tag shall be securely attached to one of the chain fastenings. This data tag shall bear the following chain data:

- (a) type of chain
- (b) standard chain number
- (c) manufacturer's minimum ultimate tensile strength
- (d) month and year the chains were installed
- (e) name of the person or firm who installed the chains
- (f) name of the manufacturer of the chains

7.2.6.3.3 A new tag shall be installed at each chain renewal. The material and marking of the chain data tag shall conform to [2.16.3.3](#), except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.6 mm (0.063 in.).

Table 7.2.6.4
Factors of Safety for Wire Rope and Chains

Rope or Chain Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Factor of Safety	
	Ropes	Chains
0.25 (50)	4.8	6.0
0.50 (100)	5.2	6.5
0.75 (150)	5.5	6.9
1.00 (200)	5.9	7.4
1.25 (250)	6.2	7.8
1.50 (300)	6.6	8.3
1.75 (350)	7.0	8.8
2.00 (400)	7.3	9.1
2.25 (450)	7.7	9.6
2.50 (500)	8.0	10.0

7.2.6.4 Factors of Safety. Requirement 2.20.3 does not apply. The factor of safety, based on the static load, of car and counterweight suspension means shall be not less than the value specified in Table 7.2.6.4 for the actual speed of the rope or chain corresponding to the rated speed of the dumbwaiter.

7.2.6.5 Number of Ropes or Chains Required. Requirement 2.20.4 does not apply. The number of suspension ropes or chains shall be determined by multiplying the static load (weight of the car plus rated load plus weight of the hoisting ropes or chains) by the required factor of safety, and dividing the result by the manufacturer's

(a) rated ultimate strength of one of the ropes of the size and construction to be used

(b) minimum ultimate tensile strength of one of the chains of the size and construction to be used

Where 2:1 roping is used, one-half the static load shall be used in the formula.

7.2.6.6 Suspension-Rope Equalizers. Requirement 2.20.5 does not apply.

(22) **7.2.6.7 Suspension Means Monitoring and Protection.** Requirement 2.20.8 does not apply.

7.2.6.8 Fastening of Suspension Means

7.2.6.8.1 Requirement 2.20.9.1 does not apply. Fastening of suspension means shall conform to the following:

(a) The car and counterweight ends of suspension wire ropes, or the stationary hitch-ends where multiple roping is used, shall be fastened in such a manner that all portions of the rope, except the portion inside the rope sockets, shall be readily visible. Fastenings shall be by individual tapered babbitted rope sockets conforming to 2.20.9.3 through 2.20.9.6; or by other types of rope fastening, provided that they develop at least 80% of the ultimate

breaking strength of the strongest rope to be used in such fastenings.

(b) The fastening of car and counterweight ends of suspension chains shall be such as to develop at least 80% of the minimum ultimate tensile strength of the strongest chain used in such fastenings.

7.2.6.8.2 Requirement 2.20.9.2 applies only where adjustable shackle rods are provided.

7.2.7 Counterweights

Counterweights shall comply with Section 2.21, except as modified by 7.2.7.1 through 7.2.7.4.

7.2.7.1 Requirement 2.21.1.1 does not apply. Frames are not required. Counterweights shall be permitted to be solid or sectional in design.

7.2.7.2 Requirement 2.21.1.3 does not apply. Counterweights shall be guided on each guide rail by upper and lower guiding members.

7.2.7.3 Requirement 2.21.1.4 does not apply. The same set of guide rails shall be permitted to be used for both the car and the counterweight.

7.2.7.4 Requirement 2.21.2.5 does not apply. Ropes and chains shall be secured to the counterweight or suspension rope hitch conforming to 7.2.6.

7.2.8 Buffers and Bumpers

(22)

Buffers and bumpers shall comply with Section 2.22, except as modified by 7.2.8.1 through 7.2.8.4. Cars and counterweights shall be provided with buffers or bumpers. Buffers shall be provided where required by 7.1.6.

7.2.8.1 Spring Buffers. Requirement 2.22.1.1.1 does not apply. Spring buffers shall conform to 2.22.3, except that Table 2.22.3.1 shall be replaced by Table 7.2.8.1. Spring buffers, where required by 7.1.6, shall not be used for rated speeds greater than 1.5 m/s (300 ft/min).

7.2.8.2 Oil Buffers. Requirement 2.22.1.1.2 does not apply. Oil buffers shall be used where the rated speed is in excess of 1.5 m/s (300 ft/min). Oil buffers shall conform to 2.22.4, except that Table 2.22.4.1 shall be replaced by Table 7.2.8.2.

Table 7.2.8.1
Minimum Spring Buffer Strokes

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stroke, mm (in.)
1.00 or less (200 or less)	40 (1.5)
1.01–1.25 (201–250)	65 (2.5)
1.26–1.50 (251–300)	100 (4.0)

Table 7.2.8.2
Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stroke, mm (in.)
1.50 (300)	70 (2.75)
1.60 (325)	90 (3.50)
1.75 (350)	110 (4.25)
2.00 (400)	160 (6.25)
2.25 (450)	210 (8.25)
2.50 (500)	280 (11.00)
2.75 (550)	350 (13.75)
3.00 (600)	430 (17.00)
3.50 (700)	630 (24.75)
4.00 (800)	845 (33.25)
4.50 (900)	1 110 (43.75)
5.00 (1,000)	1 410 (55.50)

7.2.8.3 Bumpers. Solid bumpers shall conform to 2.22.2

7.2.8.4 Elastomeric Buffers. Elastomeric buffers conforming to 2.22.5 are permitted for speeds not exceeding 1.0 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.2.9 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall comply with Section 2.23, except as modified by 7.2.9. The same set of guide rails shall be permitted to be used for both the car and the counterweight.

7.2.9.1 Guide-Rail Section. Requirements 2.23.3, 2.23.7.2.1(a), 2.23.7.2.1(b), 2.23.7.2.1(e), 2.23.9.1.3, 2.23.9.3, and 2.23.10.2 do not apply. Guide rails, supports, joints, fishplates, and fastenings that are not covered by Section 2.23 shall be permitted to be used, provided that the strengths, stresses, and deflections are consistent with the requirements of Section 2.23 for the loads to be imposed.

Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used, the allowable deflection of the guide rail shall be limited to prevent the safety device from disengaging the rail during the application of the load.

7.2.10 Driving Machines and Sheaves

7.2.10.1 Power Dumbwaiters. Driving machines and sheaves for power dumbwaiters shall conform to Section 2.24 as modified by 7.2.10.1.1 through 7.2.10.1.3.

7.2.10.1.1 Requirement 2.24.1 does not apply.

7.2.10.1.2 Requirement 2.24.2.2 does not apply. Sheaves and drums shall have a pitch diameter not less than 30 times the diameter of the rope.

7.2.10.1.3 Requirement 2.24.8 does not apply. The driving machine shall be equipped with a friction brake applied by a spring or springs, or by gravity, and electro-mechanically or electrohydraulically released. The brake shall be designed to have a capacity sufficient to hold the car at rest with its rated load (also see 7.2.3.1).

7.2.10.3 Types of Driving Machines. Driving machines shall be one of the following types:

- (a) winding-drum
- (b) traction
- (c) rack and pinion, conforming to 4.1.24
- (d) screw-column, conforming to 4.2.15
- (e) belt drive
- (f) chain drive
- (g) hydraulic, conforming to Section 7.3

7.2.10.4 Belt-Drive Machines. Belts used as the driving means between the motor and the machine of power dumbwaiters shall conform to 7.2.10.4.1 and 7.2.10.4.2.

7.2.10.4.1 Where flat belts are used, the rated speed of the dumbwaiter shall be not more than 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min).

7.2.10.4.2 Where multiple V-belts are used, the rated speed of the dumbwaiter shall be not more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

7.2.11 Terminal Stopping Devices

Terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 2.25, except as specified in 7.2.11.1 through 7.2.11.4.

7.2.11.1 Requirement 2.25.2.2.2 does not apply.

7.2.11.2 Requirement 2.25.3.3 does not apply. Final terminal stopping devices shall be provided in the hoistway and shall be directly operated by the movement of the car.

7.2.11.3 Requirement 2.25.3.5 does not apply. Where final terminal stopping switches are located on and operated by the driving machine, they shall comply with 2.25.3.5.

7.2.11.4 Requirement 2.25.4 does not apply.

7.2.12 Operating Devices and Control Equipment (22)

Operating devices of power dumbwaiters shall be the automatic or continuous-pressure type. Operating devices and control equipment shall comply with Section 2.26, except as modified by 7.2.12.1 through 7.2.12.41.

7.2.12.1 Requirement 2.26.1.1 applies.

7.2.12.2 Requirement 2.26.1.2 does not apply.

7.2.12.3 Requirement 2.26.1.3 does not apply.

7.2.12.4 Requirement 2.26.1.4 does not apply. Top-of-car operating devices are not required. Where provided, they shall conform to 7.2.12.4.1 and 7.2.12.4.2, and the installation shall also comply with 7.2.12.4.3.

7.2.12.4.1 Requirement 2.26.1.4.2 applies. Requirement 2.26.1.4.1(d)(2) applies, except that it shall be subject to the electrical protective devices required by 7.2.12.

7.2.12.4.2 Safeties shall be provided in accordance with 7.2.4.

7.2.12.4.3 A hoistway access switch conforming to 7.1.12.4 shall be provided for access to the top of the car.

7.2.12.5 Requirement 2.26.1.5 does not apply.

7.2.12.6 Requirement 2.26.1.6 applies, except that the devices shall be located at that landing, car platform guards shall conform to 7.2.2.8, and landing-sill guards are not required.

7.2.12.7 Requirement 2.26.2.5 does not apply.

7.2.12.8 Requirement 2.26.2.6 does not apply.

7.2.12.9 Requirement 2.26.2.7 does not apply. Where a stop switch in the pit is provided (see 7.1.2), it shall conform in design and operation to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c).

7.2.12.10 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, 2.26.2.8 does not apply. Where a top-of-car operating device is provided, a stop switch conforming in design and operation to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided on the top of the car.

In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, 2.26.2.8 does not apply, except that for platform areas in excess of 0.5 m² (5.38 ft²) or where a top-of-car operating device is provided, a stop switch conforming in design and operation to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided on the top of the car.

7.2.12.11 Requirement 2.26.2.10 applies only where a speed governor is provided.

7.2.12.12 Requirement 2.26.2.11 applies, except as modified by 7.2.11.2 and 7.2.11.3.

7.2.12.13 Requirement 2.26.2.12 does not apply.

7.2.12.14 Requirement 2.26.2.14 applies, except it shall conform to 7.1.12.1.

7.2.12.15 Requirement 2.26.2.15 does not apply. Car door or gate electric contacts, conforming to 7.2.1.2.2, shall be provided for all dumbwaiters.

7.2.12.16 Requirement 2.26.2.18 does not apply.

7.2.12.17 Requirement 2.26.2.20 does not apply.

7.2.12.18 Requirement 2.26.2.21 does not apply.

7.2.12.19 Requirement 2.26.2.22 does not apply.

7.2.12.20 Requirement 2.26.2.23 does not apply.

7.2.12.21 Requirement 2.26.2.24 does not apply.

7.2.12.22 Requirement 2.26.2.25 does not apply.

7.2.12.23 Requirement 2.26.2.26 does not apply.

7.2.12.24 Requirement 2.26.2.28 does not apply.

7.2.12.25 Requirement 2.26.2.29 does not apply.

7.2.12.26 Requirement 2.26.2.30 does not apply.

7.2.12.27 Requirement 2.26.2.31 does not apply.

7.2.12.28 Requirement 2.26.2.33 does not apply.

7.2.12.29 Requirement 2.26.2.34 does not apply.

7.2.12.30 Requirement 2.26.3 does not apply.

7.2.12.31 Hoistway door close contacts conforming to 7.1.12.1.3(b)(2) shall be provided for all dumbwaiters that can be operated with hoistway doors closed but not locked within 75 mm (3 in.) above or below a landing and that are provided with interlocks. These contacts are electrical protective devices.

7.2.12.32 Requirement 2.26.4.3 does not apply. The following switches shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs:

- (a) stop switch in the pit (see 2.26.2.7)
- (b) stop switch on top of the car (see 2.26.2.8)
- (c) car safety mechanism switch (see 2.26.2.12)
- (d) speed governor overspeed switch (see 2.26.2.10)
- (e) final terminal stopping device (see 7.2.11)
- (f) hoistway door locking devices for power dumbwaiters (see 7.1.12.1)

7.2.12.33 Requirement 2.26.4.4 does not apply.

7.2.12.34 Requirement 2.26.4.5 does not apply.

7.2.12.35 Requirement 2.26.5 does not apply.

7.2.12.36 Requirement 2.26.6 applies. When single-phase AC motors are provided, they shall come to a complete stop before electrically reversing direction.

7.2.12.37 Requirements 2.26.9.3.1(c) through 2.26.9.3.1(e) do not apply.

7.2.12.38 Requirements 2.26.9.3.2 and 2.26.9.4 do not apply.

7.2.12.39 Requirement 2.26.12 does not apply.

7.2.12.40 Section 2.27 does not apply.

7.2.12.41 Remote interaction operation is prohibited (22) (see 2.26.13).

7.2.13 Layout Data

The information provided on layout data shall conform to [Section 2.28](#), except that [2.28.1\(c\)](#) and [2.28.1\(d\)](#) do not apply. Requirement [2.28.1\(b\)](#) applies only where safeties are provided.

7.2.14 Welding for Dumbwaiters

[Section 8.8](#) applies, except for tack welds and other non-load-carrying welds.

SECTION 7.3 HYDRAULIC DUMBWAITERS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

[Section 7.3](#) applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices.

7.3.1 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

Requirement [7.2.1](#) applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.2 Car Frames and Platforms

Requirement [7.2.2](#) applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.3 Capacity and Loading

Requirement [7.2.3](#) applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.4 Car and Counterweight Safeties

7.3.4.1 Car Safeties. Car safeties, where provided (see [7.1.6](#)), shall conform to [7.2.4](#), [7.3.4.1.1](#), and [7.3.4.1.2](#).

7.3.4.1.1 The safety shall be a type that can be released only by moving the car in the up direction.

7.3.4.1.2 The switches required by [2.18.4.1](#) shall, when operated, remove power from the driving-machine motor and control valves before or at the time of application of the safety.

7.3.4.2 Counterweight Safeties. Counterweight safeties, where provided (see [7.1.6](#)), shall conform to [7.2.4](#), provided that safeties are operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the counterweight suspension ropes, irrespective of the rated speed of the dumbwaiter.

7.3.5 Hydraulic Driving Machines

Jacks shall conform to [Section 3.18](#); valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to [Section 3.19](#); and hydraulic machine and tanks shall conform to [Section 3.24](#).

7.3.6 Rope, Rope Connections, and Sheaves

7.3.6.1 Ropes and Rope Connections. The wire ropes and their connections, where provided, shall conform to [7.2.6](#).

7.3.6.2 Sheaves. Sheaves, where provided, shall conform to [7.2.10](#).

7.3.6.3 Welding. Welding shall conform to [7.2.14](#).

7.3.7 Counterweights

Requirement [7.2.7](#) applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters where counterweights are provided.

7.3.8 Buffers and Bumpers

7.3.8.1 Car Buffers or Bumpers. Requirements [7.2.8.1](#) and [7.2.8.2](#) apply to hydraulic dumbwaiters, except the term “maximum speed in the down direction with rated load” shall substitute for the term “rated speed.”

7.3.8.2 Counterweight Buffers. Requirement [7.2.8](#) applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

Where counterweights are provided for hydraulic dumbwaiters, counterweight bumpers or buffers shall not be provided.

7.3.9 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Requirement [7.2.9](#) applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.10 Terminal Stopping Devices

Direct-plunger and roped-hydraulic dumbwaiter terminal stopping devices shall conform to the requirements of [Section 3.25](#).

7.3.11 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

7.3.11.1 Types of Operating Devices. Requirement [7.2.12.1](#) applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.2 Top-of-Car Operating Devices. Requirement [7.2.12.4](#) applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.3 Anticreep Leveling Devices. Each dumbwaiter shall be provided with an anticreep leveling device conforming to [7.3.11.3.1](#) through [7.3.11.3.4](#).

7.3.11.3.1 The anticreep leveling device shall maintain the car within 25 mm (1 in.) of the landing irrespective of the position of the hoistway door.

7.3.11.3.2 For electrohydraulic dumbwaiters, the anticreep leveling device shall be required to operate the car only in the up direction.

7.3.11.3.3 For maintained-pressure hydraulic dumbwaiters, the anticreep leveling device shall be required to operate the car in both directions.

- (22) **7.3.11.3.4** The operation of the anticreep leveling device shall be permitted to depend on the availability of the electric power supply, provided that

(a) the main line power disconnecting means required by 7.3.11.7 is kept in the closed position at all times except during maintenance, repairs, and inspection

(b) the electrical protective devices required by 7.3.11.4.2 shall not cause the power to be removed from the device

7.3.11.4 Electrical Protective Devices. Electrical protective devices conforming to 7.2.12 shall be provided.

7.3.11.4.1 The following devices shall prevent operation of the dumbwaiter by the normal operating device and also the movement of the car in response to the anticreep leveling device:

- (a) stop switches in the pit
- (b) stop switches on top of the car
- (c) slack-rope switch when required by 3.18.1.2.5
- (d) speed governor switch when required by 7.2.5

7.3.11.4.2 The following devices, when actuated, shall prevent the operation of the dumbwaiter by the normal operating device, but the anticreep leveling device required by 7.3.11.3 shall remain operative:

- (a) broken rope, tape, or chain switches on normal stopping devices when such devices are located in the machine room or overhead space
- (b) hoistway door interlocks or hoistway door contacts
- (c) car door or gate electric contacts
- (d) hinged car platform sill electric contacts

7.3.11.5 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

7.3.11.5.1 All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

7.3.11.5.2 Electrical equipment shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked. CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 defines the scope and applicable requirements for this listing/certification.

- (22) **7.3.11.6 Installation of Capacitors or Devices or Means to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective.** Requirement 2.26.7 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.7 Control and Operating Circuits. Requirements 2.26.9.3.1(a), 2.26.9.3.1(b), and 3.26.6 apply to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.8 Recycling Operation for Multiple or Telescopic Plungers. Requirement 3.26.7 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.9 Pressure Switch. Requirement 3.26.8 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.10 Requirement 7.2.12.40 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.12 Layout Data

The information provided on layout data shall conform to Section 3.28, except as modified in 7.3.12.1 through 7.3.12.3.

7.3.12.1 Requirement 3.28.1(c) applies only where safeties are provided.

7.3.12.2 Requirement 3.28.1(d) does not apply.

7.3.12.3 Requirement 3.28.1(e) does not apply.

SECTION 7.4 MATERIAL LIFTS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Section 7.4 applies to material lifts without automatic transfer devices.

7.4.1 General Requirement

Material lifts shall be operated by authorized personnel only.

7.4.2 Classification

Material lifts without automatic transfer devices are classified as either Type A or Type B material lifts.

7.4.2.1 Type A material lifts shall be controlled from landing-mounted operating devices only. Car-mounted operating devices shall not be permitted. A Type A material lift is a materials-only device, and riders shall not be permitted.

7.4.2.2 Type B material lifts shall be permitted to carry one operator and be provided with in-car-mounted operating devices, subject to the following limitations:

- (a) Access to and use of Type B material lifts is restricted to authorized personnel.
- (b) The rated speed shall not exceed 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min).
- (c) Travel shall not exceed 7.6 m (25 ft).
- (d) Type B material lifts are operated only by continuous-pressure control devices.
- (e) They shall not be accessible to the general public.
- (f) The upper limit of travel shall be either
 - (1) level with the top penetrated floor
 - (2) level with the top landing where no floor is penetrated
- (g) They are permitted to serve one or more intermediate landings, provided these landings have doors as required in 7.4.14.

7.4.3 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

The construction of hoistway enclosures shall conform to Section 2.1, except that requirement 2.1.1.2.2(e) does not apply. Glass hoistway construction is not permitted.

Table 7.4.3
Type B Material Lifts

Item	Minimum Requirements	Requirement Reference
Enclosures		7.4.3, 7.4.13
Hoistway [Note (1)]		
Sides: height	Fully enclosed below top landing	
construction	Openwork	
Gate: height	2030 mm (80 in.)	
construction	Openwork	
Top landing [Note (1)]		7.4.3, 7.4.13
Sides: height	2030 mm (80 in.)	
construction	Openwork	
Gate: height	2030 mm (80 in.)	
construction	Openwork	
Car		7.5.1
Sides: height	2030 mm (80 in.)	
construction	Openwork	
Gates	None	
Clearances		7.4.14
Nonaccess side to car	20 mm (0.75 in.) min.	2.5.1.1
Car sill to door sill	13 mm (0.50 in.) min.	2.5.1.4
	32 mm (1.25 in.) max.	2.5.1.4
Car sill to hoistway	125 mm (5 in.) max.	2.5.1.5.1(b)
In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC	190 mm (7.5 in.) max.	2.5.1.5.1(a)
Landing/Car Controls	Constant-pressure push button with emergency stop	7.5.12.2

NOTE: (1) Non-fire-resistive construction.

Where fire-resistive construction is not required, 2.1.1.2 does not apply for Type B material lifts. Type B material lifts shall conform to the following:

(a) Hoistway and top landing enclosures shall be provided in compliance with Table 7.4.3.

(b) Where openwork construction is permitted, it shall reject a 25 mm (1 in.) diameter ball and shall include toe-boards at least 125 mm (5 in.) high.

(c) Enclosures shall not deflect more than 20 mm (0.75 in.) when a concentrated force of 340 N (75 lbf) is applied at the center of any panel.

(d) No section or part of a top landing enclosure shall be lower than the corresponding and adjacent part of the platform enclosure when the platform is at the top landing.

7.4.4 Pits

Pits shall conform to Section 2.2, except for Type B material lifts where the pit depth is 600 mm (24 in.) or less.

7.4.5 Location and Guarding of Counterweights

Section 2.3 applies only when the car rated speed exceeds 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min).

Where the car rated speed is 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min) or less, counterweight guards conforming to 2.3.2 shall not be required, provided the installation conforms to either 7.4.5.1 or 7.4.5.2.

7.4.5.1 A chain loop or equivalent shall be hung from the bottom of the counterweight to the bottom of the car.

7.4.5.2 Lightweight chains, approximately 600 mm (24 in.) in length, shall be attached to the bottom of the counterweight. These chains shall be spaced at 150 mm (6 in.) intervals, except at the point of buffer (or bumper) engagement.

7.4.6 Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights

Section 2.4 does not apply.

7.4.6.1 For Type A material lifts, bottom and top car clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 7.4.6.1.1 through 7.4.6.1.4.

7.4.6.1.1 When the car reaches its maximum limit of downward travel, no part of the car or counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the pit or floor beneath the lowest landing or equipment located in the hoistway, except a buffer or bumper, and no part of the counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the overhead structure or equipment located in the hoistway, except a mechanical stop or buffer.

7.4.6.1.2 When the car reaches its maximum limit of upward travel, no part of the car or counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the overhead structure or equipment located in the hoistway, except a mechanical stop or buffer, and no part of the counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the pit or floor beneath the lowest landing or equipment located in the hoistway, except a mechanical stop or buffer.

7.4.6.1.3 When complete or partial entry into the pit is required for maintenance or inspection and the car is resting on its fully compressed buffer or bumper where the distance from the underside of the car platform to the pit access door sill, when provided, is less than 460 mm (18 in.) or the pit floor is less than 920 mm (36 in.), a nonremovable means shall be provided to mechanically hold the car above the pit floor to provide an area in the pit

for maintenance and inspection conforming to the following:

(a) It shall hold the car at a height not less than 920 mm (36 in.) nor more than 2 030 mm (80 in.) above the pit floor and not less than 460 mm (18 in.) above the bottom landing sill or pit access door sill, as measured from the underside of the car platform.

(b) The means shall be designed and constructed to stop and hold the car at governor tripping speed with the rated load in the car.

(c) It shall not cause the stresses and deflections in the car frame and platform members and their connections to exceed the limits specified in 2.15.10 and 2.15.11.

(d) If the means does not automatically activate when the lowest hoistway door or pit access door is opened with the car not at the landing

(1) it shall be capable of being operated without complete bodily entry into the pit.

(2) a sign shall be conspicuously displayed inside the hoistway. The sign shall include a warning that there is insufficient bottom car clearance and instructions for operating the device. The sign shall also warn that the power source must be disconnected. The letters shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.) in height.

(e) A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.7 shall be provided.

7.4.6.1.4 The top-of-car clearance shall comply with 2.4.7. If a 1 100 mm (43 in.) vertical distance is not available when the car has reached its maximum upward movement, a stopping device shall be provided that shall be functional when the car is under the control of the top-of-car operating device and shall be located in the hoistway to maintain the minimum vertical distance of 1 100 mm (43 in.).

7.4.6.2 For Type B material lifts, bottom and top car clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 7.4.6.2.1 through 7.4.6.2.3.

7.4.6.2.1 When the platform is at the bottom and does not have a minimum under-platform clearance of 920 mm (36 in.), a nonremovable means shall be provided conforming to 7.4.6.1.3(a) through 7.4.6.1.3(e).

7.4.6.2.2 Except as required by 7.4.6.2.3, the minimum overhead clearance when the platform is at the top landing shall be

- (a) 600 mm (24 in.) over the highest anticipated load
- (b) 2 000 mm (79 in.) over the empty platform

7.4.6.2.3 If a platform is equipped with a ceiling, it shall be solid and capable of sustaining a load of 360 kg/m² (73 lb/ft²) equally distributed, or 45 kg (100 lb) at any point; and the clearance shall conform to 7.4.6.1.4. A stop switch conforming to 7.5.12.2.7 shall be provided on the top of the car.

7.4.7 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to Section 2.5, except as modified by 7.4.7.1 through 7.4.7.4.

7.4.7.1 Requirement 2.5.1.1 applies, except that for Type A material lifts, the clearance between the car and the hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.). For Type B material lifts, the clearance between the car and the hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.).

7.4.7.2 Requirement 2.5.1.2 applies, except that the clearance between the car and the counterweight, and between the counterweight and the hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

7.4.7.3 Requirements 2.5.1.4 and 2.5.1.5.1 apply, except where a counterbalanced car door is provided, the clearance shall be measured from the landing side of the car door sill rather than from the car platform sill.

7.4.7.4 Beveling and Clearance Requirements for Type B Material Lifts

7.4.7.4.1 Where the door is recessed more than 15 mm (0.6 in.), the door frame header shall be beveled (see Nonmandatory Appendix K).

7.4.7.4.2 Any projections on the access side of the hoistway wall that are in excess of 6 mm (0.25 in.) shall be beveled.

7.4.7.4.3 Where beveling is required, it shall be at an angle not less than 60 deg from horizontal (see Nonmandatory Appendix K).

7.4.8 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways

Protection of spaces below the hoistway shall conform to Section 2.6. Where safeties are required, they shall conform to 7.5.4. Where buffers are required, they shall conform to 7.5.8.

Type B material lifts shall conform to 7.4.8, or the floor shall be designed and constructed to safely support the maximum load that would be applied to it by a free-falling platform that is carrying its rated load.

7.4.9 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

Machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall conform to Section 2.7 except as modified in 7.4.9.1 through 7.4.9.3. Section 2.7 does not apply to Type B material lifts.

7.4.9.1 Requirement 2.7.3.4.6 applies to Type A material lifts except the maximum width.

7.4.9.2 Requirement 2.7.4 does not apply to Type A material lifts.

- (22) **7.4.9.3** Requirement 2.7.5 does not apply to Type A material lifts. If maintenance or inspections of the material lift driving-machine brake or an emergency brake or of material lift motion controllers or motor controllers located in the hoistway is to be carried out from inside the car or from the car top, a means shall be provided to prevent uncontrolled and unexpected vertical car movement that poses a hazard to maintenance or inspection personnel. If maintenance or inspections of the material lift driving-machine brake or an emergency brake or of material lift motion controllers or motor controllers is to be carried out from the pit, a mechanical device shall be provided to stop the car to create a vertical clearance as required by 7.4.6.1.3. A platform located in the car, on the car, or in the hoistway shall be permitted for access to and maintenance and inspection of equipment in machinery spaces or control spaces in the hoistway and shall comply with 2.7.5.3.1 through 2.7.5.3.4.

7.4.10 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms

Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways and machine rooms shall conform to Section 2.8, except as modified by 7.4.10.1 through 7.4.10.3.

7.4.10.1 Type SF or equivalent wire is not required for the wiring to the hoistway door interlock from the hoistway riser.

7.4.10.2 Requirement 2.8.3.3 does not apply. Standard sprinkler protection conforming to NFPA 13 or the NBCC, whichever is applicable, shall be permitted to be installed in a material lift hoistway when all risers and returns are located outside the hoistway.

7.4.10.3 Requirement 2.8.1 does not apply to Type B material lifts.

7.4.11 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations

Section 2.9 applies to Type A material lifts. Type B material lifts shall conform to 2.9.1.1, 2.9.2.2, 2.9.3.2, 2.9.3.3, and 2.9.4.

7.4.12 Guarding of Equipment and Standard Railing

Requirement 2.10.1 applies. Requirement 2.10.2 does not apply.

7.4.13 Protection of Hoistway Landing Openings

7.4.13.1 For Type B material lifts, where fire-resistive construction is not required, 7.4.13.1.1 through 7.4.13.1.3 shall apply.

7.4.13.1.1 Entrances to the platform shall be equipped with doors or gates with a minimum height of 2030 mm (80 in.), constructed as required in 7.4.3(b) through 7.4.3(d).

7.4.13.1.2 The clear entrance height to the platform shall be a minimum of 2030 mm (80 in.).

7.4.13.1.3 Solid gates or doors shall have a vision panel in accordance with 2.11.7.1.

7.4.13.2 For Type A and Type B material lifts where fire-resistive construction is required, the protection of hoistway landing openings shall conform to Section 2.11, except as modified by 7.4.13.2.1 through 7.4.13.2.10.

7.4.13.2.1 Requirement 2.11.1 does not apply. All hoistway entrances shall guard the full height and width of the openings. Entrance opening size for Type A material lifts shall not exceed 2290 mm (90 in.) in height and 1220 mm (48 in.) in width and shall not exceed the height and width of the car entrance opening.

7.4.13.2.2 Requirement 2.11.2 does not apply. Only the following types of entrances shall be used with material lifts:

- (a) horizontal slide
- (b) swing single-section only with manual load/unload material lifts
- (c) vertical slide biparting counterbalanced
- (d) vertical slide counterweighted single- or multisection
- (e) center-opening, two-section, horizontally swing only with manual load/unload material lifts, subject to the restrictions of 2.11.2.3

7.4.13.2.3 Requirement 2.11.4 does not apply.

7.4.13.2.4 Requirement 2.11.6 does not apply. When the car is within the unlocking zone (see 2.12.1), the material lift hoistway doors shall be manually openable from within the car.

7.4.13.2.5 Requirement 2.11.7.1 applies, except that hoistway door vision panels are not required on Type A material lifts.

7.4.13.2.6 Requirement 2.11.7.2 does not apply.

7.4.13.2.7 Requirement 2.11.10.1 does not apply. For Type B material lifts, see 7.4.7.4.

7.4.13.2.8 Requirement 2.11.10.3 applies, except that car to landing bridging sills shall be permitted to be hinged on the lift and shall be permitted to form the bridge only when the hoistway doors are in the fully opened position.

7.4.13.2.9 Requirement 2.11.12 applies, except the pull straps required by 2.11.12.8 for Type A material lifts shall be mounted on the landing side of manually operated, vertically sliding doors.

7.4.13.2.10 Requirement 2.11.13.5 does not apply.

7.4.14 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches

Hoistway door locking devices, hoistway door and car door or gate electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to Section 2.12, except as modified by 7.4.14.1 through 7.4.14.7.

7.4.14.1 Requirement 2.12.1.4 does not apply.

7.4.14.2 Requirement 2.12.2.3 does not apply to Type B material lifts. The operation of a Type B material lift driving machine when a hoistway door or gate is not in the closed position (see 2.12.2.2) shall be permitted by a car-leveling or truck-zoning device (see 7.5.12.2.5), or by an anticreep device (see 7.6.8.2). The operation of a Type B material lift driving machine when a hoistway door or gate is unlocked but in the closed position shall be permitted by a car-leveling or truck-zoning device, by an anticreep device, or by continuous-pressure control devices located inside the car or at a landing when the car is within 75 mm (3 in.) above or below the landing. Hoistway door close contacts (see 7.5.12.2.18) shall be provided when the driving machine is operated with the hoistway door or gate unlocked but in the closed position. The hoistway door close contacts shall be positively opened by the opening action of the door or gate. They shall be maintained in the open position by the action of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by positive mechanical means.

7.4.14.3 Requirement 2.12.2.4.3 applies to Type B material lifts, except a device to permit operation of the driving machine when the door or gate is closed but before it is locked shall be permitted in accordance with 7.4.14.2.

7.4.14.4 Requirement 2.12.6 applies, except that unlocking devices are required at only the lowest and top landings.

7.4.14.5 Requirement 2.12.7 applies only to Type A material lifts.

7.4.14.6 For Type B material lifts, the interlock shall not be readily accessible from inside the platform.

7.4.14.7 Requirement 2.12.3 applies only to Type A material lifts. Combination mechanical lock and contacts are not permitted for Type B material lifts.

NOTE (7.4.14): Type B material lifts must have full interlocks.

7.4.15 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors and Gates

When provided, power operation, power opening, and power closing of hoistway doors and car doors and gates shall conform to Section 2.13, except as modified by 7.4.15.1 through 7.4.15.7.

7.4.15.1 Requirement 2.13.3.2.4 does not apply to Type A material lifts.

7.4.15.2 Requirement 2.13.3.3.2. For Type A material lifts, a momentary-pressure switch shall be provided at each landing.

7.4.15.3 Requirement 2.13.3.4. For Type A material lifts, in nonrestricted areas and restricted areas where the hoistway is accessible to personnel, all requirements of 2.13.3.4, except 2.13.3.4.2, apply. Requirement 2.13.3.4.4 applies, except that for Type A material lifts, a momentary-pressure button will not be provided in the car.

7.4.15.4 Requirement 2.13.4 does not apply to Type A material lifts.

7.4.15.5 Requirement 2.13.6 does not apply to Type A material lifts.

7.4.15.6 For Type A material lifts, no door operating buttons shall be in the car.

7.4.15.7 Requirement 2.14.5.7 does not apply.

7.4.16 Identification of Equipment

Requirement 2.29.1 applies.

SECTION 7.5 ELECTRIC MATERIAL LIFTS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Section 7.5 applies to electric material lifts without automatic transfer devices.

7.5.1 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

Car enclosures and car doors and gates shall conform to Section 2.14, except as modified by 7.5.1.1 through 7.5.1.3.

7.5.1.1 Car Enclosure

7.5.1.1.1 Requirement 2.14.1 applies, except (a) for Type A material lifts

(1) the height of the enclosure walls shall not exceed 2 280 mm (90 in.)

(2) the width of the enclosure shall not exceed 1 220 mm (48 in.) unless the height of the enclosure is 1 525 mm (60 in.) or less

(b) for Type B material lifts, the platform enclosure on nonaccess sides shall be 2030 mm (80 in.) high, shall be permitted to be openwork construction, and shall be in compliance with 7.4.3(b) through 7.4.3(d)

7.5.1.1.2 Requirement 2.14.1.2 does not apply. The enclosure shall be securely fastened and supported so that it cannot loosen or become displaced in ordinary service, on the application of the car safety, or on buffer engagement.

7.5.1.1.3 Requirement 2.14.1.3 does not apply. The car enclosure shall be of such strength and designed and supported so that when subjected to a leaning or falling rated load on the car, the car enclosure walls will not deflect or deform to the extent that the running clearances are reduced below the minimum specified.

7.5.1.1.4 Requirement 2.14.1.4 does not apply. Where the car enclosure contains multiple compartments, the rated load shall be the sum of the rated loads of the individual compartments.

7.5.1.1.5 Requirement 2.14.1.5 does not apply.

7.5.1.1.6 Requirement 2.14.1.6 applies for Type A material lifts and for Type B material lifts where a car top is provided.

7.5.1.1.7 Requirement 2.14.1.7.1 does not apply for

(a) Type A material lifts

(b) Type B material lifts where a car top is not provided

7.5.1.1.8 Requirement 2.14.1.8 does not apply. Enclosures that incorporate glass in their construction are prohibited on material lifts.

7.5.1.1.9 Requirement 2.14.1.9 does not apply. Apparatus or equipment not used in connection with the function or use of the material lift shall not be installed inside any material lift car, except for lift hooks, conveyor tracks, and support beams for freight handling.

7.5.1.1.10 Requirement 2.14.1.10 does not apply.

7.5.1.1.11 Requirement 2.14.2 does not apply.

7.5.1.1.12 Requirement 2.14.3.1 does not apply. Perforated construction shall reject a ball 38 mm (1.5 in.) in diameter.

7.5.1.1.13 Requirement 2.14.3.3 does not apply. If ventilating grilles or louvers are provided in the enclosure, they shall reject a ball 38 mm (1.5 in.) in diameter.

7.5.1.2 Car Doors and Gates

7.5.1.2.1 Requirement 2.14.4.1 applies to Type A material lifts. It also applies to Type B material lifts where car doors or gates are provided.

7.5.1.2.2 Requirement 2.14.4.2 does not apply. Each door or gate shall be equipped with a contact that will prevent operation of the driving machine, unless the

door or gate panel(s) is in the closed position as defined in 2.14.4.11. Operation of the driving machine when a car door or gate is not in the closed position is permissible

(a) by an inching, car-leveling, or truck-zoning device

(b) when a hoistway access switch is operated

7.5.1.2.3 Requirement 2.14.4.3 does not apply. Car doors shall be the horizontally or vertically sliding type and shall be solid, grille, or perforate construction. Perforated portions shall reject a ball 38 mm (1.5 in.) in diameter. Vertically sliding doors shall conform to 2.14.6.2.1 and 2.14.6.2.3. Balanced counterweighted vertically sliding doors shall be permitted to be either single or multiple section.

7.5.1.2.4 Requirement 2.14.4.4 does not apply. Car gates shall be the horizontally sliding collapsible type or the vertically sliding type. Horizontally sliding collapsible gates shall conform to 2.14.6.3.1, 2.14.6.3.2, and 2.14.6.3.4. Collapsible-type gates shall be permitted to be arranged to swing inward when in the fully opened (collapsed) position. Vertically sliding gates shall conform to 2.14.6.2.1 and 2.14.6.2.3, and shall be a design that will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter. Balanced counterweighted gates shall be permitted to be either single or multiple section.

7.5.1.2.5 Requirement 2.14.4.7 does not apply.

7.5.1.2.6 Requirement 2.14.4.8 does not apply. Weights used to close or balance doors or gates shall run in guides or be boxed in. Guides shall be metal, and the bottom of the guides or boxes shall be constructed to retain the weights if the suspension member fails.

7.5.1.2.7 Requirement 2.14.4.10 does not apply. The operation of power-operated and power-opened or power-closed doors or gates shall conform to 7.4.15.

7.5.1.2.8 Requirement 2.14.5 does not apply.

7.5.1.2.9 Requirement 2.14.6 does not apply. Gate handles of manually operated collapsible gates shall be provided with finger guards.

7.5.1.3 Car Illumination and Lighting Fixtures.

Requirement 2.14.7 does not apply. Cars shall be provided with an electric light or lights providing a minimum of 27 lx (2.5 fc) at the car threshold and conforming to 2.14.7.4.

7.5.2 Car Frames and Platforms

Car frames and platforms shall conform to Section 2.15, except as modified by 7.5.2.1 through 7.5.2.7.

7.5.2.1 Requirement 2.15.5 does not apply. The platform shall be designed to withstand the forces developed under the loading conditions for which the lift is designed and installed.

7.5.2.2 Requirements 2.15.6.1.2 and 2.15.6.1.3 do not apply.

7.5.2.3 Requirement 2.15.8 does not apply.

7.5.2.4 Requirement 2.15.9.2 applies to Type A material lifts and Type B material lifts that operate in a leveling or truck zone in accordance with 7.5.12.2.5 only, except the minimum allowance of 1 220 mm (48 in.) in 2.15.9.2(a) does not apply to Type A and Type B material lifts, and the minimum allowance of 525 mm (21 in.) in 2.15.9.2(b) does not apply to Type B material lifts.

7.5.2.5 Requirement 2.15.9.3 does not apply.

- (22) **7.5.2.6** Requirement 2.15.11 does not apply. For Type A and Type B material lifts, the vertical deflection of the platform when the rated load is in any position on the platform shall not exceed 5 mm per 1 000 mm (0.25 in. per 50 in.) of platform length. The maximum allowable deflection shall be 50 mm (2 in.).

7.5.2.7 For Type B material lifts

- (a) platform surfaces shall be skid-resistant
- (b) all materials and freight carried on platforms, including wheeled vehicles, shall be blocked, locked, or otherwise positively located on the platform

7.5.3 Capacity and Loading

Capacity and loading shall conform to Section 2.16, except as modified by 7.5.3.1 through 7.5.3.5.

7.5.3.1 Requirement 2.16.1 does not apply.

7.5.3.2 Requirement 2.16.2 applies, except that for Type A material lifts, the class of loading shall not include Industrial Truck Loading: Class C1 or Class C2.

7.5.3.3 Requirement 2.16.4 does not apply. Type A material lifts shall be restricted to handling material only and shall not be used to carry persons. A sign conforming to 2.16.5 and reading “NO RIDERS PERMITTED” or equivalent verbiage shall be provided.

7.5.3.4 For Type B material lifts, 2.16.5 does not apply, except as modified by 7.5.3.4.1 through 7.5.3.4.3.

7.5.3.4.1 The following signs shall be provided:

- (a) at each control station in the hall: “MAXIMUM LOAD _____ kg (lb)” and “NO RIDERS EXCEPT ONE OPERATOR OR FREIGHT HANDLER”
- (b) at the control station in the lift: “NO RIDERS EXCEPT ONE OPERATOR OR FREIGHT HANDLER”
- (c) at each entrance or gate: “AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY ON THIS MATERIAL LIFT”

7.5.3.4.2 Signs shall comply with 2.16.5.2, except that the height of characters for the signs required by 7.5.3.4.1(a) shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.).

7.5.3.4.3 Signs for class of loading shall be provided in the lift and shall comply with 2.16.5.1.1.

7.5.3.5 Requirement 2.16.7 shall not apply. One-piece loads exceeding rated load shall not be carried on material lifts without automated transfer devices.

7.5.4 Car and Counterweight Safeties

Car and counterweight safeties shall conform to Section 2.17, except as modified by 7.5.4.1 through 7.5.4.4.

7.5.4.1 Requirement 2.17.3 does not apply. The safety device shall be capable of stopping and sustaining the entire car with its rated load from governor tripping speed, within the maximum stopping distances as determined in 8.2.6 and Table 2.17.3.

7.5.4.2 Requirement 2.17.7 applies, except the rated speed shall be modified to read 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.5.4.3 Requirement 2.17.8 applies, except that Type A safeties shall be permitted to be used for rated speeds of 1 m/s (200 ft/min) or less. Safeties actuated by broken or slack suspension ropes are permitted only for material lifts having a rated speed of 1 m/s (200 ft/min) or less where the space below the material lift is not accessible.

7.5.4.4 Requirement 2.17.9 applies, except as modified by 7.5.4. The application of safeties shall conform to 2.17.9.1 through 2.17.9.3. The forces providing the stopping action shall conform to 2.17.9.4 or 7.5.4.4.1.

7.5.4.4.1 Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used, the application of safety stopping forces shall not cause deformation of the guide-rail sections upon whose dimensional stability the stopping capability of the safeties is dependent.

7.5.5 Speed Governors

Speed governors shall conform to Section 2.18, except as modified by 7.5.5.1 through 7.5.5.3.

7.5.5.1 Requirement 2.18.1 applies, except the rated speed shall be modified to read 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.5.5.2 Requirement 2.18.4 applies, except the rated speed shall be modified from 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) to 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.5.5.3 Requirement 2.18.5 applies, except that when the suspension ropes are less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.), the diameter of the governor rope shall be permitted to be less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.), but not less than the diameter of the suspension ropes.

7.5.6 Suspension Ropes and Their Connections

Suspension ropes and their connections shall conform to Section 2.20, except as modified by 7.5.6.1 through 7.5.6.6.

7.5.6.1 Requirement 2.20.1 does not apply. Cars and counterweights for material lifts shall be suspended by iron or steel wire hoisting ropes or chains. Ropes that

have previously been installed and used on another installation shall not be reused. Chains, where used, shall be roller, block, or multiple-link silent type.

(22) **7.5.6.2 Chain Data**

(a) The crosshead data plate required by 2.20.2.1 shall bear the following chain data:

- (1) number of chains
- (2) type of chain
- (3) standard chain number
- (4) the minimum ultimate tensile strength per chain in pounds

(b) A metal data tag shall be securely attached to one of the chain fastenings. A new tag shall be installed at each chain renewal. The material and marking of the chain data tag shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.5 mm ($\frac{1}{16}$ in.). This data tag shall bear the following chain data:

- (1) type of chain
- (2) standard chain number
- (3) the minimum ultimate tensile strength per chain in pounds
- (4) month and year the chains were installed
- (5) name of the person or firm who installed the chains
- (6) name of the manufacturer of the chains

7.5.6.3 Requirement 2.20.3 applies, except as modified by the following:

(a) The applicable safety factor to be applied is that of a freight elevator.

(b) Where chains are provided, the factor of safety shall be equal to 1.25 times the safety factor calculated for wire ropes.

7.5.6.4 Requirement 2.20.4 does not apply. The minimum number of hoisting ropes or chains used shall be two.

7.5.6.5 Requirement 2.20.5 applies, except where only two ropes are provided, single-bar-type equalizers shall be permitted to be used.

- (22) **7.5.6.6** Requirement 2.20.9 applies. The fastening of car and counterweight ends of suspension chains shall be such as to develop at least 80% of the minimum ultimate tensile strength of the strongest chain used in such fastenings.

7.5.7 Counterweights

Counterweights for Type A material lifts shall conform to Section 2.21.

7.5.8 Buffers and Bumpers

Buffers and bumpers for Type A material lifts shall conform to Section 2.22, except as modified by 7.5.8.1 through 7.5.8.5.

7.5.8.1 Requirement 2.22.1.1.1. Spring buffers or their equivalent shall be permitted to be used where the rated speed is not in excess of 1.5 m/s (300 ft/min).

7.5.8.2 Requirement 2.22.1.1.2. Oil buffers or their equivalent shall be used where the rated speed is in excess of 1.5 m/s (300 ft/min).

7.5.8.3 Requirement 2.22.1.1.4. Elastomeric buffers shall be permitted to be used where the rated speed is not in excess of 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.5.8.4 Requirement 2.22.3.1. Table 7.9.2.14 shall be used in place of Table 2.22.3.1.

7.5.8.5 Requirement 2.22.4.1. Table 7.9.2.15 shall be used in place of Table 2.22.4.1.

7.5.8.6 Solid bumpers are permitted where the rated speed does not exceed 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min).

7.5.9 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, and fastenings shall conform to Section 2.23, except as modified by 7.5.9.1 and 7.5.9.2.

7.5.9.1 Use of Common Guide Rails. The same set of guide rails shall be permitted to be used for both the car and the counterweight.

7.5.9.2 Guide-Rail Sections. Requirements 2.23.3(a), 2.23.3(b)(1), 2.23.9.1, and 2.23.9.3 do not apply. Guide rails, supports, joints, fishplates, and fastenings that are not covered by Section 2.23 shall be permitted to be used, provided that the strengths, stresses, and deflections are consistent with Section 2.23 for the loads imposed.

Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used

(a) requirements 2.23.7.2.1(a), 2.23.7.2.1(b), 2.23.7.2.1(e), and 2.23.10.2 do not apply

(b) the allowable deflection of the guide rail shall be limited to prevent the safety device from disengaging the rail during the application of the load

7.5.10 Driving Machine and Sheaves

7.5.10.1 The driving means shall be one of the following types:

(a) traction and winding-drum machines conforming to Section 2.24, except as modified by the following:

(1) Requirement 2.24.2.2 does not apply. Sheaves and drums shall have a pitch diameter not less than 30 times the diameter of the rope.

(b) chain-drive machines conforming to the following:

(1) Friction gearing, clutch mechanisms, or couplings shall not be used for connecting the sprockets to the main drive gear.

(2) The driving machine shall be equipped with electrically released, mechanically applied brakes conforming to 2.24.8. The operation of the brake shall conform to 2.26.8.

(3) The driving-machine chains and sprockets shall be steel with all particulars of design and dimensions meeting ANSI B29.1.

(c) indirect-drive machines conforming to 2.24.9.

(d) rack-and-pinion drive machines conforming to 4.1.13. The safeties on rack-and-pinion drive machines shall conform to either 4.1.9 or 7.5.4.

(e) screw-column drive machines conforming to 4.2.15.

7.5.10.2 For Type B material lifts, the following shall apply:

(a) No part of the driving machine shall be located directly above the platform area except when a car top is provided (see 7.5.1.1.6).

(b) Provision shall be made to allow manual lowering in the event of power failure.

7.5.11 Terminal Stopping Devices

7.5.11.1 For Type A material lifts, the terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 2.25, except as modified by 7.5.11.1.1 through 7.5.11.1.3.

7.5.11.1.1 Requirement 2.25.3.3 does not apply. Final terminal stopping devices shall be provided in the hoistway and shall be directly operated by the movement of the car.

7.5.11.1.2 Requirement 2.25.3.5 does not apply. Where final terminal stopping switches are located on and operated by the driving machine, they shall conform to 2.25.3.5.

7.5.11.1.3 Requirement 2.25.4 does not apply.

7.5.11.2 For Type B material lifts, the terminal stopping devices shall conform to 7.5.11.2.1 through 7.5.11.2.4.

7.5.11.2.1 A normal terminal stopping device (electrical switch) shall be provided at the top and bottom landings; it shall positively and automatically stop the lift at the landings.

7.5.11.2.2 Mechanical limits shall be provided at the top and bottom ends of travel. The top and bottom limits shall be permitted to exceed the normal terminal stopping device by 100 mm (4 in.).

7.5.11.2.3 Where a mechanical limit at the top of travel cannot be provided (because of the design of the hoisting machine), a final terminal stopping device (electrical switch) shall be provided that shall, after an over-travel of 50 mm (2 in.), cause the power to be removed from the hoisting machine automatically and independently of the functioning of the device required in 7.5.11.2.1.

7.5.11.2.4 Normal and final terminal stopping devices shall be operated directly by the movement of the lift, and shall not be accessible from the landings.

7.5.12 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

7.5.12.1 Type A material lift operating devices and control equipment shall conform to Section 2.26, except as modified by 7.5.12.1.1 through 7.5.12.1.26.

7.5.12.1.1 Requirement 2.26.1.2 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.2 Requirement 2.26.1.3 does not apply. One-piece loads greater than the rated load are not permitted.

7.5.12.1.3 Requirement 2.26.1.4.1(a)(1)(-a) does not apply for car sizes where the area of the platform is less than 1.4 m² (15 ft²).

7.5.12.1.4 Requirement 2.26.1.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.5 Requirement 2.26.1.6 applies, except that the devices shall be located at the landing.

7.5.12.1.6 Requirement 2.26.2.5 does not apply. An emergency stop switch (switches) conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided to stop operation of the material lift, and of the door and gate (if power operated). The emergency stop switch shall be located in the car adjacent to each entrance in a position that shall be accessible to a person standing at the floor adjacent to the car entrance.

7.5.12.1.7 Requirement 2.26.2.6 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.8 Requirement 2.26.2.10 applies only where a speed governor is provided.

7.5.12.1.9 Requirement 2.26.2.11 does not apply. Final terminal stopping devices conforming to 7.5.11 shall be provided for every electric material lift.

7.5.12.1.10 Requirement 2.26.2.13 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.11 Requirement 2.26.2.15 does not apply. Car door or gate electric contacts conforming to 7.5.1.2.2 shall be provided.

7.5.12.1.12 Requirement 2.26.2.16 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.13 Requirement 2.26.2.20 applies, except when a closed door or gate or closed hoistway door prevents the device from encroaching into the hoistway.

7.5.12.1.14 Requirement 2.26.2.21 does not apply. A stop switch conforming to 7.5.12.1.6 shall be provided in the car.

7.5.12.1.15 Requirement 2.26.3 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.16 Requirement 2.26.4.3 does not apply. The following switches shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs:

- (a) stop switch in pit (see 2.26.2.7)
- (b) stop switch on top of the car (see 2.26.2.8)
- (c) car safety mechanism switch (see 2.26.2.12)
- (d) speed governor overspeed switch (see 2.26.2.10)
- (e) final terminal stopping device (see 7.5.11)
- (f) hoistway door locking devices for power material lifts (see 7.4.14)
- (g) hoistway door close contacts (see 7.5.12.2.18)

7.5.12.1.17 Requirement 2.26.4.4 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.18 Requirement 2.26.4.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.19 Requirement 2.26.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.20 Requirement 2.26.6 applies for poly-phase motors. When single-phase AC motors are provided, they shall come to a complete stop before electrically reversing direction.

7.5.12.1.21 Requirements 2.26.9.3.1(c) through 2.26.9.3.1(e) do not apply.

7.5.12.1.22 Requirements 2.26.9.3.2 and 2.26.9.4 do not apply. When a single ground or failure as specified in 2.26.9.3.1(a) or 2.26.9.3.1(b) occurs, the car shall not be permitted to restart.

7.5.12.1.23 Requirement 2.26.12 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.24 Operating devices that initiate motion of the car shall not be located in the car.

7.5.12.1.25 Requirement 7.2.12.40 applies.

- (22) **7.5.12.1.26** Remote interaction operation (RIO) is prohibited (see 2.26.13).

- (22) **7.5.12.2** Type B material lift operating devices and control equipment shall conform to Section 2.26, except as modified by 7.5.12.2.1 through 7.5.12.2.35.

7.5.12.2.1 Requirement 2.26.1.2 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.2 Requirement 2.26.1.3 does not apply. One-piece loads greater than the rated load are not permitted.

7.5.12.2.3 Requirement 2.26.1.4 does not apply. Where top-of-car Inspection Operation is provided, 2.26.1.4.2 applies.

7.5.12.2.4 Requirement 2.26.1.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.5 Operation in the Leveling or Truck Zone. Requirement 2.26.1.6 does not apply. Operation of a material lift in a leveling or truck zone at any landing by a car-leveling or truck-zoning device, when the hoistway doors, the car doors or gates, or any combination are not in the closed position, is permissible, subject to the requirements of 7.5.12.2.5.1 through 7.5.12.2.5.4.

7.5.12.2.5.1 Operating devices of manually operated car-leveling devices or truck-zoning devices shall be the continuous-pressure type and shall be located in the car.

7.5.12.2.5.2 The material lift leveling zone at any landing shall not extend more than 75 mm (3 in.) above and below any landing. Operation in the leveling zone above any landing shall only be permitted when a car apron conforming to 2.15.9 is provided, except the minimum allowances of 1 220 mm (48 in.) in 2.15.9.2(a) and 525 mm (21 in.) in 2.15.9.2(b) do not apply.

7.5.12.2.5.3 The material lift truck zone at any landing shall not extend more than 1 700 mm (67 in.) above the landing. Truck zones shall only be permitted when a car apron conforming to 2.15.9 is provided, except the minimum allowances of 1 220 mm (48 in.) in 2.15.9.2(a) and 525 mm (21 in.) in 2.15.9.2(b) do not apply.

7.5.12.2.5.4 Requirement 2.26.1.6.5 shall apply.

7.5.12.2.6 Requirement 2.26.2.5 does not apply. Each control station shall be provided with an emergency stop switch (switches) conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) that, when operated, shall cause the power to be removed from the driving machine. Requirement 2.26.2.5(a) does not apply to the emergency stop switch located at each landing. When a constant-pressure-type emergency stop switch at a landing is released, the car shall not move, except for anticreep operation, until all operating devices in the car and at the landings have been returned to their nonactuated state. The car shall continue to remain stationary, except for leveling, until an operating device in the car or at the landing is actuated.

7.5.12.2.7 Requirement 2.26.2.6 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.8 Requirement 2.26.2.8 applies only where a car top is provided.

7.5.12.2.9 Requirement 2.26.2.10 applies only where a speed governor is provided.

7.5.12.2.10 Requirement 2.26.2.11 does not apply. Final terminal stopping devices conforming to 7.5.11 shall be provided for every electric material lift.

7.5.12.2.11 Requirement 2.26.2.12 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.12 Requirement 2.26.2.13 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.13 Requirement 2.26.2.15 does not apply. Car door or gate electric contacts conforming to 7.5.1.2.2 shall be provided.

7.5.12.2.14 Requirement 2.26.2.16 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.15 Requirement 2.26.2.20 applies, except when a closed door or gate or closed hoistway door prevents the device from encroaching into the hoistway.

7.5.12.2.16 Requirement 2.26.2.21 does not apply. A stop switch conforming to 7.5.12.2.6 shall be provided in the car.

7.5.12.2.17 Requirement 2.26.2.24 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.18 Hoistway Door Close Contacts. Hoistway door close contacts, conforming to 7.4.14.2, shall be provided for all Type B material lifts that can operate with hoistway doors or gates closed but not locked within 75 mm (3 in.) above or below a landing and are provided with interlocks. These contacts are electrical protective devices.

7.5.12.2.19 Requirement 2.26.3 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.20 Requirement 2.26.4.3 does not apply. The following switches shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs:

- (a) stop switch in pit (see 2.26.2.7)
- (b) stop switch on top of the car (see 2.26.2.8)
- (c) car safety mechanism switch (see 2.26.2.12)
- (d) speed governor overspeed switch (see 2.26.2.10)
- (e) final terminal stopping device (see 7.5.11)
- (f) hoistway door locking devices for power material lifts (see 7.4.14)

7.5.12.2.21 Requirement 2.26.4.4 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.22 Requirement 2.26.4.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.23 Requirement 2.26.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.24 Requirement 2.26.6 applies for poly-phase motors. When single-phase AC motors are provided, they shall come to a complete stop before electrically reversing direction.

7.5.12.2.25 Requirements 2.26.9.3.1(c) through 2.26.9.3.1(e) do not apply.

7.5.12.2.26 Requirements 2.26.9.3.2 and 2.26.9.4 do not apply. When a single ground or failure as specified in 2.26.9.3.1(a) or 2.26.9.3.1(b) occurs, the car shall not be permitted to restart.

7.5.12.2.27 Requirement 2.26.11 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.28 Requirement 2.26.12 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.29 All operating devices shall be the continuous-pressure type (CPPB in Table 7.4.3).

7.5.12.2.30 A control station located at a landing shall be in the vicinity of, and in full view of, the material lift entrance.

7.5.12.2.31 Controls and equipment shall be protected against unauthorized use.

7.5.12.2.32 The center of the car control station shall be located at a vertical height between 1 500 mm (59 in.) and 1 700 mm (66 in.) from the platform surface and horizontally at least 1 000 mm (39 in.) from the car sill. In the case of front and rear entrances with a car depth less than 2 000 mm (79 in.), the car control station shall be located horizontally at the center of the side enclosure.

7.5.12.2.33 No landing control devices, except emergency stop switch(es), shall override a car control device that is in operation. Means shall be provided within the car that shall render inoperative landing control devices.

7.5.12.2.34 Requirement 7.2.12.40 applies.

7.5.12.2.35 RIO is prohibited (see 2.26.13). (22)

7.5.13 Layout Data

Layouts shall conform to Section 2.28.

7.5.14 Welding

Section 8.8 applies, except for tack welding and other non-load-carrying welds.

SECTION 7.6 HYDRAULIC MATERIAL LIFTS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Section 7.6 applies to hydraulic material lifts without automatic transfer devices.

7.6.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to Sections 3.1 through 3.13 and 3.29, except as modified by 7.4.3 through 7.4.16.

7.6.2 Mechanical Equipment

Mechanical equipment shall conform to Section 7.5.

7.6.3 Hydraulic Driving Machines

Driving machines shall conform to Section 3.18, except as modified by 7.6.3.1.

7.6.3.1 Requirement 3.23.2 applies, except as modified in 7.6.3.1.1 and 7.6.3.1.2.

7.6.3.1.1 Roped-hydraulic elevators shall be suspended with not less than two wire ropes or chains in conformance with 2.15.13 and 7.5.6.

7.6.3.1.2 Sheaves used to transfer load from the driving machine to the car frame through wire ropes or chain shall conform to 7.5.10.

7.6.4 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings

Valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to [Section 3.19](#), except as modified by [7.6.4.1](#) and [7.6.4.2](#).

7.6.4.1 Where cylinders are equipped with an over-speed valve in conformance with [3.19.4.7](#), the requirement of [3.19.3.3.1\(a\)](#) does not apply.

7.6.4.2 For Type B material lifts, [3.19.4.4](#) does not apply.

7.6.5 Counterweight Ropes, Rope Connections, and Sheaves

Counterweight ropes, rope connections, and sheaves shall conform to [Section 3.20](#), except as modified by [7.6.5.1](#) and [7.6.5.2](#).

7.6.5.1 [Section 3.20](#) does not apply. Ropes and rope connections shall conform to [7.5.6](#).

7.6.5.2 Requirement [3.21.2](#) does not apply. Sheaves for counterweights shall conform to [7.5.10](#).

7.6.6 Hydraulic Machines and Tanks

Hydraulic machines and tanks shall conform to [Section 3.24](#).

For Type B material lifts, the machines and tanks shall be enclosed and access shall be through a panel or door, which shall normally be locked.

7.6.7 Terminal Stopping Devices

7.6.7.1 Terminal stopping devices for Type A material lifts shall conform to [Section 3.25](#).

7.6.7.2 Terminal stopping devices for Type B material lifts shall conform to [7.5.11.2](#).

7.6.8 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

- (22) **7.6.8.1 Operating Devices and Control Equipment.** Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to [Section 2.26](#) as specified by [7.5.12](#), except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirements [7.5.12.1.6](#) through [7.5.12.1.14](#) and [7.5.12.2.5](#) through [7.5.12.2.16](#) for electrical protective devices apply as specified in [7.6.8.3](#).

(b) Requirements [2.26.6](#), [7.5.12.1.20](#), and [7.5.12.2.22](#) do not apply.

(c) Requirement [2.26.8](#) does not apply.

(d) Requirements [2.26.9.1](#), [2.26.9.2](#), and [2.26.9.5](#) through [2.26.9.7](#) do not apply.

(e) Requirement [2.26.10](#) does not apply.

(f) Requirement [2.26.2.11](#) does not apply.

(g) Remote interaction operation is prohibited (see [2.26.13](#)).

The words “driving-machine motor and brake” in [Section 2.26](#) and in [7.5.12](#) shall be replaced with “hydraulic machine.”

7.6.8.2 Anticreep Operation. Each hydraulic Type A material lift shall be provided with anticreep operation in conformance with [3.26.3](#). Each hydraulic Type B material lift shall be provided with an anticreep operation to correct automatically a change in car level below any landing. It shall conform to [7.6.8.2.1](#) through [7.6.8.2.5](#).

7.6.8.2.1 The anticreep leveling zone shall not extend more than 75 mm (3 in.) below any landing.

7.6.8.2.2 The anticreep device shall maintain the car within 25 mm (1 in.) of the landing.

7.6.8.2.3 The anticreep device shall be required to operate the car only in the up direction.

7.6.8.2.4 When operation dependent on the availability of electric power is provided, [3.26.3.1.4](#) shall apply.

7.6.8.2.5 Only the following, when activated, shall prevent operation of the anticreep device:

(a) all electrical protective devices except those listed in [7.6.8.3](#)

(b) recycling operation (see [3.26.7](#))

(c) inspection transfer switch [see [2.26.1.4.1\(b\)](#)]

(d) low oil protection means (see [7.6.8.5](#))

(e) oil tank temperature shutdown devices

7.6.8.3 Electrical Protective Devices. When in the open position, all electrical protective devices shall prevent operation by all operating means, except the following devices shall not prevent operation of the anticreep device:

(a) emergency stop switch (see [7.5.12.2.6](#))

(b) hoistway door interlocks or hoistway door contacts ([2.26.2.14](#))

(c) car door or gate electric contacts (see [7.5.12.2.12](#))

(d) hinged car platform sill electric contacts (see [2.26.2.20](#))

(e) hoistway door close contacts (see [7.5.12.2.18](#))

7.6.8.4 Requirements [3.26.5](#) through [3.26.8](#) apply to all hydraulic material lifts. Requirements [3.26.9](#) and [3.26.10](#) shall apply to Type A hydraulic material lifts only.

7.6.8.5 Low Oil Protection. A means shall be provided to render normal control of a Type B hydraulic material lift inoperative if for any reason the liquid level in the tank falls below the permissible minimum. Suitable means include, but are not limited to, the following:

(a) direct sensing of the liquid level

(b) a pump-run timer

Actuation of the means shall prevent the hydraulic pump from running, preventing further upward motion. Continuous-pressure operation shall continue to function in the downward direction. The means shall require local manual reset before returning the car to service.

7.6.9 Layout Data

Layout data shall conform to 7.5.13 and 3.28.1(g), 3.28.1(h), and 3.28.1(j).

SECTION 7.7 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

7.7.1 General

A flashing light and an audible signal shall be actuated on the start of the door opening prior to transfer. Where used in nonrestricted areas, the automatic transfer device shall be designed so that the kinetic energy of the load during discharge shall not exceed 40 J (30 ft-lbf) and the speed shall not exceed 0.5 m/s (1.5 ft/s). The automatic transfer device shall stop the load at the completion of a discharge operation.

7.7.2 Clearances

Where the transfer of load is in a nonrestricted area, there shall be a clearance of not less than 1 220 mm (48 in.) between the end of the transferred load and any fixed obstruction in line with the end of the load. Where the automatic transfer device is designed to carry out multiple cart transfers, the 1 220 mm (48 in.) clearance space shall be measured from the leading edge of the first cart to be ejected, once the multiple transfer operation has been completed.

7.7.3 Guarding

In nonrestricted areas, discharge shall not take place unless the area is clear or a protective device or suitable guarding is provided. Guarding shall be by one of the following methods:

- (a) railings or suitable barriers to prevent persons from entering the path of the transferring load.
- (b) mechanical or electrical devices designed to prevent or stop transfer if a person or object is in the path of the transferring load.
- (c) providing a table or a raised section not less than 460 mm (18 in.) above the floor and of such dimensions that the load does not overhang the table or raised section. The distance between the car platform sill and the nearest edge of the table shall not exceed 150 mm (6 in.).

7.7.4 Floor Level

Where the automatic transfer device transfers the load directly on the landing floor, the maximum variation in overall floor level within the emerging single or multiple loads tracking area shall not exceed 6 mm (0.25 in.).

SECTION 7.8 POWER DUMBWAITERS WITH AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

7.8.1 Requirements

Power dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices shall conform to Sections 7.1 through 7.3, except as modified in 7.8.1.1 through 7.8.1.4.

7.8.1.1 Requirement 7.1.12.1.3 does not apply. All hoistway doors shall be equipped with interlocks conforming to 7.1.12.1.2.

7.8.1.2 Requirement 7.2.1. Where the placement of the load is controlled and secured in transit, 7.2.1 does not apply. Where a car enclosure is provided, 7.2.1 applies.

7.8.1.3 Requirement 7.2.1.1.2. The effective inside height of the car above or below the transfer device shall not exceed 1 220 mm (48 in.).

7.8.1.4 Requirement 7.2.2.4. The transfer device on the floor of the dumbwaiter shall be permitted to serve as a platform. Open areas in the floor shall be covered with solid flooring, grille, or perforated metal, and openings in such material shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

7.8.2 Safety Devices

Where the gross load (i.e., car, transfer device, rated load, gates, operating devices, etc.) exceeds 700 kg (1,500 lb), or the rated speed is greater than or equal to 1 m/s (200 ft/min), car safeties conforming to Section 2.17 shall be provided and shall comply with 7.9.2.8 through 7.9.2.10.

7.8.3 Emergency Stop Switch

An emergency stop switch (switches) conforming to 2.26.2.5(a) through 2.26.2.5(c) shall be provided to stop operation of the dumbwaiter, the door, and the transfer device. A stop switch shall be located in the car adjacent to each entrance in a position that is accessible to a person standing at the floor adjacent to the car entrance.

7.8.4 Structural Capacity Load

Dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices that have a net inside platform area of 0.35 m² (3.75 ft²) or more shall be rated for a lifting load of not less than 135 kg (300 lb).

SECTION 7.9 ELECTRIC MATERIAL LIFTS WITH AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Section 7.9 applies to electric material lifts with automatic transfer devices.

7.9.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to Sections 2.1 through 2.13 and 2.29, except as modified by 7.9.1.1 through 7.9.1.10.

7.9.1.1 Requirement 2.1.1.1. Cutouts are permitted in doors for the accommodation of the automatic transfer device. Cutouts shall be the minimum area to accommodate the transfer mechanism, and if not substantially filled with a fire-resistive automatic transfer device when the hoistway doors are in the fully closed position, the cutout area shall be covered by a shield that will automatically seal the cutout area and maintain the fire-protection rating of the hoistway entrance assembly.

7.9.1.2 Requirements 2.5.1.4 and 2.5.1.5.1. Where a counterbalanced car door is provided, the clearance between the landing side of the car door sill and the hoistway edge of any landing sill shall be not more than 125 mm (5 in.).

7.9.1.3 Requirement 2.11.1 does not apply. All hoistway landing openings shall be provided with doors that shall guard the full height and width of the openings.

7.9.1.4 Requirement 2.11.2.2. Only the following types of entrances shall be used with material lifts with automatic transfer devices:

- (a) power-operated horizontal slide, single- or multi-section
- (b) power-operated vertical slide, biparting counterbalanced
- (c) power-operated vertical slide, counterweighted, single- or multisection

7.9.1.5 Requirement 2.11.5. The automatic transfer mechanism or stationary track shall not project into a hoistway beyond the line of the landing sill unless solid-type guide shoes are provided on the car.

7.9.1.6 Requirement 2.11.7. Hoistway door vision panels are not required on material lifts with automatic transfer devices.

7.9.1.7 Requirement 2.12.3.1. In restricted areas only and when access to the hoistway doors is blocked by a permanently floor-mounted automatic transfer device, the hoistway doors shall close and lock before the car has traveled not more than 455 mm (18 in.) away from the landing.

7.9.1.8 Requirement 2.12.6.1. Hoistway door unlocking devices are required at only the top and bottom terminal landings.

7.9.1.9 Requirement 2.13.3.4

(a) In nonrestricted areas, all the requirements of 2.13.3.4 shall apply, except for 2.13.3.4.2 and 2.13.3.4.4.

(b) In restricted areas, 2.13.3.4 does not apply where the hoistway entrance is blocked by a permanently floor-mounted automatic transfer device. In restricted areas, where the hoistway entrance is accessible to personnel, 2.13.3.4 shall apply, except 2.13.3.4.2 and 2.13.3.4.4, which do not apply.

7.9.1.10 Requirement 2.13.4.2.4 does not apply.

7.9.2 Machinery and Equipment

The machinery and equipment shall conform to Sections 2.14 through 2.28, 8.8, and 8.9, except as modified by 7.9.2.1 through 7.9.2.21.

7.9.2.1 Requirement 2.14.1.5. Top emergency exits are not required.

7.9.2.2 Requirement 2.14.3.1. Grille or perforated construction shall be permitted to be used for the full height and top-of-car enclosure. The car enclosure shall be the same height as the hoistway entrance. The 1 825 mm (72 in.) minimum height limitation shall not apply.

7.9.2.3 Requirement 2.14.6.2. When car doors or gates are provided and where the car entrance height exceeds 1 825 mm (72 in.), the doors or gates shall extend from the car floor to a height not less than 1 825 mm (72 in.). Where the car entrance height is 1 825 mm (72 in.) or less, the car doors or gates shall extend to the full height of the car entrance.

7.9.2.4 Transfer devices located in the car shall not be deliberately obscured. Transfer devices in the car that are obscured shall be marked. The marking shall consist of alternating 100 mm (4 in.) diagonal yellow and black stripes.

7.9.2.5 Requirement 2.15.5. The transfer device on the floor of the material lift shall be permitted to serve as a platform. Open areas in the platform shall be covered with solid flooring, grille, or perforated metal. Also, any openings in such material shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

7.9.2.6 Requirement 2.16.2. The rated load of the material lifts shall be based on the weight of the maximum load to be handled or on 240 kg/m² (50 lb/ft²) of inside net platform area, whichever is greater.

7.9.2.7 Requirement 2.16.4. Material lifts with transfer devices shall carry materials only and shall not carry persons. Signs conforming to 2.16.5 and

Table 7.9.2.14
Minimum Spring Buffer Strokes

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stroke, mm (in.)
1.00 or less (200 or less)	40 (1.5)
1.01–1.25 (201–250)	65 (2.5)
1.26–1.50 (251–300)	100 (4.0)

reading “NO PERSONS PERMITTED” or an equivalent warning shall be provided within the car enclosure and on the landing side of each entrance door.

7.9.2.8 Requirement 2.17.4. Counterweight safeties, where required for material lifts with automatic transfer devices, shall conform to the requirements for car safeties, except as modified by 7.9.2.9 through 7.9.2.11.

7.9.2.9 Requirement 2.17.7. The rated speed shall be modified to read 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.9.2.10 Requirement 2.17.8.1. Type A safeties are permitted for material lifts having a rated speed of 1 m/s (200 ft/min) or less. Safeties actuated by broken or slack suspension ropes are permitted for material lifts having a rated speed of 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min) or less.

7.9.2.11 Requirement 2.18.1. The rated speed shall be modified to read 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.9.2.12 Section 2.19 does not apply.

Table 7.9.2.15
Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stroke, mm (in.)
1.50 (300)	70 (2.75)
1.60 (325)	90 (3.50)
1.75 (350)	110 (4.25)
2.00 (400)	160 (6.25)
2.25 (450)	210 (8.25)
2.50 (500)	280 (11.00)
2.75 (550)	350 (13.75)
3.00 (600)	430 (17.00)
3.50 (700)	630 (24.75)
4.00 (800)	845 (33.25)
4.50 (900)	1 110 (43.75)
5.00 (1,000)	1 410 (55.50)

7.9.2.13 Requirement 2.22.1.1. Spring buffers or their equivalent shall be permitted to be used where the rated speed does not exceed 1.5 m/s (300 ft/min).

7.9.2.14 Requirement 2.22.3.1. Table 7.9.2.14 shall be used in place of Table 2.22.3.1.

7.9.2.15 Requirement 2.22.4.1. Table 7.9.2.15 shall be used in place of Table 2.22.4.1.

7.9.2.16 Requirement 2.26.1. Car-mounted operating devices shall not be permitted unless required for maintenance. Where furnished for such purposes, operating devices shall consist of key-operated switches or be mounted behind a key-locked cabinet. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

7.9.2.17 Requirement 2.26.1.4 does not apply, except where the gross weight (i.e., car, transfer device, rated load, operating devices, etc.) exceeds 680 kg (1,500 lb), a top-of-car operating device conforming to 2.26.1.4.2 shall be provided.

7.9.2.18 Requirement 2.26.1.5 does not apply.

7.9.2.19 Requirement 2.26.2.5. An emergency stop switch (switches) conforming to 2.26.2.5 shall be provided to stop operation of the material lifts, the door, and the automatic transfer device. The emergency stop switch shall be located in the car adjacent to each entrance in a position that shall be accessible to a person standing at the floor adjacent to the car entrance. If a permanently mounted automatic transfer device, located at the landing, blocks the entrance to the car, an emergency stop switch shall be located at that landing in a position accessible to a person standing near that landing in addition to the emergency stop switch in the car.

7.9.2.20 Section 2.27 does not apply.

7.9.2.21 Section 8.8 applies, except for tack welds and other non-load-carrying welds.

SECTION 7.10 HYDRAULIC MATERIAL LIFTS WITH AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Hydraulic material lifts shall conform to Sections 3.1, 3.18 through 3.20, 3.23 through 3.26, and 3.28, except as modified by 7.9.1 and 7.9.2.

Part 8

General Requirements

SCOPE

Part 8 contains general requirements for new and existing equipment.

NOTE: Sections 8.1, 8.6, 8.7, and 8.9 through 8.11 apply to both new and existing installations.

SECTION 8.1

SECURITY

8.1.1 General

Key(s) used to access or operate elevator, escalator, moving walk, dumbwaiter, and material lift equipment shall conform to the following:

(a) Keys used to open any other lock in the building shall not access or operate the devices classified as Security Group 1, 2, 3, or 4.

(b) The same key shall be permitted to access or operate all of the devices within only one assigned group (see 8.1.2, 8.1.3, 8.1.4, or 8.1.5), and not those in any other group except as indicated in (c).

(c) The keys for Group 1 devices shall also be permitted to operate Group 2, 3, and 4 devices. The keys for Group 2 devices shall be permitted to operate Group 3 and 4 devices.

(d) Keys shall be kept on the premises in a location readily accessible to the personnel in the assigned group, but not where they are accessible to the general public.

(e) Elevator personnel shall have access to all assigned groups.

(22) 8.1.2 Group 1: Restricted

Group 1 covers access to or operation of equipment restricted to elevator personnel, except as indicated in (i) and (j).

NOTE: See the following:

- (a) Requirement 2.2.4.5(e), pit access doors.
- (b) Requirement 2.7.3.4.6, access openings in machinery space floor, etc.
- (c) Requirement 2.7.3.4.7(c), hoistway access doors.
- (d) Requirement 2.7.5.1.4, equipment access panels.
- (e) Requirement 2.7.6.3.2(b), motor controller cabinet door(s) or panel(s).

(f) Requirement 2.7.6.4.3(b), access to the means to move the car from outside the hoistway.

(g) Requirement 2.7.6.4.3(d), access to removable means to move the car from outside the hoistway.

(h) Requirement 2.7.6.5.2(b), inspection and test panel enclosure.

(i) Requirement 2.11.1.2(h), emergency access doors (shall also be made available to emergency personnel during an emergency).

(j) Requirement 2.12.6.2.4, hoistway door unlocking device (shall also be made available to emergency personnel during an emergency).

(k) Requirement 2.12.7.2.3, hoistway access switch.

(l) Requirement 2.12.7.3.1, hoistway access enabling switch or its locked cover.

(m) Requirement 2.26.1.4.3(b), in-car Inspection Operation transfer switch.

(n) Requirement 2.26.2.21, in-car stop switch or its locked cover.

(o) Requirement 3.19.4.4, access to a manual lowering valve.

(p) Requirement 3.19.2.5, access to pressure gauge fittings.

(q) Requirement 4.1.7.3(b)(4), machinery spaces and control spaces on the car top.

(r) Requirement 4.1.7.6(b)(5), machinery spaces and control spaces in the car.

(s) Requirement 4.2.5.2, screw machine controllers located away from the hoistway, machine room, or machinery space.

(t) Requirement 4.2.5.5, screw machine access panels.

(u) Requirement 5.1.10.1(b), inclined elevator hoistway access switch.

(v) Requirement 5.1.11.1.2(d), inclined elevator uphill end emergency exit.

(w) Requirement 5.7.8.3, hoistway door unlocking device.

(x) Requirement 7.1.12.4, power dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices hoistway access switch.

(y) Requirement 7.9.2.16, electric material lifts with automatic transfer devices car-mounted operating devices.

(z) Requirements 2.14.1.5.1(c) and 8.4.4.1, top emergency exit cover.

(aa) Requirement 2.27.13.1(f), Flood Detection Operation reset means.

8.1.3 Group 2: Authorized Personnel

Group 2 covers access to or operation of equipment by authorized and elevator personnel.

NOTE: See the following:

(a) Requirement 2.7.3.4.2, machine room and control room access doors.

(b) Requirements 2.7.3.4.3 and 2.7.3.4.4, machinery spaces and control spaces as specified.

- (c) Requirement 2.11.1.4, access openings for cleaning of car and hoistway enclosures.
- (d) Requirement 2.14.2.6(b), access openings for cleaning of car and hoistway enclosures.
- (e) Requirement 2.14.7.2.1(b), car light control switch or its locked cover.
- (f) Requirement 3.19.4.1, access to manually operated shutoff valves.
- (g) Requirement 4.1.7.2(i), control rooms.
- (h) Requirement 4.1.7.4(b)(5), control spaces exterior to the hoistway.
- (i) Requirement 5.6.1.25.2(b), rooftop elevator keyed operation switch.
- (j) Requirement 6.1.6.2.1(d), escalator starting switch.
- (k) Requirement 6.1.7.3.3, escalator side access door to interior.
- (l) Requirement 6.2.6.2.1(d), moving walk starting switch.
- (m) Requirement 6.2.7.3.3, moving walk side access door to interior.
- (n) Requirement 5.3.1.6.2, controller cabinet door or panel.
- (o) Requirement 5.3.1.6.6, access doors and openings.

(22) 8.1.4 Group 3: Emergency Operation

Group 3 covers access to or operation of equipment by emergency, authorized, and elevator personnel.

NOTE: See the following:

- (a) Requirements 2.27.2.4.1 and 2.27.8, emergency or standby power selector switch.
- (b) Requirements 2.27.3.1.1 and 2.27.8, Phase I Emergency Recall Operation switch.
- (c) Requirements 2.27.3.3 and 2.27.8, Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation switch.
- (d) Side emergency exit doors on existing equipment.
- (e) Requirements 8.4.10.1.1(e)(1) and 8.4.10.1.3(d), earthquake hoistway scan.

8.1.5 Group 4: Other

Group 4 covers access to or operation of equipment not classified as Group 1, 2, or 3.

NOTE: See the following:

- (a) Requirement 5.3.1.19.3, private residence elevator key-operated switch for exterior operation.
- (b) Requirement 5.4.14.1, private residence inclined elevator keyed operation switch.

SECTION 8.2 DESIGN DATA AND FORMULAS

Section 8.2 contains certain design data, formulas, and charts for the designer. It is not intended to limit design. More detailed design and calculation methods shall be permitted to be used, provided that the stresses and deflections required by other Sections of this Code are not exceeded.

8.2.1 Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators

The following formulas shall be used for determining the minimum rated load of passenger elevators (see also 2.16.1).

8.2.1.1 For an elevator having an inside net platform area of not more than 4.65 m² (50 ft²)

(SI Units)

$$W = 35A^2 + 325A$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W = 0.667A^2 + 66.7A$$

8.2.1.2 For an elevator having an inside net platform area of more than 4.65 m² (50 ft²)

(SI Units)

$$W = 2.45A^2 + 610A - 620$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W = 0.0467A^2 + 125A - 1,367$$

where

A = inside net platform area, m² (ft²), as specified in Figure 8.2.1.2

W = minimum rated load, kg (lb)

Figure 8.2.1.2 gives the minimum rated loads for various inside net platform areas.

8.2.2 Electric Elevator Car Frame and Platform Stresses and Deflections

8.2.2.1 General Requirements. The stresses and deflections in side-post-type car frame and platform members shall be based on the data and formulas listed in 8.2.2.

All stresses and their resultant deflections, not only those based on the data and formulas listed in this Section, shall be considered when side-post-type car frames are located off the platform centerline by more than one-eighth of the distance from the front to the back of the platform.

For cars with corner-post, underslung-type, or other special car frame and platform construction, the formulas and specified methods of calculation of loads and the resulting stresses and deflections do not generally apply and shall be modified to suit the specific conditions and requirements in each case.

The maximum allowable stresses and deflections of members of all car frames and platforms shall be not more than those permitted by 2.15.10 and 2.15.11.

Figure 8.2.1.2
Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators

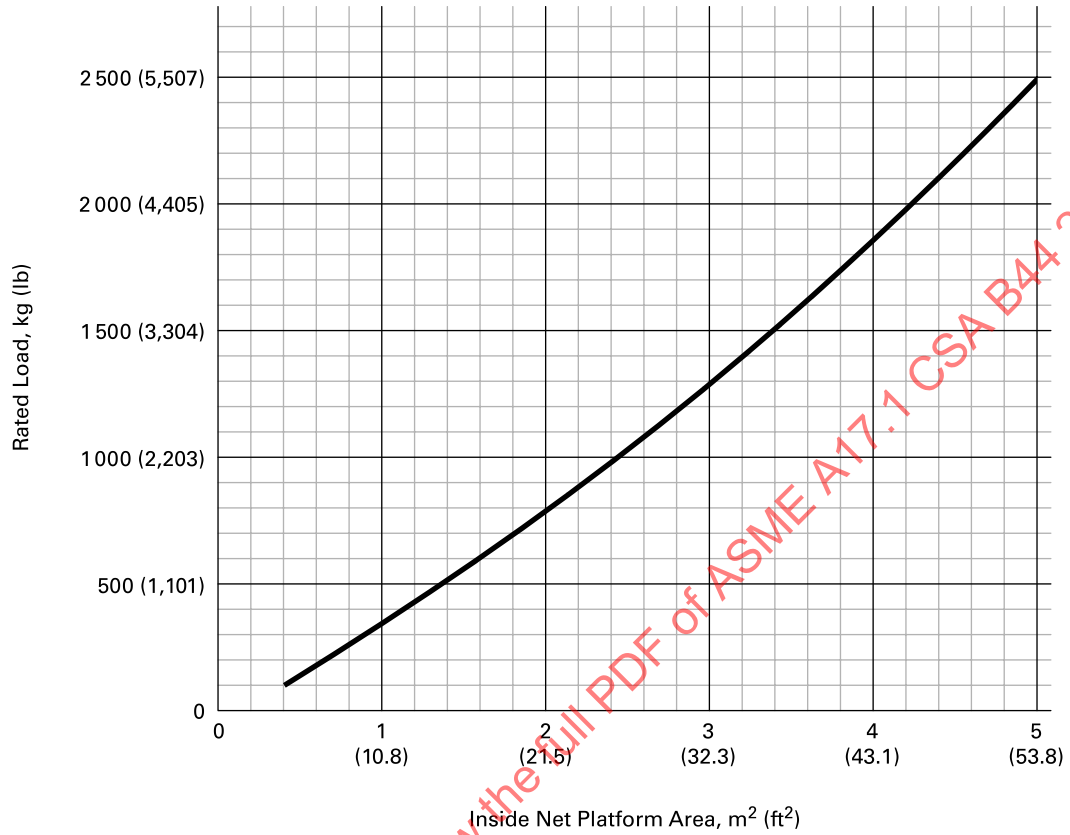
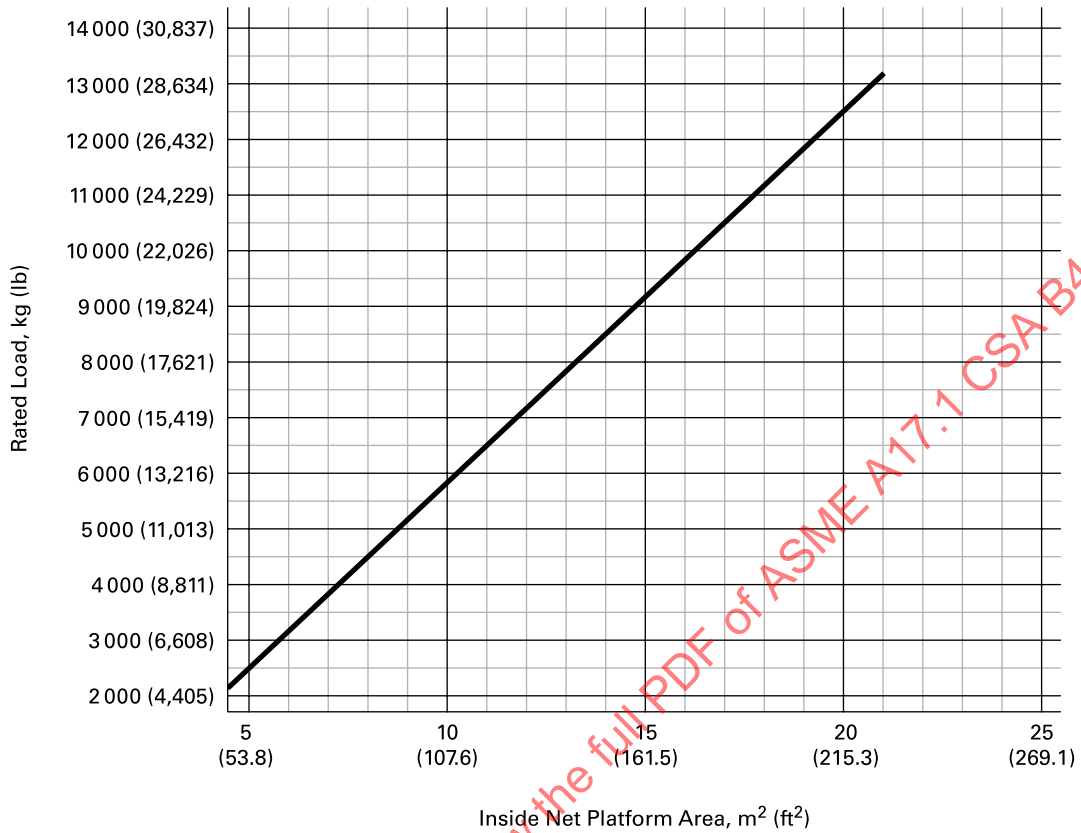


Figure 8.2.1.2
Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators (Cont'd)



8.2.2.1.1 Formula Symbols. The symbols used in the formulas in 8.2.2 shall have the following meaning:

- A = net area of section, m^2 (in.²)
- B = inside clear width of car, mm (in.)
- C = net weight of complete elevator car, kg (lb)
- D = distance between guide rails, mm (in.)
- E = modulus of elasticity of material used, MPa (psi)
- G = load supported by crosshead with the maximum load for the class of loading in the car at rest at the top terminal landing, kg (lb)
- H = vertical center distance between upper and lower guide shoes (or rollers), mm (in.)
- I = moment of inertia of member, gross section, mm^4 (in.⁴)
- K = turning moment as determined by class of loading, N·mm (lbf-in.)
- L = free length of uprights (distance from lowest fastening in crosshead to top fastening in plank), mm (in.)
- R = least radius of gyration of section, mm (in.)
- W = rated load, kg (lb)
- Z = combined section moduli of plank members, gross section, mm^3 (in.³)
- Z_u = section modulus of one upright, gross section, mm^3 (in.³)

8.2.2.2 Car Frame Crosshead. The stresses in the car frame crosshead shall be based on the total load supported by the crosshead with the car and the maximum load for the class of loading in the car when at rest at the top terminal landing.

8.2.2.3 Car Frame Plank (Normal). The stresses in the car frame plank when the stringers are supported directly on the plank members shall be based on the sum of five-eighths of the platform weight uniformly distributed plus the concentrated loads due to the tension in the compensation means and the traveling cables with the car at the top of its travel plus the loading specified in (a) or (b).

(a) For passenger and Class A freight loading, five-eighths of the rated load uniformly distributed.

(b) For Class B and Class C freight loading, the loading as specified in 8.2.2.6.

8.2.2.4 Car Frame Plank (Buffer Engagement). In calculating the stress resulting from oil buffer or elastomeric buffer engagement, one-half the sum of the weight of the car and its rated load shall be considered as being concentrated at each end of the plank with the buffer force applied at the middle. The buffer force shall be considered to be that required to produce gravity retardation with rated load in the car.

The following formula shall be used to determine the stress resulting from buffer engagement:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Stress (MPa)} = 9.807 \frac{D(C + W)}{2Z}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Stress (psi)} = \frac{D(C + W)}{2Z}$$

Where more than one buffer is used, the formula shall be modified to suit the location of the buffers.

NOTE (8.2.2.4): Symbols used in the preceding formula are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

8.2.2.5 Car Frame Uprights (Stiles). The total stress in each car frame upright due to tension and bending, and the slenderness ratio of each upright and its moment of inertia, shall be determined in accordance with the formulas in 8.2.2.5.1 through 8.2.2.5.3.

8.2.2.5.1 Stress Due to Bending and Tension

(SI Units)

$$\text{Total stress (MPa)} = \frac{KL}{4HZ_u} + \frac{9.807G}{2A}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Total stress (psi)} = \frac{KL}{4HZ_u} + \frac{G}{2A}$$

where

$KL/4HZ_u$ = the bending stress in each upright in the plane of the frame due to live load W on the platform for the class of loading (A, B, or C) for which the elevator is to be used (see 2.16.2.2)

$G/2A$ = the tensile strength in each upright and K is determined by the following formulas (see Figure 8.2.2.5.1):

(a) For Class A freight loading or passenger loading

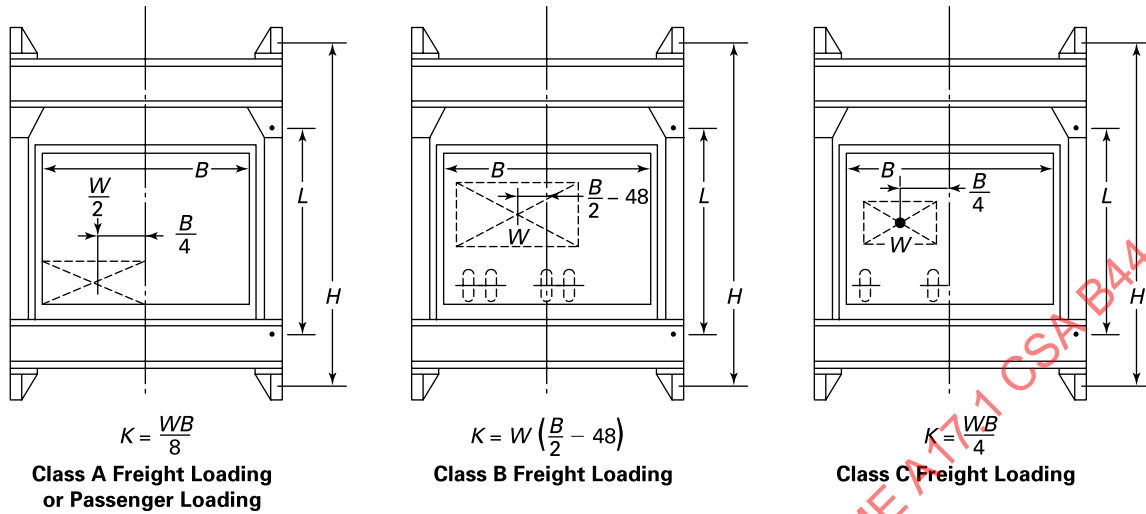
(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807 \left(\frac{WB}{8} \right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$K = \frac{WB}{8}$$

Figure 8.2.2.5.1
Turning Moment Based on Class of Loading



GENERAL NOTE See 8.2.2.5.1 for formulas in SI units.

(b) For Class B freight loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807W \left(\frac{B}{2} - 1.219 \right) \text{ or } K = 9.807 \left(\frac{WB}{8} \right)$$

whichever is greater.

(Imperial Units)

$$K = W \left(\frac{B}{2} - 48 \right) \text{ or } K = \frac{WB}{8}$$

whichever is greater.

(c) For Class C freight loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807 \left(\frac{WB}{4} \right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$K = \frac{WB}{4}$$

NOTE (8.2.2.5.1): Symbols used in the preceding formulas are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

8.2.2.5.2 Slenderness Ratio. The slenderness ratio L/R for uprights subject to compressions other than those resulting from safety and buffer action shall not exceed 120. Where the upper side-brace connections on passenger elevator car frame uprights are located at a point less than two-thirds of L from the bottom

(top fastening in the car frame plank), a slenderness ratio of L/R not exceeding 160 is permissible ($L/R \leq 160$).

NOTE (8.2.2.5.2): Symbols used in the above formulas are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

8.2.2.5.3 Moment of Inertia. The moment of inertia of each upright shall be not less than determined by the following formula:

(SI Units)

$$I = \frac{KL^3}{457.2EH}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$I = \frac{KL^3}{18EH}$$

NOTE (8.2.2.5.3): Symbols used in the preceding formula are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

8.2.2.6 Freight Elevator Platform. The calculation for stresses in the platform members of freight elevators shall be based on the following concentrated loads assumed to occupy the position that will produce the maximum stress:

- (a) for Class A loading, 25% of the rated load
- (b) for Class B loading, 75% of the rated load or 15 400 kg (34,000 lb), whichever is less, divided into two equal parts 1 525 mm (60 in.) apart
- (c) for Class C1 loading, with a load rating of 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or less, 80% of the rated load divided into two equal parts, 765 mm (30 in.) apart

(d) for Class C2 loading, with a load rating of 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or less, 80% of the rated load or of the loaded truck weight, whichever is greater, divided into two equal parts, 765 mm (30 in.) apart

(e) for Class C1 or Class C2 loading, with a rated load in excess of 9 000 kg (20,000 lb), 80% of the 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or of the maximum loaded truck weight, whichever is greater, divided into two equal parts, 765 mm (30 in.) apart

(f) for Class C3 loading, determined on the basis of the actual loading conditions but not less than that required for Class A loading

8.2.2.7 Hoisting Rope Hitch Plates and Shapes. The stresses in hoisting rope hitch plates and shapes shall be based on the total applied rope load with the car and its rated load at rest at the top terminal landing.

8.2.3 Impact on Buffer Supports

8.2.3.1 Buffer Reaction and Impact for Oil Buffer and Elastomeric Buffer Supports. The following formulas give the buffer reaction and the impact on the car and counterweight buffer supports resulting from buffer engagement [see 2.1.2.3(a) or 3.22.1.2.1]:

(a) Buffer Reaction

(SI Units)

$$R = W \left(9.807 + \frac{V^2}{2S} \right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$R = W \left(1 + \frac{V^2}{64.4S} \right)$$

(b) Impact

$$P = 2R$$

8.2.3.2 Buffer Reaction and Impact for Spring Buffer Supports. The following formulas give the buffer reaction and the impact on the supports of car and counterweight spring buffers that do not fully compress under the conditions outlined in 2.1.2.3(a):

(a) Buffer Reaction

(SI Units)

$$R = 2W \left(9.807 + \frac{V^2}{2S} \right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$R = 2W \left(1 + \frac{V^2}{64.4S} \right)$$

(b) Impact

$$P = R$$

where

P = impact, N (lbf)

R = buffer reaction, N (lbf)

S = buffer stroke, m (ft)

V = speed at impact (for electric), m/s (ft/s); operating speed in the down direction (for hydraulic), m/s (ft/s)

W = weight of the car plus rated load or weight of the counterweight, kg (lb)

8.2.4 Gravity Stopping Distances

The following formula gives the value of the stopping distance based on gravity retardation from any initial velocity (see 2.4.6, 2.4.8, 2.4.9, and 2.22.4.1):

(SI Units)

$$S = 51V^2$$

(Imperial Units)

$$S = \frac{V^2}{19,320}$$

where

S = free fall (gravity stopping distance), mm (in.)

V = initial velocity, m/s (ft/min)

Figure 8.2.4 shows the gravity stopping distances from various initial velocities.

8.2.5 Governor Tripping Speeds

Figure 8.2.5 gives the maximum governor tripping speeds for various rated speeds (see 2.18.2.1).

8.2.6 Stopping Distances for Car and Counterweight Safeties

The following formulas shall be used to determine the maximum and minimum stopping distances for Type B car and counterweight safeties (see 2.17.3):

(SI Units)

$$S = \frac{V^2}{6.870} + 0.2560$$

$$S' = \frac{V^2}{19.63}$$

Figure 8.2.4
Gravity Stopping Distances

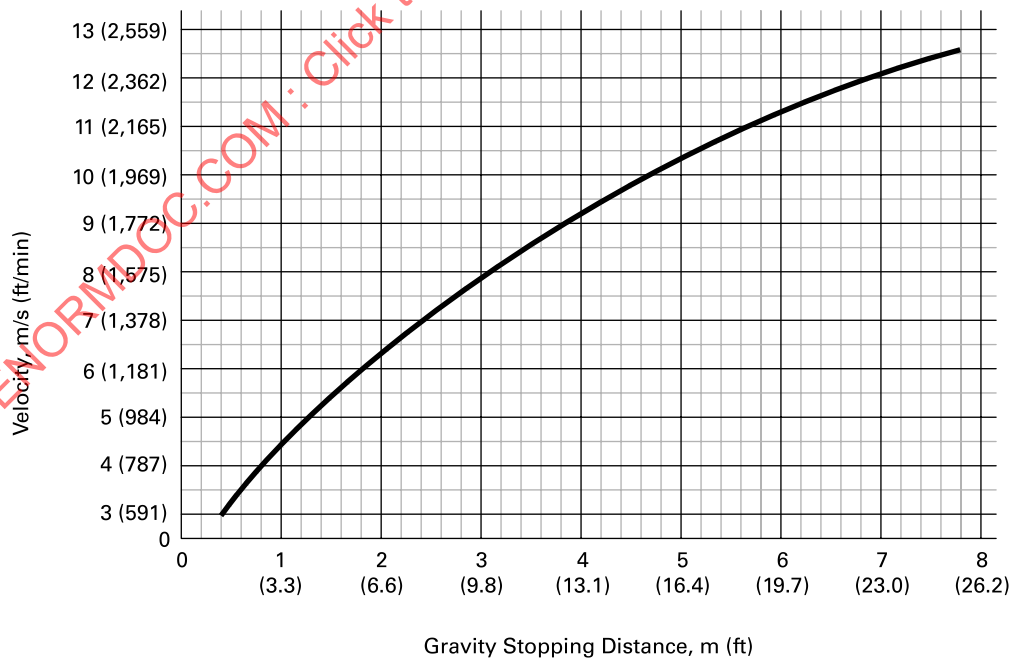
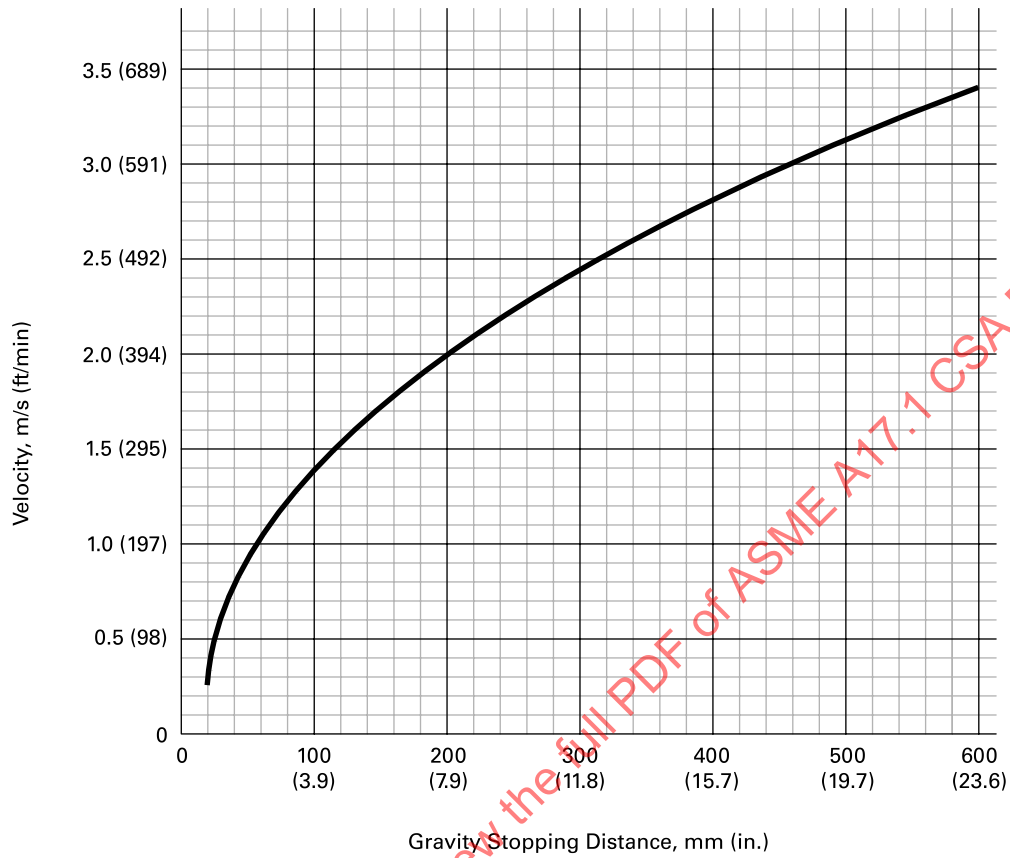


Figure 8.2.5
Maximum Governor Tripping Speeds

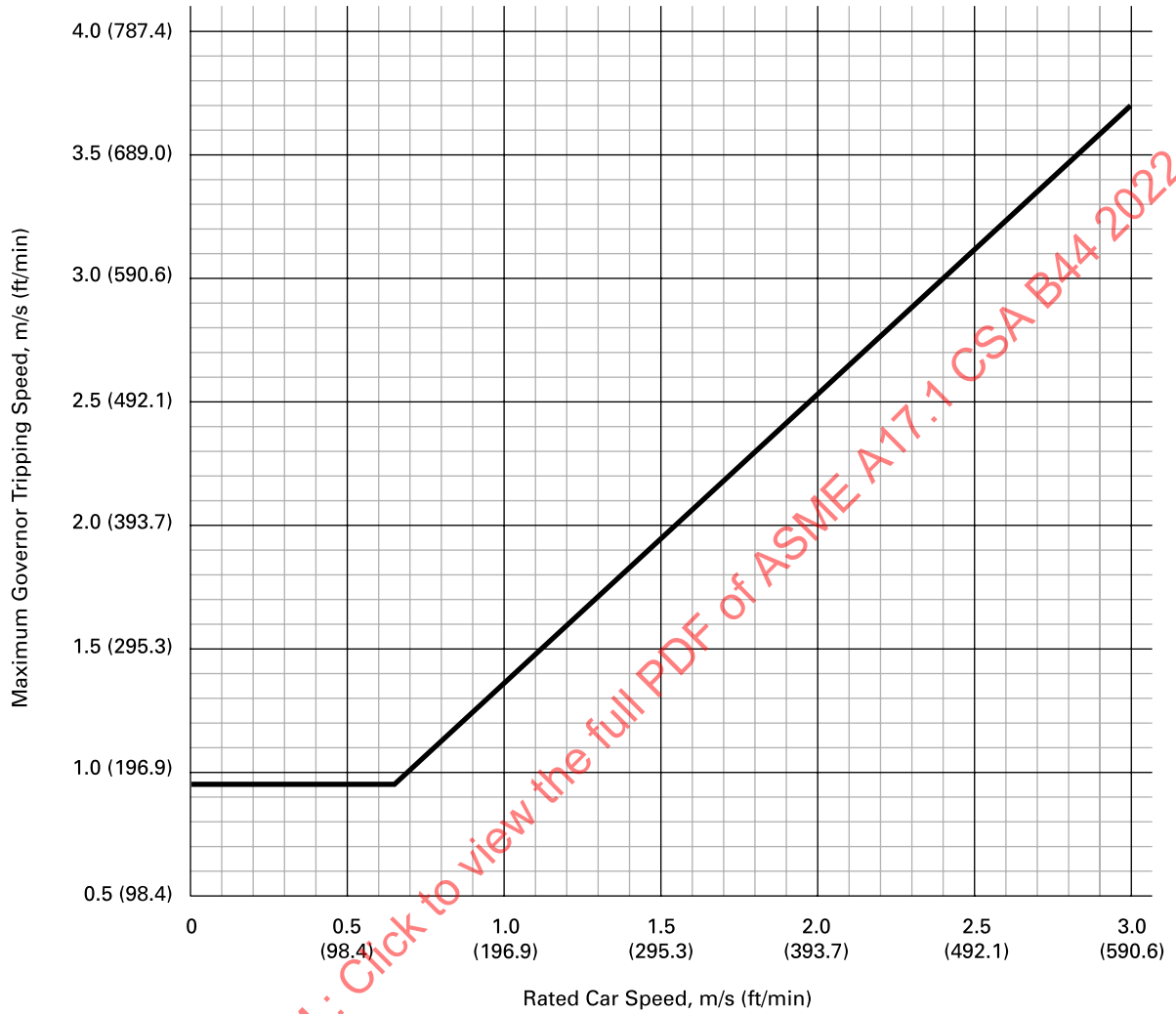
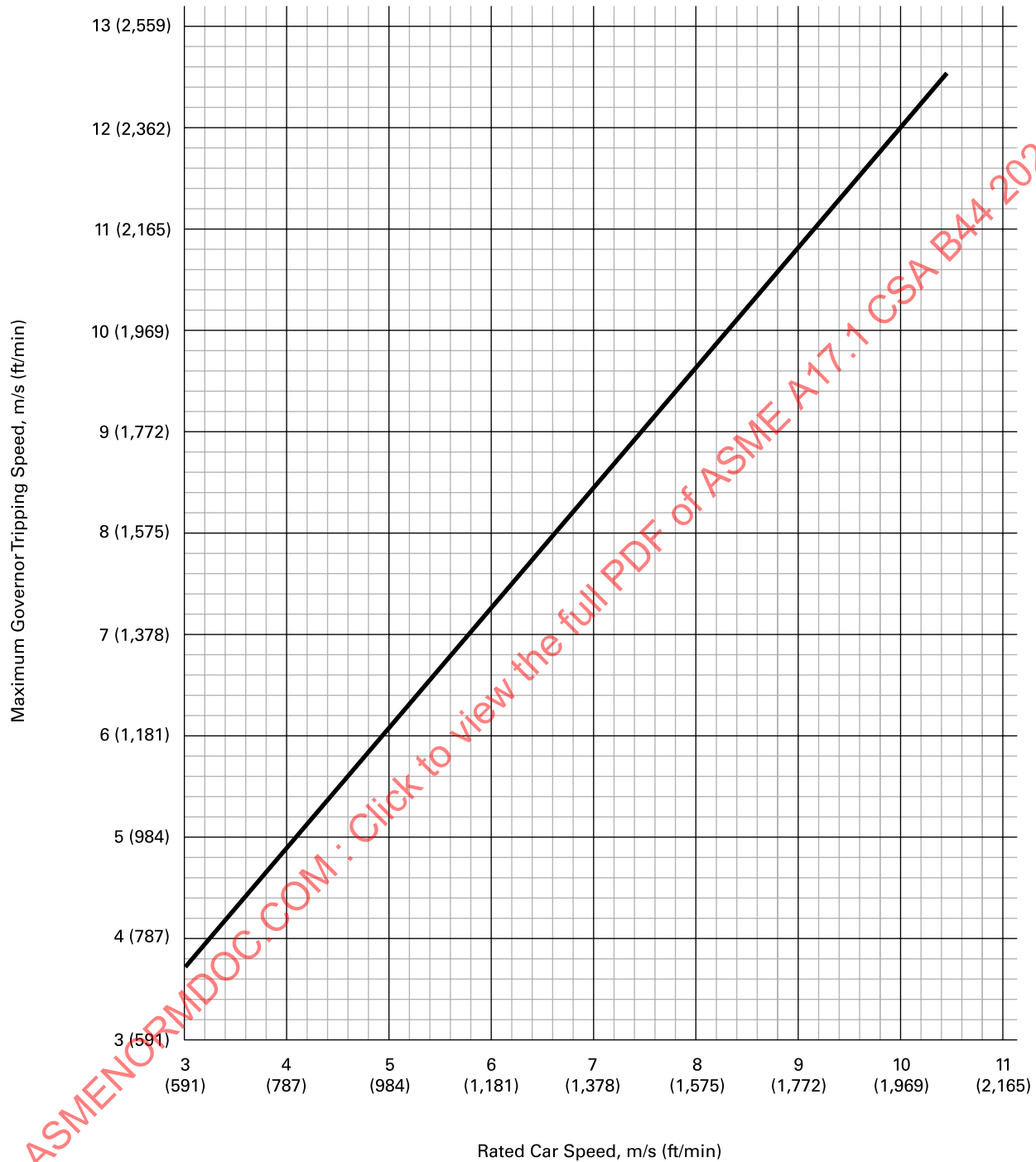


Figure 8.2.5
Maximum Governor Tripping Speeds (Cont'd)



(Imperial Units)

$$S = \frac{V^2}{81,144} + 0.84$$

$$S' = \frac{V^2}{231,840}$$

where

S = maximum stopping distance, m (ft)

S' = minimum stopping distance, m (ft)

V = governor tripping speed, m/s (ft/min)

Figure 8.2.6 shows the maximum and minimum stopping distances from various governor tripping speeds.

8.2.7 Factors of Safety for Suspension Wire Ropes for Power Elevators

Figure 8.2.7 shows the minimum factors of safety for suspension wire ropes of power elevators for various rope speeds (see 2.20.3).

8.2.8 Hydraulic Jack and Piping

8.2.8.1 Plunger Design. Plungers shall be designed and constructed in accordance with one of the formulas in 8.2.8.1.1 through 8.2.8.1.4.

8.2.8.1.1 Plungers Not Subject to Eccentric Loading

(a) Where the slenderness ratio of the plunger is less than 120

(SI Units)

$$\frac{W}{A} = 9.377 \times 10^7 - 3.344 \times 10^3 (L/R)^2$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\frac{W}{A} = 13,600 - 0.485 (L/R)^2$$

(b) Where the slenderness ratio of the plunger is greater than 120

(SI Units)

$$\frac{W}{A} = \frac{6.550 \times 10^{11}}{(L/R)^2}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\frac{W}{A} = \frac{95,000,000}{(L/R)^2}$$

Formulas are for steel where

A = net sectional area of plunger (area of metal), m² (in.²)

L = maximum free length of plunger, mm (in.).

Where a plunger-follower guide conforming to 3.18.2.7 is used, L shall be taken as one-half the amount that the free length would be if no follower guide were provided.

R = radius of gyration of plunger section, mm (in.)

W = allowable gross weight to be sustained by the plunger, N (lbf). Where a counterweight is provided, the weight of the counterweight plus the unbalanced weight of the counterweight ropes shall be permitted to be deducted in determining W . In determining W , one-half of the weight of the plunger shall be included except where a plunger-follower guide conforming to 3.18.2.7 is used, in which case, three-fourths of the plunger weight shall be included.

W/A = fiber stress, kPa (psi)

NOTE [8.2.8.1.1(a) and 8.2.8.1.1(b)]: Figure 8.2.8.1.1 has been calculated from the formulas given in 8.2.8.1.1 for the more usual pipe sizes and pipe schedules and indicates allowable gross loads directly.

(c) Plungers having a free length of 7.6 m (25 ft) or less shall be permitted to be accepted without further examination for strength and elastic stability, provided all of the following conditions exist:

(1) the working pressure is 2 070 kPa (300 psi) or less

(2) the plunger is 100 mm (4 in.) nominal pipe size or larger

(3) pipe not lighter than Schedule 40 is used, and not more than 1.6 mm (0.063 in.) of metal has been removed from the wall thickness in machining

(d) *Plungers With Varying Cross Section.* For plungers with varying cross section, the stress shall be calculated for a factor of safety of at least 3 using accepted methods for elastic stability.

8.2.8.1.2 Plungers Subject to Eccentric Loading. For plungers subject to bending, the stresses due to bending as determined by the following formulas shall be subtracted from the stresses W/A as determined by the applicable formula in 8.2.8.1.1.

(SI Units)

$$S = \frac{W_b e}{Z}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$S = \frac{W_b e}{Z}$$

where

e = eccentricity of W_b , mm (in.)

S = stress due to bending, MPa (psi)

Figure 8.2.6
Stopping Distances for Type B Car and Counterweight Safeties

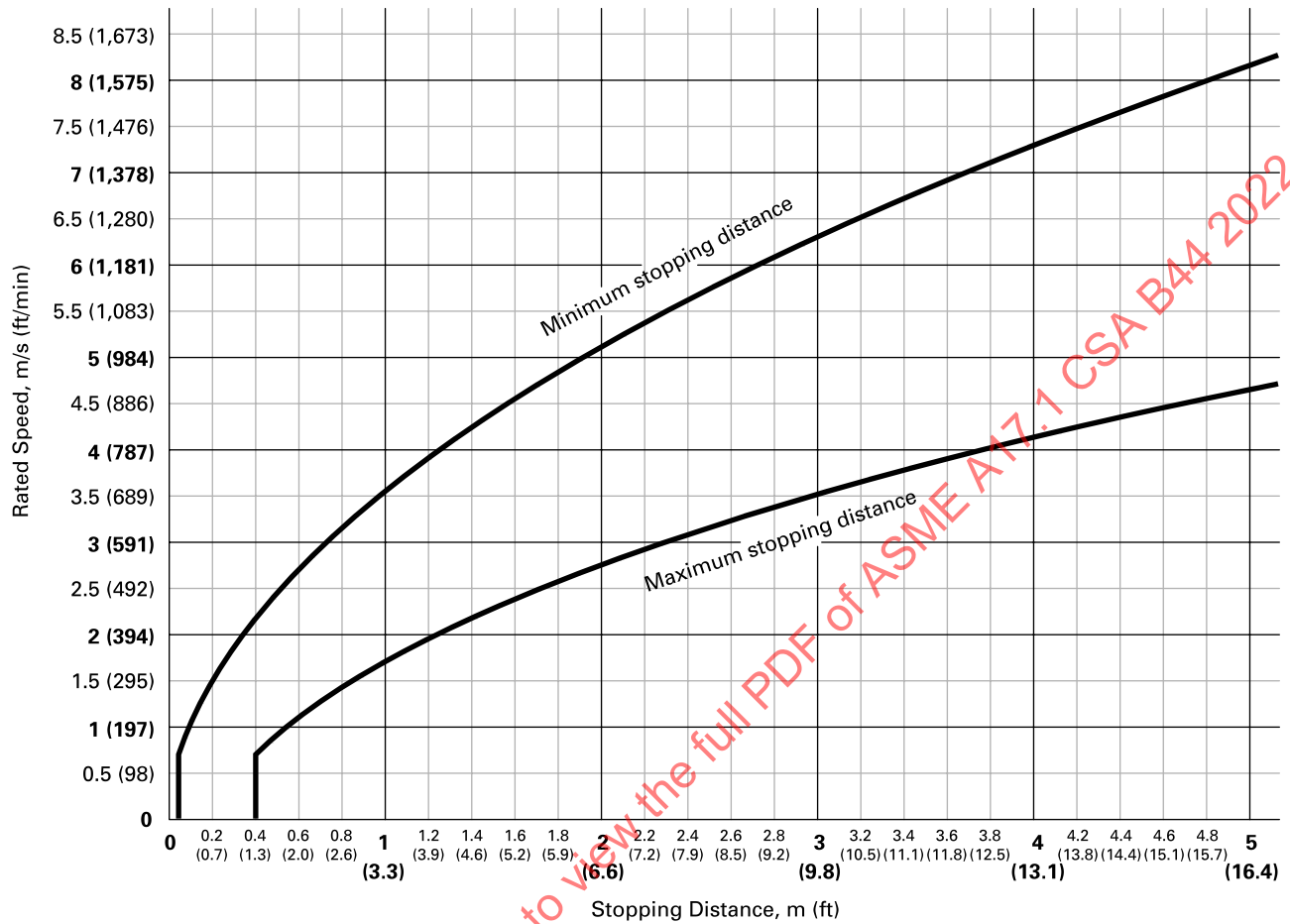


Figure 8.2.6
Stopping Distances for Type B Car and Counterweight Safeties (Cont'd)

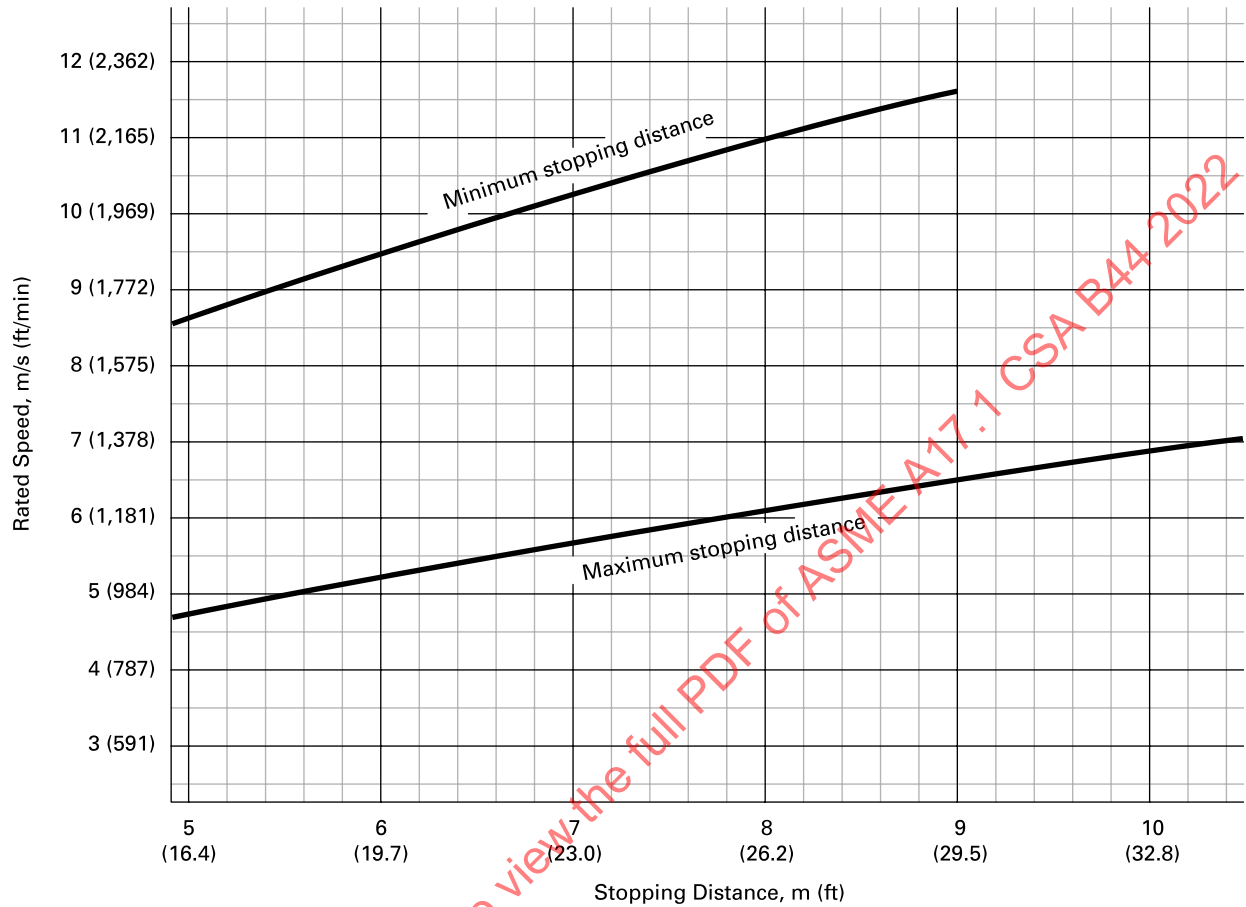


Figure 8.2.6
Stopping Distances for Type B Car and Counterweight Safeties (Cont'd)

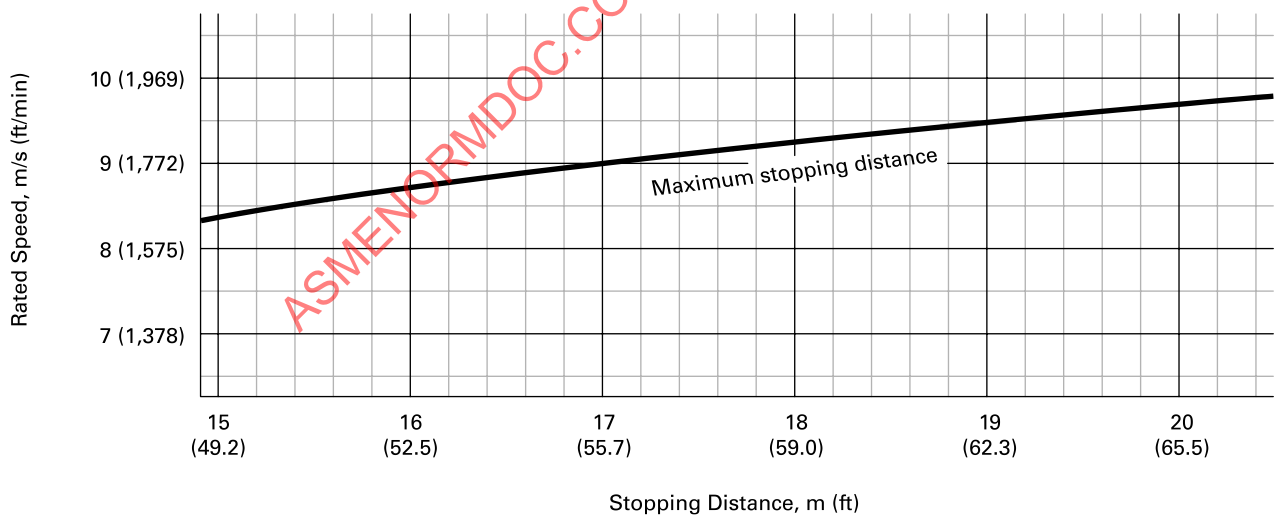
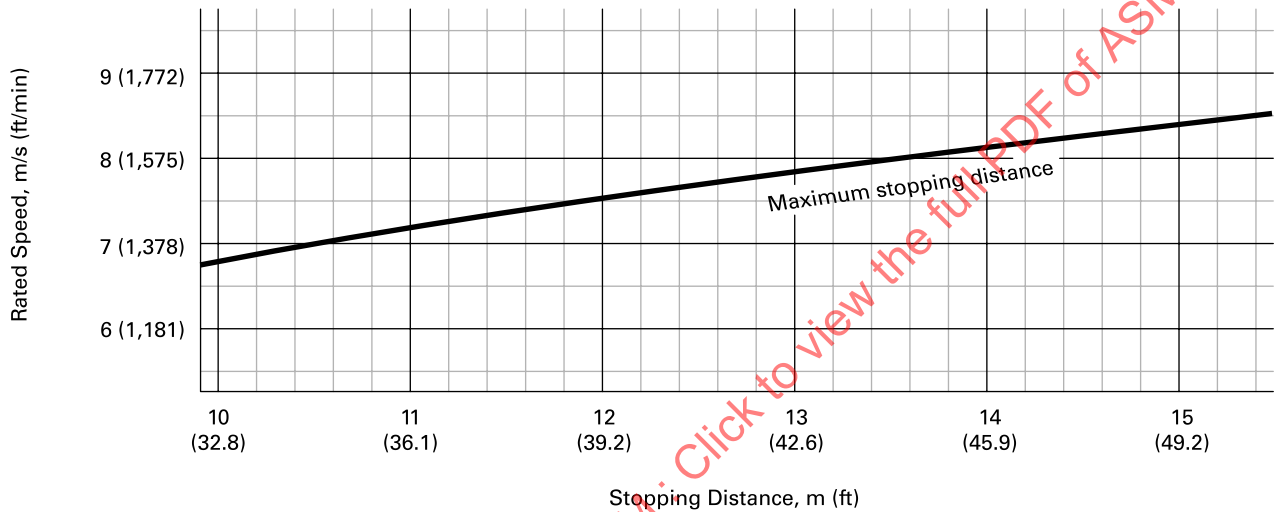
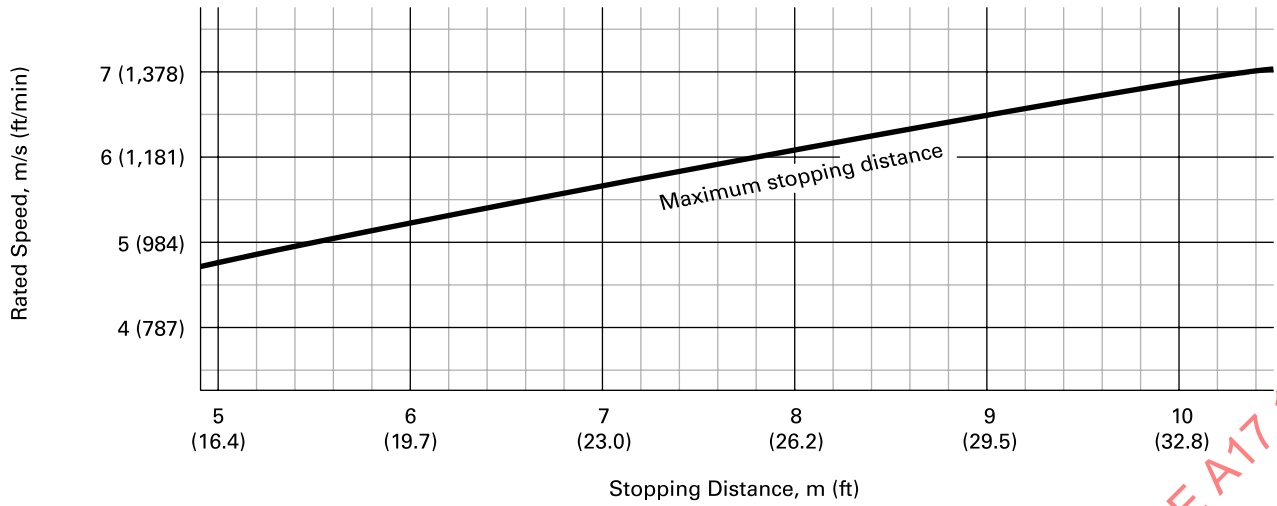


Figure 8.2.7
Minimum Factors of Safety of Suspension Members of Power Passenger and Freight Elevators

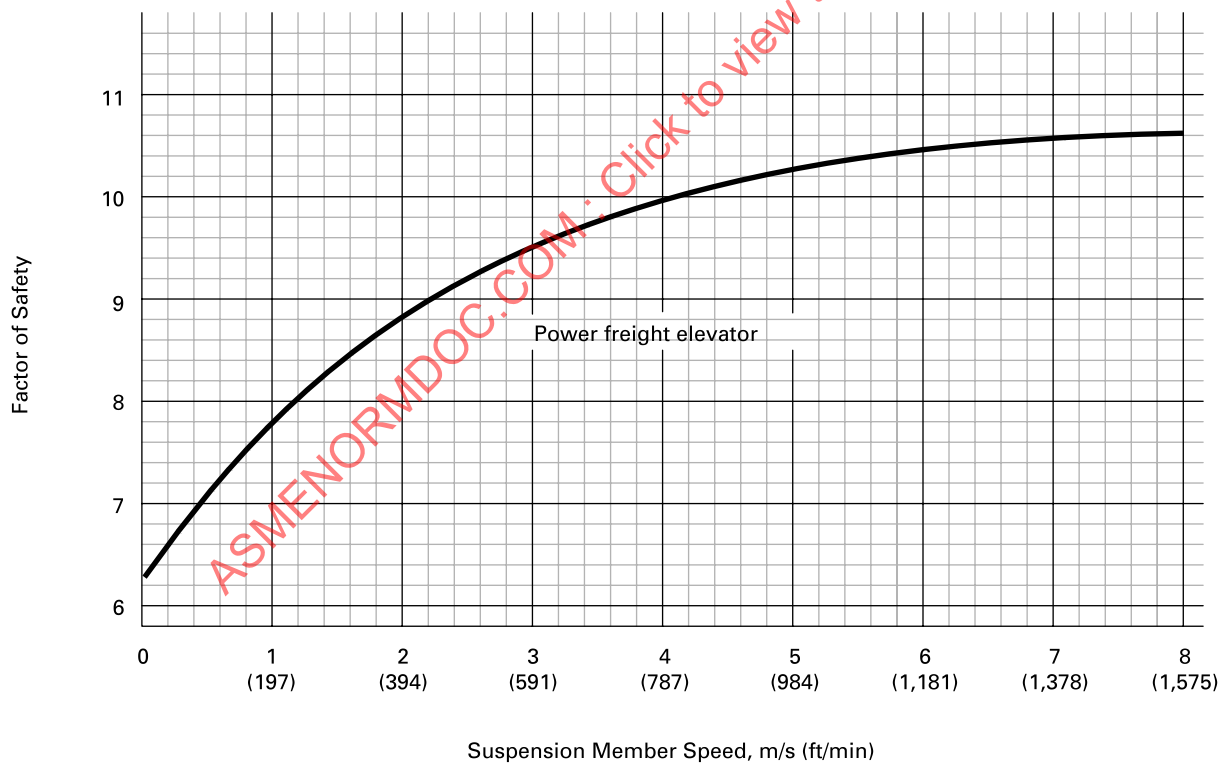
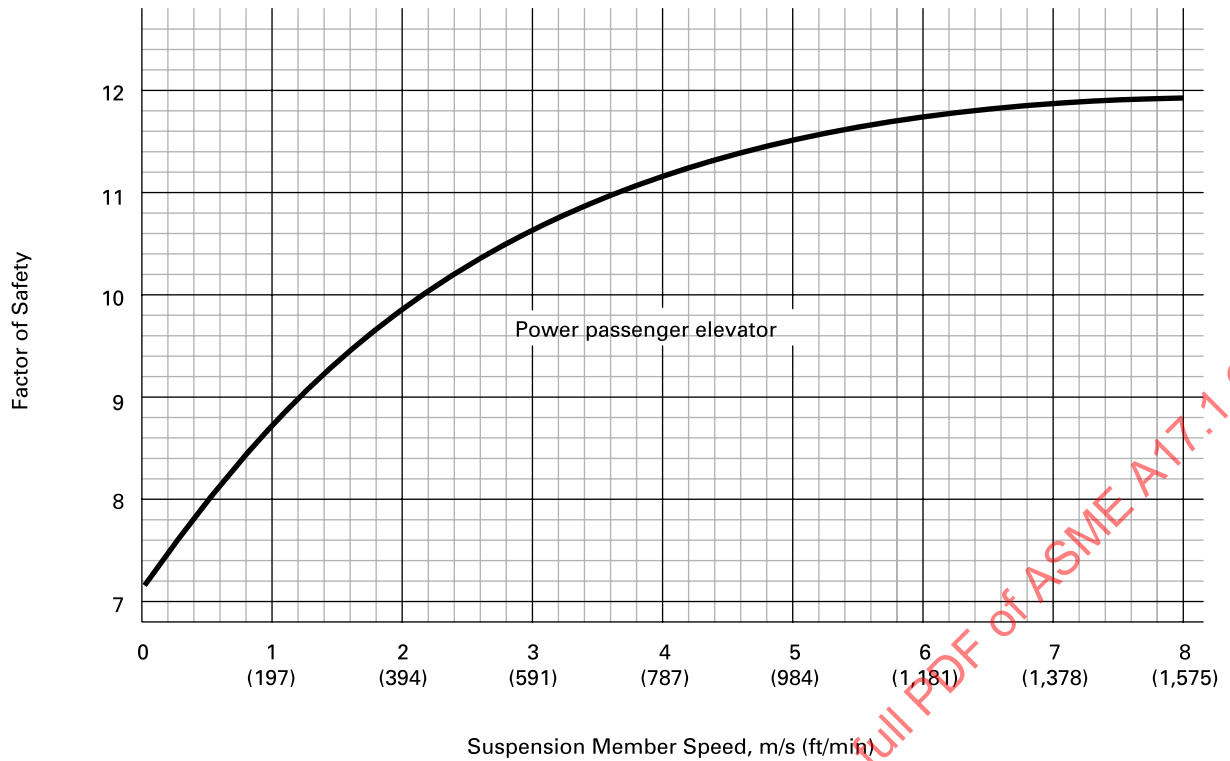


Figure 8.2.8.1.1
Allowable Gross Loads

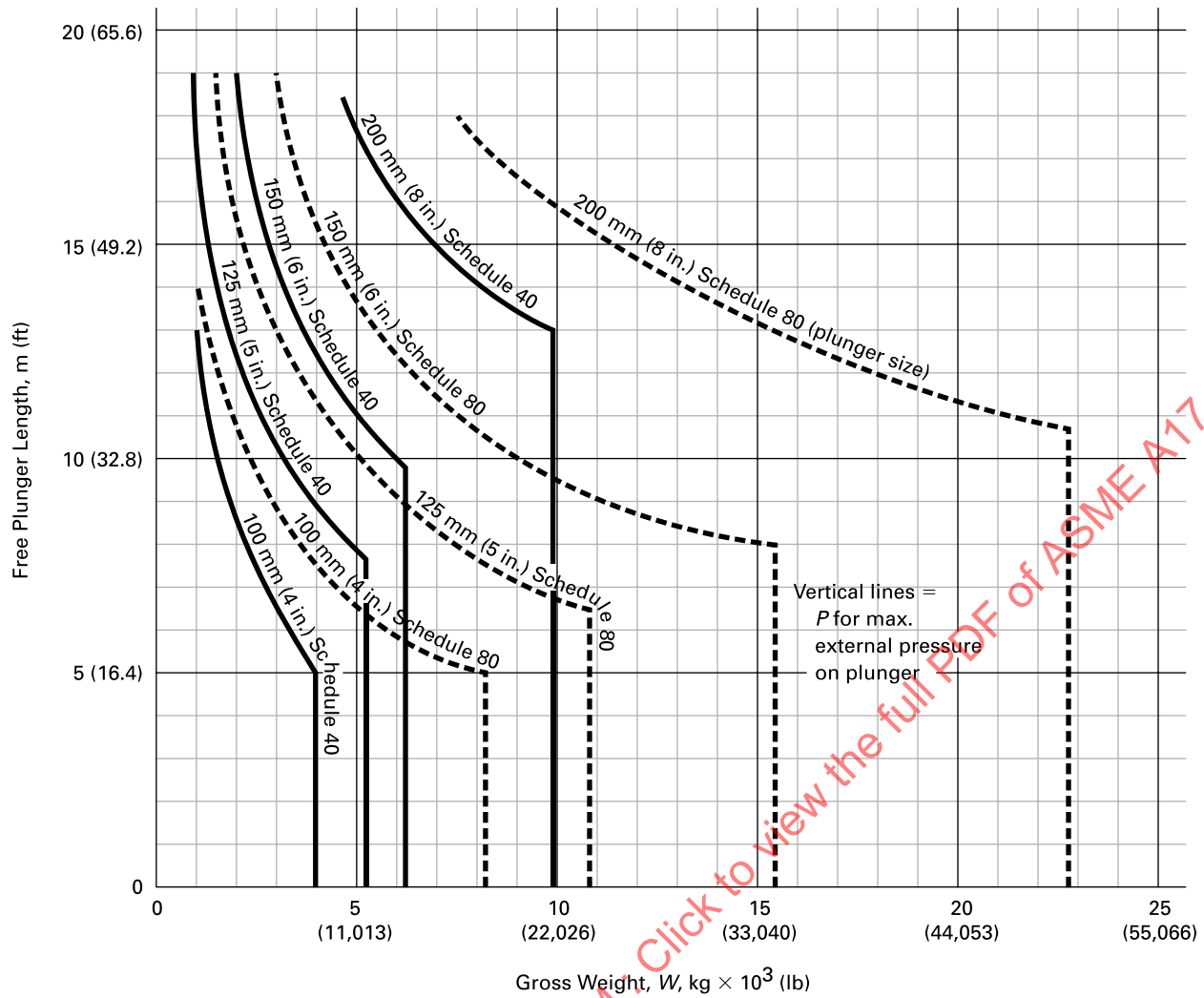
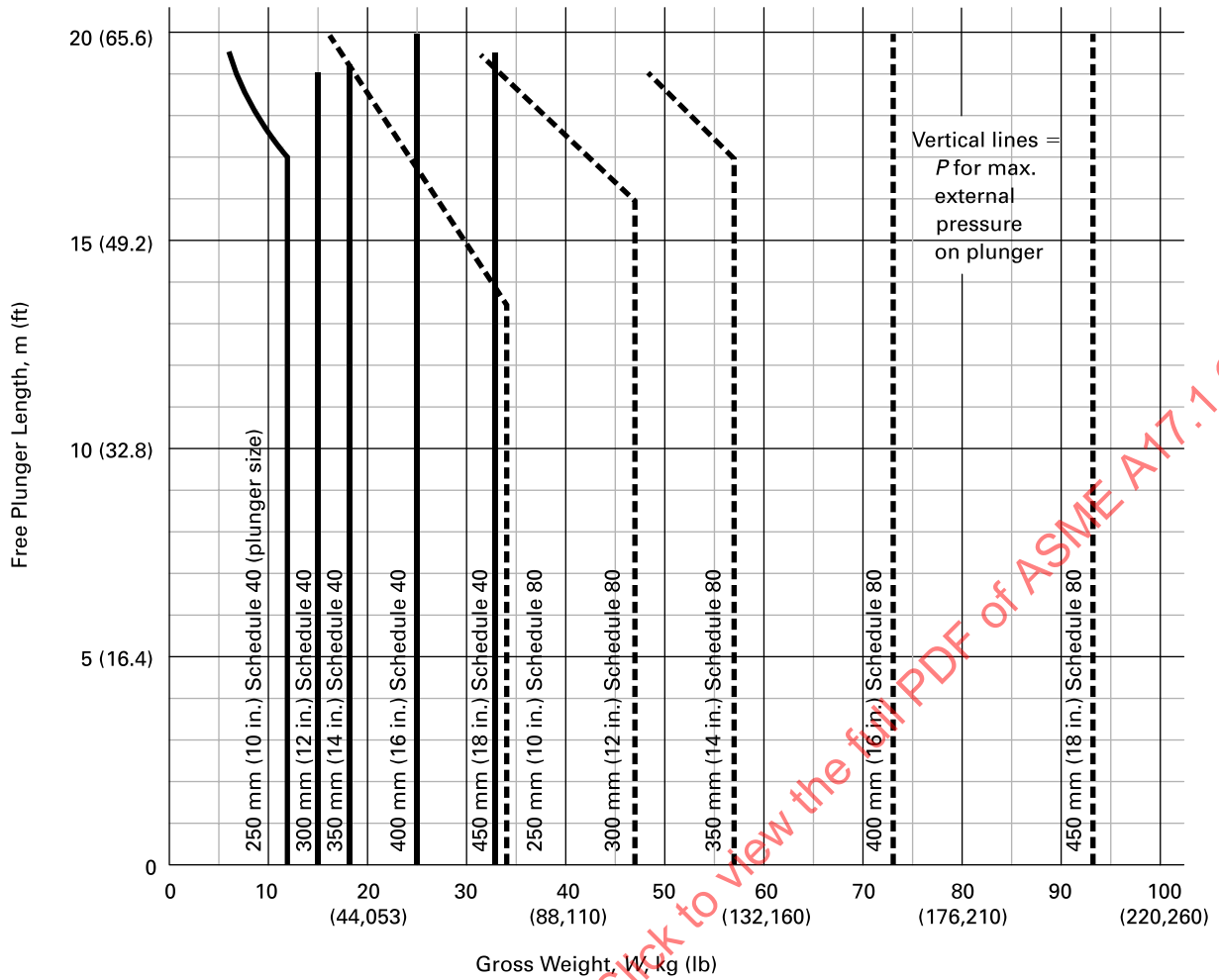


Figure 8.2.8.1.1
Allowable Gross Loads (Cont'd)



GENERAL NOTES:

- (a) Curves are based on the removal of not more than 1.5 mm (0.0625 in.) from the wall thickness in machining.
- (b) Curves stop at 18 m (59 ft) for convenience only. For plunger sizes or lengths not shown on this chart, see the applicable formula in 8.2.8.1.1.

W_b = maximum eccentric load, N (lbf). Where any or all of this load is caused by moving wheel loads imposed on the edge of the platform, the total of such loads shall be doubled for impact (see 8.2.2.6).

Z = section modulus of plunger section, mm³ (in.³)

8.2.8.1.3 Plungers Subjected to External Pressure.

For plungers subjected to external pressure, the working pressure shall be not more than that indicated by the following formulas:

(a) Where the ratio of t/D is less than 0.023

(SI Units)

$$p = 2296 \left[1 - \sqrt{1 - 1600 \left(\frac{t}{D} \right)^2} \right]$$

(Imperial Units)

$$p = 333 \left[1 - \sqrt{1 - 1,600 \left(\frac{t}{D} \right)^2} \right]$$

(b) Where the ratio of t/D is greater than 0.023

(SI Units)

$$p = 199\,200 \frac{t}{D} - 3\,185$$

(Imperial Units)

$$p = 28,890 \frac{t}{D} - 462$$

where

D = external finished diameter, mm (in.)

p = working pressure, kPa (psi)

t = finished wall thickness, mm (in.)

8.2.8.1.4 Telescoping Plungers. Telescoping plungers shall have each plunger section internally guided. If more than two movable sections are used, plunger-follower guides shall be provided for each plunger section. In the formulas in 8.2.8.1.1(a) and 8.2.8.1.1(b), the values of A and R shall be for the smallest plunger section. When plunger-follower guides are used, the value of L shall be the maximum free length of the smallest section in millimeters (inches). When plunger-follower guides are not used, the value of L shall be taken as 1.4 times the maximum free length of the smallest plunger section.

8.2.8.2 Cylinder Design. Cylinders shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pd}{2S} + C$$

where

C = depth of the thread or groove, mm (in.)

d = internal diameter, mm (in.)

p = working pressure, kPa (psi)

S = allowable stress, kPa (psi) (see 8.2.8.5.2)

t = minimum thickness of wall, mm (in.)

8.2.8.3 Cylinder and Plunger Heads. Heads of cylinders and heads of plungers subject to fluid pressure shall be designed and constructed in accordance with one of the following applicable formulas:

(a) Flat unreinforced heads

$$t = d \sqrt{\frac{p}{4S}}$$

(b) Dished seamless hemispherical heads, concave to pressure

$$t = \frac{Spr}{6S}$$

(c) Dished seamless ellipsoidal heads, concave to pressure (ellipsoidal heads in which one-half of the minor axis equals one-quarter the inside diameter of the skirt)

$$t = \frac{SpD}{6S}$$

where

D = inside diameter of the skirt, mm (in.)

d = diameter of head between supporting edges, mm (in.)

p = working pressure, kPa (psi)

r = radius to which head is dished, measured on the concave side (not greater than d), mm (in.)

S = allowable stress, kPa (psi) (see 8.2.8.5.2)

t = minimum thickness of head, mm (in.)

8.2.8.4 Wall Thickness of Pressure Piping. The minimum wall thickness of pipe shall be 1.65 mm plus C or as determined by the following:

$$t = \frac{pD}{2eS} + C$$

or

$$t - C = \frac{pD}{2eS}$$

where

C = 1.3 mm (0.05 in.) for threaded pipe up to 9.5 mm ($\frac{3}{8}$ in.) pipe size, the depth of the thread in millimeters for threaded pipe over 9.5 mm ($\frac{3}{8}$ in.) pipe

size, the depth of groove in millimeters for grooved pipe, or 0.000 for other pipe or unreduced thickness

D = outside diameter of pipe, mm (in.)

e = joint efficiency: 1 for seamless pipe; 0.85 for electric resistance welded pipe

p = maximum working pressure, kPa (psi)

S = allowable stress, based on a factor of safety in accordance with 8.2.8.5.2, kPa (psi)

t = minimum wall thickness, mm (in.)

Steel pipes and fittings used for gauge ports need not comply with this formula, but shall be a minimum of Schedule 80 pipe and a maximum length of 75 mm (3 in.), except as permitted by 3.19.2.4.

8.2.8.5 Factor of Safety

8.2.8.5.1 Except as required in 3.19.3.3.1(b), the minimum factor of safety for components subject to fluid pressure shall be as follows:

$$F = \frac{5.04}{E - 2.8} + 2.7$$

where

E = percent elongation in 50 mm (2 in.) gauge length as per ASTM E8 expressed as a whole number (e.g., 20% = 20 and 5% = 5). The minimum allowable E shall be 5.

F = minimum factor of safety based on 0.2% proof stress yield point. The minimum allowable F shall be 3.

8.2.8.5.2 The allowable stress to be used in 8.2.8.2 through 8.2.8.4 shall be determined as follows:

$$S = \frac{Y.P.}{F}$$

where

F = minimum factor of safety based on 0.2% proof stress yield point as determined in 8.2.8.5.1

S = allowable stress, kPa (psi)

$Y.P.$ = yield point, based on 0.2% proof stress yield point, kPa (psi)

8.2.8.6 Plunger Gripper Application Pressure. The maximum pressure to be applied by the plunger gripper to avoid local buckling should be calculated as follows for steel:

(SI Units)

$$P_{\max} = 2.9 \times 10^5 \left(\frac{t}{D} \right)^3$$

(Imperial Units)

$$P_{\max} = 4.2 \times 10^7 \left(\frac{t}{D} \right)^3$$

where

D = outside diameter of plunger, mm (in.)

$P_{\max}$ = maximum pressure, MPa (psi)

t = minimum wall thickness, mm (in.)

8.2.9 Hydraulic Elevator Car Frame and Platform Stresses and Deflections

8.2.9.1 General Requirements. The stresses and deflections in side-post-type car frame and platform members shall be based on the data and formulas listed in 8.2.9.

All stresses and their resultant deflections, not only those based on the data and formulas in this Section, shall be considered when side-post-type car frames are located off the platform centerline by more than one-eighth of the distance from the front to the back of the platform.

For cars and corner-post, sub-post, or other special car frame and platform construction, the formulas and specified methods of calculation of loads and the resulting stresses and deflections do not generally apply and shall be modified to suit the specific conditions and requirements in each case.

The maximum allowable stresses and deflections of members of all car frames and platforms shall be not more than those permitted by 3.15.2.

8.2.9.1.1 Maximum Stresses in Car Frame Uprights.

The maximum stresses in car frame uprights that are normally subject to compression shall be such that the quantity $[(f_a / F_a) + (f_b / F_b)]$ does not exceed unity where

F_a = allowable axial compressive unit stress [not exceeding $117\,200 - 3.344 (L/R)^2$ in SI units and $17\,000 - 0.485 (L/R)^2$ in imperial units]

f_a = actual axial compressive unit stress based on gross section

F_b = allowable bending unit stress [113 MPa (16,500 psi) if area basis is gross section or 138 MPa (20,000 psi) if area basis is net section]

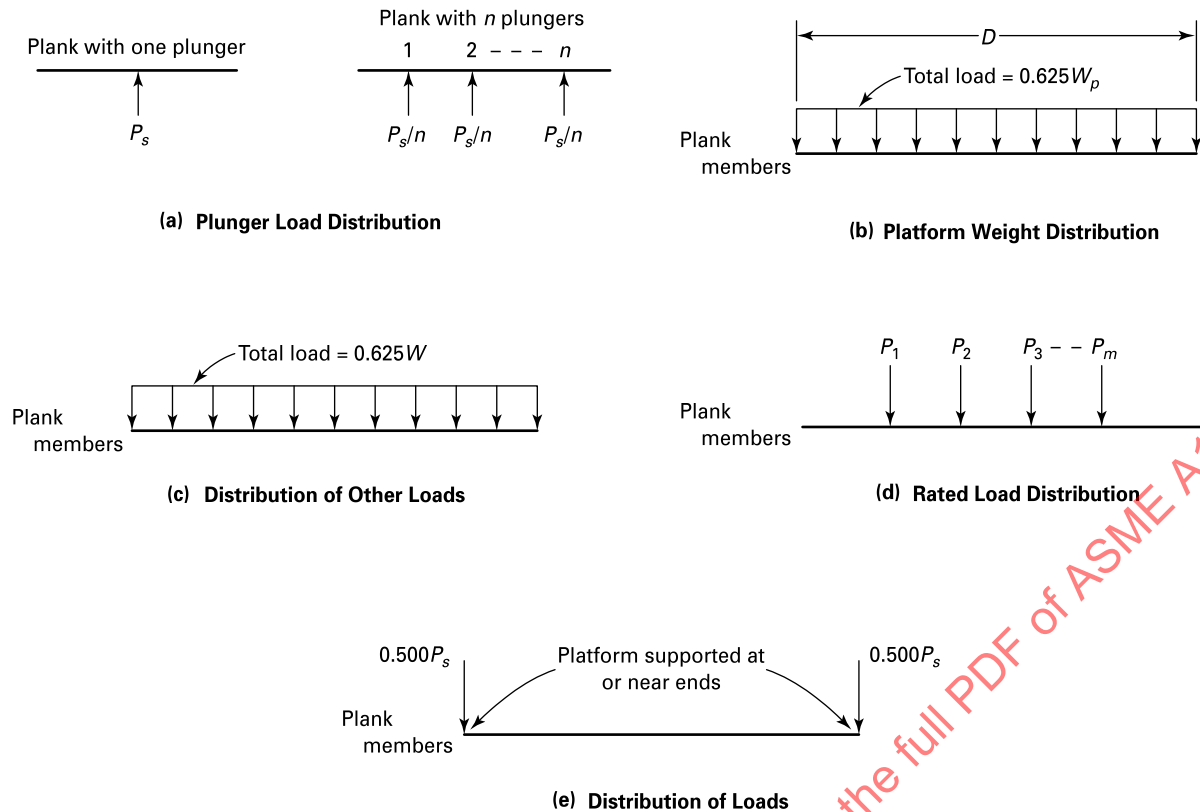
f_b = actual bending unit stress

L = free length of uprights (distance from lowest fastening in crosshead to top fastening in plank), mm (in.)

R = least radius of gyration of section, mm (in.)

8.2.9.1.2 Car Frame Crosshead. The stresses in the car frame crosshead shall be based on the total load, if any, supported by the crosshead.

Figure 8.2.9.1.3
Load Distribution



D = distance between guide rails, m (in.)

P_1, P_2, P_3, P_m = balance of loads acting on the plank members located at their respective points of application. Such loads typically include the weights of cab and doors, car frame members and guide shoes, traveling cables, electrical devices, door devices, and the balance of load distributions of the platform weight and rated load not distributed to the plank members.

P_s = total maximum static load on all the driving members, kg (lb)

W = rated load, kg (lb) (passenger or Class A freight)

W_p = platform weight, kg (lb)

GENERAL NOTES:

(a) 1 mm = 1 in./25.4 (1 in. = 25.4 mm).

(b) 1 kg = 1 lb/0.454 (1 lb = 0.454 kg).

The crosshead member(s) and connection between the crosshead and upright (stile) shall be designed to resist the bending moment and shear and axial forces transferred between the upright and the crosshead.

8.2.9.1.3 Car Frame Plank. The bending stresses in the car frame planks due to the normal loading shall be based on the following loads:

(a) concentrated load(s) located at their point of application equal to the total maximum static load on all the driving members lifting the car divided by the number of lifting members [see Figure 8.2.9.1.3, sketch (a)]

(b) five-eighths of the platform weight uniformly distributed over the length of the planks when the platform members are supported directly by the plank members [see Figure 8.2.9.1.3, sketch (b)]

(c) the duty load distribution is as follows:

(1) for passenger and Class A freight loading, five-eighths of the rated load uniformly distributed over the length of the planks when the platform members are supported directly by the plank members [see Figure 8.2.9.1.3, sketch (c)]

(2) for Class B and Class C freight loading, the loading in conformance with 8.2.2.6

(d) the balance of loads shall be taken as acting at their respective point(s) of application [see Figure 8.2.9.1.3, sketch (d)]

(e) where the platform members are only supported directly by the planks at or adjacent to the ends of the planks, (b) and (c)(1) do not apply, and concentrated loads equal to one-half of the total maximum static load on all the driving members shall be applied at each end of the planks [see Figure 8.2.9.1.3, sketch (e)]

8.2.9.1.4 Car Frame Uprights (Stiles). The stresses in each car frame upright due to compression and bending and the slenderness ratio of each upright and its moment of inertia shall be determined in accordance with the following formulas:

(a) *Stresses Due to Bending*

$$f_b = \frac{KL}{4HZ_U}$$

where

f_b = the bending stress in each upright in the plane of the frame due to the live load W on the platform for the class of loading (A, B, or C) for which the elevator is to be used (see 2.16.2.2 and Section 3.16)

K = turning moment, N·m (lbf-in.), as determined by the class of loading (see Figure 8.2.2.5.1) by the following formulas:

(1) For Class A freight loading or passenger loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807 \left(\frac{WB}{8} \right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$K = \frac{WB}{8}$$

(2) For Class B freight loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807 W \left(\frac{B}{2} - 1.219 \right) \text{ or } K = 9.807 \left(\frac{WB}{8} \right)$$

whichever is greater

(Imperial Units)

$$K = W \left(\frac{B}{2} - 48 \right) \text{ or } K = \frac{WB}{8}$$

whichever is greater.

(3) For Class C freight loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807 \left(\frac{WB}{4} \right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$K = \frac{WB}{4}$$

NOTE [8.2.9.1.4(a)]: Symbols used in the above formulas are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

(b) *Stresses Due to Compression*

f_a = compressive stress in each upright

(c) *Slenderness Ratio.* The slenderness ratio L/R for uprights subject to compressions other than those resulting from buffer or safety action shall not exceed 120. Where the upper side-brace connections on passenger elevator car frame uprights are located at a point less than two-thirds of L from the bottom (top fastening in car frame plank), a slenderness ratio of L/R not exceeding 160 is permissible.

(d) *Moment of Inertia.* The moment of inertia of each upright shall be not less than determined by the following formula:

(SI Units)

$$I = \frac{KL^3}{457.2EH}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$I = \frac{KL^3}{18EH}$$

NOTE [8.2.9.1.4(d)]: Symbols used in the above formula are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

8.2.10 Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes: Inclined Elevators

The following formula shall be used to determine the minimum stroke of oil buffers used for inclined elevators (see 5.1.17.4):

(SI Units)

$$S_{\min} = 269.5v^2 \cos \theta$$

(Imperial Units)

$$S_{\min} = \frac{v^2 \cos \theta}{3,652}$$

where

$S_{\min}$ = minimum oil buffer stroke, mm (in.)

v = rated car speed, m/s (ft/min)

θ = angle of inclination from horizontal, deg

8.2.11 Stopping Distances for Car and Counterweight Safeties for Inclined Elevators

The following formulas shall be used to determine the maximum and minimum stopping distances for Type B car and counterweight safeties used on inclined elevators (see 5.1.14.2):

(SI Units)

$$S_{\min} = 203.77v_g^2 \cos \theta$$

$$S_{\max} = 1.43S_{\min} + 254$$

(Imperial Units)

$$S_{\min} = \frac{v_g^2 \cos \theta}{4,830}$$

$$S_{\max} = 1.43S_{\min} + 10$$

where

- $S_{\max}$ = maximum stopping distance, mm (in.)
- $S_{\min}$ = minimum stopping distance, mm (in.)
- v_g = governor tripping speed, m/s (ft/min)
- θ = angle of inclination from horizontal, deg

8.2.12 Material Lifts With Automatic Transfer Devices, Design Data, and Formulas

The design data and formulas in Section 8.2 as they apply to freight elevators shall apply to material lifts with automatic transfer devices. Where vehicle loading is used, Class B loading shall apply.

SECTION 8.3 ENGINEERING TESTS, TYPE TESTS, AND CERTIFICATION

Section 8.3 covers

- (a) type of tests and certification of
 - (1) car and counterweight oil buffers, as required in 2.22.4.7 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.2)
 - (2) hoistway door interlocks, hoistway door combination mechanical locks, electric contacts, and hoistway door electric contacts, as required in 2.12.4 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.3)
 - (3) car door or gate electric contacts, and car door interlocks as required in 2.14.4.2 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.3)
 - (4) entrance fire tests as required by Section 2.11 (see 8.3.4)
 - (5) hydraulic control valves as required in 3.19.4.6 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.5)
 - (6) escalator machine brakes, as required in 6.1.5.3 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.6) and escalator dynamic braking systems (6.1.5.3.4), if used
 - (7) elastomeric buffers (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.13)

(b) engineering tests of

- (1) car enclosure wall materials, as required in 2.14.2.1.1(b) (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.7)
- (2) test method for evaluating room, fire growth, and contribution of textile wall covering, as required in 8.7.2.14 (see 8.3.7 and 8.3.8)
- (3) hydraulic overspeed valves, as required in 3.19.4.7 (see 8.3.9)
- (4) safety nut and speed-limiting device of screw-column elevators, as required in 4.2.11.2 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.10)
- (5) escalator steps, as required in 6.1.3.5.7, and moving walk pallets, as required by 6.2.3.5.4 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.11)
- (6) suspension member, as required in 2.20.11 (see 8.3.12)
- (7) skirt panel design as required in 6.1.3.3.6(d) and 6.2.3.3.6(d) (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.15)
- (8) cybersecurity for elevators as required in Section 8.14 (see 8.3.16)

8.3.1 General Requirements for Tests and Certification

8.3.1.1 General

- (a) Type tests (see Section 1.3) shall be carried out when required.
- (b) Engineering tests (see Section 1.3) shall be carried out when required.
- (c) The tests shall be permitted to be made by laboratories other than the certifying organization or manufacturers, but the responsibility shall remain with the original certifying organization.

8.3.1.2 Application for Certification

- 8.3.1.2.1 The application for engineering or type tests shall be made by the component manufacturer, equipment manufacturer, installer, or importer.

8.3.1.2.2 The application shall include

- (a) the manufacturer's name and the equipment or component designation or model
- (b) two sets of assembly and detail drawings showing details as specified in Section 8.3
- (c) a description of the elevator component or equipment and its field of application, along with calculated performance features

8.3.1.3 Certification and Test Records

- 8.3.1.3.1 A certificate shall be issued for a component or equipment that has been successfully tested. The certificate shall include

- (a) the name of the applicant (see 8.3.1.2.1)
- (b) the name of the manufacturer
- (c) the manufacturer's designation of the type or model tested

(d) the certifying organization's label/mark and the method of affixing the label/mark to each component or each piece of equipment subsequently manufactured, where required

(e) the method of testing, the test report, and a list of the instruments used

NOTE: This may be attached to the certificate.

(f) the conditions for use of the certificate and label/mark

(g) a statement to the effect that the component or equipment tested has met the specified test requirements

(h) any other information required in ASME A17.1/CSA B44

(i) the edition of the Code under which the component was tested and certified

8.3.1.3.2 The certificate shall be valid until recalled by the certifying organization or until the applicable requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 are changed unless otherwise stated (see 8.3.1.4).

8.3.1.3.3 The drawings and other documents submitted by the applicant (see 8.3.1.2), together with the original test records, data, performance curves, and certificate, shall be filed as a permanent record for future reference.

8.3.1.3.4 The applicant shall be permitted to examine and copy the test records upon request.

8.3.1.4 Changes to Listed/Certified Components or Equipment

8.3.1.4.1 Where any change is made in the design of the component or equipment after certification, including changes resulting from the revisions in applicable Code requirements, revised drawings showing such changes shall be filed with the original or other certifying organization. The certifying organization shall issue to the applicant a revised certificate, based on the previous test results or any new tests that are needed, depending on the nature of the changes.

8.3.1.4.2 Changes in the design that do not affect the performance of the component or equipment shall be permitted to be made without the approval of the certifying organization. The certifying organization shall be apprised in writing of the change.

8.3.1.5 Testing Instruments. The precision of the instruments shall allow measurements to be made, unless otherwise specified, within the following tolerances:

(a) $\pm 1\%$ — masses, forces, distances, time, speeds, and hydraulic pressure

(b) $\pm 2\%$ — accelerations, retardations, and flow rating

(c) $\pm 5\%$ — voltages and currents

(d) $\pm 10\%$ — temperatures

8.3.2 Type Tests of Car and Counterweight Oil Buffers

8.3.2.1 Application for Certification

8.3.2.1.1 The application required in 8.3.1.2 shall include information on the expected maximum impact speed, maximum and minimum total loads, and complete data for the oil porting in relation to the effective buffer stroke.

8.3.2.1.2 The drawings required in 8.3.1.2.2(b) shall show

(a) the exact construction of the buffer

(b) all dimensions of each part

(c) all pertinent information concerning materials, clearances, and tolerances

(d) the data as marked on the buffer marking plate required by 2.22.4.11

8.3.2.2 Test Sample. Tests shall be made on a buffer of each type or design to be installed. Each buffer shall conform to the documents submitted and have the following oil portings:

(a) the porting having the range of the maximum loads for which the buffer is designed

(b) the porting having the range of the minimum loads for which the buffer is designed

8.3.2.3 Testing Equipment. The testing equipment shall be designed to perform the tests specified herein and to determine that the buffer conforms to all the requirements of Section 2.22 for oil buffers and shall also conform to 8.3.2.3.1 through 8.3.2.3.3.

8.3.2.3.1 Calibration of Test Weight. The required drop-test load shall be accurate to within $\pm 1\%$.

8.3.2.3.2 Guiding of Test Weight. The test weight shall be guided to ensure that when dropped onto the buffer, its travel shall be substantially vertical.

8.3.2.3.3 Test Instruments. The instruments used to measure the test results shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) The instruments shall be the recording type.

(b) The instruments shall provide data for the plotting of the buffer performance curves showing time intervals, travel of test weight, velocity of test weight, and retardation of test weight during the buffer stroke, and shall be accurate to within the following tolerances:

(1) The timing device shall record time in increments of not more than $\frac{1}{60}$ s during the entire buffer stroke.

(2) Time increments and total time shall be recorded with an error of less than $\pm 0.5\%$.

(3) The position of the test weight at each time interval shall be recorded with an error of less than $\pm 0.1\%$.

(4) Time, travel, velocity, and retardation shall be determined by means of a device that will provide the accuracy specified.

8.3.2.4 Installation of the Buffer and Preparations for Tests

8.3.2.4.1 Foundation and Location of the Buffer. A buffer of the spring-return type shall be placed on a foundation designed to withstand without appreciable deformation the forces resulting from the buffer compression on the drop tests. The buffer shall be installed in a vertical position and located centrally with relation to the drop-test weight.

8.3.2.4.2 Securing of the Buffer. The buffer shall be secured by bolts in accordance with the manufacturer's drawings or by equivalent means to

- (a) the foundation for buffers of the spring-return type
- (b) the underside of the center of the test drop-weight for buffers of the gravity-return type

The centerline of the buffer, when secured in place, shall be vertical to within 0.25 mm (0.01 in.) in the stroke of the buffer.

8.3.2.4.3 Special Adjustments. The buffer test shall be on a production model or a buffer identical to the model to be produced. Modifications or special adjustments for the purpose of meeting the test requirements are prohibited.

8.3.2.4.4 Filling the Buffer With Oil. The buffer, after being installed, shall be filled with oil to a level at or between the manufacturer's gauge line or lines. The oil shall conform to 2.22.4.9 and the data specified on the buffer marking plate.

After filling the buffer with oil, the procedure outlined below shall be followed to ensure that a constant oil level has been established.

(a) The buffer shall be fully compressed at slow speed, and shall then be allowed to return to its fully extended position and remain there for at least 10 min. The oil level shall then be checked.

(b) If the oil level as previously determined has changed, due to the elimination of entrapped air or due to the retention of air under pressure within the buffer, the change in level shall be noted and the procedure repeated until a constant oil level is obtained when the buffer is in its extended position.

(c) If the oil level tends to remain above the level to which it was filled, the air vents, if provided, should be checked for obstructions.

(d) When a constant oil level has been established, the level shall be adjusted to the manufacturer's lowest gauge line, and the exact level noted and recorded before making the drop tests hereinafter specified.

8.3.2.5 Buffer Tests. Each oil buffer with oil portings as submitted shall be subjected to tests for retardation, strength, oil leakage, plunger return, and lateral plunger movement, as hereinafter specified.

8.3.2.5.1 Retardation Tests. The following drop tests shall be made for each buffer porting specified in 8.3.2.2, from a height such that the striking velocity of the falling weight will be equal to 115% of the rated car speed for which the buffer is designed:

(a) three drop tests with a total test weight equal to the manufacturer's rated maximum load for which the porting is designed [see 8.3.2.2(a)]

(b) one drop test with a total test weight equal to the manufacturer's rated minimum load for which the porting is designed (see 2.7.2.2)

Following each drop test, the buffer shall be held in its fully compressed position for a period of 5 min, and shall then be allowed to return freely to its fully extended position and stand for 30 min to permit return of the oil to the reservoir and to permit escape of any air entrained in the oil.

On each of these tests, the average retardation of the test weight, during the stroke of the buffer, shall not exceed 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2), and any retardation peak having a duration of more than 0.04 s shall not exceed 24.5 m/s^2 (80.5 ft/s^2).

On completion of the drop tests, no part of the buffer shall show any permanent deformation or injury.

8.3.2.5.2 Strength Tests

(a) Two drop tests shall be made as follows:

(1) One drop test shall be made with the porting as specified in 8.3.2.2(a), with a total test weight equal to 120% of the manufacturer's rated maximum load, from a height such that the maximum velocity attained by the falling weight during the buffer compression shall be equal to 125% of the rated car speed for which the buffer is rated. In this test, the retardation shall be noted and shall be permitted to exceed the values specified in 8.3.2.5.1.

Immediately following this test, the buffer shall be examined externally for visible deformation or injury. If no damage is apparent, the buffer shall then be fully compressed at low speed and then released to determine if it will return freely to its extended position.

(2) After the buffer has been examined externally and has returned freely to its extended position, a second drop test shall be made from the same height and with the same load as specified in 8.3.2.5.1(a). During this test, the retardation shall not exceed the corresponding retardation developed in the test specified in 8.3.2.5.1(a) by more than 5%.

(b) If, for a given stroke of a buffer having more than one porting, the construction of the buffer varies for the different portings, then a strength test similar to that specified in (a)(1) shall also be made for the porting having the range at minimum loads for which the porting is designed as specified in 8.3.2.2(b).

Following each drop test, the buffer shall be held in its fully compressed position for a period of 5 min, and shall then be allowed to freely return to its fully extended position and stand for 30 min to permit return of the oil to the reservoir and to permit the escape of any air entrained in the oil.

8.3.2.5.3 Oil Leakage Tests. Tests for oil leakage shall be made concurrently with the retardation tests specified in 8.3.2.5.1 and the drop test specified in 8.3.2.5.2(a)(2) to determine the loss of oil during these tests. The oil level shall be noted after the buffer has returned to its fully extended position following each drop test, and after the time interval specified in 8.3.2.5.1.

The drop in oil level, as indicated by these measurements, shall show no loss of oil exceeding 5 mm/m (0.06 in./ft) of buffer stroke, but in no case shall the loss be that the oil level is below the bottom of the plunger or the highest metering orifice, whichever is higher.

Where the volume of oil above the porting is small when the buffer is filled to its normal working level, the laboratory shall be permitted to make additional tests for oil leakage.

8.3.2.5.4 Plunger-Return Test. During the drop tests specified in 8.3.2.5.1 and 8.3.2.5.2, the time required for the buffer plunger to return to its fully extended position, measured from the instant the test weight is raised clear of the buffer until the plunger has returned to its fully extended position, shall be noted. This time shall be not more than 90 s.

Should the plunger fail to return to its fully extended position or should the time required for it to return to its fully extended position exceed the time specified, the manufacturer shall either submit a duplicate buffer or install a new pressure cylinder and piston, following which the plunger-return test shall be repeated. Should the buffer again fail to meet the plunger-return test requirements, it shall be rejected.

Buffers of the spring-return type shall be tested for plunger return with a 20 kg (45 lb) test weight resting on top of the plunger during the test. The plunger shall be depressed 50 mm (2 in.), and, when released, the plunger, while supporting the test weight, shall return to its fully extended position within 30 s.

8.3.2.5.5 Tests for Lateral Movement. The following tests shall be made for lateral movement:

(a) *Spring-Return-Type Buffers.* The lateral movement at the top of the fully extended plunger shall be accurately measured, the upper end of the plunger being manually moved from its extreme right to its extreme left position. One-half of the total movement measured shall be considered as being the true lateral movement at the top of the plunger and shall not exceed 5 mm/m (0.06 in./ft) of buffer stroke.

(b) *Gravity-Return-Type Buffers.* A similar test for lateral movement shall be made. The measurement shall be taken at the lower end of the buffer cylinder when the buffer plunger is fully extended and braced to prevent lateral movement. One-half of the total movement measured shall not exceed 5 mm/m (0.06 in./ft) of buffer stroke.

8.3.2.6 Certification

8.3.2.6.1 After the buffer has been subjected to all of the specified tests and all test records and data indicate that it conforms to Section 2.22 and to the requirements of 8.3.2, the laboratory shall issue a test report and a certificate to the manufacturer.

8.3.2.6.2 The certificate shall conform to 8.3.1.3.1 and shall include the following:

- (a) the maximum impact speed
- (b) the maximum total load
- (c) the minimum total load
- (d) specification of the fluid
- (e) a statement to the effect that the buffer having the particular stroke and portings tested has met the requirements of Section 2.22 and 8.3.2 for the maximum and minimum loads as stated in the certificate

8.3.2.6.3 When the test results are not satisfactory with the minimum and maximum total loads appearing in the application, the laboratory shall be permitted to, in agreement with the applicant, establish the acceptable limits.

8.3.3 Type Tests of Interlocks, Combination Mechanical Locks and Electric Contacts, and Door or Gate Electric Contacts

8.3.3.1 General. Paragraph 8.3.3 specifies the type tests of hoistway door interlocks, car door interlocks, combination mechanical locks and closed detection means, and hoistway door and car door or gate closed detection means.

8.3.3.2 Examination Before Test. Prior to testing, the certifying organization shall examine each device submitted to ascertain that it conforms to the applicable requirements in Part 2.

8.3.3.3 General Requirements

8.3.3.3.1 Connections for and Test of Electrical Parts. During the tests specified by 8.3.3.4.1, 8.3.3.4.3, and 8.3.3.4.4, the devices

(a) with contacts meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.1 shall have their electrical parts connected in a noninductive electrical circuit having a constant resistance and in which a current of twice the rated current at rated voltage is flowing. The electric circuit shall be closed but shall not be broken at the contact within the device on each cycle of operation during the tests.

(b) that are SIL rated meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.2 shall be monitored for the duration of the tests. If the SIL rated device requires a SIL rated E/E/PES system for monitoring, it shall be provided and connected to the SIL rated device for monitoring the output. If the device output is an electrical contact, the output should be connected to a circuit at the maximum rated current and voltage in a typical load circuit. Documentation shall be made available for the typical connection, application, operation, monitoring, and rating for the SIL rated E/E/PES system.

8.3.3.3.2 Retesting of Electric Contacts or SIL Rated Devices Previously Tested. If the electric contact of a device or a SIL rated device submitted for type tests has already been tested as part of another device, and has successfully met the test requirements (see 8.3.3), the electrical tests of the electric contact or SIL rated device need not be repeated.

8.3.3.3.3 Tests of Retiring Cams or Equivalent Devices. Tests of retiring cams or equivalent devices used to operate interlocks shall not be required.

8.3.3.3.4 Tests of Hoistway Door (Runway Door) Combination Mechanical Locks and Electric Contacts. The testing equipment shall actuate the mechanical locking members of hoistway door (runway door) combination mechanical locks and electric contacts to unlock at each cycle of operation during the tests specified by 8.3.3.4.1, 8.3.3.4.3, and 8.3.3.4.4.

8.3.3.4 Required Tests and Procedure. Each device submitted shall be subjected to and shall successfully pass the tests specified in 8.3.3.4.1 through 8.3.3.4.11, except that the electrical tests specified in 8.3.3.4.2 and 8.3.3.4.6 are not required for SIL rated devices meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.2 that do not have electrical contact outputs.

8.3.3.4.1 Endurance Test. The device, lubricated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, shall complete 960 000 cycles of operation without failure of any kind, without excessive wearing or loosening of parts, and without undue burning or pitting of the contacts (see 8.3.3.3.1). For private residence elevators, the number of cycles shall be reduced to 25 000.

8.3.3.4.2 Current Interruption Test. For devices containing contacts meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.1 and SIL rated devices meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.2 that have electrical contact outputs, the following shall apply: after completion of the test specified by 8.3.3.4.1, the device used therein shall satisfactorily complete the following additional tests, to check that the ability to break a live circuit is adequate. The tests shall be carried out with the locking device located in accordance with the manufacturer's drawings. If several positions are indicated, the test shall be made

in the position that the laboratory judges to be the most unfavorable. The sample tested shall be provided with covers and electrical wiring in accordance with the manufacturer's drawings.

(a) AC rated locking devices shall have their electrical parts connected to an inductive circuit with a power factor of 0.7 ± 0.05 in which a current 11 times the rated current, at 110% of rated voltage, is flowing. The AC locking devices shall open and close 50 times, at normal speed, and at intervals of 5 s to 10 s, with the contact remaining closed for at least 0.5 s.

(b) DC rated locking devices shall have their electrical parts connected to an inductive circuit in which the current reaches 95% of the steady-state value of 110% of the rated current in 0.03 s maximum, at 110% of rated voltage. The DC locking devices shall open and close 20 times, at normal speed, and at intervals of 5 s to 10 s, with the contact remaining closed for at least 0.5 s.

(c) The test results are considered satisfactory if no evidence of insulation breakdown due to arcing or tracking occurs and if no deterioration occurs that could adversely affect safety.

8.3.3.4.3 Test Without Lubricant. After completion of the test specified by 8.3.3.4.2 for electric contacts or SIL rated devices that have electrical contact outputs, or after completion of the test specified by 8.3.3.4.1 for SIL rated devices without electrical contact outputs, the device used therein shall be used for this test.

The device, except self-lubricating bearings and bearings of a type not requiring frequent replenishment of lubricant, shall then be taken apart and freed of lubricant by washing in nonflammable liquids having cleansing characteristics.

After reassembly, the device shall, without other than the usual initial adjustment (i.e., without adjustment especially made to meet the conditions of the particular test) and without further attention, complete 25 000 cycles (20 000 cycles for a private residence elevator) of operation without failure of any kind, without excessive wearing or loosening of parts, and without undue burning or pitting of contacts where provided (see 8.3.3.3.1).

8.3.3.4.4 Test in Moist Atmosphere. After completion of the test specified by 8.3.3.4.3, the device used therein shall be used for this test.

The device shall be subjected continuously, in an unventilated enclosure, to an atmosphere saturated with a range of 3.5% to 5% solution of sodium chloride for 72 consecutive hours. During this period, it shall be operated for only 10 consecutive cycles at the end of each of the first two 24 h periods and shall be allowed to stand exposed to the air for 24 h, and shall not fail in a manner that creates an unsafe condition.

The device shall again be lubricated and shall, without adjustment and without further attention, complete 15 000 cycles (10 000 cycles for a private residence elevator) of operation without failure of any kind.

8.3.3.4.5 Misalignment Test

(a) *All Types of Doors.* The device shall operate effectively when the car cam or other equivalent operating device used in making the test has been displaced horizontally from its normal position (the position in which it was when the device was installed) successively as follows:

(1) in a direction perpendicular to the plane of the door opening

(-a) backward 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(-b) forward 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(2) in a direction parallel to the plane of the door opening

(-a) 6 mm (0.25 in.) to the right

(-b) 6 mm (0.25 in.) to the left

(b) *Horizontally Sliding Doors.* The device shall operate effectively

(1) when the bottom of the door has been displaced horizontally from its normal position in a direction perpendicular to the plane of the door opening

(-a) backward 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(-b) forward 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(2) when the top of the door has been displaced horizontally from its normal position in a direction perpendicular to the plane of the door opening

(-a) backward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(-b) forward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(c) *Swinging Doors.* The device shall operate effectively when the strike edge of the door has been displaced

(1) perpendicular to the plane of the door opening

(-a) forward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(-b) backward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(2) parallel to the plane of the door opening

(-a) 3 mm (0.125 in.) to the right

(-b) 3 mm (0.125 in.) to the left

(-c) 3 mm (0.125 in.) up

(-d) 3 mm (0.125 in.) down

(d) *Vertically Sliding Doors.* The device shall operate effectively when the door has been displaced

(1) perpendicular to the plane of the door opening

(-a) forward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(-b) backward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(2) parallel to the plane of the door opening

(-a) 3 mm (0.125 in.) to the right

(-b) 3 mm (0.125 in.) to the left

8.3.3.4.6 Insulation Test. For devices containing contacts meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.1 and SIL rated devices meeting the requirements of 2.26.4.3.2 that have electrical contact output, the following shall apply: the insulation of the electrical parts shall withstand a test with a root-mean square (effective) voltage of

twice the rated voltage plus 1 000 V, 60 Hz, applied for 1 min.

8.3.3.4.7 Force and Movement Test. When testing devices of a type that are released by a retiring cam (see 2.12.2.5), measurements shall be made of the force required to release the device and of the movement of the element engaged by the cam, with the device mounted in its normal position as specified by the manufacturer, before and after the test specified by 8.3.3.4.1.

The force and movement recorded in each test shall be, respectively

(a) the maximum force, measured in a horizontal plane, that must be applied to that member of the device that is directly actuated by the cam to release the door-locking member of the device from locking engagement

(b) the distance, projected on a horizontal plane, that the member of the device directly actuated by the cam travels from its position when the lock is fully engaged to its position when the locking member is released from engagement

The force and movement markings required by 2.12.4.3(f) shall be not less than the average of these recorded values.

8.3.3.4.8 Static Test. After completion of the endurance test in 8.3.3.4.1, a type test shall be made consisting of a static force applied over a period of 300 s with the force increasing incrementally. The force shall be applied in the opening direction of the door and at a location as near to the locking element as possible, but not to exceed 300 mm (12 in.). The force shall be 1 000 N (225 lbf) in the case of a locking device intended for use with sliding doors, and 3 000 N (675 lbf) or 670 N (150 lbf) for a private residence elevator applied at right angles to the panel evenly distributed over an area 5 cm² (0.78 in.²) in a round or square section in the case of a locking device intended for use with swinging doors.

8.3.3.4.9 Examination of Electrical Spacings. The electrical spacings shall comply with CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5, Section 16.

8.3.3.4.10 Examination of Operation. Verify that there is at least 7 mm (0.28 in.) engagement of the interlock locking elements before the hoistway door interlock contact closes or the SIL rated device detects the locked position.

8.3.3.4.11 Testing of Electrical Contact Bridging Means or SIL Rated Device Detection Means. The electrical contact bridging means shall be tested to verify conformance with 2.12.2.4.2. The SIL rated device closed and locked detection means shall be tested to verify conformance with 2.12.2.4.3.

8.3.4 Entrance Fire Type Tests

8.3.4.1 Test of Entrance Assemblies, Horizontally Sliding and Swinging Types and Vertically Sliding Types

8.3.4.1.1 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, the fire protection rating of entrances and doors shall be determined in accordance with the requirements specified in the NBCC. Requirement 8.3.4.1.2 does not apply.

8.3.4.1.2 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, tests of elevator horizontal slide-type and swing-type entrance assemblies and tests of elevator and dumbwaiter vertical slide-type entrance assemblies shall be conducted in accordance with UL 10B or NFPA 252.

Test entrance assemblies shall be constructed in accordance with Section 2.11.

8.3.5 Type Tests for Hydraulic Control Valves

8.3.5.1 Application for Certification. The application required in 8.3.1.2 shall include information regarding

- (a) the component rated pressure
- (b) the flow rating
- (c) the fluid specification
- (d) the operating temperature range of the fluid
- (e) the coil voltage and current

8.3.5.2 Test Sample. Tests shall be conducted on a representative sample in the sequence as stated in 8.3.5.3.

8.3.5.3 Test Procedure

8.3.5.3.1 Endurance Test. Test samples shall be subject to 100 000 operating cycles (100 000 up and 100 000 down) at the component rated pressure and within the fluid specifications and temperature range stipulated by the manufacturer. Each operating cycle shall be not less than 5 s nor more than 24 s.

8.3.5.3.2 Seat Leakage

(a) The hydraulic pressure shall be maintained at 1.5 times the component rated pressure for a period sufficient to establish the rate of leakage, but not less than 1 h nor more than 24 h. The test shall be started at the maximum stipulated fluid temperature for which the valve is designed. The fluid temperature shall be permitted to gradually decrease during the test to 20°C (68°F).

(b) The test shall be repeated using a pressure of 750 kPa (110 psi).

(c) Total leakage from output to input during either test shall not exceed the flow rate of the valve divided by one million.

8.3.5.3.3 External Leakage. The hydraulic pressure shall be maintained at twice the component rated pressure for a period of 10 min to establish the rate of leakage. The rate of leakage shall not exceed 10% of the rated flow of the valve.

8.3.5.3.4 Valve Body Strength Test. For elongations greater than or equal to 10%, the pressure chambers of the valve shall be subjected to a hydraulic pressure 5 times the component rated pressure.

For elongations less than 10%, the test value shall be 1.5 times the value indicated by 8.2.8.5 multiplied by the component rated pressure.

To test the strength, this hydraulic pressure shall be maintained for a period of 5 min. During the test, the valve body shall not rupture.

NOTES (8.3.5.3.4):

- (1) In order to obtain and maintain the test pressure, it is permissible to substitute alternative sealing material and to tighten bolts during the test.
- (2) It is not expected that the valve will be able to perform its function during or after the valve body strength test.

8.3.5.3.5 Electrical Test. Valves shall be tested to the electrical requirements of CSA C22.2, No. 139, Clause 6.

8.3.6 Escalator Brake and Braking System Type Tests

8.3.6.1 General. Where required by 6.1.5.3.3, escalators shall be subjected to such tests as are necessary to certify that

- (a) the escalator machine brakes can be adjusted to conform to 6.1.5.3
- (b) the relationship that exists between the range of machine brake settings and stopping distances complies with 6.1.5.3.1
- (c) dynamic braking systems, if used, shall be verified to conform to 6.1.5.3.4

8.3.6.2 Measuring the Stopping Distances. The stopping distance shall be measured by the movement of a step along its path of travel after a stop has been initiated.

8.3.6.3 Location of Tests. The tests shall be permitted to be made in the manufacturer's plant or on an escalator installation.

8.3.6.4 Extension of Type Test. Provided that the design loads of the brake are not exceeded, it is permissible to simulate on the test escalator, by means of alternative loads, a number of heights and widths, for the purpose of certification of an escalator type (design), provided that those escalators for the additional widths and heights use the same motor and machine.

8.3.7 Vertical Burn Engineering Test

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, napped, tufted, woven, looped, and similar materials [see 2.14.2.1.2(b)] shall be subjected to the engineering tests specified in 8.3.7.1 through 8.3.7.6.

8.3.7.1 Conditioning. Specimens shall be conditioned to 21°C ± 2°C (70°F ± 5°F) and at 50% ± 5% relative humidity until moisture equilibrium is reached, or for

24 h. Only one specimen at a time shall be removed from the conditioning environment immediately before subjecting it to the flame.

8.3.7.2 Specimen Configuration. Materials shall be tested either as a section cut from a fabricated part as installed in the car or as a specimen simulating a cut section, such as a specimen cut from a flat sheet of the material or a model of the fabricated part. The specimen shall be cut from any location in a fabricated part; however, fabricated units, such as sandwich panels, shall not be separated for test. The specimen shall be no thicker than the minimum thickness to be qualified for use in the car. In the case of fabrics, both the warp and fill directions of the weave shall be tested to determine the most critical flammability conditions. The specimen shall be mounted in a metal frame so that the two long edges and the upper edge are held securely. The exposed area of the specimen shall be at least 51 mm (2 in.) wide and 305 mm (12 in.) long, unless the actual size used in the car is smaller. The edge to which the burner flame is applied shall not consist of the finished or protected edge of the specimen but shall be representative of the actual cross section of the material or part installed in the car.

8.3.7.3 Apparatus. Except as provided in 8.3.7.4, tests shall be conducted in a draft-free cabinet in accordance with FED-STD-191A, Method 5903.1, or other approved equivalent methods. Specimens that are too large for the cabinet shall be tested under similar draft-free conditions.

8.3.7.4 Test. A minimum of three specimens shall be tested and the results averaged. For fabric, the direction of weave corresponding to the most critical flammability conditions shall be parallel to the longest dimension. Each specimen shall be supported vertically. The specimen shall be exposed to a Bunsen or Tirrill burner with a nominal 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) I.D. tube adjusted to give a flame 38 mm (1.5 in.) high. The minimum flame temperature measured by a calibrated thermocouple pyrometer in the center of the flame shall be 840°C (1,545°F). The lower edge of the specimen shall be 19 mm (0.75 in.) above the top edge of the burner.

The flame shall be applied to the centerline of the lower edge of the specimen. The flame shall be applied for 12 s and then removed. Flame time, burn length, and flaming time of drippings, if any, shall be recorded. The burn length determined in accordance with 8.3.7.5 shall be measured to the nearest 2.5 mm (0.1 in.).

8.3.7.5 Burn Length. Burn length is the distance from the original edge to the farthest evidence of damage to the test specimen due to flame impingement, including areas of partial or complete consumption, charring, or embrittlement, but not including areas sooted, stained, warped, or discolored or areas where material has shrunk or melted away from the heat source.

8.3.7.6 Acceptance Criteria

- (a) The average burn length shall not exceed 203 mm (8 in.).
- (b) The average flame time after removal of the flame source shall not exceed 15 s.
- (c) Drippings from the test specimen shall not continue to flame for more than 5 s.

8.3.8 Test Method for Evaluating Room Fire Growth Contribution of Textile Wall Covering

Textile wall covering shall be tested and shall meet the acceptance criteria of NFPA 265 when tested using the product mounting system, including adhesive, of actual use.

8.3.9 Engineering Tests for Hydraulic Overspeed Valves

8.3.9.1 General. The overspeed valve test shall be based on the marking required by 3.19.4.7.2 and specifications provided by the valve manufacturer.

8.3.9.2 Test Samples. Tests shall be conducted on a representative sample of the overspeed valve.

8.3.9.3 Test Procedure

8.3.9.3.1 Endurance Test. The test sample shall be subjected to 1 000 closing cycles at the component rated pressure, at the maximum flow rate, and within the fluid specifications and temperature range stipulated by the manufacturer. Additionally, the sample shall be subjected to 100 operating cycles at the minimum flow rate and pressure, to ensure range coverage.

8.3.9.3.2 Seat Leakage Test. The hydraulic pressure shall be maintained at 1.5 times the component rated pressure for a period sufficient to establish the rate of leakage, but not less than 1 h and not more than 24 h. Total leakage of the valve from input to output during the test period shall not exceed the flow rate of the valve divided by one million.

8.3.9.3.3 Valve Body Strength Test. For elongations greater than or equal to 10%, the valve shall be subjected to a hydraulic pressure 7.5 times the component rated pressure. For elongations of less than 10%, the test valve shall be 2.25 times the value indicated by 8.2.8.5 multiplied by the component rated pressure. The strength test for this hydraulic pressure shall be maintained for a period of 5 min. During the test, the valve body shall not rupture.

NOTES:

- (1) In order to obtain and maintain the test pressure, it is permissible to substitute alternative sealing material and to tighten bolts during the test.
- (2) It is not expected that the valve will be able to perform its function during or after the valve body strength test.

8.3.10 Engineering Tests: Safety Nut and Speed-Limiting Devices of Screw-Column Elevators

8.3.10.1 General. Paragraph 8.3.10 specifies the engineering tests of safety nuts and speed-limiting devices that are permitted as alternative safety devices on screw-column elevators driven by AC squirrel cage motors and having a down speed of not more than 0.38 m/s (75 ft/min).

8.3.10.2 Test of Safety Nut. The test shall be made in the manufacturer's plant, in a testing laboratory, or in the field by suspending the elevator car with rated load a distance above the safety nut at least 13 mm (0.5 in.) and allowing it to drop (free-fall) until the entire load rests on the safety nut. The test shall be witnessed by, and the test results certified by, a testing laboratory or registered professional engineer. After the test, the screw column, screw supports, safety nut, guide rails, and car frame shall be inspected to determine that there has been no damage. A test on a given capacity elevator shall be accepted for all similarly designed elevators by that manufacturer for the same or lesser capacity (rated load).

8.3.10.3 Test of Speed-Limiting Device. The test shall be made in the manufacturer's plant, in a testing laboratory, or in the field by suspending the elevator car with rated load a distance at least 4 572 mm (15 ft) above the lower limit of normal travel and allowing it to drop (free-fall) until the descent is controlled by the speed-limiting device. The elevator car shall be allowed to continue its descent until brought to rest by the car buffer or bumper. The test shall be instrumented so that a graph of velocity versus distance can be plotted. The test shall be witnessed by, and the test results certified by, a testing laboratory or a registered professional engineer. After the test, the screw column, screw-column supports, speed-limiting device, guide rails, car buffer or bumper, and car frame shall be inspected to determine that there has been no damage. A test on a given capacity elevator shall be accepted for all similarly designed elevators by that manufacturer for the same or lesser capacity (rated load).

8.3.11 Step and Pallet Fatigue Engineering Test

Step fatigue tests required in 6.13.5.7 and pallet fatigue tests required by 6.2.3.5.4 shall be performed as indicated in 8.3.11.1 through 8.3.11.6.

8.3.11.1 The test shall be made at either the manufacturer's facility or a testing laboratory.

8.3.11.2 Escalator steps shall be mounted in an arrangement that duplicates the conditions on the escalator incline and their attachment to the step chain. Moving walk pallets shall be mounted in an arrangement

that duplicates the condition of a horizontal moving walk and their attachment to the pallet chain.

8.3.11.3 The steps or pallets shall be subjected to a load varying from 450 N (100 lbf) to 3 000 N (650 lbf) at a frequency of 10 Hz $\pm$ 5 Hz for 5 000 000 cycles. An undisturbed harmonic force flow shall be achieved.

8.3.11.4 The load shall be applied normal to the tread surface to a plate 25 mm (1 in.) thick, 200 mm (8 in.) wide, and 300 mm (12 in.) long, located at the center of the step or pallet, with the 300 mm (12 in.) dimension in the direction of step or pallet travel.

8.3.11.5 The step or pallet shall have no fractures or permanent tread surface deflection exceeding 4 mm (0.16 in.) following the completion of the test. The deflection of 4 mm (0.16 in.) does not include any set or wear in the supporting wheels.

8.3.11.6 This test shall be performed on each step or pallet width.

8.3.12 Suspension Member Tests

Suspension member tests required in 2.20.11 shall be performed as required by 8.3.12.1 through 8.3.12.3. Test results shall be documented as required by 8.3.12.4.

8.3.12.1 General Requirements. A test shall be required on each combination of suspension member, driving sheave design, and materials of construction. The test shall be conducted with the contact-surface geometry of the test specimens that results in the highest surface-pressure condition between the suspension member and driving sheave. A test on a given suspension member at its maximum allowable load shall be accepted for all similarly designed combinations by that manufacturer for any lesser load carried per suspension member. The suspension members and driving sheave combination shall be tested under the conditions for which they were designed.

8.3.12.2 Inspection Speed Test. One or more suspension member(s), loaded in tension to the maximum capacity to be qualified, shall be applied to its (their) driving sheave. The suspension member(s) shall be prevented from moving. The driving sheave shall be rotated at a speed no less than that corresponding to the maximum inspection speed of the elevator to which the suspension means is to be applied.

8.3.12.2.1 Acceptance Criteria. As a result of the test required by 8.3.12.2, no suspension member shall part before a minimum of 4 min.

8.3.12.3 Test Under Emergency-Stop Conditions. One or more suspension member(s), loaded in tension to the maximum capacity to be qualified, shall be applied to its (their) driving sheave. The suspension member(s) shall be run at a speed corresponding to the maximum speed for

which the suspension means is to be applied with respect to its (their) drive sheave. The drive sheave shall be subjected to three successive emergency stops, each causing the suspension members to slip traction over the driving sheave [see 8.3.12.4(g)]. The tests shall be arranged so that slippage occurs over substantially the same portion of the suspension means during successive tests. The duration of the slip shall correspond to that attained by the elevator counterweight and car with rated load initially moving at rated speed, and decelerating, on their own, to a complete stop. It shall be permitted to conduct this test on an installed elevator or in a suitable testing facility.

8.3.12.3.1 Acceptance Criteria. As a result of the test required by 8.3.12.3, suspension member(s) shall not sustain damage that would require replacement according to the criteria of ASME A17.6, Sections 1.10, 2.9, and 3.7, as applicable.

8.3.12.4 Documentation of Test Results. For the tests required in 8.3.12.2 and 8.3.12.3, the testing facilities, test procedure, and test results shall be documented in engineering reports. The following information shall be provided in each engineering report:

- (a) date(s) of the test
- (b) name and address of the location where the tests were conducted
- (c) name, position, and organization of the person(s) conducting, supervising, or witnessing the tests
- (d) description of the apparatus and equipment used to perform the tests
- (e) description of the instrumentation used to measure or record data
- (f) definition and description of the suspension member(s) and the driving sheave to which it (they) is (are) being applied, including part number, type designation, or other identification
- (g) the values of the loads and speeds for which the suspension members and their sheaves are to be qualified
- (h) the sheave rotation speed for the test in 8.3.12.2
- (i) description of the test procedure and pass/fail criteria
- (j) observations noted during the test
- (k) test results and test data
- (l) conclusions indicating compliance with the acceptance criteria

8.3.13 Type Tests of Elastomeric Buffers

8.3.13.1 Application for Certification

8.3.13.1.1 The application required in 8.3.1.2 shall include information on the expected maximum impact speed and maximum and minimum total loads.

8.3.13.1.2 The drawings required in 8.3.1.2.2(b) shall show

- (a) the exact construction of the buffer

- (b) all dimensions of each part
- (c) all pertinent information concerning materials, clearances, and tolerances
- (d) the data as marked on the buffer marking plate required by 2.22.5.5

8.3.13.2 Test Sample. Tests shall be made on a buffer of each type or design to be installed. Each buffer shall conform to the documents submitted. The buffer test shall be on a production model or a buffer identical to the model to be produced. Modifications or special adjustments for the purpose of meeting the test requirements are prohibited.

8.3.13.3 Testing Equipment. The testing equipment shall be designed to perform the tests specified herein and to determine that the buffer conforms to all the requirements of Section 2.22 for elastomeric buffers and also to 8.3.13.3.1 through 8.3.13.3.3.

8.3.13.3.1 Calibration of Test Weight. The required drop-test load shall be accurate to within $\pm 1\%$. See 8.3.1.5.

8.3.13.3.2 Guiding of Test Weight. The test weight shall be guided to ensure that when dropped onto the buffer, its travel shall be substantially vertical. See also 8.3.13.5.2.

8.3.13.3.3 Test Instruments. The instruments used to measure the test results shall conform to the following requirements:

- (a) The instruments shall be the recording type and shall be capable of detecting signals at intervals of 0.01 s.
- (b) The measuring chain, including the recording device for recording measured values as a function of time, shall be designed with a system frequency of at least 1000 Hz.
- (c) The instruments shall provide data for plotting the buffer performance curves showing time intervals, travel of test weight, velocity of test weight, and retardation of test weight during the buffer stroke, and the data shall be accurate to within the following tolerances:
 - (1) Time increments and total time shall be recorded with an error of less than $\pm 0.5\%$.
 - (2) The position of the test weight at each time interval shall be recorded with an error of less than $\pm 0.1\%$.
 - (3) Time, travel, velocity, and retardation shall be determined by means of a device that provides the accuracy specified.

8.3.13.4 Installation of the Buffer and Preparation for Tests

8.3.13.4.1 Foundation and Location of the Buffer. An elastomeric buffer shall be placed on a foundation designed to withstand without appreciable deformation the forces resulting from the buffer compression on the drop tests. The buffer shall be installed in a vertical

position and located centrally in relation to the drop-test weight.

8.3.13.4.2 Securing of the Buffer. The buffer shall be installed on the foundation in the same manner as in normal service, or by equivalent means, in accordance with the manufacturer's drawings.

8.3.13.5 Test Procedure

8.3.13.5.1 The buffer shall be tested as follows: Test weights shall be dropped and allowed to fall freely from a height that ensures the test weights will have reached the required maximum speed by the moment of impact. The falling distance, speed, acceleration, and retardation of each test weight shall be recorded from the moment of release to the moment of complete standstill.

8.3.13.5.2 The test weights shall correspond to the maximum and minimum loads called for. They shall be guided vertically with the minimum friction possible, so that at the moment of impact at least 0.9g is reached.

8.3.13.5.3 The ambient temperature shall be between 15°C (59°F) and 25°C (77°F).

8.3.13.5.4 Number of Tests. Three tests shall be made with the maximum load called for, and three tests with the minimum load called for.

The time delay between two consecutive tests shall be not less than 5 min and not more than 30 min. In each of the three tests with maximum load, the value of reference of the buffer force at a stroke equal to 50% of the real height of the buffer given by the applicant shall not vary by more than 5%. For the tests with minimum load, the same procedure shall be followed.

8.3.13.6 Test Results

8.3.13.6.1 Retardation. The retardation shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) The average retardation in case of free fall with rated load in the car from a speed equal to 115% of the rated speed shall not exceed 1g. The average retardation shall be evaluated, taking into account the time between the first two absolute minima of the retardation.

(b) Peaks of retardation with more than 2.5g shall not be longer than 0.04 s.

8.3.13.6.2 Condition of the Buffer After Tests. After the tests with the maximum mass, no part of the buffer shall show any permanent deformation or be so damaged as to prevent the required operation of the buffer.

8.3.13.7 Certification

8.3.13.7.1 After the buffer has been subjected to all of the specified tests, and all test records and data indicate that it conforms to [Section 2.22](#) and [8.3.13](#), the laboratory shall issue a test report and a certificate to the manufacturer.

8.3.13.7.2 The certificate shall conform to [8.3.13.1](#) and shall include the following:

- (a) the maximum impact speed
- (b) the maximum total load
- (c) the minimum total load
- (d) a statement to the effect that the buffer tested has met the requirements of [Section 2.22](#) and [8.3.13](#) for the maximum and minimum loads as stated in the certificate
- (e) a list of any environmental and life-cycle conditions (where applicable) for use of buffers with nonlinear characteristics (see [2.22.1.1.5](#))

8.3.13.7.3 Procedure When Buffers Fail the Tests.

When buffers fail to perform satisfactorily in tests using the minimum and maximum loads indicated on the application, the laboratory may, in agreement with the applicant, establish the acceptable limits.

8.3.14 Engineering Tests of Car Door Restrictors

8.3.14.1 General. This section specifies the engineering test of car door restrictors.

8.3.14.2 Examination Before Test. Prior to testing, each device subject to engineering tests shall be examined to ascertain that it conforms to the applicable requirements in [Part 2](#).

8.3.14.3 Required Tests and Testing Procedures

8.3.14.3.1 Endurance Test. The device, lubricated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, shall complete 960 000 cycles of operation without failure of any kind, without excessive wearing or loosening of parts. This test shall not be required for car door restrictors that do not have moving parts.

8.3.14.3.2 Test Without Lubricant. After completion of the test specified by [8.3.14.3.1](#), the device used therein shall be used for this test.

The device, except self-lubricating bearings and bearings of a type not requiring frequent replenishment of lubricant, shall then be taken apart and freed of lubricant by washing in nonflammable liquids having cleansing characteristics.

After reassembly, the device shall, without other than the usual initial adjustment (i.e., without adjustment especially made to meet the conditions of the particular test) and without further attention, complete 25 000 cycles of operation without failure of any kind, without excessive wearing or loosening of parts. This test shall not be required for car door restrictors that do not have moving parts.

8.3.14.3.3 Test in Moist Atmosphere. After completion of the test specified by [8.3.14.3.2](#), the device used therein shall be used for this test.

The device shall be subjected continuously, in an unventilated enclosure, to an atmosphere saturated with a range of 3.5% to 5% solution of sodium chloride for 72

consecutive hours. During this period, it shall be operated for only 10 consecutive cycles at the end of each of the first two 24 h periods and shall be allowed to stand exposed to the air for 24 h, and shall not fail in a manner that creates an unsafe condition.

The device shall again be lubricated and shall, without adjustment and without further attention, complete 15 000 cycles of operation without failure of any kind. This test shall not be required for car door restrictors that do not have moving parts.

8.3.14.3.4 Static Test. After completion of the endurance test in 8.3.14.3.1, an engineering test shall be made consisting of a static force of 1 000 N (225 lbf) applied over a period of 300 s with the force increasing incrementally. The force shall be applied in the opening direction of the door and at a location as near to the restricting element as possible, but not to exceed 300 mm (12 in.).

8.3.15 Skirt Deflection Test

Skirt deflection tests required in 6.1.3.3.6(d) and 6.2.3.3.6(d) shall be performed as indicated in 8.3.15.1 through 8.3.15.5.

8.3.15.1 The test shall be made at either the manufacturer's facility or at a testing laboratory.

8.3.15.2 Skirt panels shall be mounted in an escalator or moving walk or in an arrangement that replicates the installed conditions of the skirt panel and supports. The maximum unsupported panel span used shall be determined and used in the test.

8.3.15.3 A suitable force-displacement measuring device(s) shall be used to apply a distributed load over a round or square area not less than 1 940 mm² (3 in.²) and not more than 3 870 mm² (6 in.²) at a height identified by the manufacturer in the on-site documentation. The test load shall be placed in the location(s) that causes maximum skirt deflection. The test apparatus shall be arranged such that only the deflection of the skirt panel design being tested is measured. Testing shall not be done with any skirt deflector devices installed on the skirt panel being tested.

8.3.15.4 Load force shall be incrementally applied until either the panel deflects 1.6 mm (0.063 in.) or the load force achieves 667 N (150 lb). Reaching maximum deflection before achieving the test load force constitutes a failure.

8.3.15.5 The documentation shall include the information required in 6.1.3.3.6(d) and the maximum permitted unsupported span.

(22) 8.3.16 Engineering Test for Cybersecurity

An internet-connected or connectivity-enabled device interfaced (directly or indirectly) to an elevator controller or an elevator controller connected to the internet shall be

tested to ensure conformance with the security level rating specified in 8.14.1(a)(1) and 8.14.1(a)(2) in accordance with the applicable requirements in IEC 62443-3-3 and IEC 62443-4-2.

SECTION 8.4 ELEVATOR SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

(22)

(a) Section 8.4 applies to all electric elevators with counterweights, and direct-acting or roped-hydraulic elevators where applicable, where such elevators are installed in buildings assigned to one of the following:

(1) Seismic Design Category C with component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.5 as defined by IBC (see Section 1.3, building code).

(2) Seismic Design Category D or greater as defined by IBC (see Section 1.3, building code).

(3) The product of the acceleration-based site coefficient and the spectral response acceleration for a 0.2 s time period [$F_a S_a(0.2)$] greater than 0.12 for any building designated as a post-disaster building, or $I_E F_a S_a(0.2)$ equal to or greater than 0.35 as defined by NBCC-2010 (see Section 1.3, building code).

(4) Where $I_E F_a S_a(0.2)$ is equal to or greater than 0.35 as defined by NBCC-2015 (see Section 1.3, building code). If the building is seismically isolated or has supplemental energy dissipation systems, consult the engineer of record.

(5) Seismic Performance Category C with Seismic Hazard Exposure Group II or higher as defined by earlier model building codes (see Note).

(6) Seismic risk zone 2 or greater as defined by earlier building codes (see Note).

NOTE [8.4(a)(5) and 8.4(a)(6)]: For example, SBC 1982 or SBC 1994.

(b) The appropriate component seismic force level is determined by the applicable building code (see Guide for Elevator Seismic Design Part 1 and Part 2, Sample Calculations 1a–g).

(1) Where the applicable building code references seismic design categories or design spectral response acceleration [$S_a(0.2)$], force levels as referenced by 8.4.14 shall be used (see Section 1.3, building code).

(2) Where the applicable building code makes reference to ground motion parameters (such as A_v or Z_v), 8.4.13 shall be used.

(3) Where the applicable building code makes reference to seismic risk zones, or seismic risk zones and component force level equations, force levels for the appropriate zone, as listed throughout Section 8.4, or the calculated component force level shall be used, whichever is greater.

(c) The elevator seismic requirements contained in Section 8.4 shall be in addition to the requirements in the other parts of the Code unless otherwise specified.

(d) Section 8.4 shall not apply to the elevators required to conform to Sections 5.2 through 5.4.

8.4.1 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

- (22) **8.4.1.1 Between Car and Counterweight and Counterweight Guard.** The following clearances shall supersede those specified in 2.5.1.2.

8.4.1.1.1 The clearance between the car and the counterweight assembly shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.), except that where the counterweight is enclosed by double U-brackets or where single U-brackets are provided and are located within the space between the car and its counterweight, the clearance shall be not less than 100 mm (4 in.).

8.4.1.1.2 The clearance between the counterweight assembly and the hoistway enclosure or separator beams shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.).

- (22) **8.4.1.1.3** The running clearance between the counterweight assembly and the nearest obstruction, including counterweight guards, shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.).

8.4.2 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations

8.4.2.1 Securing Beams and Supports. Overhead beams and supports, including hitch-plate blocking beams, shall be anchored to prevent overturning and displacement as a result of seismic forces acting simultaneously, as specified in 8.4.13 or 8.4.14, or equal to

(a) W_p horizontally and $0.5W_p$ vertically (zone 3 or greater)

(b) $0.5W_p$ horizontally and $0.25W_p$ vertically (zone 2) where

W_p = component operating weight as defined by 8.4.15

8.4.2.2 Fastenings to Building Structure. Fastening devices including bolts used to secure machines, control panels, motor-generator units, machine beams, support beams, and sheaves, including compensating sheave assemblies, to the building structure shall conform to 8.4.2.3. Requirement 2.9.3.1.2 shall not apply (see Guide for Elevator Seismic Design, Part 2, Sample Calculation 2).

8.4.2.3 Connections

8.4.2.3.1 Connections (for guide-rail brackets, see 8.4.8.4) used to attach equipment to the supporting structure, that are not subject to impact loads, shall be designed to withstand seismic component force levels acting simultaneously, as defined in 8.4.13 or 8.4.14, or equal to either of the following:

(a) W_p horizontally and $0.5W_p$ vertically (zone 3 or greater)

(b) $0.5W_p$ horizontally and $0.25W_p$ vertically (zone 2)

8.4.2.3.2 Connections subject to impact loads shall be designed to withstand forces double those required for connections not subject to impact loads.

8.4.2.3.3 Maximum combined stresses in connections due to the specified seismic forces shall conform to the following applicable standards (see also Part 9):

(a) ANSI/AISC 360-05 or CAN/CSA-S16.1-09 for threaded fasteners

(b) Section 8.8 for welded connections

(c) ACI 318-08 or CSA A23.3-04 for fastening to concrete

(d) ANSI/AF&PA National Design Specification for Wood Construction (2005) or CSA 086-01 Wood Design Manual

NOTE: "Connections" includes all the mechanical and/or structural components used to transmit shear forces, bending moments, and axial forces developed in the structure at the connection point.

8.4.2.3.4 For areas not using seismic zones, the nonstructural component anchorage, as defined by IBC, shall be in conformance with the requirements of the governing building code.

8.4.3 Guarding of Equipment

8.4.3.1 Retainers for Suspension Members

8.4.3.1.1 Retainers for suspension members shall be provided on deflecting and secondary sheaves, driving-machine sheaves and drums, compensating sheaves, governor sheaves, governor tension sheaves, and suspension sheaves on cars and counterweights to inhibit the displacement of suspension members, except as specified in 8.4.3.1.4.

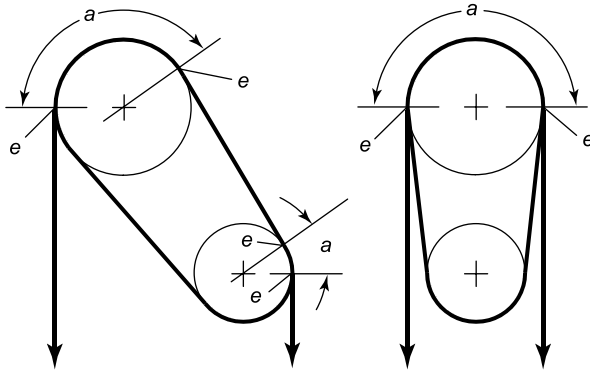
8.4.3.1.2 The retainer shall be continuous over not less than two-thirds of the arc of contact between the suspension members and its sheave or drum and shall be located so that not more than one-sixth of the arc of contact is exposed at each end of the retainer.

8.4.3.1.3 For double-wrap traction applications, the arc of contact for drums and secondary sheaves shall be that length of arc that is uninterrupted by the entry/exit of the suspension members leading to/from the car or counterweight (see Figure 8.4.3.1.3).

8.4.3.1.4 Restraints for suspension members shall be permitted to be used in lieu of continuous guards, provided they conform to the following:

(a) where the arc of contact is 30 deg or less and one suspension member restraint, located at the midpoint of the arc of contact, is provided.

Figure 8.4.3.1.3
Arc of Contact



Legend:

- a = uninterrupted arc length
- e = main entry/exit points

(b) where the arc of contact exceeds 30 deg and restraints are provided at intervals not exceeding 30 deg of arc along the arc of contact and a restraint is located at each end of the arc of contact.

8.4.3.1.5 Where earthquake mode slow-speed automatic operation is provided [see 8.4.10.1.3(d)], a means of detecting either displacement of suspension members from their normal operating position or the suspension members' retainer shall be provided at the machine. The detection means shall be the manually reset type and shall conform to 2.26.4.3. Subsequent to the first stop of the car following the actuation of the detection means, the car shall remain inoperative until the detection means is manually reset.

8.4.3.2 Guarding of Snag Points. Snag points created by rail brackets, rail clip bolts, fishplates, vanes, and similar devices shall be provided with guards to prevent snagging of the following:

- (a) the counterweight end of the compensating means where located 760 mm (30 in.) or less from a counterweight rail bracket
- (b) compensating chains where any portion of their loop below the midpoint of the elevator travel is located 915 mm (36 in.) or less horizontally from a snag point
- (c) governor ropes where located 500 mm (20 in.) or less from a snag point
- (d) suspension members where located 300 mm (12 in.) or less from a snag point
- (e) traveling cables where any portion of their loop below the midpoint of the elevator travel is located 915 mm (36 in.) or less horizontally from a snag point

8.4.4 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

8.4.4.1 Top Emergency Exits. The requirements specified in 2.14.1.5 shall apply except that the emergency exit shall be arranged so that it can be opened from within the car by means of a keyed spring-return cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination and opened from the top of the car without the use of a key.

The key required to open the emergency exit lock shall be kept on the premises in a location readily accessible to authorized persons, but not where it is available to the public. No other key to the building shall unlock the emergency exit lock except that where hoistway access switches conforming to 2.12.7 are provided, the key used to operate the access switches shall be permitted to also unlock the top emergency exit. This key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1).

8.4.5 Guiding Members and Position Restraints (22)

8.4.5.1 Location. Upper and lower position restraints shall be provided on both the car frame and counterweight frame. The distance between the upper and lower position restraints shall be not less than the height of the car frame or counterweight frame. Separate position restraints are not required where such restraints are an integral part of the guiding member.

8.4.5.2 Design

8.4.5.2.1 The design weight for

- (a) the counterweight shall be W_p as specified in 8.4.15(a)
- (b) the car shall be W_p as specified in 8.4.15(b)

8.4.5.2.2 Position restraints and their attachments to car frames or counterweight frames shall withstand one of the following horizontal seismic forces:

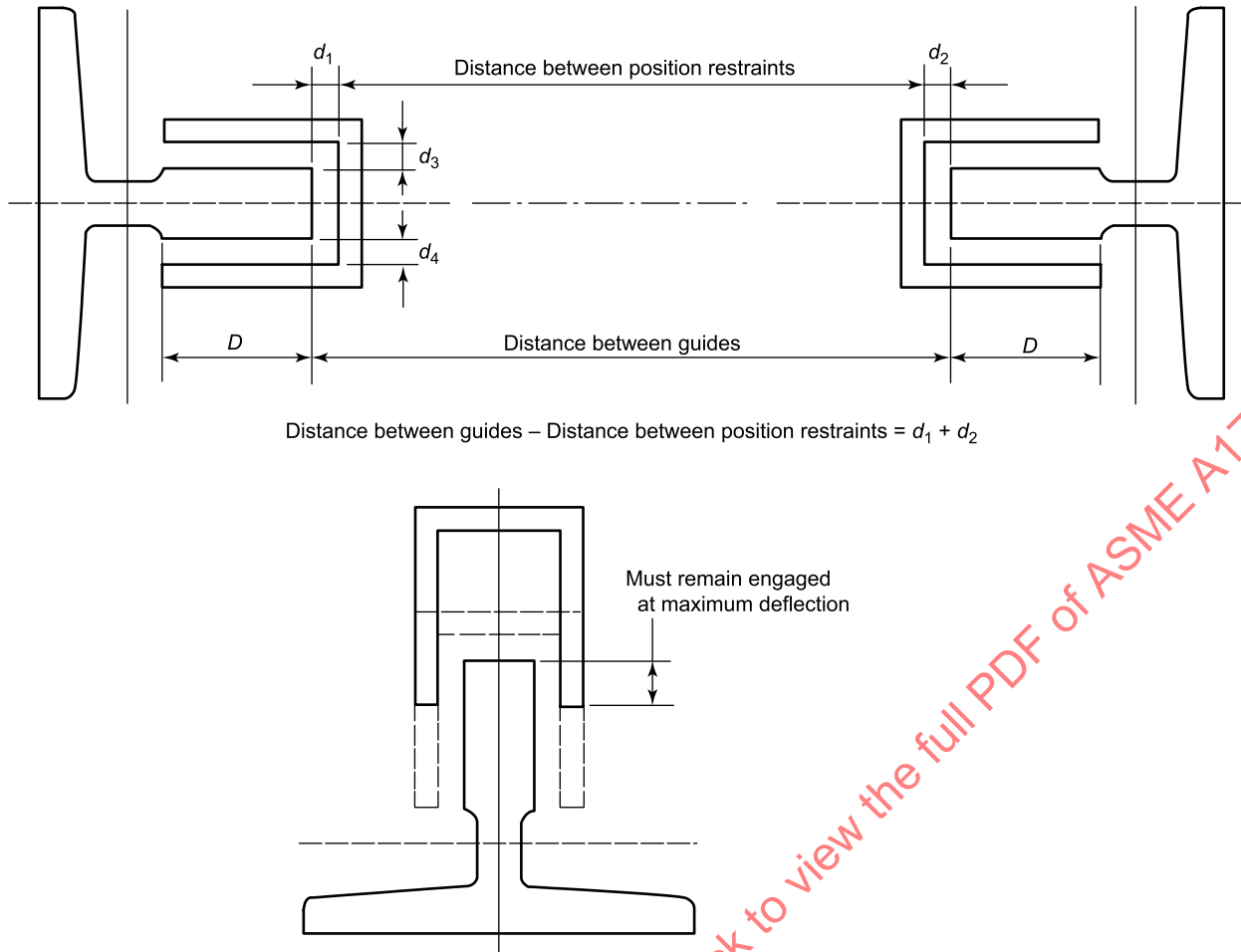
- (a) $0.5W_p$ (for zone 3 or greater)
- (b) $0.25W_p$ (for zone 2)
- (c) F_p as defined in 8.4.14
- (d) component force levels as defined in 8.4.13

8.4.5.2.3 When the car is centrally located between its guide rails and the platform is level or the counterweight is centrally located between its guide rails, the clearance between each running face of the guide rail and the position restraint shall not exceed 5 mm (0.2 in.). An additional 1 mm (0.04 in.) shall be allowed to account for variabilities in manufacturing and installation provided that the requirements in (a) through (c) are met.

The position restraints shall prevent the car and the counterweight from disengaging from the rails and comply with the following (see Figure 8.4.5.2.3 for the relationships of various dimensions):

Figure 8.4.5.2.3
Position Retainer Dimension Relationships

(22)



Legend:

d_1, d_2, d_3, d_4 = clearances between the position restraint and the guide rail

D = depth of engagement with rail not less than the dimension of the running face of the rail

(a) The sum of the clearances between the position restraints and the running face of the rail, d_3 and d_4 , shall not exceed 10 mm (0.39 in.).

(b) The sum of the clearances between the position restraints and the guide rails, d_1 and d_2 , shall not exceed 10 mm (0.39 in.).

(c) The depth of engagement with the rail shall be not less than the dimension of the side running face of the rail, D .

8.4.6 Compensating-Rope Sheave Assembly

Where compensating ropes are used with a tension sheave assembly, means shall be provided to prevent the tension sheave assembly from being dislocated from its normal operating position when it is subjected

to seismic forces acting simultaneously as specified in 8.4.13 or 8.4.14, or equal to either of the following:

(a) W_p horizontally and $0.5W_p$ vertically (zone 3 or greater)

(b) $0.5W_p$ horizontally and $0.25W_p$ vertically (zone 2)

Compensating-rope sheaves shall be provided with a compensating-rope sheave switch or switches conforming to 2.26.2.3.

8.4.7 Counterweights

8.4.7.1 Design

8.4.7.1.1 The counterweight frame and its weight (22) sections shall be designed and arranged to limit the guide-rail force at the lower position restraint to not

more than two-thirds of the total seismic force due to the weight or effective weight of the counterweight assembly when it is subjected to a horizontal seismic force equal to one of the following:

- (a) $0.5W_p$ (for zone 3 or greater)
- (b) $0.25W_p$ (for zone 2)
- (c) F_p as specified in 8.4.14
- (d) component force levels as specified in 8.4.13

8.4.7.1.2 For counterweight assemblies with weight sections that occupy two-thirds or more of the frame height, 8.4.8.9 applies and Figures 8.4.8.2.1-1 through 8.4.8.2.1-7 shall be permitted to be used in sizing the guide-rail system.

8.4.7.1.3 The clearance between the counterweight frame and the face of the counterweight guide rail measured at a point one-half the vertical distance between the upper and lower guiding members shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.).

(22) 8.4.7.2 Reserved for Future Use

8.4.8 Car and Counterweight Guide-Rail Systems

8.4.8.1 General. The car and counterweight guide-rail systems shall meet the requirements of 8.4.8 or the applicable requirements of Section 2.23 (excluding 2.23.4.3 and Table 2.23.4.3.3), whichever are more stringent.

8.4.8.1.1 Elevator Guide-Rail Load Distribution. The load distribution to the guide rails due to the inertial effects of the car and counterweight on their respective guide rails shall be determined as follows:

(a) *Conventional Standard Designs.* The seismic forces shall be assumed to be distributed one-third to the top guiding members and two-thirds to the bottom guiding members of cars and counterweights.

(b) *Nonstandard Designs.* Where the design of the car or counterweight employs either special construction or location and quantity of guiding members, the formulas and methods of calculation of the load distribution, and the resulting stresses and deflections, do not generally apply and shall be modified to suit the specific conditions and requirements in each case.

8.4.8.2 Seismic Load Application

8.4.8.2.1

(a) For jurisdictions enforcing seismic zones or an equivalent ground motion parameter (see 8.4.13), W_p shall not exceed the maximums specified in Figures 8.4.8.2.1-1 through 8.4.8.2.1-7 for the size of rail and the bracket spacing used.

(b) For jurisdictions enforcing IBC/NBCC, the permissible horizontal seismic force, F_p , based on W_p , per pair of guide rails shall not exceed the maximums specified in Figures 8.4.8.2.1-1 through 8.4.8.2.1-7 for the size of rail and the bracket spacing used (see 8.4.12.1 and

Guide for Elevator Seismic Design Part 2, Sample Calculation 3).

8.4.8.2.2 Where the ratio of the distance between the upper and lower car or counterweight position restraints to the distance between adjacent brackets is 0.65 or less, an adjusted weight shall be used to determine the required rail size for the bracket spacing used. The adjusted weight shall be determined by multiplying the actual weight by a load factor Q obtained from Figure 8.4.8.2.2 as follows:

$$W_a = QW$$

where

Q = load factor (see Figure 8.4.8.2.2)

W = actual weight of the counterweight or of the car plus 40% of its rated capacity, N (lb)

W_a = adjusted weight, N (lb)

8.4.8.2.3 Where the guide rail is reinforced or a rail of larger size is used, the bracket spacing shall be permitted to exceed the values specified in Figures 8.4.8.2.1-1 through 8.4.8.2.1-7 for a given car weight plus 40% of its rated capacity, or counterweight, provided the variation conforms to 8.4.12.

EXAMPLES:

(1) *SI Units.* 5543 kg counterweight, or car weight plus 40% rated capacity, at a bracket spacing of 4.88 m requires for zone 3 or greater one of the following, as applicable:

- (a) a 27.5 kg/m rail without reinforcement
- (b) a 22.5 kg/m rail with reinforcement having a combined moment of inertia of $3.33 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^4$ and a combined section modulus of $5.26 \times 10^4 \text{ mm}^3$ about an axis parallel to the base (axis $x-x$)

(2) *Imperial Units.* 12,000 lb counterweight, or car weight plus 40% rated capacity, at a bracket spacing of 16 ft requires for zone 3 or greater one of the following, as applicable:

- (a) an 18.5 lb rail without reinforcement
- (b) a 15 lb rail with reinforcement having a combined moment of inertia of 8 in.^4 and a combined section modulus of 3.21 in.^3 about an axis parallel to the base (axis $x-x$)

8.4.8.2.4 For counterweight systems, intermediate tie brackets conforming to 8.4.8.7 and approximately equally spaced between main brackets shall be provided between guide rails as required by Figures 8.4.8.2.1-1 through 8.4.8.2.1-7. Intermediate tie brackets are not required to be fastened to the building structure.

8.4.8.2.5 The total weight of the counterweight assembly shall not exceed the maximum specified in Table 2.23.4.3.1 for a given rail size.

8.4.8.2.6 Rail Forces

(a) The horizontal seismic forces used to determine guide-rail stresses and deflections are as follows:

(22)

Figure 8.4.8.2.1-1
12 kg/m (8 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing

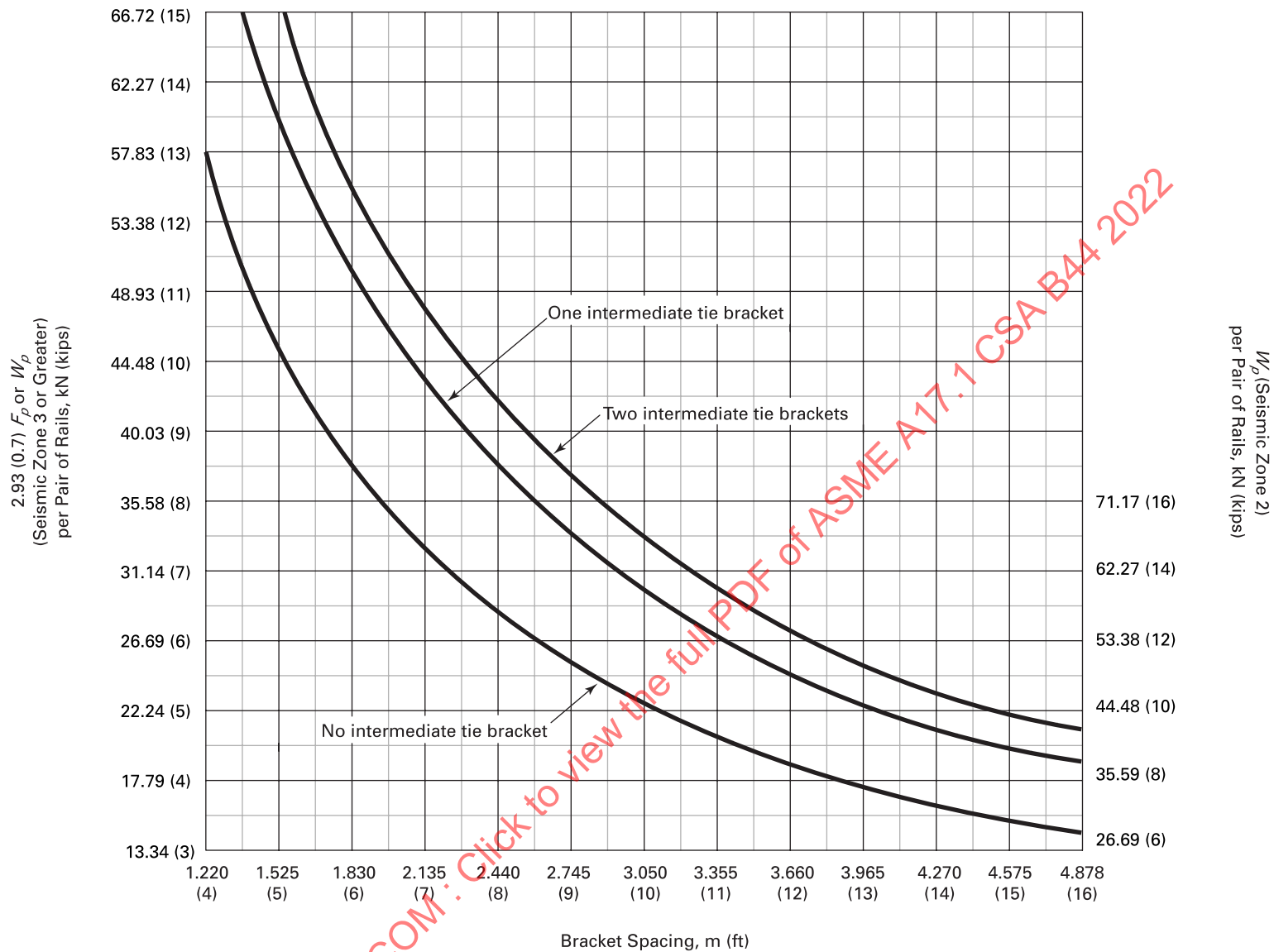


Figure 8.4.8.2.1-2
16.5 kg/m (11 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing

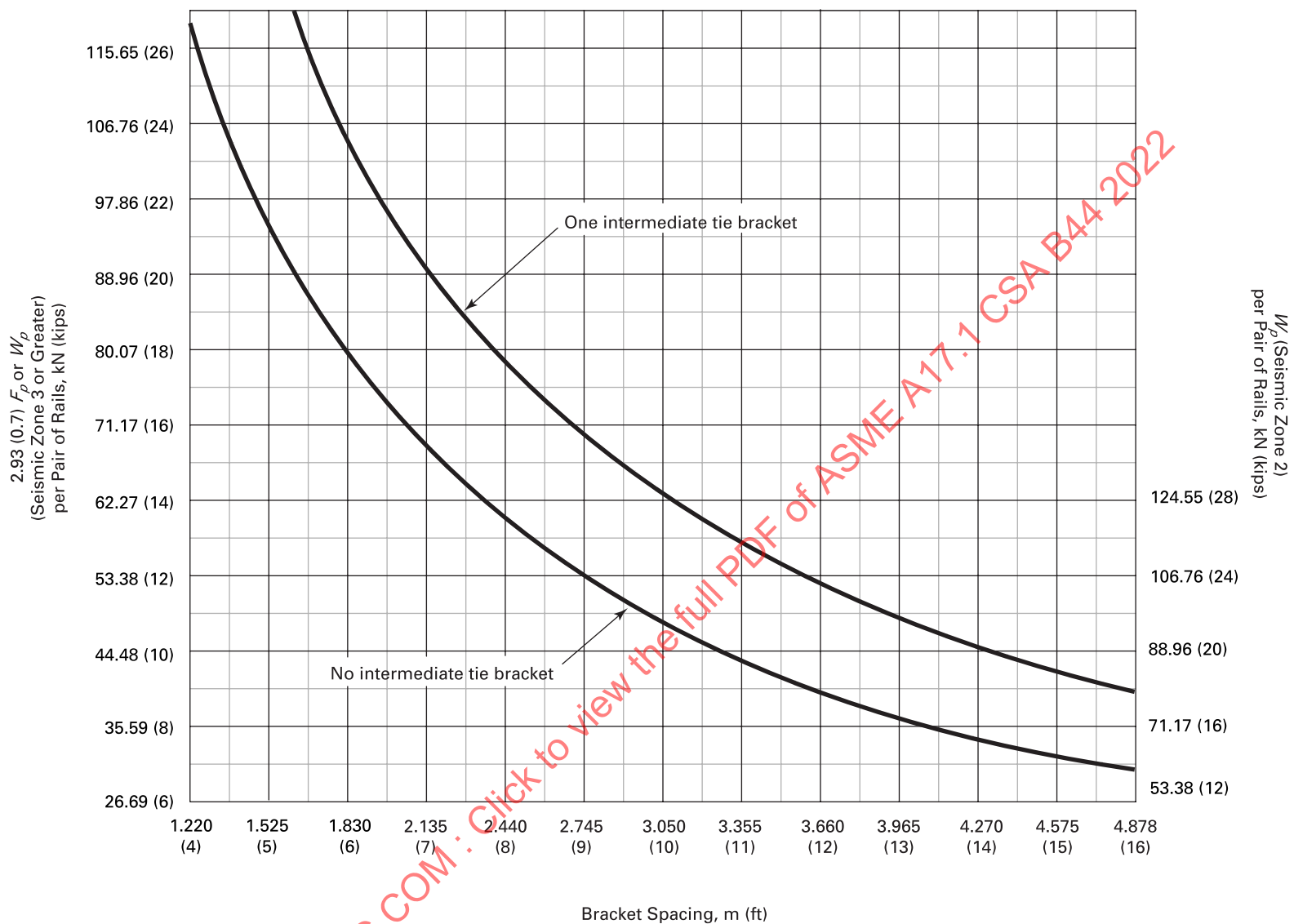


Figure 8.4.8.2.1-3
18 kg/m (12 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing

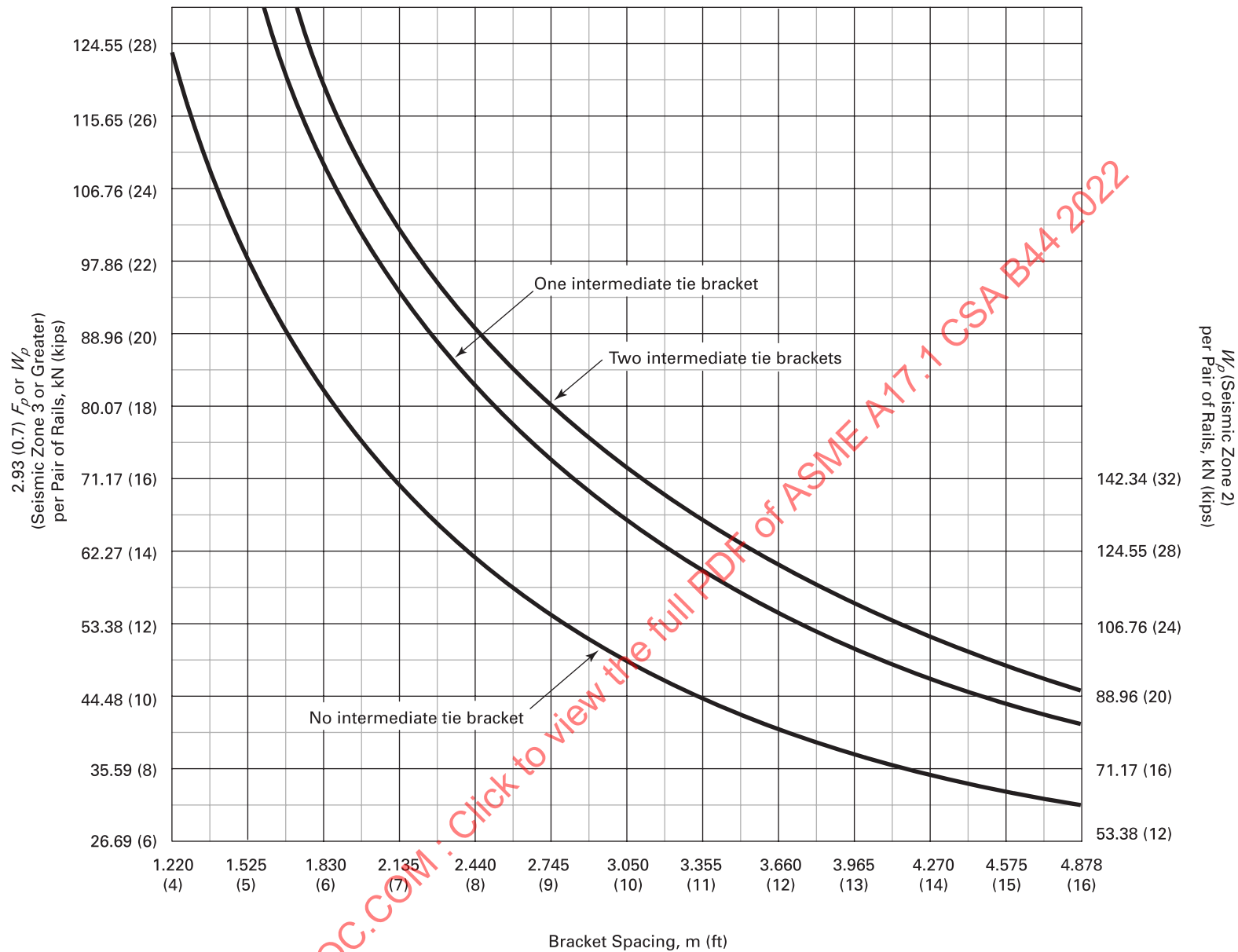


Figure 8.4.8.2.1-4
22.5 kg/m (15 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing

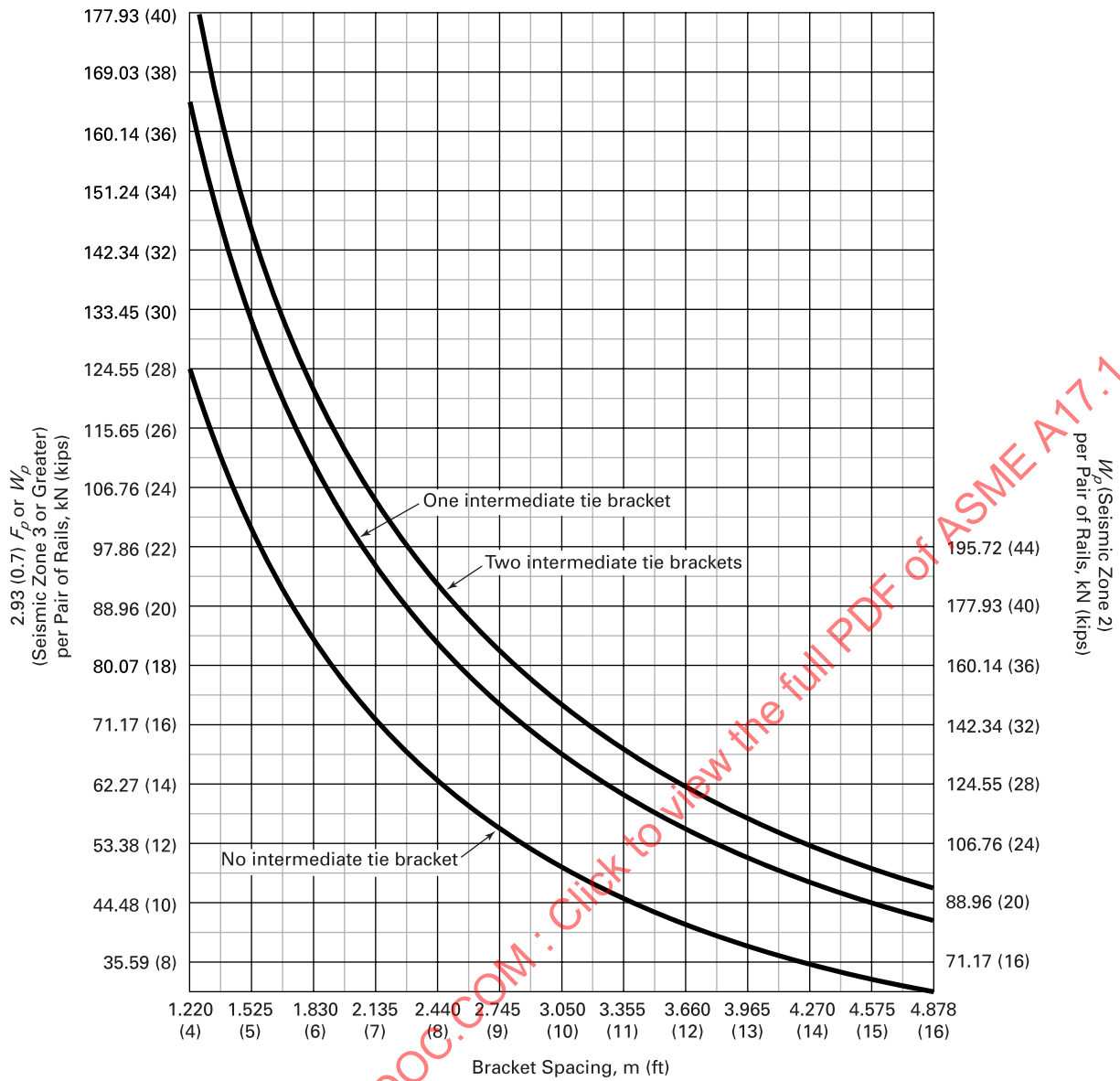


Figure 8.4.8.2.1-5
27.5 kg/m (18.5 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing

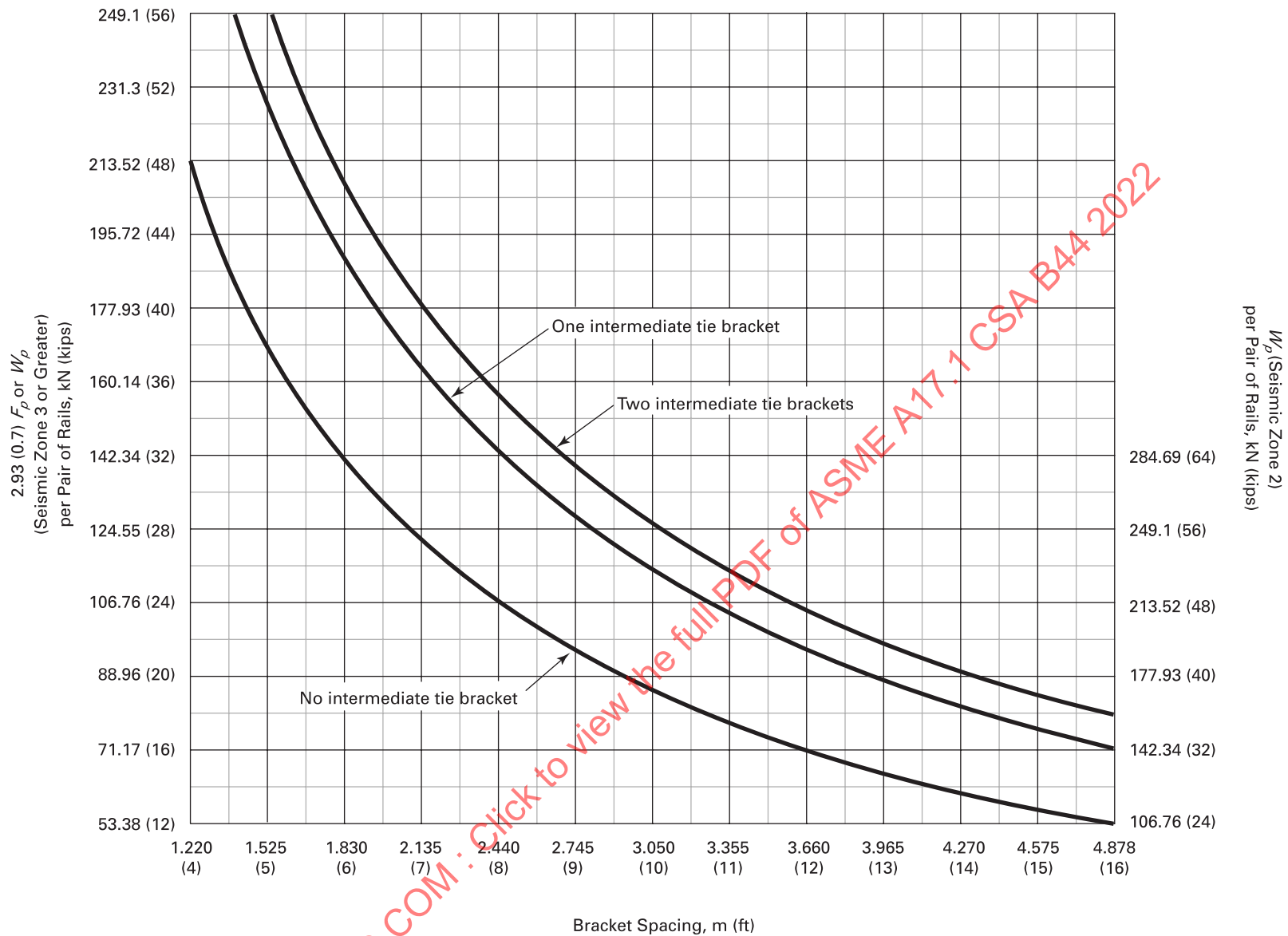


Figure 8.4.8.2.1-6
33.5 kg/m (22.5 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing

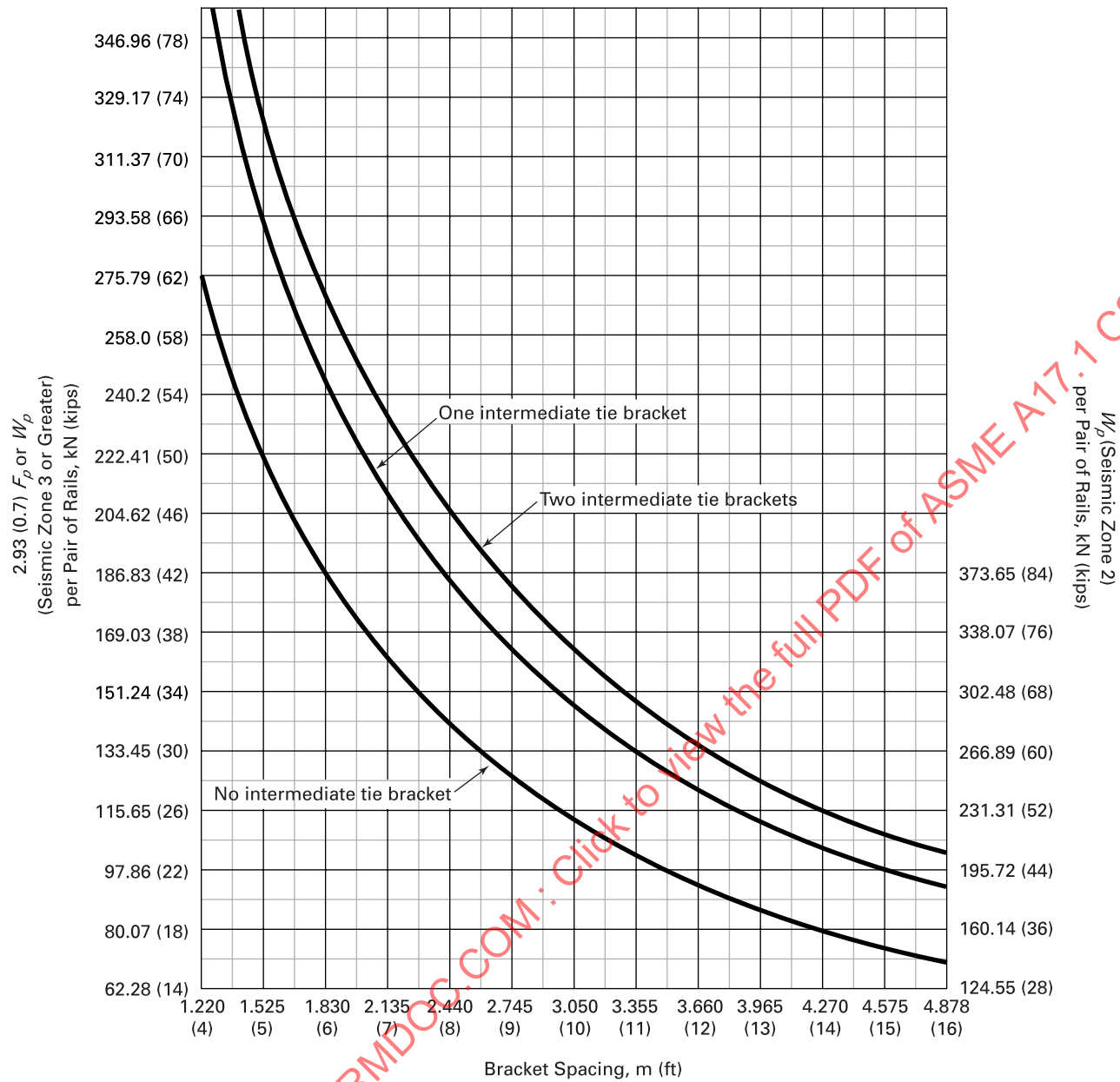


Figure 8.4.8.2.1-7
44.5 kg/m (30 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing

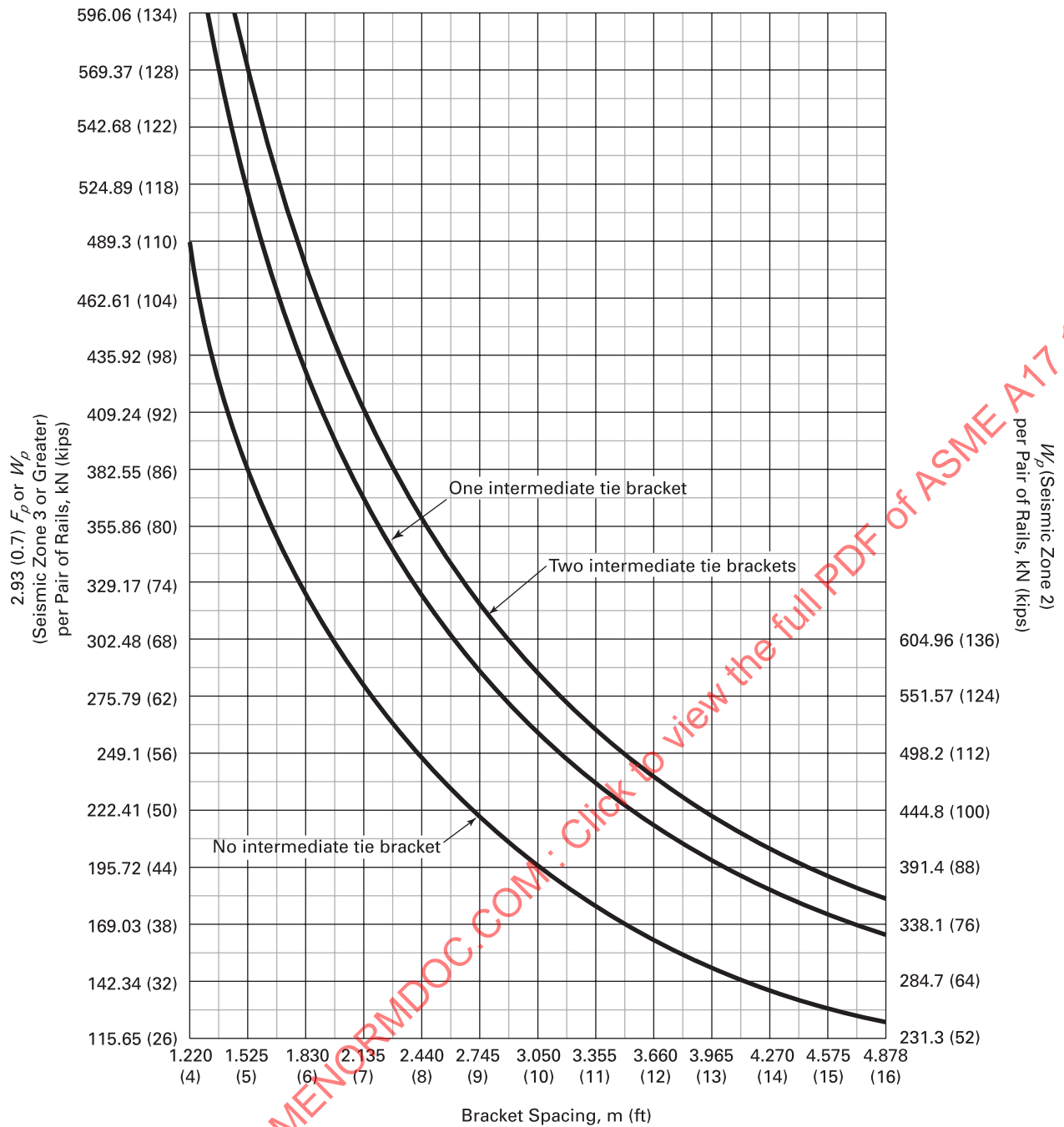
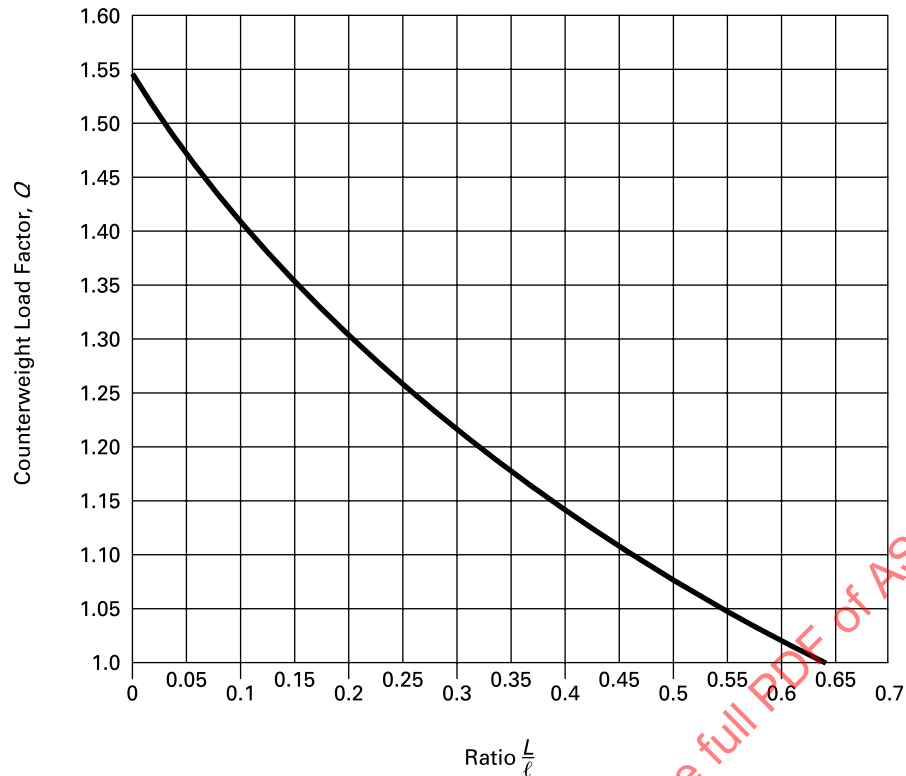


Figure 8.4.8.2.2
Car and Counterweight Load Factor



Legend:

L = distance between upper and lower counterweight position restraints, mm (in.)

ℓ = distance between guide brackets, mm (in.)

W = actual weight of counterweight, kg (lb)

W_a = adjusted weight of counterweight, kg (lb)

GENERAL NOTE: For ratios of $L/\ell < 0.65$, the adjusted counterweight $W_a = QW$ is to be used in determining bracket spacing and the number of intermediate tie brackets required.

EXAMPLE (Per 15 lb Guide Rail):

(SI Units)

For ratio $L/\ell = 0.15$, and actual weight of counterweight = 3 630 kg

$Q = 1.35$

$W_a = 1.35(3,630) = 4\,900$ kg

From Figure 8.4.8.2.1-4 zone 3 or greater

Required bracket spacing = 3 200 mm (no tie bracket)
or = up to 4 215 mm (one tie bracket)
or = up to 4 675 mm (two tie brackets)

(Imperial Units)

For ratio $L/\ell = 0.15$, and actual weight of counterweight = 8,000 lb

$Q = 1.35$

$W_a = 1.35(8,000) = 10,800$ lb

From Figure 8.4.8.2.1-4 zone 3 or greater

Required bracket spacing = 10 ft 6 in. (no tie bracket)
or = up to 13 ft 10 in. (one tie bracket)
or = up to 15 ft 4 in. (two tie brackets)

- (1) For jurisdictions enforcing seismic zones, either
 - (-a) $0.5W_p$ (zone 3 or greater) or
 - (-b) $0.25W_p$ (zone 2)
- (2) For jurisdictions enforcing IBC/NBCC
 - (-a) F_p when calculating deflection
 - (-b) $0.7F_p$ when calculating stress

(b) For installations where the guide rails bear the vertical loads imposed by machines, sheaves, or hitches, the following vertical loads will be considered to be acting simultaneously in addition to those above:

- (1) For jurisdictions enforcing seismic zones, either
 - (-a) $0.25W_p$ (zone 3 or greater) or
 - (-b) $0.125W_p$ (zone 2)
- (2) For jurisdictions enforcing IBC/NBCC
 - (-a) F_v when calculating deflection
 - (-b) $0.7F_v$ when calculating stress

where W_p is defined in 8.4.15(b), and F_p and F_v are defined in 8.4.14.

NOTE: The forces above are the result of both any equipment attached to the rail and the tensions developed in the suspension ropes by the car and counterweight.

8.4.8.3 Guide-Rail Stress

8.4.8.3.1 For jurisdictions enforcing seismic zones, stresses in a guide rail, or in a rail and its reinforcement, due to seismic loads specified in 8.4.8.2.6, shall not exceed 88% of the minimum yield stress of the material or materials used.

8.4.8.3.2 For jurisdictions enforcing IBC/NBCC, stresses in the guide rail, or in a rail and its reinforcement, due to seismic loads specified in 8.4.8.2.6, shall not exceed 60% of the minimum yield stress of the material or materials used.

8.4.8.4 Brackets, Fastenings, and Supports

8.4.8.4.1 Guide-rail brackets and their fastenings and supports, such as building beams and walls, shall be capable of withstanding the forces imposed by the seismic loads specified in 8.4.8.2.6, with a total deflection at the point of support not to exceed 6 mm (0.25 in.).

8.4.8.4.2 In jurisdictions enforcing IBC/NBCC, the nonstructural component anchorage shall be in conformance with the requirements of the governing building code.

8.4.8.5 Type and Strength of Rail Joints. Metal guide rails shall be joined together by fishplates as specified in 8.4.8.6 and shall be designed to withstand the forces specified in 2.23.5.1 and 8.4.8.3 without exceeding the stress and deflection limitations.

8.4.8.6 Design and Construction of Rail Joints

8.4.8.6.1 The joints of metal guide rails shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) The ends of the rails shall be accurately machined with a tongue and matching groove centrally located in the web.

(b) The backs of the rail flanges shall be accurately machined, in relation to the rail guiding surfaces, to a uniform distance front to back of the rails to form a flat surface for the fishplates.

(c) The ends of each rail shall be bolted to the fishplates with not less than four bolts.

(d) The width of the fishplate shall be not less than the width of the back of the rail.

(e) The section modulus and the moment of inertia of the fishplate shall be not less than that of the rail.

(f) The diameter of the bolts for each size of guide rails shall be not less than specified in Table 2.23.7.2.1.

(g) The diameter of bolt holes shall not exceed the diameter of the bolts by more than 2 mm (0.08 in.) for guide rails nor 3 mm (0.125 in.) for fishplates.

8.4.8.6.2 Joints of different design and construction from those specified shall be permitted to be used, provided they are equivalent in strength and will adequately maintain the accuracy of the rail alignment.

8.4.8.7 Design and Strength of Brackets and Supports. Guide-rail brackets, including intermediate tie brackets, where provided, shall be designed to withstand the forces imposed by the seismic loads specified in 8.4.8.2.6. The stresses and deflections shall not exceed those specified in Table 8.4.8.7.

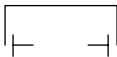
NOTE (8.4.8.7): Since the specific designs of the rail brackets, their reinforcements where provided, and the method of attachment to the building structure will vary between designs, the maximum stresses and deflections shall be analyzed to suit the specific design.

8.4.8.8 Type of Fastenings. Guide rails shall be secured to their brackets by clips, welds, or bolts. Bolts used for fastening shall be of such strength as to withstand the forces specified in 2.23.5.2 and 2.23.9.1, plus 8.4.8.4 and 8.4.8.7.

Welding, where used, shall conform to Section 8.8.

8.4.8.9 Information on Elevator Layouts. The following information regarding horizontal seismic forces imposed on the guide-rail brackets by the position restraints of the car or counterweight is required on elevator layout drawings. The forces shall be determined as specified in 8.4.8.9.1 and 8.4.8.9.2 (see Figure 8.4.8.9).

Table 8.4.8.7
Stresses and Deflections of Guide-Rail Brackets and Supports

Guide-Rail Bracket	L	Bracket Type	Vertical Location	Typical Figure	Bracket Moment of Inertia, mm ⁴ (in. ⁴)	Bracket Design Load, P, N (lb)	Allowable [Notes (1), (2)]		
							Stress, MPa (psi)	Deflection, mm (in.) [Note (3)]	
Main (car and counterweight)	≥ Rail span ℓ	Any	Building supports	...	...	$\left(\frac{W_p}{3}\right)$ [Notes (4), (5)]	Guide-rail brackets: no permanent deformation Fastenings: 8.4.2.3.3 Supports: N/A [Note (7)]	6 (0.25)	
						$_{CB}\left(\frac{2F_p}{3}\right)$ [Note (6)]			
	< Rail span ℓ					$\left(\frac{W_p}{2}\right)\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right)$ [Notes (4), (5)]			
						$_{(CB)}(F_p)\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right)$ [Notes (4), (6)]			
Intermediate tie (counterweight)	...	Double U-bracket	Mid-span		I _d	$\left(\frac{W_p}{6}\right)$ [Notes (4), (5)]		...	
			1/3 span						
		Single U-bracket	Mid-span		2I _d	$_{CB}\left(\frac{F_p}{3}\right)$ [Notes (4), (6)]			
			1/3 span						

GENERAL NOTE: The following nomenclature is used in this Table:

CB = building code reduction allowance factor

F_p = seismic component force, N (lb)

L = vertical distance between the upper and lower position restraints required by 8.4.5.1, mm (in.)

Table 8.4.8.7
Stresses and Deflections of Guide-Rail Brackets and Supports (Cont'd)

GENERAL NOTE: (Cont'd)

ℓ = distance (rail span) between adjacent main guide-rail brackets, mm (in.)

I_d = moment of inertia of single U intermediate tie bracket, mm⁴ (in.⁴), in a double-U-bracket arrangement

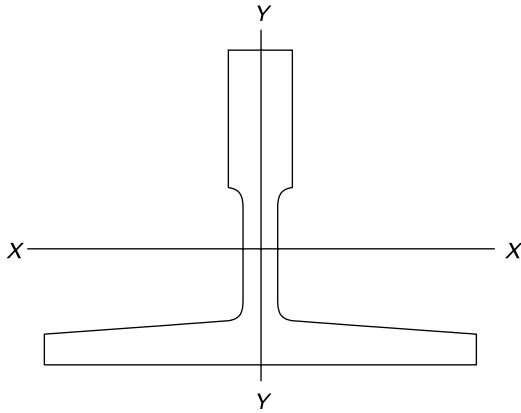
P = horizontal seismic load, N (lb)

W = maximum weight of the car with 40% rated capacity or counterweight, kg (lb)

NOTES:

- (1) The maximum combined stresses in any structural component due to all causes shall be based on sound engineering practice and shall not exceed the allowable values specified in ANSI/AISC 360, Chapter H (Design of Members for Combined Forces and Torsion), for individual components.
- (2) For jurisdictions enforcing seismic zones, allowable stresses may be increased by one-third. For jurisdictions enforcing the IBC or NBCC 2005 or later editions, no one-third increase is allowed.
- (3) This limitation includes the combined deflections of the guide-rail bracket, fastenings, and building supports.
- (4) For hydraulic elevator main bracket design load (car), add one-fourth of the weight of the plunger (zone 3 or greater).
- (5) For zone 2, multiply the design load, P , by 0.5.
- (6) $CB = 0.7$ for purposes of stress calculations and 1.0 for purposes of deflection calculations.
- (7) The design of supports beyond deflection is the responsibility of the structural engineer of record.

Figure 8.4.8.9
Guide-Rail Axes



8.4.8.9.1 Force normal to the x-x axis of the guide rail

(a) Where $L \geq \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7)

$$F_{x-x} = \frac{W_p}{3} \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$F_{x-x} = \frac{W_p}{6} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$F_{x-x} = \frac{2F_p}{3} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(b) Where $L < \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7)

$$F_{x-x} = \left(\frac{W_p}{2} \right) \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$F_{x-x} = \left(\frac{W_p}{4} \right) \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$F_{x-x} = F_p \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

8.4.8.9.2 Force normal to the y-y axis

(a) Where $L \geq \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7)

$$F_{y-y} = \frac{W_p}{6} \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$F_{y-y} = \frac{W_p}{12} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$F_{y-y} = \frac{F_p}{3} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(b) Where $L < \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7)

$$F_{y-y} = \left(\frac{W_p}{4} \right) \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$F_{y-y} = \left(\frac{W_p}{8} \right) \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$F_{y-y} = \left(\frac{F_p}{2} \right) \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

where

F_p = seismic component force as defined in 8.4.14

F_{x-x} F_{y-y} = seismic force, N (lbf)

W_p = total weight of the car plus 40% of its rated load, or the total weight of the counterweight, N (lb)

NOTE: For SI units, $N = \text{kg} \times 9.807$.

8.4.8.9.3 Where an expansion joint is located within the elevator installation, the location and maximum design displacement shall be indicated on the layout drawings.

8.4.9 Driving Machines and Sheaves

8.4.9.1 Seismic Requirements for Driving Machine and Sheaves. All integral parts of driving machines together with their supports shall be capable of withstanding the inertia effect of their masses without permanent deformation when subjected to seismic forces acting simultaneously as defined in 8.4.13 or 8.4.14, or equal to

(a) W_p horizontally and $0.5W_p$ vertically (zone 3 or greater)

(b) $0.5W_p$ horizontally and $0.25W_p$ vertically (zone 2)

8.4.10 Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices

8.4.10.1 Operation of Elevators Under Earthquake Emergency Conditions. Earthquake Emergency Operation shall be provided and shall conform to 8.4.10. Earthquake Emergency Operation is not required for

(a) risk zone 2, or $F_p \leq 0.25W_p$ with $z/h = 1$ (for IBC or ASCE/SEI 7) or $h_x/h_n = 1$ (for NBCC) [see 8.4.14.1(b)], provided the car and counterweight guide-rail systems, guiding members, and position restraints conform to the requirements and force levels for zone 3 or greater, or $F_p \geq 0.5W_p$ in 8.4.5, 8.4.7, and 8.4.8 where

W_p = component operating weight as defined by 8.4.15

(b) elevators without counterweights

(22) **8.4.10.1.1 Earthquake Equipment (See Also Figure 8.4.10.1.1 and Table 8.4.10.1.1)**

(a) All elevators with counterweights except those complying with 8.4.10.1(a) shall conform with the requirements in 8.4.10.1.1.

(b) There shall be at least one seismic detection device per elevator group. Where a group contains a mix of elevators, some with nonvolatile memory and some with only volatile memory, at least one seismic detection device shall be provided for each type of elevator. Elevators in risk zone 2, or $F_p \leq 0.25W_p$ with $z/h = 1$ (for IBC or ASCE/SEI 7) or $h_x/h_n = 1$ (for NBCC) (see 8.4.14.1), are exempt from this requirement.

(c) A counterweight displacement detection device shall be provided for each elevator.

(d) An identified momentary reset button or switch shall be provided for each elevator. Actuation of the momentary switch shall terminate earthquake mode [see 8.4.10.1.5(f)]. The switch shall be located outside the hoistway in the inspection and test panel or in the controller enclosure in a control room, a control space, the machine room, a machinery space, or a motor controller complying with 2.7.6.3.2 for the elevator. The lock shall be Group 1 Security.

(e) Where earthquake mode slow-speed automatic operation is provided [see 8.4.10.1.3(d)], the following shall be provided in the elevator car operating panel:

(1) a Group 3 Security spring-loaded key switch labeled "EARTHQUAKE HOISTWAY SCAN" with positions marked "INITIATE" and "OFF." Lettering shall be a minimum 5 mm (0.25 in.) in height.

(2) a visual indicator labeled or displaying "EARTHQUAKE SLOW SPEED."

In elevators with more than one car operating panel, only one car operating panel is required to have the switch and indication.

NOTE: For display/labeling purposes, "EQ" may be substituted for the word "EARTHQUAKE."

(f) A visual indication labeled or displaying "EARTHQUAKE MODE" shall be provided in the car operating panel.

(g) An alphanumeric variable message display panel may be provided in the elevator car operating panel, instead of the indicators required in (e) and (f), to provide the functions specified for the visual indications in 8.4.10.1.3 and 8.4.10.1.4. In elevators with more than one car operating panel, only one car operating panel is required to have the variable message display.

(h) A visual indication labeled "SEISMIC STATUS" (see Table 8.4.10.1.1) shall be provided on or adjacent to each inspection station (see 2.26.1.4.1).

(i) An audible signaling device shall be provided. It shall be actuated from a momentary switch identified as "ALARM," which shall be provided in a car operating panel. The audible signaling device shall be permitted

to be used for a group of elevators. The audible signaling device shall

(1) have a rated sound pressure rating not less than 80 dBA and not more than 90 dBA at 3 m (10 ft).

(2) respond without delay after the switch has been actuated.

(3) be labeled in accordance with 2.26.12.1.

(4) be located inside the building and audible inside the car and outside the hoistway.

(5) for elevators with a travel greater than 30 m (100 ft), be duplicated as follows: one device shall be mounted on the car and a second device shall be placed at the designated level.

(6) remain operable during a failure of the normal building power. The auxiliary power supply shall be capable of providing for the continuous operation of the audible signaling device(s) for at least 1 h.

(j) The two-way voice communication means required by 2.27.1.1.4 shall be provided regardless of rise.

8.4.10.1.2 Seismic Protective Device Requirements

(a) Earthquake protective devices shall be the fail-safe type.

(b) The seismic detection device shall be set to actuate upon excitation in a vertical direction of 0.15g acceleration, 9.81 m/s² (32.2 ft/s²) maximum. The frequency response of the device shall be 1 Hz to 10 Hz.

(c) The seismic detection device shall be mounted in an elevator machine room, control room, machinery space, control space, or hoistway adjacent to a vertical load-bearing building structural member when installed at an elevation above ground level, or any structural member if mounted at or below ground level, or any other location approved by the structural engineer of record.

(d) A counterweight displacement detection device shall be activated by the derailment of either side of the counterweight at any point in the hoistway, to provide information to the control system that the counterweight has left its guides.

(e) Earthquake protective devices with exposed live electrical parts in the hoistway shall operate at not more than 24 VAC or 24 VDC above or below ground potential and shall not be capable of supplying more than 0.5 A.

(f) Counterweight displacement detection device components shall be permitted to be installed in the running clearance between the car and the counterweight required by 8.4.1.

(g) The use of fuses to detect counterweight displacement shall not be permitted.

(h) A counterweight displacement detection device signal that is actuated for less than 100 ms shall be disregarded. A counterweight displacement detection device signal that is actuated for between 100 ms and 1 s shall be permitted to be disregarded. A counterweight

Figure 8.4.10.1.1
Earthquake Elevator Equipment Requirements Diagrammatic Representation

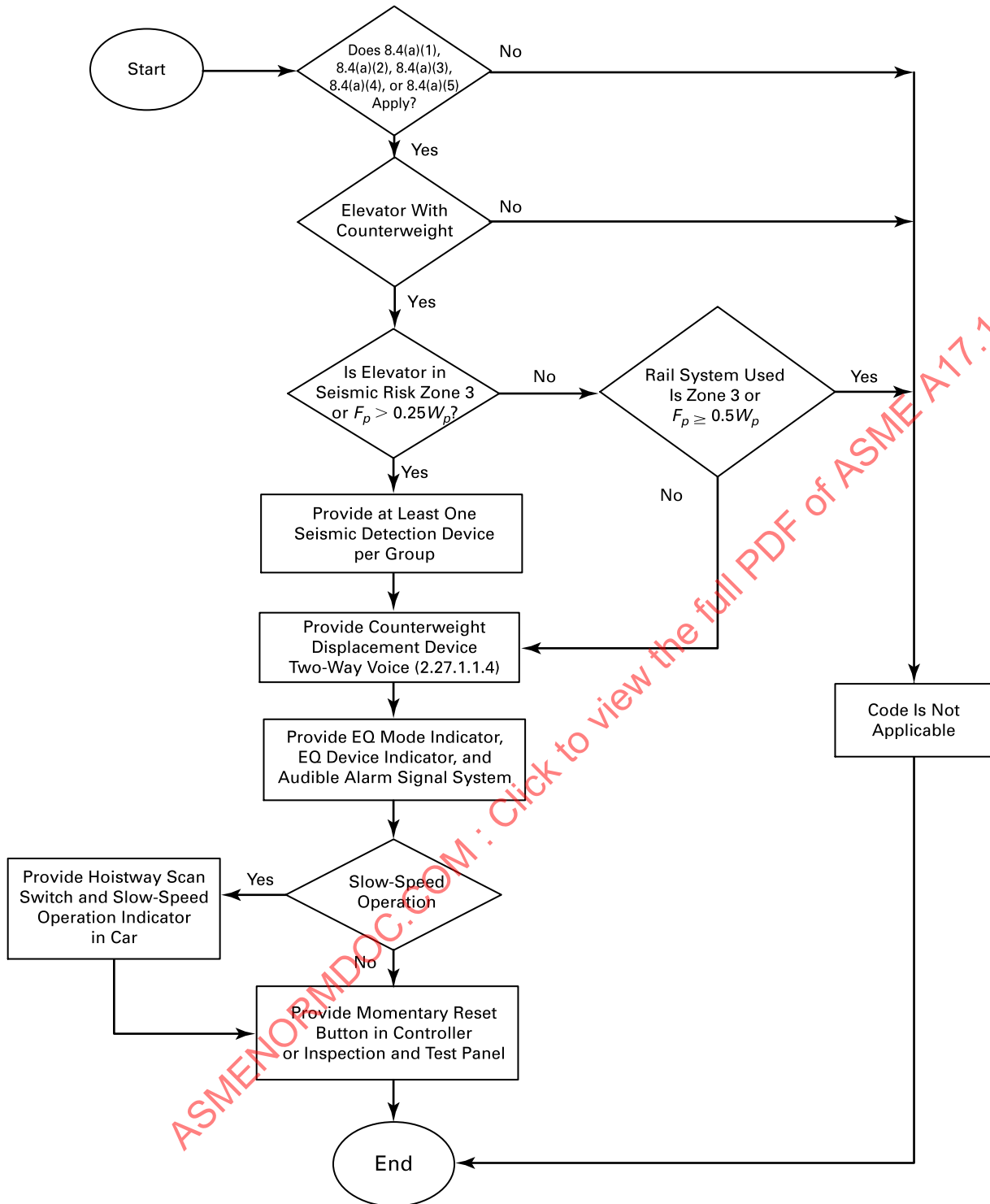


Table 8.4.10.1.1
Visual Indication Matrix

Earthquake Phase of Operation	Earthquake Mode Indication	Slow-Speed Operation Indication	Earthquake Status Indication
Normal operation	Off	Off	Off
Seismic switch actuation	Flashing	Off	On
Seismic detection device reset; waiting for slow-scan initiation	Flashing	Flashing	On
Scan initiated or in progress	Flashing	On	On
Scan complete; waiting to initiate slow-speed operation	On	Flashing	On
Slow-speed operation active	On	On	On
Counterweight displacement detection device actuation	On	Off	Flashing

displacement detection device signal that is actuated for more than 1 s shall be latched.

(22) **8.4.10.1.3 Elevator Operation, Seismic Detection Device Actuation (See Figure 8.4.10.1.3)**

(a) Upon actuation of a seismic detection device, the “SEISMIC STATUS” visual indication(s) provided at each operating station (see 2.26.1.4.1) shall be set to illuminate continuously and the “EARTHQUAKE MODE” indication in the car operating panel shall illuminate intermittently on all elevators served by the seismic detection device. Where a variable message display is provided in the car operating panel, the words “EARTHQUAKE MODE” shall be displayed. If the elevator is equipped for slow-speed earthquake operation, the “EARTHQUAKE SLOW SPEED” visual indication shall remain extinguished.

(b) Upon actuation of a seismic detection device, all elevators that are in Inspection Operation referred to in 2.26.1.4, Inspection Operation with open door circuits (see 2.26.1.5), Hoistway Access Operation (see 2.12.7), or test enable operation (see 2.26.14) shall remain in that particular operation.

If the inspection or access operation is exited while the seismic detection device is actuated, the car shall not move unless another of the inspection or access operations is initiated, or the car is returned to normal operation in accordance with 8.4.10.1.1(d). Releveling conforming to 2.26.1.6.7 in either direction is permitted.

(c) Upon actuation of a seismic detection device, all elevators in modes of operation other than earthquake mode and operations referenced by 8.10.1.3(b) that are in motion shall proceed to the nearest available floor. Elevators at a floor upon actuation of a seismic detection device shall remain at the floor. When the car is at a floor, the car shall open its doors and shut down, except that where Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation is in effect, door operation shall conform to 2.27.3.3. Releveling conforming to 2.26.1.6.7 in either direction shall be permitted.

(d) Elevators that are shut down in accordance with (c) and are equipped with a means of nonvolatile memory shall be permitted to be put back into automatic operation at a speed not to exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), subject to the requirements of (1) through (7) [see 2.27.13.3(a)].

(1) The “EARTHQUAKE MODE” visual indication in the car shall illuminate continuously.

(2) Emergency personnel shall reset the seismic detection device, the elevator shall remain in earthquake operation mode, and the “EARTHQUAKE SLOW SPEED” and “EARTHQUAKE MODE” visual indications shall illuminate intermittently.

(3) Emergency personnel shall make sure the car is empty and actuate a momentary Group 3 key switch in the car labeled “EARTHQUAKE HOISTWAY SCAN.” The “EARTHQUAKE SLOW SPEED” visual indication in the car shall stay on continuously.

(4) Upon “EARTHQUAKE HOISTWAY SCAN” key-switch actuation, the car shall wait 15 s, then close its doors.

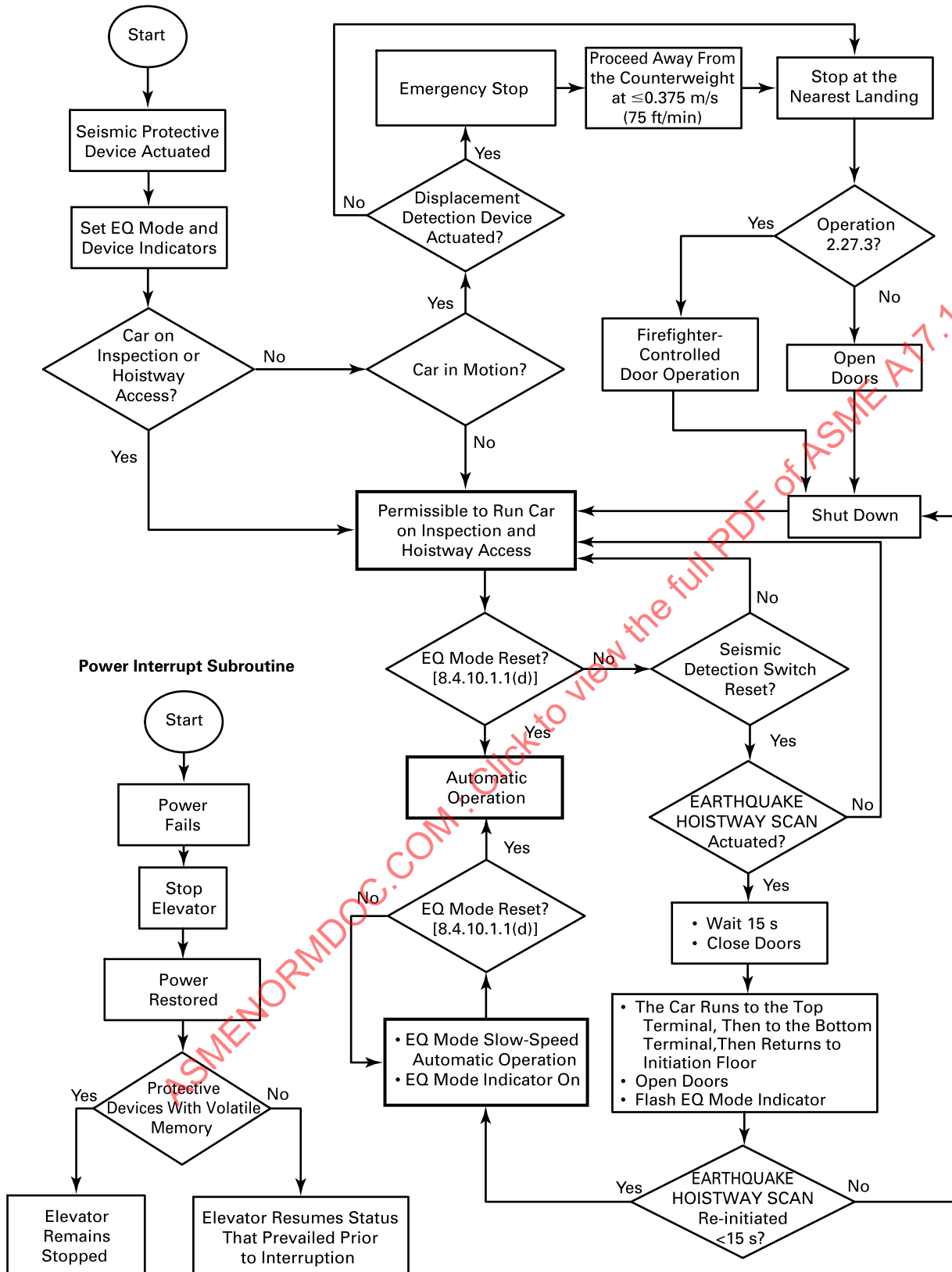
(5) The car shall travel from terminal to terminal back to the starting floor at a speed of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) maximum, and open its door.

(6) The “EARTHQUAKE MODE” visual indication shall remain illuminated continuously; the “EARTHQUAKE SLOW SPEED” visual indication shall flash intermittently.

(-a) If the emergency personnel actuates the “EARTHQUAKE HOISTWAY SCAN” key switch again within 60 s, the car shall enter earthquake mode slow-speed automatic operation at 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). The “EARTHQUAKE SLOW SPEED” visual indication shall turn on and stay on continuously.

(-b) If the emergency personnel does not actuate the “EARTHQUAKE HOISTWAY SCAN” key switch within 60 s, the car shall remain shut down, and the “EARTHQUAKE MODE” and “EARTHQUAKE SLOW SPEED” visual indications shall illuminate intermittently. The sequence shall be capable of being re-initiated by repeating (1) through (7).

Figure 8.4.10.1.3
Earthquake Emergency Operation Diagrammatic Representation



(7) The car in earthquake mode automatic slow-speed operation shall perform identically to the car when it was in normal automatic operation, except that the speed shall be limited in all modes to 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) maximum and the “EARTHQUAKE MODE” visual indication shall remain on continuously.

(8) If the elevator is performing a slow-speed hoistway scan or is running in slow-speed earthquake mode and the seismic detection switch is actuated, the elevator operation shall comply with 8.4.10.1.3.

(9) The elevator shall exit the earthquake hoistway scan and extinguish the “EARTHQUAKE SLOW SPEED” visual indication when any mode referenced in (b) is initiated.

(10) Once the seismic detection device is reset and the reset switch referenced in 8.4.10.1.1(d) is actuated, the system shall return to normal operation. The “EARTHQUAKE SLOW SPEED,” “EARTHQUAKE MODE,” and “SEISMIC STATUS” visual indications shall extinguish.

NOTE: Since the seismic detection device is required to be reset before entering slow-scan operation, it may be actuated again by aftershocks. In this manner, the slow-speed operation can be initiated multiple times.

(22) **8.4.10.1.4 Elevator Operation, Counterweight Displacement Detection Device Actuation [See Figure 8.4.10.1.3 and 2.27.13.3(b)]**

(a) Upon actuation of a counterweight displacement detection device, the “SEISMIC STATUS” visual indication(s) at the operating station(s) (see 2.26.1.4.1) for that elevator shall be set to illuminate intermittently no matter the state of the seismic detection device servicing that elevator. The “EARTHQUAKE MODE” visual indication in the car operating panel shall illuminate intermittently on the elevator served by the counterweight displacement detection device.

(b) When the counterweight displacement detection device is actuated, the elevator, if in motion, shall initiate an emergency stop by the immediate removal of power from the driving-machine motor and brake. Then the elevator shall proceed away from the counterweight at a speed of not more than 0.375 m/s (75 ft/min) and stop at the nearest available floor, unless performing any of the following operations, in which case it shall remain with that operation:

(1) Inspection Operation referred to in 2.26.1.4

(2) Inspection Operation with door open circuits (see 2.26.1.5)

(3) Hoistway Access Operation (see 2.12.7)

(c) If the inspection or access operation is exited while the counterweight displacement detection device is actuated, the car shall not move unless another of the inspection or access operations is initiated or the car is returned to normal operation [see 8.4.10.1.1(d)].

(d) If the elevator was operating in slow-speed earthquake operation, the “EARTHQUAKE SLOW SPEED” visual indication shall extinguish.

(e) If after the emergency stop the car and counterweight are adjacent to each other (any overlap), the car is permitted to remain stopped and shut down. Once at the floor, the car shall open its doors and shut down, except that where Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation is in effect, door operation shall conform to 2.27.3.3. Releveling conforming to 2.26.1.6.7 in either direction is permitted.

(f) Once the counterweight displacement detection device and the seismic detection device are reset, and the reset switch referenced in 8.4.10.1.1(d) is actuated, the system shall return to normal operation. The “EARTHQUAKE MODE” and “SEISMIC STATUS” visual indications shall extinguish.

8.4.10.1.5 General Earthquake Mode Elevator Operations (See Figure 8.4.10.1.3)

(a) When the counterweight displacement detection device is actuated, operation of the car by means of the key described in 2.27.3.1 and 2.27.3.3, hospital emergency service key, and other similar types of operation is prohibited.

(b) Elevators with power-operated doors, upon reaching a landing, shall cause their doors to open and remain open, except that where Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation is in effect, door operation shall conform to 2.27.3.3.

(c) Upon activation of an earthquake protective device, an elevator standing at a floor with its doors open shall remain at the floor with its doors open. If its doors are closed, it shall open its doors. Where Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation is in effect, door operation shall conform to 2.27.3.3.

(d) An elevator not in operation when an earthquake protective device is activated shall remain at the landing.

(e) Elevators stopped by an earthquake protective device with a volatile-type memory shall remain idle in the event of a power failure. Subsequent restoration of power shall not cancel the status of the earthquake protective devices nor the slow-speed status of the elevator system if such existed prior to the loss of power.

(f) An elevator shall be permitted to be returned to normal service by means of the momentary reset button or switch [see 8.4.10.1.1(d)], provided the counterweight displacement detection device and the seismic detection device are not actuated.

(g) Electrical protective devices required by 2.26.2 shall not be rendered inoperative nor bypassed by earthquake protective devices.

(h) Actuation of the earthquake protective devices shall render the governor tension carriage switch (see 2.18.7.2) ineffective until the car is stopped at a floor.

8.4.10.1.6 Maintenance of Equipment. Earthquake protective devices shall be arranged to be checked for satisfactory operation and shall be calibrated at intervals specified by the manufacturer.

8.4.10.2 Reserved for Future Use

8.4.11 Hydraulic Elevators

Requirement 8.4.11 applies to all direct-acting hydraulic elevators and roped-hydraulic elevators.

For roped-hydraulic elevators other than those defined by Section 1.3, the requirements, formulas, and specified methods of calculation of loads and the resulting stresses and deflections do not generally apply and shall be modified to suit the specific conditions and requirements in each case.

8.4.11.1 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. Where hydraulic elevators are provided with counterweights, clearances shall conform to 8.4.1.

8.4.11.2 Beams, Supports, and Floors

8.4.11.2.1 Securing Beams and Supports. Overhead beams for attaching hitch plates shall be anchored to prevent overturning and displacement as a result of seismic forces acting simultaneously as specified in 8.4.13 or 8.4.14, or equal to

- (a) W_p horizontally and $0.5W_p$ vertically (zone 3 or greater)
- (b) $0.5W_p$ horizontally and $0.25W_p$ vertically (zone 2)

8.4.11.2.2 Floors. Fastening means in compliance with 8.4.2.3 shall be provided to prevent hydraulic machines, control panels, and storage tanks from being overturned or displaced.

8.4.11.3 Guarding of Equipment

8.4.11.3.1 Rope Retainers. Rope retainers provided on traveling sheaves and deflecting sheaves, in accordance with 3.18.1.2.4, shall comply with 8.4.3.1.2 through 8.4.3.1.4.

8.4.11.4 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination. Requirement 8.4.4 does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

8.4.11.5 Guiding Members and Position Restraints. Guiding members and position restraints shall conform to 8.4.5 and 8.4.11.5.2.

8.4.11.5.1 Traveling Sheave Position Restraints Location. Position restraints attached to the traveling sheave shall be provided for roped-hydraulic elevators. Separate position restraints are not required where such restraints are an integral part of the guiding means.

8.4.11.5.2 Design. Position restraints and their attachments to the traveling sheave shall be designed to withstand a seismic force acting in a horizontal direction as defined in 8.4.13 or 8.4.14, or equal to

- (a) W_p (zone 3 or greater)
- (b) $0.25W_p$ (zone 2)

on one-half of the weight of the driving member of the hydraulic jack plus the weight of the traveling sheave and its attachments.

8.4.11.6 Car and Counterweight Safeties. Requirement 8.4.6 does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

8.4.11.7 Counterweights. Where counterweights are provided, they shall conform to 8.4.7.

8.4.11.8 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings. Guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to the following, whichever is more restrictive:

- (a) Where car safeties are provided, 3.17.2 shall apply.
- (b) *Seismic Load Application*
 - (1) Requirement 8.4.8 shall apply.
 - (2) The load on the car side of direct-plunger hydraulic elevators shall be as determined by 8.4.8.3.1 and 8.4.8.3.2.
 - (3) Requirement 8.4.8.9 shall not apply.

8.4.11.9 Hydraulic Jacks. The attachment of above-ground hydraulic jacks to the building structure shall be capable of withstanding the inertia effect of their masses without permanent deformation when subjected to seismic forces as defined in 8.4.13 or 8.4.14, or separate acting forces equal to

- (a) W_p horizontally and $0.5W_p$ vertically (zone 3 or greater)
- (b) $0.5W_p$ horizontally and $0.25W_p$ vertically (zone 2)

8.4.11.10 Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices. Requirement 8.4.10 does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

8.4.11.11 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Where buildings are designed with expansion joints, the machine room and the hoistway shall be located on the same side of an expansion joint.

8.4.11.12 Overspeed Valve and Plunger Gripper. Hydraulic elevators not provided with car safeties complying with 3.17.2 shall be provided with either (a) or (b).

- (a) an overspeed valve(s) conforming to 3.19.4.7
- (b) a plunger gripper(s) conforming to 3.17.3, except as modified by (1) and (2)

(1) Requirement 3.17.3.2 applies as modified. The primary actuation means shall be mechanical or hydraulic. Electrical means are permitted as a secondary actuation means.

Table 8.4.11.13
Pipe Support Spacing

Nominal Pipe Size, in.	Maximum Spacing Between Supports, mm (in.)
1.0	1525 (60)
1.5	2300 (90)
2.0	2600 (102)
2.5	2750 (108)
3.0	3000 (120)
4.0	3500 (138)

(2) The plunger gripper shall be capable of withstanding inertia effects of the elevator masses without operational failure when subjected to seismic forces acting separately, as defined in 8.4.13 or 8.4.14, or equal to

(-a) for zone 3 or greater, or $F_p > 0.25W_p$ with $z/h = 1$ (or $h_x/h_n = 1$)

(-1) W_{plgr} horizontally

(-2) $\frac{1}{2}(W_{plgr} + W_p)$ vertically

(-b) for zone 2 or $F_p \leq 0.25W_p$ with $z/h = 1$ (or $h_x/h_n = 1$)

(-1) $\frac{1}{2}W_{plgr}$ horizontally

(-2) $\frac{1}{4}(W_{plgr} + W_p)$ vertically

where W_{plgr} = the weight of the plunger

8.4.11.13 Piping Supports. Piping supports to restrain transverse motion shall be provided near changes in direction and particularly near valves and joints and shall comply with 8.4.2.3.

Horizontal spans shall be supported at intervals not to exceed those specified in Table 8.4.11.13.

(a) Spacing is based on a natural frequency limit of 20 Hz. The pipe is presumed to have oil in it and, for an added margin of safety, the oil is assumed to weigh 900 kg/m³ (56 lb/ft³) at 15.6°C (60°F).

(b) Maximum combined bending and shear stress is limited to 71.8 kPa (1,500 psi).

(c) Maximum sag at the center of the span is limited to 2.5 mm (0.1 in.).

(d) For pipe sizes other than shown, the maximum spacing between supports shall be determined by the following formula:

(SI Units)

$$\ell = 0.01163 \left(\frac{EI}{9.807W} \right)^{1/4}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\ell = 0.192 \left(\frac{EI}{W} \right)^{1/4}$$

where

$$0.192 = \text{constant} = \left[\frac{\pi}{40} \left(\frac{32.2}{144} \right)^{1/2} \right]^{1/2}$$

E = modulus of elasticity for steel [2068×10^6 MPa (30×10^6 psi)]

I = moment of inertia of the pipe, mm⁴ (in.⁴)

ℓ = maximum spacing between supports, m (ft)

W = weight per foot of pipe with oil at 15.6°C (60°F), kg/m (lb/ft)

8.4.11.14 Support of Tanks. Means shall be provided to prevent the tank from being overturned or displaced. Such means shall comply with 8.4.2.3.

8.4.11.15 Information on Elevator Layouts. The following information is required on elevator layout drawings. The horizontal seismic forces imposed on the guide-rail brackets by the position restraints of the traveling sheave and the position restraints of the car or the counterweight (where provided) shall be determined as shown in 8.4.11.15.1 and 8.4.11.15.2.

8.4.11.15.1 Force normal to the (x-x) axis of the guide rail (see 8.4.8.9)

(a) Where $L \geq \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7)

$$F_{x-x} = \frac{W_p}{3} + \frac{W_{plgr}}{4} \quad (\text{Zone} \geq 3)$$

$$F_{x-x} = \frac{W_p}{6} + \frac{W_{plgr}}{8} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$F_{x-x} = \frac{2F_p}{3} + \frac{F_{plgr}}{2} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(b) Where $L < \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7)

$$F_{x-x} = \frac{W_p}{2} \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) + \frac{W_{plgr}}{4} \quad (\text{Zone} \geq 3)$$

$$F_{x-x} = \frac{W_p}{4} \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) + \frac{W_{plgr}}{8} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$F_{x-x} = F_p \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) + \frac{F_{plgr}}{2} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

8.4.11.15.2 Force normal to the (y-y) axis of the guide rail (see 8.4.8.9)

(a) Where $L \geq \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7)

$$F_{y-y} = \frac{W_p}{6} + \frac{W_{plgr}}{8} \quad (\text{Zone} \geq 3)$$

$$F_{y-y} = \frac{W_p}{12} + \frac{W_{plgr}}{16} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$F_{y-y} = \frac{2F_p}{3} + \frac{F_{plgr}}{4} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(b) Where $L < \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7)

$$F_{y-y} = \left[\left(\frac{W_p}{4} \right) \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) + \frac{W_{plgr}}{8} \right] \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$F_{y-y} = \left[\left(\frac{W_p}{8} \right) \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) + \frac{W_{plgr}}{16} \right] \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$F_{y-y} = \left[\left(\frac{F_p}{2} \right) \left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell} \right) + \frac{F_{plgr}}{4} \right] \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

where

F_p = seismic component force as defined by 8.4.14

F_{plgr} = seismic component force as defined by 8.4.14 substituting W_{plgr} for W_p

F_{x-x} F_{y-y} = seismic force, N (lbf)

(1) For car and counterweight lower position restraints

W_p = total weight of the car plus 40% of rated capacity, or the total weight of the counterweight, N (lb)

W_{plgr} = plunger weight, N (lb) (for direct-acting hydraulic elevators)

= 0 (for elevators provided with counterweights and roped-hydraulic elevators), based on the in-ground hydraulics. For other designs, the load distribution might be different.

(2) For traveling sheave position restraints where guided on rails separate from the car

W_p = $1.5 \times$ (weight of traveling sheave plus guide attachments), N (lb)

W_{plgr} = plunger weight, N (lb) (for roped-hydraulic elevators)

8.4.12 Design Data and Formulas for Elevators

8.4.12.1 Maximum Weight per Pair of Guide Rails. The following formulas shall be used to determine the maximum allowable weight per pair of guide rails.

8.4.12.1.1 Force Normal to the (x-x) Axis of the Rail (See 8.4.8.9)

(a) No intermediate tie brackets (car and counterweight rails)

(1) Traction elevators, roped-hydraulic elevators, or hydraulic elevator counterweight rails (where provided)

(SI Units)

$$W_p = 4\,948.2 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$W_p = 9\,896.4 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$2.93(0.7)F_p = 4\,948.2 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W_p = 717,671 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$W_p = 1,435,342 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$2.93(0.7)F_p = 717,671 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(2) Direct-acting hydraulic elevators (car guide rails only) or separately guided traveling sheaves

(SI Units)

$$W'_p = 239,224 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{Seismic zone jurisdictions})$$

$$2.93(0.7)F'_p = 1\,649.4 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W'_p = 239,224 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{Seismic zone jurisdictions})$$

$$2.93(0.7)F'_p = (239,224) \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

where

$$W'_p = \frac{W_p}{3} + \frac{W_{plgr}}{4} \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$W'_p = \frac{W_p}{6} + \frac{W_{plgr}}{8} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$F'_p = \left(\frac{2F_p}{3} \right) + \frac{F_{plgr}}{2} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(b) One intermediate tie bracket located midway between the main counterweighted guide-rail brackets

(SI Units)

$$W_p = 6\,563.8 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$W_p = 13\,127.5 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$2.93(0.7)F_p = 6\,563.8 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\begin{aligned} W_p &= 951,991 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } \geq 3) \\ W_p &= 1,903,982 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } 2) \\ 2.93(0.7)F_p &= 951,991 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

(c) Two intermediate tie brackets approximately equally spaced between the main counterweighted guide-rail brackets

(SI Units)

$$\begin{aligned} W_p &= 7\,263.6 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } \geq 3) \\ W_p &= 14\,527.2 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } 2) \\ 2.93(0.7)F_p &= 7\,263.6 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\begin{aligned} W_p &= 1,053,495 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } \geq 3) \\ W_p &= 2,106,990 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } 2) \\ 2.93(0.7)F_p &= 1,053,495 \frac{Z_x}{\ell} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

8.4.12.1.2 Force Normal to the (y-y) Axis of the Rail (See 8.4.8.9)

(a) No intermediate tie brackets (car and counterweight rails)

(1) Traction elevators, roped-hydraulic elevators, or hydraulic elevator counterweight rails (where provided)

(SI Units)

$$\begin{aligned} W_p &= 9\,896.4 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } \geq 3) \\ W_p &= 19\,792.8 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } 2) \\ 2.93(0.7)F_p &= 9\,896.4 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\begin{aligned} W_p &= 1,435,342 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } \geq 3) \\ W_p &= 2,870,684 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } 2) \\ 2.93(0.7)F_p &= 1,435,342 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

(2) Direct-acting hydraulic elevators (car guide rails only) or separately guided traveling sheaves

(SI Units)

$$\begin{aligned} W'_p &= 3\,298.8 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Seismic zone jurisdictions}) \\ 2.93(0.7)F_p &= 3\,298.8 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\begin{aligned} W'_p &= 478,448 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Seismic zone jurisdictions}) \\ 2.93(0.7)F_p &= 478,448 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} W'_p &= \frac{W}{3} + \frac{W_{plgr}}{4} & (\text{Zone } \geq 3) \\ W'_p &= \frac{W}{6} + \frac{W_{plgr}}{8} & (\text{Zone } 2) \\ F'_p &= \left(\frac{2F_p}{3} \right) + \frac{F_{plgr}}{2} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

(b) One intermediate tie bracket located midway between the main counterweighted guide-rail brackets

(SI Units)

$$\begin{aligned} W_p &= 13\,127.5 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } \geq 3) \\ W_p &= 26\,255.1 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } 2) \\ 2.93(0.7)F_p &= 13\,127.5 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\begin{aligned} W_p &= 1,903,982 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } \geq 3) \\ W_p &= 3,807,962 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } 2) \\ 2.93(0.7)F_p &= 1,903,982 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

(c) Two intermediate tie brackets approximately equally spaced between the main counterweighted guide-rail brackets

(SI Units)

$$\begin{aligned} W_p &= 14\,527.2 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } \geq 3) \\ W_p &= 29\,054.4 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{Zone } 2) \\ 2.93(0.7)F_p &= 14\,527.2 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} & (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions}) \end{aligned}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W_p = 2,106,990 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$W_p = 4,213,963 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$2.93 \left(0.7 \right) F_p = 2,106,990 \frac{Z_y}{\ell} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

where

ℓ = distance between the main car or counterweight guide-rail brackets, mm (in.)

W_p = component operating weight as defined by 8.4.15

W_p' = maximum weight per pair of guide rails (hydraulic direct-acting elevators and separately guided traveling sheaves), N (lb)

W_{plgr} = weight of the hydraulic plunger, N (lb)

Z_x = elastic section modulus of the rail about the (x-x) axis, mm³ (in.³)

Z_y = elastic section modulus of the rail about the (y-y) axis, mm³ (in.³)

8.4.12.2 Required Moment of Inertia of Guide Rails.

The formulas in 8.4.12.2.1 and 8.4.12.2.2 shall be used to determine the minimum allowable moment of inertia of guide rails.

8.4.12.2.1 Force Normal to the (x-x) Axis of the Rail (See 8.4.8.9)

(a) Traction elevators, roped-hydraulic elevators, or hydraulic elevator counterweight rails (where provided)

$$I_x = \left(\frac{W_p \ell^3}{249 \Delta E} \right) \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$I_x = \left(\frac{W_p \ell^3}{498 \Delta E} \right) \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$I_x = \left(\frac{2F_p \ell^3}{249 \Delta E} \right) \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(b) Direct-acting hydraulic elevators (car guide rails only) or separately guided traveling sheaves

$$I_x = \left[\frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E} \left(\frac{W_p}{249} + \frac{W_{\text{plgr}}}{267} \right) \right] \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$I_x = \left[\frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E} \left(\frac{W_p}{498} + \frac{W_{\text{plgr}}}{534} \right) \right] \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$I_x = \left[\frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E} \left(\frac{2F_p}{249} + \frac{2F_{\text{plgr}}}{267} \right) \right] \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

8.4.12.2.2 Force Normal to the (y-y) Axis of the Rail (22) (See 8.4.8.9)

(a) Traction elevators, roped-hydraulic elevators, or hydraulic elevator counterweight rails (where provided)

$$I_y = \frac{W_p \ell^3}{498 \Delta E} \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$I_y = \frac{W_p \ell^3}{996 \Delta E} \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$I_y = \frac{2F_p \ell^3}{498 \Delta E} \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

(b) Direct-acting hydraulic elevators (car guide rails only) or separately guided traveling sheaves

$$I_y = \left[\frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E} \left(\frac{W_p}{498} + \frac{W_{\text{plgr}}}{534} \right) \right] \quad (\text{Zone } \geq 3)$$

$$I_y = \left[\frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E} \left(\frac{W_p}{996} + \frac{W_{\text{plgr}}}{1,068} \right) \right] \quad (\text{Zone } 2)$$

$$I_y = \left[\frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E} \left(\frac{2F_p}{498} + \frac{2F_{\text{plgr}}}{267} \right) \right] \quad (\text{IBC/NBCC jurisdictions})$$

where

E = modulus of elasticity for steel

= 2.068 × 10⁵ MPa (30 × 10⁶ psi)

I_x = moment of inertia of the rail about the (x-x) axis, mm⁴ (in.⁴)

I_y = moment of inertia of the rail about the (y-y) axis, mm⁴ (in.⁴)

ℓ = distance between the main car and counterweight guide-rail brackets, mm (in.)

W_p = component operating weight as defined by 8.4.15

W_{plgr} = weight of the hydraulic plunger, kg (lb)

Δ = maximum allowable deflection at the center of the rail span, mm (in.), based on Table 8.4.12.2.2

Table 8.4.12.2.2
Maximum Allowable Deflection

Rail Size, kg (lb)	Δ , max., mm (in.)
12.0 (8.0)	20 (0.75)
16.5 (11.0)	25 (1.00)
18.0 (12.0)	32 (1.25)
22.5 (15.0)	38 (1.50)
27.5 (18.5)	38 (1.50)
33.5 (22.5)	38 (1.50)
45.0 (30.0)	45 (1.75)

8.4.13 Component Force Levels Based on Ground Motion Parameters

For 8.4(b)(2), the component force level shall be the greater of that dictated by either of the following:

(a) the applicable building code's nonstructural component requirements

(b) the appropriate seismic zone as determined in 8.4.13.1 or 8.4.13.2

When the applicable building code does not reference component vertical force levels, the appropriate seismic zone vertical force level shall be used when a vertical force level is specified.

8.4.13.1 In United States jurisdictions with building codes not referencing seismic zones and prior to IBC

Zone(s)	Affected Peak Velocity Acceleration, A_v
0 and 1	$A_v < 0.10$
2	$0.10 \leq A_v < 0.20$
3 and 4	$0.20 \leq A_v$

8.4.13.2 In Canadian jurisdictions enforcing building codes prior to NBCC-2005, the following values of Z_v (velocity-related seismic zone) will determine the applicable seismic zone:

Zone(s)	Velocity-Related Seismic Zone, Z_v
2	$2 \leq Z_v < 4$
≥ 3	$Z_v \geq 4$

NOTE: For Z_v values, see "Design Data for Selected Locations in Canada," in NBCC-1995, Appendix C.

8.4.14 Elevator Seismic Design Force

8.4.14.1 Component Seismic Force Level (Strength Design). The seismic force shall be computed per requirements of IBC or NBCC-2005 or later editions, in accordance with the applicable building code.

(a) For IBC

F_p = component seismic force level (horizontal, strength design level) =

$$\frac{0.4 a_p S_{DS}}{\left(\frac{R_p}{I_p}\right)} \left[1 + 2 \left(\frac{z}{h} \right) \right] W_p$$

F_p is not required to be taken as greater than

$$F_p = 1.6 S_{DS} I_p W_p$$

and F_p shall not be taken as less than

$$F_p = 0.3 S_{DS} I_p W_p$$

where

a_p = component amplification factor = 1.00

F_p = component seismic force level (horizontal, strength design level)

h = average roof height of the structure with respect to the defined building base, provided by the building structural engineer

I_p = component importance factor = 1.00 or 1.50

R_p = component response modification factor = 2.5

S_{DS} = 5% damped design spectral response acceleration for short periods (i.e., 0.2 s)

W_p = component operating weight as defined in 8.4.15

z = height in the structure of the point of attachment of the component with respect to the defined building base provided by the building structural engineer. For items at or below the base, z shall be taken as 0. The value of z/h need not exceed 1.0. (See Section 1.3 for the definition of "base, building" and see Guide for Elevator Seismic Design, Part 1.)

NOTES:

(1) For isolated components, refer to ASCE 7-10, Table 13.6-1.

(2) F_p shall be multiplied by a factor of 0.7 for stress calculations to convert from strength design (IBC) to allowable stress design (ASME A17.1/CSA B44). This factor is already included in the load combinations in 8.4.14.1.2.

(b) For NBCC-2005 or later editions

F_p = component seismic force level (horizontal, strength design level) = $0.3 F_a S_a(0.2) I_E S_p W_p$

where

F_a = acceleration-based site coefficient, defined in NBCC-2010, Table 4.1.8.4.B, based on $S_a(0.2)$ and site class, A through F

F_p = component seismic force level (horizontal, strength design level)

I_E = importance factor for the building, defined in NBCC-2010, Article 4.1.8.5

$S_a(0.2)$ = 5% damped spectral response acceleration value, expressed as a ratio to gravitational acceleration, for a period of 0.2 s, defined in NBCC-2010, sentence 4.1.8.4(1)

S_p = $C_p A_r A_x / R_p$ (where S_p may range between 0.7 and 4.0) with

A_r = component force amplification factor from NBCC-2010, Table 4.1.8.18

A_x = height factor $(1 + 2 h_x/h_n)$ with

h_x = height in the structure of the point of attachment of the component with respect to the defined building base provided by the building structural engineer. For items at or below the base, z shall be taken as 0. (See Section 1.3 for the

definition of “base, building” and see Guide for Elevator Seismic Design, Part 1.)

h_n = average roof height of the structure with respect to the defined building base, provided by the building structural engineer. The value of h_x/h_n need not exceed 1.0.

C_p = component factor as listed in NBCC-2010, Table 4.1.8.18

R_p = component response modification factor from NBCC-2010, Table 4.1.8.18

W_p = component operating weight as defined by 8.4.15

NOTES:

- (1) For isolated components, refer to NBCC-2010, Table 4.1.8.18.
- (2) F_p shall be multiplied by a factor of 0.7 for stress calculations to convert from strength design (NBCC-2010) to allowable stress design (ASME A17.1/CSA B44). This factor is already included in the load combinations in 8.4.14.1.2.
- (3) Elevator equipment subject only to inertial accelerations of their own mass are considered rigid components when referencing NBCC-2010, Table 4.1.8.18 for variables C_p , A_p , and R_p . Elevator equipment subjected to accelerations and decelerations and subject to external forces independent of the mass of the component itself are considered machinery.

8.4.14.1.1 Components and Vertical Load-Bearing Guide Rails. The seismic design force, F_p , shall be applied at the component’s center of gravity. In addition, the component shall be designed for concurrent vertical seismic force F_v equal to

- (a) $\pm 0.2S_{DS}W_p$ (for IBC)
- (b) $\pm 0.2[\frac{2}{3}F_a S_a(0.2)]W_p$ (for NBCC)

NOTES:

- (1) Guide-rail-mounted machinery would be an example of vertical loads imposed on the guide rail in addition to the horizontal inertial loads (see 8.4.8.2.6 and 8.4.14.1.1).
- (2) F_v shall be multiplied by a factor of 0.7 for stress calculations to convert from strength design (NBCC-2010) to allowable stress design (ASME A17.1/CSA B44). This factor is already included in the load combinations in 8.4.14.1.2.

8.4.14.1.2 Load Combinations Using Allowable Stress Design. Components and portions thereof shall resist the most critical effects resulting from the more stringent of the following combinations of loads:

For IBC/NBCC

- (a) $(D + 0.7E)$
- (b) $(0.6D + 0.7E)$

where

D = dead load

E = earthquake load = $F_p + F_v$

8.4.14.1.3 Stress Increases. Increases in allowable stresses shall not be used.

8.4.15 Component Operating Weight, W_p

The component operating weight, W_p , shall be one of the following:

(a) for support or restraint of specific components, the component operating weight, in newtons (pounds), will be used (i.e., counterweight, controller, etc.)

(b) for support or restraint of an elevator, the component operating weight, in newtons (pounds), will include car weight plus 40% of the capacity (i.e., guide rails)

8.4.16 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces

Where all electric elevator equipment cannot be located on one side of an expansion joint, the maximum displacement across the expansion joint as provided by the building design shall not impair the function of the elevator.

SECTION 8.5 ESCALATOR AND MOVING WALK SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

(22)

(a) Section 8.5 applies to all escalators and moving walks where such equipment is installed in buildings assigned to one of the following:

(1) Seismic Design Category C with component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.5 as defined by IBC (see Section 1.3, building code).

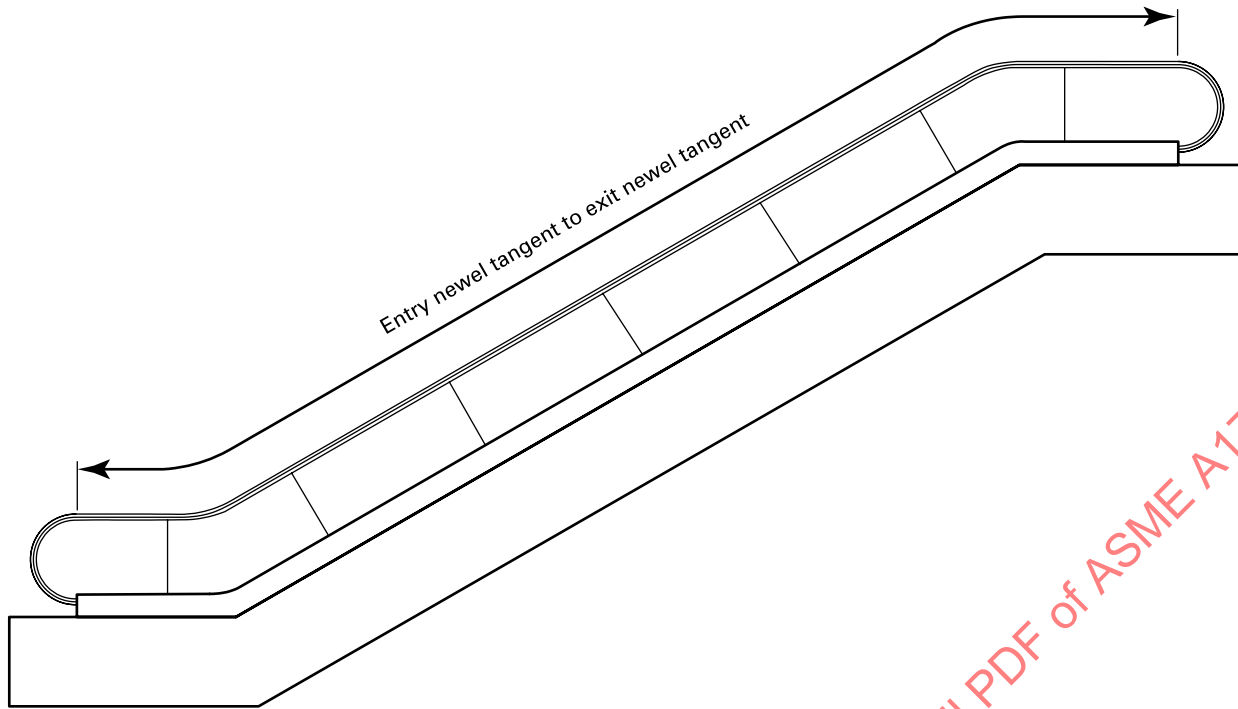
(2) Seismic Design Category D or greater as defined by IBC (see Section 1.3, building code).

(3) the product of the acceleration-based site coefficient and the spectral response acceleration for a 0.2 s time period [$F_a S_a(0.2)$] greater than 0.12 for any building designated as a “post-disaster building,” or $I_E F_a S_a(0.2)$ equal to or greater than 0.35 as defined by NBCC-2010 (see Section 1.3, building code).

(4) Where $I_E F_a S_a(0.2)$ is equal to or greater than 0.35 as defined by NBCC-2015 (see Section 1.3, building code). If the building is seismically isolated or has supplemental energy dissipation systems, consult the engineer of record.

(b) The appropriate escalator seismic force level is determined by the applicable building code. Where the applicable building code references seismic design categories or design spectral response acceleration [$S_a(0.2)$], force levels as referenced by 8.4.14 shall be used (see Section 1.3, building code).

Figure 8.5.1
Balustrade Handrail Force



GENERAL NOTE: This is a pictorial representation to be used for both escalators and moving walks.

(c) The escalator and moving walk safety requirements contained in Section 8.5 shall be used considering the requirements in the other parts of the Code. These requirements are to be applied as well as those in Sections 6.1 and 6.2 but are not additive. Where multiple requirements are applicable to the same component, the most stringent requirement shall control.

(22) 8.5.1 Balustrade Construction

Balustrades shall be designed to withstand the vertical inertial force due to the weight of the balustrade and the horizontal seismic forces as follows:

(a) The component operating weight, W_p , is the sum of the balustrade dead load and decking weight if supported by the balustrade.

(b) Horizontal seismic forces resulting from 50% of the machinery rated load, in addition to the loads imposed by the balustrade components, shall be distributed along the exposed length of the handrail from the entry newel tangent to the exit newel tangent as depicted in Figure 8.5.1.

(22) 8.5.2 Truss Members

8.5.2.1 Structural items not covered in Table 8.5.5 shall be capable of withstanding the inertia effect of the applicable masses without permanent deformation. Earth-

quake forces shall be applied simultaneously as defined by 8.4.14, except $W_p = W_t + W_r$, where

W_r = 25% of the structural rated load calculated per 6.1.3.9.1

W_t = total dead load of the escalator, including all components supported by the truss

8.5.2.2 Truss Calculations. The maximum combined stresses in any structural component shall be based on sound engineering practice and shall not exceed the allowable values specified in ANSI/AISC 360, Chapter H (Design of Members for Combined Forces and Torsion), for individual components. See 8.5.5 for allowable stresses.

NOTE: There is no requirement for the escalator or moving walk truss to be considered a structural member of the building.

8.5.3 Supporting Connections Between the Truss and the Building

8.5.3.1 The truss end supports shall provide motion restraint in the principal horizontal directions capable of withstanding the seismic forces acting upon the escalator or moving walk. The clearance in the transverse direction between the escalator truss and the seismic restraint shall not exceed 6.5 mm (0.25 in.) on each side. Motion restraint in the longitudinal direction at either or both end supports

shall accommodate the design story drift (see 8.5.3.2.2). Vertical restraint is required when the resultant vertical seismic force exceeds $W_t + W_r$ (see 8.5.2.2). Where one end of the truss uses an unfastened restraint, forces resulting from movement of building structure members are not considered as being applied to the truss.

8.5.3.2 Truss end supports shall accommodate the design story drift (see 8.5.2.1) in the longitudinal direction such that

(a) clearance between the truss and the building is sufficient to prevent truss compression damage

(b) seat depth (the longitudinal overlap and bearing surface between the building support and the truss support) is sufficient to prevent disengagement of the truss end with the building support

8.5.3.2.1 When one end of the escalator truss is not designed to accommodate story drift, the design shall account for the forces developed by building movement in a manner that restricts transfer of these forces to the truss. The other truss end support shall be free to slide in the longitudinal direction to accommodate the design story drift.

When both ends are designed to accommodate story drift

(a) means shall be provided to prevent any truss end from disengaging from its building support seat

(b) the end supports shall be permitted to be free to slide in the longitudinal direction such that the sum of the motions accommodates the total design story drift

8.5.3.2.2 At the sliding end(s), the depth of the beam seat shall be capable of accommodating the design story drift. The design story drift shall have a minimum value of 1.5 times the building story drift, as obtained from either of the following:

(a) the structural engineer of record

(b) the maximum story drift value per ASCE/SEI-7, Table 12.2-1

NOTE [8.5.3.2.2(b)]: ASCE/SEI-7, Table 12.2-1 specifies a maximum story drift of $0.025h_{sx}$, where h_{sx} is the building story height.

8.5.3.3 Intermediate support(s) for escalators or moving walks, when used, shall be of sufficient size to accommodate design story drift movement in both the longitudinal and transverse directions. Any motion restraint provided shall not reduce the story drift capacity of the support.

8.5.4 Seismic Detection Devices

A minimum of one seismic detection device shall be provided in each escalator (nontandem operation or non-side-by-side arrangement) or moving walk. For escalators or moving walks in a tandem operation (see 6.1.6.6) or side-by-side arrangement, a minimum of one seismic

detection device is required. The seismic detection device shall be mounted in the machinery space or adjacent to the escalator or moving walk. Where possible, a seismic detection device shall be mounted adjacent to a vertical load-bearing building structural member when installed at an elevation above ground level, or any structural member if mounted at or below ground level, or any other location approved by the structural engineer of record.

(a) The seismic detection device shall conform to 8.4.10.1.2(a) and 8.4.10.1.2(b).

(b) Actuation of the seismic detection device shall cause removal of power from the escalator and moving walk driving-machine motor(s) and brake(s) on all units controlled by the seismic detection device.

(c) Where a seismic detection device is used exclusively to control the escalator or moving walk, it shall be located in a machine room or machinery space and, where possible, shall be mounted adjacent to a vertical load-bearing member. Should no vertical load-bearing member be in close proximity, it shall be permitted to locate the seismic detection device at the nearest accessible vertical load-bearing member at approximately the same horizontal level as the upper machinery space or machine room.

8.5.5 Allowable Stresses Applicable to Seismic Design

The allowable stress limits to be used in the design of all escalator and moving walk components are listed in Table 8.5.5. An escalator or moving walk subjected to seismic loading shall be capable of withstanding the specified seismic forces in combination with the dynamic or static loads occurring during normal operation.

SECTION 8.6 MAINTENANCE, REPAIR, REPLACEMENT, AND TESTING

Section 8.6 applies to maintenance, repairs, replacements, and testing. Maintenance, repair, and replacement shall be performed to provide compliance with the Code applicable at the time of installation or alteration.

NOTES:

(1) See Section 8.7 for alteration requirements.

(2) See "General" in Preface for assignment of responsibilities.

8.6.1 General Requirements

8.6.1.1 Maintenance, Repair, and Replacement

8.6.1.1.1 Equipment covered within the scope of this Code shall be maintained in accordance with Section 8.6.

8.6.1.1.2 Maintenance, repairs, replacements, and tests shall conform to Section 8.6 and the applicable

(a) Code at the time of the installation

(b) Code requirements at the time of any alteration

Table 8.5.5
Component-Based Allowable Design Stresses

Component	Allowable Design Parameter	
	IBC, ASCE/SEI-7	NBCC
Structural, steel	$0.6F_y$	$0.6F_y$
Structural, other materials	Follow allowable limits as recommended by design specifications for material of use	Follow allowable limits as recommended by design specifications for material of use
Balustrades	$0.6F_y$	$0.6F_y$
Structural glass in balustrades	Minimum factor of safety = 2 based on the modulus of rupture	Minimum factor of safety = 2 based on the modulus of rupture
Structural fastenings and/or connections	Per 8.4.2.3	Per 8.4.2.3

GENERAL NOTE: F_y = yield strength.

(c) ASME A17.3 if adopted by the authority having jurisdiction

NOTES (8.6.1.1.2):

- (1) ASME A17.2 (see “ASME Elevator Publications” in Preface) describes recommended inspection and testing procedures.
- (2) References to “Items” of A17.2 and to the requirements of this Code are indicated in parentheses as a convenient reference to the applicable testing procedures and requirements. See the ASME A17.2 Preface and Scope for additional information.

8.6.1.2 General Maintenance Requirements

8.6.1.2.1 A written Maintenance Control Program (MCP) shall be in place to maintain the equipment in compliance with the requirements of Section 8.6. The MCP shall specify examinations, tests, cleaning, lubrication, and adjustments to applicable components at regular intervals (see Section 1.3 for the definition of “maintenance”) and shall comply with the following:

(a) An MCP for each unit (see 8.6.1.1.1) shall be provided by the person(s) and/or firm maintaining the equipment and shall be viewable on-site by elevator personnel at all times from the time of acceptance inspection and test or from the time of equipment installation or alteration (see 8.10.1.5).

(b) The MCP shall include, but not be limited to, the Code-required maintenance tasks, maintenance procedures, and examinations and tests listed with the associated requirement (see 8.6.4 through 8.6.11). Where maintenance tasks, maintenance procedures, or examinations or tests have been revised in Section 8.6, the MCP shall be updated.

(c) The MCP shall reference the on-site equipment documentation (see 8.6.1.2.2) needed to fulfill (b) and the on-site maintenance records (see 8.6.1.4.1) that record the completion of all associated maintenance tasks specified in 8.6.1.4.1(a).

(d) Where the MCP is maintained remotely from the machine room, machinery space, control room, or control space (see 8.11.1.8), instructions for on-site locating or viewing the MCP in either hard copy or electronic format shall be posted on the controller or at the means necessary for test (see 2.7.6.4). The instructions shall be permanently legible, with characters a minimum 3 mm (0.125 in.) high.

(e) The specified scheduled maintenance intervals (see Section 1.3) shall, as applicable, be based on

- (22) **8.6.1.1.3** It is not the intent of Section 8.6 to require changes to the equipment to meet the design, equipment nameplate(s), or performance standard other than those specified in 8.6.1.1.2, unless specifically stated in Section 8.6 (see 8.6.3.2, 8.6.4.24, 8.6.5.8, 8.6.5.19, 8.6.8.3, and 8.6.8.4.3).

8.6.1.1.4 Safety devices required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44 in 2.26.2, Table 2.26.4.3.2, 6.1.6, 6.2.6, and Section 8.3 at the time of installation; or devices provided to meet the certification requirements of ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 at the time of installation; and/or devices required by ASME A17.3 and installed as an alteration shall be maintained. See 8.6.1.2.2, 8.6.1.6.1, and 8.7.1.2. The performance of safety devices installed before they were required by the edition of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 in effect in the jurisdiction at the time of installation or alteration shall, as a minimum, comply with the performance requirements in the first edition of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 in which they were required.

The performance of safety devices installed that appear in subsequent editions of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 or ASME A17.3, as well as the testing procedures, shall be documented by the person or firm installing the device and placed in the on-site documentation. See 8.6.1.2.2(c).

- (1) equipment age, condition, and accumulated wear
- (2) design and inherent quality of the equipment
- (3) usage
- (4) environmental conditions
- (5) improved technology
- (6) the manufacturer's recommendations and original equipment certification for any SIL rated devices or circuits (see 8.6.3.12 and 8.7.1.9)
- (7) the manufacturer's recommendations based on any ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7-approved components or functions

(22) **8.6.1.2.2 On-Site Documentation.** The documents specified in (a) through (d) and (f) through (h) shall be written and permanently kept on-site in the machine room, machinery space, control room, control space, or in the means necessary for test (2.7.6.4) in hard copy for each unit for elevator personnel.

The documentation specified in (e) shall be on-site and available to the specified personnel.

(a) Up-to-date wiring diagrams detailing circuits of all electrical protective devices (see 2.26.2), critical operating circuits (see 2.26.3), and, where provided, the test enable device (see 2.26.14.1). Where remote interaction operation (RIO) is provided, circuits relevant to 2.26.2, 2.26.3, 3.26.4, and 3.26.6 shall be provided on the diagrams (see 2.26.13 and 3.26.12).

(b) Procedures for inspections and tests not described in ASME A17.2.

(c) Procedures or methods required for elevator personnel to perform maintenance, repairs, replacements, and adjustments, as follows (see also 8.10.1.5 and 8.11.1.7):

(1) unique maintenance procedures or methods required for inspection, tests, and replacement of SIL rated E/E/PES electrical protective devices and circuits [See 2.26.4.3.2, 2.26.9.3.2(b), 2.26.9.5.1(b), 2.26.9.6.1(b), and 8.6.5.14.10.]

(2) unique maintenance procedures or methods required for inspection, tests, and replacement of equipment applied under alternative arrangements (see 1.2.2.1) shall be provided by the manufacturer or installer.

(3) unique maintenance procedures or unique methods required for inspection and test of equipment specified in an ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 code compliance document (CCD).

(4) procedures for tests, periodic inspections, maintenance, replacements, adjustments, and repairs for traction-loss detection means, broken-suspension-member detection means, residual-strength detection means, and related circuits [See 2.20.8.1 through 2.20.8.3, 8.6.4.19.12, 8.6.11.11, 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3)(-c)(-2), and 8.10.2.2.2(ss).]

(5) unique or product-specific procedures or methods required for the adjustment or method of measurement of Type B driving machine brakes.

(6) unique or product-specific procedures or methods required to maintain, repair, replace, inspect, or test equipment, such procedures or methods shall be provided by the manufacturer or installer. These procedures and any unique devices required by the procedures for inspection and testing shall be accessible on-site to elevator personnel (see 8.11.1.7).

(7) procedures for inspections, maintenance, replacements, adjustments, and repairs for escalator and moving walk dynamic braking means (see 6.1.5.3.4 and Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figure I-15).

(d) All checkout procedures specifically identified in the Code as required to be written

(1) for elastomeric buffers (see 8.6.4.4.2)

(2) to demonstrate E/E/PES function as intended (see 8.6.4.19.10)

(3) for two-way communication means [see 8.6.4.19.15 and 8.6.5.14.3(1)]

(4) for elevator leveling speed with open doors (see 8.6.4.20.8)

(5) for escalator drive machine and brake (see 8.6.8.15.4)

(6) for escalator reversal stopping device (see 8.6.8.15.7)

(7) for escalator handrail retarding force (see 8.6.8.15.13)

(8) for escalator and moving walk dynamic brake systems (see 8.6.8.15.4)

(e) The following procedures specifically identified in the Code as required to be written:

(1) evacuation procedures for elevators by authorized persons and emergency personnel shall be available on-site (see 8.6.11.5.2 and ASME A17.4)

(2) the procedure for cleaning of a car and hoistway transparent enclosures by authorized persons (see 8.6.11.4.2)

(3) the procedures for the means to prevent software or parameter changes to executable software [see 8.14.1(b)]

(4) the procedures for the means to disable RIO actions and connectivity by elevator, authorized, and emergency personnel [see 8.14.1(a)(2)]

(5) the test procedure for the system to monitor and prevent automatic operation of the elevator with faulty door circuits (see 8.6.4.19.21 and 8.6.5.14.12)

(6) for hydraulic plunger gripper (see 8.6.5.16.4)

(7) for hydraulic elevator overspeed valve (see 8.6.5.16.5)

(f) USI(s) of the executable software associated with the relevant functions in 2.26.1.7.1 and 3.26.11.1 (see also 2.26.1.7.3).

(g) The documentation for the engineering test of skirt panels deflection for units installed or altered under ASME A17.1-2019/CSA B44:19 and later editions (see 8.3.15.5).

(h) The elevator manufacturer or supplier of the installed internet-capable device and internet-capable elevator controller shall provide on-site documentation for cybersecurity maintenance and inspection requirements for the internet-capable equipment in accordance with the applicable requirements of IEC 62443.

(i) Where test enable operation for limited and general test is provided [see 2.26.7(f)], documentation specifying the location of the test enable device (see 2.26.14.1), a list of the electrical protective devices (see 2.26.14.7) that can be made ineffective by the means for limited and general test (see 2.26.14.3 and 2.26.14.4), and an inspection and test procedure to demonstrate compliance with 2.26.14.1 and 2.26.14.3 through 2.26.14.6.

8.6.1.2.3 Where a defective part directly affecting the safety of the operation is identified, the equipment shall be taken out of service until the defective part has been adjusted, repaired, or replaced.

8.6.1.3 Maintenance Personnel. Maintenance, repairs, replacements, and tests shall be performed only by elevator personnel (see Section 1.3).

8.6.1.4 Maintenance Records. Maintenance records shall document compliance with Section 8.6. Instructions for locating the maintenance records of each unit, for viewing on-site, shall be posted on the controller or at the means necessary for test (see 2.7.6.4). The provided instructions shall be permanently legible, with characters a minimum 3 mm (0.125 in.) high. These records shall be retained for the most recent 5 yr or from the date of installation or adoption of this Code edition, whichever is less or as specified by the authority having jurisdiction. Existing maintenance records up to 5 yr shall be retained.

(22) **8.6.1.4.1 On-Site Maintenance Records**

(a) *Maintenance Control Program Records*

(1) A record that shall include the maintenance tasks listed with the associated requirements of Section 8.6 identified in the MCP (8.6.1.2.1), other tests (see 8.6.1.2.2), examinations and adjustments, and the specified scheduled intervals shall be maintained.

(2) The specified scheduled maintenance intervals (see Section 1.3) shall, as applicable, be based on the criteria given in 8.6.1.2.1(e).

(3) MCP records shall be viewable on-site by elevator personnel in either hard copy or electronic format acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and shall include, but are not limited to, the following:

- (-a) site name and address
- (-b) service provider name
- (-c) conveyance identification (I.D.) and type
- (-d) date of record
- (-e) a description of the maintenance task, interval, and associated requirements of Section 8.6

(-f) indication of completion of maintenance task

NOTE [8.6.1.4.1(a)]: The recommended format for documenting MCP records can be found in [Nonmandatory Appendix Y](#). This is only an example format. A specific MCP that includes all maintenance needs is required for each unit.

(b) *Repair and Replacement Records.* The following repairs and replacements shall be recorded and shall be kept on-site for viewing by elevator personnel in either hard copy or electronic format. Instructions for locating the records of each unit for immediate viewing shall be posted on the controller or at the means necessary for test (see 2.7.6.4). The provided instructions shall be permanently legible, with characters a minimum 3 mm (0.125 in.) high. The record shall include an explanation of the repair or replacement, date, and name of the person(s) and/or firm performing the task. The record of repairs and replacements shall be retained by the owner of the equipment for the most recent 5 yr or from the date of installation or adoption of ASME A17.1-2013/CSA B44-13 and later editions, whichever is less, or as specified by the authority having jurisdiction, and shall be a permanent record for the installation. These records may be kept remotely from the site.

(1) Repairs (see 8.6.2.1 through 8.6.2.5) including repairs of components and devices listed in 8.6.4 through 8.6.10.

(2) Replacements (see 8.6.3.1 through 8.6.3.11, except 8.6.3.7 and 8.6.3.10) including replacements of components and devices listed in 8.6.4 through 8.6.10.

(3) Where applicable, the USI(s) (see 2.26.1.7.3) and the associated functions in 2.26.1.7.1 or 3.26.11.1 that are affected.

(c) *Other Records.* The following written records shall be kept on-site for each unit. Instructions for locating the records of each unit for immediate viewing shall be posted on the controller or at the means necessary for test (see 2.7.6.4). The provided instructions shall be permanently legible, with characters a minimum 3 mm (0.125 in.) high. These records shall be retained for the most recent 5 yr or from the date of installation or adoption of ASME A17.1-2013/CSA B44-13 and later editions, whichever is less or as specified by the authority having jurisdiction. The record shall include the date and name of the person(s) and/or firm performing the task.

(1) A record of oil usage (8.6.5.7).

(2) A record of findings for firefighters' service operation required by 8.6.11.1 with identification of the person(s) that performed the operation.

(3) Periodic tests (see 8.6.1.7) shall be documented or recorded in accordance with 8.6.1.7.2.

(4) Written record to document compliance with replacement criteria specified in ASME A17.6 requirement 1.10.1.1(c).

(5) Written records where required by 8.6.11.10.4.

(d) *Permanent Record*

(1) A permanent record of the results of all acceptance tests as required by 8.10.1.1.4 and 8.10.1.1.5 shall be kept with the on-site records.

Test tags, complying with 8.13.3 for marking plates [except lettering shall be 1.6 mm (0.0625 in.)], permanently attached to or adjacent to the controller, shall meet this requirement.

NOTE: This requirement does not apply to equipment installed under ASME A17.1-2010/CSA B44-10 and earlier editions.

(2) For escalators and moving walks installed or altered under ASME A17.1-2019/CSA B44:19 or later editions, a permanent record of verification of conformance with 6.1.3.3.6 or 6.2.3.3.6, as applicable, for a skirt panel or skirt panel supporting components shall be kept with the on-site maintenance records.

8.6.1.4.2 Callbacks (Trouble Calls). A record of callbacks shall be maintained and shall include the description of reported trouble, dates, time, and corrective action(s) taken that are reported by any means to elevator personnel. These records shall be made available to elevator personnel when performing corrective action. For elevator personnel other than personnel performing the corrective action, records shall be available upon request. Instructions on how to report any need for corrective action (trouble calls) to the responsible party shall be posted on the controller or at the means necessary for test (see 2.7.6.4). The instructions shall be permanently legible, with characters a minimum 3 mm (0.125 in.) high.

8.6.1.5 Code Data Plate. The Code Data Plate shall comply with Section 8.9.

8.6.1.6 General Maintenance Methods and Procedures

(22) **8.6.1.6.1 Making Safety Devices or Means Inoperative or Ineffective.** No person shall at any time make inoperative or ineffective any device or means on which safety of users is dependent, including any electrical protective device, except where necessary during tests, inspections (see Sections 8.10 and 8.11), maintenance, repair, and replacement, provided that the installation is first removed from all modes of operation except Inspection Operation or, where provided, modes enabled by the test enable device (see 2.26.14.1).

Such devices shall be restored to their normal operating condition in conformity with the applicable requirements prior to returning the equipment to service (see 2.26.7 and 8.6.1.6).

8.6.1.6.2 Lubrication. All parts of the machinery and equipment requiring lubrication shall be lubricated with lubricants equivalent to the type and grade recommended by the manufacturer.

Alternative lubricants shall be permitted when intended lubrication effects are achieved.

All excess lubricant shall be cleaned from the equipment. Containers used to catch leakage shall not be allowed to overflow.

8.6.1.6.3 Controllers and Wiring

(22)

(a) The interiors of controllers and their components shall be cleaned when necessary to minimize the accumulation of foreign matter that can interfere with the operation of the equipment.

(b) Temporary wiring and insulators or blocks in the armatures or poles of magnetically operated switches, contactors, or relays on equipment in service are prohibited.

(c) When wire jumpers are used during maintenance, repairs, or testing, all jumpers shall be removed and the equipment tested prior to returning it to service. Jumpers shall not be stored in machine rooms, control rooms, hoistways, machinery spaces, control spaces, escalator/moving walk wellways, or pits (see also 8.6.1.6.1).

NOTE [8.6.1.6.3(c)]: See Elevator Industry Field Employees' Safety Handbook for recommended minimum jumper control procedures.

(d) Control and operating circuits and devices shall be maintained in compliance with applicable Code requirements (see 8.6.1.1.2).

(e) Substitution of any wire or current-carrying device for the correct fuse or circuit breaker in an elevator circuit shall not be permitted.

(f) After test enable operation is used (e.g., during maintenance, repairs, troubleshooting, or testing), the test enable device shall be placed in the "OFF" position and the equipment shall be checked for proper operation prior to returning the elevator to service.

8.6.1.6.4 Painting. Care shall be used in the painting of the equipment to ensure that it does not interfere with the proper functioning of any component. Painted components shall be tested for proper operation upon completion of painting.

8.6.1.6.5 Fire Extinguishers. Class ABC fire extinguishers shall be provided in elevator electrical machine rooms, control rooms, and control spaces outside the hoistway intended for full bodily entry, and walk-in machinery and control rooms for escalators and moving walks; and they shall be located convenient to the access door.

8.6.1.6.6 Workmanship. Care should be taken during operations such as torquing, drilling, cutting, and welding to ensure that no component of the assembly is damaged or weakened. Rotating parts shall be properly aligned.

8.6.1.6.7 Signs and Data Plates. Required signs and data plates that are damaged or missing shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.1.7 Periodic Tests. The frequency of periodic tests shall be established by the authority having jurisdiction as required by 8.11.1.3.

NOTE: The recommended intervals for periodic tests can be found in [Nonmandatory Appendix N](#).

8.6.1.7.1 Periodic tests shall be witnessed by an inspector employed by the authority having jurisdiction or by a person authorized by the authority having jurisdiction. The inspector shall conform to the requirements in 8.11.1.1.

- (22) **8.6.1.7.2 Periodic Test Record.** A periodic test record for all periodic tests containing the applicable Code requirement(s) and date(s) performed, and the name of the person or firm performing the test, shall be installed to be readily visible and adjacent to or securely attached to the controller of each unit in the form of a metal tag conforming to 8.13.3. If any of the alternative test methods contained in 8.6.4.20 were performed, then the test tag shall indicate alternative testing was used for the applicable requirement.

- (22) **8.6.1.7.3** No person shall at any time make any required safety device or electrical protective device ineffective, except where necessary during tests. Such devices or means shall be restored to their normal operating condition in conformity with the applicable requirements prior to returning the equipment to service (see 2.26.7).

8.6.1.7.4 All references to “Items” and “Parts” are to Items in ASME A17.2.

8.6.1.7.5 Devices Not Covered in Section 8.6. When any device on which the safety of users is dependent is installed that is not specifically covered in Section 8.6, it shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the requirements of the manufacturer’s or the altering company’s procedures (see 8.6.1.6.1 and 8.7.1.2). Documentation that contains the testing procedures of these devices shall remain with the equipment and be available in the on-site documentation (see 8.6.1.2.2). The removal or disabling of such devices shall be considered an alteration and shall comply with 8.7.1.2.

8.6.2 Repairs

See 8.6.2.1 through 8.6.2.6 for general requirements for repairs.

8.6.2.1 Repair Parts. Repairs shall be made with parts of at least equivalent material, strength, and design (see 8.6.3.1).

8.6.2.2 Welding and Design. Welding and design of welding shall conform to 8.7.1.4 and 8.7.1.5.

8.6.2.3 Repair of Speed Governors. Where a repair is made to a speed governor that affects the tripping linkage or speed adjustment mechanism, the governor shall be checked in conformance with 8.6.4.19.2 and 8.6.4.20.2(a). (22)

Where a repair is made to the governor jaws or associated parts that affect the pull-through force, the governor pull-through force shall be checked in conformance with 8.6.4.19.2(b) and 8.6.4.20.2(b). A test tag conforming to 8.6.4.20.2(c) shall be attached, indicating the date the pull-through test was performed.

8.6.2.4 Repair of Releasing Carrier. When a repair is made to a releasing carrier, the governor rope pull-out and pull-through forces shall be verified in conformance with 8.6.4.20.2(b).

8.6.2.5 Repair of Suspension and Compensating Means and Governor Ropes. Suspension and compensating members and governor ropes shall not be lengthened or repaired by splicing (see 8.7.2.21).

8.6.2.6 Repairs Involving SIL Rated Device(s). SIL rated device(s) used to satisfy 2.26.4.3.2, 2.26.8.2, 2.26.9.3.2(b), 2.26.9.5.1(b), and 2.26.9.6.1(b) shall

- (a) not be repaired in the field
- (b) be permitted to be repaired in accordance with the provisions for repair where included in the listing/certification
- (c) not be affected by other repair(s) such that the listing/certification is invalidated

8.6.3 Replacements

8.6.3.1 Replacement Parts. Replacements shall be made with parts of at least equivalent material, strength, and design. An internet-connected or connectivity-enabled device that is interfaced (directly or indirectly) to an elevator controller or an elevator controller that is connected to the internet shall conform to 8.14.1. (22)

8.6.3.2 Replacement Suspension Means. Suspension means, compensation means, and governor ropes shall be replaced when they no longer conform to the requirements of ASME A17.6. Replacement of suspension means, compensation means, and governor ropes shall conform to the requirements of ASME A17.6 as stated in 8.6.3.2.1 through 8.6.3.2.3.

8.6.3.2.1 For steel wire rope, ASME A17.6, Section 1.10 shall apply.

8.6.3.2.2 For aramid fiber ropes, ASME A17.6, Section 2.9 shall apply.

8.6.3.2.3 For noncircular elastomeric-coated steel suspension members, ASME A17.6, Section 3.7 shall apply.

8.6.3.3 Replacement of Suspension-Means Fastenings and Hitch Plates. Replacement of suspension-means fastenings and hitch plates shall conform to the requirements in 8.6.3.3.1 through 8.6.3.3.5.

8.6.3.3.1 When the suspension-means fastenings are replaced with an alternative means that conforms to 2.20.9, load-carrying ropes shall be in line with the shackle rod.

8.6.3.3.2 Existing hitch plates that do not permit the load-carrying ropes to remain in line with the shackle rods shall have the replacement fastenings staggered in the direction of travel of the elevator and counterweight, or the hitch plates shall be replaced.

8.6.3.3.3 Replacement hitch plates shall conform to 2.15.13 and shall provide proper alignment of load-carrying ropes and shackle rods.

8.6.3.3.4 Replacement fastenings shall be permitted to be installed on the car only, the counterweight only, at either of the dead-end hitches, or at both attachment points.

8.6.3.3.5 Rope fastenings at the drum connection of winding-drum machines shall comply with 8.6.4.10.2.

8.6.3.4 Replacement of Governor or Safety Rope

8.6.3.4.1 Governor ropes shall be the same size, material, and construction as the rope specified by the governor manufacturer, except that a rope the same size but different material or construction shall be permitted to be installed in conformance with 8.7.2.19.

8.6.3.4.2 The replaced governor ropes shall comply with 2.18.5.

8.6.3.4.3 After a governor rope is replaced, the governor pull-through force shall be checked as specified in 8.6.4.20.2(b).

(22) **8.6.3.4.4** A test tag conforming to 8.6.4.20.2(c) indicating the date when the pull-through test was performed shall be attached.

8.6.3.4.5 The safety rope shall comply with 2.17.12.4 and 2.17.12.5.

8.6.3.4.6 A new rope data tag conforming to 2.18.5.3 shall be installed at each rope replacement, and the date of the rope replacement shall be recorded in the maintenance records [see 8.6.1.4.1(b)(2)].

8.6.3.5 Belts and Chains. If one belt or chain of a set is worn or stretched beyond what is specified in the manufacturer's recommendation, or is damaged so as to require replacement, the entire set shall be replaced.

Sprockets and toothed sheaves shall also be replaced if worn beyond what is specified in the manufacturer's recommendations.

8.6.3.6 Replacement of Speed Governor

8.6.3.6.1 Where a speed governor is replaced, the replacement shall be considered an alteration and shall conform to 8.7.2.19, except when the replacement equip-

ment has been authorized by the original equipment manufacturer as being equivalent to the original make and model or has been verified by a professional engineer as meeting the original design criteria of the elevator system. The governor rope shall be the type and size specified by the governor manufacturer.

The governor shall be tested in accordance with the applicable requirements specified in 8.10.2.3.2(f). Where a Type A safety is used, the inertia application shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(ii)(2)(a).

8.6.3.6.2 When a releasing carrier is provided, it shall conform to 2.17.15, except for replacements with equipment of the same make, model, and manufacturer as that being replaced, which shall conform to the Code under which the releasing carrier was originally installed.

8.6.3.7 Listed/Certified Devices

8.6.3.7.1 Where a listed/certified device is replaced, the replacement shall be subject to the applicable engineering or type test as specified in Section 8.3, or the requirements of CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5. Hoistway door interlocks, hoistway door combination mechanical lock and electric contacts, and door or gate electric contacts shall conform to the type tests specified in 2.12.4.1. The device shall be labeled by the certifying organization (see 8.6.1.1). In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, door panels, frames, and entrances hardware shall be provided with the instructions required by 2.11.18.

8.6.3.7.2 Where a component in a listed/certified device is replaced, the replacement component shall be subject to the requirements of the applicable edition of CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 and/or the engineering or type test in Section 8.3. Hoistway door interlocks, hoistway door combination mechanical lock and electric contacts, and door or gate electric contacts shall conform to the type tests specified in 2.12.4.1. The component shall be included in the original manufacturer's listed/certified device documentation or as a listed/certified replacement component (see 8.6.1.1).

Each replacement component shall be plainly marked for identification in accordance with the certifying organization's procedures. In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, door panels, frames, and entrances hardware shall be provided with the instructions required by 2.11.18.

NOTE (8.6.3.7): Devices that may fall under this requirement include, but are not limited to, hoistway door locking devices and electric contacts, car door contacts and interlocks, hydraulic control valves, escalator steps, fire doors, and electrical equipment.

8.6.3.8 Replacement of Door Reopening Device.

Where a reopening device for power-operated car doors or gates is replaced, the following requirements shall apply:

(a) The door closing force shall comply with the Code in effect at the time of the installation or alteration.

(b) The kinetic energy shall comply with the Code in effect at the time of the installation or alteration. Where a data plate conforming to 2.13.4.2.4 is not required, see [Nonmandatory Appendix Z](#).

(c) When Firefighters' Emergency Operation is provided, door reopening devices and door closing on Phase I and Phase II shall comply with the requirements applicable at the time of installation of the Firefighters' Emergency Operation, except door reopening devices for power-operated doors that are sensitive to smoke or flame shall also conform to 2.27.3.1.6(e).

8.6.3.9 Replacement of Releasing Carrier. Where a replacement is made to a releasing carrier, the governor rope pull-out and pull-through forces shall be verified in conformance with 8.6.4.20.2(b).

8.6.3.10 Replacement of Hydraulic Jack, Plunger, Cylinder, Tanks, and Anticreep Leveling Device

8.6.3.10.1 A hydraulic jack replacement shall be classified as an alteration and shall comply with 8.7.3.23.1.

8.6.3.10.2 A plunger replacement shall be classified as an alteration and shall comply with 8.7.3.23.2.

8.6.3.10.3 A cylinder replacement shall be classified as an alteration and shall comply with 8.7.3.23.3.

(22) **8.6.3.10.4** A tank replacement shall comply with [Section 3.24](#).

(22) **8.6.3.10.5** An anticreep leveling device replacement shall be tested to determine conformance with 8.10.3.4.2.

(22) **8.6.3.11 Replacement of Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings.**

(a) Where any valves, pressure piping, or fittings are replaced, replacements shall conform to [Section 3.19](#) except for 3.19.4.6. (When changing valves, pressure piping, or fittings to a different type, see 8.7.3.24.) The unit shall be tested in accordance with 8.10.3.4.3(a).

(b) A replacement control valve shall conform to 8.6.1.1.2. (When changing a control valve to a different type, see 8.7.3.24.) Relief valves shall be tested in accordance with 8.10.3.4.3(b).

(22) **8.6.3.12 Runby and Clearances After Suspension Means are Replaced.**

8.6.3.12.1 When new suspension means are installed, the minimum top-of-car and top-of-counterweight clearances specified in 2.4.7 and 2.4.8 shall apply and the minimum car and counterweight runby

specified in 2.4.2 shall apply. For rheostatic and single-speed AC control, the runby shall not be less than shown in [Table 8.6.3.12.1](#). Any of the methods or a combination of the methods described in (a) through (c) may be used to satisfy these clearance requirements.

(a) Adjust the length of the suspension means

(b) Provide blocking at the car or counterweight strike plate. The blocking shall be of sufficient strength and secured in place to withstand the reactions of buffer engagement as specified in 8.2.3. If wood blocks are used to directly engage the buffer, a steel plate shall be fastened to the engaging surface or shall be located between that block and the next block to distribute the load upon buffer engagements.

(c) Provide blocking under the car or counterweight buffer or both of sufficient strength and secured in place to withstand the reactions of buffer engagement as described in 8.2.3.

NOTE (8.6.3.12.1): See 2.20.2.2.2(m) and 8.6.4.11.3 when suspension means are first shortened.

8.6.3.13 Replacement of Demarcation Lights. Fluorescent lighting fixtures shall be permitted to be replaced by any type of light source, except incandescent sources, and shall comply with all other applicable step demarcation lighting requirements under which the escalator was installed or altered.

8.6.3.14 Replacements Involving SIL Rated Device(s) (See [Section 1.3](#))

(a) A SIL rated device (see [Section 1.3](#)) used to satisfy 2.26.4.3.2, 2.26.8.2, 2.26.9.3.2(b), 2.26.9.5.1(b), or 2.26.9.6.1(b) shall not be affected by other replacement(s) such that the listing/certification is invalidated.

(b) Where a SIL rated device (see [Section 1.3](#)) used to satisfy 2.26.4.3.2, 2.26.8.2, 2.26.9.3.2(b), 2.26.9.5.1(b), or 2.26.9.6.1(b) is replaced, it shall be considered a replacement only when the replacement device is the original manufacturer's listed/certified SIL rated device or the original manufacturer's listed/certified SIL rated replacement device; otherwise, it shall be considered an alteration [see 8.7.1.9(d)].

Table 8.6.3.12.1
Minimum Bottom Runby for Counterweight Elevators
With Spring Buffers, Elastomeric Buffers, or Solid
Bumpers and Rheostatic Control
or Single-Speed AC Control

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Runby, mm (in.)
≤0.13 (≤25)	75 (3)
>0.13 to 0.25 (>25 to 50)	150 (6)
>0.25 to 0.50 (>50 to 100)	225 (9)
>0.50 to 1.0 (>100 to 200)	300 (12)

(c) Where a non-SIL rated device used to satisfy 2.26.4.3.1, 2.26.8.2, 2.26.9.3.2(a), 2.26.9.5.1(a), or 2.26.9.6.1(a) is replaced with a SIL rated device, it shall be considered an alteration [see 8.7.1.9(c)].

8.6.3.15 Replacement of Car Doors and Gates. Where a car door or gate is replaced, the replacement shall conform as follows:

(a) *On Passenger Elevators*

(1) The requirements of 2.14.4 apply, except 2.14.4.10. The door closing force shall comply with the Code in effect at the time of the installation or alteration.

(2) The requirements of 2.14.5 apply, except existing folding car doors shall be permitted to be replaced with folding car doors.

(3) The following apply to the replacement of existing folding car doors:

(-a) Requirement (a)(1).

(-b) Requirement (a)(2), except 2.14.5.3, 2.14.5.6.2, 2.14.5.8, and 2.14.5.9 do not apply.

(-c) The effort needed to prevent a folding car door from closing shall conform to 2.13.4.2.3.

(-d) Folding car doors shall not be power opened to a distance exceeding one-third of the clear opening, and in no case shall the distance be more than 250 mm (10 in.).

(-e) Handles of manually operated folding car doors nearest the car operating device on elevators operated from the car only shall be located so that the nearest handle is not more than 1220 mm (48 in.) from the car operating device when the folding door is closed, and is between 1220 mm (48 in.) and 380 mm (15 in.) above the car floor.

(b) *On Freight Elevators*

(1) The requirements of 2.14.4 apply, except 2.14.4.10. The door closing force shall comply with the Code in effect at the time of the installation or alteration.

(2) The requirements of 2.14.6 apply.

- (22) **8.6.3.16 Replacement of Driving Machine Brake.** When a driving machine brake is replaced, it shall conform to 2.24.8.2 through 2.24.8.7. See also 8.6.4.6.2.

- (22) **8.6.3.17 Replacement of Driving Machine or Controller**

8.6.3.17.1 Replacement of Complete Driving Machine

(a) Where an electric elevator driving machine (see Section 1.3) is replaced, it shall be considered an alteration and shall conform to 8.7.2.25.1, except the replacement driving machine shall be permitted to conform to the code under which the original machine was installed or altered if either of the following apply:

(1) The driving machine is replaced with equipment approved by the original equipment elevator manufacturer as being equivalent to the original make and model.

(2) The replaced driving machine is certified by a licensed professional engineer as being equivalent to the original make and model and able to meet the original design criteria of the elevator system.

(b) Where an electric elevator driving machine is replaced in accordance with (a)(1) or (a)(2), it shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the requirements specified in 8.10.2.4.1(a).

8.6.3.17.2 Replacement of Controller

(a) Where an elevator controller is replaced with any of the following, the replacement shall be considered an alteration and shall conform to 8.7.2.27.4 or 8.7.3.31.5, as applicable:

(1) a motion controller

(2) an operation controller

(3) a motion and operation controller

(4) a door controller

(b) Where an elevator controller is replaced with equipment equivalent to the original make and model due to damage or loss and for the purpose of matching other equipment in the group, the replacement controller shall be permitted to conform to the code under which the original controller was installed or last altered. The replacement controller shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the requirements specified in 8.10.2.4.1(b) or 8.10.3.4.1, as applicable.

8.6.4 Maintenance and Testing of Electric Elevators

The maintenance and testing of electric elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.4.

8.6.4.1 Suspension and Compensating Means

8.6.4.1.1 Suspension and compensating means shall be kept sufficiently clean so that they can be visually inspected.

8.6.4.1.2 Steel wire ropes shall be lightly lubricated. Precautions shall be taken in lubricating suspension steel wire ropes to prevent the loss of traction. Lubrication shall be in accordance with instructions on the rope data tag [see 2.20.2.2.2(n)], if provided.

8.6.4.1.3 Equal tension shall be maintained between individual suspension members in each set. Suspension members are considered to be equally tensioned when the smallest tension measured is within 10% of the highest tension measured. When suspension member tension is checked or adjusted, an antirotation device conforming to the requirements of 2.20.9.8 shall be permitted.

8.6.4.2 Governor Wire Ropes

8.6.4.2.1 The ropes shall be kept clean.

8.6.4.2.2 Governor wire ropes shall not be lubricated after installation. If lubricants have been applied to governor ropes, the governor ropes shall be replaced and the governor and safety shall be tested as specified in [8.6.4.19.2\(b\)](#) and [8.6.4.20.2\(b\)](#).

8.6.4.3 Lubrication of Guide Rails

8.6.4.3.1 The lubrication of guide rails shall be in accordance with the requirements on the crosshead data plate (see [2.17.16](#)), where provided.

8.6.4.3.2 Where a data plate is not provided, the lubrication of guide rails shall conform to the following:

(a) Guide rails, except those of elevators equipped with roller or other types of guiding members not requiring lubrication, shall be kept lubricated.

(b) Where sliding-type safeties are used, the guide-rail lubricants, or prelubricated or impregnated guide shoe gibs, where used, shall be a type recommended by the manufacturer of the safety (see [8.6.1.6.2](#) and [2.17.16](#)).

8.6.4.3.3 If lubricants other than those recommended by the manufacturer are used, a safety test conforming to [8.6.4.20.1](#) shall be made to demonstrate that the safety will function as required by [2.17.3](#).

8.6.4.3.4 Rails shall be kept clean and free of lint and dirt accumulation and excessive lubricant. Means shall be provided at the base of the rails to collect excess lubricant.

8.6.4.3.5 Rust-preventive compounds such as paint, mixtures of graphite and oil, and similar coatings shall not be applied to the guiding surfaces, unless recommended by the manufacturer of the safety. Once applied, the safety shall be checked as specified in [8.6.4.20.1](#).

8.6.4.4 Buffers

8.6.4.4.1 Oil Buffers

(a) The oil level shall be maintained at the level indicated by the manufacturer. The grade of oil to be used shall be as indicated on the buffer marking plate, where required (see [2.22.4.10](#) and [2.22.4.11](#)).

(b) Buffer plungers shall be kept clean and shall not be coated or painted with a substance that will interfere with their operation.

(c) Buffer oil shall not be stored in the pit or hoistway or on top of the car.

8.6.4.4.2 Elastomeric Buffers. The elastomeric buffer shall be verified for any life-cycle conditions that may affect buffer performance, as specified by the manufacturer.

8.6.4.5 Safety Mechanisms

8.6.4.5.1 Safety mechanisms shall be kept lubricated and free of rust, corrosion, and dirt that can interfere with the operation of the safety.

8.6.4.5.2 The required clearance between the safety jaws and the rail shall be maintained.

8.6.4.6 Brakes

8.6.4.6.1 The driving-machine brake shall be maintained to ensure proper operation, including, but not limited to, the following:

- (a) residual pads (antimagnetic pads)
- (b) lining and running clearances
- (c) pins and levers
- (d) springs
- (e) sleeves and guide bushings
- (f) disks and drums
- (g) brake coil and plunger
- (h) holding and decelerating capacities (see [2.24.8.3](#))

8.6.4.6.2 If any part of the driving-machine brake is changed or adjusted that can affect the holding capacity or decelerating capacity of the brake when required (see [2.24.8.3](#)), it shall be adjusted or replaced, as applicable (see [2.24.8.7](#) and [8.6.3.16](#)), and checked by means that will verify its proper function, holding capacity, and decelerating capacity. A test complying with [8.6.4.20.4](#) shall be performed.

8.6.4.6.3 If any part of the emergency brake is changed or adjusted that can affect the holding capacity or decelerating capacity of the emergency brake when required (see [2.19.3](#)), it shall be adjusted and checked by means that will verify its proper function and holding capacity. A test complying with [8.6.4.20.11](#) shall be performed.

8.6.4.6.4 If any part of the driving-machine brake assembly that would affect the holding capacity or decelerating capacity is determined to be contaminated [i.e., contamination caused by any driving-machine fluid leak (see [2.24.8.6](#)) or other material], the source of the contamination shall be eliminated, and the brake shall be repaired or replaced. A test complying with [8.6.4.20.4](#) shall be performed prior to returning the elevator to service. See also [8.6.1.2.3](#).

8.6.4.6.5 If any part of the emergency brake assembly that would affect the holding capacity or decelerating capacity is determined to be contaminated [i.e., contamination caused by any driving-machine fluid leak (see [2.24.8.6](#)) or other material], the source of the contamination shall be eliminated, and the brake shall be repaired or replaced. A test complying with [8.6.4.20.11](#) shall be performed prior to returning the elevator to service. See also [8.6.1.2.3](#).

8.6.4.7 Cleaning of Hoistways and Pits

8.6.4.7.1 Hoistways and pits shall be kept free of dirt and rubbish and shall not be used for storage purposes.

8.6.4.7.2 Landing blocks and pipe stands shall be permitted to be stored in the pit, provided that they do not interfere with the operation of the elevator and do not present a hazard for persons working in the pit.

8.6.4.7.3 Pit access doors shall be kept closed and locked.

8.6.4.7.4 Water and oil shall not be allowed to accumulate on pit floors.

8.6.4.8 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

8.6.4.8.1 Floors and machinery and control spaces shall be kept free of water, dirt, rubbish, oil, and grease.

8.6.4.8.2 Articles or materials not necessary for the maintenance or operation of the elevator shall not be stored in machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms.

8.6.4.8.3 Flammable liquids having a flash point of less than 44°C (110°F) shall not be kept in such rooms or spaces.

8.6.4.8.4 Access doors shall be kept closed and locked.

8.6.4.8.5 Machinery spaces and control spaces located in the hoistway shall not be used for storage purposes (see also 8.6.4.7.1).

8.6.4.9 Cleaning of the Tops of Cars. The tops of cars shall be kept free of oil, water, dirt, and rubbish, and shall not be used for storing lubricants, spare parts, tools, or other items.

8.6.4.10 Refastening or Resocketing of Car-Hoisting Ropes on Winding-Drum Machines

8.6.4.10.1 General. The hoisting ropes of elevators having winding-drum driving machines with 1:1 roping, if the babbitted rope socket type, shall be resocketed, or for other type of fastenings, replaced or moved on the rope to a point above the existing fastening at the car ends at intervals no longer than

- (a) 1 yr, for machines located over the hoistway
- (b) 2 yr, for machines located below or at the side of the hoistway
- (c) where auxiliary rope-fastening devices conforming to 2.20.10 are installed, refastening at the periods specified is not required, provided that, where such devices are installed, all hoisting ropes shall be refastened on the failure or indication of failure of any rope fastening.

(d) where the elevator is equipped with a drum counterweight, the fastenings shall be examined for fatigue or damage at the socket. Where fatigue or damage is detected, the ropes shall be refastened in conformance with 8.6.4.10.2.

8.6.4.10.2 Procedure

(a) In resocketing babbitted rope sockets or replacing other types of fastenings, a sufficient length shall be cut from the end of the rope to remove damaged or fatigued portions. The fastenings shall conform to 2.20.9. Where the drum ends of the ropes extend beyond their clamps or sockets, means shall be provided to prevent the rope ends from coming out of the inside of the drum and to prevent interference with other parts of the machine.

(b) The suspension wire ropes shall conform to 2.20.7.

8.6.4.10.3 Tags. A legible metal tag shall be securely attached to one of the wire rope fastenings after each resocketing or changing to other types of fastenings and shall bear the following information:

- (a) the name of the person or firm who performed the resocketing or changing to other types of fastenings
- (b) the date on which the rope was resocketed or other types of fastening changed

The material and marking of the tags shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.5 mm (0.0625 in.).

8.6.4.11 Runby

(22)

8.6.4.11.1 The car and counterweight runby shall be maintained to ensure the top car clearances are not reduced below those required at the time of installation or alteration. The final terminal-stopping device shall remain operational (see also 8.6.3.3.3).

8.6.4.11.2 The runby specified in

- (a) 2.4.2.1(a) and 2.4.2.2 shall be permitted to be eliminated
- (b) 2.4.2.1(b) for spring return oil buffers shall be maintained to not exceed the 25% compression of the buffer stroke with the car level with the terminal landings

8.6.4.11.3 When suspension means are first shortened, the required information shall be recorded on the data tag [see 2.20.2.2.2(m)].

8.6.4.12 Governors

8.6.4.12.1 Governors shall be examined to ensure that all seals are intact and manually operated to determine that all moving parts, including the rope-grip jaws and switches, operate freely.

8.6.4.12.2 Governors, governor ropes, and all sheaves shall be free from contaminants or obstructions, or both, that interfere with operation or function, including the accumulation of rope lubricant or materials, or both, in the grooves of governors or sheaves.

8.6.4.13 Door Systems

(22) **8.6.4.13.1 General.** All landing and car door or gate mechanical and electrical components shall be maintained to ensure safe and proper operation, including but not limited to, the following:

- (a) hoistway door interlocks or mechanical locks and electric contacts
- (b) car door electric contacts or car door interlocks, where required
- (c) door reopening devices
- (d) vision panels and grilles, where required
- (e) hoistway door unlocking devices and escutcheons
- (f) hangers, tracks, door rollers, up-thrusts, and door safety retainers, where required
- (g) astragals and resilient members, door space guards, and sight guards, where required
- (h) sills and bottom guides, fastenings, condition, and engagement
- (i) clutches, engaging vanes, retiring cams, and engaging rollers
- (j) interconnecting means
- (k) door closers, where required
- (l) means to restrict hoistway or car door opening and expiration date for the auxiliary power supply, where required

8.6.4.13.2 Kinetic Energy and Force Limitation for Automatic Closing, Horizontal Sliding Car and Hoistway Doors or Gates. Where a power-operated horizontally sliding door is closed by momentary pressure or by automatic means, the closing kinetic energy and closing force shall be maintained to conform to 2.13.4 and 2.13.5. Where a data plate conforming to 2.13.4.2.4 is not required, see [Nonmandatory Appendix Z](#).

8.6.4.14 Hoistway Access Switches. Hoistway access switches, where provided, shall be maintained.

8.6.4.15 Car Emergency System. Emergency operation of signaling devices (see [Section 2.27](#)), lighting (see 2.14.7), communication (see 2.27.1.1.2, 2.27.1.1.3, and 2.27.1.2), and ventilation (see 2.14.2.3) shall be maintained.

8.6.4.16 Stopping Accuracy. The elevator shall be maintained to provide a stopping accuracy at the landings during normal operation as appropriate for the type of control, in accordance with applicable Code requirements.

8.6.4.17 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. Devices for ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall be maintained (see [Section 2.19](#)).

8.6.4.18 Compensation Sheaves and Switches. Suspension and compensation means shall be maintained to prevent the compensation sheave from reaching the upper or lower limit of travel and to prevent unintended

actuation of compensation sheave switch(es) during normal operation.

8.6.4.19 Periodic Test Requirements — Category 1

NOTE: For test frequency, see [8.11.1.3](#).

8.6.4.19.1 Oil Buffers. Car and counterweight buffers shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable plunger return requirements (Item 5.9.2.1).

8.6.4.19.2 Safeties

(a) *Examinations.* All working parts of car and counterweight safeties shall be examined to determine that they are in satisfactory operating condition and that they conform to the applicable requirements of [8.7.2.14](#) through [8.7.2.28](#) (see [2.17.10](#) and [2.17.11](#)). Test the function and operation of the switch operated by the safety. Check the level of the oil in the oil buffer and the operation of the buffer compression switch on Type C safeties.

(b) *Tests.* Safeties shall be subjected to the following tests with no load in the car:

(1) Type A, Type B, or Type C governor-operated safeties shall be operated by manually tripping the governor with the car operating at the slowest operating speed in the down direction. The switch operated by the car safety mechanism shall, for the duration of the test, be temporarily rendered inoperative. If the governor is manually tripped, it must be rendered inoperative. Where application of the emergency brake required by [2.19.3](#) occurs, the means to actuate the emergency brake, for the duration of the test, shall be temporarily disabled to prevent its assistance in stopping.

In this test, the safety shall bring the car to rest promptly.

In the case of Type B safeties, the stopping distance is not required to conform to [2.17.3](#).

In the case of Type C safeties, full oil buffer compression is not required.

In the case of Type A, Type B, or Type C safeties employing rollers or dogs for application of the safety, the rollers or dogs are not required to operate their full travel (Item 2.29.2.1).

(2) Governor-operated wood guide-rail safeties shall be tested by manually tripping the governor with the car at rest and moving the car in the down direction until it is brought to rest by the safety and the hoisting ropes slip on traction sheaves or become slack on winding-drum sheaves [Item 2.29.2(d)].

(3) Type A and wood guide-rail safeties without governors that are operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the hoisting ropes shall be tested by obtaining the necessary slack rope to cause it to function (Item 2.29.2.1).

8.6.4.19.3 Governors. Governors shall be operated manually to determine that all parts, including those that impart the governor pull-through tension to the governor rope, operate freely [Item 2.13.2.1(a)].

8.6.4.19.4 Slack-Rope Devices and Stop Motion Switch on Winding-Drum Machines. Slack-rope devices on winding-drum machines shall be operated manually and tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements. The final terminal stopping device and the machine final (stop motion switch) shall be examined and tested by disabling the normal stopping device, normal terminal stopping device, and final terminal stopping device located in the hoistway and operating the unit to verify proper operation (Item 2.20).

8.6.4.19.5 Normal and Final Terminal Stopping Devices. Normal and final terminal stopping devices shall be examined and tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (see Section 2.25) (Items 2.20, 2.28.2.1, 3.5.2.1, and 3.6.2.1).

8.6.4.19.6 Firefighters' Emergency Operation. Firefighters' Emergency Operation (Phase I and Phase II) shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements. Phase I recall shall be tested by individually activating fire alarm initiating device inputs to the elevator control, the three-position key switch at the designated landing, and, where provided, the two-position switch at the building fire control station (see Part 6).

(22) **8.6.4.19.7 Emergency or Standby Power Operation.** Operation of elevators equipped with emergency or standby power shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (Item 1.17.2.1). Tests shall be performed with no load in the car.

8.6.4.19.8 Power Operation of the Door System. The closing forces and speed of power-operated hoistway door systems shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (Item 1.8). For elevators required to comply with 2.13.4.2.4, the time in the door Code zone distance shall be measured and compared with the time specified on the door marking plate.

8.6.4.19.9 Broken Rope, Tape, or Chain Switch. Where a rope, tape, or chain is used to connect the motion of the car to the machine room normal limit, the switch that senses failure of this connection shall be tested for compliance with 2.26.2.6 (Item 3.26.1.1).

8.6.4.19.10 Functional Safety of SIL Rated Device(s). Verify the SIL rated device(s) used to satisfy 2.26.4.3.2, 2.26.8.2, 2.26.9.3.2(b), 2.26.9.5.1(b), and 2.26.9.6.1(b) is as identified on wiring diagrams (see 8.6.1.6.3) with part identification, SIL, and certification identification information. The person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that SIL rated devices, safety functions (see Table 2.26.4.3.2), and related circuits operate as intended.

8.6.4.19.11 Ascending Car Overspeed Protection and Unintended Car Movement Devices, and Emergency Brake

(a) *Examinations.* All working parts of ascending car overspeed protection and unintended car movement devices shall be examined to determine that they are in satisfactory operating condition and that they conform to the applicable requirements of 2.19.1.2(a) and 2.19.2.2(a).

(b) *Tests.* Ascending car overspeed protection shall be subjected to tests with no load in the car at the slowest operating (inspection) speed in the up direction.

(c) *Tests.* Unintended car movement shall be subjected to tests with no load in the car at the slowest operating (inspection) speed in the up direction.

8.6.4.19.12 Traction-Loss Detection Means. Where provided, conformance with the traction-loss detection means specified in 2.20.8.1 shall be demonstrated by either of the following:

(a) causing relative motion between the drive sheave and the suspension means by bottoming the car or counterweight [see 8.6.4.20.10(b)]

(b) an alternative test provided in the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(4)]

8.6.4.19.13 Broken-Suspension-Member and Residual-Strength Detection Means. Where provided, testing of broken-suspension-member and residual-strength detection means shall comply with the following:

(a) The broken-suspension-member detection means shall be tested by simulating a slack suspension member or a loss of a suspension member as appropriate (see 2.20.8.2).

(b) Suspension member residual-strength detection means shall be tested to simulate a reduction of residual strength to 2.20.8.3.

8.6.4.19.14 Occupant Evacuation Operation. Occupant Evacuation Operation shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements. Deficiencies shall be corrected. A record of findings shall be available to the building owner and the authority having jurisdiction.

8.6.4.19.15 Emergency Communications. Emergency communications shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (Item 1.6). A written checkout procedure shall be provided by the manufacturer of the communications means or the person or firm maintaining the equipment.

8.6.4.19.16 Means to Restrict Hoistway or Car Door Opening. Means to restrict hoistway or car door opening shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (Item 1.18).

8.6.4.19.17 Earthquake Operation. Earthquake operation shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements. Deficiencies shall be

corrected. A record of findings shall be available to the building owner and the authority having jurisdiction (Item 2.42).

8.6.4.19.18 Door Reopening Device(s). The detection means of the door reopening device(s) shall be examined and tested to verify proper operation (Item 1.1.1).

8.6.4.19.19 Sequence Operation of Power Door Systems. Ensure that sequence operation, where provided, is functioning according to Code requirements in [Section 2.13](#) (Item 4.7).

8.6.4.19.20 Testing of Alternative Arrangements and ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7-Conforming Equipment. As required by the manufacturer and/or an ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 Code Compliance Document (CCD), tests shall be performed

(a) on equipment applied under alternative arrangements [see [8.6.1.2.2\(c\)\(2\)](#)]

(b) on equipment specified in an ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 CCD [see [8.6.1.2.2\(c\)\(3\)](#)]

- (22) **8.6.4.19.21 System to Monitor and Prevent Automatic Operation of the Elevator With Faulty Door Circuits.** Where provided, the system to prevent automatic operation of the elevator with faulty door circuits (see [2.26.5](#)) shall be tested.

The person or firm maintaining the equipment shall provide a written test procedure as part of the on-site documentation [see [8.6.1.2.2\(d\)\(5\)](#)] and demonstrate that the elevator meets the applicable requirements of [2.26.5](#) and ASME A17.3, para. 3.10.12.

8.6.4.20 Periodic Test Requirements — Category 5

NOTE: For test frequency, see [8.11.1.3](#).

8.6.4.20.1 Car and Counterweight Safeties. Type A, Type B, and Type C car and counterweight safeties shall be tested in accordance with (a) or, subject to approval by the authority having jurisdiction, with (b).

(a) *Rated Load and Rated Speed Test.* Car safeties, except those operating on wood guide rails, and their governors, shall be tested with rated load in the car. Counterweight safety tests shall be made with no load in the car. The car speed at which the governor trips shall be determined by means of a handheld tachometer or other device designed to measure car speed, such as controllers, service tools, and accelerometers. Tests shall be made by tripping the governor by hand at the rated speed. If the governor is equipped with a switch that operates when the governor is manually tripped, it must be rendered inoperative. The car safety mechanism switch shall not be rendered inoperative. The emergency brake required by [2.19.3](#) shall be disabled to prevent it from operating during this test. Since the counterweight safety does not have a safety mechanism switch, the circuit that would remove power from the driving-machine motor and brake

must be opened as soon as the elevator stops to minimize slack rope and fallback of the car. The following operational conditions shall be checked (Item 2.29.2):

(1) Type B safeties shall stop the car with the rated load within the required range of stopping distances for which the governor is tripped (Item 2.29.2) and the level of the platform checked for conformance with [2.17.9.2](#).

(2) For Type A safeties and Type A safety parts of Type C safeties, there shall be sufficient travel of the safety rollers or dogs remaining after the test to bring the car and its rated load to rest on safety application at governor tripping speed. The level of the platform shall be checked for conformance with [2.17.9.2](#).

(b) *Alternative Test Method for Car Safeties.* The alternative test methods shall comply with [8.6.11.10](#) and the following:

(1) The testing of safeties with any load in the car, centered on each quarter of the platform symmetrically with relation to the centerlines of the platform from no load up to rated load, and at not less than rated speed shall be permitted provided that both

(-a) when the alternative test is performed, the test shall stop the car and verify that the safeties will be capable of stopping an overspeeding car in accordance with the requirements of [Section 2.17](#) applicable to the specific classification of safeties

(-b) when applied, the method shall verify that the safeties perform or are capable of performing in compliance with (a) and the platform shall not be out of level more than 30 mm/m (0.36 in./ft) in any direction

(2) The periodic test record shall be completed and installed as required by [8.6.1.7.2](#).

8.6.4.20.2 Governors

(22)

(a) The tripping speed of the governor and the speed at which the governor overspeed switch, where provided, operates shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements, and the adjustable means shall be sealed (Item 2.13.2.1).

(b) The governor rope pull-through and pull-out forces shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements, and the adjustment means shall be sealed (Item 2.13.2.1).

(c) After these tests, a tag conforming to [8.13.3](#) indicating the date of the governor tests, together with the name of the person or firm that performed the tests, shall be attached to the governor in a permanent manner.

8.6.4.20.3 Oil Buffers

(22)

(a) Car oil buffers shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements by either

(1) running the car onto the buffer with rated load at rated speed or

(2) subject to approval by the authority having jurisdiction, either

(-a) running the car with any load, from no load up to rated load onto the buffer at rated speed when the requirements of 8.6.11.10 are complied with, provided that when applied the method verifies that the buffer performs or is capable of performing in compliance with (a), except as specified in (b) and (c) (Item 5.9.2.1). Counterweight oil buffers shall be tested by running the counterweight onto its buffer at rated speed with no load in the car, except as specified in (b) and (c) (Item 5.9.2.1) or

(-b) running the car onto the buffer with any load, from no load up to rated load, and at less than rated speed, when the requirements of 8.6.11.10 are complied with, provided that when applied, the method verifies that the buffer performs or is capable of performing in compliance with (a)

(b) For reduced-stroke buffers, this test shall be made at the reduced striking speed permitted (Item 5.9.2.1).

(c) This test is not required where a Type C safety is used (see 8.6.4.20.1).

(d) In making these tests, the normal and emergency terminal stopping devices shall be made temporarily inoperative. The final terminal stopping devices shall remain operative and be temporarily relocated, if necessary, to permit compression of the buffer during the test.

(e) After completion of the test, a metal tag, indicating the date of the test, together with the name of the person or firm who performed the test, shall be attached to the buffer [Item 5.3.2(b)].

(f) Counterweight oil buffers shall be tested by running the counterweight onto its buffer at rated speed with no load in the car, except as specified in (b) and (c) (Item 5.9.2.1), or at reduced speed if the requirements of 8.6.11.10 are met.

(g) A periodic test record as required in 8.6.1.7.2 shall be provided.

- (22) **8.6.4.20.4 Driving-Machine Brake(s).** For passenger elevators and all freight elevators, the driving-machine brake shall be tested for compliance with applicable requirements, in accordance with (a) or, subject to approval by the authority having jurisdiction, with (b).

For elevators installed under ASME A17.1-2000/CSA B44-00 and later editions, have the brake setting verified in accordance with the data on the brake marking plate.

Upon completion of the test, the means of adjusting the holding capacity shall be sealed, if applicable (see 2.24.8.7.3), to prevent changing the adjustment without breaking the seal. The seal shall bear or otherwise attach the identification of the person or firm that installed it. (See also 8.6.1.7.2.)

(a) Test with load per Table 8.6.4.20.4. Place the load as shown in Table 8.6.4.20.4 in the car. The driving-machine brake, on its own, shall hold the car with this load. With no load in the car, the driving-machine brake shall hold the empty car at rest, and shall decelerate an empty car traveling in the up direction from governor tripping speed. The driving-machine brake on freight elevators

of Class C2 loading, when loaded to their maximum design load, shall hold the elevator car at rest (Item 2.17.2.1).

(b) *Alternative Test Method for Driving-Machine Brakes.* The alternative test methods shall comply with 8.6.11.10 and the following:

(1) Any method of verifying conformity of the driving-machine brake with the applicable Code requirements (see 2.24.8.3 and Table 8.6.4.20.4) shall be permitted, including the testing method of the brakes with or without any load in the car, provided that when applied, the method verifies that the brake performs or is capable of performing in compliance with (a).

(2) A periodic test record as required in 8.6.1.7.2 shall be provided.

8.6.4.20.5 Reserved for Future Use

8.6.4.20.6 Emergency Terminal Stopping and Speed-Limiting Devices. Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices, where provided, shall be tested for conformance with applicable requirements (see 2.25.4) (Item 5.3.2.1). For static control elevators, emergency terminal stopping devices, when provided, shall be tested for conformance with applicable requirements (see 2.25.4) (Item 2.28.2.1).

8.6.4.20.7 Power Opening of Doors. Determine that power opening of car and hoistway doors only occurs as permitted by the applicable requirements (Item 1.10.2).

8.6.4.20.8 Leveling Zone and Leveling Speed. Check that the leveling zone does not exceed the maximum allowable distance. Check that the leveling speed does not exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). For static control elevators, the person or firm installing or maintaining the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that the leveling speed with the doors open is limited to a maximum of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) and that the speed-limiting (or speed monitor) means is independent of the normal means of controlling this speed [Item 1.10.2(b)].

8.6.4.20.9 Inner Landing Zone. For static control elevators, check that the zone in which the car can move with the doors open is not more than 75 mm (3 in.) above or below the landing (Item 1.10.2.1).

**Table 8.6.4.20.4
Brake Test Loads**

Class of Service	Not Permitted to Carry Passengers	Permitted to Carry Passengers
Passenger	Not applicable	125% rated load
Freight	Rated load	125% rated load
One-piece load by 2.16.7	Rated load or one-piece load, whichever is greater	125% rated load or one-piece load, whichever is greater

- (22) **8.6.4.20.10 Braking System, Traction, and Traction Limits.** Traction and traction limits on traction elevators shall be verified for compliance with 2.24.2.3 in accordance with (a) or, subject to approval by the authority having jurisdiction, with (b).

(a) *Dynamic Stopping Test.* Traction elevators shall be tested to ensure that

(1) during an emergency stop initiated by any of the electrical protective device(s) listed in 2.26.2 (except 2.26.2.13) (except buffer switches for oil buffers used with Type C car safeties) at the rated speed in the down direction, with passenger elevators and freight elevators permitted to carry passengers carrying 125% of their rated load, or with freight elevators carrying their rated load, cars shall safely stop and hold the load (see 2.24.2.3.1 through 2.24.2.3.3)

(2) if either the car or the counterweight bottoms on its buffers or becomes otherwise immovable, one of the following shall occur (see 2.24.2.3.4):

(-a) the suspension means shall lose traction with respect to the drive sheave and not allow the car or counterweight to be raised

(-b) the driving system shall stall and not allow the car or counterweight to be raised

(3) With a load in the car in accordance with Table 8.6.4.20.4, the braking system and traction relation shall be tested to show that the system can safely stop and hold the car and, where required by 2.16.2.2.4(c), shall releve the car.

(b) *Alternative Test Method for Braking System, Traction, and Traction Limits.* Alternative test methods shall comply with 8.6.11.10 and the following:

(1) Other methods for verifying traction for compliance with 2.24.2.3, and traction limits in compliance with 2.24.2.3.4, shall be permitted, provided the test method complies with the following:

(-a) When applied, the method shall verify that the elevator traction system performs, or is capable of performing, in compliance with the performance requirements of (a).

(-b) The braking system and traction relation shall be tested to show the system can safely stop and hold the car and, where required by 2.16.2.2.4(c), shall releve the car without a load in the car.

(2) A periodic test record as required in 8.6.1.7.2 shall be provided.

- (22) **8.6.4.20.11 Emergency Brake**

(a) *Emergency Brake and Ascending Car Overspeed Protection.* For passenger elevators and all freight elevators, the emergency brake shall be tested for compliance with 2.19.3.2. Verify the setting of the ascending car overspeed detection means.

(b) *Emergency Brake and Unintended Car Movement Protection.* Test the unintended car movement protection and the emergency brake in the down direction with 125% of rated load at the landing above the bottom landing.

(c) *Alternative Test Methods for Emergency Brakes.* The alternative test methods shall comply with 8.6.11.10 and the following:

(1) Any method of verifying that the emergency brake conforms with the applicable code requirements (see 2.19.3.2) shall be permitted, including the testing method of the emergency brake with or without any load in the car, provided that when applied, the method verifies that the emergency brake performs or is capable of performing in compliance with (a) and (b).

(2) A test tag as required in 8.6.1.7.2 shall be provided.

8.6.4.21 Drive Sheaves With Nonmetallic Groove Surfaces and Steel Wire Ropes. Where steel wire ropes have worn through a nonmetallic drive-sheave groove surface and have not damaged the supporting sheave surface beneath the nonmetallic sheave groove surface, the groove surfaces shall be replaced and the steel wire ropes shall be inspected for conformance with the criteria of ASME A17.6, Section 1.10, and replaced, if necessary. Where the sheave-supporting surfaces have been damaged, the drive sheave shall also be replaced or repaired and the groove surfaces shall be replaced.

8.6.4.22 Maintenance of Seismic Devices

8.6.4.22.1 A seismic detection device, where provided, shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

8.6.4.22.2 The counterweight displacement detection device components, where provided, shall be

(a) maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations

(b) properly aligned and tensioned and kept free of dirt, debris, and other contaminants that may interfere with proper operation

8.6.4.23 Executable Software Verification. Where (22) executable software for functions listed in 2.26.1.7.1 has changed as the result of repair or replacement, requiring a new USI, the related safety function(s) shall be tested on-site for the applicable installation and logged in the repair and replacement record [see 8.6.1.2.2(f)].

8.6.4.24 System to Monitor and Prevent Automatic Operation of Passenger and Freight Elevators with Faulty Door Contact Circuits. All automatic passenger and freight elevators shall comply with 2.26.5. (22)

8.6.5 Maintenance and Testing of Hydraulic Elevators

The maintenance and testing of hydraulic elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.4 and 8.6.5.

8.6.5.1 Pressure Tanks

8.6.5.1.1 Cleaning. Pressure tanks shall be thoroughly cleaned internally at least every 3 yr and prior to the inspection and test required by 8.6.5.15.

8.6.5.1.2 Level. The liquid level in pressure tanks should be maintained at about two-thirds of the capacity of the tank.

8.6.5.2 Piston Rods. Piston rods of roped-hydraulic elevators shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to the test required by 8.6.5.15.

8.6.5.3 Water-Hydraulic Plungers. Plungers of water-hydraulic elevators shall be thoroughly cleaned to remove any buildup of rust and scale prior to the test required by 8.6.5.15.

8.6.5.4 Tank Levels. The level of oil in the oil tanks shall be checked and, where necessary, adjusted to comply with the prescribed minimum and maximum levels.

8.6.5.5 Gland Packings and Seals

8.6.5.5.1 Examination and Maintenance. Where pressure piping, valves, and cylinders use packing glands or seals, they shall be examined and maintained to prevent excessive loss of fluid. When a cylinder packing or seal or a pressure-piping seal is replaced, the integrity of the entire hydraulic system shall be verified by operating it at relief-valve pressure for not less than 15 s.

8.6.5.5.2 Collection of Oil Leakage. Oil leakage collected from each cylinder head seal or packing gland shall not exceed 19 L (5 gal) before removal. The container shall be covered and shall not be permitted to overflow.

8.6.5.6 Flexible Hoses and Fittings. Flexible hose and fittings assemblies installed between the check valve or control valve and the cylinder, and that are not equipped with an overspeed valve conforming to 3.19.4.7, shall be replaced not more than 6 yr beyond the installation date. Existing hose assemblies that do not indicate an installation or replacement date shall be replaced. Replacements shall conform to 3.19.3.3.1(a) through 3.19.3.3.1(e) and 3.19.3.3.2.

8.6.5.7 Record of Oil Usage. For systems where part of the cylinder and/or piping is not exposed for visible examination, a written record shall be kept of the quantity of hydraulic fluid added to the system and emptied from

leakage collection containers and pans. The written record shall be kept in the machine room. When the quantity of hydraulic fluid loss cannot be accounted for, the tests specified in 8.6.5.14.1 and 8.6.5.14.2 shall be made.

8.6.5.8 Safety Bulkhead. Hydraulic cylinders installed below ground shall conform to 3.18.3.4, or the elevator shall conform to one of the following:

(a) the elevator shall be provided with car safeties conforming to 3.17.1 and guide rails, guide-rail supports, and fastenings conforming to 3.23.1.

(b) the elevator shall be provided with a plunger gripper conforming to 3.17.3. The plunger gripper shall grip the plunger when the applicable maximum governor tripping speed in Table 2.18.2.1 is achieved.

8.6.5.9 Relief-Valve Setting. The relief-valve adjustment shall be examined to ensure that the seal is intact. If the relief-valve seal is not intact, tests shall be conducted in accordance with 8.6.5.14.1.

8.6.5.10 Runby and Clearances After Reroping or Shortening. The minimum car and counterweight clearances and runby shall be maintained in compliance with the applicable code when replacement suspension ropes are installed or when existing suspension ropes are shortened.

8.6.5.11 Cylinder Corrosion Protection and Monitoring

8.6.5.11.1 Corrosion Protection Monitoring. Where monitored cylinder corrosion protection is required, the monitoring means shall be examined and maintained.

8.6.5.11.2 Corrosion Protection Loss. If the monitoring means detects that loss of corrosion protection has occurred, the means of corrosion protection shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.5.12 Anticreep and Low Oil Protection. The anti-creep function and low oil protection shall be maintained to operate in compliance with the applicable code.

8.6.5.13 Overspeed Valve Setting. Overspeed valves shall be calibrated and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, including replacement of the valve seals or entire valves at intervals specified. All elevators provided with field-adjustable overspeed valves shall have the adjustment means examined to ensure the seal is intact. If the overspeed adjustment seal is not intact, compliance with 8.6.5.16.5 shall be verified and a new seal shall be installed.

8.6.5.14 Periodic Test Requirements — Category 1

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.6.5.14.1 Relief-Valve Verification of Setting and System Pressure Test. The relief-valve setting shall be tested to determine that it will bypass the full output

of the pump before the pressure exceeds 150% of the working pressure. Once this is established, test the entire system to ensure that it will withstand this pressure. It shall be resealed if the relief-valve setting is altered or if the seal is broken (Item 2.31).

8.6.5.14.2 Hydraulic Cylinders and Pressure Piping.

This test shall be performed after the relief-valve setting and system pressure test in 8.6.5.14.1.

(a) Cylinders and pressure piping that are exposed shall be visually examined.

(b) Cylinders and pressure piping that are not exposed shall be tested for leakage, which cannot be accounted for by the visual examination in (a) (Item 2.36.2).

The duration of the test shall be a minimum of 15 min (Item 2.36.2).

(22) **8.6.5.14.3 Additional Tests.** The following tests shall also be performed:

(a) normal terminal stopping devices (8.6.4.19.5) (Item 3.5.2).

(b) governors (8.6.4.19.3) (Item 2.13.2.2).

(c) safeties (8.6.4.19.2) (Item 5.8.2).

(d) oil buffers (8.6.4.19.1) (Item 5.12).

(e) Firefighters' Emergency Operation (8.6.4.19.6) (Items 6.1 through 6.5, as applicable).

(f) standby or emergency power operation (8.6.4.19.7) (Item 1.17.2.2).

NOTE: Absorption of regenerated power (2.26.10) does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

(g) emergency terminal speed-limiting device and emergency terminal stopping device (3.25.2) (Item 3.6.2.2).

(h) low oil protection operation (3.26.9) (Item 2.39.2).

(i) The auxiliary power lowering device, where provided, shall be tested with no load in the car for conformance with applicable requirements (3.26.10) (Item 2.44).

(j) Occupant Evacuation Operation shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements. Deficiencies shall be corrected. A record of findings shall be available to the building owner and the authority having jurisdiction (see 2.27.11 and Section 3.27) (ASME A17.2, Nonmandatory Appendix I).

(k) Emergency communications shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements [8.6.1.2.2(d)(3)] (Item 1.6). A written checkout procedure shall be provided (check on-site documentation; see 8.6.1.2.2).

(l) Means to restrict hoistway or car door opening shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (see 2.14.5.7 and Section 3.14) (Item 1.18).

8.6.5.14.4 Flexible Hose and Fitting Assemblies.

Flexible hose and fitting assemblies shall be tested at the relief-valve setting pressure for a minimum of 30 s. Any signs of leakage, slippage of hose fittings, damage

to outer hose covering sufficient to expose reinforcement, or bulging or distortion of the hose body is cause for replacement.

CAUTION: If the motor protection or motor overloads trip during this test, DO NOT change the adjustment or jumper the overloads. Damage to the motor can result from running the motor without adequate overload protection.

8.6.5.14.5 Pressure Switch. The pressure switch and its related circuits shall be tested for conformance with applicable requirements (3.26.8) (Item 2.37).

8.6.5.14.6 Power Operation of Door System. The closing forces and speed of power-operated hoistway door systems shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (Item 1.8). For elevators required to comply with 2.13.4.2.4, the time in the door Code zone distance shall be measured and compared with the time specified on the door marking plate (Items 4.6 and 4.7).

8.6.5.14.7 Slack-Rope Device. The slack-rope device shall be tested on a roped-hydraulic elevator by causing a slack-rope condition to occur and verifying that it will remove power in compliance with 3.18.1.2.5 (Item 3.31.2).

8.6.5.14.8 Earthquake Operation. Earthquake operation shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements. Deficiencies shall be corrected. A record of findings shall be available to the building owner and the authority having jurisdiction (Item 2.42).

8.6.5.14.9 Testing of Alternative Arrangements and ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7-Conforming Equipment. As required by the manufacturer and/or an ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 CCD, tests shall be performed

(a) on equipment applied under alternative arrangements [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(2)]

(b) on equipment specified in an ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 CCD [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(3)]

8.6.5.14.10 Functional Safety of SIL Rated Device(s). Verify that the SIL rated device(s) used to satisfy 2.26.4.3.2 and 2.26.9.3.2(b) is as identified on wiring diagrams (8.6.1.6.3) with part identification, SIL, and certification identification information. The person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and shall demonstrate that SIL rated devices, safety functions (see Table 2.26.4.3.2), and related circuits operate as intended.

8.6.5.14.11 Plunger Gripper. Plunger grippers shall (22) be subjected to the following test with no load in the car using a written procedure supplied by the plunger gripper manufacturer or the person or firm maintaining the equipment:

(a) Plunger grippers shall be tested by actuating the plunger gripper.

(b) Plunger grippers shall be tested in the down direction with the car operating at the slowest possible speed.

(c) The plunger gripper shall stop and hold the empty car.

(d) A periodic test record as required in 8.6.1.7.2 shall be provided.

- (22) **8.6.5.14.12 System to Monitor and Prevent Automatic Operation of the Elevator With Faulty Door Circuits.** Where provided, the system to prevent automatic operation of the elevator with faulty door circuits (see 3.26.1 and 2.26.5) shall be tested.

The person or firm maintaining the equipment shall provide a written test procedure as part of the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(d)(5)] and demonstrate that the elevator meets the applicable requirements of 2.26.5; 3.26.1; and ASME A17.3, para. 3.10.12.

8.6.5.15 Periodic Test Requirements — Category 3

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.6.5.15.1 Unexposed Portions of Pistons. Piston rods of roped water-hydraulic elevators shall be exposed, thoroughly cleaned, and examined for wear or corrosion. The piston rods shall be replaced if at any place the diameter is less than the root diameter of the threads (Item 5.11).

8.6.5.15.2 Pressure Vessels. Pressure vessels shall be checked to determine conformance with the applicable requirements, thoroughly cleaned, internally examined, and then subjected to a hydrostatic test at 150% of the working pressure for 1 min (3.24.4) (Item 2.33).

8.6.5.16 Periodic Test Requirements — Category 5

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.6.5.16.1 Governors, safeties, and oil buffers, where provided, shall be inspected and tested as specified in 8.6.4.20.1 through 8.6.4.20.3 at intervals specified by the authority having jurisdiction. Where activation is allowed or required by both a speed governor and a slack rope, the safety shall have both means of activation tested (Items 2.13, 2.29, and 5.12).

8.6.5.16.2 Coated ropes shall be required to have a magnetic flux test capable of detecting broken wires, in addition to a visual examination (Item 3.23).

8.6.5.16.3 Wire rope fastenings shall be examined in accordance with Item 3.22 of ASME A17.2. Fastenings on roped-hydraulic elevators using pistons that are hidden by cylinder head seals shall also be examined, even if it is temporarily necessary to support the car by other means and disassemble the cylinder head.

8.6.5.16.4 A plunger gripper, where provided, shall be examined and tested per 8.10.3.2.5(n) (Item 5.17.2). The periodic test record shall be completed. The

person or firm installing or maintaining the equipment shall provide a written procedure in the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(e)(6)] and demonstrate that the plunger gripper shall function as required by 3.17.3.

8.6.5.16.5 Overspeed valves, where provided, shall be inspected and tested to verify that they will stop the car, traveling down with rated load, within the specified limits of 3.19.4.7.5(a) using a written procedure supplied by the valve manufacturer or the person or firm maintaining the equipment. If the seal has been altered or broken, the overspeed valve shall be resealed after successful test (Item 5.15.2).

8.6.5.16.6 Freight elevators of Class C2 loading shall sustain and level the elevator car with the maximum load shown on the freight elevator loading sign (Item 2.17.2.2).

8.6.5.17 Plunger Gripper Maintenance. Plunger grippers, where provided, shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. (22)

8.6.5.18 Executable Software Verification. Where executable software for functions listed in 3.26.11.1 has changed as the result of repair or replacement and requires a new USI, the related safety function(s) shall be tested on-site for the applicable installation and logged in the repair and replacement record [see 8.6.1.2.2(f)]. (22)

8.6.5.19 System to Monitor and Prevent Automatic Operation of Passenger and Freight Elevators with Faulty Door Contact Circuits. All automatic passenger and freight elevators shall comply with 2.26.5. (22)

8.6.6 Maintenance and Testing of Elevators With Other Types of Driving Machines

8.6.6.1 Rack-and-Pinion Elevators. The maintenance of rack-and-pinion elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of Section 8.6. Where the car and/or counterweight safeties are sealed to prevent field adjustment and examination, or where the manufacturer has established replacement criteria, the safeties shall be returned to the manufacturer for replacement of components and calibration at the interval recommended by the manufacturer. The date of expiration is the date that indicates when the next manufacturer's maintenance-calibration is due. The date of expiration shall be shown on the safety device data plate required in 4.1.17.3(c). Field testing of rack-and-pinion safeties in accordance with 8.6.6.1.1 shall be required prior to placing the elevator in service after the manufacturer replaces components or calibrates car or counterweight safeties.

8.6.6.1.1 Rack-and-Pinion Elevator Periodic Test. Rack-and-pinion elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in 8.6.4.19 and 8.6.4.20. The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding

requirements of [Section 4.1](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

8.6.6.2 Screw-Column Elevators. The maintenance of screw-column elevators shall conform to [8.6.1](#) through [8.6.3](#) and the applicable requirements of [Section 8.6](#).

8.6.6.2.1 Screw-Column Elevator Periodic Test. Screw-column elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in [8.6.4.19](#), [8.6.4.20](#), and [8.6.5.14](#) through [8.6.5.16](#). The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 4.2](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

8.6.6.3 Hand Elevators. The maintenance of hand elevators shall conform to [8.6.1](#) through [8.6.3](#) and the applicable requirements of [Section 8.6](#).

8.6.6.3.1 Hand Elevator Periodic Test. Hand elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in [8.6.4.19](#) and [8.6.4.20](#). The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in [Section 4.3](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests. The driving-machine brake required by [4.3.19.2](#) shall be tested with both an empty car and with rated load in the car.

8.6.7 Maintenance and Testing of Special Application Elevators

8.6.7.1 Inclined Elevators. The maintenance of inclined elevators shall conform to [8.6.1](#) through [8.6.3](#) and the applicable requirements of [Section 8.6](#).

8.6.7.1.1 Periodic Test. Inclined elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in [8.6.4.19](#), [8.6.4.20](#), and [8.6.5.14](#) through [8.6.5.16](#). The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in [Section 5.1](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

8.6.7.2 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators. The maintenance of limited-use/limited-application elevators shall conform to [8.6.1](#) through [8.6.3](#) and the applicable requirements of [Section 8.6](#).

8.6.7.2.1 Periodic Test. Limited-use/limited-application elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in [8.6.4.19](#), [8.6.4.20](#), and [8.6.5.14](#) through [8.6.5.16](#). The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 5.2](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

8.6.7.3 Private Residence Elevators. The maintenance of private residence elevators shall conform to [8.6.1](#) through [8.6.3](#) and the applicable requirements of [Section 8.6](#).

8.6.7.3.1 Periodic Test. Private residence elevators and lifts should be subject to the periodic tests specified in [8.6.4.19](#), [8.6.4.20](#), and [8.6.5.14](#) through [8.6.5.16](#). The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in [Section 5.3](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment should also be checked during these tests.

8.6.7.4 Private Residence Inclined Elevators. The maintenance of private residence inclined elevators shall conform to [8.6.1](#) through [8.6.3](#) and the applicable requirements of [Section 8.6](#).

8.6.7.4.1 Periodic Test. Private residence inclined elevators and lifts should be subject to the periodic tests specified in [8.6.4.19](#), [8.6.4.20](#), and [8.6.5.14](#) through [8.6.5.16](#). The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in [Section 5.4](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment should also be checked during these tests.

8.6.7.5 Power Sidewalk Elevators. The maintenance of power sidewalk elevators shall conform to [8.6.1](#) through [8.6.3](#) and the applicable requirements of [Section 8.6](#).

8.6.7.5.1 Periodic Test. Sidewalk elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in [8.6.4.19](#), [8.6.4.20](#), and [8.6.5.14](#) through [8.6.5.16](#). The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in [Section 5.5](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

8.6.7.6 Rooftop Elevators. The maintenance of rooftop elevators shall conform to [8.6.1](#) through [8.6.3](#) and the applicable requirements of [Section 8.6](#).

8.6.7.6.1 Periodic Test. Rooftop elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in [8.6.4.19](#), [8.6.4.20](#), and [8.6.5.14](#) through [8.6.5.16](#). The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 5.6](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

8.6.7.7 Special Purpose Personnel Elevators. Except in jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, maintenance of special purpose personnel elevators shall conform to [8.6.1](#) through [8.6.3](#) and the applicable requirements of [Section 8.6](#) (see [Section 5.7](#)).

8.6.7.7.1 Periodic Test. Special purpose personnel elevators shall be subject to the applicable tests specified in [8.6.4.19](#), [8.6.4.20](#), and [8.6.5.14](#) through [8.6.5.16](#). The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in [Section 5.7](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

8.6.7.8 Marine Elevators. The maintenance of marine elevators shall conform to [8.6.1](#) through [8.6.3](#) and the applicable requirements of [Section 8.6](#).

8.6.7.8.1 Periodic Test. Marine elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in 8.6.4.19, 8.6.4.20, and 8.6.5.14 through 8.6.5.16. The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of Section 5.8. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

8.6.7.9 Mine Elevators. Except in jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, maintenance of mine elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of Section 8.6.

8.6.7.9.1 Rails on mine elevators shall be kept free of rust and scale that will prevent proper operation of the car (or counterweight) safety device.

8.6.7.9.2 Oil buffers that are installed on elevators where water can accumulate in the pit shall be checked every 60 days for accumulation of water.

8.6.7.9.3 The mine elevator hoistway shall be maintained to minimize the entry of water and formation of ice that would interfere with the operation of the elevator.

8.6.7.9.4 Suspension, Compensating, and Governor Ropes. When elevator suspension, compensating, or governor ropes show deterioration caused by corrosion, the replacement wire ropes shall be constructed of electrogalvanized or other types of corrosion-resistant material suitable for the environment and application. The installation shall conform to 8.7.2.21 for suspension ropes and 8.7.2.19 for governor ropes.

Where emergency replacement of wire ropes is required, non-corrosion-resistant wire ropes shall be permitted to be installed for temporary use. These emergency replacement non-corrosion-resistant wire ropes shall be replaced by corrosion-resistant wire ropes within 1 yr of installation.

8.6.7.9.5 Periodic Test. Mine elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in 8.6.4.19 and 8.6.4.20. The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of Section 5.9. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

8.6.7.9.6 Compensating Means. Mine elevator compensating chains shall be replaced when any portion of the link diameter is less than 80% of the original link diameter.

(22) **8.6.7.9.7 Rack-and-Pinion Elevator Pits.** Rack-and-pinion elevator pits shall be kept free of water and debris that would corrode the supporting structure. The drain holes at the bottom of the rack-and-pinion elevator supporting structure shall be kept open and free of debris that would prevent proper draining of water accumulated inside the supporting structure.

8.6.7.9.8 Removal of Rack-and-Pinion Elevators From Service. Rack-and-pinion elevators shall be removed from service when the rack or gear teeth are damaged, missing, or the wear exceeds the manufacturers service limit.

8.6.7.10 Elevators Used for Construction. The maintenance of elevators used for construction shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of Section 8.6.

8.6.7.10.1 Periodic Test Requirements — Category 1. For electric elevators, test as specified in 8.6.4.19.1 through 8.6.4.19.5. For hydraulic elevators, test as specified in 8.6.5.14.1, 8.6.5.14.2, 8.6.5.14.3(a) through 8.6.5.14.3(d), and 8.6.5.14.4.

Where permanent doors have been installed, test as specified in 8.6.4.19.8.

8.6.7.10.2 Periodic Test Requirements — Category 3. For hydraulic elevators, test as specified in 8.6.5.15.

8.6.7.10.3 Periodic Test Requirements — Category 5. For electric elevators, test as specified in 8.6.4.20.1 through 8.6.4.20.4 and 8.6.4.20.6. For hydraulic elevators, test as specified in 8.6.5.16.

8.6.7.11 Wind Turbine Tower Elevator. The maintenance of wind turbine tower elevators shall conform to the applicable requirements of 8.6.7.11.1 through 8.6.7.11.3.

8.6.7.11.1 Periodic Test Requirements. Wire rope gripping safeties with slack-rope actuation, or wire rope gripping safeties with an internal centrifugal governor, shall be tested with rated load in the car. Tests for governor-operated safeties shall be made by manually tripping the governor at the rated speed. The overspeed switch on the governor shall be made ineffective during the test.

8.6.7.11.2 Wind Turbine Tower Elevators. The maintenance of wind turbine tower elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of Section 8.6.

8.6.7.11.3 Car and Counterweight Safeties. Type A, Type B, and Type C car safeties, except those operating on wood guide rails, and their governors, wire rope gripping safeties with slack-rope actuation, or wire rope gripping safeties with an internal centrifugal governor shall be tested with rated load in the car. Counterweight safety tests shall be made with no load in the car. Tests for governor-operated safeties shall be made by manually tripping the governor at the rated speed. The overspeed switch on the governor shall be made ineffective during the test. Type A safeties and wire rope gripping safeties without governors that are operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the hoisting ropes shall be tested by obtaining the necessary slack rope to cause

it to function (Item 2.29.2.1) and hold the car with rated load. The following operational conditions shall be checked (Item 2.29.2.1).

8.6.7.12 Outside Emergency Elevators. The maintenance, repair, and replacement of outside emergency elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7, requirement 2.12.2.

8.6.7.12.1 Periodic Test Requirements — Category 1. Outside emergency elevators shall be subject to applicable periodic tests specified in 8.6.4.19.1 through 8.6.4.19.5, 8.6.4.19.7, 8.6.4.19.8, 8.6.4.19.10, and ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7, requirement 2.12.3. Outside emergency elevators are not required to be powered by electric driving-machine motors.

8.6.7.12.2 Periodic Test Requirements — Category 5. Outside emergency elevators shall be subject to applicable periodic tests specified in 8.6.4.20.1 through 8.6.4.20.11 and ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7, requirement 2.12.3. Outside emergency elevators are not required to be powered by electric driving-machine motors.

8.6.8 Maintenance of Escalators and Periodic Testing of Escalators and Moving Walks

The maintenance of escalators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and 8.6.8. The periodic testing of escalators and moving walks shall conform to 8.6.8.15, where applicable.

NOTE: See 8.6.9 for the maintenance of moving walks.

8.6.8.1 Handrails. Handrails shall operate at the speed specified in the applicable codes. The handrail speed-monitoring device, when provided, shall cause electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake when the speed of either handrail deviates from the step speed by 15% or more and continuously within a 2 s to 6 s range. Cracked or damaged handrails that present a pinching effect shall be repaired or replaced. Splicing of handrails shall be done in such a manner that the joint is free of pinching effect.

8.6.8.2 Step-to-Skirt Clearance. Clearances shall be maintained in compliance with the applicable codes. Alternatively, the clearance on either side of the steps and between the steps and the adjacent skirt guard shall not exceed 4 mm (0.16 in.) and the sum of the clearances on both sides shall not exceed 7 mm (0.28 in.).

NOTES:

(1) The allowable clearances are applicable as follows:

(a) ASA A17.1-1955 through ANSI A17.1d-1970: not more than 4.8 mm (0.1875 in.) with a total of both sides not more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.), except where skirt obstruction devices are installed at the lower entrance for escalators installed under ASA A17.1-1965 through ANSI A17.1d-1970.

(b) ANSI A17.1-1971 through ANSI A17.1a-1979: not more than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) on each side.

(c) ANSI A17.1b-1980 through ASME A17.1c-1999 and ASME A17.3: not more than 4.8 mm (0.1875 in.) on each side.

(d) For equipment installed under ASME A17.1d-2000 and later editions: the clearance (loaded gap) not more than 5 mm (0.2 in.) when 110 N (25 lbf) force is laterally applied from the step to the adjacent skirt panel. See 6.1.3.3.5.

(2) (On CSA B44 Requirements): The allowable clearances are applicable as follows:

(a) CSA B44-1960 through CSA B44S3-1982: not more than 4.8 mm (0.1875 in.) on each side. The sum of both sides not more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.).

(b) CSA B44-1985 through CSA B44S2-1998: not more than 5 mm (0.197 in.) on each side. The sum of both sides not more than 6 mm (0.236 in.).

(c) For equipment installed under CSA B44-00: not more than 4 mm (0.157 in.) on each side. The sum of both sides not more than 7 mm (0.28 in.).

(d) For equipment installed under CSA B44-00 Update 1 and later editions: the clearance (loaded gap) shall be not more than 5 mm (0.2 in.) when 110 N (25 lbf) force is laterally applied from the step to the adjacent skirt panel. See 6.1.3.3.5.

8.6.8.3 Step/Skirt Performance Index

8.6.8.3.1 The step/skirt performance index, when the escalator is subjected to the test specified in 8.6.8.15.19, shall be the maximum value of the recorded instantaneous step/skirt index $e^y/(e^y + 1)$, where

(SI Units)

$$e = 2.7183$$

L_g = the clearance between the step and the adjacent skirt panel when 110 N is applied from the step to the skirt panel, mm

$$y = -3.77 + 2.37\mu + 0.37L_g$$

μ = the sliding coefficient of friction of a polycarbonate test specimen on the skirt panel at the measurement point calculated when subjected to a 110 N normal load. The coefficient of friction shall be measured without addition of any field-applied lubricant.

The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N by more than ± 11 N. The load shall be distributed over a round or square area not less than 1940 mm² and not more than 3870 mm².

(Imperial Units)

$$e = 2.7183$$

L_g = the clearance between the step and the adjacent skirt panel when 25 lbf is applied from the step to the skirt panel, in.

$$y = -3.77 + 2.37\mu + 9.3L_g$$

μ = the sliding coefficient of friction of a polycarbonate test specimen on the skirt panel at the measurement point calculated when subjected to a 25 lbf normal load. The coefficient of friction

shall be measured without addition of any field-applied lubricant.

The applied load shall not deviate from 25 lbf by more than ± 2.5 lbf. The load shall be distributed over a round or square area not less than 3 in.² and not more than 6 in.²

8.6.8.3.2 The step/skirt performance index polycarbonate test specimen shall conform to the following specifications:

- (a) Material: polycarbonate without fillers
- (b) Color: natural, no pigments
- (c) Finish: glossy (roughness less than 0.8 μm (32 $\mu\text{in.}$)
- (d) Area in contact with the skirt panel: 2900 mm² $\pm$ 325 mm² (4.5 in.² $\pm$ 0.5 in.²) and at least 0.8 mm (0.03 in.) thick
- (e) Specification: GE Lexan 100 series or equivalent polycarbonate

8.6.8.3.3 The escalator step/skirt performance index shall be one of the following, whichever is applicable:

- (a) ≤ 0.15
- (b) ≤ 0.25 for escalators installed under ASME A17.1a-2002/CSA B44-00 Update 1 and later editions and when a skirt deflector device complying with the requirements of 6.1.3.3.10 is provided
- (c) ≤ 0.4 for escalators installed under ASME A17.1-2000/CSA B44-00 and earlier editions and a skirt deflector device complying with the requirements of 6.1.3.3.10 is provided

8.6.8.4 Combplates

8.6.8.4.1 Combs with any broken teeth shall be repaired or replaced. Where two adjacent teeth are missing, the escalator shall be removed from operation.

8.6.8.4.2 Combs shall be adjusted and maintained in mesh with the slots in the step surface so that the points of the teeth are always below the upper surface of the treads.

8.6.8.4.3 For units installed under ASME A17.1b-1992 and later editions of the Code, comb-step impact devices shall be adjusted to operate in compliance with the forces specified in 6.1.6.3.13.

8.6.8.5 Escalator Skirt Panels and Skirt Obstruction Devices

(a) Damaged skirt or dynamic skirt panels shall be replaced or repaired and the installation shall conform to 8.6.8.2 and 8.6.8.3.3. If the unit was installed or altered under ANSI/ASME A17.1a-1982 or later editions, then verification that the replacement or repair conforms to 6.1.3.3.6 shall be documented in the on-site maintenance records [see 8.6.1.4.1(d)].

(b) The skirt obstruction devices shall be checked for proper adjustment and operation.

8.6.8.6 Steps

8.6.8.6.1 Steps with broken treads shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.6.2 Steps with dented or damaged risers shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.6.3 Steps that are worn or damaged and that do not provide proper engagement with the combplates shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.6.4 The width or depth of the slots in the tread surface of steps that do not meet the applicable Code requirements shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.7 Rollers, Tracks, and Chains. Rollers, tracks, and chains shall be examined, repaired, or replaced when necessary to ensure required clearances.

8.6.8.8 Signs. Caution signs shall be provided in compliance with 6.1.6.9. Damaged or missing signs shall be replaced. Additional signs, if provided, shall comply with 6.1.6.9.

8.6.8.9 Guards at Ceiling Intersections. Damaged or missing guards shall be repaired or replaced in compliance with 6.1.3.3.11.

8.6.8.10 Antislid Devices. Damaged or missing antislid devices shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.11 Handrail Guards. Damaged or missing hand or finger guards shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.12 Brakes. Brakes shall be maintained in compliance with the applicable requirements of 8.6.4.6, and adjusted to the torque shown on the data plate, where provided.

8.6.8.13 Cleaning. The interiors of escalators and their components shall be cleaned to prevent an accumulation of oil, grease, lint, dirt, and refuse. The frequency of the cleaning will depend on service and conditions, but an examination to determine if cleaning is necessary shall be required at least once a year.

8.6.8.14 Entrance and Egress Ends. Escalator landing plates shall be properly secured in place. Landing plates shall be kept free of tripping hazards and maintained to provide a secure foothold. All required entrance and exit safety zones shall be kept free from obstructions.

8.6.8.15 Periodic Test Requirements for Escalators and Moving Walks — Category 1

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.6.8.15.1 Machine Room and Truss Interior. The condition of and access to machine rooms, the truss interior, and all escalator components contained therein shall be examined and, if required, cleaned to perform the required inspections and tests of 8.6.8.15.

The operation and adequacy of lighting and receptacles shall be checked (Items 8.1 and 10.1).

8.6.8.15.2 Stop Switch. The machinery space stop switches shall be tested (Items 8.2 and 10.2).

8.6.8.15.3 Controller and Wiring. Controller and wiring shall be examined (Items 8.3 and 10.3).

- (22) **8.6.8.15.4 Drive Machine and Brake.** The drive machine and brakes shall be examined and tested, including testing the brake torque (Items 8.4 and 10.4). For escalators and moving walks using dynamic braking

(a) removal of electrical power from the driving-machine motor and brake for conditions where deceleration and/or stopping distance requirements are not met shall be tested

(b) the person or firm maintaining the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and shall demonstrate that the system complies with the requirements of the Code [see 8.6.1.2.2(d)(5) and 8.6.1.2.2(d)(8)]. This shall include but not be limited to

(1) verification that all electrical protective devices not permitting use of dynamic braking properly remove motor power and apply drive machine brake [see 6.1.5.3.4(c)]

(2) verification that loss of electrical power properly applies drive machine brake [see 6.1.5.3.4(b)]

(3) verification that a solid-state motor drive control (VFD) error or fault, including but not limited to errors on braking resistors and regenerative power distribution, properly removes motor power and applies drive machine brake

(4) verification that failure of stopping-distance-monitoring means properly removes motor power and applies drive machine brake [see 6.1.5.3.4(d)]

(5) verification that failure to achieve stopping rate to meet required stopping distance properly removes motor power and applies drive machine brake [see 6.1.5.3.4(d)]

(6) verification that drive machine brake is set not later than when the escalator or moving walk comes to rest [see 6.1.5.3.4(b)]

(c) the escalator dynamic brake system shall be tested manually in each escalator travel direction to determine that it functions properly. If the escalator has been continuously run in only one direction such that it may be damaged by reversal, perform the test in the continuously run direction only and note on inspection form.

8.6.8.15.5 Speed Governor. The mechanical speed governor, if required, shall be tested by manually operating the trip mechanism (Items 8.5 and 10.5).

8.6.8.15.6 Broken Drive-Chain Device. Operation of the broken drive-chain device, on the drive chain, shall be tested by manually operating the actuating mechanism (Items 8.6 and 10.6).

8.6.8.15.7 Reversal Stop Switch. The reversal stop switch (to prevent reversal when operating in the ascending direction) shall be tested by manually operating it to determine that it functions properly (Items 8.7 and 10.7).

If the device cannot be manually operated, the person or firm maintaining the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and shall demonstrate that the device complies with the requirements of the Code.

8.6.8.15.8 Broken Step-Chain or Treadway Device. The broken or slack step-chain or treadway device shall be tested by manual operation (Items 8.8 and 10.8).

8.6.8.15.9 Step Upthrust Device. The operation of the step upthrust device shall be tested by manually displacing the step, causing the device to operate (Items 7.9 and 8.9).

8.6.8.15.10 Missing Step or Pallet Device. The missing step or pallet device shall be tested by removing a step or pallet and verifying that the device will properly function (Items 8.10 and 10.10).

8.6.8.15.11 Step or Pallet Level Device. The step or pallet level device shall be tested by simulating an out-of-level step or pallet and verifying that the device functions properly (Items 8.11 and 10.11).

8.6.8.15.12 Steps, Pallet, Step or Pallet Chain, and Trusses. The steps, pallet, step or pallet chain, and trusses shall be visually examined for structural defects, mechanical condition, and buildup of combustible materials (Items 8.12 and 10.12).

8.6.8.15.13 Handrail Safety Systems. The handrail operating system shall be visually examined for condition. The handrail entry device, and the stopped handrail or handrail speed-monitoring device, shall be tested by disconnecting the handrail motion sensor (Items 8.13 and 10.13).

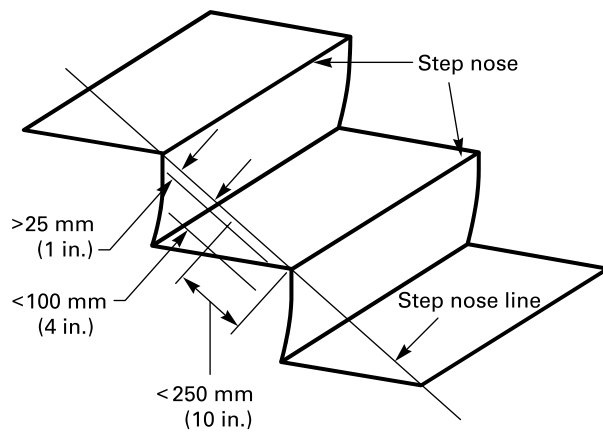
The person or firm maintaining the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and shall demonstrate that the handrail speed does not change when a retarding force, up to the maximum required by the Code, is applied opposite to the direction of travel (Items 7.3 and 9.3).

8.6.8.15.14 For outdoor escalators and moving walks that require heaters, test the heaters for condition and operation (Items 8.3 and 10.3).

8.6.8.15.15 Permissible Stretch in Escalator Chains. Escalators shall have periodic examination of the clearance between successive steps to detect wear or stretch of the step chains. The clearance shall not exceed 6 mm (0.25 in.) (Item 7.9).

8.6.8.15.16 Disconnected Motor Safety Device. Operation of the device shall be tested and verified (see 6.1.6.3.10 or 6.2.6.3.8) (Items 8.6 and 10.6).

Figure 8.6.8.15.19
Location of Center of Applied Load for Coefficient of Friction and Loaded Gap Measurements



8.6.8.15.17 Response to Smoke Detectors. See 6.1.6.8 or 6.2.6.7 (Items 8.15 and 10.15).

8.6.8.15.18 Comb-Step or Comb-Pallet Impact Device. For escalators or moving walks required to comply with Rules 805.1u, 805.3n, 905.1r, and/or 905.3k in ASME A17.1d-2000 or earlier editions, or requirements 6.1.6.3.13 or 6.2.6.3.11, the comb-step/comb-pallet impact devices shall be tested in both the vertical and horizontal directions by placing a vertical and horizontal force on the combplate to cause operation of the device. The vertical and horizontal tests shall be independent of each other. The horizontal force shall be applied at the front edge center and both sides; the force shall be applied in the direction of travel into the combplate. The vertical force shall be applied at the front edge center. Both the vertical and horizontal forces required to operate the device shall be recorded (6.1.6.3.13 and 6.2.6.3.11) (Items 7.7.2 and 9.7.2).

See 8.6.9.2.3 for horizontal forces required.

8.6.8.15.19 Step/Skirt Performance Index

(a) The escalator skirt shall not be cleaned, lubricated, or otherwise modified in preparation for testing. The escalator instantaneous step/skirt index measurements [see 6.1.3.3.9(a)] shall be recorded at intervals no larger than 150 mm (6 in.) from each side of two distinct steps along the inclined portion of the escalator, where the steps are fully extended. Test steps shall be separated by a minimum of 8 steps.

(b) A load of 110 N (25 lbf) shall be laterally applied from the step to the adjacent skirt panel. The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) by more than ± 11 N (± 2.5 lbf). The load shall be distributed over a round or square area not less than 1 940 mm² (3 in.²) and not more than 3 870 mm² (6 in.²).

(c) No vertical load exceeding 220 N (50 lbf) shall be applied to the test step and adjacent steps.

(d) The coefficient of friction shall be measured with the test specimen conforming to the requirements of 8.6.8.3.2 sliding in the direction of the step motion under a 110 N (25 lbf) normal force at the operating speed of the escalator and shall be measured with devices having sensitivity better than ± 2.2 N (± 0.5 lbf). The direction of step motion shall be the direction of normal operation. If the escalator is operated in both directions, the down direction shall be used for the test.

(e) For both the coefficient of friction measurement and the loaded gap measurements, the center of the applied load shall be between 25 mm (1 in.) and 100 mm (4 in.) below the nose line of the steps. The center of the applied load shall be not more than 250 mm (10 in.) from the nose of the step. See Figure 8.6.8.15.19.

(f) The step/skirt performance index shall conform to the requirements in 8.6.8.3 or ASME A17.3, requirement 5.1.11 (Item 7.17).

8.6.8.15.20 Clearance Between Step and Skirt (Loaded Gap). Escalators installed under ASME A17.1d-2000 shall be tested as follows (Item 7.17):

(a) Loaded gap measurements shall be taken at intervals not exceeding 300 mm (12 in.) in the transition region (6.1.3.6.5) and before the steps are fully extended. These measurements shall be made independently on each side of the escalator.

(b) The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) by more than ± 11 N (± 2.5 lbf) (6.1.3.3.5). The load shall be distributed over a round or square area no less than 1 940 mm² (3 in.²) and no more than 3 870 mm² (6 in.²).

(c) For the loaded gap measurements, the center of the applied load shall be between 25 mm (1 in.) and 100 mm (4 in.) below the nose line of the steps. The center of the applied load shall be not more than 250 mm (10 in.) from the nose of the step. See Figure 8.6.8.15.19.

8.6.8.15.21 Inspection control devices shall be tested and inspected to determine conformance with the requirements of 6.1.6.2.2 for escalators and 6.2.6.2.2 for moving walks.

8.6.8.15.22 Step Lateral Displacement Device (See 6.1.6.3.14). For curved escalators, manually test the device.

8.6.8.15.23 Seismic Risk Zones 2 or Greater. Verify that operation of the seismic detection device complies with the requirements of 8.5.4 (Items 7.20.2 and 9.20.2).

8.6.8.15.24 Skirt Obstruction Devices. All skirt (22) obstruction devices shall be tested for conformance with 6.1.5.3.1 and 6.1.6.3.6.

- (22) **8.6.8.15.25 Testing of Alternative Arrangements and ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7-Conforming Equipment.** As required by the manufacturer and/or an ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 CCD, tests shall be performed

(a) on equipment applied under alternative arrangements [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(2)]

(b) on equipment specified in an ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 CCD [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(3)]

- (22) **8.6.8.16 Maintenance of Seismic Devices.** A seismic detection device, where provided, shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

8.6.9 Maintenance of Moving Walks

The maintenance of moving walks shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and 8.6.9. The periodic testing of moving walks shall conform to 8.6.8.15, where applicable.

8.6.9.1 Handrails. Handrails shall operate at the speed specified in applicable codes. The handrail speed-monitoring device, when provided, shall cause electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake when the speed of either handrail deviates from the treadway by 15% or more and continuously within a 2 s to 6 s range. Cracked or damaged handrails that present a pinching effect shall be repaired or replaced. Splicing of handrails shall be done in such a manner that the joint is free of pinching effect.

8.6.9.2 Combplates

8.6.9.2.1 Combs with any broken teeth shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.2.2 Combs shall be adjusted and maintained in mesh with the slots in the treadway surface so that the points of the teeth are always below the upper surface of the treads.

8.6.9.2.3 For units installed under ASME A17.1b-1992 and later editions of the Code, comb-pallet impact devices shall be adjusted to operate in compliance with the forces specified in 6.2.6.3.11.

8.6.9.3 Pallets

8.6.9.3.1 Pallets with broken treads shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.3.2 Intermeshing moving walk pallets that are damaged at the mesh shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.3.3 Pallets that are worn or damaged and that do not provide proper engagement with the combplates shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.3.4 The width or depth of the slots in the tread surface of pallets that do not meet the applicable Code requirements shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.4 Rollers, Tracks, and Chains. Rollers, tracks, and chains shall be examined, repaired, or replaced when necessary to ensure required clearances.

8.6.9.5 Belt-Type Treadway. Belt-type treadways that are damaged or worn in such a manner that the treadway does not provide a continuous unbroken treadway surface or proper engagement with the combplates shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.6 Signs. Caution signs shall be provided in compliance with 6.2.6.9. Damaged or missing signs shall be replaced. Additional signs, if provided, shall comply with 6.2.6.9.

8.6.9.7 Guards at Ceiling Intersections. Damaged or missing guards shall be repaired or replaced in compliance with 6.2.3.3.7.

8.6.9.8 Antislid Devices. Damaged or missing anti-slide devices shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.9 Handrail Guards. Damaged or missing hand or finger guards shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.10 Brakes. Brakes shall be maintained in compliance with the applicable requirements of 8.6.4.6 and adjusted to the torque shown on the data plate, where provided.

8.6.9.11 Cleaning. The interiors of moving walks and their components shall be cleaned to prevent an accumulation of oil, grease, lint, dirt, and refuse. The frequency of the cleaning will depend on service and conditions, but an examination to determine if cleaning is necessary shall be required at least once a year.

8.6.9.12 Entrance and Egress Ends. Moving walk landing plates shall be properly secured in place. Landing plates shall be kept free of tripping hazards and maintained to provide a secure foothold. All required entrance and exit safety zones shall be kept free from obstructions.

8.6.9.13 Clearances. The clearance between each side of the treadway and the adjacent skirt panels, when provided, shall be maintained in compliance with 6.2.3.3.6. The clearance between the top surface of the treadway and the underside of the balustrade shall be maintained in compliance with 6.2.3.3.5 for skirtless balustrades.

8.6.9.14 Skirt Panels. Damaged skirt panels shall be replaced or repaired, and the installation shall conform to 8.6.9.13. If the unit was installed under ASME/ANSI A17.1a-1982 or later editions, then verification that the replacement or repair conforms to 6.2.3.3.6 shall be documented in the on-site maintenance records [see 8.6.1.4.1(d)].

8.6.10 Maintenance and Testing of Dumbwaiters and Material Lifts

8.6.10.1 Material Lifts and Dumbwaiters Without Automatic Transfer Devices. The maintenance of material lifts and dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of Section 8.6.

8.6.10.1.1 Periodic Test. Dumbwaiters shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in 8.6.4.19, 8.6.4.20, and 8.6.5.14 through 8.6.5.16. The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Part 7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

On winding-drum machines, the slack-rope devices required by 2.26.2.1 shall be permitted to be tested as specified in Item 2.18. The driving-machine brake shall be tested to determine conformance with 7.2.10 (Item 2.18).

NOTE: Recommended intervals for periodic inspections and tests can be found in Nonmandatory Appendix N.

8.6.10.2 Material Lifts and Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices. The maintenance of material lifts and dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of Section 8.6.

8.6.10.2.1 Periodic Test. Material lifts and dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices shall be subject to the applicable periodic tests specified in 8.6.4.19 and 8.6.5.14. The test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Part 7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these tests.

8.6.11 Special Provisions

8.6.11.1 Firefighters' Emergency Operation. All elevators provided with Firefighters' Emergency Operation shall be subjected monthly, by authorized personnel, to Phase I recall by use of the key switch, and a minimum of one-floor operation on Phase II. Deficiencies shall be reported to, and corrected by, elevator personnel. A record of findings shall be available to elevator personnel and the authority having jurisdiction.

NOTE: See Nonmandatory Appendix AA for additional operational verification.

8.6.11.2 Two-Way Communications Means. The two-way communications means shall be checked annually by authorized personnel in accordance with (a) or (b) and (c).

(a) Two-way communications means shall be checked to verify that two-way communications is established.

(b) All elevators installed under ASME A17.1a-2002/CSA B44-00 Update 1 and later editions shall have the two-way communications means checked by pressing

the "HELP" button in the car to verify that the visual indicator [2.27.1.1.3(c)] is functional and that the answering authorized personnel can receive the building location and elevator number [2.27.1.1.3(d)].

(c) Where communication from the building into the elevator is provided, check the two-way communications means to each car.

8.6.11.3 Access Keys. Keys required for access, operation, inspection, maintenance, repair, and emergency access shall be made available only to personnel in the assigned security level, in accordance with Section 8.1.

8.6.11.4 Cleaning of a Car and Hoistway Transparent Enclosure

8.6.11.4.1 The cleaning of the exterior of transparent car enclosures or transparent hoistway enclosures from inside the hoistway shall be performed only by authorized personnel (see Section 1.3) trained in compliance with the procedures specified in 8.6.11.4.2 and 8.6.11.4.3.

8.6.11.4.2 A written cleaning procedure shall be made and kept on the premises where the elevator is located and shall be available to the authority having jurisdiction. Instructions shall include directions for authorized personnel to remove power from the elevator. (22)

8.6.11.4.3 The procedure shall identify the hazards and detail the safety precautions to be used.

8.6.11.4.4 All personnel assigned to cleaning shall be given a copy of these procedures and all necessary training to assure that they understand and comply with the procedures.

8.6.11.4.5 A record of authorized personnel trained as specified in 8.6.11.4.4 shall be kept on the premises where the elevator is located and shall be available to the authority having jurisdiction.

8.6.11.5 Emergency Evacuation Procedures for Elevators

8.6.11.5.1 The evacuation of passengers from stalled elevators shall be performed only by authorized, elevator, and emergency personnel (see Section 1.3) in compliance with the procedures specified in 8.6.11.5.2 through 8.6.11.5.6.

8.6.11.5.2 A written emergency evacuation procedure shall be made and kept on the premises where an elevator is located.

8.6.11.5.3 The procedure shall identify the hazards. The procedure shall also detail the safety precautions used in evacuating passengers from a stalled elevator.

8.6.11.5.4 All authorized personnel who are assigned to assist in evacuating passengers from a stalled elevator, and all persons who use special purpose personnel elevators and wind turbine tower

elevators, shall be given a copy of these procedures and all necessary training to assure that they understand and comply with the procedures.

8.6.11.5.5 These procedures shall be available to authorized elevator and emergency personnel.

8.6.11.5.6 A record of authorized personnel trained, and all persons who use special purpose personnel elevators, as specified in 8.6.11.5.4, shall be kept on the premises where the elevator is located and shall be available to the authority having jurisdiction.

NOTE (8.6.11.5): See ASME A17.4.

8.6.11.6 Escalators and Moving Walks Startup and Procedures

8.6.11.6.1

(a) Escalators and moving walks shall be started only by authorized personnel (see Section 1.3) trained in compliance with the procedures specified in 8.6.11.6.2 through 8.6.11.6.4.

(b) Stopped escalators shall not be used as a means of access or egress by nonauthorized personnel and shall be properly barricaded if accessible to the general public to prevent such use.

NOTE: Proper barricades are described in the Elevator Industry Field Employees' Safety Handbook — Escalator/Moving Walk Barricades.

8.6.11.6.2 The following procedure shall be used when starting an escalator or moving walk:

(a) Prior to starting the unit, observe the steps or pallets and both landing areas to ensure no persons are on the unit or about to board. Run the unit away from the landing.

(b) Verify correct operation of the starting switch.

(c) Verify correct operation of the stop buttons.

(d) Verify correct operation of each stop button cover alarm, if furnished.

(e) Visually examine the steps or treadway for damaged or missing components, combplates for broken or missing teeth, and the skirt or dynamic skirt panels and balustrades for damage.

(f) Verify that both handrails travel at substantially the same speed as the steps or the treadway and are free from damage or pinch points, and that entry guards are in place.

(g) Visually verify that all steps, pallets, or the treadway is properly positioned.

(h) Verify that ceiling intersection guards, antislid devices, deck barricades, and caution signs are securely in place.

(i) Verify that demarcation lighting is illuminated, if furnished.

(j) Check for uniform lighting on steps/tread not contrasting with surrounding areas.

(k) Verify that the safety zone is clear of obstacles and that the landing area and adjacent floor area are free from foreign matter and slipping or tripping hazards.

(l) Check for any unusual noise or vibration during operation.

If any of the conditions in (a) through (l) is unsatisfactory, the unit shall be placed out of service. Barricade the landing areas and notify the responsible party of the problem.

8.6.11.6.3 Escalators and moving walks subject to 24-h operation shall be checked daily by authorized personnel.

8.6.11.6.4 A record of authorized personnel trained as specified in 8.6.11.6.2 shall be kept on the premises where the escalator(s) or moving walk(s) or both are located and shall be available to the authority having jurisdiction.

8.6.11.7 Operating Instructions for Means Specified in 2.7.5.1.1 or 2.7.5.2.1

A written procedure for operating the means shall be posted in a permanent manner in plain view at an appropriate location on or adjacent to the means (see 2.7.5.1.1 or 2.7.5.2.1). The posting shall conform to ANSI Z535.4 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

8.6.11.8 Egress and Reentry Procedure From Working Areas in 2.7.5.1.3 or 2.7.5.2.3

A written procedure to outline the method for egress and reentry shall be posted in a permanent manner in plain view at an appropriate location at the egress/reentry point (see 2.7.5.1.3 or 2.7.5.2.3). The posting shall conform to ANSI Z535.4 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

8.6.11.9 Operating Instructions for Retractable Platforms

A written procedure to outline the method for the use of retractable platforms shall be posted in a permanent manner in plain view at an appropriate location on or adjacent to the retractable platform (see 2.7.5.3.1). The posting shall conform to ANSI Z535.4 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

8.6.11.10 Category 5 Tests Without Load Via Alternative Test Methodologies

8.6.11.10.1 Where Permitted. Alternative methods (22) without load are permitted for Category 5 testing of the following, subject to approval by the authority having jurisdiction:

(a) car and counterweight safeties per 8.6.4.20.1

(b) oil buffers per 8.6.4.20.3

(c) driving-machine brakes per 8.6.4.20.4

(d) braking system, traction, and traction limits per 8.6.4.20.10

(e) emergency brakes per 8.6.4.20.11

NOTE: See Section 8.10, Note (2).

8.6.11.10.2 Alternative Test Method and Tools

- (a) An alternative test method shall be
 - (1) based on sound engineering principles
 - (2) validated and documented via engineering tests
- (b) The method, measuring devices, and tools shall be capable of producing reliable and consistent measurements, suitable for the intended measurement. The monitoring and calibration of the measuring devices or tools shall be in accordance with the provider's guidelines.

(22) **8.6.11.10.3 Alternative Test Method Procedure.** The alternative test method shall

- (a) include requirements to obtain and verify car and counterweight masses if necessary for the test
- (b) have a procedure document that
 - (1) defines the permissible equipment range and limitations regarding use
 - (2) establishes monitoring and calibration criteria for tools or measuring devices as appropriate
 - (3) defines the test setup procedure
 - (4) provides instructions on how to interpret results and correlate the results to pass-fail criteria
- (c) describe how to correlate no-load test results with previously acquired full-load and no-load results if necessary for the test method
- (d) be included in the MCP [see 8.6.1.2.1(a)]
- (e) include the information required by 8.6.1.2.2(c)(2) where applicable
- (f) require a report conforming to 8.6.11.10.4

(22) **8.6.11.10.4 Alternative Test Method Report.** The alternative test method report shall

- (a) identify the alternative test tool (make/model) used to perform the test
- (b) identify the company performing the tests, names of personnel conducting and witnessing the tests, and testing dates
- (c) contain all required printouts or record of tests required to demonstrate compliance with the testing requirements that were gathered during an acceptance test
- (d) identify which results from the baseline test are to be used for future compliance evaluation if necessary for the test method
- (e) record the car and counterweight masses that were obtained per 8.6.11.10.3(a) during the acceptance test and during any subsequent Category 5 test if required by the test method
- (f) contain all subsequent Category 5 results with pass-fail conclusions regarding Code compliance
- (g) remain on-site or shall be available to elevator personnel and the authority having jurisdiction

8.6.11.11 Examination After Shutdown Due to Traction Loss. Where the traction-loss detection means has been actuated [see 2.20.8.1 and 8.6.1.2.2(c)(4)], the elevator shall not be returned to service until a physical examination of the drive sheave and suspension means

has been conducted. The elevator shall not be moved until all passengers are out of the elevator and the elevator is posted out-of-service. In addition to the suspension-means evaluation criteria in 8.11.2.1.3(cc), any suspension-means or drive-sheave condition that would adversely affect the traction capability of the system (see 2.24.2.3) shall be corrected before returning the elevator to service.

NOTE: See lockout/tagout procedures in Elevator Industry Field Employees' Safety Handbook for the procedure for removing the elevator from service.

8.6.11.12 Examination After Safety Application. After any safety application on a traction elevator has occurred, whether due to testing or during normal service, the driving-machine sheave, all other sheaves, where furnished, and retainers and suspension members shall be examined throughout their complete length to ensure that all suspension members are properly seated in their respective sheaves and that no damage has occurred to sheaves, suspension members, or retainers. The elevator shall not be returned to service until this physical examination has been conducted and any repairs made, if necessary.

8.6.11.13 Occupant Evacuation Operation. All elevators provided with Occupant Evacuation Operation shall be subjected, by authorized personnel, to a check of the operation in conjunction with the fire alarm system testing in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 72. Deficiencies shall be corrected. A record of findings shall be available to elevator personnel and the authority having jurisdiction.

8.6.11.14 Examination After Shutdown Due to Broken-Suspension-Member Detection Means. After any application of the broken-suspension-member detection means, whether due to testing or during normal service, the driving-machine sheave, all other sheaves, where furnished, and retainers and suspension members shall be examined throughout their complete length to ensure that all suspension members are properly seated in their respective sheaves and that no damage has occurred to sheaves, suspension members, or retainers. The elevator shall not be returned to service until this physical examination has been conducted and any repairs made, if necessary. Where a single suspension member has been damaged or broken, the entire suspension means shall be replaced in accordance with 8.6.3.2.

8.6.11.15 Presence of Elevator Personnel When Motor Controllers Are Located in Public Spaces. Elevator personnel are to maintain a closed and locked motor controller door when they are not present at the controller cabinet (see 2.7.6.3.2).

- (22) **8.6.11.16 RIO.** A documented time-and-date stamped record to confirm each change to secure access to floor(s) made through RIO shall be required prior to changes. Changes to secured access floor(s) shall be confirmed to the authorized personnel. The confirmation shall include a warning of possible stranded occupants, which shall be acknowledged by the authorized personnel. These records shall be either hard copy or electronic format, retained for the most recent 5 yr from the date of occurrence, and made available to the authority having jurisdiction and to elevator personnel servicing the equipment.

NOTE (8.6.11.16): The building should include procedures to have authorized personnel using RIO check that no one is on a locked-out floor before the personnel use RIO to disable hall calls. The procedures to check that no one is on a locked-out floor should be facilitated by a message informing the authorized personnel that the floor is being disabled.

SECTION 8.7 ALTERATIONS

Section 8.7 applies to alterations.

NOTES:

- (1) See [Nonmandatory Appendix L](#) for an index of the requirements for alterations.
- (2) See [Section 8.6](#) for maintenance, repair, and replacement requirements.

8.7.1 General Requirements

8.7.1.1 Applicability of Alteration Requirements.

When any alteration is performed, regardless of any other requirements of [Section 8.7](#), the installation, as a minimum, shall conform to the following applicable Code requirements:

- (a) the Code at the time of installation
- (b) the Code requirements for the alteration at the time of any alteration
- (c) ASME A17.3 if adopted by the authority having jurisdiction

8.7.1.2 Items Not Covered in [Section 8.7](#). Where an alteration not specifically covered in [Section 8.7](#) is made, it shall not diminish the level of safety below that which existed prior to the alteration. See also [Section 1.2](#).

8.7.1.3 Testing. Where alterations are made, acceptance inspections and tests shall be conducted as required by [8.10.2.3](#) for electric elevators, [8.10.3.3](#) for hydraulic elevators, or [8.10.4.2](#) for escalators and moving walks. See also [8.10.1.5](#).

8.7.1.4 Welding. Welding of parts on which the support of the car, counterweight, escalator, or moving walk depends, including driving machines and trusses,

girders, and tracks of escalators and moving walks, shall conform to [Section 8.8](#) and [8.7.1.5](#).

8.7.1.5 Design. Design shall be verified by a licensed professional engineer for welding, repair, cutting, or splicing of members upon which the support of the car, counterweight, escalator, moving walks, trusses, girders, and/or tracks depends.

8.7.1.6 Temporary Wiring. During alterations, temporary wiring shall be permitted. The electrical protective devices of cars in normal operation shall not be rendered inoperative or ineffective.

8.7.1.7 Repairs and Replacements. Repairs and replacements shall conform to [8.6.2](#) and [8.6.3](#).

8.7.1.8 Code Data Plate. A Code Data Plate shall be provided as required by [Section 8.9](#). (22)

8.7.1.9 Alterations Involving SIL Rated Device(s) (See [Section 1.3](#))

(a) A SIL rated device(s) used to satisfy [2.26.4.3.2](#), [2.26.8.2](#), [2.26.9.3.2\(b\)](#), [2.26.9.5.1\(b\)](#), or [2.26.9.6.1\(b\)](#) shall not be either

(1) modified such that the modification invalidates the listing/certification

(2) affected by other alteration(s) such that the listing/certification is invalidated

(b) Where a SIL rated device (see [Section 1.3](#)) used to satisfy [2.26.4.3.2](#), [2.26.8.2](#), [2.26.9.3.2\(b\)](#), [2.26.9.5.1\(b\)](#), or [2.26.9.6.1\(b\)](#) is replaced with a non-SIL rated device, the replacement shall meet the applicable requirements of [2.26.4.3.1](#), [2.26.8.2](#), [2.26.9.3.2\(a\)](#), [2.26.9.5.1\(a\)](#), and [2.26.9.6.1\(a\)](#).

(c) Where a non-SIL rated device used to satisfy [2.26.4.3.1](#), [2.26.8.2](#), [2.26.9.3.2\(a\)](#), [2.26.9.5.1\(a\)](#), or [2.26.9.6.1\(a\)](#) is replaced with a SIL rated device, the replacement shall meet the applicable requirements of [2.26.4.3.2](#), [2.26.8.2](#), [2.26.9.3.2\(b\)](#), [2.26.9.5.1\(b\)](#), and [2.26.9.6.1\(b\)](#).

(d) Where a SIL rated device used to satisfy [2.26.4.3.2](#), [2.26.8.2](#), [2.26.9.3.2\(b\)](#), [2.26.9.5.1\(b\)](#), or [2.26.9.6.1\(b\)](#) is replaced with a SIL rated device that is not the original manufacturer's listed/certified SIL rated device or the original manufacturer's listed/certified SIL rated replacement device, the replacement shall meet the applicable requirements of [2.26.4.3.2](#), [2.26.8.2](#), [2.26.9.3.2\(b\)](#), [2.26.9.5.1\(b\)](#), and [2.26.9.6.1\(b\)](#).

(e) An up-to-date Maintenance Control Program ([8.6.1.2.1](#)) and wiring diagrams ([8.6.1.6.3](#)) shall be provided where they are affected by an alteration involving a SIL rated device (see [Section 1.3](#)).

8.7.1.10 Executable Software Verification and Witness Test. Where executable software for functions listed in [2.26.1.7.1](#) or [3.26.11.1](#) is changed as part of an alteration, the software changed shall have a new

USI that shall be logged in the on-site documentation [8.6.1.2.2(f)].

(22) **8.7.1.11 Seismic Requirements**

8.7.1.11.1 Application. For alterations, 8.4(a) through 8.4(d) shall define when to apply the elevator seismic requirements to existing units installed under

(a) ASME A17.1-1993 and later editions in jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC

(b) ASME A17.1-2007/CSA B44-07 and later editions in jurisdictions enforcing NBCC

8.7.1.11.2 Building Considerations. If the structural supports for the installation have been strengthened to accommodate increased seismic forces, the ground motion parameters provided by the structural engineer of record shall be used in conjunction with Section 8.4.

(22) **8.7.1.12 Internet Connectivity-Enabled Devices or Elevator Controllers.** Where there is an alteration to or the addition of an internet-connected or connectivity-enabled device that is interfaced (directly or indirectly) to an elevator controller, or where an elevator controller is connected to the internet, the alteration or addition shall conform to 8.14.1.

8.7.2 Alterations to Electric Elevators

8.7.2.1 Hoistway Enclosures

(22) **8.7.2.1.1 Hoistway Enclosure Walls.** Where alterations are made to any portion of a hoistway enclosure wall, the portion that is altered shall conform to the following:

(a) Requirement 2.1.1.

(b) Requirement 2.1.5.

(c) Requirement 2.1.6.

(d) Section 2.5.

(e) Requirement 2.7.3.4.6.

(f) Section 2.8.

(g) Requirement 8.7.2.10, where the portion of the wall that is altered includes an entrance assembly.

(h) Where a hoistway is altered to create a single blind hoistway, entrances and emergency doors shall be provided as required by 2.11.1.

(i) Requirements 8.4.1 and 8.4.3.2, if seismic requirements apply (see 8.7.1.11).

For inspection and test requirements for seismic alterations or additions, see 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

(22) **8.7.2.1.2 Addition of an Elevator to an Existing Hoistway.** Where an elevator is added to an existing hoistway, the number of elevators in that multiple hoistway shall be in accordance with the requirements of the building code. The horizontal clearances for the added elevator and the clearances between the added car and adjacent cars shall conform to Section 2.5. If seismic requirements apply, see Section 8.4 and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements for seismic alterations or additions, see 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.1.3 Construction at the Top of the Hoistway. (22)

Any alteration to the construction at the top of the hoistway shall conform to 2.1.2.1 and 2.1.3. See also 8.7.2.4. If seismic requirements apply see, 8.4.3.2 and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements for seismic alterations or additions, see 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.1.4 Construction at the Bottom of the Hoistway. (22) Any alteration to the construction at the bottom of the hoistway shall conform to 2.1.2.2, 2.1.2.3, and Section 2.2. See also 8.7.2.4. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.3.2 and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements for seismic alterations or additions, see 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.1.5 Control of Smoke and Hot Gases. Alterations to a hoistway that affect the means used to prevent the accumulation of smoke and hot gases in case of fire shall conform to 2.1.4.

8.7.2.2 Pits. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(x).

8.7.2.2.1 Alterations made to the pit shall conform to 2.1.2.3 and Section 2.2. See also 8.7.2.4. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.6 and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(x). For inspection and test requirements for seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.2.2 Where a surface-mounted sump pump is added to an existing pit, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) The pump and any attachment thereof shall not be located in the refuge space or affect the clearances specified in 2.4.1.

(b) The pump and any attachment thereof shall not restrict or infringe upon the pit access.

(c) Requirement 2.2.2.4.

(d) Requirement 2.2.2.5.

8.7.2.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights. Where new counterweights are installed or where counterweights are relocated, their location, guarding, and clearances shall conform to Section 2.3 and 2.5.1.2. The installation shall also conform to Section 2.6.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(b).

8.7.2.4 Vertical Car and Counterweight Clearances and Runbys. No alteration shall reduce any clearance or runby below that required by Section 2.4. Existing clearances shall be permitted to be maintained, except as required by 8.7.2.17.1, 8.7.2.17.2, and 8.7.2.25.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(y).

8.7.2.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. (22) No alteration shall reduce any clearance below that required by Section 2.5. Existing clearances shall

be permitted to be maintained, except as required by 8.7.2.17.2. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.1 and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(z). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways. Where alterations are made to an elevator or the building such that any space below the hoistway is not permanently secured against access, the affected installation shall conform to Section 2.6.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(aa).

8.7.2.7 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(bb).

8.7.2.7.1 Enclosures. Where an alteration consists of the construction of new machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, or control rooms, it shall conform to Section 2.7. Electrical equipment clearances shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable. Where alterations are made to any portion of machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, or control rooms, the portion that is altered shall conform to Section 2.7.

8.7.2.7.2 Means of Access. Any alteration that affects the safe and convenient means of access to a machine room, machinery space, control space, or control room shall conform to 2.7.3.1 through 2.7.3.3 to the extent existing conditions permit.

8.7.2.7.3 Access Doors and Openings. Where an alteration is made to any access door or opening, it shall conform to 2.7.3.4. Where an alteration is made to an access door in an overhead machinery space, a stop switch shall be provided conforming to 2.7.3.5.

8.7.2.7.4 Headroom. No alteration shall reduce the headroom below that required by 2.7.4 or the existing headroom, whichever is less.

8.7.2.7.5 Windows and Skylights. Alterations made to windows and skylights shall conform to 2.1.5.

8.7.2.7.6 Lighting. No alteration shall be made that diminishes the lighting of a machine room or machinery space below that required by 2.7.9.1.

8.7.2.7.7 Ventilation. No alteration shall be made that diminishes the ventilation of a machine room or machinery space below that required by 2.7.9.2.

8.7.2.8 Electrical Equipment, Wiring, Pipes, and Ducts in Hoistways and Machine Rooms. The installation of any new, or the alteration of existing, electrical equipment, wiring, raceways, cables, pipes, or ducts shall conform to the applicable requirements of Section 2.8.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(cc).

8.7.2.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Where new machinery and sheave beams, supports, foundations, or supporting floors are installed or relocated, or where alterations increase the original building design reactions by more than 5%, they shall conform to Section 2.9, and the adequacy of the affected building structure to support the loads shall be verified by a licensed professional engineer.

8.7.2.10 Entrances and Hoistway Openings

8.7.2.10.1 General Requirements

(a) Where all new hoistway entrances are installed, they shall conform to Sections 2.11 through 2.13, 2.14.5.7, and 2.29.2.

(b) Where one or more, but not all, new hoistway entrances are installed, they shall conform to 2.11.2 through 2.11.8 and 8.7.2.10.5. The entire installation shall also conform to 2.11.6, Sections 2.12 and 2.13, 2.14.5.7, and 2.29.2.

(c) Where an alteration is made to any hoistway entrance, it shall conform to 2.11.3, 2.11.5, 2.11.7, 2.11.8, and 8.7.2.10.5. The entire installation shall also conform to Sections 2.12 and 2.13, 2.14.5.7, and 2.29.2.

(d) Where an emergency door is added or altered, it shall conform to 2.11.1 and 8.7.2.10.5.

(e) Where access openings for cleaning are installed, they shall conform to 2.11.1.4 and 8.7.2.10.5.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(o).

8.7.2.10.2 Horizontal Slide-Type Entrances. In addition to the requirements of 8.7.2.10.1, where any new horizontal slide-type entrance is installed, it shall conform to 2.11.11.

New components that are installed as part of an alteration to an entrance shall conform as follows:

(a) Landing sills shall conform to 2.11.10.1, 2.11.11.1, and 2.11.11.6.

(b) Hanger tracks and track supports shall conform to 2.11.11.2.

(c) Entrance frames shall conform to 2.11.11.3. An applied frame shall be permitted to be fastened to an existing frame, provided that the combination of the new and existing frames conforms to 2.11.11.3 and 2.11.11.5.1 through 2.11.11.5.3.

(d) Hangers shall conform to 2.11.11.4.

(e) Panels shall comply with 2.11.11.5 through 2.11.11.7, except that the overlap required by 2.11.11.5.1 shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

(f) Door safety retainers shall conform to 2.11.11.8.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(o).

8.7.2.10.3 Vertical Slide-Type Entrances. In addition to the requirements of 8.7.2.10.1, where any new vertical slide-type entrance is installed, it shall conform to 2.11.12.

New components that are installed as part of an alteration to an entrance shall conform as follows:

- (a) Landing sills shall conform to 2.11.10.3 and 2.11.12.1.
- (b) Entrance frames shall conform to 2.11.12.2.
- (c) Rails shall conform to 2.11.12.3.
- (d) Panels shall conform to 2.11.12.3 through 2.11.12.6 and 2.11.12.8.
- (e) Guides shall conform to 2.11.12.5.
- (f) Sill guards shall conform to 2.11.12.7.
- (g) Pull straps shall conform to 2.11.12.8.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(o).

8.7.2.10.4 Swing-Type Entrances. In addition to the requirements of 8.7.2.10.1, where any new swing-type entrance is installed, it shall conform to 2.11.13.

New components that are installed as part of an alteration to an entrance shall conform as follows:

- (a) Landing sills shall conform to 2.11.10.1, 2.11.10.3, and 2.11.13.1.
- (b) Entrance frames shall conform to 2.11.13.2 and 2.11.13.4.
- (c) Panels shall conform to 2.11.13.3 through 2.11.13.5.
- (d) Hinges shall conform to 2.11.13.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(o).

8.7.2.10.5 Marking of Entrance Assemblies

(a) In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, when an entrance or door panel is altered, the following shall apply:

(1) It shall have the fire protection rating not less than that of the existing entrance assembly.

(2) It shall be labeled in accordance with the NBCC.

(b) In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, new hoistway entrances or door panels in fire-resistive construction shall conform to 2.11.14 through 2.11.18, except for the following:

- (1) existing metal frames
- (2) existing tracks, sills, and sill supports
- (3) applied frames

8.7.2.11 Hoistway Door Locking Devices, Access Switches, and Parking Devices. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(dd).

8.7.2.11.1 Interlocks. Where the alteration consists of the installation of hoistway door interlocks, the installation shall conform to 2.12.1, 2.12.2, 2.12.4 through 2.12.7, 2.14.5.7, and 2.24.8.3.

8.7.2.11.2 Mechanical Locks and Electric Contacts. Where the alteration consists of the installation of hoistway door combination mechanical locks and electric contacts, the installation shall conform to 2.12.1, 2.12.3, 2.12.4, 2.12.6, and 2.24.8.

8.7.2.11.3 Parking Devices. Where an alteration is performed to an elevator operated from within the car only, the installation shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) An elevator parking device shall be provided at every elevator landing that is equipped with an unlocking device, if

(1) the doors are not automatically unlocked when the car is within the unlocking zone (see 2.12.1)

(2) the doors are not operable from the landing by a door open button or floor button

(b) Elevator parking devices shall be permitted to be provided at other landings.

(c) Elevator parking devices shall conform to the following requirements:

(1) They shall be located at a height not greater than 2108 mm (83 in.) above the floor.

(2) They shall be mechanically or electrically operated.

(3) They shall be designed and installed so that friction or sticking or the breaking of any spring used in the device will not permit opening or unlocking a door when the car is outside the landing zone of that floor.

(4) Springs, where used, shall be the restrained compression type, which will prevent separation of the parts in case the spring breaks.

(d) In elevators with a parking device, means shall not be permitted to turn off the lighting inside the car.

8.7.2.11.4 Access Switches and Unlocking Devices.

Where the alteration consists of the installation of hoistway access switches and/or hoistway door unlocking devices, the installation shall conform to

(a) requirements 2.12.6 and 2.24.8.3 for unlocking devices

(b) requirements 2.12.7, 2.24.8, and 2.26.1.4 for access switches

8.7.2.11.5 Restricted Opening of Car Doors. Where a device that restricts the opening of car doors is altered or installed, the device shall conform to 2.14.5.7.

8.7.2.12 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors. Where the alteration consists of the addition of, or alteration to, power opening or power closing of hoistway doors, the installation shall conform to 8.7.2.10.1 through 8.7.2.10.3 and 8.7.2.10.5. All new equipment and wiring shall conform to 8.7.2.8 and 2.26.4.2. All modified equipment and wiring shall conform to 8.7.2.8.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(a).

8.7.2.13 Door Reopening Device. Where a reopening device for power-operated car doors or gates is added or is part of an alteration to the door system, the following requirements shall apply:

(a) Requirement 2.13.4.

(b) Requirement 2.13.5.

(c) When Firefighters' Emergency Operation is provided, door reopening devices and door closing on Phase I and Phase II shall comply with the requirements applicable at the time of installation of the Firefighters' Emergency Operation.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(ee).

8.7.2.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(ff).

(22) **8.7.2.14.1** Where an alteration consists of the installation of a new car, the installation shall conform to Section 2.14, except 2.14.5.7; Section 2.15, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.); and Section 2.17 (see also 8.7.2.15.1). If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.4.1 and 8.7.1.11.

(22) **8.7.2.14.2** The following requirements shall be conformed to where alterations are made to existing cars:

- (a) Car enclosures shall conform to 2.14.1.2.
 - (b) Where an alteration is made to a top emergency exit, or where a new one is installed, it shall conform to 2.14.1.5. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.4.1 and 8.7.1.11.
 - (c) Where an alteration consists of the installation of glass in an elevator car, it shall conform to 2.14.1.8.
 - (d) Any equipment added to an elevator car shall conform to 2.14.1.9.
 - (e) All side emergency exits shall be permanently fixed in the closed position. The corresponding side emergency exit on an adjacent car shall also be fixed in the closed position.
 - (f) Any alteration to passenger car ventilation shall conform to 2.14.2.3.
 - (g) Any alteration to car illumination or lighting fixtures shall conform to 2.14.7.
 - (h) Where partitions are installed in elevator cars for the purpose of reducing the inside net platform areas for passenger use, they shall conform to 2.16.1.2. Where conditions do not permit symmetrical loading, guide rails, car frames, and platforms shall be capable of sustaining the resulting stresses and deflections.
 - (i) Where an alteration consists of the installation of a car door or gate on an existing elevator car, the installation shall conform to 2.14.4 through 2.14.6, except 2.14.5.7.
- For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(ff). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.14.3 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, where any alteration is made to the car enclosure, other than as specified in 8.7.2.14.2, the installation shall conform to the following:

- (a) Where an existing metal enclosure is retained and new material, other than metal, is installed, the car enclosure shall conform to 2.14.2.1.1.
- (b) Where an existing enclosure other than as specified in (a) is retained and new material is installed, the new material and adhesive shall conform to the following re-

quirements, based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E84, ANSI/UL 723, or CAN/ULC-S102:

- (1) flame spread rating of 0 to 75
- (2) smoke development of 0 to 450

If the material or combination of materials installed exceeds 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) in thickness, the car enclosure shall conform to 2.14.2.1.1.

(c) Napped, tufted, woven, looped, and similar materials shall conform to 2.14.2.1.1 or (b), 8.3.7, and 8.3.8. Adhesives shall conform to (b).

(d) Floor covering, underlayment, and its adhesive shall have a critical radiant flux of not less than 0.45 W/cm² as measured by ASTM E648.

(e) Handrails, operating devices, ventilating devices, signal fixtures, audio and visual communication devices, and their housings are not required to conform to (a) through (d).

8.7.2.14.4 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, where any alteration is made to the car enclosure, car doors, or car gates, other than as specified in 8.7.2.14.2, the installation shall conform to 2.14.2.1.2 through 2.14.2.1.4, except that existing car enclosure materials exposed to the hoistway are not required to conform to the flame spread ratings. The existing flame spread rating shall not be diminished.

8.7.2.14.5 Addition of Car Top Railing. Where a car top railing is installed, the installation shall conform to 8.7.2.14.5.1 or 8.7.2.14.5.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(rr).

8.7.2.14.5.1 The installation shall conform to 2.14.1.7.

8.7.2.14.5.2 Where conformance with 2.14.1.7 is not possible due to existing overhead conditions, a stowable design, e.g., foldable or collapsible, shall be permitted provided that

- (a) when the railing is in the fully stowed position, the car shall be permitted to operate in any mode of operation except top-of-car Inspection Operation.
- (b) when the railing is in the fully extended position, the car shall be permitted to operate only in top-of-car Inspection Operation in accordance with 2.26.1.4.2.
- (c) when the railing is neither stowed nor in the fully extended position, the car shall not be permitted to operate.

(d) switches used to monitor the stowed position shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically when the railing is moved from its stowed position.

(e) switches used to monitor the fully extended position shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically when the railing is moved from its fully extended position.

(f) the occurrence of a single ground; or the failure of a contactor, a relay, or any single solid-state device; or a failure of a software system in the circuits incorporating these switches shall not permit operation other than as specified in (a), (b), or (c).

(g) means shall be provided to prevent upward movement of the car beyond the point required to maintain top-of-car clearances when the railing is not in the fully stowed position. Activation of the means shall not cause an average retardation exceeding 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2).

(h) when in the fully extended position, the railing shall meet the requirements of 2.10.2 and shall be designed to prevent accidental disengagement.

(i) the force required to extend or retract the railing shall not exceed 220 N (50 lbf).

8.7.2.15 Car Frames and Platforms

(22) 8.7.2.15.1 Alterations to Car Frames and Platforms.

Where alterations are made to a car frame or platform, the frame and platform shall conform to Section 2.15. Where roller or similar-type guide shoes are installed, that allow a definite limited movement of the car with respect to the guide rails, the clearance between the safety jaws and rails of the car shall be such that the safety jaws cannot touch the rails when the car frame is pressed against the rail faces with sufficient force to take up all movement of the roller guides. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.4.1, 8.4.5, and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(qq). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

(22) 8.7.2.15.2 Increase or Decrease in Deadweight of the

Car. Where an alteration results in an increase or decrease in the deadweight of the car that is sufficient to increase or decrease the sum of the deadweight and rated load, as originally installed, by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) Section 2.15, except the car platform guard (apron), shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.)

(b) Section 2.16

(c) Section 2.17

(d) Section 2.18

(e) Section 2.20, except as specified in 8.7.2.21.4

(f) Section 2.21, except as covered by 8.7.2.22.2

(g) Section 2.22, except for 2.22.4.7, provided that conformance with

(1) requirement 2.22.4.10 is established otherwise

(2) requirement 2.22.4.5.1(b) can be established by other means such as adding a buffer switch conforming to 2.26.2.22

(h) Section 2.23

(i) Section 2.24, except 2.24.1

(j) requirement 8.7.2.9

(k) if seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.4.1, 8.4.5, and 8.7.1.11)

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(d). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.16 Capacity, Loading, and Classification

(22)

8.7.2.16.1 Change in Type of Service. Where an alteration consists of a change in type of service from freight to passenger or passenger to freight, the installation shall conform to

(a) requirements 2.11.1 through 2.11.3 and 2.11.5 through 2.11.8

(b) Sections 2.12 and 2.13

(c) Section 2.22, except 2.22.4.5.1(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11

(d) Sections 2.14 and 2.15, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone, plus 75 mm (3 in.)

(e) Section 2.17, except that where gradual wedge clamp and drum-operated flexible guide-clamp safeties are reused, the stopping distances shall conform to the requirements of the Code at the time of installation [see ASME A17.2, Table 2.29.2(c)]

(f) Section 2.18, except that the pitch diameters of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7

(g) Sections 2.16; 2.20, except as specified in 8.7.2.21.4; and Sections 2.24 through 2.27 [as modified by 8.7.2.28(a) through 8.7.2.28(f)], except 2.24.1

(h) Section 2.19

(i) if seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.4.1 and 8.7.1.11

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(q). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.16.2 Change in Class of Loading. Where the class of loading of a freight elevator is changed, it shall conform to 2.16.2 (see also 8.7.2.16.4). Where the freight loading class of a passenger elevator is changed, it shall conform to 2.16.1.3. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.4.1 and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(p). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.16.3 Carrying of Passengers on Freight Elevators. Where the alteration consists of a change in type of service from a freight elevator to a freight elevator permitted to carry passengers, the elevator shall conform to 2.16.4. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.4.1 and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(q). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.16.4 Increase in Rated Load. Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Car doors or gates shall be provided at all car entrances. Where new car doors or gates are installed, they shall conform to 2.14.4 through 2.14.6, except 2.14.5.7.

(b) Section 2.15, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone, plus 75 mm (3 in.).

(c) Section 2.16.

(d) Section 2.17.

(e) Section 2.18, except that the pitch diameters of existing governor sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7.

(f) Section 2.19.

(g) Section 2.20, except as specified in 8.7.2.21.4.

(h) Section 2.21, except as covered by 8.7.2.22.2.

(i) Section 2.22, except 2.22.4.5.1(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11.

(j) Section 2.23.

(k) Section 2.24.

(l) Requirements 2.26.1.4 and 2.26.1.5.

(m) Requirement 2.26.5.

(n) Requirement 8.7.2.9.

(o) If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.8.2.1 through 8.4.8.2.4, 8.4.8.6, and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(g). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.17 Change in Rise or Rated Speed

8.7.2.17.1 Increase or Decrease in Rise. Where an alteration involves an increase or decrease in the rise, the following requirements shall be conformed to:

(a) The terminal stopping devices shall be relocated to conform to Section 2.25.

(b) Where the increase in rise is less than 4570 mm (180 in.), an existing winding-drum machine shall be permitted to be retained, provided the drum is of sufficient dimensions to serve the increased rise with not less than one full turn of wire rope remaining on the winding drum when the car or counterweight has reached its extreme limits of travel.

(c) The bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to Section 2.4, except as follows:

(1) Where the increase in rise is at the upper end of the hoistway, the existing bottom car clearance and car and counterweight runby are not required to conform to Section 2.4. However, if existing clearances are less than as required by Section 2.4, they shall not be decreased by the change in rise.

(2) Where the increase in rise is at the lower end of the hoistway, the existing overhead car and counterweight clearances are not required to conform to Section 2.4. However, if existing clearances are less than as required by Section 2.4, they shall not be decreased by the change in rise.

(3) Where the decrease in rise is at the lowest end of the rise, the installation shall conform to 2.2.4 through 2.2.6 and 2.21.4.

(d) Where the increase in rise creates a single blind hoistway section greater than 11 m (36 ft) from sill to sill, the alteration shall comply with 2.11.1.2 and 2.11.1.3.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(n).

8.7.2.17.2 Increase in Rated Speed

(22)

(a) Increase in the rated speed of a winding-drum machine is prohibited, except as permitted in (c).

(b) Where the alteration involves an increase in the rated speed, except as specified in (c), the following requirements shall be conformed to:

(1) The bottom runbys and the top clearances for cars and counterweights shall conform to 2.4.2 through 2.4.9.

(2) Horizontal clearances shall conform to Section 2.5.

(3) The car and counterweight buffers shall conform to Section 2.22, except that existing buffers, where retained, are not required to conform to 2.22.4.5.1(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11.

(4) Car doors or gates shall be provided at all car entrances. Where new car doors or gates are installed, they shall conform to Section 2.14, except 2.14.5.7.

(5) The car safety, the counterweight safety (where provided), and the governor shall conform to Sections 2.17 and 2.18, except that the pitch diameters of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7. Where the new rated speed is greater than 3.5 m/s (700 ft/min), compensating-rope tie-down shall be provided in compliance with 2.21.4.2.

(6) The capacity and loading shall conform to Section 2.16.

(7) The driving machine and sheaves shall conform to Section 2.24.

(8) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 2.25.

(9) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to Section 2.26, except that 2.26.4.1 through 2.26.4.3 shall apply only to the electrical wiring and equipment altered. Requirement 2.26.4.4 does not apply.

(10) Suspension means and the suspension member connection shall conform to Section 2.20, except as specified in 8.7.2.21.4.

(11) Car overspeed protection and unintended car movement protection shall conform to Section 2.19.

(12) [Section 2.15](#), except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to [2.15.9](#) only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.).

(c) Where the increase in rated speed does not exceed 10%, does not exceed 0.20 m/s (40 ft/min), and is a result of a power supply change, and the new motor speed cannot match the existing motor speed, the installation is not required to conform to (b), except that the new rated speed shall not

(1) exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) for Type A safeties

(2) exceed 1 m/s (200 ft/min) when spring buffers or elastomeric buffers are provided

Governors shall be adjusted to conform to [2.18.2.1](#) and [2.18.2.2](#) (see also [8.7.2.27.3](#)).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.2.3.2\(j\)](#).

8.7.2.17.3 Decrease in Rated Speed. Conformance with the following requirements shall be required when the alteration involves a decrease in the rated speed:

(a) Where the bottom runbys and the top clearances for cars and counterweights are less than as required by [Section 2.4](#), they shall not be decreased by the speed reduction.

(b) The tripping speed of the car speed governor and the counterweight speed governor, where provided, shall be adjusted to conform to [2.18.2](#) for the new rated car speed.

(c) The capacity and loading shall conform to [Section 2.16](#).

(d) Capacity and data plates shall conform to [2.16.3](#), except the information required by [2.16.3.2.2\(d\)](#) shall include the name of the company doing the alteration and the year of the alteration.

(e) New electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to [2.26.4.1](#) through [2.26.4.3](#).

8.7.2.18 Car and Counterweight Safeties. For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.2.3.2\(e\)](#).

8.7.2.18.1 Where the alteration consists of the installation of new car safeties, the car safeties, car speed governor, and car guide rails shall conform to [Sections 2.17](#), [2.18](#), and [2.23](#), except as noted in [8.7.2.19](#).

8.7.2.18.2 Where the alteration consists of the installation of new counterweight safeties, the counterweight safeties, counterweight speed governor, and counterweight guide rails shall conform to [Sections 2.17](#), [2.18](#), and [2.23](#), except as noted in [8.7.2.19](#).

8.7.2.18.3 Where any alterations are made to existing car or counterweight safeties, the affected safeties, governors, and guide rails shall conform to [2.17.1](#) through [2.17.9](#), [2.17.15](#), and [Sections 2.18](#) and [2.23](#), except as noted in [8.7.2.19](#).

8.7.2.18.4 Where existing rail reactions are not increased by the installation of new safeties, the existing hoistway construction for bracket support need not be modified.

8.7.2.19 Speed Governors and Governor Ropes.

Where any alteration is made to a speed governor, or where a new governor is installed, it shall conform to [Section 2.18](#). Where there is a releasing carrier, it shall conform to [2.17.15](#).

Governor ropes of a different material or construction than originally specified by the governor manufacturer shall be permitted, provided that

(a) there is conformance with [2.18.6](#) and [2.18.7](#), except that the pitch diameters of existing governor sheaves and tension sheaves are not required to conform to [2.18.7](#)

(b) a test is made of the car or counterweight safety and speed governor with the new rope to demonstrate that the safety will function as required by [2.17.3](#)

Drum-operated safeties that require continuous tension in the governor rope to achieve full safety application shall be checked as specified in [8.6.4.20.1](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.2.3.2\(f\)](#).

8.7.2.20 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. (22)

The requirements of [Section 2.19](#) shall apply where a device for protection against ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement is altered or installed, including conformance to requirement [Section 2.15](#), except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to [2.15.9](#) only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.2.3.2\(gg\)](#).

8.7.2.21 Suspension Means and Their Connections. (22)

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.2.3.2\(hh\)](#).

8.7.2.21.1 Change in Suspension Members

(a) Where the material, grade, number, or size of suspension members is changed, the new suspension members and their fastenings shall conform to [Section 2.20](#), except as specified in [8.7.2.21.4](#). When existing sheaves are retained using suspension members different from those originally specified, the original elevator manufacturer or a licensed professional engineer shall certify the sheave material to be satisfactory for the revised application.

(b) Where there is a change to the type of suspension means, the installation shall conform to [Section 2.20](#).

(c) If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.3.1](#), [8.4.3.2](#), and [8.7.1.11](#).

8.7.2.21.2 Addition of Suspension Member Equalizers. Where suspension member equalizers are installed, they shall conform to [2.20.5](#). See Requirement [8.4.3.1](#) and [8.4.3.2](#), if seismic requirements apply (see [8.7.1.11](#)).

8.7.2.21.3 Addition of Auxiliary Suspension Member Fastening Devices. Where auxiliary suspension member fastening devices are installed, they shall conform to 2.20.10. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.3.1, 8.4.3.2, and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(hh). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.21.4 Suspension Means Monitoring and Protection

(a) If a traction-loss detection means is altered or added, it shall comply with 2.20.8.1.

(b) If a broken-suspension-member detection means is altered or added, it shall comply with 2.20.8.2.

(c) If a suspension member residual-strength detection means is altered or added, it shall comply with 2.20.8.3.

(d) Elevators installed to editions prior to ASME A17.1-2007/CSA B44-07, including ASME A17.1a-2008/CSA B44a-08, are exempt from the requirements of 2.20.8 and 2.20.11 if suspension means monitoring and protection were not previously provided or required by a subsequent alteration.

- (22) **8.7.2.22 Counterweights.** For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(ii).

8.7.2.22.1 Where alterations are made to any part of a counterweight assembly, except guiding members, the installation shall conform to Section 2.21, except as specified by 8.7.2.22.2. See also 8.7.2.3. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.7 and 8.7.1.11.

8.7.2.22.2 Rod-type counterweights shall be permitted to be retained, provided they are equipped with a minimum of two suspension rods and two tie-rods. The two suspension rods shall conform to 2.21.2.1 and 2.21.2.3 and shall be provided with locknuts and cotter pins at each end. The tie-rods shall conform to 2.21.1.2. Means shall be provided on each side of the counterweight to maintain the distance between the top and bottom guide weights in the event the counterweight lands on the buffer. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.7 and 8.7.1.11.

8.7.2.22.3 Where roller or similar-type guide shoes are installed, that allow a definite limited movement of the counterweight with respect to the guide rails, the clearance between the safety jaws and rails of the counterweight shall be such that the safety jaws cannot touch the rails when the counterweight frame is pressed against the rail faces with sufficient force to take up all movement of the roller guides. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.7.1, 8.4.7.2, and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(ii). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.22.4 Where compensation means is added or altered, it shall conform to 2.21.4 and, where applicable, 2.1.2.3(c), Section 2.4, 2.22.4.10.3, and 2.26.2.3. For inspection test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(ii).

8.7.2.23 Car and Counterweight Buffers and Bumpers. Where alterations are made to car and counterweight buffers or bumpers, they shall conform to Section 2.22. The buffers are not required to conform to 2.22.4.7 if

(a) the buffer's load rating and properties defining the method of absorbing and dissipating energy have not been altered

(b) the load rating of the buffer can be established by other means such as using original design data, original type testing data, or the marking plate

(c) the conformance with 2.22.4.5.1(b) can be established by other means such as adding a buffer switch conforming to 2.26.2.22

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(c).

8.7.2.24 Guide Rails, Supports, and Fastenings. (22)

Where alterations are made to car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, or guide-rail fastenings, or where the stresses have been increased by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to Section 2.23. Guide rails, supports, fastenings, and joints of different design and construction from those provided for in Section 2.23 shall be permitted to be retained provided they are in accordance with sound engineering practice and will adequately maintain the accuracy of the rail alignment. If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.8 and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(b). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.25 Driving Machines and Sheaves (22)

8.7.2.25.1 Alterations to Driving Machines and Sheaves

(a) Where a driving machine is installed as part of an alteration, the installation shall conform to 2.7.2; Section 2.9; 2.10.1; Section 2.19; Section 2.20, except as specified in 8.7.2.21.4; Section 2.24; and 2.26.8. Requirement 2.7.2 applies to the extent existing installations permit. The installation shall conform to 2.15.9, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.).

If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.2, 8.4.3, 8.4.8.2 through 8.4.8.4, 8.4.9, and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(r). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

(b) Where alterations are made to driving-machine components, the affected components shall conform to 2.24.2 through 2.24.9 and 2.26.8.

If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.2, 8.4.3, 8.4.8.2 through 8.4.8.4, 8.4.9, and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(v) and, if the driving-machine brake is altered, 8.10.2.3.2(h). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

(c) Where an alteration consists of a change in the driving-machine sheave, the suspension means and their connections shall conform to Section 2.20, except as specified in 8.7.2.21.4. The sheave shall conform to 2.24.2 through 2.24.4.

If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.2, 8.4.3, 8.4.8.2 through 8.4.8.4, 8.4.9, and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(w). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.25.2 Change in Location of the Driving Machine

(a) Where the location of the driving machine is changed, the installation shall conform to 2.7.2, 2.7.5, 2.7.6.3.1, 2.7.6.3.3, 2.7.6.4, 2.7.8, 2.7.9, Sections 2.8 through 2.10, Section 2.19, Section 2.20, 2.24.1, 2.24.2.3, and Section 2.28. For elevators in the same group, Section 2.29 also applies. Requirement 2.15.9 applies, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.).

If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.2, 8.4.3, 8.4.8.2 through 8.4.8.4, 8.4.9, and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(i). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

(b) Where the location of the driving machine is changed with an increase or decrease in rise, the installation shall conform to (a) and 8.7.2.17.1.

If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.2, 8.4.3, 8.4.8.2 through 8.4.8.4, 8.4.9, and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(i). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.26 Terminal Stopping Devices. Where an alteration is made to any terminal stopping device, the installation shall conform to Section 2.25.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(k).

8.7.2.27 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

8.7.2.27.1 Inspection Operation and Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits

(a) Where there is an alteration to or addition of any type of Inspection Operation [see 2.26.1.4.1(a)], the alteration shall conform to the applicable requirements in 2.26.1.4.

(b) Where there is an alteration to or addition of car door bypass or hoistway door bypass switches, the alteration shall conform to 2.26.1.5.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(jj).

8.7.2.27.2 Car-Leveling or Truck-Zoning Devices.

Where there is an alteration to or addition of a car-leveling device or a truck-zoning device, it shall conform to 2.26.1.6.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(kk).

8.7.2.27.3 Change in Power Supply.

Where an alteration consists of a change in power supply at the main line terminals of the elevator motion controller or motor controller, involving one of the following, whichever is applicable:

- (a) change in voltage, frequency, or number of phases
- (b) change from direct current to alternating current or vice versa
- (c) change to a combination of direct current and alternating current

Electrical equipment shall conform to 2.26.1.1 through 2.26.1.4, 2.26.1.6, 2.26.2, 2.26.6, 2.26.7, 2.26.9, and 2.26.10. All new and modified equipment and wiring shall conform to 2.26.4.1 through 2.26.4.3.

Brakes shall conform to 2.24.8 and 2.26.8.

Winding-drum machines shall be provided with final terminal stopping devices conforming to 2.25.3.5 [see also 8.7.2.17.2(b)].

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(ll).

8.7.2.27.4 Controllers. When the replacement of the controller does not meet the requirements of 8.6.3.17.2(b), it shall be treated as an alteration and meet the following requirements:

(a) Where a motion controller is installed, without any change in the type of motion control, and without replacing the existing operation control, the installation shall conform to the following:

- (1) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment
- (2) Requirements 2.26.4.2 and 8.7.2.8 for the newly installed equipment
- (3) Section 2.19, except 2.19.2.2(a)(1) through 2.19.2.2(a)(3) is not required if the Code at the time of the original installation was prior to ASME A17.1-2000
- (4) Requirement 2.26.9 for the newly installed equipment
- (5) Section 2.29 for elevators in the same group
- (6) Requirement 2.15.9, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.).

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(s).

(b) Where an operation controller is installed, and the type of operation control, if automatic remains automatic, or, if nonautomatic remains continuous pressure, car switch, or other type of operation where the movement or stopping of the car is under the manual control of the operator (nonautomatic), and the existing motion control

equipment is retained, the installation shall conform to the following:

- (1) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment
- (2) Requirements 2.26.4.2 and 8.7.2.8 for the newly installed equipment
- (3) Requirements 2.26.9.3.1(d), 2.26.9.3.1(e), 2.26.9.3.2, and 2.26.9.4 for the newly installed equipment
- (4) Section 2.29 for elevators in the same group

NOTE: Where the installation of an operation control alters emergency operation and signaling devices, the requirements of 8.7.2.28 apply.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(s).

(c) Where both a motion controller and an operation controller are installed without any change in the type of motion control as described in (a) and without any change in the type of operation control as described in (b), the installation shall conform to the following:

- (1) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment
- (2) Requirements 2.26.4.2 and 8.7.2.8 for the newly installed equipment
- (3) Section 2.19
- (4) terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 2.25

(5) the newly installed operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26.1.2, 2.26.1.4 through 2.26.1.6, 2.26.2 through 2.26.9, and 2.26.11

(6) Requirement 2.27.2 [as modified by 8.7.2.28(b)] and 8.7.2.28(f)] applies when emergency power is provided

(7) in jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, 2.27.3 through 2.27.9 [as modified by 8.7.2.28(c)] through 8.7.2.28(f)] apply when either

(-a) travel is 8 m (25 ft) or more above or below the designated landing or

(-b) Firefighters' Emergency Operation was required or provided at the time of installation

(8) in jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, 2.27.3 through 2.27.9 [as modified by 8.7.2.28(c)] through 8.7.2.28(f)] apply only if Firefighters' Emergency Operation was required or provided at the time of installation

(9) Section 2.29 for elevators in the same group

(10) Requirement 2.15.9, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.).

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(s).

(d) Where a controller for the operation of hoistway doors, car doors, or car gates is installed, see 8.7.2.12.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(u).

(e) Where a controller for the elevator operation on emergency or standby power or Firefighters' Emergency Operation is installed, see 8.7.2.28.

(f) If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.10.1 and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements for seismic alterations or additions see 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.27.5 Change in Type of Motion Control. Where there is a change in the type of motion control (the method of controlling acceleration, speed, retardation, and stopping), the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment

(b) all new and modified electrical equipment and wiring to 8.7.2.8

(c) The protection of the hoistway landing openings shall conform to

(1) Requirement 2.11.1, except

(-a) existing entrance openings less than 2030 mm (79.9 in.) in height or 800 mm (31.5 in.) in width are permitted to be retained

(-b) Requirement 2.11.1.4

(2) Requirements 2.11.2 through 2.11.10

(3) Requirements 2.11.11.6 through 2.11.11.8 and 2.11.11.10

(4) Requirement 2.11.12.8

(d) Section 2.12, except

(1) a minimum engagement of 6 mm (0.24 in.) is permitted in 2.12.2.4.3

(2) Requirement 2.12.4, where existing door locking devices are being retained

(e) Section 2.13

(f) Car enclosures and car doors or gates shall conform to Section 2.14, except that where existing car enclosures and/or car doors or gates are retained, conformance with the following requirements is not required:

(1) Requirements 2.14.1.3, 2.14.1.5.1, 2.14.1.6.2, 2.14.1.8, and 2.14.1.9

(2) Requirements 2.14.2.1 and 2.14.2.3 through 2.14.2.5

(3) Requirements 2.14.2.6(d) and 2.14.2.6(f)

(4) Requirement 2.14.3

(5) Requirements 2.14.4.2.5 if existing interlocks or contacts are retained, 2.14.4.3, and 2.14.4.6

(6) Requirements 2.14.5.1, 2.14.5.6, and 2.14.5.8

(7) Requirement 2.14.6.2.2, except 2.14.5 shall be as amended in (6)

(8) Requirements 2.14.7.1.3, 2.14.7.1.4, and 2.14.7.2 through 2.14.7.4

(g) Where conformance to 2.14.1.7.1 is not possible due to existing overhead conditions, an alternative solution, acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, providing equivalency to 2.14.1.7.1 shall be permitted.

(h) The car safety, the counterweight safety (where provided), and the governor shall conform to Sections 2.17 and 2.18, except that

(1) where the safety factors required by 2.17.12.1 cannot be ascertained, rated load testing shall be accepted as demonstration of compliance

(2) the pitch diameter of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7.4

(i) The capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16.8.

(j) Car overspeed protection and unintended movement protection shall conform to Section 2.19.

(k) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 2.25.

(l) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to Section 2.26. The requirements of 2.26.4.2 through 2.26.4.4 shall not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the alteration.

(m) In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, emergency operation and signaling devices shall be provided and shall conform to Section 2.27 [as modified by 8.7.2.28(a) through 8.7.2.28(f)].

In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, the following shall be complied with:

(1) car emergency signaling devices complying with 2.27.1 [as modified by 8.7.2.28(a) and 8.7.2.28(f)]

(2) emergency operation and signaling devices conforming to 2.27.2 through 2.27.9 [as modified by 8.7.2.28(c) through 8.7.2.28(f)] where required by the NBCC or a prior edition of CSA B44

(n) Equipment and floors shall be identified as required by Section 2.29 for elevators in the same group.

(o) If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.3.1, 8.4.3.2, 8.4.4.1, 8.4.5, 8.4.6, 8.4.7.1, 8.4.7.2, 8.4.8.2.1 through 8.4.8.2.4, 8.4.8.6, 8.4.9, 8.4.10, and 8.7.1.11.

(p) Requirement 2.15.9 applies, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.).

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(t). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

(22) **8.7.2.27.6 Change in Type of Operation Control.**

Where there is a change in the type of operation control, from continuous pressure, car switch, or other type of operation where the movement or stopping of the car is under the manual control of the operator, to any form of automatic operation, or vice versa, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Pits to Section 2.2, except 2.2.2.1, 2.2.2.2, and 2.2.2.5.

(b) Counterweight guarding to Section 2.3.

(c) Vertical clearances and runbys as required by 8.7.2.4.

(d) Horizontal car and counterweight clearances as required by 8.7.2.5.

(e) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.5, 2.7.6, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment.

(f) All new and modified electrical equipment and wiring to 8.7.2.8.

(g) The protection of the hoistway landing openings shall conform to 2.11.1 through 2.11.13 and Sections 2.12 and 2.13.

(h) Car enclosures and car doors or gates shall conform to Section 2.14, except that where existing car enclosures and/or car doors or gates are retained, conformance with the following requirements is not required:

(1) Requirement 2.14.1.3, except that with the specified force the required running clearances referenced in 2.14.1.3 are achieved, and 2.14.1.8

(2) Requirements 2.14.2.1, 2.14.2.3, and 2.14.2.4

(3) Requirements 2.14.4.3 and 2.14.4.6 except that with the specified force, the door or gate will not deflect beyond the line of the car sill

(i) Where conformance to 2.14.1.7.1 is not possible due to existing overhead conditions, an alternative solution, acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, providing equivalency to 2.14.1.7.1 shall be permitted.

(j) The car safety, the counterweight safety (where provided), and the governor shall conform to Sections 2.17 and 2.18, except that the pitch diameter of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7.

(k) The capacity and loading shall conform to Section 2.16.

(l) Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall conform to Section 2.19.

(m) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 2.25.

(n) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to Section 2.26. The requirements of 2.26.4.2 through 2.26.4.4 shall not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the alteration.

(o) Emergency operation and signaling devices shall be provided and shall conform to Section 2.27 [as modified by 8.7.2.28(a) through 8.7.2.28(f)].

(p) Equipment and floors shall be identified as required by Section 2.29 for elevators in the same group.

(q) If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.3.1, 8.4.3.2, 8.4.4.1, 8.4.5, 8.4.6, 8.4.7.1, 8.4.7.2, 8.4.8.2.1 through 8.4.8.2.4, 8.4.8.6, 8.4.9, 8.4.10, and 8.7.1.11.

(r) Requirement 2.15.9 applies, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.).

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(t). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

8.7.2.27.7 In-Car Stop Switch. On passenger elevators equipped with nonperforated car enclosures, the emergency stop switch, including all markings, shall be permitted to be removed and replaced by an in-car stop switch conforming to the following:

(a) It is either key operated or behind a locked cover, and located in or adjacent to the car operating panel. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1). The switch

shall be clearly and permanently marked “STOP” and shall indicate the “STOP” and “RUN” positions. When opened (“STOP” position), this switch shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

(b) The device shall meet the requirements of 2.26.4.3. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(mm).

8.7.2.27.8 Electrical Protective Devices. Where there is an alteration to or addition of an electrical protective device, it shall conform to 2.26.2 for that device.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(nn).

8.7.2.27.9 Door Monitoring System. Where there is an alteration to or addition of a system to monitor and prevent automatic operation of the elevator with faulty door contact circuits on power-operated car doors that are mechanically coupled with the landing doors while the car is in the landing zone, the alteration shall conform to the requirements in 2.26.5.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(oo).

(22) **8.7.2.27.10 Remote Interaction Operation.** Where there is an alteration to or the addition of remote interaction operation (RIO), the alteration or addition shall conform to the requirements in 2.26.9.3.1, 2.26.9.4, 2.26.13, 8.14.1, and 8.6.11.16.

(22) **8.7.2.28 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices**

(a) Where an alteration is made to car emergency signaling devices, the alteration shall conform to 2.27.1, except the visual and audible signal required by 2.27.1.1.6(b) shall be permitted to be located inside each car.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(pp).

(b) Where an alteration is made to emergency or standby power, or where emergency or standby power is added, the installation shall conform to the requirements of 2.27.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(l).

(c) Where an alteration is made to, or consists of the addition of, Firefighters’ Emergency Operation or Occupant Evacuation Operation, the elevator and all elevators in the same group automatic operation shall conform to 2.27.3 through 2.27.8 and 2.27.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(m).

(d) Where the alteration consists of the addition of an elevator to a group, all elevators in that group shall conform to Section 2.27.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.2.3.2(m).

(e) Where any of the alterations in (a) through (d) occur

(1) all new equipment and wiring shall conform to 2.26.4.2 and 8.7.2.8

(2) and all modified equipment and wiring shall conform to 8.7.2.8. Equipment and floors shall be identified as required by Section 2.29

(3) if seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.10.1 and 8.7.1.11

For inspection and test requirements for seismic alterations or additions, see 8.10.2.3.2(ss).

(f) Change in type of service (8.7.2.16.1), controllers (8.7.2.27.4), type of motion control (8.7.2.27.5), or type of operation control (8.7.2.27.6) requires emergency operations and signaling devices to be altered, conforming to Section 2.27.

(g) The requirements of (f) shall be permitted to be modified according to the requirements of 8.7.2.28.

8.7.3 Alterations to Hydraulic Elevators

8.7.3.1 Hoistway Enclosures. Alterations to hoistway enclosures shall conform to 8.7.2.1.

8.7.3.2 Pits

8.7.3.2.1 Alterations made to the pit shall conform to 2.1.2.3 and Section 2.2. See also 8.7.3.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(u).

8.7.3.2.2 Where a surface-mounted sump pump is added to an existing pit, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) The pump and any attachment thereof shall not be located in the refuge space or affect the clearances specified in 3.4.1.

(b) The pump and any attachment thereof shall not restrict or infringe upon the pit access.

(c) Requirement 2.2.2.4.

(d) Requirement 2.2.2.5.

8.7.3.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights. (22)

Where new counterweights are installed, they shall conform to Section 2.3 and 2.5.1.2. The installation shall also conform to Section 3.5.

If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.11.3, 8.4.11.7, and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(b). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.3.3.2(ss).

8.7.3.4 Vertical Car and Counterweight Clearances and Runbys. No alteration shall reduce any clearance or runby below that required by Section 3.4. Existing clearances shall be permitted to be maintained, except as required by 8.7.3.22.1, 8.7.3.22.2, and 8.7.3.23.5.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(v).

8.7.3.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. No alteration shall reduce any clearance below that required by Section 2.5. Existing clearances shall be permitted to be maintained, except as required by 8.7.3.22.1, 8.7.3.22.2, and 8.7.3.23.5.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(w).

8.7.3.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways. Where alterations are made to an elevator or the building, such that any space below the hoistway is not permanently secured against access, the affected installation shall conform to [Section 3.6](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(x\)](#).

8.7.3.7 Machine Rooms, Machinery Spaces, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms. Alterations to a machine room, machinery space, control space, or control room shall conform to [8.7.2.7.2](#) through [8.7.2.7.7](#). Where an alteration consists of the construction of a new machine room, machinery space, control space, or control room enclosure, it shall conform to [Sections 2.7](#) and [3.7](#). Electrical equipment clearances shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, whichever is applicable (see [Part 9](#)). Where alterations are made to any portion of a machine room, machinery space, control space, or control room, the portion that is altered shall conform to [Sections 2.7](#) and [3.7](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(y\)](#).

8.7.3.8 Electrical Wiring, Pipes, and Ducts in Hoistways and Machine Rooms. The installation of any new, or the alteration of existing, electrical equipment, wiring, raceways, cables, pipes, or ducts shall conform to the applicable requirements of [Section 2.8](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(z\)](#).

8.7.3.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Where new machinery and sheave beams, supports, foundations, or supporting floors are installed, or where alterations increase the original building design reactions by more than 5%, they shall conform to [Section 2.9](#), and the adequacy of the affected building structure to support the loads shall be verified by a licensed professional engineer.

8.7.3.10 Hoistway Entrances and Openings. Alterations to hoistway entrances shall conform to [8.7.2.10](#), except that emergency doors meeting the requirements of [2.11.1](#) are only required to be installed in the blind portion of the hoistway where required by [8.7.2.10](#) and (a) for all elevators where car or counterweight safeties are used

(b) for elevators where safeties are not used, emergency doors are not required on elevators where a manually operated valve is provided that will permit lowering the car at a reduced speed in case of power failure or similar emergency

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.2.3.2\(o\)](#).

8.7.3.11 Hoistway Door Locking Devices. Alterations to hoistway door locking devices, access switches, parking devices, and unlocking devices shall conform to [8.7.2.11](#), except that conformance with [2.24.8](#) is not required.

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(aa\)](#).

8.7.3.12 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors. Where the alteration consists of the addition of, or alteration to, power opening or power closing of hoistway doors, the installation shall conform to [8.7.2.10.1](#) through [8.7.2.10.3](#), [8.7.2.10.5](#), and [8.7.3.10](#).

All new equipment and wiring shall conform to [2.26.4.2](#) and [8.7.3.8](#).

All modified equipment and wiring shall conform to [8.7.3.8](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(a\)](#).

8.7.3.13 Car Enclosures and Door Reopening Devices

8.7.3.13.1 Where alterations are made to car enclosures, they shall conform to [8.7.2.14](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(cc\)](#).

8.7.3.13.2 Where a reopening device for power-operated car doors or gates is altered or added, it shall conform to [8.7.2.13](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(bb\)](#).

8.7.3.14 Car Frames and Platforms. Where alterations are made to a car frame or platform, the frame and platform shall conform to [Section 3.15](#). (22)

If safeties are used and if roller or similar-type guide shoes are installed, that allow a definite limited movement of the car with respect to the guide rails, the clearance between the safety jaws and rails of the car shall be such that the safety jaws cannot touch the rails when the car frame is pressed against the rail faces with sufficient force to take up all movement of the roller guides.

If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.11.3](#), [8.4.11.5.1](#), [8.4.11.5.2](#), and [8.7.1.11](#). For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(dd\)](#). For seismic alterations or additions, see also [8.10.3.3.2\(ss\)](#).

8.7.3.15 Safeties

8.7.3.15.1 Where the alteration consists of the installation of car safeties, the car safeties and car guide rails shall conform to [3.17.1](#) and [Sections 3.23](#) and [3.28](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(e\)](#).

8.7.3.15.2 Where the alteration consists of the installation of counterweight safeties, the counterweight safeties and counterweight guide rails shall conform to [3.17.2](#) and [Sections 3.23](#) and [3.28](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(e\)](#).

8.7.3.15.3 Where any alterations are made to existing car or counterweight safeties, the affected safeties and guide rails shall conform to [Sections 3.17](#), [3.23](#), and [3.28](#), except for cross-referenced [2.17.10](#) through [2.17.14](#), [2.17.16](#), and [2.21.4.2](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(e\)](#).

8.7.3.16 Governors and Governor Ropes. Where alterations are made to governors or where they are added, they shall conform to 8.7.2.19.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(f).

8.7.3.17 Change in Type of Service. Where an alteration consists of a change in type of service from freight to passenger or passenger to freight, the installation shall conform to

(a) Requirements 2.11.1 through 2.11.3 and 2.11.5 through 2.11.8, except that emergency doors meeting the requirements of 2.11.1 are only required to be installed in the blind portion of the hoistway

(1) for all elevators where car or counterweight safeties are used

(2) for elevators where safeties are not used, emergency doors are not required on elevators where a manually operated valve is provided that will permit lowering the car at a reduced speed in case of power failure or similar emergency

(b) Sections 2.12 and 2.13

(c) Section 2.22 and 3.22.2, except 2.22.4.5.1(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11

(d) Sections 3.14, 3.15, 3.17, 3.21, and 3.23

(e) Section 2.18, where governors are provided, except that the pitch diameters of existing governor sheaves and tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7

(f) Sections 3.16, 3.18 through 3.20, and 3.24 through 3.27 [as modified by 8.7.3.31.8(a) through 8.7.3.31.8(f)]

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(j).

8.7.3.18 Change in Class of Loading. Where the class of loading of a freight elevator is changed, it shall conform to 2.16.2 as modified by Section 3.16. Where the freight loading class of a passenger elevator is changed, it shall conform to 2.16.1.3 as modified by Section 3.16.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(j).

8.7.3.19 Carrying of Passengers on Freight Elevators. Where the alteration consists of a change in type of service from a freight elevator to a freight elevator permitted to carry passengers, the elevator shall conform to 3.16.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(j).

8.7.3.20 Increase in Rated Load. Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load, the installation shall conform to 2.26.1.4, 2.26.1.5, 2.26.5, Sections 3.14 through 3.17, and Sections 3.20 through 3.23 (see also 8.7.3.23.4).

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(g).

8.7.3.21 Increase in the Deadweight of the Car. Where an alteration results in an increase in the deadweight of the car that is sufficient to increase the sum of the deadweight and rated load, as originally installed, by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to Sections 3.14 through 3.17 and Sections 3.20 through 3.23 (see also 8.7.3.23.4).

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(d).

8.7.3.22 Change in Rise or Rated Speed

8.7.3.22.1 Increase or Decrease in Rise. Where an alteration involves an increase or decrease in the rise without any change in the location of the driving machine, it shall conform to the following:

(a) The terminal stopping devices shall be relocated to conform to Section 3.25.

(b) Where the increase in rise is at the lower end of the hoistway, bottom car and counterweight clearances and runbys shall conform to 3.4.1 through 3.4.3, and existing top car and counterweight clearances and runbys that are less than required by Section 3.4 shall not be decreased.

(c) Where the increase in rise is at the upper end of the hoistway, top car and counterweight clearances and runbys shall conform to Section 3.4, and existing bottom car and counterweight clearances and runbys that are less than required by Section 3.4 shall not be decreased.

(d) The plunger shall conform to 3.18.2.

(e) Where the decrease is at the lower end of the rise, the installation shall conform to 2.2.4 through 2.2.6.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(j).

8.7.3.22.2 Increase in Rated Speed. Where an alteration increases the rated speed, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Section 2.5.

(b) Section 3.4.

(c) Requirements 3.22.1 and 3.22.2, except that existing buffers, where retained, are not required to conform to referenced 2.22.4.5.1(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11.

(d) Car doors or gates shall be provided at all car entrances. Where new car doors or gates are installed, they shall conform to the applicable requirements of Section 3.14.

(e) Car and counterweight safeties and governors, where provided, shall conform to Section 3.17, except that the pitch diameters of existing governor sheaves and tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7.

(f) Section 3.16.

(g) Section 3.25.

(h) Requirements 3.26.1 through 3.26.6.

(i) Section 3.20.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(j).

8.7.3.22.3 Decrease in Rated Speed. When the alteration involves a decrease in the rated speed, it shall conform to the following:

(a) If the bottom runbys and the top clearances for cars and counterweights are less than required by Section 3.4, they shall not be decreased by the speed reduction.

(b) The tripping speed of the car speed governor and the counterweight speed governor, where provided, shall be adjusted to conform to 2.18.2 for the new rated car speed.

(c) The capacity and loading shall conform to [Section 3.16](#).

(d) Capacity and data plates shall conform to [3.16.3\(b\)](#), except the information required by [2.16.3.2.2\(d\)](#) shall include the name of the company doing the alteration and the year of the alteration.

(e) New electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to [2.26.4.1](#) and [2.26.4.2](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(j\)](#).

(22) 8.7.3.23 Hydraulic Equipment

8.7.3.23.1 Hydraulic Jack. Where a hydraulic jack is installed, altered, or replaced, it shall conform to [Section 3.18](#).

If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.11.9](#), [8.4.11.12](#), [8.4.11.13](#), and [8.7.1.11](#). For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(n\)](#). For seismic alterations or additions, see also [8.10.3.3.2\(ss\)](#).

8.7.3.23.2 Plungers. Where a new plunger is installed or an existing plunger is altered, it shall conform to [3.18.1.2](#) and [3.18.2](#).

If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.11.9](#), [8.4.11.12](#), [8.4.11.13](#), and [8.7.1.11](#). For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(n\)](#). For seismic alterations or additions, see also [8.10.3.3.2\(ss\)](#).

8.7.3.23.3 Cylinders. Where a cylinder is installed, replaced, altered, or sleeved, it shall conform to [3.18.3](#). If the plunger is not equipped with a stop ring conforming to [3.18.4.1](#), the installation shall also conform to [3.18.1.2](#) and [3.18.2](#).

If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.11.9](#), [8.4.11.12](#), [8.4.11.13](#), and [8.7.1.11](#). For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(n\)](#). For seismic alterations or additions, see also [8.10.3.3.2\(ss\)](#).

8.7.3.23.4 Increase in Working Pressure. Where an alteration increases the working pressure by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to [Sections 3.18](#) and [3.19](#) and [3.24.1](#) through [3.24.4](#). Requirements [3.18.3.8](#) and [3.19.4.6](#) do not apply to existing equipment.

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(h\)](#).

8.7.3.23.5 Change in Location of the Hydraulic Jack. Where the location of the hydraulic jack is changed, the installation shall conform to [Part 3](#).

If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.11.3](#), [8.4.11.5.1](#), [8.4.11.5.2](#), [8.4.11.7](#), [8.4.11.9](#), [8.4.11.12](#), [8.4.11.13](#), [8.4.11.14](#), and [8.7.1.11](#). For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(i\)](#). For seismic alterations or additions, see also [8.10.3.3.2\(ss\)](#).

8.7.3.23.6 Relocation of the Hydraulic Machine (Power Unit). Where the hydraulic machine is relocated so that the top of the cylinder is above the top of the storage tank, the installation shall conform to [3.26.8](#).

If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.11.9](#), [8.4.11.12](#), [8.4.11.13](#), [8.4.11.14](#), and [8.7.1.11](#). For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.2.2\(bb\)](#). For seismic alterations or additions, see also [8.10.3.3.2\(ss\)](#).

8.7.3.23.7 Plunger Gripper. Where the alteration consists of the addition of a plunger gripper, the following conditions shall be met:

(a) The plunger gripper shall comply with [3.17.3](#).

(b) Requirement [3.1.1\(b\)](#) shall apply.

(c) When buffers are compressed solid or to a fixed stop in accordance with [3.22.1](#), the plunger gripper shall not strike the car structure.

If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.11.12](#), [8.4.11.13](#), and [8.7.1.11](#). For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(t\)](#). For seismic alterations or additions, see also [8.10.3.3.2\(ss\)](#).

8.7.3.24 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings

(22)

(a) Where an existing control valve is replaced with a valve of a different type (model) that is not designated by a valve manufacturer as a direct replacement, or where the mechanical properties differ, or where the electrical interface required to connect the valve is not the same, it shall be an alteration and shall conform to [Section 3.19](#).

(See [8.6.3.11](#) if the valve replacement has the same mechanical properties, does not require modifications to the electrical valve interface, and is designated as a direct replacement by the valve manufacturer.)

(b) Where a relief, check, shutoff, manual lowering, or overspeed valve is replaced with a valve that requires additional piping modifications or other interface changes, the replacement components shall conform to the applicable requirements of [Section 3.19](#).

(c) Where the supply piping is rerouted, the rerouted piping and fittings shall conform to the applicable requirements of [Section 3.19](#).

(d) Where supply piping or fittings are replaced, the replacement components shall conform to [8.6.3.11](#).

(e) Where electrically operated control valves are installed in place of existing mechanically operated control valves, for rated speeds more than 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min), existing terminal stopping devices consisting of an automatic stop valve independent of the normal control valve and operated by the movement of the car as it approaches the terminals, where provided, shall be permitted to be retained.

If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.11.12](#), [8.4.11.13](#), and [8.7.1.11](#). For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(o\)](#). For seismic alterations or additions, see also [8.10.3.3.2\(ss\)](#).

8.7.3.25 Suspension Ropes and Their Connections

(22)

8.7.3.25.1 Change in Ropes. Where the material, grade, number, or diameter of ropes is changed, the new ropes and their fastenings shall conform to

Section 3.20. When existing sheaves are retained using ropes different from those originally specified, the original elevator manufacturer or a licensed professional engineer shall certify the sheave material to be satisfactory for the revised application.

If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.11.13 and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(ee). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.3.3.2(ss).

8.7.3.25.2 Addition of Rope Equalizers. Where rope equalizers are installed, they shall conform to 2.20.5.

If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.11.13 and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(ee). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.3.3.2(ss).

- (22) **8.7.3.26 Counterweights.** Where alterations are made to counterweights, they shall conform to 8.7.2.22 and Section 3.21. Where counterweights are added to a previously uncounterweighted elevator, it shall conform to Sections 3.4, 3.6, 3.14, 3.15, 3.18, 3.20, and 3.21 and requirement 3.17.2. See also 8.7.3.3.

If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.11.7 and 8.7.1.11. For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(ff). For seismic alterations or additions, see also 8.10.3.3.2(ss).

8.7.3.27 Car Buffers and Bumpers. Where alterations are made to car buffers or bumpers, the installation shall conform to 3.22.1 and 3.22.2. Existing buffers are not required to conform to 2.22.4.5.1(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(c).

8.7.3.28 Guide Rails, Supports, and Fastenings. Where alterations are made to car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, or guide-rail fastenings, or where the stresses have been increased by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to Sections 3.23 and 3.28.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(b).

8.7.3.29 Tanks. Where a tank is altered or installed as part of an alteration, the tank shall conform to Section 3.24.

8.7.3.30 Terminal Stopping Devices. Where an alteration is made to any terminal stopping device, the installation shall conform to Section 3.25.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(k).

8.7.3.31 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

8.7.3.31.1 Top-of-Car Operating Devices. Where there is an alteration to, or addition of, a top-of-car operating device, it shall conform to 3.26.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(gg).

8.7.3.31.2 Car-Leveling or Truck-Zoning Devices.

Where there is an alteration to, or addition of, a car-leveling device or a truck-zoning device, it shall conform to 3.26.3.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(hh).

8.7.3.31.3 Anticreep Leveling Device. Where there is an alteration of an anticreep leveling device, it shall conform to 3.26.3.1.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(ii).

8.7.3.31.4 Change in Power Supply. Where an alteration consists of a change in power supply at the main line terminals of the elevator motion controller or motor controller involving one of the following:

- (a) change in voltage, frequency, or number of phases
- (b) change from direct current to alternating current, or vice versa
- (c) change to a combination of direct current and alternating current

Electrical equipment shall conform to 3.26.1 and 3.26.4 through 3.26.6 (not including 2.26.4.4).

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(jj).

8.7.3.31.5 Controllers. When the replacement of the controller does not meet the requirements of 8.6.3.17.2(b), it shall be treated as an alteration and meet the following requirements:

(a) Where a motion controller is installed, without any change in the type of motion control, and without replacing the existing operation control, the installation shall conform to the following:

- (1) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment
- (2) Requirements 2.26.4.2 and 8.7.2.8 for the newly installed equipment
- (3) Requirement 2.26.9 for the newly installed equipment

(4) Section 2.29 for elevators in the same group

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(s).

(b) Where an operation controller is installed, and the type of operation control, if automatic remains automatic, or if nonautomatic remains continuous pressure, car switch, or other type of operation where the movement or stopping of the car is under the control of the operator (nonautomatic), and the existing motion control equipment is retained, the installation shall conform to the following:

(1) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment

(2) Requirements 2.26.4.2 and 8.7.2.8 for the newly installed equipment

(3) Requirements 2.26.9.3 and 2.26.9.4 for the newly installed equipment

(4) **Section 2.29** for elevators in the same group

NOTE: Where the installation of an operation control alters emergency operation and signaling devices, the requirements of 8.7.3.31.8 apply.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(s).

(c) Where both a motion controller and an operation controller are installed without any change in the type of motion control as described in (a) and without any change in the type of operation control as described in (b), the installation shall conform to the following:

(1) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment.

(2) Requirements 2.26.4.1, 2.26.4.2, and 8.7.2.8 for the newly installed equipment.

(3) Terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 3.25.

(4) The newly installed operating devices and control equipment shall conform to Section 3.26. Requirements of 2.26.1.1, 2.26.1.3, and 2.26.12 do not apply.

(5) Requirement 2.27.2 [as modified by 8.7.3.31.8(b) and 8.7.3.31.8(f)] applies when emergency power is provided.

(6) In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, 3.27.1 through 3.27.4 [as modified by 8.7.3.31.8(c) through 8.7.3.31.8(f)] and 2.27.3 through 2.27.9 [as modified by 8.7.2.28(c) through 8.7.2.28(f)] apply when either

(-a) travel is 8 m (25 ft) or more above or below the designated landing or

(-b) Firefighters' Emergency Operation was required on the installation or provided at the time of installation

(7) In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, 3.27.1 through 3.27.4 [as modified by 8.7.3.31.8(c) through 8.7.3.31.8(f)] and 2.27.3 through 2.27.9 [as modified by 8.7.2.28(c) through 8.7.2.28(f)] apply only if Firefighters' Emergency Operation was required or provided at the time of installation.

(8) **Section 2.29** for elevators in the same group.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(s).

(d) Where a controller for the operation of hoistway doors, car doors, or car gates is installed, see 8.7.3.12.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(q).

(e) Where a controller for the elevator operation on emergency or standby power or Firefighters' Emergency Operation is installed, see 8.7.3.31.8.

(f) If seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.10 and 8.7.1.11.

For inspection and test requirements for seismic alterations or additions, see 8.10.2.3.2(tt).

(22) **8.7.3.31.6 Change in Type of Motion Control.** Where there is a change in the type of motion control (the method of controlling acceleration, speed, retardation, and stopping), the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment.

(b) Requirement 8.7.3.8 for all new and modified electrical equipment.

(c) The protection of the hoistway landing openings shall conform to

(1) Requirement 2.11.1, as modified by 3.11.1, except

(-a) existing entrance openings less than 2030 mm (80 in.) in height or 800 mm (31.5 in.) in width are permitted to be retained

(-b) Requirement 2.11.1.4

(2) Requirements 2.11.2 through 2.11.8 and 2.11.10

(3) Requirements 2.11.11.6 through 2.11.11.8 and 2.11.11.10

(4) Requirement 2.11.12.8

(d) Requirement 3.12.1, except

(1) a minimum engagement of 6 mm (0.24 in.) is permitted in 2.12.2.4.3

(2) Requirement 2.12.4, where existing door locking devices are being retained

(e) Section 3.13.

(f) Car enclosures and car doors or gates shall conform to Section 3.14, except that where existing car enclosures and/or car doors or gates are retained, conformance with the following requirements is not required:

(1) Requirements 2.14.1.3, 2.14.1.5.1, 2.14.1.6.2, 2.14.1.8, and 2.14.1.9

(2) Requirements 2.14.2.1 and 2.14.2.3 through 2.14.2.5

(3) Requirements 2.14.2.6(d) and 2.14.2.6(f)

(4) Requirement 2.14.3

(5) Requirement 2.14.4.2.5 if existing interlocks or contacts are retained, 2.14.4.3, and 2.14.4.6

(6) Requirements 2.14.5.1, 2.14.5.6, and 2.14.5.8

(7) Requirement 2.14.6.2.2, except 2.14.5 shall be as amended in (6)

(8) Requirements 2.14.7.1.3, 2.14.7.1.4, and 2.14.7.2 through 2.14.7.4

(g) Where conformance with 2.14.1.7.1 is not possible due to existing overhead conditions, an alternative solution, acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, providing equivalency to 2.14.1.7.1 shall be permitted.

(h) The car safety (where provided) and the counterweight safety (where provided) shall conform to Section 3.17, and the governor (where provided) shall conform to Section 2.18, except that

(1) where the safety factors required by 2.17.12.1 cannot be ascertained, rated load testing shall be accepted as demonstration of compliance

(2) the pitch diameter of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves is not required to conform to 2.18.7.4

(i) The capacity and loading shall conform to Section 3.16.

(j) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to Section 3.25.

(k) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to [Section 3.26](#). Requirements of [2.26.4.2](#) and [2.26.4.4](#) shall not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the alteration.

(l) In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to [Section 3.27](#) [as modified by [8.7.3.31.8\(a\)](#) through [8.7.3.31.8\(f\)](#)]. In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, the following shall be complied with:

(1) car emergency signaling devices complying with [2.27.1](#) [as modified by [8.7.2.28\(a\)](#) and [8.7.2.28\(f\)](#)]

(2) emergency operation and signaling devices conforming to [Section 3.27](#) [as modified by [8.7.3.31.8\(a\)](#) through [8.7.3.31.8\(f\)](#)] where required by the NBCC or a prior edition of CSA B44

(m) [Section 2.29](#) for elevators in the same group.

(n) If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.10](#), [8.4.11.3](#), [8.4.11.5.1](#), [8.4.11.5.2](#), [8.4.11.7](#), [8.4.11.9](#), [8.4.11.12](#), [8.4.11.13](#), [8.4.11.14](#), and [8.7.1.11](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(r\)](#). For seismic alterations or additions, see also [8.10.3.3.2\(ss\)](#).

(22) **8.7.3.31.7 Change in Type of Operation Control.**

Where there is a change in the type of operation control, from continuous pressure, car switch, or other type of operation where the movement or stopping of the car is under the manual control of the operator, to any form of automatic operation, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Pits to [Section 2.2](#), except [2.2.2.1](#), [2.2.2.2](#), and [2.2.2.5](#).

(b) Counterweight guarding to [Section 2.3](#).

(c) Vertical clearances and runbys to [8.7.3.4](#).

(d) Horizontal car and counterweight clearances to [8.7.3.5](#).

(e) Requirements [2.7.2](#), [2.7.5](#), [2.7.6](#), [2.7.9](#), and [8.7.2.7.2](#) for the newly installed equipment.

(f) All new and modified electrical equipment and wiring to [8.7.3.8](#).

(g) The protection of the hoistway landing openings shall conform to [2.11.1](#) through [2.11.13](#) as modified by [3.11.1](#), and shall conform to [3.12.1](#) and [Section 3.13](#).

(h) Car enclosures and car doors or gates shall conform to [Section 3.14](#), except that where existing car enclosures and/or car doors or gates are retained, conformance with the following requirements is not required:

(1) Requirements [2.14.1.3](#), except that with the specified force the required running clearances referenced in [2.14.1.3](#) are achieved, and [2.14.1.8](#)

(2) Requirements [2.14.2.1](#), [2.14.2.3](#), and [2.14.2.4](#)

(3) Requirements [2.14.4.3](#) and [2.14.4.6](#) to the extent that with the specified force, the door or gate will not deflect beyond the line of the car sill

(i) Where conformance to [2.14.1.7.1](#) is not possible due to existing overhead conditions, an alternative solution, acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, providing equivalency to [2.14.1.7.1](#) shall be permitted.

(j) The capacity and loading shall conform to [Section 3.16](#).

(k) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to [Section 3.25](#).

(l) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to [Section 3.26](#). The requirements of [2.26.4.2](#) through [2.26.4.4](#) shall not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the alteration.

(m) Emergency operation and signaling devices shall be provided and shall conform to [Section 3.27](#) [as modified by [8.7.3.31.8\(a\)](#) through [8.7.3.31.8\(f\)](#)].

(n) Equipment and floors shall be identified as required by [Section 2.29](#) for elevators in the same group.

(o) If seismic requirements apply, see [8.4.10](#), [8.4.11.3](#), [8.4.11.5.1](#), [8.4.11.5.2](#), [8.4.11.7](#), [8.4.11.9](#), [8.4.11.12](#), [8.4.11.13](#), [8.4.11.14](#), and [8.7.1.11](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(p\)](#). For seismic alterations or additions, see also [8.10.3.3.2\(ss\)](#).

8.7.3.31.8 Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices (22)

(a) Where an alteration is made to car emergency signaling devices, the installation shall conform to [2.27.1](#), except the visual and audible signal required by [2.27.1.1.6\(b\)](#) shall be permitted to be located inside each car.

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(nn\)](#).

(b) Where an alteration is made to emergency or standby power, or where emergency or standby power is added, the installation shall conform to the requirements of [2.27.2](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(l\)](#).

(c) Where an alteration is made to, or consists of the addition of, Firefighters' Emergency Operation, the elevator and all elevators in the same group, automatic operation shall conform to [Section 3.27](#), except [2.27.1](#) and [2.27.2](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(m\)](#).

(d) Where the alteration consists of the addition of an elevator to a group, all elevators in that group shall conform to [Section 3.27](#).

For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.3.3.2\(m\)](#).

(e) Where any of the alterations of (a) through (c) occur,

(1) all new equipment and wiring shall conform to [2.26.4.2](#) and [8.7.3.8](#).

(2) all modified equipment and wiring shall conform to [8.7.3.8](#). Equipment and floors shall be identified as required by [Section 2.29](#).

(3) if seismic requirements apply, see 8.4.10 and 8.7.1.11

For inspection and test requirements for seismic alterations or additions, see 8.10.3.3.2(ss).

(f) Changes in type of service (8.7.3.17), controllers (8.7.3.31.5), type of motion control (8.7.3.31.6), or type of operation control (8.7.3.31.7) require emergency operations and signaling devices to be altered, conforming to Section 2.27.

(g) The requirements of (f) shall be permitted to be modified according to the requirements of 8.7.3.31.8.

8.7.3.31.9 Auxiliary Power Lowering Operation.

Where auxiliary power lowering operation is installed or altered, it shall conform to 3.26.10.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(oo).

8.7.3.31.10 In-Car Stop Switch. On passenger elevators equipped with nonperforated car enclosures, the emergency stop switch, including all markings, shall be permitted to be removed and replaced by an in-car stop switch conforming to the following:

(a) It is either key operated or behind a locked cover, and is located in or adjacent to the car operating panel. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see Section 8.1). The switch shall be clearly and permanently marked "STOP" and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions. When opened ("STOP" position), this switch shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator hydraulic machine.

(b) The device shall meet the requirements of 2.26.4.3.

(c) The device shall meet the requirements of 3.26.4.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(kk).

8.7.3.31.11 Electrical Protective Devices. Where there is an alteration to or addition of an electrical protection device, it shall conform to 3.26.4 for that device.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(ll).

8.7.3.31.12 Change of Hydraulic Pump Motor Starter. Where there is a change to the hydraulic pump motor starter, and the starter solely controls the motion of the car in the up direction without the use of valves, the installation shall conform to 3.26.5 and 3.26.6.4. The new and modified equipment and wiring shall conform to

(a) Requirement 2.8.2.1

(b) Requirement 2.26.4.1

(c) Requirement 2.26.4.2

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(pp).

8.7.3.31.13 Door Monitoring System. Where there is an alteration to or addition of a system to monitor and prevent automatic operation of the elevator with faulty door contact circuits on power-operated car doors that are mechanically coupled with the landing doors while

the car is in the landing zone, the alteration shall conform to 2.26.5.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.3.3.2(mm).

8.7.3.31.14 RIO. Where there is an alteration to or the addition of RIO, the alteration or addition shall conform to the requirements in 2.26.9.3.1, 2.26.9.4, 3.26.1(j), 8.6.11.16, and 8.14.1. (22)

8.7.4 Alterations to Elevators With Other Types of Driving Machines

8.7.4.1 Rack-and-Pinion Elevators. Where any alteration is made to a rack-and-pinion elevator, the entire installation shall comply with Section 4.1.

8.7.4.2 Screw-Column Elevators. Where any alteration is made to a screw-column elevator, the entire installation shall comply with Section 4.2.

8.7.4.3 Hand Elevators

8.7.4.3.1 Hoistway Enclosures and Machinery Space. Where an alteration is made to any portion of a hoistway enclosure or machinery space, the altered portion shall conform to 4.3.1 and 4.3.4.

8.7.4.3.2 Top Car and Counterweight Clearances. No alteration shall reduce any clearances or runby below that required by 4.3.3 or below the minimum clearances as originally installed.

8.7.4.3.3 Hoistway Entrances. Where new entrances are installed, the new entrances shall conform to 4.3.6 through 4.3.8.

8.7.4.3.4 Car Enclosures. Where an alteration is made to a car enclosure, it shall conform to 4.3.9 and 4.3.11.

8.7.4.3.5 Car Frame and Platform. Where an alteration is made to a car frame or platform, the frame or platform shall conform to 4.3.11 through 4.3.13 and 4.3.16.

8.7.4.3.6 Capacity and Loading. No alteration shall reduce the rated load below that required by 4.3.14.1 and 4.3.14.2. Where the alteration involves an increase in rated load, the driving-machine sheave shall comply with 4.3.16, 4.3.19.1, and 4.3.19.2.

8.7.4.3.7 Increase in Rise. Where the alteration involves an increase in the total rise to exceed 4600 mm (15 ft), it shall conform to 4.3.3.1, 4.3.3.2, 4.3.15, and 4.3.16.

8.7.4.3.8 Guide Rails and Fastenings. Where an alteration involves the installation of guide rails, the guide rails and fastenings shall comply with 4.3.18.1 through 4.3.18.3.

8.7.4.3.9 Overhead Beams and Supports. Where the alteration involves a change in the arrangement of or load on the overhead beams and sheaves, the new arrangement shall conform to 4.3.5.1 and 4.3.5.2, except that wood shall be permitted to be retained if it is structurally sound.

8.7.4.3.10 Power Attachments. No alteration shall implement the use of a power other than hand power.

8.7.5 Alterations to Special Application Elevators

8.7.5.1 Inclined Elevators. Where any alteration is made to an inclined elevator, the entire installation shall comply with Section 5.1.

8.7.5.2 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators. Reserved for future use.

8.7.5.3 Private Residence Elevators. When there is a change in the building code occupancy classification of a private residence in which a private residence elevator is located, the elevator shall comply with the applicable requirements in Part 2 through Part 4 or Section 5.2.

8.7.5.4 Private Residence Inclined Elevators. When there is a change in the building code occupancy classification of a private residence in which a private residence inclined elevator is located, the elevator shall comply with the applicable requirements in Part 2 through Part 4 or Section 5.1.

8.7.5.5 Power Sidewalk Elevators

8.7.5.5.1 Changes in Electrical Wiring or Electrical Equipment. Where electrical wiring or equipment is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 5.5.1.8.

8.7.5.5.2 Sidewalk Door. Where a sidewalk door is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 5.5.1.11.2 through 5.5.1.11.4.

8.7.5.5.3 Change in Car Enclosure, Car Doors, and Gates. Where the car enclosure, car door, or car gate is installed as part of an alteration, they shall conform to 5.5.1.14.

8.7.5.5.4 Bow Irons and Stanchions. Where the bow iron and stanchion are installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 5.5.1.15.2.

8.7.5.5.5 Increase in Rated Load. Where the alteration consists of an increase in rated load, the bottom and top clearances and runbys shall conform to 5.5.1.16, 5.5.1.18, 5.5.1.21, and 5.5.1.25.4.

8.7.5.5.6 Increase in Rated Speed. Where the alteration consists of an increase in rated speed, the capacity and loading shall conform to 5.5.1.15, 5.5.1.16, 5.5.1.19, and 5.5.1.22.

8.7.5.5.7 Existing Driving Machine. Where the driving machine is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 5.5.1.8, 5.5.1.9, 5.5.1.23, and 5.5.1.25.

8.7.5.5.8 Change in Type of Operating Devices and/or Control Equipment. Where the alteration consists of a change in the existing type of operation or control equipment, or both, the new operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 5.5.1.8 and 5.5.1.25.

8.7.5.6 Rooftop Elevators. Where any alteration is made to a rooftop elevator, the entire installation shall comply with Section 5.6.

8.7.5.7 Special Purpose Personnel Elevators. Where any alteration is made to a special purpose personnel elevator, the alteration shall comply with 8.7.1 and, where applicable, 8.7.5.7.1 through 8.7.5.7.28.

8.7.5.7.1 Hoistway Enclosures

8.7.5.7.1.1 Hoistway Enclosure Walls. Where alterations are made to any portion of a hoistway enclosure wall, the portion that is altered shall conform to 5.7.1.1.

8.7.5.7.1.2 Floor Over Hoistway. Where alterations are made to any portion of a floor over a hoistway, the portion that is altered shall conform to 5.7.1.2.

8.7.5.7.2 Pits. Alterations made to the pit shall conform to 5.7.2.1 through 5.7.2.8.

8.7.5.7.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights. Where new counterweights are installed or where counterweights are relocated, their location, guarding, and clearances shall conform to 5.7.3 through 5.7.5.

8.7.5.7.4 Vertical Car and Counterweight Clearances and Runbys. No alteration shall reduce any clearance or runby below that required by 5.7.4. Existing clearances shall be permitted to be maintained.

8.7.5.7.5 Reserved for Future Use

8.7.5.7.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways. Where alterations are made to an elevator or the building such that any space below the hoistway is not permanently secured against access, the affected installation shall conform to 5.7.6.

8.7.5.7.7 Means of Access for Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms. Any alteration that affects the safe and convenient means of access to a machine room, machinery space, control space, or control room shall conform to 5.7.18.9 to the extent existing conditions permit.

8.7.5.7.8 Reserved for Future Use

8.7.5.7.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Where new machinery and sheave beams, supports, foundations, or supporting floors are installed or relocated, or where alterations increase the original building design reactions by more than 5%, they shall conform to 5.7.7.1 through 5.7.7.4.

8.7.5.7.10 Entrances and Hoistway Openings

(a) Where all new hoistway entrances are installed, they shall conform to 5.7.8.1 through 5.7.8.6.

(b) Where one or more, but not all, new hoistway entrances are installed, they shall conform to 5.7.8.1 through 5.7.8.6.

(c) Where an alteration is made to any hoistway entrance, it shall conform to 5.7.8.1 through 5.7.8.6.

(d) Where access openings for cleaning are installed, they shall conform to 2.11.1.4.

8.7.5.7.11 Hoistway Door Locking Devices

8.7.5.7.11.1 Interlocks. Where the alteration consists of the installation of hoistway door interlocks, the installation shall conform to 5.7.9.

8.7.5.7.11.2 Mechanical Locks and Electric Contacts. Where the alteration consists of the installation of hoistway door combination mechanical locks and electric contacts, the installation shall conform to 2.12.3.

8.7.5.7.11.3 Unlocking Devices. Where the alteration consists of the installation of hoistway door unlocking devices, the installation shall conform to 2.12.6 for unlocking devices.

8.7.5.7.12 Reserved for Future Use

8.7.5.7.13 Reserved for Future Use

8.7.5.7.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

8.7.5.7.14.1 Where an alteration consists of the installation of a new car, the installation shall conform to 5.7.10 and 5.7.11.

8.7.5.7.14.2 The following requirements shall be conformed to where alterations are made to existing cars:
(a) Car enclosures shall conform to 5.7.10.1 and 5.7.10.2.

(b) Where an alteration is made to a top emergency exit, or where a new one is installed, it shall conform to 5.7.10.4.

(c) Where an alteration consists of the installation of glass in an elevator car, it shall conform to 5.7.10.4.

(d) All side emergency exits shall be permanently fixed in the closed position.

(e) Any alteration to car illumination or lighting fixtures shall conform to 5.7.10.3.

(f) Where an alteration consists of the installation of a car door or gate on an existing elevator car, the installation shall conform to 5.7.10.5 and 5.7.19.2.5.

8.7.5.7.15 Car Frames and Platforms

8.7.5.7.15.1 Alterations to Car Frames and Platforms. Where alterations are made to a car frame or platform, the frame and platform shall conform to 5.7.11.1 and

5.7.11.2. Where roller or similar-type guide shoes are installed, that allow a definite limited movement of the car with respect to the guide rails, the clearance between the safety jaws and rails of the car shall be such that the safety jaws cannot touch the rails when the car frame is pressed against the rail faces with sufficient force to take up all movement of the roller guides.

8.7.5.7.15.2 Increase or Decrease in the Deadweight of the Car. Where an alteration results in an increase or decrease in the deadweight of the car that is sufficient to increase or decrease the sum of the deadweight and the rated load, as originally installed, by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to 5.7.12.

8.7.5.7.16 Capacity and Loading

8.7.5.7.16.1 Increase in the Rated Load. Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Car doors or gates shall be provided at all car entrances. Where new car doors or gates are installed, they shall conform to 5.7.10.5 and 5.7.19.2.5.

(b) Requirement 5.7.11.

(c) Requirement 5.7.12.

(d) Requirement 5.7.13.

(e) Requirement 5.7.14.

(f) Requirements 5.7.15.2 and 5.7.15.3.

(g) Requirement 5.7.16.

(h) Requirements 5.7.15.1 and 5.7.17.

(i) Requirement 5.7.18.

(j) Requirement 8.7.2.9.

8.7.5.7.17 Change in Rise or Rated Speed

8.7.5.7.17.1 Increase or Decrease in Rise. Where an alteration involves an increase or decrease in the rise, the following requirements shall be conformed to:

(a) The terminal stopping devices shall be relocated to conform to 5.7.19.2.11.

(b) Where the increase in rise is less than 4570 mm (180 in.), an existing winding-drum machine shall be permitted to be retained, provided the drum is of sufficient dimensions to serve the increased rise with not less than one full turn of wire rope remaining on the winding drum when the car or counterweight has reached its extreme limits of travel.

(c) The bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 5.7.4, except as follows:

(1) Where the increase in rise is at the upper end of the hoistway, the existing bottom car clearance and car and counterweight runby are not required to conform to 5.7.4. However, if existing clearances are less than required by 5.7.4, they shall not be decreased by the change in rise.

(2) Where the increase in rise is at the lower end of the hoistway, the existing overhead car and counterweight clearances are not required to conform to 5.7.4. However, if existing clearances are less than required by 5.7.4, they shall not be decreased by the change in rise.

(3) Where the decrease in rise is at the lowest end of the rise, the installation shall conform to 5.7.2.4 through 5.7.2.6 and 2.21.4.

8.7.5.7.17.2 Increase or Decrease in Rated Speed.

(a) shall comply with 5.7.12.2 and 5.7.13

8.7.5.7.18 Car and Counterweight Safeties

8.7.5.7.18.1 Where the alteration consists of the installation of new car safeties, the car safeties, car speed governor, and car guide rails shall conform to 5.7.13 and 5.7.17.

8.7.5.7.18.2 Where the alteration consists of the installation of new counterweight safeties, the counterweight safeties, counterweight speed governor, and counterweight guide rails shall conform to Sections 2.17, 2.18, and 2.23, except as noted in 8.7.2.19.

8.7.5.7.18.3 Where any alterations are made to existing car or counterweight safeties, the affected safeties, governors, and guide rails shall conform to 5.7.13 and 5.7.17.

8.7.5.7.18.4 Where existing rail reactions are not increased by the installation of new safeties, the existing hoistway construction for bracket support need not be modified.

8.7.5.7.19 Speed Governors and Governor Ropes.

Where any alteration is made to a speed governor, or where a new governor is installed, it shall conform to 5.7.13.1. Where there is a releasing carrier, it shall conform to 2.17.15. Governor ropes shall conform to 5.7.13.2.

8.7.5.7.20 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. The requirements of 5.7.19.2.29 and 5.7.19.2.30 shall be conformed to where a device for protection against ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement is altered or installed.

8.7.5.7.21 Suspension Means and Their Connections

8.7.5.7.21.1 Change in Suspension Members.

Where the material, grade, or number or size of suspension members is changed, the new suspension members and their fastenings shall conform to 5.7.14. When existing sheaves are retained using suspension members different from those originally specified, the original elevator manufacturer or a licensed professional engineer shall certify the sheave material to be satisfactory for the revised application.

8.7.5.7.22 Counterweights

8.7.5.7.22.1 Where alterations are made to any part of a counterweight assembly, except guiding members, the installation shall conform to 5.7.13.5, 5.7.14.3, 5.7.15, and 5.7.18.3.

8.7.5.7.23 Car and Counterweight Buffers. Where alterations are made to car and counterweight buffers, they shall conform to 5.7.16.

8.7.5.7.24 Guide Rails, Supports, and Fastenings.

Where alterations are made to car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, or guide-rail fastenings, or where the stresses have been increased by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to 5.7.17. Guide rails, supports, fastenings, and joints of different design and construction from those provided for in 5.7.17 shall be permitted to be retained, provided they are in accordance with sound engineering practice and will adequately maintain the accuracy of the rail alignment.

8.7.5.7.25 Driving Machines and Sheaves

8.7.5.7.25.1 Alterations to Driving Machines and Sheaves

(a) Where a driving machine is installed as part of an alteration, the installation shall conform to 5.7.18.

(b) Where alterations are made to driving-machine components, the affected components shall conform to 5.7.18.

(c) Where an alteration consists of a change in the driving-machine sheave, the suspension ropes and their connections shall conform to 5.7.14. The sheave shall conform to 5.7.18.2 and 5.7.18.3.

8.7.5.7.25.2 Change in Location of the Driving Machine

(a) Where the location of the driving machine is changed, the installation shall conform to 5.7.18, 2.7.2, 5.7.18.9, and 2.7.6.3.1.

8.7.5.7.26 Terminal Stopping Devices. Where an alteration is made to any terminal stopping device, the installation shall conform to 5.7.19.2.11.

8.7.5.7.27 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

8.7.5.7.27.1 Inspection Operation and Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits

(a) Where there is an alteration to or addition of any type of Inspection Operation [see 2.26.1.4.1(a)], the alteration shall conform to the applicable requirements in 2.26.1.4.

(b) Where there is an alteration to or addition of car door bypass or hoistway door bypass switches, the alteration shall conform to 2.26.1.5.

8.7.5.7.27.2 Car-Leveling or Truck-Zoning Devices. Where there is an alteration to or addition of a car-leveling device, it shall conform to 2.26.1.6.

8.7.5.7.27.3 Change in Power Supply. Where an alteration consists of a change in power supply at the main line terminals of the elevator motion controller or motor controller, involving one of the following, as applicable:

- (a) change in voltage, frequency, or number of phases
- (b) change from direct current to alternating current or vice versa
- (c) change to a combination of direct current and alternating current

Electrical equipment shall conform to 5.7.19.2. All new and modified equipment and wiring shall conform to 5.7.19.2. Brakes shall conform to 5.7.18.7 and 5.7.18.8. Winding-drum machines shall be provided with final terminal stopping devices conforming to 2.25.3.5 [see also 8.7.2.17.2(b)].

8.7.5.7.27.4 Controllers

(a) Where a motion controller is installed, without any change in the type of motion control and without replacing the existing operation controls, the installation shall conform to the following:

- (1) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, 8.7.2.7.2 and for the newly installed equipment
- (2) Requirements 2.26.4.1, 2.26.4.2, and 8.7.2.8 for the newly installed equipment
- (3) Section 2.19, except 2.19.2.2(a)(1) through 2.19.2.2(a)(3) are not required if the Code at the time of the original installation was prior to ASME A17.1-2000
- (4) Requirement 2.26.9 for the newly installed equipment
- (5) Section 2.29

(b) Where an operation controller is installed and the type of operation control, if automatic remains automatic or, if nonautomatic remains continuous pressure, car switch, or other type of operation where the movement or stopping of the car is under the manual control of the operator (nonautomatic), and the existing motion control equipment is retained, the installation shall conform to the following:

- (1) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, 8.7.2.7.2 and for the newly installed equipment
- (2) Requirements 2.26.4.1, 2.26.4.2, and 8.7.2.8 for the newly installed equipment
- (3) Requirements 2.26.9.3.1(d), 2.26.9.3.1(e), 2.26.9.3.2, and 2.26.9.4 for the newly installed equipment
- (4) Section 2.29

(c) Where both a motion controller and an operation controller are installed without any change in the type of motion control as described in (a) and without any change in the type of operation control as described in (b), the installation shall conform to the following:

(1) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment

(2) Requirements 2.26.4.1, 2.26.4.2, 8.7.2.8 and for the newly installed equipment

(3) Section 2.19

(4) Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 5.7.19.2.11

(5) The newly installed operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 5.7.19.2

(6) Requirement 2.7.2 applies when emergency power is provided

(7) In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, 2.27.3 through 2.27.9 apply when either

(-a) travel is 8 m (25 ft) or more above or below the designated landing

(-b) Firefighters' Emergency Operation was required or provided at the time of installation

(8) In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, 2.27.3 through 2.27.9 apply only if Firefighters' Emergency Operation was required or provided at the time of installation

(9) Section 2.29

(d) Where a controller for the operation of hoistway doors, car doors, or car gates is installed, see 8.7.2.12.

(e) Where a controller for the elevator operation on emergency or standby power systems or Firefighters' Emergency Operation is installed, see 8.7.2.28.

NOTE: Where the installation of an operation control alters emergency operation and signaling devices, the requirements of 8.7.2.28 apply.

8.7.5.7.27.5 Change in the Type of Motion Control.

Where there is a change in the type of motion control (the method of controlling acceleration, speed, retardation, and stopping), the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Requirements 2.7.2, 2.7.9, and 8.7.2.7.2 for the newly installed equipment.

(b) Requirement 8.7.2.8 for all new and modified electrical equipment and wiring.

(c) The protection of the hoistway landing openings shall conform to

(1) requirement 2.11.1, except

(-a) existing entrance openings less than 2030 mm (79.9 in.) in height or 800 mm (31.5 in.) in width are permitted to be retained

(-b) requirement 2.11.1.4

(2) requirements 2.11.2 through 2.11.10

(3) requirements 2.11.11.6 through 2.11.11.8 and 2.11.11.10

(4) requirement 2.11.12.8

(d) Section 2.12, except

(1) a minimum engagement of 6 mm (0.24 in.) is permitted in 2.12.2.4.3

(2) requirement 2.11.12.8

(e) Section 2.13.

(f) Car enclosures and car doors or gates shall conform to [Section 2.14](#), except that where existing car enclosures and/or car doors or gates are retained, conformance with the following requirements is not required:

(1) requirements [2.14.1.3](#), [2.14.1.5.1](#), [2.14.1.6.2](#), [2.14.1.8](#), and [2.14.1.9](#)

(2) requirements [2.14.2.1](#) and [2.14.2.3](#) through [2.14.2.5](#)

(3) requirements [2.14.2.6\(d\)](#) and [2.14.2.6\(f\)](#)

(4) requirement [2.14.3](#)

(5) requirements [2.14.2.5](#) if existing interlocks or contacts are retained, [2.14.4.3](#), and [2.14.4.6](#)

(6) requirements [2.14.5.1](#), [2.14.5.6](#), and [2.14.5.8](#)

(7) requirement [2.14.6.2.2](#), except [2.1.5](#) shall be as amended in [\(6\)](#)

(8) requirements [2.14.7.1.3](#), [2.14.7.1.4](#), and [2.14.7.2](#) through [2.14.7.4](#)

(g) Where conformance with [2.14.1.7.1](#) is not possible due to existing overhead conditions, an alternative solution, acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, providing equivalency to [2.14.1.7.1](#) shall be permitted.

(h) The car safety, the counterweight safety (where provided), and the governor shall conform to [Sections 2.17](#) and [2.18](#), except that

(1) where the safety factors required by [2.17.12.1](#) cannot be ascertained, rated load testing shall be accepted as demonstration of compliance

(2) the pitch diameter of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves is not required to conform to [2.18.7.4](#)

(i) The capacity and loading shall conform to [2.16.8](#).

(j) Car overspeed protection and unintended movement protection shall conform to [Section 2.19](#).

(k) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to [Section 2.25](#).

(l) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to [Section 2.26](#). The requirements of [2.26.4.2](#) through [2.26.4.4](#) shall not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the alteration.

(m) In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, emergency operation and signaling devices shall be provided and shall conform to [Section 2.27](#). In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, the following shall be complied with:

(1) car emergency signaling devices shall comply with [2.27.1](#)

(2) emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to [2.27.2](#) through [2.27.9](#) where required by the NBCC or a prior edition of CSA B44

(n) Equipment and floors shall be identified as required by [Section 2.29](#).

8.7.5.7.27.6 Change in Type of Operation Control.

Where there is a change in the type of operation control, from continuous pressure, car switch, or other type of operation where the movement or stopping of the car is under the manual control of the operator, to any

form of automatic operation, or vice versa, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Pits to [Section 2.2](#), except [2.2.2.1](#), [2.2.2.2](#), and [2.2.2.5](#).

(b) Counterweight guarding to [Section 2.3](#).

(c) Vertical clearances and runbys as required by [8.7.2.4](#).

(d) Horizontal car and counterweight clearances as required by [8.7.2.5](#).

(e) Requirements [2.7.2](#), [2.7.5](#), [2.7.6](#), [2.7.9](#), and [8.7.2.7.2](#) for the newly installed equipment.

(f) Requirement [8.7.2.8](#) for all new and modified electrical equipment and wiring.

(g) The protection of the hoistway landing openings shall conform to [2.11.1](#) through [2.11.13](#) and [Sections 2.12](#) and [2.13](#).

(h) Car enclosures and car doors or gates shall conform to [Section 2.14](#), except that where existing car enclosures and/or car doors or gates are retained, conformance with the following requirements is not required:

(1) requirement [2.14.1.3](#), except that with the specified force, the required running clearances referenced in [2.14.1.3](#) are achieved, and [2.14.1.8](#)

(2) requirements [2.14.2.1](#), [2.14.2.3](#), and [2.14.2.4](#)

(3) requirements [2.14.4.3](#) and [2.14.4.6](#), except that with the specified force, the door or gate will not deflect beyond the line of the car sill

(i) Where conformance with [2.14.1.7.1](#) is not possible due to existing overhead conditions, an alternative solution, acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, providing equivalency to [2.14.1.7.1](#) shall be permitted.

(j) The car safety, the counterweight safety (where provided), and the governor shall conform to [Sections 2.17](#) and [2.18](#), except that the pitch diameter of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves is not required to conform to [2.18.7](#).

(k) The capacity and loading shall conform to [Section 2.16](#).

(l) Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall conform to [Section 2.19](#).

(m) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to [Section 2.25](#).

(n) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to [Section 2.26](#). The requirements of [2.26.4.2](#) through [2.26.4.4](#) shall not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the alteration.

(o) Emergency operation and signaling devices shall be provided and shall conform to [Section 2.27](#).

(p) Equipment and floors shall be identified as required by [Section 2.29](#).

8.7.5.7.27.7 In-Car Stop Switch.

On passenger elevators equipped with nonperforated car enclosures, the emergency stop switch, including all markings, shall be permitted to be removed and replaced by an in-car stop switch conforming to the following:

(a) It is either key operated or behind a locked cover and is located in or adjacent to the car operating panel. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see [Section 8.1](#)). The switch shall be clearly and permanently marked “STOP” and shall indicate the “STOP” and “RUN” positions. When opened (“STOP” position), this switch shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

(b) The device shall meet the requirements of [2.26.4.3](#).

8.7.5.7.27.8 Electrical Protective Devices. Where there is an alteration to or addition of an electrical protective device, it shall conform to [5.7.19.2](#) for that device.

8.7.5.7.27.9 Door Monitoring System. Where there is an alteration to or addition of a system to monitor and prevent automatic operation of the elevator with faulty door contact circuits on power-operated car doors that are mechanically coupled with the landing doors while the car is in the landing zone, the alteration shall conform to the requirements in [2.26.5](#).

8.7.5.7.28 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices

(a) Where an alteration is made to car emergency signaling devices, the alteration shall conform to [5.7.21](#), except the visual and audible signal required by [2.27.1.1.6\(b\)](#) shall be permitted to be located inside each car.

(b) Where an alteration is made to, or consists of the addition of, an emergency or standby power system, the installation shall conform to the requirements of [2.27.2](#).

(c) Where an alteration is made to, or consists of the addition of, Firefighters’ Emergency Operation, the elevator and all elevators in the same group automatic operation shall conform to [2.27.3](#) through [2.27.8](#).

(d) Where the alteration consists of the addition of an elevator to a group, all elevators in that group shall conform to [Section 2.27](#).

(e) Where any of the alterations in (a) through (d) occur, all new equipment and wiring shall conform to [2.26.4.2](#) and [8.7.2.8](#), and all modified equipment and wiring shall conform to [8.7.2.8](#). Equipment and floors shall be identified as required by [Section 2.29](#).

8.7.5.8 Marine Elevators. Where any alteration is made to a marine elevator, the entire installation shall comply with [Section 5.8](#).

8.7.5.9 Mine Elevators

8.7.5.9.1 General Requirements. Where any alteration is made to a mine elevator, the alteration shall conform to the requirements of [8.7.1](#) and [8.7.2](#), except as modified by [Section 5.9](#).

8.7.5.9.2 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall be provided and shall conform to [Section 2.19](#).

8.7.5.9.3 Car Top Protection. The car top access panel size requirements in [5.9.14.1\(b\)](#) do not apply where the existing car top is retained. The dimensions of the existing car top access panel shall not be reduced by the alteration.

8.7.5.10 Outside Emergency Elevators. Where an alteration is made to an outside emergency elevator, the alteration shall conform to the requirements of [8.7.1](#) and ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7, requirement 2.12.2.

8.7.6 Alterations to Escalators and Moving Walks

8.7.6.1 Escalators

8.7.6.1.1 General Requirements. A change in component parts that are interchangeable in form, fit, and function is not considered an alteration and need not comply with the requirements in this Section. See [8.6.3.1](#).

The addition of a component or a device that was not part of the original design is an alteration and shall conform to the requirements of [8.7.6.1](#) for that device or component.

When multiple driving machines per escalator are used, operating and safety devices required by [8.7.6.1](#) shall simultaneously control all driving machines.

The requirements of [6.1.3.6.5](#) do not apply to existing escalators that were not required to comply with this requirement at the time of the original installation.

8.7.6.1.2 Relocation of an Escalator. Where an escalator is relocated, it shall comply with [Section 6.1](#). The requirements of [6.1.7.4.2](#) do not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the relocation. The requirements of [6.1.3.6.5](#) do not apply to existing escalators that were not required to comply with this requirement at the time of the original installation.

8.7.6.1.3 Protection of Floor Openings. Any alteration to the floor openings in escalators shall comply with [6.1.1](#).

8.7.6.1.4 Protection of Trusses and Machinery Spaces Against Fire. Any alteration to the sides and/or undersides of escalator trusses and machinery spaces shall conform to [6.1.2](#).

8.7.6.1.5 Construction Requirements. For inspection and test requirements, see [8.10.4.2.2\(a\)](#).

(a) *Angle of Inclination.* No alteration of an escalator shall change the angle of inclination, as originally designed, by more than 1 deg.

(b) *Geometry.* Any alteration to the geometry of the escalator components shall conform to [6.1.3.2](#).

(c) *Balustrades.* Any alteration to the balustrades shall conform to 6.1.3.3 for the altered components.

NOTE [8.7.6.1.5(c)]: The balustrade does not include the hand-rail.

(d) *Skirt Deflector Devices.* Any alteration or addition of skirt deflector devices shall conform to 6.1.3.3.10.

NOTE [8.7.6.1.5(d)]: The vertical dimensions on existing skirt panels may not allow full compliance. See Section 1.2.

8.7.6.1.6 Handrails. Any alteration to the handrails or handrail system shall require conformance with 6.1.3.2.2, 6.1.3.4.1 through 6.1.3.4.4, 6.1.3.4.6, 6.1.6.3.12, and 6.1.6.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(b).

8.7.6.1.7 Step System

(a) Any alteration to the step system shall require conformance with 6.1.3.3.5, 6.1.3.5 [except as specified in (b)], 6.1.3.6 [except as specified in 8.7.6.1.1], 6.1.3.8, 6.1.3.9.4, 6.1.3.10.4, 6.1.3.11, 6.1.6.3.3, 6.1.6.3.9, 6.1.6.3.11, 6.1.6.3.14, and 6.1.6.5.

(b) Steps having a width less than 560 mm (22 in.) shall not be reduced in width by the alteration.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(c).

8.7.6.1.8 Combplates. Any alteration of the combplates shall require conformance with 6.1.6.3.13.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(k).

- (22) **8.7.6.1.9 Trusses and Girders.** Any alterations or welding, cutting, lengthening, or splicing of any truss structural member or girder shall conform to 8.7.1.4 and 8.7.1.5. Alterations shall result in the escalator conforming to 6.1.3.7, 6.1.3.9.1, and 6.1.3.10.1.

The installation of a new escalator into an existing truss shall conform to all of the requirements of Section 6.1.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(d).

8.7.6.1.10 Step Wheel Tracks. Any alteration to the tracks shall result in the escalator conforming with 6.1.3.8, 6.1.3.9.4, 6.1.3.10.1, and 8.7.1.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(e).

- (22) **8.7.6.1.11 Rated Load and Speed.** Any alteration that increases the rated load or rated speed or both shall conform to Section 6.1.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(f).

8.7.6.1.12 Driving Machine, Motor, and Brake

(a) *Driving Machine.* An alteration to the driving machine shall result in the escalator conforming to 6.1.3.9.2, 6.1.3.10.3, 6.1.4.1, 6.1.5.1, 6.1.5.2, 6.1.5.3.1, 6.1.5.3.2, 6.1.6.3.4, and 6.1.6.3.8.

(b) *Driving Motor.* An alteration to the drive motor shall result in the escalator conforming to 6.1.3.9.2, 6.1.3.10.3, 6.1.4.1, 6.1.5.2, 6.1.5.3.1, 6.1.5.3.2, 6.1.6.3.2, 6.1.6.3.8, and 6.1.6.3.10.

(c) *Machine Brake.* An alteration to the machine brake shall result in the escalator conforming to 6.1.3.9.3, 6.1.3.10.2, and 6.1.5.3.1.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(g).

8.7.6.1.13 Operating and Safety Devices. Any alteration to or addition of operating and/or safety devices shall conform to 6.1.6 for that device.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(h).

8.7.6.1.14 Lighting, Access, and Electrical Work. An alteration to or addition of lighting, access, or electrical work shall conform to the specific requirements within 6.1.7 for that change.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(i).

8.7.6.1.15 Entrance and Egress. Any alteration to the entrance or egress end shall comply with 6.1.3.6.1 through 6.1.3.6.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(m).

8.7.6.1.16 Controller. Where a controller is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 6.1.6.10 through 6.1.6.15 and 6.1.7.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(j).

8.7.6.1.17 Variable-Frequency Drive Motor Control. Where the alteration consists of the addition of, or alteration to, a variable-frequency drive motor control, the installation shall conform to 6.1.6.3.2, 6.1.6.10.3, and 6.1.6.10.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(n).

8.7.6.1.18 Addition of Escalator Speed Variation. Where an escalator alteration introduces intentional speed variation after start-up, the addition of speed variation shall conform to 6.1.4.1.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(j).

8.7.6.1.19 Skirt Panels. Any alteration of a skirt panel or skirt panel supporting components shall conform to 6.1.3.3.6(d), and the person or firm performing the alteration shall verify conformance in accordance with 8.3.15.

8.7.6.2 Moving Walks

8.7.6.2.1 General Requirements. A change in component parts that are interchangeable in form, fit, and function is not considered an alteration and need not comply with the requirements in this Section. See 8.6.3.1.

The addition of a component or a device that was not part of the original design is an alteration and shall conform to the requirements of 8.7.6.2 for that device or component.

When multiple driving machines per moving walk are used, operating and safety devices required by 8.7.6.2 shall simultaneously control all driving machines.

8.7.6.2.2 Relocation of a Moving Walk. Where a moving walk is relocated, it shall comply with Section 6.2.

8.7.6.2.3 Protection of Floor Openings. Any alteration to the floor openings for moving walks shall comply with 6.2.1.

8.7.6.2.4 Protection of Trusses and Machinery Spaces Against Fire. Any alteration to the sides or undersides, or both, of moving walk trusses and machinery spaces shall conform to 6.2.2.

8.7.6.2.5 Construction Requirements

(a) *Angle of Inclination.* Alteration of a moving walk that increases the angle of inclination shall require conformance with Section 6.2.

(b) *Geometry.* Any alteration to the geometry of the moving walk components shall require conformance with 6.2.3.2.

(c) *Balustrades.* Any alteration to the balustrades shall require conformance with 6.2.3.3.

NOTE [8.7.6.2.5(c)]: The balustrade does not include the hand-rail.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(a).

8.7.6.2.6 Handrails. An alteration to the handrails or handrail system shall require conformance with 6.2.3.2.3, 6.2.3.4, 6.2.6.3.10, and 6.2.6.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(b).

8.7.6.2.7 Treadway System

(a) An alteration to the treadway system shall require conformance with 6.2.3.2.3, 6.2.3.3.5, 6.2.3.3.6, 6.2.3.5, 6.2.3.6 [except as specified in (b)], 6.2.3.8, 6.2.3.9, 6.2.3.10.4, 6.2.3.11.4, 6.2.3.11.5, 6.2.3.12, and 6.2.6.3.3.

(b) The minimum width of the moving walk shall be permitted to be less than that required by 6.2.3.7. The existing width, if less than required by 6.2.3.7, shall not be decreased by the alteration.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(c).

8.7.6.2.8 Combplates. An alteration of the combplates shall require conformance with 6.2.3.8 and 6.2.6.3.11.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(k).

(22) **8.7.6.2.9 Trusses and Girders.** Any alterations or welding, cutting, lengthening, or splicing of any truss structural member or girder shall conform to 8.7.1.4 and 8.7.1.5. Alterations shall result in the moving walk conforming to 6.2.3.9, 6.2.3.10.1, and 6.2.3.11.1. The installation of a new moving walk into an existing truss shall conform to all of the requirements of Section 6.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(d).

8.7.6.2.10 Track System. Any alteration to the tracks shall result in the moving walk conforming to 6.2.3.9, 6.2.3.10, 6.2.3.11.1, and 8.7.1.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(e).

8.7.6.2.11 Rated Load and Speed. Any alteration that increases the rated load or rated speed or both shall conform to Section 6.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(f).

8.7.6.2.12 Driving Machine, Motor, and Brake

(a) *Driving Machine.* An alteration to the driving machine shall result in the moving walk conforming to 6.2.3.10.2, 6.2.3.11.2, 6.2.3.11.3, 6.2.3.14, 6.2.3.15, 6.2.4, 6.2.5.1, 6.2.5.3.1, 6.2.5.3.2, 6.2.6.3.4, and 6.2.6.3.8.

(b) *Drive Motor.* An alteration to the drive motor shall result in the moving walk conforming to 6.2.3.10.2, 6.2.3.11.2, 6.2.3.11.3, 6.2.4, 6.2.5.2, 6.2.5.3.1, 6.2.6.3.2, 6.2.6.3.7, and 6.2.6.3.8.

(c) *Machine Brake.* An alteration to the machine brake shall result in the moving walk conforming to 6.2.3.10.3, 6.2.3.11.2, 6.2.3.11.3, 6.2.5.3.1, and 6.2.5.3.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(g).

8.7.6.2.13 Operating and Safety Devices. An alteration to or addition of operating and/or safety devices shall conform to the specific requirements within 6.2.6 for that device.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(h).

8.7.6.2.14 Lighting, Access, and Electrical Work. An alteration to or addition of lighting, access, or electrical work shall conform to the specific requirements within 6.2.7 for that change.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(i).

8.7.6.2.15 Controller. Where a controller is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 6.2.6.10 through 6.2.6.15 and 6.2.7.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(i).

8.7.6.2.16 Variable-Frequency Drive Motor Control. Where the alteration consists of the addition of, or alteration to, a variable-frequency drive motor control, the installation shall conform to 6.2.6.3.2, 6.2.6.10.3, and 6.2.6.10.4.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(n).

8.7.6.2.17 Addition of Moving Walk Speed Variation. Where a moving walk alteration introduces intentional speed variation after start-up, the addition of speed variation shall conform to 6.2.4.1.2.

For inspection and test requirements, see 8.10.4.2.2(j).

8.7.6.2.18 Entrance and Egress. Any alteration to the entrance or egress end shall comply with 6.2.3.8.1 through 6.2.3.8.4.

8.7.6.2.19 Skirt Panels. Any alteration of a skirt panel or skirt panel supporting components shall conform to 6.1.3.3.6(d), and the person or firm performing the alteration shall verify conformance in accordance with 8.3.15.

8.7.7 Alterations to Dumbwaiters and Material Lifts

8.7.7.1 Dumbwaiters and Material Lifts Without Automatic Transfer Devices

8.7.7.1.1 General. When any alteration is made to a dumbwaiter or material lift, all work performed as part of the alteration shall comply with [Sections 7.1](#) through [7.6](#).

8.7.7.1.2 Increase in Rated Load. Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load, the installation shall conform to either of the following:

(a) [Section 7.2](#), except [7.2.1](#) for hand and electric dumbwaiters

(b) [Section 7.3](#), except [7.3.4.1](#) for hydraulic dumbwaiters

8.7.7.2 Addition of Automatic Transfer Device. Where an automatic transfer device is installed on an existing elevator or dumbwaiter, the resultant combination of material lift or dumbwaiter with automatic transfer device shall conform to [Part 7](#).

8.7.7.3 Material Lifts and Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices

8.7.7.3.1 Where any alteration is made to a material lift or dumbwaiter with an automatic transfer device, the entire installation shall comply with [Sections 7.7](#) through [7.10](#).

8.7.7.3.2 Where an automatic transfer device is removed from a material lift and is not replaced, the installation shall conform to [Section 7.4](#).

8.7.7.3.3 Where a material lift is altered to be an elevator, it shall comply with [Part 2](#) or [Part 3](#).

8.7.7.3.4 Where a material lift or dumbwaiter with an automatic transfer device is altered to a dumbwaiter, it shall comply with [Sections 7.1](#) through [7.3](#).

SECTION 8.8 WELDING

8.8.1 Qualification of Welders

Where required elsewhere in this Code, welding of parts, except for tack welds later incorporated into finished welds, shall be undertaken by either

(a) welders qualified in accordance with the requirements of Section 4 of ANSI/AWS D1.1, whereby the welders shall be qualified by the manufacturer or contractor, a professional consulting engineer, or a recognized testing laboratory

(b) a fabricator qualified to the requirements of CSA W47.1

In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, only the requirements of (b) apply.

8.8.2 Welding Steel

Where required elsewhere in this Code, welding shall conform to one of the following:

(a) the design and procedure requirements of the applicable section of ANSI/AWS D1.1 or ANSI/AWS D1.3

(b) the design and procedure requirements of CSA W59
In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, only the requirements of (b) apply.

8.8.3 Welding Metals Other Than Steel

Where required elsewhere in this Code, welding of materials other than steel shall be done in accordance with the latest AWS or CSA requirements applicable to the specific materials used.

SECTION 8.9 CODE DATA PLATE

[Section 8.9](#) contains requirements for all new and existing equipment within the Scope of this Code.

8.9.1 Required Information

An individual Code Data Plate shall be provided and maintained for each unit (see [1.1.1](#)). The Code Data Plate shall indicate the Code to be used for inspections and tests (see [8.10.1.2](#)). The Code Data Plate shall indicate the Code and edition in effect at the time of installation. The Code Data Plate shall also indicate the Code in effect at the time of any alteration and indicate the applicable requirements of [Section 8.7](#). Where the installation or alteration contains SIL rated devices, the following wording shall be included on the Code Data Plate or on an additional plate located adjacent to the Code Data Plate: "Installation contains SIL rated devices."

8.9.2 Location

The Code Data Plate shall be in plain view, securely attached to each main line disconnect or controller. It shall also be permitted to locate the Code Data Plate in the controller as long as it is in plain view with the controller door open. An additional Code Data Plate shall be installed in the vicinity of one of the starting switches on the exterior of escalators and moving walks.

8.9.3 Material and Construction

The Code Data Plate shall be such material and construction that the letters and figures stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied to the face shall remain permanently and readily legible. The height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 3.2 mm (0.125 in.).

All data plates not located in the controller shall be provided with either

(22)

(a) a durable means that prevents common contaminants (such as paint, adhesives, oil, and grease) from adhering to the Code Data Plate parent surface and permits the removal of these contaminants, without obscuring the Code-required data or

(b) letters and figures that are raised or depressed a minimum of 0.8 mm (0.03125 in.) from the plate surface face and have a minimum character-stroke width of 0.5 mm (0.02 in.)

If the plates are exposed to weathering or a chemical atmosphere, then a durable means shall be provided to protect the information from deterioration while permitting the information to be easily read.

The Code Data Plate shall conform to 8.13.1.

Existing Code Data Plates that comply with the edition of the Code under which they were installed and have legible accurate information do not have to be changed to comply with these material and construction requirements.

SECTION 8.10 ACCEPTANCE INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

Section 8.10 covers acceptance inspections and tests of new or altered installations.

NOTES (Section 8.10):

- (1) Compliance with certain requirements is verifiable through review of design documents, engineering, or type tests.
- (2) Category 5 tests using alternative test methods require a comparison against baseline measures made during acceptance inspection tests. See 8.6.11.10 if alternative test methods are contemplated on future Category 5 tests.

8.10.1 General Requirements for Acceptance Inspections and Tests

8.10.1.1 Persons Authorized to Make Acceptance Inspections and Tests

8.10.1.1.1 The acceptance inspection shall be made by an inspector employed by the authority having jurisdiction, or by a person authorized by the authority having jurisdiction.

8.10.1.1.2 The person installing or altering the equipment shall perform all of the tests required by 8.10.2 through 8.10.5 in the presence of the inspector specified in 8.10.1.1.1.

8.10.1.1.3 The inspector shall meet the qualification requirements of ASME QEI-1. Inspectors and inspection supervisors shall be certified by an independent, accredited, certifying organization as specified in 8.10.1.2 (see Section 1.3).

- (22) 8.10.1.1.4 **Acceptance Test Tags.** A metal tag with the applicable Code requirement(s) and date(s) performed and the names of the person or firm performing the test and of the inspector witnessing the test, including their inspector's ID number and certifying organization,

shall be installed to be readily visible and shall be permanently attached to the controller of each unit. The tag shall conform to 8.13.3.

8.10.1.1.5 **Acceptance Test Records.** A permanent test record showing the test dates, the requirement number for each test, the name of the person or firm performing the test, the inspector's name that witnessed the tests and their inspector's ID number and certifying organization shall be made a permanent part of the maintenance records (see 8.6.1.4.1). The test record shall document all applicable acceptance tests shown in Nonmandatory Appendix X, Tables X-1 through X-4.

8.10.1.2 **Accreditation of Certifying Organizations.** All organizations that certify elevator inspectors and inspection supervisors shall be accredited by an accrediting body (see Section 1.3) in accordance with ANSI/ISO/IEC 17024, or equivalent, and ASME QEI-1.

8.10.1.3 **Applicability of Inspection and Test Requirements.** Inspections and tests required by 8.10.2 through 8.10.5 are to determine that the equipment conforms to the following applicable requirements:

- (a) the Code at the time of installation
- (b) the Code effective as applicable to and for each alteration
- (c) the ASME A17.3 Code if adopted by the authority having jurisdiction

NOTES (8.10.1.3):

- (1) ASME A17.2, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks (see "ASME Elevator Publications" in Preface), covers recommended inspection and testing procedures.
- (2) References to "Items" of ASME A17.2, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks, and to the requirements of this Code are indicated in parentheses as a convenient reference to the applicable testing procedures and requirements. See the Preface and Scope of ASME A17.2 for additional information.

8.10.1.4 **Making Safety Devices or Means Inoperative or Ineffective.** No person shall at any time make any required safety device or electrical protective device inoperative or ineffective, except where necessary during tests and inspections. Such devices or means shall be restored to their normal operating condition in conformity with the applicable requirements prior to returning the equipment to service (see 2.26.7).

8.10.1.5 **Unique or Product-Specific Procedures or Methods.** Where unique or product-specific procedures or methods are required to maintain, repair, replace, inspect, or test equipment, such procedures or methods shall be provided by the manufacturer or installer [see 8.6.1.2.2(b) and 8.6.1.2.2(c)].

8.10.1.6 **Maintenance Control Program.** The Maintenance Control Program complying with 8.6.1.2.1 shall be available at the time of inspection. On-site equipment

documentation complying with 8.6.1.2.2 shall be available at the time of inspection.

8.10.1.7 Devices Not Covered in Section 8.10. When any device on which the safety of users is dependent is installed that is not specifically covered in Section 8.10, it shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the requirements of the manufacturer's or the altering company's procedures (see 8.6.1.6.1 and 8.7.1.2). Documentation that contains the testing procedures of these devices shall remain with the equipment and shall be available in the on-site documentation (see 8.6.1.2.2). The removal or disabling of such devices shall be considered an alteration and shall comply with 8.7.1.2.

8.10.2 Acceptance Inspection and Tests of Electric Elevators

8.10.2.1 Inspection and Tests Required. New installations shall be inspected and tested as required by 8.10.2.2 before being placed in service.

Altered installations shall be inspected as specified in 8.10.2.3.1. Altered installations shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.3.2 before being placed back in service.

8.10.2.2 Inspection and Test Requirements for New Installations

(22) 8.10.2.2.1 Inside the Car

- (a) Door Reopening Device (2.13.5) (Item 1.1).
- (b) Stop Switches (Item 1.2).
 - (1) emergency stop switch (2.26.2.5)
 - (2) in-car stop switch (2.26.2.21)
- (c) Operating Control Devices (Item 1.3).
 - (1) operating devices (2.26.1.1, 2.26.1.2, and 2.26.1.6)
 - (2) in-car inspection (2.26.1.4.3)
 - (3) Inspection Operation with open door circuits (2.26.1.5)
- (d) Car Floor and Landing Sill (Item 1.4).
 - (1) car floor (2.15.5)
 - (2) clearance (2.5.1.4 and 2.5.1.5)
 - (3) landing-sill guard, illumination, and hinging (2.11.10)
 - (4) car hinged sills (2.15.16)
- (e) Car Lighting (2.14.7) (Item 1.5).
 - (1) normal illumination (2.14.7)
 - (2) auxiliary lighting system (2.14.7.1.3)
- (f) Car Emergency Signal (2.11.1.3 and 2.27.1) (Item 1.6).
- (g) Car Door or Gate (Item 1.7).
 - (1) closed position (2.14.4.11)
 - (2) contact or interlock (2.14.4.2, 2.26.2.15, and 2.26.2.28)
 - (3) car landing door clearances (2.14.4.5)
 - (4) car door guides (2.14.4.6)
 - (5) passenger car door (2.14.5)
 - (6) freight car door or gate (2.14.6)

(h) Door Closing Force Test (2.13.4) (Item 1.8).

(i) Power Closing of Doors or Gates (2.13.3) (Item 1.9): Test Closing Time Per Door Marking Plate (2.13.4.2.4).

(j) Power Opening of Doors or Gates (Item 1.10).

(1) *Power Opening of Doors* (2.13.2). Determine that power opening of car and hoistway doors only occurs when the car is at rest at the landing or in the landing zone, except in the case of static control, check that the power shall not be applied until the car is within 300 mm (12 in.) of the landing.

(2) *Leveling Zone* (2.26.1.6.3) and *Leveling Speed* (2.26.1.6.6). Check that the leveling zone does not exceed the maximum allowable distance. Check that the leveling speed does not exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). In addition, for static control elevators, the person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that the leveling speed with the doors open is limited to a maximum of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) and that the speed-limiting (or speed monitor) means is independent of the normal means of controlling this speed (2.26.1.6.6).

The written checkout procedure shall be left on-site as part of the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(d)(4)].

(3) *Inner Landing Zone* (2.26.1.6.7). For static control elevators, check that the zone in which the car can move with the doors open is not more than 75 mm (3 in.) above or below the landing [Item 1.10.2(c)].

(k) Car Vision Panels and Glass Car Doors (Item 1.11).

(1) vision panel (2.14.2.5)

(2) glass doors (2.14.5.9)

(3) access panels (2.14.2.6)

(l) Car Enclosure (Item 1.12).

(1) enclosure and lining materials (2.14.2.1 and 2.14.3.1)

(2) equipment prohibited inside car (2.14.1.9)

(3) classes of loading (2.16.2.2)

(4) passengers on freight elevators (2.16.4)

(5) identification in cars (2.29.1)

(m) Emergency Exit (Item 1.13).

(1) car top (2.14.1.5)

(2) car side (2.14.1.10)

(n) Ventilation (2.14.2.3 and 2.14.3.3) (Item 1.14).

(o) Signs and Operating Device Symbols (2.26.12) (Item 1.15).

(p) Rated Load, Platform Area, and Data Plate (Item 1.16).

(1) rated load and platform area (2.16.1 and 2.16.2)

(2) capacity and data plates (2.16.3)

(3) signs in freight elevators (2.16.5 and 2.16.7)

(q) *Emergency or Standby Power Operation* (Item 1.17). Operation of elevators equipped with emergency or standby power shall be inspected and tested for conformance with the applicable requirements (2.16.8 and 2.27.2). Passenger elevators and freight elevators permitted to carry passengers shall be tested with 125% of rated load. Other freight elevators shall be

tested with rated load. In addition, freight elevators with Class C2 loading shall be tested to ensure that the overload can be maintained during loading and unloading.

(r) Means to Restrict Car Door Opening (2.14.5.7) (Item 1.18).

(s) Car Ride (2.15.2, Section 2.23, and 2.23.6) (Item 1.19).

(t) Door Monitoring Systems (2.26.5). The person or firm installing the equipment shall provide and leave on-site a written test procedure [see 8.6.1.2.2(e)(5)] and demonstrate that the elevator meets the applicable requirements of 2.26.5.

(u) Stopping Accuracy (2.26.11).

(v) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.2.2.2).

(w) Working Areas in the Car (2.7.5.1).

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)

(2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)

(x) Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device (2.26.2.35).

(y) Earthquake Inspections and Tests (8.4.4.1) (Item 1.20).

(22) 8.10.2.2.2 Machine Rooms, Machinery Spaces, and Control Rooms/Spaces

NOTE: A machinery space outside the hoistway containing an electric driving machine and a motor controller is a machine room (Section 2.7).

(a) Location of Rooms/Spaces (2.7.6.1 and 2.7.6.2).

(b) Location of Equipment (2.7.6.3).

(c) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6).

(d) Means of Access (Item 2.1).

(1) access (2.7.3.1 through 2.7.3.4)

(2) door fire-protection rating (2.7.1.1)

(e) Headroom (2.7.4) (Item 2.2).

(f) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4).

(g) Inspection and Test Panel (2.7.6.5).

(h) Lighting and Receptacles (Item 2.3).

(1) lighting (2.7.9.1)

(2) receptacles (NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable)

(i) Enclosure of Machine Room, Machinery Spaces, and Control Rooms/Spaces (Item 2.4).

(1) floors (2.1.3 and 2.7.1.3)

(2) enclosure (2.7.1 and 2.8.1)

(j) Housekeeping (2.8.1) (Item 2.5).

(k) Ventilation and Heating (2.7.9.2) (Item 2.6).

(l) Fire Extinguisher (8.6.1.6.5) (Item 2.7).

(m) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (Section 2.8) (Item 2.8).

(n) Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment (2.10.1) (Item 2.9).

(o) Numbering of Elevators, Machines, and Disconnect Switches [2.29.1.1 through 2.29.1.3] (Item 2.10).

(p) Maintenance Path and Maintenance Clearance (2.7.2).

(q) Stop Switch (2.7.3.5 and 2.26.2.24).

(r) Disconnecting Means and Control (2.26.4.1 and NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable) (Item 2.11).

(s) Controller Wiring, Fuses, Grounding, etc. (Item 2.12).

(1) wiring (2.26.4.1)

(2) fuses (2.26.4.1)

(3) grounding (2.26.1 and NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable)

(4) phase protection (2.26.6)

(5) certification (2.26.4.2)

(6) clearances (NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable)

(7) capacitors or other devices or means (2.26.7)

(8) test enable operation (2.26.14)

(t) Control Circuits, Including Static Control (Item 2.15). The person or firm installing the elevator shall demonstrate or document conformance with the following:

(1) general (2.26.9.1, 2.26.9.2, and 2.26.9.8).

(2) redundancy and its checking (2.26.9.3 and 2.26.9.4).

(3) static control without motor generator sets (2.26.9.5 and 2.26.9.6).

(4) installation of capacitors or other devices or means to make electrical protective devices ineffective (2.26.7). Check Inspection Operation with door open circuits (Item 2.45). Where a means or device is permanently installed [see 2.26.7(f)] to render an electrical protective device ineffective, verify the test enable device is properly marked [see 2.26.14.1.1(c) and 2.26.14.1.1(d)] and the indicator at the inspection station(s) illuminate [see 2.26.14.1.1(h)]. From the on-site documentation (see 8.6.1.2.2) verify compliance with 2.26.14.1 and 2.26.14.3 through 2.26.14.6.

(u) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3) (Item 2.16).

(v) Braking System. For passenger elevators and all freight elevators, the brake shall be tested for compliance with applicable requirements. Place the load as shown in Table 8.6.4.20.4 in the car and run it to the lowest landing by normal operating means. The driving machine shall safely lower, stop, and hold the car with this load. Freight elevators of Class C2 loading shall sustain and level the elevator car (2.16.6) (Item 2.17). The means of adjusting the holding capacity of the brake shall be sealed to prevent changing the adjustment without breaking the seal. The seal shall bear or otherwise attach the identification of the person or firm that installed it (see also 8.6.1.7.2).

(1) braking system (2.24.8.2.2)

(2) electromechanical brake (2.24.8.3)

(3) marking plate (2.24.8.5)

(w) Drive Machines (2.24.1, 2.24.4, 2.24.5, and 2.24.9) (Item 2.18).

(x) Gears, Bearings, and Flexible Connections (2.24.6, 2.24.7, and 2.24.10) (Item 2.19).

(y) Winding-Drum Machine (Item 2.20).

(1) where permitted (2.24.1)

(2) drum diameter (2.24.2.1 and 2.24.2.2)

(3) slack-rope device shall be tested by creating slack rope (2.26.2.1)

(4) spare rope turns (2.20.7)

(5) securing of ropes to drums (2.20.6)

(6) final terminal stopping devices (2.25.3.5)

(z) Belt- or Chain-Drive Machine (2.24.9) (Item 2.21).

(aa) Motor Generator (2.26.9.7) (Item 2.22).

(bb) Absorption of Regenerated Power (2.26.10) (Item 2.23).

(cc) Traction Sheaves (Item 2.25).

(1) diameter (2.24.2.1, 2.24.2.2, and 2.24.2.4)

(2) grooves (2.24.2.1)

(3) traction limits (2.16.6, 2.20.8.1, and 2.24.2.3) shall be verified

(-a) During an emergency stop initiated by any of the electrical protective devices listed in 2.26.2 (except 2.26.2.13), at the rated speed in the down direction, with passenger elevators and freight elevators permitted to carry passengers carrying 125% of their rated load, or with freight elevators carrying their rated load, there shall be sufficient traction to safely stop and hold the load.

(-b) Traction shall slip, or the driving machine shall stall, if either the car or the counterweight bottoms on its buffer.

(-c) Conformance with the traction-loss detection means specified in 2.20.8.1 shall be demonstrated by either

(-1) causing relative motion between the drive sheave and suspension means by bottoming either the car or the counterweight [see (-b)] or

(-2) an alternative test provided in the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(4)] or by the installer and acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction

NOTE: [8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3)(-b) and 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3)(-c)]: Demonstration need not involve an actual loss of traction, for example, where the method of protection used to meet 2.20.8.1 prevents a loss of traction.

(dd) Secondary and Deflector Sheaves (2.24.2) (Item 2.26).

(ee) Rope Fastenings (2.9.3.3, 2.20.5, and 2.20.9) (Item 2.27).

(ff) Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 2.28). The following tests are performed with an empty car in the up direction and the car loaded with rated load or 125% of rated load in the down direction (see 2.16.8):

(1) Test the normal terminal stopping device for conformance with 2.25.2 by making inoperative the normal stopping means. The final terminal stopping

device and the emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall remain operative.

(2) Test the emergency terminal speed-limiting device for conformance with 2.25.4.1.

(3) For static control elevators, see 2.25.4.2.

(4) Test the emergency terminal stopping device for conformance with 2.25.4.2. [See also 8.10.2.2.3(g) and 8.10.2.2.3(h).]

(gg) Operating Devices

(1) Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)

(2) Inspection Operation with open door circuits (2.26.1.5)

(3) additional operation devices (2.26.1.3)

(hh) Governor, Overspeed Switch, and Seal (Item 2.13).

(1) The tripping speed of the governor and the speed at which the governor overspeed switch operates shall be tested to determine conformance with 2.18.2 and 2.18.4.

(2) The governor rope pull-through and pull-out forces shall be tested to determine conformance with 2.17.15 and 2.18.6. If adjustments are made to the governor, it shall be sealed immediately following the test.

(3) The adjustable means shall be sealed (2.18.3).

(4) A marking plate conforming to 2.18.9 shall be attached at the governor.

(5) Access and securing of the car, if applicable (2.7.6.3.4).

(ii) Car and Counterweight Safeties (Item 2.29).

(1) General Requirements for Types A, B, and C Safeties. The following requirements apply to the acceptance tests of Types A, B, and C safeties (Item 2.29):

(-a) Car safeties shall be tested with rated load in the car. In making the test of car safeties, the load shall be centered on each quarter of the platform symmetrically with respect to the centerlines of the platform. Counterweight safeties, where provided, shall be tested with no load in the car.

(-b) The car speed at which the governor trips shall be determined by means of a tachometer or other device designed to measure car speed, including controllers, service tools, and accelerometers.

(-c) The governor tripping speed shall be adjusted within the range specified in 2.18.2, and the means of adjustment shall be sealed.

(-d) The operation of the governor overspeed switch and the car safety-mechanism switch shall be tested to determine conformance with 2.17.7 and 2.18.4.

(-e) After the safety has stopped the car, the level of the car platform shall be checked to determine conformance with 2.17.9.2.

(-f) A metal tag with the rule number, test date, and name of the person/firm performing the test shall be attached to the releasing carrier or where the governor rope attaches to the safety. The permanent test record required by 8.10.1.1.5 shall be completed.

(2) Type A Governor-Operated Safeties

(-a) Type A governor-operated safeties shall be tested by operating the car at its rated speed in the down direction and manually tripping the governor jaws. A test shall also be made of the inertia application of the safety to determine conformance with 2.17.8.1, by attaching the proper weight to the return run of the governor rope. The manufacturer shall inform the person making the test of the weight necessary to be added to the governor rope when making the inertia application test. This weight shall be that necessary to reproduce inertia operation of the safety at not more than $\frac{9}{10}g$. The inertia application test shall be made with the car stationary, and the weight, when released, shall move the safety parts into contact with the rails. See [Nonmandatory Appendix M, Figure M-1](#), for location of weight to be attached to the governor rope when making the inertia test. Inertia application of the safety on the Type A auxiliary safety plank of Type C safeties is not required.

(-b) If means other than inertia application of the safety is provided, such means shall be tested in an appropriate manner to ensure that the safety will apply without appreciable delay under the free-fall condition and that the safety application is independent of the location of the break in the hoisting ropes.

(3) *Type A Safeties Without Governors.* Type A safeties without governors that are operated only as a result of the breaking or slackening of the suspension ropes shall be tested by obtaining the necessary slack rope to cause it to function.

(4) Types B and C Safeties

(-a) Types B and C safeties shall be subjected to an overspeed test, with the suspension ropes attached, by gradually increasing the speed of the car until the governor causes application of the safety.

For safeties of elevators equipped with AC driving-machine motors or other systems that cannot be adjusted to overspeed and where the car with its rated load does not cause sufficient overspeed to trip the governor when the machine brake is released, the test shall be made by operating the car at its rated speed in the down direction and manually tripping the governor; see (hh) for test of governor tripping speed.

(-b) The overspeed switch on both the car and counterweight governors shall be inoperative during the overspeed test. Since the counterweight safety does not have a safety mechanism switch, the circuit that would remove power from the driving-machine motor and brake must be opened as soon as the elevator stops to minimize slack rope and fallback of the car. Where application of the emergency brake required by 2.19.3 occurs, the means to actuate the emergency brake, for the duration of the test, shall be temporarily disabled to prevent its assistance in stopping.

(-c) The stopping distances for Type B safeties shall conform to 2.17.3, and shall be determined by measuring the length of the marks made by the safety jaws or wedges on both sides of each car guide rail, deducting the length of the safety jaw or wedge used, and taking the average of the four readings. The maximum and minimum stopping distances shown in [Table 2.17.3](#) are for the maximum car governor tripping speed. Therefore, these may not match the actual tripping speed of the governor. Table 2.29.2(b) in ASME A17.2 is recommended.

(-d) For Type B safeties, the movement of the governor rope to operate the safety mechanism shall be tested to determine conformance with 2.17.11.

(-e) For Type C safeties, the stopping distance shall be equal to the stroke of the buffer located between the lower member of the car frame and the auxiliary safety plank, and shall conform to 2.17.8.2. After the safety has stopped the car, the level of the auxiliary safety plank shall be checked to determine conformance with 2.17.8.2.6.

(-f) For Type C safeties, the buffer compression switch and oil level devices shall be tested to determine conformance with 2.17.8.2.7 and 2.17.8.2.8.

(jj) *Ascending Car Overspeed, and Unintended Car Motion Protection.*

(1) *Ascending Car Overspeed Protection.* The means to prevent ascending car overspeed shall be inspected and tested with no load in the car to verify conformance with 2.19.1.2.

(2) *Unintended Car Motion.* The means to prevent unintended car motion shall be inspected and tested to verify conformance with 2.19.2.2.

(kk) *Speed.* The speed of the car shall be verified with and without rated load, in both directions (2.16.3.2).

(ll) *Code Data Plate* ([Section 8.9](#)) (Item 2.14).

(mm) *Emergency Brake* (2.19.3).

(nn) *Wiring Diagrams* [8.6.1.2.2(a)].

(oo) *AC Drives From a DC Source* (Item 2.24). The person or firm that installed the AC drive from a DC source shall demonstrate compliance with 2.26.9.6 (Item 2.24.3).

(pp) *Emergency Brake* (2.19.3.2).

(qq) *Rope Retainers or Restraints for Seismic Risk Zones* (Item 2.42).

(rr) *Seismic and Counterweight Displacement Detection Devices Operation and Door Operation* (Item 2.42).

(ss) *Testing of Broken-Suspension-Member and Residual-Strength Detection Means.*

(1) The broken-suspension-member detection means shall be tested by simulating a slack suspension member or a loss of a suspension member as appropriate (2.20.8.2).

(2) Suspension member residual-strength detection means shall be tested to simulate a reduction of residual strength to 2.20.8.3.

(tt) *The Means to View the USI On-Site* (2.26.1.7.3).

(uu) Verify conformance with 2.26.13. See also 8.6.1.2.2(e)(4).

(vv) Verify conformance with 8.14.1. See also 8.6.1.2.2(g).

(22) **8.10.2.2.3 Top of Car**

- (a) Top-of-Car Stop Switch (2.26.2.8) (Item 3.1)
- (b) Car Top Light and Outlet (2.14.7.1.4) (Item 3.2)
- (c) Top-of-Car Operating Device and Equipment (Item 3.3)
 - (1) top-of-car Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.2)
 - (2) equipment on car top (2.14.1.7)
 - (3) Inspection Operation with open door circuits (2.26.1.5)
- (d) Top-of-Car Clearance (Item 3.4)
 - (1) top-of-car clearance (2.4.6 through 2.4.8)
 - (2) low-clearance signage and marking of car top equipment (2.4.7.2)
 - (3) guardrails (2.14.1.7.1)
- (e) Top Counterweight Clearance (2.4.9) (Item 3.24)
- (f) Car, Overhead, and Deflector Sheaves (2.24.2) (Item 3.25)
- (g) *Normal Terminal Stopping Devices* (Item 3.5). Verify location and type of switches (2.25.2). [See also 8.10.2.2.2(ff).]
- (h) *Final Terminal Stopping Devices* (Item 3.6). Verify location and type of switches for conformance with 2.25.3 and 2.26.4.3.
- (i) *Broken Rope, Chain, or Tape Switch* (Item 3.26). Verify for conformance with 2.25.2.3.2, 2.26.2.6, and 2.26.4.3.
- (j) Car-Leveling Devices (2.26.1.6) (Item 3.7)
- (k) Data Plate (2.16.3, 2.20.2, and 2.24.2.3.5) (Item 3.27). Where applicable, the percent counterweight overbalance shown on or adjacent to the crosshead data plate shall be verified by one of the following methods:
 - (1) placing weight inside the car until it balances the counterweight (for 2:1 roping, the car and counterweight sheaves need to be at the same vertical height)
 - (2) weighing the counterweight and then weighing the car with the appropriate weight inside the car
 - (3) using the motor drive data information
- (l) Top Emergency Exit (2.14.1.5 and 2.26.2.18) (Item 3.8)
- (m) Counterweight and Counterweight Buffer (Sections 2.21 and 2.22) (Item 3.28)
- (n) *Counterweight Safeties* (Item 3.29). Visually inspect counterweight safeties, including marking plate (2.17.14).
 - (o) Identification [2.29.1.2(g) and 2.29.2] (Item 3.9)
 - (p) Hoistway Construction (Section 2.1) (Item 3.10)
 - (q) Hoistway Smoke Control (2.1.4) (Item 3.11)
 - (r) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (Section 2.8) (Item 3.12)
 - (s) Windows, Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks (2.1.5, 2.1.6, and 2.11.10.1) (Item 3.13)
 - (t) Hoistway Clearances (Sections 2.4 and 2.5) (Item 3.14)

- (u) Multiple Hoistways (2.1.1.4) (Item 3.15)
- (v) Traveling Cables and Junction Boxes (2.8.2 and NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable) (Item 3.16)
- (w) Door and Gate Equipment (Item 3.17)
 - (1) hoistway doors (Sections 2.11 through 2.13)
 - (2) emergency doors (2.11.1.2)
 - (3) hoistway door fire-protection rating marking or labels (2.1.1.1.3 and 2.11.15.1)
 - (4) door safety retainers, location, and function (2.11.11.8)
 - (5) door closed position (2.12.2.2 and 2.12.3.2)
 - (6) hoistway door hanger (2.11.11.5.8 and 2.11.12.4.8)
 - (7) hoistway door locking device (2.12.2.3, 2.12.2.5, 2.12.3.3, 2.12.3.5, 2.26.2.14, and 2.26.4.3)
- (x) Car Frame, Counterweight Guides, and Stiles (Section 2.15) (Item 3.18)
- (y) Guide Rails and Equipment (Section 2.23) (Item 3.19)
 - (1) rail section (2.23.3)
 - (2) bracket spacing (2.23.4)
 - (3) surfaces and lubrication (2.17.16 and 2.23.6)
 - (4) joints and fish plates (2.23.7)
 - (5) bracket supports (2.23.9)
 - (6) fastenings (2.23.10)
- (z) *Governor Rope* (Item 3.20). Verify governor rope data tag complies with 2.18.5. Verify the governor rope is as specified on the speed governor marking plate (2.18.9). Verify clearance complies with 2.18.5 and 2.18.9(c).
 - (aa) Governor Releasing Carrier (2.17.15) (Item 3.21)
 - (bb) Wire Rope Fastening and Hitch Plate (Item 3.22)
 - (1) fastenings (2.20.9)
 - (2) car and counterweight hitch plate (2.17.13)
 - (3) overhead hitch plate (2.9.3.4)
 - (4) equalizers (2.20.5)
 - (cc) *Suspension Rope* (Item 3.23). Verify number, diameter, and data tag (2.20.2 and 2.20.4)
 - (dd) Compensating Means (2.21.4) (Item 3.33)
 - (ee) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.2.2.2)
 - (ff) Working Areas on the Car Top (2.7.5.1)
 - (1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)
 - (2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)
 - (3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)
 - (4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)
 - (gg) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)
 - (hh) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)
 - (ii) Guarding of Equipment (2.10.1)
 - (jj) For seismic risk zones, horizontal clearance for car and counterweight, snag-point clearance, and rail fastening

(kk) For seismic risk zones, snag guards, location of compensating ropes/chains, and traveling cables

(ll) Emergency Terminal Stopping Means (2.25.4) (Item 3.6)

(22) 8.10.2.2.4 Outside Hoistway

- (a) Car Platform Guard (Item 4.1)
 - (1) apron (2.15.9)
 - (2) car head guards (2.15.9.4)
- (b) Hoistway Doors (Section 2.11) (Item 4.2)
 - (1) test of closed biparting doors (2.11.12.4.3 and 2.11.12.4.7)
 - (2) hoistway door (Section 2.11) [see also 8.10.2.2.3(w)]
- (c) Vision Panels (2.11.7) (Item 4.3)
- (d) Hoistway Door Locking Devices (2.12.2.3, 2.12.2.5, 2.12.3.3, 2.12.3.5, 2.12.4.3, 2.26.2.14, and 2.26.4.3) [see also 8.10.2.2.3(w)] (Item 4.4)
- (e) Access to Hoistway (Item 4.5)
 - (1) access for maintenance (2.12.6 and 2.12.7)
 - (2) access for emergency (2.12.6)
- (f) Power Closing of Hoistway Doors (2.13.1, 2.13.3, and 2.13.4) [see also 8.10.2.2.1(i)] (Item 4.6)
- (g) Sequence Operation (2.13.3.4 and 2.13.6) (Item 4.7)
- (h) Hoistway Enclosure (2.1.1) (Item 4.8)
- (i) Emergency and Access Hoistway Openings (Item 4.10)
 - (1) blind hoistway emergency door (2.11.1.2 and 2.11.1.3)
 - (2) access openings for cleaning (2.11.1.4)
- (j) Separate Counterweight Hoistway (2.3.3) (Item 4.11)
- (k) Standby or Emergency Power Selection Switch (2.27.2 and Section 8.1). [see also 8.10.2.2.1(q)] (Item 4.12)
- (l) Location of Equipment (2.7.6.3)
- (m) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4)
- (n) Inspection and Test Panel (2.7.6.5), Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.1), and Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits (2.26.1.5)
- (o) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)
- (p) Motor Controllers Not Installed in a Machine Room, Control Room, Control Space, or Machinery Space (Item 11.23)
 - (1) cabinet enclosure
 - (2) accessible to general public (AGP) marking
 - (3) cabinet doors and security
 - (4) lighting
 - (5) temperature and humidity control
 - (6) signage

(22) 8.10.2.2.5 Pit

- (a) General (Item 5.1)
 - (1) pit floor (2.2.2.2)
 - (2) drains, sumps, and pumps (2.2.2.3 through 2.2.2.5)

- (3) guards between pits (2.2.3 and 2.3.2)
- (4) counterweight guards (2.3.2)
- (5) access to pit (2.2.4)
- (6) access to underside of car (2.2.8)
- (7) illumination (2.2.5)
- (8) stop switch (2.2.6 and 2.26.2.7)
- (9) pit depth (2.2.7)
- (10) wiring, pipes, and ducts (Section 2.8)
- (b) Bottom Clearance and Runby (Item 5.2)
 - (1) car bottom clearances (2.4.1)
 - (2) refuge space and marking (2.4.1.3, 2.4.1.4, and 2.4.1.6)
 - (3) car and counterweight runbys (2.4.2 and 2.4.4)
 - (4) warning signs (2.4.1.6)
 - (5) horizontal pit clearances (2.5.1.2 and 2.5.1.6)
- (c) Car and Counterweight Buffer (Item 5.9). Marking plates shall be checked in accordance with 2.22.3.3, 2.22.4.11, or 2.22.5.6 for proper application. No test shall be required on spring-type or elastomeric buffers. The following tests on oil-type buffers shall be performed (Item 5.9):
 - (1) The level of the oil shall be checked to determine that it is within the maximum and minimum allowable limits (see 2.22.4.6).
 - (2) Car and counterweight buffers shall be tested to determine conformance with the plunger return requirements of 2.22.4.5.
 - (3) The car oil buffer shall be tested by running the car with its rated load onto the buffer at rated speed, except as specified in (4). The counterweight oil buffer shall be tested by running the counterweight onto its buffer at rated speed with no load in the car, except as specified in (4).
 - (4) For reduced-stroke buffers conforming to 2.22.4.1.2, these tests shall be made at the reduced striking speed.
 - (5) This acceptance test of the oil buffer is also required where a Type C safety is used to assure adequate structure and pit bumper contact.
 - (6) In making these tests, the normal and emergency terminal stopping devices shall be made temporarily inoperative. The final terminal stopping devices shall remain operative and shall be temporarily relocated, if necessary, to permit full compression of the buffer during the test.
- (d) Final Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 5.3). Verify location, operation, and type of switches for conformance with 2.25.3 and 2.26.4.3.
- (e) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 5.4). Verify location, operation, and type of switches for conformance with 2.25.2 [see 8.10.2.2.2(ff)].
- (f) Traveling Cables (2.8.2 and NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable) (Item 5.5)
- (g) Governor-Rope Tension Devices (2.18.7) (Item 5.6)
- (h) Compensating Chains, Ropes, Rope Retainers, and Sheaves [Items 5.10 and 5.16.3(a)]
 - (1) fastenings (2.21.4)

- (2) sheave switches (2.26.2.3 and 2.26.4.3)
- (3) tie-down (2.21.4.2)
- (i) Car Frame and Platform (Item 5.7)
 - (1) frame (2.15.4 through 2.15.7 and 2.15.9)
 - (2) fire protection (2.15.8)
- (j) Car Safeties and Guiding Members (Item 5.8)
 - (1) rope movement (2.17.11)
 - (2) marking plate (2.17.14)
 - (3) car guiding members (2.15.2)
 - (4) running clearances (2.17.10)
- (k) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.2.2.2)
- (l) Working Areas in the Pit (2.7.5.2)
 - (1) means to prevent unexpected movement [2.7.5.2.1(a) or 2.7.5.2.1(b)]
 - (2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)
 - (3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)
 - (4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)
- (m) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)
- (n) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)
 - (o) Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment (2.10.1)
 - (p) Pit Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)
 - (q) Snag Guards for Governor Rope and Traveling Cables in Seismic Risk Zones (Item 5.16.3)
 - (r) Verify Information Shown on Layout Drawing [Item 5.16.3(d)]

8.10.2.2.6 Firefighters' Emergency Operation.

Verify conformance with 2.27.3 through 2.27.8.

8.10.2.2.7 Working Platforms

- (a) Working Platforms (2.7.5.3 and 2.7.5.4)
 - operating instructions (8.6.11.9)
- (b) Retractable Stops (2.7.5.5)
 - retractable stop electrical device (2.26.2.37)
- (c) Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)

8.10.2.2.8 Functional Safety of SIL Rated Device(s).

Where an installation or alteration contains SIL rated devices, verify the Code Data Plate is marked (see Section 8.9) and that SIL rated devices used to satisfy 2.26.4.3.2, 2.26.8.2, 2.26.9.3.2(b), 2.26.9.5.1(b), and 2.26.9.6.1(b) are identifiable on wiring diagrams (see 8.6.1.6.3) with part identification, certification identification information, and an SIL equal to or greater than the values indicated for the devices in Table 2.26.4.3.2, and 2.26.8.2 and 2.26.9, as applicable. The person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and shall demonstrate that SIL rated devices, safety functions (see Table 2.26.4.3.2), and related circuits operate as intended.

The written checkout procedure shall be left on-site as part of the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(c)(1)].

8.10.2.2.9 Occupant Evacuation Operation. Verify

conformance with 2.27.11.

8.10.2.3 Inspection and Test Requirements for Altered Installations

8.10.2.3.1 Alterations shall be inspected for compliance with the applicable requirements specified in Section 8.7.

Check the Code Data Plate for compliance with 8.7.1.8.

8.10.2.3.2 Tests shall be performed when the (22) following alterations are made:

(a) Where the alteration consists of the addition of or alteration to power operation to the door system (see 8.7.2.12), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(a), 8.10.2.2.1(h) through 8.10.2.2.1(j), 8.10.2.2.1(t), 8.10.2.2.3(c)(3), 8.10.2.2.3(j), 8.10.2.2.3(w), 8.10.2.2.4(b), and 8.10.2.2.4(d) through 8.10.2.2.4(g).

(b) Where alterations have been made to the car or counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, or guide-rail fastenings, or where the stresses have been increased by more than 5% (8.7.2.24), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(s), 8.10.2.2.2(ii), 8.10.2.2.2(jj), 8.10.2.2.3(t), 8.10.2.2.3(x), and 8.10.2.2.3(y).

(c) Where alterations have been made to car or counterweight oil buffers (8.7.2.23), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.5(b) and 8.10.2.2.5(c).

(d) Where an alteration results in the increase in deadweight of the car that is sufficient to increase the sum of the deadweight and the rated load, as originally installed, by more than 5% (see 8.7.2.15.2), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(p) and 8.10.2.2.1(q) (if installed), 8.10.2.2.2(v) through 8.10.2.2.2(x), 8.10.2.2.2(z) through 8.10.2.2.2(bb), 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3), 8.10.2.2.2(ff), 8.10.2.2.2(ii) through 8.10.2.2.2(kk), 8.10.2.2.3(k), 8.10.2.2.3(x), 8.10.2.2.5(c), and 8.10.2.2.5(i).

(e) Where the alteration consists of the installation of new car or counterweight safeties, or where alterations are made to existing safeties (see 8.7.2.18), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(hh), 8.10.2.2.2(ii), 8.10.2.2.3(n), 8.10.2.2.3(y), 8.10.2.2.3(aa), and 8.10.2.2.5(j).

(f) Where any alteration is made to a speed governor (see 8.7.2.19), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(hh), 8.10.2.2.2(ii)(1), 8.10.2.2.2(ii)(2), 8.10.2.2.2(ii)(4), and 8.10.2.2.3(aa).

(g) Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load (see 8.7.2.16.4), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(c), 8.10.2.2.1(p), 8.10.2.2.1(q) (if installed), 8.10.2.2.1(s), 8.10.2.2.2(s), 8.10.2.2.2(t), 8.10.2.2.2(v) through 8.10.2.2.2(dd), 8.10.2.2.2(ff), 8.10.2.2.2(hh) through 8.10.2.2.2(kk), 8.10.2.2.3(d), 8.10.2.2.3(e), 8.10.2.2.3(g) through 8.10.2.2.3(i), 8.10.2.2.3(k), 8.10.2.2.3(m), 8.10.2.2.3(n), 8.10.2.2.3(x), 8.10.2.2.3(cc), 8.10.2.2.4(e), 8.10.2.2.5(b) through 8.10.2.2.5(e), 8.10.2.2.5(i), and 8.10.2.2.5(j).

(h) Where alterations are made to a driving-machine brake (see 8.7.2.25), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(v) and 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3).

(i) Where the location of the driving machine has been changed (8.7.2.25.2), for alterations as described in 8.7.2.25.2(a), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(i), 8.10.2.2.2(n), 8.10.2.2.2(u), and 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3).

For alterations as described in 8.7.2.25.2(b), additional tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.3.2(n).

(j) Where an alteration increases the rated speed (8.7.2.17.2) or type of service (8.7.2.16.1), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(c), 8.10.2.2.1(p), 8.10.2.2.1(q), 8.10.2.2.1(s), 8.10.2.2.2(s), 8.10.2.2.2(t), 8.10.2.2.2(v), 8.10.2.2.2(aa) through 8.10.2.2.2(dd), 8.10.2.2.2(ff), 8.10.2.2.2(hh) through 8.10.2.2.2(kk), 8.10.2.2.3(d), 8.10.2.2.3(e), 8.10.2.2.3(g) through 8.10.2.2.3(i), 8.10.2.2.3(k), 8.10.2.2.3(m), 8.10.2.2.3(n), 8.10.2.2.3(cc), 8.10.2.2.4(e), 8.10.2.2.5(b) through 8.10.2.2.5(e), and 8.10.2.2.5(j).

(k) Where an alteration is made to any terminal stopping device (8.7.2.26), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(ff), 8.10.2.2.3(g), 8.10.2.2.3(h), 8.10.2.2.5(c)(4), 8.10.2.2.5(d), and 8.10.2.2.5(e).

(l) Where an alteration is made to emergency or standby power [see 8.7.2.28(b)], tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(q) and 8.10.2.2.4(k).

(m) Where an alteration is made to firefighters' service operation [see 8.7.2.28(c) or 8.7.2.28(d)], tests shall be conducted as specified in 8.10.2.2.6.

(n) Where an alteration increases or decreases the rise (see 8.7.2.17.1), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(c), 8.10.2.2.1(p), 8.10.2.2.1(q), 8.10.2.2.1(s), 8.10.2.2.2(s), 8.10.2.2.2(t), 8.10.2.2.2(v), 8.10.2.2.2(aa) through 8.10.2.2.2(ff), 8.10.2.2.2(hh) through 8.10.2.2.2(kk), 8.10.2.2.3(d) through 8.10.2.2.3(i), 8.10.2.2.3(k), 8.10.2.2.3(m), 8.10.2.2.3(n), 8.10.2.2.3(t), 8.10.2.2.3(w), 8.10.2.2.3(y), 8.10.2.2.3(cc), 8.10.2.2.4(b), 8.10.2.2.4(c), 8.10.2.2.4(e) through 8.10.2.2.4(h), 8.10.2.2.4(j), 8.10.2.2.5(a) through 8.10.2.2.5(e), 8.10.2.2.5(g), 8.10.2.2.5(h), and 8.10.2.2.5(j).

(o) Where an alteration is made such that a hoistway entrance is added (see 8.7.2.10.1), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(a), 8.10.2.2.1(c)(3), 8.10.2.2.1(h) through 8.10.2.2.1(j), 8.10.2.2.1(r), 8.10.2.2.1(t), 8.10.2.2.2(gg)(2), 8.10.2.2.3(c)(3), 8.10.2.2.3(o), 8.10.2.2.3(w), 8.10.2.2.4(b) through 8.10.2.2.4(g), and 8.10.2.2.4(j).

(p) Where an alteration is made such that there is a change in class of loading (see 8.7.2.16.2), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(c), 8.10.2.2.1(p), 8.10.2.2.1(q), 8.10.2.2.1(s), 8.10.2.2.2(s), 8.10.2.2.2(t), 8.10.2.2.2(v), 8.10.2.2.2(w), 8.10.2.2.2(aa) through 8.10.2.2.2(dd), 8.10.2.2.2(ff), 8.10.2.2.2(hh) through 8.10.2.2.2(kk), 8.10.2.2.3(d), 8.10.2.2.3(e), 8.10.2.2.3(g) through 8.10.2.2.3(i), 8.10.2.2.3(k),

8.10.2.2.3(m), 8.10.2.2.3(n), 8.10.2.2.3(cc), 8.10.2.2.4(e), 8.10.2.2.5(b) through 8.10.2.2.5(e), 8.10.2.2.5(i)(1), and 8.10.2.2.5(j).

(q) Where an alteration is made that results in a freight elevator being permitted to carry passengers (see 8.7.2.16.1 or 8.7.2.16.3), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(a), 8.10.2.2.1(c), 8.10.2.2.1(g), 8.10.2.2.1(i), 8.10.2.2.1(j), 8.10.2.2.1(l), 8.10.2.2.1(p), 8.10.2.2.1(q), 8.10.2.2.1(s), 8.10.2.2.2(s), 8.10.2.2.2(t), 8.10.2.2.2(v), 8.10.2.2.2(aa) through 8.10.2.2.2(dd), 8.10.2.2.2(ff), 8.10.2.2.2(hh) through 8.10.2.2.2(kk), 8.10.2.2.3(d), 8.10.2.2.3(e), 8.10.2.2.3(g) through 8.10.2.2.3(i), 8.10.2.2.3(k), 8.10.2.2.3(m), 8.10.2.2.3(n), 8.10.2.2.3(cc), 8.10.2.2.4(e), 8.10.2.2.5(b) through 8.10.2.2.5(e), and 8.10.2.2.5(j).

(r) Where an alteration is made that results in a new drive machine (see 8.7.2.25.1), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(q), 8.10.2.2.2(o), 8.10.2.2.2(u) through 8.10.2.2.2(z), 8.10.2.2.2(cc), 8.10.2.2.2(dd), 8.10.2.2.2(jj), and 8.10.2.2.2(kk).

(s) Where a controller is installed as part of an alteration without any change to the type of operation or control (see 8.7.2.27.4), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(c), 8.10.2.2.1(j), 8.10.2.2.1(l)(5), 8.10.2.2.1(q), 8.10.2.2.1(t), 8.10.2.2.2(r) through 8.10.2.2.2(t), 8.10.2.2.2(v), 8.10.2.2.2(aa), 8.10.2.2.2(bb), 8.10.2.2.2(ff), 8.10.2.2.2(gg), 8.10.2.2.2(jj) (if installed), 8.10.2.2.2(kk), 8.10.2.2.3(o), and 8.10.2.2.6.

(t) Where an alteration is made that results in a change in the type of motion or operation control (8.7.2.27.5 and 8.7.2.27.6), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(s) and 8.10.2.2.2(t). All electrical protective devices shall be tested for proper operation.

(u) Where an alteration is made that results in a new replacement of a hoistway door, car door, or car gate controller without any change to the operation or control [see 8.7.2.27.4(d)], tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(i), 8.10.2.2.1(j), 8.10.2.2.2(s)(1) through 8.10.2.2.2(s)(3), and 8.10.2.2.2(s)(5).

(v) Where alterations are made to driving-machine components [8.7.2.25.1(b)], the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(r) and 8.10.2.2.2(s).

(w) Where an alteration consists of a change in the driving-machine sheave [8.7.2.25.1(c)], the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(cc), 8.10.2.2.2(ee), and 8.10.2.2.3(bb).

(x) Where an alteration consists of a change to the pit (8.7.2.2), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.5(a) and 8.10.2.2.5(b).

(y) Where an alteration consists of a change to the vertical car and counterweight clearances (8.7.2.4), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.3(d) through 8.10.2.2.3(f), 8.10.2.2.3(t), and 8.10.2.2.5(b).

(z) Where an alteration consists of a change to the horizontal car and counterweight clearances (8.7.2.5), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.3(d) through 8.10.2.2.3(f), 8.10.2.2.3(t), and 8.10.2.2.5(b).

(aa) Where an alteration consists of a change to the protection of spaces below hoistways (8.7.2.6), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.4(e) and 8.10.2.2.4(h).

(bb) Where an alteration consists of a change to the machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms (8.7.2.7), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(a) through 8.10.2.2.2(p).

(cc) Where an alteration consists of a change to the electrical equipment and wiring (8.7.2.8), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(q) and 8.10.2.2.2(r).

(dd) Where an alteration consists of a change to the hoistway door locking devices, access switches, and parking devices (8.7.2.11), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.4(d) and 8.10.2.2.4(e).

(ee) Where an alteration consists of a change to the door reopening device (8.7.2.13), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(i) and 8.10.2.2.4(f).

(ff) Where an alteration consists of a change to the car enclosures, car doors and gates, and car illumination (8.7.2.14), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(e) and 8.10.2.2.1(k) through 8.10.2.2.1(m).

(gg) Where an alteration consists of a change to the ascending car/uncontrolled motion protection (8.7.2.20), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(jj).

(hh) Where an alteration consists of a change to the suspension means (8.7.2.21), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(cc) and 8.10.2.2.2(ee).

(ii) Where an alteration consists of a change to the counterweights (8.7.2.22), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.3(e), 8.10.2.2.3(x), 8.10.2.2.3(dd), and 8.10.2.2.3(ii) through 8.10.2.2.3(kk).

(jj) Where an alteration consists of a change to the Inspection Operation and Inspection Operation with open door circuits (8.7.2.27.1), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.3(c).

(kk) Where an alteration consists of a change to the car-leveling or truck-zoning devices (8.7.2.27.2), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.3(j).

(ll) Where an alteration consists of a change to the power supply (8.7.2.27.3), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(r) through 8.10.2.2.2(t).

(mm) Where an alteration consists of a change to the in-car stop switch (8.7.2.27.7), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(b)(2).

(nn) Where an alteration consists of a change to an electrical protective device (8.7.2.27.8), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(t) for that device.

(oo) Where an alteration consists of a change to the door monitoring system (8.7.2.27.9), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(t).

(pp) Where an alteration consists of a change to the car emergency signal/alarm [8.7.2.28(a)], the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(f).

(qq) Where an alteration consists of a change to the car frame and platforms (8.7.2.15.1), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(d), 8.10.2.2.1(s), 8.10.2.2.3(x), 8.10.2.2.4(a), 8.10.2.2.5(i), and 8.10.2.2.5(j)(3).

(rr) Where an alteration consists of a change to or addition of a car top railing (8.7.2.14.5), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.3(c)(2) and 8.10.2.2.3(d).

(ss) Where an alteration involves seismic requirements, they shall be inspected and tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(y), 8.10.2.2.2(qq), 8.10.2.2.2(rr), 8.10.2.2.3(jj), 8.10.2.2.3(kk), and 8.10.2.2.5(q).

(tt) Where alterations have been made to RIO, verify conformance with 2.26.13. See also 8.6.1.2.2(d)(4).

(uu) Where alterations have been made to internet connectivity-enabled devices or elevator controllers, verify conformance with 8.14.1. See also 8.6.1.2.2(g).

8.10.2.4 Inspection and Test Requirements for Replacements (22)

(a) Where a driving machine is replaced (see 8.6.3.17.1), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(q), 8.10.2.2.2(o), 8.10.2.2.2(u) through 8.10.2.2.2(z), 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(1) through 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3) [except 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3)(-c), unless required as installed or last altered], 8.10.2.2.2(dd), and 8.10.2.2.2(kk).

Tests as specified in requirements 8.10.2.2.2(cc)(3) and 8.10.2.2.2(jj) are required if these features were present when the unit was installed or last altered.

(b) Where a controller is replaced (see 8.6.3.17.2), tests shall be performed if these features were present when the unit was installed or last altered, as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(c), 8.10.2.2.1(j), 8.10.2.2.1(l)(5), 8.10.2.2.1(q), 8.10.2.2.1(t), 8.10.2.2.2(r), 8.10.2.2.2(s), 8.10.2.2.2(t), 8.10.2.2.2(v), 8.10.2.2.2(aa), 8.10.2.2.2(bb), 8.10.2.2.2(ff), 8.10.2.2.2(gg), 8.10.2.2.2(jj), 8.10.2.2.2(kk), 8.10.2.2.6, and 8.10.2.2.3(o). All electric protective devices shall be tested for proper operation.

8.10.3 Acceptance Inspection and Tests of Hydraulic Elevators

8.10.3.1 Inspection and Tests Required. New installations shall be inspected and tested as required by 8.10.3.2 before being placed in service.

Altered installations shall be inspected as specified in 8.10.3.3.1. Altered installations shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.3.2 before being placed back in service.

8.10.3.2 Inspection and Test Requirements for New Installations

(22) 8.10.3.2.1 Inside Car

- (a) Door Reopening Device [8.10.2.2.1(a)] (Item 1.1)
- (b) Stop Switches [3.26.4 and 8.10.2.2.1(b)] (Item 1.2)
- (c) Operating Control Devices [3.26.1 through 3.26.3 and 8.10.2.2.1(c)] (Item 1.3)
- (d) Car Floor and Landing Sill [Sections 3.5, 3.11, and 3.15 and 8.10.2.2.1(d)] (Item 1.4)
- (e) Car Lighting [Section 3.14 and 8.10.2.2.1(e)] (Item 1.5)
- (f) Car Emergency Signal [Section 3.27 and 8.10.2.2.1(f)] (Item 1.6)
- (g) Car Door or Gate [Sections 3.11 through 3.14 and 8.10.2.2.1(g)] (Item 1.7)
- (h) Door Closing Force [Sections 3.13 and 3.14 and 8.10.2.2.1(h)] (Item 1.8)
- (i) Power Closing of Doors or Gates [Section 3.13 and 8.10.2.2.1(i)] (Item 1.9)
- (j) Power Opening of Doors or Gates [Section 3.13, 3.26.3, and 8.10.2.2.1(j)] (Item 1.10)
- (k) Car Vision Panels and Glass Car Doors [Section 3.14 and 8.10.2.2.1(k)] (Item 1.11)
- (l) Car Enclosure [Sections 3.14 and 8.9 and 8.10.2.2.1(l)] (Item 1.12)
- (m) Emergency Exit [Section 3.14 and 8.10.2.2.1(m)] (Item 1.13)
- (n) Ventilation [Section 3.14 and 8.10.2.2.1(n)] (Item 1.14)
- (o) Signs and Operating Device Symbols [Section 3.4 and 8.10.2.2.1(o)] (Item 1.15)
- (p) Rated Load, Platform Area, and Data Plate [Section 3.16 and 8.10.2.2.1(p)] (Item 1.16)
- (q) Emergency or Standby Power and Auxiliary Power Supply (Item 1.17)
 - (1) emergency or standby power [Section 3.27 and 8.10.2.2.1(q)]. Passenger elevators and freight elevators shall be tested with rated load. Freight elevators with Class C2 loading shall be tested to ensure that the overload can be maintained during loading and unloading.
 - (2) auxiliary power lowering (3.26.10)
- (r) Restricted Opening of Car or Hoistway Doors [Section 3.12 and 8.10.2.2.1(r)] (Item 1.18)
- (s) Car Ride (Sections 3.15 and 3.23 and 8.10.2.2.1(s)] (Item 1.19)
- (t) Door Monitoring Systems [3.26.1 and 8.10.2.2.1(t)]

(1) The person or firm installing the equipment shall provide and leave on-site a written test procedure [see 8.6.1.2.2(e)(5)] as part of the on-site documentation.

(2) The person or firm installing the equipment shall demonstrate that the elevator meets the applicable requirements of 2.26.5 and 3.26.1.

- (u) Stopping Accuracy (3.26.1)
- (v) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.3.2.2)
- (w) Working Areas in the Car (2.7.5.1 and Section 3.7)
 - (1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)
 - (2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)
 - (3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)
 - (4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)
- (x) Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device (2.26.2.35 and 3.26.1)
- (y) Earthquake Inspections and Tests (Item 1.20)

8.10.3.2.2 Machine Rooms, Machinery Spaces, and Control Rooms/Spaces (22)

NOTE: A machinery space outside the hoistway containing a hydraulic machine and a motor controller is a machine room (Section 3.7).

- (a) Location of Rooms/Spaces [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(a)]
- (b) Location of Equipment [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(b)]
- (c) Equipment Exposure to Weather [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(c)]
- (d) Means of Access [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(d)] (Item 2.1)
- (e) Headroom [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(e)] (Item 2.2)
- (f) Means Necessary for Tests [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(f)]
- (g) Inspection and Test Panel [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(g)]
- (h) Lighting and Receptacles [3.7.1, Section 3.8, and 8.10.2.2.2(h)] (Item 2.3)
- (i) Enclosure of Machine Rooms, Machinery Spaces, and Control Rooms/Spaces [Section 3.1, 3.7.1, and 8.10.2.2.2(i)] (Item 2.4)
- (j) Housekeeping [Section 3.8 and 8.10.2.2.2(j)] (Item 2.5)
- (k) Ventilation and Heating [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(k)] (Item 2.6)
- (l) Fire Extinguisher [8.6.1.6.5 and 8.10.2.2.2(l)] (Item 2.7)
- (m) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts [Section 3.8 and 8.10.2.2.2(m)] (Item 2.8)
- (n) Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment [Section 3.10 and 8.10.2.2.2(n)] (Item 2.9)
- (o) Numbering of Elevators, Machines, and Disconnect Switches [Section 3.29 and 8.10.2.2.2(o)] (Item 2.10)
- (p) Maintenance Path and Maintenance Clearance [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(p)]
- (q) Stop Switch [3.7.1, 3.26.1, and 8.10.2.2.2(q)]
- (r) Disconnecting Means and Control [8.10.2.2.2(r)] (Item 2.11)

(1) general (2.26.4.1, 2.26.4.5, and 3.26.1, and NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable)

(2) closed position (3.26.3.1.4)

(3) auxiliary contacts (NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable)

(s) Controller Wiring, Fuses, Grounding, etc. [8.10.2.2.2(s)] (Item 2.12)

(1) wiring (2.26.4.1 and 3.26.1).

(2) certification (2.26.4.2 and 3.26.1).

(3) installation of capacitors or devices or means (2.26.7 and 3.26.1). Where test enable operation is permanently installed [see 2.26.7(f)] to render an electrical protective device ineffective, verify the test enable device is properly marked [see 2.26.14.1.1(c) and 2.26.14.1.1(d)] and the indicator at the inspection station(s) illuminate [see 2.26.14.1.1(h)]. From the on-site documentation (see 8.6.1.2.2) verify compliance with 2.26.14.1 and 2.26.14.3 through 2.26.14.6.

(4) control and operating circuits (2.26.9 and 3.26.1)

(5) clearances (NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable)

(6) phase protection (3.26.5)

(7) low oil protection (3.26.9)

(8) grounding (Section 2.26 and NFPA 70 or CSA C22.1, as applicable)

(9) fuses (2.26.4.1)

(t) Hydraulic Machine (Power Unit) (3.24.1) (Item 2.30). The working pressure shall be checked and the pressure on the data plate verified (3.24.1.1).

(u) Relief Valves (Item 2.31). The relief valve shall be tested to determine conformance with 3.19.4.2.

(v) Control Valve (Item 2.32)

(1) electric requirements (3.19.7)

(2) certification (3.19.4.6)

(3) data plate (3.19.4.6.2)

(4) check valve (3.19.4.3)

(5) manual lowering valve (3.19.4.4)

(6) pressure gauge fitting (3.19.4.5)

(w) Tanks (Item 2.33)

(1) capacity (3.24.2.1)

(2) minimum level indication (3.24.2.2)

(3) atmospheric storage and discharge tanks (3.24.3)

(x) Flexible Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Assemblies (3.19.3.3) (Item 2.34)

(y) Supply Lines and Shutoff Valves (Item 2.35). Data from the pipe, fitting, and valve manufacturers shall be provided to verify that the pressured rating of all components complies with pressure rating requirements (Item 2.18.3).

(1) component ratings (3.19.1.2)

(2) component markings (3.19.1.4)

(3) visual inspection of field welding (3.19.6)

(4) pressure piping (3.19.2)

(5) below-ground installations (3.19.5)

(6) connections and fittings (3.19.3)

(z) Hydraulic Cylinders (Item 2.36). For plunger stops [Item 3.4.3(a)], verify that a stop ring has been provided as required by 3.18.4.1.

(aa) Pressure Switch (Item 2.37). Where cylinders are installed with the top of the cylinder above the top of the tank, a test shall be made to determine conformance with 3.26.8.

(bb) Recycling Operation (3.26.7). Where recycling operation is provided for multiple or telescoping plungers, tests shall be made for conformance with 3.26.7.

(cc) Static Control Elevator. The person or firm installing a static control elevator shall demonstrate conformance with 3.25.2.4.4 (Item 2.41).

(dd) Code Data Plate [Section 8.9 and 8.10.2.2.2(ii)] (Item 2.14)

(ee) Operating Devices [8.10.2.2.2(gg)]

(1) Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)

(2) Inspection Operation with open door circuits (2.26.1.5, 3.26.1, and 3.26.2)

(ff) Governor, Overspeed Switch, and Seal [3.17.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(hh)] (Item 2.13)

(1) access and securing of car, if applicable (2.7.6.3.4)

(gg) Wiring Diagrams [8.6.1.2.2(a) and 8.10.2.2.2(nn)] (Item 2.14).

(hh) Freight Elevators. Freight elevators of Class C2 loading shall sustain and level the elevator car with the maximum load shown on the freight elevator loading sign (3.16.2) (Item 2.17).

(ii) Location of machine room, machinery space, and hoistway related to expansion joint (Item 2.42.3.2).

(jj) The Means to View the USI On-Site (3.26.11.3).

(kk) Verify conformance with 3.26.12. See also 8.6.1.2.2(d)(4).

(ll) Verify conformance with 8.14.1. See also 8.6.1.2.2(g).

8.10.3.2.3 Top of Car

(a) Top-of-Car Stop Switch [3.26.4 and 8.10.2.2.3(a)] (Item 3.1)

(b) Car Top Light and Outlet [Section 3.14 and 8.10.2.2.3(b)] (Item 3.2)

(c) Top-of-Car Operating Device [8.10.2.2.3(c)] (Item 3.3)

(1) operation (3.26.2)

(2) operation with open door circuits (2.26.1.5)

(d) Top-of-Car Clearance [8.10.2.2.3(d)] (Item 3.4)

(1) top car clearance (3.4.5)

(2) car top minimum runby (3.4.2.2)

(3) top-of-car equipment (3.4.7)

(4) clearance above hydraulic jack projecting above the car (3.4.8)

(e) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices [3.25.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(g)] (Item 3.5)

(f) Terminal Speed-Reducing Devices (3.25.2) (Item 3.6)

(g) Car-Leveling and Anticreep Devices (3.26.3) (Item 3.7)

(1) *Anticreep Operation*. A test of the anticreep leveling device shall be made to determine conformance with 3.26.3.1.

(2) leveling or truck zone operation (3.26.3.2)

(h) Crosshead Data Plate [Section 3.16 and 8.10.2.2.3(k)] (Item 3.27)

(i) Top Emergency Exit [Section 3.14 and 8.10.2.2.3(l)] (Item 3.8)

(j) Identification [Section 3.29 and 8.10.2.2.3(o)] (Item 3.9)

(k) Hoistway Construction [Section 3.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(p)] (Item 3.10)

(l) Hoistway Smoke Control [Section 3.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(q)] (Item 3.11)

(m) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts [Section 3.8 and 8.10.2.2.3(r)] (Item 3.12)

(n) Windows, Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks [Section 3.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(s)] (Item 3.13)

(o) Hoistway Clearances [Section 3.5 and 8.10.2.2.3(t)] (Item 3.14)

(p) Multiple Hoistways [Section 3.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(u)] (Item 3.15)

(q) Traveling Cables and Junction Boxes [Section 3.8 and 8.10.2.2.3(v)] (Item 3.16)

(r) *Door and Gate Equipment*. Use the procedure in 8.10.2.2.3(w). (Sections 3.11 through 3.13) (Item 3.17)

(s) Car Frame and Stiles [Section 3.15] (Item 3.18)

(t) Guide Rails, Fastenings, and Equipment [Section 3.23] (Item 3.19)

(1) rail (Section 3.23)

(2) bracket spacing

(3) surfaces and lubrication

(4) joints and fishplates

(5) bracket supports

(6) fastenings

(7) guides

(u) *Governor, Safety, Ropes, and Counterweights* (Item 3.20). Use the procedures in 8.10.2.2.2(hh), 8.10.2.2.2(ii), 8.10.2.2.3(m), 8.10.2.2.3(n), and 8.10.2.2.3(z) through 8.10.2.2.3(cc); car and counterweight safeties (3.17.1 and 3.17.2).

(v) Governor Rope Releasing Carrier [3.17.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(aa)] (Item 3.21)

(w) Governor Rope [3.17.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(z)] (Item 3.20)

(x) Wire Rope Fastening and Hitch Plate [3.17.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(bb)] (Item 3.22)

(y) Suspension Rope (3.4.5 3.17.1, 3.18.1.2, and Section 3.20) (Item 3.23)

(z) Slack-Rope Device (3.17.1.1, 3.18.1.2.5, and 3.22.1.2) (Item 3.31)

(aa) Traveling Sheave (3.18.1.2.6 and 3.22.1.2) (Item 3.32)

(bb) Counterweight Ropes, Connections, and Sheaves (Sections 3.20 and 3.21) (Item 3.22)

(cc) *Car Speed* [3.28.1(k)]. The speed of the car shall be verified with rated load and with no load, in both directions. (Item 3.30)

(dd) *Inertia Tests*. Conduct inertia tests for Type A safeties. See [Nonmandatory Appendix M](#).

(ee) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.3.2.2)

(ff) Working Areas on the Car Top (3.7.1)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)

(2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)

(gg) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)

(hh) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)

(ii) Guarding of Equipment (2.10.1)

(jj) Broken Rope, Chain, or Tape Switch (Item 3.26)

(kk) Earthquake Inspection and Tests (Seismic Risk Zone 2 or Greater) (Item 3.34)

8.10.3.2.4 Outside Hoistway

(22)

(a) Car Platform Guard [Section 3.15 and 8.10.2.2.4(a)] (Item 4.1)

(b) Hoistway Doors [Section 3.11 and 8.10.2.2.4(b)] (Item 4.2)

(c) Vision Panels [Section 3.11 and 8.10.2.2.4(c)] (Item 4.3)

(d) Hoistway Door Locking Devices [Section 3.12 and 8.10.2.2.4(d)] (Item 4.4)

(e) Access to Hoistway [Section 3.12 and 8.10.2.2.4(e)] (Item 4.5)

(f) Power Closing of Hoistway Doors [Section 3.13 and 8.10.2.2.4(f)] (Item 4.6)

(g) Sequence Operation [Section 3.13 and 8.10.2.2.4(g)] (Item 4.7)

(h) Hoistway Enclosure [Section 3.1 and 8.10.2.2.4(h)] (Item 4.8)

(i) Emergency Doors in Blind Hoistways [Section 3.11 and 8.10.2.2.4(i)] (Item 4.10)

(1) blind hoistway emergency door

(2) access openings for cleaning

(j) Emergency or Standby Power Selection Switch [3.26.10 and 8.10.2.2.4(k)] (Item 4.12)

(k) Location of Equipment (3.7.1)

(l) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4 and 3.7.1.8 through 3.7.1.10)

(m) Inspection and Test Panel (2.7.6.5 and 3.7.1), Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.1), and Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits (2.26.1.5)

(n) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)

(o) Elevator Parking Device (Item 4.9)

(22) **8.10.3.2.5 Pit**

(a) Pit Access, Lighting, Stop Switch, and Condition [Section 3.2 and 8.10.2.2.5(a)(1) through 8.10.2.2.5(a)(8) and 8.10.2.2.5(a)(10)] (Item 5.1)

(b) Bottom Clearance, Runby, and Minimum Refuge Space (Item 5.2)

(1) bottom car clearance (3.4.1)

(2) minimum bottom car runby (3.4.2)

(3) maximum bottom car runby (3.4.3)

(c) Plunger and Cylinder (Item 5.11)

(1) hydraulic jack connections

(-a) direct-acting elevators (3.18.1.1)

(-b) roped-hydraulic elevators (3.18.1.2)

(2) plunger

(-a) plunger connections (3.18.2.3)

(-b) plunger guides (3.18.2.7)

(3) cylinders

(-a) clearance of the bottom of the cylinder (3.18.3.3)

(-b) collection of oil (3.18.3.7)

(-c) corrosion protection: the person or firm installing monitored cathodic protection shall demonstrate conformance with 3.18.3.8.3(c)

(-d) means for release of air or gas (3.18.3.9)

(4) welding visual inspection (3.18.5)

(d) Car Buffer (3.6.3, 3.6.4, and 3.22.1) (Item 5.9). Marking plates shall be checked for proper application in accordance with 2.22.3.3 or 2.22.5.6. No test shall be required on spring-type or elastomeric buffers.

(e) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (3.25.1) (Item 5.4)

(f) Traveling Cables (Section 3.8; and NFPA 70, Article 620 or CSA C22.1, Section 38, as applicable) (Item 5.5)

(g) Car Frame and Platform (Section 3.15) (Item 5.7)

(h) Guiding Members (Sections 3.15 and 3.23) (Item 5.13)

(i) Supply Piping (Item 5.14)

(1) components and valves (3.19.1 and 3.19.4)

(2) field welding visual inspection (3.19.6)

(3) pressure piping (3.19.2)

(j) Car Safety (Section 3.17) (Item 5.8)

(k) Governor Rope Tension Device (3.17.4) (Item 5.6)

(l) Counterweight (Item 3.28)

(1) top clearance and bottom runby (3.4.6 and 3.22.2)

(2) guards (Section 3.3)

(3) design (Section 3.21)

(m) Protection of Spaces Below the Hoistway (Section 3.6)

(n) A plunger gripper, where provided, shall be inspected and tested at rated load at not less than operating speed in the down direction. The means for the actuation of the gripper shall be verified by overspeeding the car or by alternative means. Where multiple means of actuation are provided, each means shall be individually tested. The date of this test shall be permanently marked

on the plunger gripper marking plate and recorded in the acceptance test records (see 3.17.3.8 and 8.10.1.1.4) (Item 5.17.3). The person or firm installing or maintaining the equipment shall provide a written procedure in the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(e)(6)] and demonstrate that the plunger gripper shall function as required by 3.17.3.

The written procedure shall be left on-site as part of the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(e)(6)].

(o) *Overspeed Valve and Seal*. Overspeed valves, where provided, shall be inspected and tested to verify that they will stop the car, traveling down with rated load within the specified limits of 3.19.4.7.5(a), using a written procedure supplied by the valve manufacturer or installer (Item 5.15.3.2).

The written procedure shall be left on-site as part of the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(e)(7)].

(p) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.3.2.2)

(q) Working Areas in the Pit (2.7.5.2 and 3.7.1)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement [2.7.5.2.1(a) or 2.7.5.2.1(b)]

(2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)

(r) Equipment Exposed to Weather (3.7.1)

(s) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)

(t) Guarding of Equipment (2.10.1)

(u) Pit Inspection Operation (3.26.2)

(v) Earthquake Inspection and Tests (8.4.4.1) (Item 5.16)

8.10.3.2.6 Firefighters' Emergency Operation (Section 3.27). Verify conformance with 2.27.3 through 2.27.8 and Section 3.27.

8.10.3.2.7 Working Platforms

(a) Working Platforms (2.7.5.3, 2.7.5.4), and 3.7.1

– operating instructions (8.6.11.9)

(b) Retractable Stops (2.7.5.5 and 3.7.1)

– retractable stop electrical device (2.26.2.37)

(c) Inspection Operation (3.26.2)

8.10.3.3 Inspection and Test Requirements for Altered Installations

8.10.3.3.1 Alterations shall be inspected for compliance with the applicable requirements specified in Section 8.7.

Check the Code Data Plate for compliance with 8.7.1.8.

8.10.3.3.2 Tests shall be performed when the following alterations are made:

(a) Where the alteration consists of the addition of power operation to the door system (8.7.3.12), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(a),

8.10.3.2.1(h) through 8.10.3.2.1(j), 8.10.3.2.1(t), 8.10.3.2.3(c)(2), 8.10.3.2.3(r), 8.10.3.2.4(b), and 8.10.3.2.4(d) through 8.10.3.2.4(g).

(b) Where alterations have been made to the car or counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, or guide-rail fastenings, or where the stresses have been increased by more than 5% (8.7.3.28), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(ii) if safeties are provided, 8.10.3.2.1(s), 8.10.3.2.3(o), 8.10.3.2.3(s), and 8.10.3.2.3(t).

(c) Where alterations have been made to oil buffers (8.7.3.27), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.5(b), 8.10.3.2.5(d), and 8.10.3.2.5(l)(1).

(d) Where an alteration results in an increase in the deadweight of the car that is sufficient to increase the sum of the deadweight and the rated load, as originally installed, by more than 5% (8.7.3.21), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(a), 8.10.3.2.1(c), 8.10.3.2.1(g) through 8.10.3.2.1(k), 8.10.3.2.1(q) through 8.10.3.2.1(t), 8.10.3.2.2(m), 8.10.3.2.2(n), 8.10.3.2.2(x), 8.10.3.2.2(y), 8.10.3.2.3(c) through 8.10.3.2.3(h), 8.10.3.2.3(u), 8.10.3.2.3(y), 8.10.3.2.3(cc), and 8.10.2.2.2(ii) if safeties are provided; 8.10.2.2.5(c) if oil buffers are provided; and 8.10.3.2.1(q), 8.10.3.2.2(m), 8.10.3.2.2(n), 8.10.3.2.2(q), 8.10.3.2.2(r), 8.10.3.2.3(h), 8.10.3.2.3(cc), 8.10.3.2.5(b), 8.10.3.2.5(d), and 8.10.3.2.5(l).

(e) Where the alteration consists of the installation of new car or counterweight safeties, or where alterations are made to existing safeties (8.7.3.15), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.3.2(e) and 8.10.3.2.3(u).

(f) Where any alteration is made to a speed governor (8.7.3.16), tests shall be performed as specified by 8.10.2.3.2(f) and 8.10.3.2.3(u).

(g) Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load (8.7.3.20), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(ii), 8.10.3.2.1(a), 8.10.3.2.1(c), 8.10.3.2.1(g) through 8.10.3.2.1(k), 8.10.3.2.1(q) through 8.10.3.2.1(t), 8.10.3.2.2(m), 8.10.3.2.2(n), 8.10.3.2.2(x), 8.10.3.2.2(y), 8.10.3.2.3(c) through 8.10.3.2.3(h), 8.10.3.2.3(o), and 8.10.3.2.3(u) if safeties are provided; 8.10.3.2.3(y), 8.10.3.2.3(cc), and 8.10.2.2.5(c) if oil buffers are provided; and as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(p), 8.10.3.2.1(q)(1), 8.10.3.2.2(m), 8.10.3.2.2(n), 8.10.3.2.2(r), 8.10.3.2.3(h), 8.10.3.2.3(cc), 8.10.3.2.5(b), 8.10.3.2.5(d), and 8.10.3.2.5(l).

(h) Where an alteration consists of an increase in the working pressure by more than 5% (8.7.3.23.4), it shall be inspected as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(m) through 8.10.3.2.2(t), 8.10.3.2.5(c), and 8.10.3.2.5(i).

(i) Where the location of the hydraulic jack has been changed (8.7.3.23.5), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.

(j) Where an alteration increases the rated speed (8.7.3.22.2), changes travel (8.7.3.22.1), changes the type of service (8.7.3.17), changes the class of loading

(8.7.3.18), or changes from freight to passenger (8.7.3.19), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(a), 8.10.3.2.1(c), 8.10.3.2.1(g) through 8.10.3.2.1(k), 8.10.3.2.1(q) through 8.10.3.2.1(t), 8.10.3.2.2(m), 8.10.3.2.2(n), 8.10.3.2.2(x), 8.10.3.2.2(y), 8.10.3.2.3(c) through 8.10.3.2.3(h), 8.10.3.2.3(o), 8.10.3.2.3(u), 8.10.3.2.3(y), 8.10.3.2.3(cc), 8.10.3.2.5(b), 8.10.3.2.5(d), and 8.10.3.2.5(l).

(k) Where an alteration is made to any terminal stopping device (see 8.7.3.30), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.3(e), 8.10.3.2.3(f), and 8.10.3.2.5(e).

(l) Where an alteration is made to emergency or standby power [see 8.7.3.31.8(b)], tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(q) and 8.10.3.2.4(j).

(m) Where an alteration is made to firefighters' service operation [8.7.3.31.8(c)], tests shall be conducted as specified in 8.10.3.2.6.

(n) Where an alteration is made to the plunger or cylinder (8.7.3.23.1, 8.7.3.23.2, or 8.7.3.23.3), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(t) through 8.10.3.2.2(v), 8.10.3.2.2(y), 8.10.3.2.2(z), 8.10.3.2.3(d), 8.10.3.2.3(cc), 8.10.3.2.5(b), and 8.10.3.2.5(c).

(o) Where an existing control valve is replaced with a valve of a different type (see 8.7.3.24), or where relief, check, shutoff, manual lowering, or overspeed valves or the supply piping and fittings are replaced (8.7.3.24), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(t) through 8.10.3.2.2(v), 8.10.3.2.2(y), and 8.10.3.2.3(cc).

(p) Where an alteration consists of a change in operation control (8.7.3.31.7), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(a) through 8.10.3.2.1(c), 8.10.3.2.1(e) through 8.10.3.2.1(j), 8.10.3.2.1(l), 8.10.3.2.1(q), 8.10.3.2.1(s), 8.10.3.2.1(t), 8.10.3.2.2(j), 8.10.3.2.2(l), 8.10.3.2.2(t), 8.10.3.2.2(u), 8.10.3.2.2(x), 8.10.3.2.2(y), 8.10.3.2.3(a), 8.10.3.2.3(c), 8.10.3.2.3(e) through 8.10.3.2.3(g), 8.10.3.2.3(j), 8.10.3.2.3(cc), 8.10.3.2.4(b) through 8.10.3.2.4(g), 8.10.3.2.4(j), 8.10.3.2.4(k), 8.10.3.2.5(a), 8.10.3.2.5(e), and 8.10.3.2.6.

(q) Where an alteration is made that results in a new hoistway door, car door, or car gate controller without any change to the operation or control [8.7.3.31.5(d)], tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(j), 8.10.3.2.2(s)(1) through 8.10.3.2.2(s)(3), and 8.10.3.2.2(s)(5).

(r) Where an alteration is made that results in a change in the type of motion control (8.7.3.31.6), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(l), 8.10.3.2.2(j), 8.10.3.2.2(l), 8.10.3.2.2(m), 8.10.3.2.2(t), 8.10.3.2.2(u), and 8.10.3.2.3(j). All electrical protective devices shall be tested for proper operation.

(s) Where an alteration is made and results in replacement of a new controller without any change to the type of operation control or motion (8.7.3.31.5), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(l)(5), 8.10.2.2.1(t), 8.10.2.2.2(q), 8.10.2.2.2(s), 8.10.2.2.2(t)(1),

8.10.2.2.2(t)(2), 8.10.2.2.2(t)(4), 8.10.2.2.2(II), and 8.10.2.2.3(o). All electrical protective devices shall be tested for proper operation.

(t) Where an alteration consists of the addition of a plunger gripper (8.7.3.23.7), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.5(b) and 8.10.3.2.5(n).

(u) Where an alteration consists of a change to the pits (8.7.3.2), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.5(a) and 8.10.3.2.5(b).

(v) Where an alteration consists of a change to the vertical car and counterweight clearances (8.7.3.4), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.3(d) through 8.10.3.2.3(f), 8.10.3.2.3(t), and 8.10.3.2.5(b).

(w) Where an alteration consists of a change to the horizontal car and counterweight clearances (8.7.3.5), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.3(d) through 8.10.3.2.3(f), 8.10.3.2.3(t), and 8.10.3.2.5(b).

(x) Where an alteration consists of a change to the protection of spaces below hoistways (8.7.3.6), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(e) and 8.10.3.2.2(h).

(y) Where an alteration consists of a change to the machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms (8.7.3.7), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(a) through 8.10.3.2.2(p) and 8.10.3.2.2(aa).

(z) Where an alteration consists of a change to the electrical equipment and wiring (8.7.3.8), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(q) and 8.10.3.2.2(r).

(aa) Where an alteration consists of a change to the hoistway door locking devices (8.7.3.11), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.4(d) and 8.10.3.2.4(e).

(bb) Where an alteration consists of a change to the door reopening device (8.7.3.13.2), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(i) and 8.10.3.2.4(f).

(cc) Where an alteration consists of a change to the car enclosures (8.7.3.13.1), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(l).

(dd) Where an alteration consists of a change to the car frames and platform (8.7.3.14), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(s), 8.10.3.2.4(a), 8.10.3.2.5(g), and 8.10.3.2.5(j).

(ee) Where an alteration consists of a change to the suspension means (8.7.3.25), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.3(x) through 8.10.3.2.3(z) and 8.10.3.2.3(bb).

(ff) Where an alteration consists of a change to the counterweights (8.7.3.26), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.3(l), 8.10.3.2.3(bb), and 8.10.3.2.3(ii).

(gg) Where an alteration consists of a change to the top-of-car operating devices (8.7.3.31.1), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.2.3(c).

(hh) Where an alteration consists of a change to the car-leveling or truck-zoning devices (8.7.3.31.2), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.3(g)(2).

(ii) Where an alteration consists of a change to the anticreep leveling device (8.7.3.31.3), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.3(g)(1).

(jj) Where an alteration consists of a change to the power supply (8.7.3.31.4), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(r) and 8.10.3.2.2(s).

(kk) Where an alteration consists of a change to the in-car stop switch (8.7.3.31.10), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(b).

(ll) Where an alteration consists of a change to an electrical protective device (8.7.3.31.11), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(s)(4) for that device.

(mm) Where an alteration consists of a change to the door monitoring system (8.7.3.31.13), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(t).

(nn) Where an alteration consists of a change to the car emergency signal/alarm [8.7.3.31.8(a)], the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(f).

(oo) Where an alteration consists of a change to the auxiliary power lowering operation (8.7.3.31.9), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(q)(2).

(pp) Where an alteration consists of a change of the hydraulic pump motor starter (8.7.3.31.12), the affected components shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(f).

(qq) Where alterations have been made to RIO, verify conformance with 3.26.12. See also 8.6.1.2.2(d)(4).

(rr) Where alterations have been made to internet connectivity-enabled devices or elevator controllers, verify conformance with 8.14.1. See also 8.6.1.2.2(g).

(ss) Where an alteration involves seismic requirements, they shall be inspected and tested as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(y), 8.10.3.2.3(kk) and 8.10.3.2.5(v).

8.10.3.4 Inspection and Test Requirements for Replacements (22)

8.10.3.4.1 Where a controller is replaced (see 8.6.3.17.2), tests shall be performed for those features that were present when the unit was installed or last altered, as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(l)(5), 8.10.2.2.1(t), 8.10.2.2.2(q), 8.10.2.2.2(s), 8.10.2.2.2(t)(1), 8.10.2.2.2(t)(2), 8.10.2.2.2(t)(4), 8.10.2.2.2(II), and 8.10.2.2.3(o). All electrical protective devices shall be tested for proper operation.

8.10.3.4.2 Where an anticreep leveling device is replaced, it shall be tested to determine conformance with 3.26.3.1.

8.10.3.4.3

(a) Where any valves, pressure piping, or fittings are replaced, replacements shall be tested in accordance with 8.6.5.14.1.

(b) A replacement control valve shall have its relief valve tested in accordance with 8.6.5.14.1.

8.10.4 Acceptance Inspection and Tests of Escalators and Moving Walks

8.10.4.1 Inspection and Test Requirements for New Installations. New installations shall be inspected and tested as required by 8.10.4.1 before being placed in service.

(22) 8.10.4.1.1 External Inspection and Tests

(a) General Fire Protection Requirements (Items 7.1 and 9.1)

(1) The protection of floor and wall openings shall be inspected to determine conformance with 6.1.1 for escalators or 6.2.1 for moving walks.

(2) The protection of the trusses and machinery space shall be inspected to determine conformance with 6.1.2 or 6.2.2.

(b) Geometry (Items 7.2 and 9.2)

(1) angle of inclination (6.1.3.1 or 6.2.3.1)

(2) width and clearances (6.1.3.2 or 6.2.3.2)

(3) interior low deck (6.1.3.3.4 or 6.2.3.3.4)

(c) Handrails (Items 7.3 and 9.3)

(1) *Speed* (6.1.3.4.1 or 6.2.3.4.1). Running tests shall be performed, in each direction, to determine conformance with 6.1.3.4.1 or 6.2.3.4.1.

(2) extension (6.1.3.4.2 or 6.2.3.4.2)

(3) guards (6.1.3.4.3 or 6.2.3.4.3)

(4) splice (6.1.3.4.4 or 6.2.3.4.4)

(5) height (6.1.3.4.5)

(6) clearance (6.1.3.4.6 or 6.2.3.4.5)

(7) the person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that the handrail speed does not change when a retarding force, up to the maximum required by the Code, is applied opposite to the direction of travel (6.1.3.4.1 or 6.2.3.4.1)

The written checkout procedure shall be left on-site as part of the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(d)(7)].

(d) Entrance and Egress (Items 7.4 and 9.4)

(1) headroom (6.1.3.12 or 6.2.3.15)

(2) egress and safety zone (6.1.3.6.4, 6.2.3.8.4, and 6.2.6.3.6)

(3) combplates [6.1.3.6.1(a) or 6.2.3.8.1(a)]

(e) Lighting (6.1.7.2 or 6.2.7.2) (Items 7.5 and 9.5)

(f) Caution Signs (6.1.6.9 or 6.2.6.9) (Items 7.6 and 9.6)

(g) Combplates (6.1.3.6 and 6.2.3.8.1) (Items 7.7 and 9.7)

(1) design

(2) adjustment

(3) replacement

(h) Deck Barricade (Items 7.8 and 9.8)

(1) antislid devices (6.1.3.3.10)

(2) deck barricades (6.1.3.3.11 or 6.2.3.3.8)

(i) Steps, Step Upthrust Device, and Treadway (Items 7.9 and 9.9)

(1) steps

(-a) material and type (6.1.3.5.1)

(-b) dimensions (6.1.3.5.2)

(-c) clearance between steps (6.1.3.5.4)

(-d) slotting of treads (6.1.3.5.5)

(-e) slotting of risers (6.1.3.5.3)

(-f) design load (6.1.3.9.4)

(-g) flat steps (6.1.3.6.5)

(-h) step upthrust device (6.1.6.3.9)

(2) treadways

(-a) belt type (6.2.3.6)

(-b) pallet type (6.2.3.5)

(j) Operating and Safety Devices (Items 7.10 and 9.10)

(1) starting switches (6.1.6.2 or 6.2.6.2)

(2) emergency stop buttons (6.1.6.3.1 or 6.2.6.3.1)

(3) automatic start and stopping (6.1.6.1.1 or 6.2.6.1.1)

(4) *Tandem Operation* (6.1.6.6 or 6.2.6.6). When interlocked tandem operation is required, verify that an escalator or moving walk carrying passengers to an intermediate landing will stop when the escalator or moving walk carrying passengers away from that landing stops. Also, verify that the units are interlocked to run in the same direction.

(k) Handrail Entry Device (6.1.6.3.12 or 6.2.6.3.10) (Items 8.13 and 10.13)

(l) Egress Restriction Device (6.1.6.3.7 or 6.2.6.3.6) (Items 7.13 and 9.13)

(m) *Speed* (Items 7.14 and 9.14). The rated speed shall be tested to determine conformance with 6.1.4.1 for escalators and 6.2.4 for moving walks.

(n) Balustrades (Items 7.15 and 9.15)

(1) construction (6.1.3.3.1 or 6.2.3.3.1)

(2) glass or plastic (6.1.3.3.3 or 6.2.3.3.3)

(3) change in width [6.1.3.3.1(c) or 6.2.3.3.1(c)]

(o) Ceiling Intersection Guards (6.1.3.3.11 or 6.2.3.3.7) (Items 7.16 and 9.16)

(p) Skirt Panels (Items 7.17 and 9.17)

(1) clearance between skirt and steps [6.1.3.3.5 or 6.2.3.3.5(a), and 6.2.3.3.6(a)]

(2) height above step [6.1.3.3.6(a) or 6.2.3.3.5(b), and 6.2.3.3.6(b)]

(3) deflection [6.1.3.3.6(b) or 6.2.3.3.6(c)]. The person or firm installing the equipment shall provide engineering test documentation [see 8.3(b)(7) and 8.3.15] to be left in the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(g)] to verify conformance with the deflection requirements of not more than 1.6 mm (0.0625 in.) under a force of 667 N (150 lb).

(4) smoothness [6.1.3.3.6(c) or 6.2.3.3.6(d)]

(5) *Clearance Between Step and Skirt (Loaded Gap)*

(-a) Loaded gap measurements shall be taken at intervals not exceeding 300 mm (12 in.) in the transition region (6.1.3.6.5) and before the steps are fully extended. These measurements shall be made independently on each side of the escalator.

(-b) The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) (6.1.3.3.5) by more than ± 11 N (2.5 lbf). The load shall be distributed over a round or square area no less than 1 940 mm² (3 in.²) and no more than 3 870 mm² (6 in.²).

(-c) For the loaded gap measurements, the center of the applied load shall be between 25 mm (1 in.) and 100 mm (4 in.) below the nose line of the steps. The center of the applied load shall be not more than 250 mm (10 in.) from the nose of the step. See Figure 8.6.8.15.19.

(q) Outdoor Protection (6.1.8.1, 6.1.8.2, and 6.1.8.3 or 6.2.8.1, 6.2.8.2, and 6.2.8.3) (Items 7.18 and 9.18)

(r) Escalator and Moving Walk Well Guards (Floor Opening Protection) (6.1.1 and 6.2.3.8.5) (Items 7.4 and 9.4)

(s) Verification of Documentation for Type Tests, Certification, and Markings

(1) escalator brake test (6.1.5.3.3) (Items 8.4 and 10.4)

(2) step and pallet fatigue test (6.1.3.5.7 or 6.2.3.5.4) (Items 7.9 and 9.9)

(t) Step/Skirt Performance Index

(1) The escalator skirt shall not be cleaned, lubricated, or otherwise modified in preparation for testing. The escalator instantaneous step/skirt index measurements [6.1.3.3.9(a)] shall be recorded at intervals no larger than 150 mm (6 in.) from each side of two distinct steps along the inclined portion of the escalator, where the steps are fully extended. Test steps shall be separated by a minimum of eight steps.

(2) A load of 110 N (25 lbf) shall be laterally applied from the step to the adjacent skirt panel. The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) by more than ± 11 N (± 2.5 lbf). The load shall be distributed over a round or square area no less than 1 940 mm² (3 in.²) and no more than 3 870 mm² (6 in.²).

(3) No vertical load exceeding 220 N (50 lbf) shall be applied to the test step and adjacent steps.

(4) The coefficient of friction shall be measured with the test specimen conforming to the requirements of 6.1.3.3.9(b) sliding in the direction of the step motion under a 110 N (25 lbf) normal force at the operating speed of the escalator and shall be measured with devices having sensitivity better than ± 2.2 N (± 0.5 lbf). The direction of step motion shall be the direction of normal operation. If the escalator is operated in both directions, the down direction shall be used for the test.

(5) For both the coefficient of friction measurement and the loaded gap measurements, the center of the applied load shall be between 25 mm (1 in.) and 100 mm (4 in.) below the nose line of the steps. The center

of the applied load shall be not more than 250 mm (10 in.) from the nose of the step. See Figure 8.6.8.15.19.

(6) Verify that the step/skirt performance index conforms to the requirements in 6.1.3.3.9 [Item 7.17.2(a)].

(u) *Inspection Control Devices.* Inspection control devices shall be tested and inspected to determine conformance with the requirements of 6.1.6.2.2 for escalators and 6.2.6.2.2 for moving walks (Items 8.17 and 10.16).

8.10.4.1.2 Internal Inspection and Tests

(22)

(a) *Machinery Space (Items 8.1 and 10.1)*

(1) access (6.1.7.3 or 6.2.7.3)

(2) lighting (6.1.7.1.1 or 6.2.7.1.1)

(3) receptacle (6.1.7.1.2 or 6.2.7.1.2) [NFPA 70 Section 620.21(B)]

(4) guards (6.1.7.3.4 or 6.2.7.3.4)

(5) Verify that the connection and restraints between the truss and the building structure comply with seismic risk zone requirements (Items 8.16 and 10.17).

(b) *Stop Switch.* The machinery space stop switches shall be tested for conformance with 6.1.6.3.5 or 6.2.6.3.5 (Items 8.2 and 10.2).

(c) *Controller and Wiring.* Controller and wiring shall be inspected (Items 8.3 and 10.3).

(1) wiring (6.1.7.4 or 6.2.7.4)

(2) *Control.* The person or firm installing the escalator or moving walk shall provide a manufacturer's written procedure and demonstrate compliance with redundancy and software checking of control and operating circuits (6.1.6.10 and 6.2.6.10). Where there are no test or check requirements, the written checklist shall state "No test or check required." The documentation shall state the reason no test or check is required.

The following shall be documented or demonstrated:

(-a) general (6.1.6.13 and 6.2.6.13)

(-b) redundancy and its checking (6.1.6.10.1, 6.1.6.10.2, 6.2.6.10.1, and 6.2.6.10.2)

(-c) static control (6.1.6.10.3 and 6.2.6.10.3), where applicable

(-d) electrically powered safety devices (6.1.6.11 and 6.2.6.11), where applicable

(-e) installation of capacitors or other devices to make electrical protective devices ineffective (6.1.6.12 and 6.2.6.12)

(-f) contactor and relays for use in critical operating circuits (6.1.6.15 and 6.2.6.15), where applicable

(d) *Drive Machine and Brake.* The drive machine and brakes shall be inspected and tested including a test of the brake torque and the dynamic braking systems, where provided (6.1.5.3 and 6.2.5.3) (Items 8.4 and 10.4).

(1) connection of machine and driveshaft (6.1.5.1 and 6.1.5.3.2 or 6.2.5.1 and 6.2.5.3.2)

(2) drive motor (6.1.5.2 or 6.2.5.2)

(3) brake type (6.1.5.3 or 6.2.5.3)

(-a) Verify that the brake torque complies with the value shown on the data plate or in the special instructions [see 6.1.5.3.1(d) for escalators and 6.2.5.3.1(d) for moving walks].

(-b) Minimum no load stopping distance for moving walks and escalators with variable-torque brakes.

(4) brake data plate [6.1.5.3.1(d)]

(5) main driveshaft brake (6.1.5.3.2)

(6) escalator brake certification (6.1.5.3.3)

(7) escalator/moving walk dynamic braking (6.1.5.3.4 and 6.2.5.3.3)

(8) The person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written procedure to demonstrate that whenever the driving machine brake is applied, the escalator braking distance monitor detects when the maximum and minimum stopping distance is not achieved and prevents the unit from restarting unless the device is manually reset.

(e) *Speed Governor*. The mechanical speed governor, if required, shall be tested by manually operating the trip mechanism. Check the tripping speed for compliance with 6.1.6.3.2 or 6.2.6.3.2. The means of adjustment shall be sealed and a tag indicating the date of the governor test, together with the name of the person or firm that performed the test, shall be attached to the governor in a permanent manner (6.1.6.3.2 and 6.2.6.3.2) (Items 8.5 and 10.5).

(f) *Broken Drive-Chain Device*. Operation of the broken drive-chain device, on the drive chain, shall be tested by manually operating the actuating mechanism (6.1.5.3.2, 6.1.6.3.4, 6.1.6.3.10, 6.2.5.3.2, 6.2.6.3.4, and 6.2.6.3.8) (Items 8.6 and 10.6).

(g) *Reversal Stop Switch*. The reversal stop switch (to prevent reversal when operating in the ascending direction) shall be tested by manually operating it to determine that it functions properly (6.1.6.3.8 or 6.2.6.3.7 and 6.2.6.3.8) (Items 8.7 and 10.7).

If the device cannot be manually operated, the person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate the device complies with 6.1.6.3.8 or 6.2.6.3.7.

The written checkout procedure shall be left on-site as part of the on-site documentation [see 8.6.1.2.2(d)(6)].

(h) *Broken Step-Chain or Treadway Device*. The broken or slack step chain or treadway device shall be inspected and tested by manual operation (6.1.6.3.3 and 6.2.6.3.3) (Items 8.8 and 10.8).

(i) *Step Upthrust Device*. The operation of the step upthrust device shall be tested by manually causing the device to operate (6.1.6.3.9) (Item 8.9).

(j) *Missing Step or Pallet Device*. The missing step or pallet device shall be tested by removing a step or pallet and verifying that the device will properly function (6.1.6.5 or 6.2.6.5) (Items 8.10 and 10.10).

(k) *Step or Pallet Level Device*. The step or pallet level device shall be tested by simulating an out-of-level step or pallet and verifying that the device functions properly (6.1.6.3.11 or 6.2.6.3.9) (Items 8.11 and 10.11).

(l) *Steps, Pallet, Step or Pallet Chain, and Trusses*. The steps, pallet, step or pallet chain, trusses, tracks, and supports shall be visually inspected. Verify that the tracking system will prevent displacement of the step and pallets if the chain breaks (Items 8.12 and 10.12).

(1) steps and pallets (6.1.3.5 and 6.2.3.5)

(2) trusses and tracks

(-a) trusses (6.1.3.7)

(-b) tracks (6.1.3.8)

(-c) welding (6.1.3.13)

(3) supports

(-a) slider bed [6.2.3.9(a)]

(-b) roller bed [6.2.3.9(b)]

(m) *Handrail Speed Monitor*. The handrails operating mechanism shall be visually inspected for condition (Items 8.13 and 10.13). The person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that the handrail speed monitor device (6.1.6.4 and 6.2.6.4) will activate an alarm without any intentional delay and the device will shut down the unit when a speed deviation of 15% or more is continuous within a 2 s to 6 s range. Verify that the handrail speed monitoring device requires a manual reset or the person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that the handrail speed monitoring device automatically resets only once in 24 hr of operation and then requires manual reset.

(n) *Disconnected Motor Safety Device*. Operation of the device shall be checked and verified that it is the manual reset type (6.1.6.3.10 or 6.2.6.3.8) (Item 8.6 or Item 10.6).

(o) *Heaters*. For outdoor escalators and moving walks that require heaters, test the heaters for condition and operation (6.1.8.2 and 6.2.8.2) (Items 8.3 and 10.3).

(p) *Code Data Plate* (Section 8.9) (Items 8.14 and 10.14)

(q) *Comb-Step or Comb-Pallet Impact Device*. The comb-step or comb-pallet impact devices shall be tested in both the vertical and horizontal directions by placing a vertical and horizontal force on the comb step or comb pallet to cause operation of the device. The vertical and horizontal tests shall be independent of each other. The horizontal force shall be applied at the front edge center and both sides in the direction of travel. The vertical force shall be applied at the front edge center. Both the vertical and horizontal forces required to operate the device shall be recorded (6.1.6.3.13 and 6.2.6.3.11) (Items 7.7 and 9.7).

(r) Where a step lateral displacement device is required, it shall be tested for conformance with 6.1.6.3.14.

(s) Operating and safety devices shall be tested and inspected to determine conformance with 6.1.6 for escalators and 6.2.6 for moving walks.

(t) *Skirt Obstruction Devices (Item 7.11)*. The skirt obstruction devices shall be tested for conformance with 6.1.5.3.1 and 6.1.6.3.6.

(u) Inspection control devices shall be tested and inspected to determine conformance with the requirements of 6.1.6.2.2 for escalators and 6.2.6.2.2 for moving walks.

(v) *Response to Smoke Detectors (Items 8.15 and 10.15)*. Where provided, smoke detector shutdown shall be tested for conformance with 6.1.6.8 and 6.2.6.7.

(w) Verify that the balustrades are installed as shown on the manufacturer's drawing for seismic requirements [Item 7.20.3(a)].

(x) Verify the installation, location, and function of the seismic detection device [Items 7.20.3(a), 9.20.3(b), and 9.20.3(c)].

8.10.4.2 Inspection and Test Requirements for Altered Installations. Altered installations shall be inspected as specified in 8.10.4.2.1. Altered installations shall be tested as specified in 8.10.4.2.2 before being placed back in service.

- (22) **8.10.4.2.1** Alterations shall be inspected for compliance with the applicable requirements specified in Section 8.7.

Check Code Data Plate for compliance with 8.7.1.8.

8.10.4.2.2 Tests shall be performed when the following alterations are made:

(a) Where alterations involve a change in the angle of inclination or geometry of balustrades, they shall be inspected for conformance with 8.7.6.1.5 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.5 for moving walks and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(b), 8.10.4.1.1(m), and 8.10.4.1.1(n) (Items 7.2 and 7.15, or 9.2 and 9.15).

(b) Where the handrails have been altered, they shall be inspected for conformance with 8.7.6.1.6 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.6 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(c)(1) and 8.10.4.1.1(m) (Items 7.3 and 8.13, or 9.3 and 10.13).

(c) Where the step system or treadway system has been altered, it shall be inspected for conformance with 8.7.6.1.7 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.7 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(g), 8.10.4.1.1(i)(2), 8.10.4.1.1(p), 8.10.4.1.2(h) through 8.10.4.1.2(l), and 8.10.4.1.2(r) (Items 7.9 and 8.12, or 9.9 and 10.12).

(d) Where alterations involve the trusses, girders, or supporting structures, they shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.9 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.9 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.2(l) (Item 8.12 or Item 10.12).

(e) Where the step wheel tracks or track system is altered, they shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.10 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.10 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.2(l) (Items 7.9 and 8.13, or 9.9 and 10.12).

(f) Where alterations involve changes in the rated load and/or speed, they shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1 and 8.10.4.1.2 (Items 7.1 through 8.15 and 9.1 through 10.15).

(g) Where the driving-machine motor or brake is altered, it shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.12 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.12 for moving walks and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(m), 8.10.4.1.1(s), 8.10.4.1.2(d), and 8.10.4.1.2(n) (Items 7.14, 8.4, 8.6, 9.14, 10.4, and 10.6).

(h) Where the operating, safety, or electrical protective devices are altered or added, they shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.13 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.13 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(j), 8.10.4.1.1(k), 8.10.4.1.1(m), 8.10.4.1.2(c), 8.10.4.1.2(e) through 8.10.4.1.2(k), 8.10.4.1.2(m), 8.10.4.1.2(q), and 8.10.4.1.2(r) (Items 7.7, 7.9 through 7.13, 8.2, 8.5, 8.7 through 8.11, 8.13, and 8.14 or 9.7, 9.10, 9.12, 9.13, 10.2, 10.5 through 10.8, 10.10, 10.11, 10.13, and 10.15).

(i) When an alteration consists of the alteration of a controller, it shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.16 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.15 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(j), 8.10.4.1.1(k), 8.10.4.1.1(m), 8.10.4.1.2(a) through 8.10.4.1.2(k), 8.10.4.1.2(m), 8.10.4.1.2(n), and 8.10.4.1.2(q) through 8.10.4.1.2(t). All required (8.6.1.1.2) operating and safety devices in 6.1.6 or 6.2.6 shall be tested.

(j) Where a speed variation feature has been added to an escalator per 8.7.6.1.18 or to a moving walk per 8.7.6.2.17, it shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 6.1.4.1.2 or 6.2.4.1.2, respectively.

(k) Where skirt panels or their supports have been altered and the unit was installed or altered under A17.1a-1982 or a later edition, skirt panel deflection shall be verified as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(p)(3).

(l) Where alterations involve the combplate, it shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.8 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.8 for moving walks and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(d)(3), 8.10.4.1.1(g), and 8.10.4.1.2(q).

(m) Where alterations involve the lighting, access, and electrical work, it shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.14 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.14 for moving walks and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.2(a)(1) through 8.10.4.1.2(a)(4).

(n) Where alterations involve the entrance and egress, they shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.15 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.18 for moving walks and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(d) and 8.10.4.1.1(l).

(o) Where alterations involve the variable-frequency drive motor control, it shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.17 for escalators and

8.7.6.2.16 for moving walks and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(m).

8.10.5 Acceptance Inspection and Tests of Other Equipment

8.10.5.1 Sidewalk Elevator. Sidewalk elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Section 5.5. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.2 Private Residence Elevators. Private residence elevators shall be subject to acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Sections 5.3 and 5.4. Any additional requirements for this equipment should also be checked during these inspections and tests.

Before an inclined elevator is put into service, a test of the car safety shall be made with rated load in the car. Governor operation of instantaneous-type safeties shall be tested at rated speed by manually tripping the governor. Where speed governors are located on the car or chassis, testing shall be performed by obtaining sufficient slack rope to cause the safety to function.

8.10.5.3 Hand Elevators. Hand elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 and 8.10.2.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Section 4.3. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

The driving-machine brake required by 4.3.19.2 shall be tested with both the car empty and the rated load in the car.

8.10.5.4 Dumbwaiters. Dumbwaiters shall be subject to acceptance inspection and testing in conformance with Sections 7.1 through 7.3. Items to be inspected shall be as specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3 unless not required in Sections 7.1 through 7.3. Inspections of dumbwaiters shall take place from outside the hoistway. Inspection from the car top of dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices shall be permitted only when top-of-car operating devices and car safeties are provided and the dumbwaiter has a rated load sufficient for the inspector and any tools and adequate horizontal and vertical clearance.

8.10.5.5 Material Lifts and Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices. Material lifts shall be subject to acceptance inspection and testing in conformance with Sections 7.4 through 7.10. Items to be inspected shall be as specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3 unless not required in Sections 7.4 through 7.10. Inspections of material lifts shall take place from outside the hoistway and

(a) from within the machine room where a machine room is provided in conformance with Section 2.7.

(b) from within the pit where a pit is provided in conformance with Section 2.2 or devices required in 7.4.6.1.3 or 7.4.6.2.1 are provided.

(c) from the car top where top runby space conforming to Section 2.4, 7.4.6.1, or 7.4.6.2; top-of-car operating device conforming to 2.26.1.4; and car safeties conforming to Section 2.17 or 7.5.4 are provided. Alterations shall be inspected for compliance with the applicable requirements specified in 8.7.7.3.

Inspection from the car top of material lifts with automatic transfer devices shall only be permitted when top-of-car operating devices and car safeties are provided and the material lift has a rated load sufficient for the inspector and any tools and adequate horizontal and vertical clearance.

Inspection from the car top of a dumbwaiter with an automatic transfer device is only permitted when top-of-car operating devices and car safeties conforming to 7.2.12.4 are provided.

8.10.5.6 Special Purpose Personnel Elevators. Special purpose personnel elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Section 5.7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.7 Inclined Elevators. Inclined elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Section 5.1. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.8 Marine Elevators. Marine elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of Section 5.8. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.9 Screw-Column Elevators. Screw-column elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of Section 4.2. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.10 Elevators Used for Construction. Elevators used for construction shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding test requirements of [Section 5.10](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.11 Rooftop Elevators. Rooftop elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in [8.10.1](#) through [8.10.3](#).

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 5.6](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.12 Rack-and-Pinion Elevators. Rack-and-pinion elevators shall be subject to the acceptance inspections and tests specified in [8.10.1](#) through [8.10.3](#). The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 4.1](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.13 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators. Limited-use/limited-applications elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in [8.10.1](#) through [8.10.3](#).

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 5.2](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.14 Wind Turbine Tower Elevators. Wind turbine tower elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in [8.10.1](#) and [8.10.2](#) and the applicable requirements of [8.10.5](#).

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 5.11](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.14.1 Wire Rope Gripping Safeties

(a) Wire rope gripping safeties with an internal centrifugal governor shall be tested by obtaining the necessary slack rope to cause it to function and hold the car with rated load (Item 2.29.3).

(b) Wire rope gripping safeties with an internal centrifugal governor, which are operated as a result of overspeed of the car, shall be subjected to an overspeed test with the suspension rope(s) attached by gradually increasing the speed of the car until the governor causes application of the safety (Item 2.29.3).

8.10.5.14.2 Test the overload detection means for conformance with [Section 5.11](#) by adding load until the means trips. The car shall not be permitted to electrically operate in either direction.

8.10.5.15 Outside Emergency Elevators. Outside emergency elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in [8.10.1](#) and ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 requirement 2.12.3.

8.10.5.16 Mine Elevators. Mine elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in [8.10.1](#) and [8.10.2](#). The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in [Section 5.9](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

SECTION 8.11 PERIODIC INSPECTIONS AND WITNESSING OF TESTS

[Section 8.11](#) covers periodic inspections and tests of existing installations.

NOTES:

- (1) Compliance with certain requirements is verifiable through review of design documents, engineering, or type tests.
- (2) See [“General” in Preface](#) for assignment of responsibilities.

8.11.1 General Requirements for Periodic Inspections and Witnessing of Tests

8.11.1.1 Persons Authorized to Make Periodic Inspections and Witness Tests. The inspector shall meet the qualification requirements of ASME QE1-1. Inspectors and inspection supervisors shall be certified by an independent, accredited, certifying organization as specified in [8.10.1.2](#) (see [Section 1.3](#)).

8.11.1.1.1 Periodic Inspections

(a) Periodic inspections shall be made by an inspector employed by the authority having jurisdiction or by a person authorized by the authority having jurisdiction.

(b) The inspector shall submit a signed written report to the authority having jurisdiction containing the following information:

- (1) date of inspection(s)
- (2) components or systems that have not been inspected
- (3) Code deficiencies noted during the inspection and a statement as to corrective action taken, if any

8.11.1.1.2 Periodic Tests

(a) Periodic tests as required in [Section 8.6](#) shall be performed by elevator personnel that are qualified to perform such tests. These tests shall be witnessed by an inspector (see [8.11.1.1](#)) employed by the authority having jurisdiction or by persons authorized by the authority having jurisdiction.

(b) The inspector shall submit a signed written report to the authority having jurisdiction containing the following information:

- (1) date of inspection(s)
- (2) type of test(s) performed
- (3) detailed results of the test(s) including, but not limited to, speed, governor trip speed, safety slide distance, relief-valve setting, escalator/moving walk brake torque setting, etc.
- (4) Code deficiencies noted during the test
- (5) statement as to any corrective action taken

8.11.1.2 Applicability of Inspection Requirements.

Inspections required by 8.11.2 through 8.11.5 are to determine that the existing equipment conforms to the following applicable Code requirements:

- (a) the Code at the time of installation
- (b) the Code effective as applicable to and for each alteration
- (c) the ASME A17.3 Code, if adopted by the authority having jurisdiction

NOTES (8.11.1.2):

- (1) ASME A17.2 (see “ASME Elevator Publications” in Preface), covers recommended inspection and testing procedures.
- (2) References to “Items” of ASME A17.2 and to the requirements of this Code are indicated in parentheses as a convenient reference to the applicable inspection procedures and requirements. See Preface and Scope in ASME A17.2 for additional information.

8.11.1.3 Periodic Inspection and Test Frequency. The frequency of periodic inspections and tests shall be established by the authority having jurisdiction.

NOTE: Recommended intervals for periodic inspections and tests can be found in [Nonmandatory Appendix N](#).

8.11.1.4 Installation Placed Out of Service. Periodic inspections and tests shall not be required when an installation is placed “out of service”

- (a) as defined by the authority having jurisdiction
- (b) when an installation whose power feed lines have been disconnected from the main line disconnect switch and, as applicable

- (1) an electric elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift whose suspension ropes have been removed, whose car and counterweight rest at the bottom of the hoistway, and whose hoistway doors have been permanently barricaded or sealed in the closed position on the hoistway side

- (2) a hydraulic elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift whose car rests at the bottom of the hoistway; when provided with suspension ropes and counterweight, the suspension ropes have been removed and the counterweight rests at the bottom of the hoistway; whose pressure piping has been disassembled and a section removed from the premises and whose hoistway doors are permanently barricaded or sealed in the closed position on the hoistway side

- (3) an escalator or moving walk whose entrances have been permanently barricaded

8.11.1.5 Making Safety Devices Ineffective. No person shall at any time make any required safety device or electrical protective device ineffective, except where necessary during tests and inspections. Such devices shall be restored to their normal operating condition in conformance with the applicable requirements prior to returning the equipment to service (see [2.26.7](#)).

8.11.1.6 Reserved for Future Use

8.11.1.7 Unique or Product-Specific Procedures or Methods. Where unique or product-specific procedures or methods are required to maintain, repair, replace, inspect, or test equipment, such procedures or methods shall be provided by the manufacturer or installer. These procedures and any unique devices required by the procedures for inspection and testing shall be accessible on-site to elevator personnel [see also [8.6.1.2.2\(b\)](#) and [8.6.1.2.2\(c\)](#)].

8.11.1.8 Maintenance Control Program. The Maintenance Control Program complying with [8.6.1.2.1](#) shall be available. On-site equipment documentation complying with [8.6.1.2.2](#) and maintenance records complying with [8.6.1.4](#) shall be available.

8.11.1.9 Devices Not Covered in Section 8.11. When any device on which the safety of users is dependent is installed that is not specifically covered in [Section 8.11](#), it shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the requirements of the manufacturer’s or the altering company’s procedures (see [8.6.1.6.1](#) and [8.7.1.2](#)). Documentation that contains the testing procedures of these devices shall remain with the equipment and be available in the on-site documentation (see [8.6.1.2.2](#)). The removal or disabling of such devices shall be considered an alteration and shall comply with [8.7.1.2](#).

8.11.2 Periodic Inspection of Electric Elevators

All references to “Items” are to Items in ASME A17.2.

8.11.2.1 Periodic Inspection Requirements. Inspectors shall include the following when identifying components or systems, or both, that shall be inspected.

NOTES:

- (1) For inspection frequency, see [8.11.1.3](#).
- (2) QEI-certified inspectors and inspector supervisors have the knowledge and experience to recognize potential Code deficiencies and to focus their inspections where necessary.

8.11.2.1.1 Inside the Car

(22)

- (a) Door Reopening Device (Item 1.1)
- (b) Stop Switches (Item 1.2)
- (c) Operating Control Devices (Item 1.3)
- (d) Car Floor and Landing Sill (Item 1.4)
- (e) Car Lighting (Item 1.5)
- (f) Car Emergency Signal (Item 1.6)

- (g) Car Door or Gate (Item 1.7)
- (h) Door Closing Force (Item 1.8)
- (i) Power Closing of Doors or Gates (Item 1.9)
- (j) Power Opening of Doors or Gates (Item 1.10)
- (k) Car Vision Panels and Glass Car Doors (Item 1.11)
- (l) Car Enclosure (Item 1.12)
- (m) Emergency Exit (Item 1.13)
- (n) Ventilation (Item 1.14)
- (o) Signs and Operating Device Symbols (Item 1.15)
- (p) Rated Load, Platform Area, and Data Plate (Item 1.16)
- (q) Emergency or Standby Power Operation (Item 1.17)
- (r) Means to Restrict Hoistway or Car Doors Opening and Expiration Date for the Auxiliary Power Supply (2.14.5.7) (Item 1.18)
- (s) Car Ride (Item 1.19)
- (t) Door Monitoring Systems (2.26.5)
- (u) Stopping Accuracy (2.26.11)
- (v) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.2.1.2)
- (w) Working Areas in the Car (2.7.5.1 and Section 3.7)
 - (1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)
 - (2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)
 - (3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)
 - (4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)
- (x) Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device (2.26.2.35 and 3.26.1)
- (y) Earthquake Inspections and Tests (Item 1.20)

(22) 8.11.2.1.2 Machine Rooms, Machinery Spaces, and Control Rooms/Spaces

- (a) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6).
- (b) Means of Access (Item 2.1).
- (c) Headroom (Item 2.2).
- (d) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4).
- (e) Inspection and Test Panel (2.7.6.5).
- (f) Lighting and Receptacles (Item 2.3).
- (g) Enclosure of Machine Room, Machinery Spaces, and Control Room/Spaces (Item 2.4).
- (h) Housekeeping (Item 2.5).
- (i) Ventilation (Item 2.6).
- (j) Fire Extinguisher (Item 2.7).
- (k) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (Item 2.8).
- (l) Guarding of Equipment (Item 2.9).
- (m) Numbering of Elevators, Machines, and Disconnect Switches (Item 2.10).
- (n) Maintenance Path and Maintenance Clearance (2.7.2).
- (o) Stop Switch (2.7.3.5 and 2.26.2.24).
- (p) Disconnecting Means and Control (Item 2.11).
- (q) Controller Wiring, Fuses, Grounding, etc. (Item 2.12).
- (r) Static Control (Item 2.15).

- (s) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (Item 2.16).
- (t) Driving-Machine Brake (Item 2.17).
- (u) Traction-Drive Machines (Item 2.18).
- (v) Gears, Bearings, and Flexible Connections (Item 2.19).
- (w) Winding-Drum Machine (Item 2.20).
- (x) Belt- or Chain-Drive Machine (Item 2.21).
- (y) Motor Generator (Item 2.22).
- (z) Absorption of Regenerated Power (Item 2.23).
- (aa) Traction Sheaves (Item 2.25).
- (bb) Secondary and Deflector Sheaves (Item 2.26).
- (cc) Rope Fastenings (Item 2.27).
- (dd) Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 2.28).
- (ee) Operating Devices.
- (ff) Governor, Overspeed Switch, and Seal (Item 2.13).
- (gg) Car and Counterweight Safeties (Item 2.29).
- (hh) Code Data Plate (8.6.1.3) (Item 2.14).
- (ii) Emergency Brake (2.19.3).
- (jj) AC Drives From a DC Source (Item 2.24).
- (kk) Slack-Rope Devices (Item 2.20).
- (ll) Wiring Diagrams [8.6.1.2.2(a)].
- (mm) Rope Retainers or Restraints for Seismic Risk Zones (Item 2.42).
- (nn) Seismic and Counterweight Displacement Detection Devices (Item 2.42).
- (oo) The USI of the installed software matches the on-site documentation. See 2.26.1.7.1 and 8.6.1.2.2(f).
- (pp) Check for installation of capacitors or other devices or means (2.26.7 and 3.26.1). Check Inspection Operation with door open circuits (Item 2.45). Where a means is permanently installed [see 2.26.7(f)] to render an electrical protective device ineffective, verify the test enable device is properly marked [see 2.26.14.1.1(c) and 2.26.14.1.1(d)] and the indicator at the inspection station(s) illuminate [see 2.26.14.1.1(h)]. From the on-site documentation (see 8.6.1.2.2) verify compliance with 2.26.14.1 and 2.26.14.3 through 2.26.14.6.
- (qq) Verify conformance with 2.26.13. See also 8.6.1.2.2(d)(4).
- (rr) Verify conformance with 8.14.1. See also 8.6.1.2.2(g).

8.11.2.1.3 Top of Car

- (a) Top-of-Car Stop Switch (Item 3.1).
- (b) Car Top Light and Outlet (Item 3.2).
- (c) Top-of-Car Operating Device and Working Platforms (Item 3.3).
- (d) Top-of-Car Clearance and Refuge Space (Item 3.4).
- (e) Top Counterweight Clearance (Item 3.24).
- (f) Car, Overhead, and Deflector Sheaves (Item 3.25).
- (g) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 3.5).
- (h) Final Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 3.6).
- (i) Broken Rope, Chain, or Tape Switch (Item 3.26).
- (j) Car-Leveling Devices (Item 3.7).
- (k) Crosshead Data Plate (Item 3.27).

- (l) Top Emergency Exit [Items 3.8 and 3.34.1(i)].
- (m) Counterweight and Counterweight Buffer (Item 3.28).
- (n) Counterweight Safeties (Item 3.29).
- (o) Floor and Emergency Identification Numbering (Item 3.9).
- (p) Hoistway Construction (Item 3.10).
- (q) Hoistway Smoke Control (Item 3.11).
- (r) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (Item 3.12).
- (s) Windows, Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks (Item 3.13).
- (t) Hoistway Clearance [Items 3.14, 3.34.1(a), and 3.34.1(f)].
- (u) Multiple Hoistways (Item 3.15).
- (v) Traveling Cables and Junction Boxes (Item 3.16).
- (w) Door and Gate Equipment (Item 3.17).
- (x) Car Frame and Stiles (Item 3.18).
- (y) Guide Rails Fastening and Equipment (Item 3.19).
- (z) Governor Rope (Item 3.20). Governor ropes shall be inspected and replaced as specified in ASME A17.6, Part 1.
- (aa) Governor Releasing Carrier (Item 3.21).
- (bb) Fastenings and Hitch Plate (Item 3.22).
- (cc) Suspension means (Item 3.23) shall be inspected and replaced as specified in ASME A17.6.
- (dd) Compensation Means (Item 3.33).
- (ee) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.2.1.2).
- (ff) Working Areas on the Car Top (2.7.5.1)
 - (1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)
 - (2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)
 - (3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)
 - (4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)
- (gg) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6).
- (hh) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3).
- (ii) Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment (2.10.1).
- (jj) Anchoring of beams and supports in seismic risk zone 2 or greater [Item 3.34.1(b)].
- (kk) Rope retainers and snag guards in seismic risk zone 2 or greater [Items 3.34.1(c) and 3.34.1(d)].
- (ll) Position restraints in seismic risk zone 2 or greater [Item 3.34.1(e) and 3.34.1(g)].
- (mm) Car and counterweight guide-rail system in seismic risk zone 2 or greater [Item 3.34.1(h)].
- (nn) For seismic risk zone 2 or greater, horizontal clearance for car and counterweight, snag-point clearance, and rail fastening.
- (oo) Seismic risk zone 2 or greater rope retainers/restraints and snag guards (Item 5.16.1).
- (pp) Seismic risk zone 2 or greater rope retainer and snag guard for compensating ropes or chains and compensating tension sheave fastening.
- (qq) Sheaves with nonmetallic groove surfaces (see 8.6.4.18) (Item 3.25).

8.11.2.1.4 Outside Hoistway

(22)

- (a) Car Platform Guard (Item 4.1)
- (b) Hoistway Doors (Item 4.2)
- (c) Vision Panels (Item 4.3)
- (d) Hoistway Door Locking Devices (Item 4.4)
- (e) Access to Hoistway (Item 4.5)
- (f) Power Closing of Hoistway Doors (Item 4.6)
- (g) Sequence Operation (Item 4.7)
- (h) Hoistway Enclosure (Item 4.8)
- (i) Elevator Parking Devices (Item 4.9)
- (j) Emergency and Access Hoistway Openings (Item 4.10)
- (k) Separate Counterweight Hoistway (Item 4.11)
- (l) Emergency or Standby Power Selection Switch (Item 4.12)
- (m) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4)
- (n) Inspection and Test Panel (2.7.6.5), Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.1), and Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits (2.26.1.5)
- (o) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)
- (p) Motor Controllers Not Installed in a Machine Room, Control Room, Control Space, or Machinery Space (Item 11.23)
 - (1) cabinet enclosure
 - (2) AGP marking
 - (3) cabinet doors and security
 - (4) lighting
 - (5) temperature and humidity control
 - (6) signage

8.11.2.1.5 Pit

- (a) Pit Access, Lighting, Stop Switch, and Condition (Item 5.1)
- (b) Bottom Clearance and Runby (Item 5.2)
- (c) Car and Counterweight Buffer (Item 5.9)
- (d) Final Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 5.3)
- (e) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 5.4)
- (f) Traveling Cables (Item 5.5)
- (g) Governor-Rope Tension Devices (Item 5.6)
- (h) Compensating Chains, Ropes, and Sheaves (Item 5.10)
- (i) Car Frame and Platform (Item 5.7)
- (j) Car Safeties and Guiding Members (Item 5.8)
- (k) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.2.1.2)
- (l) Working Areas in the Pit (2.7.5.2)
 - (1) means to prevent unexpected movement [2.7.5.2.1(a) or 2.7.5.2.1(b)]
 - (2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)
 - (3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)
 - (4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)
- (m) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)
- (n) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)
- (o) Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment (2.10.1)

(p) Pit Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)

8.11.2.1.6 Firefighters' Emergency. Items 6.3 through 6.5, as applicable.

8.11.2.1.7 Working Platforms

- (a) Working Platforms (2.7.5.3 and 2.7.5.4)
 - operating instructions (8.6.11.9)
- (b) Retractable Stops (2.7.5.5)
 - retractable stop electrical device (2.26.2.37)
- (c) Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)

8.11.2.1.8 Braking System. For passenger elevators and all freight elevators, verify that the seal on the means of adjusting the holding capacity of the driving-machine brake has not been broken and that it bears or otherwise attaches the identification of the person or firm that installed it (see 8.6.4.20.4).

8.11.3 Periodic Inspection of Hydraulic Elevators

All references to “Items” are to Items in ASME A17.2, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks.

8.11.3.1 Periodic Inspection Requirements. Inspectors shall include the following when identifying components or systems, or both, that shall be inspected.

NOTES:

- (1) For inspection frequency, see 8.11.1.3.
- (2) QEI-certified inspectors and inspector supervisors have the knowledge and experience to recognize potential Code deficiencies and to focus their inspections where necessary.

(22) 8.11.3.1.1 Inside the Car

- (a) Door Reopening Device (Item 1.1)
- (b) Stop Switches (Item 1.2)
- (c) Operating Control Devices (Item 1.3)
- (d) Sill and Car Floor (Item 1.4)
- (e) Car Lighting and Receptacles (Item 1.5)
- (f) Car Emergency Signal (Item 1.6)
- (g) Car Door or Gate (Item 1.7)
- (h) Door Closing Force (Item 1.8)
- (i) Power Closing of Doors or Gates (Item 1.9)
- (j) Power Opening of Doors or Gates (Item 1.10)
- (k) Car Vision Panels and Glass Car Doors (Item 1.11)
- (l) Car Enclosure (Item 1.12)
- (m) Emergency Exit (Items 1.13 and 1.20)
- (n) Ventilation (Item 1.14)
- (o) Signs and Operating Device Symbols (Item 1.15)
- (p) Rated Load, Platform Area, and Data Plate (Item 1.16)
- (q) Emergency or Standby Power Operation (Item 1.17)
- (r) Restricted Opening of Car or Hoistway Doors (Item 1.18)
- (s) Car Ride (Item 1.19)
- (t) Door Monitoring System

(u) Stopping Accuracy

(v) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.3.1.2)

(w) Working Areas in the Car (2.7.5.1 and Section 3.7)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)

(2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)

(x) Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device (2.26.2.35 and 3.26.1)

8.11.3.1.2 Machine Rooms, Machinery Spaces, and Control Rooms/Spaces (22)

- (a) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)
- (b) Means of Access (Item 2.1)
- (c) Headroom (Item 2.2)
- (d) Means Necessary for Tests (3.7.1)
- (e) Inspection and Test Panel (3.7.1)
- (f) Lighting and Receptacles (Item 2.3)
- (g) Enclosure of Machine Rooms, Machinery Spaces, and Control Room/Spaces (Item 2.4)
- (h) Housekeeping (Item 2.5)
- (i) Ventilation and Heating (Item 2.6)
- (j) Fire Extinguisher (Item 2.7)
- (k) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (Item 2.8)
- (l) Guarding of Equipment (Item 2.9)
- (m) Numbering of Elevators, Machines, and Disconnect Switches (Item 2.10)
- (n) Maintenance Path and Maintenance Clearance (3.7.1)
- (o) Stop Switch (3.7.1 and 3.26.1)
- (p) Disconnecting Means and Control (Item 2.11)
- (q) Controller Wiring, Fuses, Grounding, etc. (Item 2.12)
- (r) Hydraulic Power Unit (Items 2.30 and 2.42.1.2)
- (s) Relief Valves (Item 2.31)
- (t) Control Valve (Item 2.32)
- (u) Tanks (Item 2.33)
- (v) Flexible Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Assemblies (Item 2.34)
- (w) Supply Line and Shutoff Valve (Item 2.35)
- (x) Hydraulic Cylinders and Hydraulic Fluid Loss Record (8.6.5.7) (Item 2.36)
- (y) Pressure Switch (Item 2.37)
- (z) Recycling Operation [8.10.3.2.2(u)]
- (aa) Code Data Plate (8.6.1.3) (Item 2.14)
- (bb) Governor, Overspeed Switch, and Seal (Item 2.13)
- (cc) Wiring Diagrams [8.6.1.2.2(a)]
- (dd) The USI of the installed software matches the on-site documentation. See 3.26.11 and 8.6.1.2.2(f).
- (ee) Check for installation of capacitors or other devices or means (2.26.7 and 3.26.1). Check Inspection Operation with door open circuits (Item 2.45). Where a means is permanently installed [see 2.26.7(f)] to

render an electrical protective device ineffective, verify the test enable device is properly marked [see 2.26.14.1.1(c) and 2.26.14.1.1(d)] and the indicator at the inspection station(s) illuminate. From the on-site documentation (see 8.6.1.2.2) verify compliance with 2.26.14.1 and 2.26.14.3 through 2.26.14.6.

(ff) Verify conformance with 3.26.12. See also 8.6.1.2.2(d)(4).

(gg) Verify conformance with 8.14.1. See also 8.6.1.2.2(g).

8.11.3.1.3 Top of Car

- (a) Top-of-Car Stop Switch (Item 3.1)
- (b) Car Top Light and Outlet (Item 3.2)
- (c) Top-of-Car Operating Device (Item 3.3)
- (d) Top-of-Car Clearance and Refuge Space (Item 3.4)
- (e) Normal Terminal Stopping Device (Item 3.5)
- (f) Terminal Speed-Reducing Devices (Item 3.6)
- (g) Car-Leveling and Anticreep Devices (Item 3.7)
- (h) Speed Test (Item 3.30)
- (i) Top Emergency Exit (Item 3.8)
- (j) Floor and Emergency Identification Numbering (Item 3.9)
- (k) Hoistway Construction (Item 3.10)
- (l) Hoistway Smoke Control (Item 3.11)
- (m) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (Item 3.12)
- (n) Windows, Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks (Item 3.13)
- (o) Hoistway Clearances (Item 3.14)
- (p) Multiple Hoistways (Item 3.15)
- (q) Traveling Cables and Junction Boxes (Item 3.16)
- (r) Door and Gate Equipment (Item 3.17)
- (s) Car Frame and Stiles (Item 3.18)
- (t) Guide Rails Fastening and Equipment (Item 3.19)
- (u) Governor Rope (Item 3.20)
- (v) Governor Releasing Carrier (Item 3.21)
- (w) Wire Rope Fastening and Hitch Plate (Item 3.22)
- (x) Suspension Rope (Item 3.23)

NOTE: Suspension rope shall be inspected and replaced according to the criteria in 8.11.2.1.3(cc).

- (y) Slack-Rope Device (Item 3.31)
- (z) Traveling Sheave (Item 3.32)
- (aa) Counterweight and Counterweight Buffer (Item 3.28)
- (bb) Crosshead Data Plate (Item 3.27)
- (cc) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.3.1.2)
- (dd) Working Areas on the Car Top (3.7.1)
 - (1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)
 - (2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)
 - (3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)
 - (4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)
- (ee) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)

(ff) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)

(gg) Guarding of Equipment (2.10.1)

(hh) Broken Rope, Chain, or Tape Switch (Item 3.26)

8.11.3.1.4 Outside the Hoistway

(22)

- (a) Car Platform Guard (Item 4.1)
- (b) Hoistway Doors (Item 4.2)
- (c) Vision Panels (Item 4.3)
- (d) Hoistway Door Locking Device (Item 4.4)
- (e) Access to Hoistway (Item 4.5)
- (f) Power Closing of Hoistway Doors (Item 4.6)
- (g) Sequence Operation (Item 4.7)
- (h) Hoistway Enclosure (Item 4.8)
- (i) Elevator Parking Device (Item 4.9)
- (j) Emergency Doors in Blind Hoistways (Item 4.10)
- (k) Emergency or Standby Power Selection Switch (Item 4.12)
- (l) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4 and 3.7.1.8 through 3.7.1.10)
- (m) Inspection and Test Panel (2.7.6.5 and 3.7.1), Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.1), and Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits (2.26.1.5)
- (n) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)

8.11.3.1.5 Pit

(22)

- (a) Pit Access, Lighting, Stop Switch, and Condition (Item 5.1)
- (b) Bottom Clearance, Runby, and Minimum Refuge Space (Item 5.2)
- (c) Plunger and Cylinder (Item 5.11)
- (d) Car Buffer (Item 5.9)
- (e) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 5.4)
- (f) Traveling Cables (Item 5.5)
- (g) Car Frame and Platform (Item 5.7)
- (h) Car Safeties and Guiding Members (Item 5.8)
- (i) Supply Piping (Item 5.14)
- (j) Governor Rope Tension Device (Item 5.6)
- (k) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.3.1.2)
- (l) Working Areas in the Pit (2.7.5.2 and 3.7.1)
 - (1) means to prevent unexpected movement [2.7.5.2.1(a) or 2.7.5.2.1(b)]
 - (2) unexpected car movement device (2.26.2.34)
 - (3) operating instructions for unexpected car movement device (8.6.11.7)
 - (4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.11.8)
- (m) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)
- (n) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)
- (o) Guarding of Equipment (2.10.1)
- (p) Pit Inspection Operation (3.26.2)
- (q) For seismic risk zones, overspeed valve and pipe supports (Item 5.15.2.2)
- (r) Plunger Gripper (3.17.3) (Item 5.17)

8.11.3.1.6 Firefighters' Service. Items 6.1 through 6.5, as applicable.

8.11.3.1.7 Working Platforms

- (a) Working Platforms (2.7.5.3, 2.7.5.4, and 3.7.1)
 - operating instructions (8.6.11.9)
- (b) Retractable Stops (2.7.5.5 and 3.7.1)
 - retractable stop electrical device (2.26.2.37)
- (c) Inspection Operation (3.26.2)

8.11.4 Periodic Inspection of Escalators and Moving Walks

All references to “Items” are to Items in ASME A17.2, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks.

(22) 8.11.4.1 Periodic Inspection and Test Requirements.

Inspectors shall include the following when identifying components or systems, or both, that shall be inspected:

- (a) General Fire Protection (Items 7.1 and 9.1)
- (b) Geometry (Items 7.2 and 9.2)
- (c) Handrails (Items 7.3 and 9.3)
- (d) Entrance and Egress (Items 7.4 and 9.4)
- (e) Lighting (Items 7.5 and 9.5)
- (f) Caution Signs (Items 7.6 and 9.6)
- (g) Combplate (Items 7.7 and 9.7)
- (h) Deck Barricade Guard and Antislip Devices (Items 7.8 and 9.8)
- (i) Steps and Treadway (Items 7.9 and 9.9)
- (j) Operating Devices (Items 7.10 and 9.10)
- (k) Reserved for Future Use
- (l) Handrail Entry Device (Items 8.13 and 10.13)
- (m) Egress Restriction Device (Items 7.13 and 9.13)
- (n) Speed (Items 7.14 and 9.14)
- (o) Balustrades (Items 7.15 and 9.15)
- (p) Ceiling Intersection Guards (Items 7.16 and 9.16)
- (q) Skirt Panels (Items 7.17 and 9.17)
- (r) Outdoor Protection (Items 7.18 and 9.18)
- (s) Machinery Space Access, Lighting, Receptacle, and Condition (for remote machine rooms only) (Items 2.1 and 4.1)
- (t) Additional Stop Switch(es) (Items 2.2 and 4.2)
- (u) Controller and Wiring (Items 2.3 and 4.3)
- (v) Code Data Plate (2.23.2) (Items 8.14 and 10.14)
- (w) Escalator/Moving Walk Dynamic Braking (Items 8.4 and 10.4)

NOTES:

- (1) For inspection frequency, see 8.11.1.3.
- (2) QEI-certified inspectors and inspector supervisors have the knowledge and experience to recognize potential Code deficiencies and to focus their inspections where necessary.

8.11.5 Periodic Inspection of Other Equipment

For recommended inspection frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.11.5.1 Sidewalk Elevator. Sidewalk elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3. The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Section 5.5. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.2 Private Residence Elevators. Private residence elevators should be subject to the periodic inspections specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Sections 5.3 and 5.4. Any additional requirements for this equipment should also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.3 Hand Elevators. Hand elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in 8.11.2.

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Section 4.3. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.4 Dumbwaiters. Dumbwaiters shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Part 7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.5 Material Lifts and Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices. Material lifts and dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection requirement shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Part 7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.6 Special Purpose Personnel Elevators. Special purpose personnel elevators shall be subject to the applicable inspections specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Section 5.7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.7 Inclined Elevators. Inclined elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Section 5.1. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.8 Marine Elevators. Marine elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 5.8](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.9 Screw-Column Elevators. Screw-column elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in [8.11.2](#) and [8.11.3](#).

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 4.2](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.10 Rooftop Elevators. Rooftop elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in [8.11.2](#) and [8.11.3](#).

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 5.6](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.11 Rack-and-Pinion Elevators. Rack-and-pinion elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in [8.11.2](#) and [8.11.3](#).

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 4.1](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.12 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators. Limited-use/limited-applications elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in [8.11.2](#) and [8.11.3](#).

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 5.2](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.13 Elevators Used for Construction

8.11.5.13.1 Inspection Requirements. Inspections shall include the items specified in [8.11.2.1](#) for electric elevators and [8.11.3.1](#) for hydraulic elevators, except that the requirements of [Section 5.10](#) shall apply where they are different from those in [Part 2](#) and [Part 3](#).

8.11.5.14 Wind Turbine Tower Elevators. Wind turbine tower elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in [8.11.1](#) and [8.11.2](#) and the applicable requirements of [8.11.5](#).

The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of [Section 5.11](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

8.11.5.14.1 Wire rope gripping safeties shall be tested with rated load in the car. Tests for governor-operated safeties shall be made by manually tripping the governor at the rated speed. The overspeed switch on the governor shall be made ineffective during the test.

All other types of safeties shall be tested in accordance with [8.6.4.19.2](#) or [8.6.4.20.1](#).

8.11.5.14.2 Test the overload detection means for conformance with [Section 5.11](#) by adding load until the means trips and indication is observed. The car shall not be permitted to electrically operate in either direction.

8.11.5.15 Outside Emergency Elevators. Outside emergency elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in [8.11.1](#) and ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7, requirement 2.12.3.

8.11.5.16 Mine Elevators. Mine elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections specified in [8.11.2](#). The inspection requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in [Section 5.9](#). Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections.

SECTION 8.12 FLOOD RESISTANCES

8.12.1 Flood-Resistant Design and Construction (22)

Where required by the building code, elevators shall comply with ASCE/SEI 24.

NOTE: For Flood Detection Operation see [2.27.13](#) and [3.27.5](#).

SECTION 8.13 SIGNS, PLATES, AND TAGS

When referenced, [Section 8.13](#) covers the standard materials and properties for safety signs and permanent plates used on devices within the scope of this Code.

8.13.1 Permanent Plates

Data plates and capacity plates shall

(a) be made of metal or other durable materials designed to last the life of the equipment. Stick-on foil or paper labels shall not be permitted.

(b) be securely attached to prevent removal when subjected to a force of 65 N (15 lb). In addition, adhesive-attached plates shall conform to the requirements of UL 969 or CAN/CSA C22.2, whichever is applicable.

8.13.1.1 All lettering and figures required by Code shall either

(a) be engraved, etched, or cast such that the letters and figures shall remain permanently and readily legible

(b) conform to either of the following:

(1) the characters shall be raised or depressed from the plate surface face so as to remain legible even if painted over.

(2) be provided with a transparent covering that will protect the Code-required data. This covering shall prevent contaminants (such as paint, adhesives, oil, and grease) from permanently adhering to the data plate parent surface. The covering shall be durable enough to withstand the process of contaminant removal.

8.13.1.2 If the plates are exposed to weathering or a chemical atmosphere, then a durable means shall be provided to protect the information from deterioration while permitting the information to be readily read.

8.13.1.3 The use of writing instruments, stamping, and scratching to apply the lettering and figures shall not be permitted.

8.13.1.4 Data plates shall have letters or figures not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.) high.

8.13.2 Signs

The sign shall conform to the requirements of ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA C22.2-Z321, shall be made of a durable material, and shall be securely fastened.

8.13.3 Marking Plates and Tags

Marking plates and tags shall

(a) be made of metal or other durable materials designed to last the life of the equipment.

(b) be securely attached to prevent removal when subjected to a force of 65 N (15 lb). In addition, where used to attach plates or tags, adhesive shall conform to the requirements of UL 969 or CAN/CSA C22.2, whichever is applicable.

(c) permit the use of writing instruments, stamping, and scratching to apply the lettering and figures.

(d) be provided with preprinted permanent letters and figures on marking plates and tags with letters or figures not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.) high.

SECTION 8.14 CYBERSECURITY

8.14.1 Cybersecurity for Electric Elevators in Part 2 and Hydraulic Elevators in Part 3

Where an internet-connected or connectivity-enabled device is interfaced (directly or indirectly) to an elevator controller, or an elevator controller is connected (directly or indirectly) to the internet, all points of connectivity to the internet (physical ports, wireless ports, and conduits) for the device or elevator controller shall have security features. Security features shall comply with (a) and (b), unless the elevator's use, configuration, or environment requires that an increased level of cybersecurity protection be provided [see [Note](#)].

(a) Such devices or elevator controllers shall have cybersecurity protection that conforms to sound engineering practice and conform to requirements (1) through (3).

(1) have a listed/certified secure product development life cycle process conforming to the relevant requirements of IEC 62443-4-1

(2) be engineering tested to demonstrate compliance with the requirements of (-a) and (-b)

(-a) emergency communication systems shall be security level rated to a minimum of SLC-1, (see [2.7.8.4](#) and [2.27.1.1](#))

(-b) except for emergency communications systems, shall be security level rated to an SLC-2 or higher rating that conforms to the applicable requirements in IEC 62443-2-4, IEC 62443-3-3, IEC 62443-4-1, and IEC 62443-4-2, and conform to the foundational requirements of SR 1.1 RE 2 for multifactor authentication for untrusted users and networks specified in these Standards

NOTE [8.14.1(a)(1) and 8.14.1(a)(2)]: The cybersecurity requirements specified in 8.14.1(a)(1) are minimum requirements. Specialized buildings, structures, or use environments (e.g., government facilities, critical care facilities) may require that the application of the facility be considered to determine if higher levels of cybersecurity or complete isolation from the internet are required. For example, protection against cyber threats that could result in a denial of elevator service may be necessary. See the note in IEC 62443-3-3, section 4.2 for guidance on cyber risk (threat) assessment.

(3) except for emergency communications systems, be provided with a manual means on-site that is not self-resetting and that is accessible to elevator, authorized, and emergency personnel to disable the actions permitted by [2.26.13.2](#) and to disable connectivity as permitted in [8.14.1](#).

(b) Where executable software is used in conjunction with any operation, means, or device listed in [2.26.1.7.1](#) and [3.26.11.1](#), the security features used to satisfy [8.14.1](#) shall include a means that will prevent changes to the executable software via a remote source. Only on-site elevator personnel shall initiate changes to executable software delivered remotely using the means. This means shall conform to (1) through (5).

(1) The means shall allow changes to the executable software only when the elevator controller is not in automatic operation and a stop switch is actuated.

(2) The means shall be accessible to elevator personnel only with a key that is Group 1 security (see [Section 8.1](#)).

(3) The means shall be located at one or more of the following (see also [2.8.1](#)):

(-a) in machinery spaces outside the hoistway

(-b) in spaces within sight of the hoistway

(-c) a machine room

(-d) a control space outside the hoistway

(-e) a control room

(-f) an inspection and test panel
(4) The means shall be portably connected or permanently attached to the device or elevator controller or located within the inspection and test panel (see also [8.6.4.23](#)).

(5) The means shall prevent parameter changes to any of the functions, means, or devices listed in [2.26.1.7.1](#) and [3.26.11.1](#) unless the on-site elevator personnel initiate a change to executable software delivered remotely using the means.

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME A17.1 CSA B44:22

Part 9

Reference Codes, Standards, and Specifications

This Part covers the codes, standards, and specifications incorporated in this Code by reference and the specific editions that are applicable (see [Section 9.1](#)). Where “latest edition” is used, it shall mean the most recent edition in publication on the date this document is

published. This Part also lists the names and addresses of the organizations from which these documents may be procured (see [Section 9.2](#)).

Only that portion of the code, standard, or specification as specified by the requirements in this Code is applicable.

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME A17.1 CSA B44:22

(22) SECTION 9.1 REFERENCE DOCUMENTS

Designation	Standard	Publisher	Applicable to
16 CFR Part 1201-03	Architectural Glazing Standards and Related Materials	U.S. GPO	U.S.
21 CFR Part 1040	Performance Standards for Light-Emitting Products	U.S. GPO	U.S.
30 CFR 75.1106	Code Federal Regulations	U.S. GPO	U.S.
47 CFR Part 15	Radio Frequency Devices	U.S. GPO	U.S.
ADA/ABAAG	2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design/Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines	U.S. ATBCB	U.S.
ADAAG	Americans With Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines	U.S. ATBCB	U.S.
AGMA 218.01	Rating the Pitting Resistance and Bending Strength of Spur and Helical Involute Gear Teeth	AGMA	U.S.
AISC Book No. S326, 1978	Specification for Design, Fabrication, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings	AISC	U.S.
American Plywood Design Specification A3.3.1 (April 1978)	...	APA	U.S., Canada
ANSI A10.4 (latest edition)	Safety Requirements for Personnel Hoists	ANSI	U.S.
ANSI A10.5 (latest edition)	Safety Requirements for Material Hoists	ANSI	U.S.
ANSI A12.1-1973	Safety Requirements for Floor and Wall Openings, Railings and Toe Boards	ANSI	U.S.
ANSI A14.3-2002	Safety Requirements for Fixed Ladders	ANSI	U.S., Canada
ANSI A58.1 (latest edition)	Building Code Requirements for Minimum Design Loads in Buildings and Other Structures	ANSI	U.S.
ANSI Z35.1-1972	Specifications for Accident Prevention Signs	ANSI	U.S.
ANSI Z97.1-1994	Performance Specifications and Methods of Test for Safety Glazing Material Used in Buildings	ANSI	U.S.
ANSI Z535.2 (latest edition)	Environment & Facility Safety Signs	ANSI	U.S., Canada
ANSI Z535.4 (latest edition)	Product Safety Signs and Labels	ANSI	U.S., Canada
ANSI/ACI 318-08	Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete	ACI	U.S.
ANSI/AISC 360-05	Specification for Structural Steel Buildings	AISC	U.S.
ANSI/AF&PA NDS-2005	National Design Specifications for Wood Construction	ANSI	U.S.
ANSI/AWS D1.1 (latest edition)	Structural Welding Code — Steel	AWS	U.S.
ANSI/AWS D1.3 (latest edition)	Structural Welding Code — Sheet Steel	AWS	U.S.
ANSI/BHMA A156.19-2007	Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors	BHMA	Canada
ANSI/ISO/IEC 17024	Conformity assessment — General requirements for bodies operating certification of persons	ANSI	U.S., Canada
ANSI/RMA IP-20-1977	Specifications for Drives Using Classical Multiple V-belts (A, B, C, D, E Cross Sections)	RMA	U.S.
ANSI/SAE SP-68	...	SAE	U.S.
ANSI/SAIA A92 (latest edition)	Aerial Platforms	SAIA	U.S.
ANSI/UL 94 (latest edition)	Test of Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances	UL	U.S., Canada
ANSI/UL 723 (latest edition)	Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials, Test for	UL	U.S., Canada
ANSI/Vol. Prod. Std. PS-1 (latest edition)	Structural Plywood	APA	U.S.
ASCE/SEI 7-2010	Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures	ASCE	U.S.
ASCE/SEI 24 (latest edition)	Flood Resistant Design and Construction	ASCE	U.S.
ASME A17.2 (latest edition)	Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks	ASME	U.S.
ASME A17.3 (latest edition)	Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators	ASME	U.S.
ASME A17.4 (latest edition)	Guide for Emergency Personnel	ASME	U.S.
ASME A17.6	Standard for Elevator Suspension, Compensation, and Governor Systems	ASME	U.S., Canada

Table continued

Designation	Standard	Publisher	Applicable to
ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 (latest edition)	Performance-Based Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators	ASME, CSA	U.S., Canada
ASME A17.8/CSA B44.8	Safety Code for Wind Turbine Tower Elevators	ASME, CSA	U.S.
ASME A18.1 (latest edition)	Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts	ASME	U.S.
ASME A90.1 (latest edition)	Safety Standards for Belt Manlifts	ASME	U.S.
ASME A120.1 (latest edition)	Safety Requirements for Powered Platforms and Traveling Ladders and Gentries for Building Maintenance	ASME	U.S.
ASME B1.1 (latest edition)	Unified Inch Screw Threads	ASME	U.S., Canada
ASME B1.13M (latest edition)	Metric Screw Threads	ASME	U.S., Canada
ASME B1.20.1 (latest edition)	Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)	ASME	U.S., Canada
ASME B1.20.3 (latest edition)	Dryseal Pipe Threads (Inch)	ASME	U.S., Canada
ASME B1.20.4-1976 (R1982)	Dryseal Pipe Threads (Metric Translation of B1.20.3)	ASME	U.S., Canada
ASME B20.1 (latest edition)	Safety Standards for Conveyors and Related Equipment	ASME	U.S.
ASME B29.1 (latest edition)	Precision Power Transmission Roller Chains, Attachments, and Sprockets	ASME	U.S., Canada
ASME B29.8 (latest edition)	Leaf Chains, Clevises, and Sheaves	ASME	U.S., Canada
ASME B29.100 (latest edition)	Precision Power Transmission, Double-Pitch Power Transmission, and Double-Pitch Conveyor Roller Chains, Attachments, and Sprockets	ASME	U.S., Canada
ASME B31.1 (latest edition)	Power Piping	ASME	U.S., Canada
ASME QEI-1 (latest edition)	Standard for the Qualification of Elevator Inspectors	ASME	U.S.
ASME Y14.38 (latest edition)	Abbreviations and Acronyms for Use on Drawings and Related Documents	ASME	U.S.
ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII (latest edition)	...	ASME	U.S., Canada
ASME Guide SI-1 (latest edition)	Orientation and Guide for Use of SI (Metric) Units	ASME	U.S.
ASTM A27-84a	Specifications for Mild and Medium-Strength Carbon Steel Castings for General Applications	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM A36-84a	Specifications for Structural Steel	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM A53/A53M (latest edition)	Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM A106/A106M (latest edition)	Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM A283-84a	Specifications for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Threaded Standard Fasteners	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM A283/A283M-03 (2007)	Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates	ASTM	Canada
ASTM A307-10	Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM A307-84a	Specifications for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plate of Structural Quality	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM A502-83a	Specifications for Steel Structural Rivets	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM A668-85	Specifications for Carbon Alloy Steel Forgings for General Industrial Use	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM D97-85	Standard Test for Pour Point of Petroleum Oils	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM D198-84	Static Tests of Timbers in Structural Sizes	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM D245-81 (1986)	Establishing Structural Grades and Related Allowable Properties for Visually Graded Lumber	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM D2270-79	Calculating Viscosity Index from Kinematic Viscosity	ASTM	U.S., Canada

Table continued

Designation	Standard	Publisher	Applicable to
ASTM E8/E8M (latest edition)	Standard Test Methods for Tension Testing of Metallic Materials	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM E84 (latest edition)	Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials	ASTM	U.S., Canada
ASTM E380 (latest edition)	Standard Practice for Use of the International System of Units (SI)	ASTM	U.S.
ASTM E648-86	Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source	ASTM	U.S.
CABO One and Two Family Dwelling Code	...	ICC	U.S.
CAN4-S104 (latest edition)	Fire Tests of Door Assemblies	CSA	Canada
CAN/CGSB-12.1-M90 (same as CAN2-12.1)	Glass, Safety, Tempered or Laminated	CGSB	Canada
CAN/CGSB-12.11 (latest edition)	Wired Safety Glass	CGSB	Canada
CAN/CGSB-12.12 (latest edition)	Plastic Safety Glazing Sheets	CGSB	Canada
CAN/CSA-B311 (latest edition)	Safety Code for Manlifts	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-B354.1 (latest edition)	Portable Elevating Work Platforms	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-B72-M87 (R1998) (same as CSA-B72)	Installation Code for Lighting Protection Systems	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-G40.21-1972	Structural Quality Steels	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-S16.1-09	Design of Steel Structures	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-T515-97 (same as CAN3-T515-M85)	Requirements for Handset Telephones Intended for Use by the Hard of Hearing	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-Z185-M87 (R1997) (same as CSA Z185)	Safety Code for Personnel Hoists	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-Z256-M87 (R1995) (same as CSA Z256)	Safety Code for Material Hoists	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-Z271-98 (same as CSA Z271)	Safety Code for Suspended Elevating Platforms	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-Z321 (latest edition)	Signs and Symbols for the Workplace	CSA	U.S., Canada
CAN/ULC-S102.2 (latest edition)	Standard Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Flooring, Floor Coverings, and Miscellaneous Materials and Assemblies	ULC	Canada
CEI IEC 61508 Parts 1 through 7 (first edition — 1998)	Functional Safety of Electrical/Electronic/Programmable Electronic Safety-Related Systems	ANSI	U.S., Canada
CSA A23.3-04 (same as CAN3-A23.3)	Design of Concrete Structures	CSA	Canada
CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 (latest edition)	Standard for Elevator and Escalator Electrical Equipment	ASME	U.S., Canada
CSA B167-96	Safety Standard for Maintenance and Inspection of Overhead Cranes, Gantry Cranes, Monorails, Hoists, and Trolleys	CSA	Canada
CSA B354 (latest edition)	Work Platform Standards	CSA	Canada
CSA B355-00	Lifts for Persons With Physical Disabilities	CSA	Canada
CSA B613-00	Private Residence Lifts for Persons With Physical Disabilities	CSA	Canada
CSA C22.1 (latest edition)	Canadian Electrical Code, Part I, Safety Standard for Electrical Installations	CSA	Canada
CSA C22.2 No. 139-1982 (R1992)	Electrically Operated Valves	CSA	U.S., Canada
CSA C22.2 No. 141-15	Emergency Lighting Equipment	CSA	U.S., Canada
CAN/CSA-E60825-1 (latest edition)	Safety of Laser Products — Part 1: Equipment Classification and Requirements	CSA	Canada
CSA O86-01	Engineering Design in Wood	CSA	U.S., Canada
CSA O86.1-94	Engineering Design in Wood (Limit States Design)	CSA	Canada
CSA O151 (latest edition)	Canadian Softwood Plywood	CSA	Canada

Table continued

Designation	Standard	Publisher	Applicable to
CSA W47.1-1992 (R1998)	Certification of Companies for Fusion Welding of Steel Structures	CSA	U.S., Canada
CSA W59-M-1991 (R2018)	Welded Steel Construction (Metal Arc Welding) (Metric Version)	CSA	U.S., Canada
CSA Z150-98	Safety Code on Mobile Cranes	CSA	Canada
CSA Z248-1975	Code for Tower Cranes	CSA	Canada
EN 12016: 1998	Electromagnetic Compatibility-Product Family Standard for Lifts, Escalator and Passenger Conveyors Immunity	BSI	U.S., Canada
FED-STD 191A Rev. 5 (Dec-28-1989)	Federal Standard for Textile Test Methods	GSA	U.S.
IBC (latest edition)	International Building Code	ICC	U.S.
ICC/ANSI A117.1 (latest edition)	Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities	ICC	U.S.
IEC 60825-1 (latest edition)	Safety of Laser Products — Part 1: Equipment Classification and Requirements	IEC	U.S.
IEC 60947-5-1:2009	Low-Voltage Switchgear and Controlgear	ANSI	U.S., Canada
IEC 62443-2-4 (latest edition)	Security for Industrial Automation and Control Systems — Part 2-4: Security Program Requirements for IACS Service Providers	ANSI	U.S., Canada
IEC 62443-3-3 (latest edition)	Industrial Communication Networks — Network and System Security — Part 3-3: System Security Requirements and Security Levels	ANSI	U.S., Canada
IEC 62443-4-1 (latest edition)	Security for Industrial Automation and Control Systems — Part 4-1: Secure Product Development Lifecycle Requirements	ANSI	U.S., Canada
IEC 62443-4-2 (latest edition)	Security for Industrial Automation and Control Systems — Part 4-2: Technical Security Requirements for IACS Components	ANSI	U.S., Canada
IEEE 45 (latest edition)	Recommended Practices for Electric Installations on Shipboard	IEEE	U.S., Canada
IEEE C95.1 (latest edition)	Standard for Safety Levels with Respect to Human Exposure to Electric, Magnetic, and Electromagnetic Fields, 0 Hz to 300 GHz	IEEE	U.S., Canada
IFC (latest edition)	International Fire Code	ICC	U.S.
ISED RSS-247 (latest edition)	Digital Transmission Systems (DTSS), Frequency Hopping Systems (FHSs) and Licence-Exempt Local Area Network (LE-LAN) Devices	ISED	Canada
ISO 14798:2009	Lifts (elevators), escalators and moving walks — Risk assessment and reduction methodology	ANSI	U.S., Canada
ISO 22200:2009	Electromagnetic compatibility — Product family standard for lifts, escalators and moving walks — Immunity	ANSI	U.S., Canada
MIL-DTL-83420M Spec	...	...	...
Mineral Resources 30 CFR Parts 1-199	Code of Federal Regulations MSHA	U.S. GPO	U.S.
NBCC (latest edition, except where specified in the Code)	National Building Code of Canada	NRC	Canada
NEHRP	National Earthquake Hazards Reduction Program Recommended Provisions for Seismic Regulations for New Buildings	FEMA	U.S., Canada
NEMA 250 (latest edition)	Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)	NEMA	U.S.
NFCC (latest edition)	National Fire Code of Canada	NRC	Canada
NFPA 13 (latest edition)	Installation of Sprinkler Systems	NFPA	U.S.
NFPA 70 (latest edition)	National Electrical Code	NFPA	U.S.
NFPA 72 (latest edition)	National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code	NFPA	U.S.
NFPA 80-1986	Fire Doors and Windows	NFPA	U.S., Canada